R. White delin.
et sculp. 1700.
Gulielmus Salmon. M.D.

R. White delin.
et sculp. 1700.
Gulielmus Salmon. M.D.

PRAXIS MEDICA.

THE

Practice of Phyſick :

OR,

Dr. SYDENHAM'S *Proceſſus Integri*, Tranſlated out of *Latin* into *Engliſh*, with large *Annotations*, *Animadverſions* and *Practical Obſervations* on the ſame.

CONTAINING

The *Names*, *Places*, *Signs*, *Cauſes*, *Prognoſticks*, and *Cures*, of all the moſt Uſual and Popular Diſeaſes afflicting the Bodies of Human Kind, according to the moſt approved Modes of Practice.

Among which you have

The Pathology, and Various Methods of Curing *A CLAP*, or *Virulent Running of the Reins*, and the *French POX*, with all their *Attendent Symptoms*, beyond whatever was yet publiſh'd on this Subject by any other Author, Ancient or Modern, ſince the Diſeaſe firſt appeared in the World, to this Day.

The Third Edition,
Inlarged throughout, with ſome Thouſands of Additions not in the firſt Impreſſion.

By WILLIAM SALMON, M. D.

LONDON,

Printed for *J. Knapton* at the *Crown*, and *W. Innys*, at the *Prince's-Arms* in St. *Paul's* Church-Yard, 1716.

TO

Thomas Gardiner, Esq;

Surgeon to the Houſhold,

AND

SURGEON-GENERAL

OF

Her Majeſty's Land-Forces, &c.

SIR

I Thought my ſelf obliged to prefix your Name to this Work, whoſe Merits have declared you to be the Oracle of Health, and

4-14446

whoſe Vertues have exalted you to the *Acme* of Preferment in your Profeſſion, being made by the Great Queen of *England*, One of Her Chief Chirurgians.

You live not only in Eſtimation in the Minds of all Good People, and belov'd in the Royal Family and Houſhold, in which you are entertain'd and highly valued: But have the Happineſs withal, conſtantly to behold that Great Preſence, the moſt Magnificent and Glorious of all Crown'd Heads; who by Her Ineſtimable Goodneſs, has conſtituted and fix'd you in ſuch an Elevated Station, as has render'd you Conſpicuous to all the World.

The Honour which you have gain'd your ſelf by your great Art, and indubitable Skill; your unwearied

ried Induſtry, and that ſingular Integrity, with which you have managed your ſelf in all your Dealings with Mankind, have made you Eminent: And thoſe High Characters, with which it has pleaſed Her Majeſty to Grace you in Her Service, have made you Greater.

I am far from Flattering; and to expreſs Truth in its naked Dreſs, I think is a Duty, which I cannot here avoid. You carry with you that Goodneſs of Nature, that Affection and Kindneſs, and that Generoſity of Soul, in all your Actions, which lift you up above the ordinary Sphere of Mankind. May that Honour and Happineſs you have acquir'd in your Poſt, under ſo Illuſtrious a Miſtreſs, be continued without Precipitation or Change,

Change to your laſt Moments; and under the Weight thereof may you Eternally Survive. Theſe are the Earneſt and Sincere Wiſhes of

SIR,

Your Faithful and Humble Servant,

W. SALMON.

To

To my Dear Friend, *S. S.*

I Give this Book to you, with reſpect to that Friendſhip which is between us, and to that Piety which I believe dwells within you; not for any thing you have been pleaſed to beſtow apon me; nor any Favours you have done me.

It is but a ſmall thing, not worth your accepting of; yet notwithſtanding that, the Generoſity of your Spirit, and the invincible Tye of Souls, has made me overlook it, to make it yours, and to lodge it in your Boſom.

And ſo much the more, when I conſider'd the Vertue which dwells in your Breaſt; the Integrity and Truth, innate to your ſincere Mind; and that Excelling Goodneſs, which always accompanies you, as your inſeparable Companion.

This being ſaid, I make my humble Approaches to the Almighty Powers, intreating the Giver of all Good Things, to be auſpicious to you, and ſupport you; that always dwelling in his Favour, you may be kept from Evil, ſo that nothing below may grieve you: That you may make your Habitation in the Munition of Rocks, and Receſſes of the ſtricteſt Vertue, where the Floods cannot drown you, nor Cataracts overwhelm you, but your Hopes may be daily increaſed to the utmoſt Satisfaction.

I know you Eſteem the Giver, more than you do the Gift; and that you Value it according to the Mind and Alacrity with which it is given: Which is, I acknowledge, a Kindneſs not to be diſpiſed.

It is but as a Mite caſt into the Treaſury, yet I hope it will multiply and increaſe: Your Eſtimation of it, will add Life to its Author, and in ſpight of Envy, make him ſurvive to the Ultimate of his deſtinated Minutes; and with-

A.M.L.

all make the Work it ſelf travel through the World for the good of Mankind.

Thoſe Bands of Unity between us, too great to be expreſs'd in Words, you have often confirm'd, and given ſuch a Seal to them, as will make them indiſſoluble; in which generous Spirits behold and enjoy ſuch an Happineſs, and ſuperlative Tranquility, as Vulgar Souls (not yet ſeelingly touch'd with a Coal from the Altar of Gratitude) can never be ſenſible of.

Entertain it in your Repoſitory, and account of it, for the Bleſſing it carries along with it; give it place in your Retirements, and make uſe of it, as well for its own Worth, as for its Author's ſake.

Treat this Wandering but Legitimate Off-ſpring of yours intirely, with Kindneſs; and let both Me and It, be always in your Thoughts and Eſteem, who in the Bonds of an Eternal Friendſhip, am, and will be, with all Sincerity,

Your True Friend,

And Faithful Servant,

W. S.

THE

THE PREFACE.

I. *WE here present the World with an Abstract of the Practice of Physick, and such an one, as was drawn by the Hand of one of the greatest and most reputed Masters of Our Art. We need say nothing in Praise of the Work, for that bespeaks it self, considering how well it has been received in the World, and that more than Seven Thousand of the Original* Latin *Copies have already been sold, in three several Impressions thereof.*

II. *Now considering that this was a Practical Piece, and that Practice was only design'd thereby, and withal, that it was very curt and short, and by reason of its smallness and easie Price, it might be of exceeding use to the Publick, I adventured (besides the bare Translating of it) to divide it (for the easiness of Quotation-sake) into Books, Chapters and Sections, and to add my Modicum to it, which I exposed to the World in a former Impression; THAT, taking among the Learned and Inquisitive sort of Mankind, beyond what I expected, the Book was sold off in a very short time, and being out of Print, was much sought after, as a Jewel of very great Price.*

III. *I seeing how acceptable it was in that mean Dress (not to say Disguise) thought of a new Edition; and in the same, every where throughout the whole Work, have made it my business, both more fully to explain the Author's Meaning and Sense, and to Animadvert upon him, where he was disagreeable to the Rational Practice of the Art: And also to add what other Precepts and Observations I thought to be necessary, to amplifie and ascertain the Method of Practice, as it is now entertained among the greatest Professors of Physick: So that I can be bold to say (considering the Brevity thereof) that it has not for its Rational Prescriptions, Plainness of Language, and Usefulness of Matter, its equal in the World.*

IV. *If it so much pleased in its former Meanness, I hope it will not meet with worse Entertainment now; since it is grown up to a greater Degree of Maturity, and with its Native Simplicity, has made some*

Steps

Steps towards Perfection, at leaſt-wiſe, ſuch as the Art is capable of: We have in this Impreſſion, almoſt every where, added the Names of the Diſeaſes in the Learned Languages, the Parts affected, Cauſes, Signs, and their Prognoſticks, together with the Indications of Cure, all which are things abſolutely neceſſary to be known and underſtood, by all the Practicers of the Medicinal Arts.

V. *I confeſs in this Work there are no tedious Proceſſes and Preparations, no Long and Pompous Recipes (ſo much admired by ſome Smatterers in Phyſick) with which many Books are admirably well ſtuff'd, Preſcriptions ſo heterogene and long, that if a Yard and half were cut off from them, there would be enough left behind to do all the Work the whole was able to perform; a very great Fault in my Opinion, yet ſuch a one, as ſome Men can never be reformed from; and which being ſuck'd in with their Mothers Milk (as I may ſay) is ſo natural to them, that ſhould they but caſt a reflecting Eye upon it, they would ſeem Heterodox to themſelves, and their dear fond Opinions.*

VI. *The Diviſion of the Books, and the Diſpoſition of the Chapters, are in no regular Method or Order; but that is not much material to the Work, ſeeing it was never deſign'd as a compleat Syſtem of the whole Art of Phyſick. The Author's* Proceſſus Integri, *had only relation to the moſt uſual and common Diſeaſes afflicting the Bodies of Human Kind, and about which his own Practice was concern'd; which in this is farther amplified, upon the* Dropſies, Aſcites *and* Tympanites, *and* Hyſterick Diſeaſes, *out of his larger Works.*

VII. *But beſides thoſe Diſeaſes our Author has here treated of, there were ſeveral other very common Maladies, and which were the almoſt every Days Practice of Phyſicians, of which he had not taken the leaſt notice, viz.* Convulſions, Lethargy, Carus, Frenzy, Delirium, Pining Conſumption, Catarrh, Kings-Evil, Wounds Simple, Wounds Complicate, and Pain in General: *Of theſe (that we might make the Book the more uſeful and compleat) we have particularly diſcourſed in ſeveral Chapters, thereby comprehending all the Principal Diſeaſes occurring in the General Way of Practiſing.*

VIII. *I confeſs there are ſome Hundreds of other Diſtempers with which Man's Body may be afflicted, but thoſe other, as they are ſeldom to be ſeen in an Age, ſo they are for the moſt part, ſome Species of theſe treated of in this Work; and therefore he who (being before-hand initiated into the Grounds and Theory of Phyſick,) ſhall be ignorant of, or not know by what is ſaid here, how to manage and cure moſt of the reſt, ought to be interdicted the Practice of Phyſick; and repudiated from the ſame, as one who has no proper Genius for this Learning, and whoſe Soul or Mind is not a fit Receptacle for ſo noble and ſo rich a Treaſure.*

IX. *I have wrote a great many Books of the Arts of Phyſick (as may appear by the following Catalogue) and poſſibly done more in that kind of Learning, than any one Man has yet done, from the Original of Time to this*

this Day; of which number, as this preſent Work is one, ſo for all that I know, it may be the laſt I ſhall ever write of that kind; nor is it the meaneſt of them; but as it has been written in my more Mature Years, and with a greater Ripeneſs of Judgment; ſo I hope it will be found to exceed them all, conſidering the ſubject Matter it is concern'd with; which is not the Materia Medica, not the Preparations of Medicine, whether Galenical or Chymical, not the Anatomy of Man's Body, *but peculiarly, the Method of Curing Diſeaſes.*

X. *I doubt not but there may be ſome Failures in it, (and what Man is there who writes without them.) But I believe, that I who am the Author, can more eaſily find them out and ſee them, than a great many others who pretend to more Knowledge and Judgment, and to be quicker-ſighted than I am. Thoſe Critical Spies upon my Books, in ſeeking out for my Failings, have hitherto had the Unhappineſs, ever to find out* Faults, *where there were really none; but never yet could ſee them, where they truly were: Such* Faults *as theſe Men find out in my Writings, they themſelves had never Skill enough to make.*

XI. *There is one thing I know which will be objected againſt me, which is, that I have kept ſecret the Preparations of my* Impetus Aureus, *and of my* Panacea Aurea: Solomon *ſays, There is a Time for all Things, and a Time for every Purpoſe under Heaven; A Time to gather Stones, and a Time to caſt them away; a Time to keep ſilence, and a Time to ſpeak; and every thing is beautiful in its Time: But my Time of ſpeaking to that Purpoſe is not come; and till the Time thereof is come, that Beauty and Excellency cannot appear; for which Reaſon thoſe* Great Secrets *muſt yet remain within the Vail. However we have not been wanting to ſupply you with others in their ſtead which though they are not altogether of that Value and Excellency, yet will not fail you, but as firmly and abſolutely perform what is intended to be done, as if thoſe very great Medicines themſelves had been applied to the Cure. I do not ſay they never ſhall come to light; there is no doubt but the Seaſon of Harveſt will come, and then you may reap the Fruits of your Expectation; till then we hope the grateful Sons of Art will remain ſatisfied.*

XII. *Since we wrote that Chapter of St.* Vitus's *Dance, Lib.* 1. *Cap.* 21. *I have had ſome others under my Hands, vehemently afflicted with that Diſeaſe, to whom I gave thoſe Compoſitions there mentioned in that Cure; but the Diſeaſe proving rebellious, I did not perfectly maſter it in thoſe Patients, till I gave this Pouder,* Take choice Jeſuits Bark in fine Pouder four Ounces; Virginia Snake-root in fine Pouder two Ounces; mix them. *Of this the Patient took a Dram Morning and Night (or two Scruples according as the Age may be) in a Glaſs of the beſt Styptick Wine, as Barabar Wine, or that Wine mix'd with half Water: It is wonderful, and almoſt beyond the Expreſſion of Words, to ſee, in how ſhort a Time this Medicine profligated the Diſeaſe, and at laſt perfectly reſtored the Sick to their Priſtine Health. Since that I have made uſe of the ſame Medicament, in ſeveral other kinds of Convulſions, and always with the ſame Succeſs. for which Reaſon ſake, and the Publick Good, I here publiſh it to the World.*

XIII.

XIII. *Another thing I have to take notice of, and that is,* The Uſe of Camphir in Injections, *whether they are to cleanſe any Ulcer in the* Urethra, *or* Womb, *or* Fiſtula; *or to give eaſe to the Pains in thoſe Parts; or to be mix'd with any* Catheretick *in Injections to remove a Caruncle or Carnoſity, as in thoſe mentioned in* Lib. 3. Cap. 27. Sect. 70. *It is a moſt excellent thing in thoſe Caſes; To every Quart you may put two or three Drams of Camphir; firſt diſſolved in a little Spirit of Wine, and then mixed with the Injection; which always ought to be uſed Blood-warm, and that three or four Times a Day, or oftner, as you ſee need requires. If this is prudently uſed, it will have great Effects; and the grateful ſpirited Practiſer will give me Thanks for the Hint I have given him in this Place.*

XIV. *I ſhall now give you a Catalogue of all ſuch Books of mine, as are already Extant in the World, and have (moſt of them) been ſeveral Times Printed.*

1. *Botonologia*: Or, *A Compleat Engliſh Herbal.* Folio.

2. *Pharmacopœia Londinenſis*: Or, *The New London Diſpenſatory.*

3. *Pharmacopœia Batcana*: Or, *Bate*'s Diſpenſatory. Tranſlated from the laſt Edition of the Latin Copy, publiſh'd by Mr. *James Shipton.*

4. *Doron Medicum*: Or, A Supplement to the New *London* Diſpenſatory

5. *Scplaſium*: Or, The Druggiſt's Shop Opened.

6. *Synopſis Medicinæ*: Or, A Compendium of the Theory and Practice of Phyſick.

7. *Ars Chirurgica*: A Compendium of the Theory and Practice of Chirurgery.

8. *Iatrica*: *ſeu Praxis Medendi.* The Practice of curing Diſeaſes.

9. Παρατηρήματα: Or, *Select Phyſical and Chirurgical Obſervations.*

10. *Medicina Practica*: Or, Practical Phyſick.

11. *Collectanea Medica*: The Country Phyſician.

12. *Polygraphicæ*: Or, The Arts of Drawing, Engraving, Etching, Limning, Painting, Varniſhing, Japanning, Gilding, *&c.* In Two Volumes. Octavo. The Eighth Edition. With Cuts.

13. *Horæ Mathematicæ, ſeu Urania.* The Soul of Aſtrology, containing that Art in all its Parts. Octavo.

14. *The Family Dictionary*, or, *Houſehold Companion.*

15. *Praxis Medica*: The Practice of Phyſick. Or, Dr. *Sydenham*'s *Proceſſus Integri*, Tranſlated out of Latin into Engliſh, with large Annotations, Animadverſions and Practical Obſervations on the ſame. In Three Books. Containing, The Names, Places, Signs, Prognoſticks, and Cures, of all the moſt Common and Popular Diſeaſes, afflicting the Bodies of Humane Kind; educed according to the moſt approved Method of Practice. Among which you have the *Pathology and various Methods of curing a Clap, or Virulent Running of the Reins, and French Pox, with all their attendant Symptoms, beyond whatever way publiſh'd on this Subject, by any*

other

other Author Ancient or Modern, ſince theſe Diſeaſes firſt appeared in the World, to this Day. The Third Edition. And this is that very Book we here preſent you withal.

16. *Ars Anatomica*: Or, The Anatomy of Humane Bodies. In Seven Books. Octavo.

XV. *Theſe Books here enumerated, are all of my own Writing and Performance, and of ſingular Uſe for all ſuch as intend for the Study and Practice of Phyſick; which if they be well read and underſtood, may poſſibly make ſuch able in their Profeſſion, ſhould they read no others: Yet I am not for diſcouraging the Peruſing of other Authors, as the Ancients, and ſuch as have been the Performances of the Great Men of the Art; for out of them many excellent Things may be gleaned, all of which it is impoſſible for any one Man to collect and amaſs together. But the doing of this, will be a Work of Time as well as Labour, and is only propoſed to ſuch, as with an indefatigable Diligence will puſh on to the Perfection of Medical Knowledge.*

XVI. *There are a ſort of Men in the World who affect to be Doctors, but are no Phyſicians, who tho' they are great Pretenders to our Art, yet cannot talk the Language thereof, and know ſo little truly of Phyſick, that they underſtand not its Conſtituent Parts: Who while they will Pragmatically talk of the* Natures *and* Qualities *of Medicaments, apprehend nothing of the* Materia Medica: *And Magiſterially judge of Diſeaſes, without knowing ſo much as their Names, miſtaking Symptoms for the Malady it ſelf, and yet are too wiſe to be inform'd: To ſuch Perſons as theſe we addreſs not this Work.*

XVII. *Theſe, by a kind of Pedantry, triumph in their Ignorance and Folly; and for want of knowing Principles, make falſe Judgments, thereby miſtaking the Indications of Cure to the Prejudice of the Poor Patient: I ſay, to the Conſideration of ſuch, this Work is not commended; becauſe we know, it is as much above their Underſtandings, as the Author thereof is below their Thoughts. Tho' all the while, many of theſe Triflers are beholding to the little of the Art they pretend to, to ſome of the Books we have already publiſhed; and privately hug them in their Boſoms, whilſt they diſingenuouſly Spurn at their Author, and maliciouſly Smite him with their Flagitious Tongues.*

XVIII. *I continually give Thanks to God, who has raiſed me to a Station above their Malice; and by my Skill and ſucceſsful Practice has eſtabliſhed my Reputation, beyond the Blaſting of their envenom'd Breath: And fix'd me above the Power of any ſuch to precipitate me, or hurt the Eſtimation and Honour I have obtained in the World. My Induſtry, Integrity, and juſt Dealing with Mankind, will ſpeak more for me, than I can do for my ſelf; and will continually plead my Cauſe, tho' I hereafter condemn my ſelf to a perpetual Silence.*

Black-Friers, London,
30. *Aug.* 1706.

W. SALMON.

THE

THE

CONTENTS.

Liber Primus.

Chap.		Page
1.	*CErtain Forms of Medicines*	1
2.	*Of Hypochondriack Diſeaſes in Men, and Of Hyſterick in Women*	10
3.	*Of Mortal Fevers in* 1661 *to* 1664	21
4.	*Of the Peſtilential Fever in* 1665	23
5.	*Of Agues*	29
6.	*Of Continual Fevers in* 1685 *to* 1690	34
7.	*Of the Scarlet Fever*	39
8.	*Of the Pleuriſie*	41
9.	*Of a Baſtard Peripneumonia*	47
10.	*Of a Rheumatiſm*	52
11.	*Of an Eryſipelatous Fever*	59
12.	*Of Fevers from breeding Teeth*	63
13.	*Of Hectick Fevers in Children*	64
14.	*Of the Epilepſy in Children*	66
15.	*Of the Rickets*	72
16.	*Of Convulſive Coughs in Children*	78
17.	*Of the Itch and Cuticular Diſeaſes*	81
18.	*Of the Quinſie*	85
19.	*Of the Meaſles*	92
20.	*Of the Small-Pox*	98
21.	*Of St.* Vitus's *Dance*	121

Liber

Liber Secundus.

Chap.		Page
1.	*OF the Apoplexy*	129
2.	*Of the Palsey*	144
3.	*Of Convulsions* *	154
4.	*Of Lethargy and Carus* *	163
5.	*Of Frenzy and Delirium* *	173
6.	*Of Dog-like Madness*	180
7.	*Of Madness*	185
8.	*Of a Scald or Scabby-head*	195
9.	*Of Inflamation of the Eyes*	199
10.	*Of Bleeding at Nose*	204
11.	*Of an Asthma*	209
12.	*Of a Cough*	220
13.	*Of a Consumption or Pining* *	227
14.	*Of a Phthisis, or Ulcer of the Lungs*	242
15.	*Of a Catarrh* *	257
16.	*Of Scrofula or Kings-Evil* *	265
17.	*Of Wounds Simple in General* *	280
18.	*Of Wounds Complicate* *	290
19.	*Of Easing Pain in any part* *	297
20.	*Of Contusions or Bruises*	302
21.	*Of Pricking a Nerve or Tendon*	307
22.	*Of Burnings or Scaldings*	309
23.	*Of Ulcers of the Reins and Bladder*	311

Here Note, That all those Chapters having this Mark or Asterisk * adjoyning to them, are wholly added by the Commentator, *W. Salmon.*

Liber Tertius.

Chap.		Page
1.	*Of the Scurvy*	317
2.	*Of the Dropsie Anasarca*	398
3.	*Of the Dropsie Ascites* / *Of a Tympanites*	411
4.	*Of the Gout*	354
5.	*Of the Jaundice*	366
6.	*Of Hysterick Diseases*	380
7.	*Of the Green-sickness*	404
8.	*Of Stoppage of the Terms*	407
9.	*Of Overflowing of the Terms*	413
10.	*Of the Whites in Women*	418
11.	*Of Overflowing of the Loches*	423
12.	*Of Suppression of the Loches*	426
13.	*Of Abortion or Miscarriage*	429
14.	*Of Falling down of the Womb*	431
15.	*Of Pain of the Hæmorrhoids*	434
16.	*Of Flux of the Hæmorrhoids*	436
17.	*Of the Disease Cholera*	438
18.	*Of the Bilious Colick*	443
19.	*Of the Colick of Poictiers*	453
20.	*Of an Hysterick Colick*	455
21.	*Of the Iliack Passion*	459
22.	*Of a Diarrhœa and Tenasmus*	466
23.	*Of a Dysentery or Bloody Flux*	472
24.	*Of Vomiting and Spitting Blood*	481
25.	*Of a Diabetes*	488
26.	*Of Stone in the Reins*	491
27.	*Of a Virulent Gonorrhœa*	497
28.	*Of the French Pox*	517

THE

THE PRACTICE of PHYSICK.

LIBER PRIMUS.

Of FEVERS.

CHAP. I.

Certain Forms of Medicines of vulgar Use.

I. *Potio Communis Purgativa*: or, The Common Purging Potion.

Take half an Ounce of Tamarinds, two Drams of Sena, one Dram and a half of Rhubarb; boil them in a sufficient quantity of Water to three Ounces: Then strain them, and sweeten with Manna and solutive Syrup of Roses, of each one Ounce. Mix them for a Potion.

Salmon.] Or thus. *Take Sena half an Ounce, Liquorish bruised two Drams, Salt of Tartar a Scruple, Water three quarters of a Pint; mix and infuse in a simmering heat for an hour and half close covered: Then strain out, and sweeten with Manna or Syrup of Roses solutive for two Doses.* In some Constitutions it will be better to leave out the *Salt of Tartar a Scruple*, and to add in the place thereof *Cream of Tartar a Dram or two Drams*, which will both correct and add to the Cathartick Virtue.

II. *Emeticum Commune*: or, The usual Vomit.

Take of Carduus Benedictus *Water two Ounces, the Infusion of* Crocus Metallorum *one Ounce, Syrup of Clove-Gilliflowers half an Ounce; mix them for a Vomit,* which is to be taken about Four in the Afternoon, drinking a large Draught of Posset-drink after every Vomit.

Salmon.] This is better. *Take Tartar Emetick, 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6 Grains, according to the Age and Strength of the Patient*; which give in the Morning fasting, (three or four Quarts of Posset-drink being ready made before it is taken) in a Draught of Posset-drink, and drinking a large Draught of Posset-drink after every Vomit. Water-gruel may do, or rather as much Mutton-broth, which is better than either.

III. *Julapium Perlatum*, The Pearl Cordial.

Take Black-cherry-water, Milk-water, of each three Ounces; Barley Cinnamon-water one Ounce, prepared Pearl a Dram and an half, Sugar-candy as much as is sufficient; add Damask-rose-water half a Dram. Mix them for a Cordial. Dose four or five Spoonfuls in Sickness or Fainting Fits.

Salmon.] In place of the Pearl, you may if you please put the same Quantity of the Orient, part of Oister-shells levigated, which is much the better, because the equal quantity will absorb a greater quantity of the Acid, as by Trial you may easily prove: So that *Pearl Cordial* is properly and truly but only *Oister-shell Cordial.*

IV. *Julapium Cardiacum*, The Cordial Julep.

Take Milk-water, Black-cherry-water, of each three Ounces; Plague-water, Syrup of Clove-gilliflowers, Syrup of Citrons, of each half an Ounce. Mix them, and make a Julep, which is to be taken frequently.

Salmon.] If you add to it *Tincture of Saffron and Cochinele, Ana one Ounce*, it will be so much the better: But it is a great Question, Whether the Author means the *Syrup of the Juice of Citrons*, or *Syrup of Citron Peels*: If the Stomach is very weak, and out of order, the first is the best; but if there be Faintings, Swoonings, or Deliquiums of the Spirits, then the latter is the better of the two.

V. *Decoctum Diæteticum*; or, The Diet-drink.

Take Roots of Sarsaparilla, six ounces; Sassafras and China, of each two ounces; Liquorice one ounce, boil them in sixteen pounds of Water for the space of half an hour, after which let them stand in a close Vessel on hot Ashes twelve hours; then boil them again to the consumption of a third part of the Water. Being taken from the Fire, infuse in it half an ounce of Aniseeds; let it stand two hours more, strain it, and let it settle till it grow clear, then pour off the Drink into Glass-bottles well stopp'd, and reserve it for use. The Patient may use this as ordinary Drink, and continue it for thirty Days.

Salmon.] Or this. *Take Burdock-roots eight ounces, Angelica and Parsly-roots of each two ounces; Sassafras, Liquorish bruised, of each one ounce; Water nine quarts, boil till a third is consumed, strain, and let it settle till it is clear, dulcify it with white Sugar, and bottle it up for use.*

Another for the Leprosy, Herpes, Scurvy, French-Pox, &c. *Take Water 24 pound, Canary four pound and a half, Sassafras rasped, Aniseeds, Juniper-berries, Liquorice bruised, of each four ounces; blew Currans three ounces, Corrosive Sublimate two drams. Infuse in a gentle fire of Digestion for twelve hours; then add to six pound of the Infusion, raspings of Wood of Guajacum, Sarsaparilla bruised, of each six ounces. Digest again twenty four hours, and keep it for use. Dose eight ounces thrice a day.*

VI. *Apozema Aperiens & Antiscorbuticum*: or, An Antiscorbutick opening Decoction.

Take the Roots of Dogs-grass, Cichory, Fennel and Asparagus, of each one ounce; Currans and Raisins stoned, of each two ounces; Liverwort, Harts-tongue and Maiden-hair, of each one handful; Brook-lime (added towards the end)

two

two handfuls; boil them in a ſufficient quantity of Water to a quart, to which at latter end add half a pint of Rheniſh Wine. Then ſtrain them, and while it is yet hot, infuſe in it for two hours in a cloſe Veſſel one handful of Garden Scurvy-graſs. After which ſtrain again, and add Syrup of the five opening Roots, and Syrup of Orange-juice, of each two ounces; Barley-Cinnamon-water one ounce. Mix them, and make a Decoction. The Doſe of which is half a pint every Morning, and at five in the Afternoon, for fourteen Days together.

VII. *Eclegma Incraſſans in Tuſſi:* or, The thickning Lohoch for a Cough.

Take Oil of Sweet Almonds one ounce; Syrups of Red Poppy, of Purſlain, of Jujubes, and Lohoch Sanum, *of each half an ounce; Sugar-candy a ſufficient quantity. Mix them in a Marble Mortar for the ſpace of an hour, till they are perfectly incorporated, which is to be kept in a Gally pot for uſe.* It is to be taken frequently, licking it up with a Liquorice-ſtick.

Salmon.] If to this, Flowers of Sulphur three drams be added, it will be much more effectual; for this Ingredient is a moſt powerful ſtopper of the Flux of any Humour by the Mouth, and a wonderful Abſorber of Acids. Add alſo to it Catechu in Pouder two Drams.

VIII. *Eclegma fortis incraſſens:* or, A Lohoch more powerfully thickning.

Take Conſerve of Red Roſes, Syrup of Violets and of Poppies, of each one ounce; white Poppy-ſeeds, three drams. Beat them together, and force them through a Hair Sieve, then add expreſs'd Oil of Nutmegs ſix grains. Mix and make a Lohoch.

Salmon.] Add to the Compoſition more, *Syrup of Poppies ſix drams, ſubtil Pouder of Catechu one ounce, mixing them all well together.* Of this the Patient may often lick in the Day-time. The Electuary will be yet better, if a greater quantity of the Oil of Nutmegs be added, *viz.* two drams and one ounce of the Syrup of Quinces.

IX *Eclegma in Defluxione tenui:* or, A Lohoch in a thin Rheum.

Take Conſerve of Red Roſes two ounces; Syrup of Poppies and of Jujubes, of each one ounce; Olibanum, *Maſtick and Amber, of each one dram; expreſs'd Oil of Nutmegs ſix grains. Mix them, and make a Lohoch, which is to be lick'd often.* You may take twice every Day a Spoonful of this Lohoch, pouring into it Balſam of Sulphur aniſated, from eight to twelve drops.

Salmon.] If you would make it indeed effectual, you ought to add to it, Syrup of Quinces, an ounce and half; Catechu in fine Pouder, half an ounce; Thebian Opium in fine Pouder, half a dram.

X. *Cereviſia Purgativa,* A Purging Drink.

Take Polypody of the Oak one pound; Roots of Monks, Rhubarb, Sena, and Raiſins ſton'd, of each half a pound; Rhubarb ſlic'd, and Horſe-radiſh Roots, of each three ounces; Garden-Scurvygraſs and Sage, of each four handfuls; four Oranges ſlic'd. Infuſe them in five or ſix Gallons of Ale while it is fermenting, and when it is ripen'd; uſe it inſtead of your ordinary Drink for fourteen or one and twenty Days, drink-

ing a Draught of it every Morning.

Salmon] This is better, and more powerful. *Take Sena eight ounces, Mechoacan five ounces; Rhubarb slic'd thin, three drams; Roots of sharp-pointed Dock, Monks Rhubarb, of each ten ounces bruised; crude Antimony in pouder, and tied up in a rag, sixteen ounces; Aniseed, Carraway seeds, Daucus-seeds, Coriander, all bruised, of each three ounces; Garden-Scurvygrass one pound; Horse-radish scraped, four ounces; blew Currans a pound and half: mix, and make a Bag for six gallons of Ale.* Dose a Pint twice a Day.

XI. *Emplastrum Hystericum:* or, A Plaister for the Womb.

Take Galbanum *dissolved in Tincture of Castor and strained, three drams*; Taccamahac, *two drams. Mix, and make a Plaister for the Navel,* which apply thereon against Diseases of the Womb.

Salmon.] Or thus. *Take Ammoniacum, Galbanum, dissolved in Tincture of Castor and strained, of each half an ounce; Assafœtida so prepared a dram and half; Taccamahac six drams: mix and make an Emplaster.*

XII. *Catharticum pro Infantibus tenellis:* or, A Purge for young Infants.

Take one small spoonful of Syrup of Cichory with Rhubarb.

Salmon.] Or a spoonful or two (according as it is in Age) of the latter Infusion of Sena at Sect. 1. Syrup of Peach-flowers, is also a pretty thing in this case, as also Syrup of Roses solutive.

XIII. *Decoctum Amarum Purgativum:* or, The bitter Purging Draught.

Take of the bitter Decoction, prepared with a double quantity of Sena, four ounces; Syrup of Buckthorn one ounce; Electuary of the Juice of Roses two drams. Mix them for a Potion.

Salmon.] Or thus. *Take tops of the lesser Centory, Camomil-flowers, of each a pugil; Gentian-roots half a scruple, or a scruple; Carduus-seeds a dram; Sena two drams: boil all in a sufficient quantity of Water to four ounces; to which add Electuary of Juice of Roses two drams; Syrup of Buckthorn an ounce: mix them.* This will be a good Draught for a Greensickness Girl.

XIV. *Laudanum Liquidum Authoris:* or, The Liquid *Laudanum* of the Author.

Take Canary or Sherry-wine a pint, Opium two ounces, Saffron an ounce, Pouders of Cinnamon and Cloves, of each one dram; infuse them together in Balneo Maria *for two or three days, till the Liquor comes to a due Consistency; then strain out, and keep it for use.*

Salmon.] That is the best Liquid *Laudanum* which is made with an Acid, and therefore that of *Helmont* made with the Juice of Quinces, is much commended. But you may easily make a Stomatick *Laudanum* thus: *Take Juice of Limons, Canary Wine, of each a pint; Spirit of Salt one ounce, in which dissolve Opium four ounces; let it digest in a gentle Heat for a Week, shaking the Glass every Day; being well settled, decant the pure Tincture, to which add of the Tinctures of Saffron, Cloves, Winter-cinnamon, Cochinel, of each two ounces. Mix, and keep it for use.* Dose from Ten to Sixty drops every Night at Bed-time, in a Glass of Canary.

New

New Additions.

XV. *Aqua Ophthalmica nova*, A new Eye-water.

Salmon.] *Take Fennel, Eyebright, Celandine and Blew-bottle Waters, of each a pint; Water distilled from new Rye-Bread a quart; Spirit of Wine three quarts; fine Aloes in Pouder four Drams; Cochenel, Saffron, of each a dram: mix, digest in a very gentle Sand-heat, shaking the Bottle three or four times every Day, for fourteen Days; then letting it settle, decant the clear, and keep it for use.*

It strengthens the Eyes wonderfully, represses Rheums, clears the Sight, and is indeed good for most Diseases of the Eyes coming from Weakness, or Repletion of Humours; drop it into the Eyes three or four times a Day, or oftner.

XVI. *Tinctura Aurea Nova*, The new Golden Tincture.

Salmon.] *Take White Lisbon-Wine, common Spirit of Wine, of each three quarts; Pulp of Colocynthis in gross Pouder freed from the Seeds, twelve ounces; choice Sena, eight ounces; Mechoacan in gross Pouder, four ounces; Cremor Tartari in Pouder six ounces, ground with Salt of Tartar an ounce and half; Aniseeds, Caraways, bruised Winter-Cinnamon in Pouder, of each four ounces; put all into a large Bolt Head, which stop close, and in a gentle Sand-heat, digest twenty Days, shaking the Glass twice a Day; let it then digest again till it is clear, and decant the very fine Tincture for use. Note, The older it is the better, and the more easily and gently it works.*

It is an excellent Purge in an inveterate or old Pox, where there are universal Breakings out, accompanied with vehement Nocturnal Pains, or others. It is profitable against the Scurvy in a cold Habit of Body, and many times cures Rheumatisms, Gouts, and a malign Struma or King's Evil; it powerfully provokes the Terms in Women, facilitates the Delivery of Women in Travel, forces away a Mola, and expels the dead Child. Dose a Spoonful or more in a Glass of Wine, according to the Age and Strength of the Person taking it.

XVII. *Tinctura Magistralis*, A Magistral Tincture.

Salmon.] *Take choice Balsam of Tolu eight ounces, Balsam of Peru four ounces; Storax Calamita extracted, two ounces; Tincture of Salt of Tartar two quarts, or better: mix, dissolve, digest, and in a cool Place, or very gentle Sand-heat, extract the noble Tincture. In case of Sand, Gravel or Stone, Balsam Gapivii may be added one ounce.*

It is a potent Medicament against Gouts, Rheumatisms, Palsies, Hypondriack Melancholy, Scurvy, Dropsy, and all sorts of running and wandring Pains affecting the Head, Nerves, Limbs and Joints. It is prevalent against an inveterate Pox, used Dietetically, to cure a virulent Gonorrhæa, and heal virulent Ulcers in the Mouth, Throat, Yard or Womb. Dose a Dram or more in any convenient Vehicle Morning and Night.

XVIII. *Injectio ad Gonorhœam*, An Injection for a Gonorrhœa.

Salmon.] *Take Plantane Water six quarts, Spirit of Wine a quart, Salt of Vitriol an ounce and half; Roch Allom, Saccharum Saturni, Thebean Opium, of each half an*

ounce, dissolve the Opium a-part in a little of the Water; then mix all together, dissolve, digest, shaking it twice a Day for ten Days, then decant the clear Liquor for use.

It is singular good (Universals being first premised) to cure a virulent Gonorrhœa in Man or Woman, being injected with a proper Syringe three or four times a Day, the Ulcer being first cleansed with the following Application.

XIX. *Injectio Abstersiva,* The Cleansing Injection.

Salmon.] *Take Common or Strasburg Turpentine, or Balsam Capivii, two ounces; three or four Yolks of new-laid Eggs, grind them together till they are perfectly mixed; add to it Honey one ounce, and mix again; upon which affuse Spring-water a gallon, and something more, and keep it for use: if it is Winter-time, you may use Milk, or Posset-drink, instead of Water.*

It is daily to be injected two or three times a Day, or oftner, with a Yard or Womb Syringe into the Parts which are affected, warm Water being injected before-hand to clean the Ulcer from the Sordes.

XX. *Pulvis Catharticus,* The Purging Powder.

Salmon.] *Take of the best Resinous Scammony in fine Pouder ten ounces; Rosin of Jallap in fine Pouder four ounces; Cremor Tartari in Pouder twenty ounces: mix them well, and keep the Mixture for use.*

It may be given from fifteen Grains to a Scruple, half a Dram or two Scruples, according to the Age and Strength of the Patient, and Contumacy of the Disease. It is given against vehement Headachs, Gouts, Rheumatick Pains, Sciatica, Palsies, Loss of the use of Limbs, King's Evil, Dropsies, Jaundice, Scurvy, Inveterate Colicks, French Pox, Gonorrhea, Ulcers, Fistulas, and other the like ill-conditioned and Chronick Diseases. It is good against grosness of Body, Surfeits, stoppage in the Brest and Lungs, and the Green-sickness in Virgins. Used as an Errhin it is good against Lethargies, Vertigoes, Apoplexies, Megrim, Catarrhs, and other cold and moist Diseases of Head and Brain.

XXI. *Impetus Mercurii Aurique,* The Powers of Mercury and Gold.

Salmon.] *It is a Preparation of Mercury and Gold in equal quantities, by manifold Amalgamations, Dissolutions in proper Menstruums, and dry Calcinations, as the Reason of the Thing requires, till the Body of the Gold is so opened, and the Mercury so fixed, as to be brought to become a most excellent and admirable Medicine.*

It cures the Scurvy, Gout, Rheumatism, Sciatica, King's-Evil, Scabs, Leprosy and French-Pox, after a singular manner, though those Diseases are become very inveterate and stubborn. It may be given from Gr. 10. to 30, 40 or 60, according to Age and Strength; mixt with a little Syrup of Clove-Gilliflowers, and so swallowed, drinking after it in the time of its Operation, the quantity of a Gallon, or five or six Quarts of Mutton-broth, or Posset-drink; but fat Mutton-broth is the better of the two. Three, four, five or six Doses for the most part cure the Disease: But it is to be repeated at due Distances

ces of Time, according as the Age and Strength of the Sick can bear it.

XXII. *Pilulæ Panarcæ*, The Powerful Pills.

Salmon.] *Take fine Aloes* 24 *ounces, pure Nitre* 12 *ounces, Cambogium, Pulp of Colocynthis, of each six ounces; make all apart into fine Pouder; dissolve the Camboge and Nitre in a sufficient quantity of Rose-water; then add the Aloes in Pouder: When all these Things are well dissolved and mixed, then evaporate over a gentle Sand-heat, almost to a Consistency; after which add the Coloquintida, and make a Mass of Pills.*

It is the best general Purger in the World, profitable to be given against the Scurvy, Dropsy, Jaundice, Green-sickness, Gout, Rheumatism, King's-Evil, French-Pox, Gonorrhea, and other stubborn Diseases. Dose from a Scruple to half a Dram, or two Scruples; or being made up into Pills as large as white Peas, they may be given from one to five, according as the Patient is in Age and Strength.

XXIII. *Sal Panaretum*, The Universal Salt.

Salmon.] *Take Crystals of Tartar in Pouder eight ounces; pure Salt of Tartar four ounces; mix them, and in a glazed Earthen Pipkin, put upon them three pints of pure Spring-water, boil gently for half an Hour, then letting it cool, filter and evaporate to dryness; so will you have at bottom eleven ounces and six drams of a white Salt, which keep in a Glass close stopt. This Salt you may dissolve in Spirit of Vinegar, or some other proper Acid, and letting them stand for a Time, then evaporate to the Consumption of a third part, and set the remaining matter in a cool Cellar to shoot into Crystals, which are to be taken out, dried, and kept for use: By this last Operation the Salt is made more grateful, by reason the Lixiviate Taste of the Alcali is taken away. Or you may in the making the Salt of the first Preparation add a third Ingredient: Salt of Tartar vitriolate four ounces; dissolving them perfectly in the Water, which let be augmented to two quarts, being cold filter, and evaporate to dryness; so will you have a pleasing Cathartick Salt, which will operate in a small Dose.*

It powerfully opens all Obstructions of the Viscera, and pleasantly purges the Body of all hot, cholerick and sharp Humours, which many times causes Colicks, Gripings, and other Disorders. It kills Worms in the Stomach and Belly, is prevalent against Gouts, Rheumatisms, Scurvy, Dropsy, Rickets in Children, Green-sickness in Virgins, and Hypocondriack Melancholy. Dose from one Dram to two or three in warm Spring-water, or clear Posset-drink, or thin Water-gruel. It works as easily as the Patient can desire it, and may be taken two or three Times a Week.

XXIV. *Sal Volatile Oleosum*, Volatile Oily Salt.

Salmon.] *It is made after* Sylvius's *Method, and answers to his, both in its Form, Substance, Qualities, and Operations in every respect.*

It is a noble de Obstructor of Lungs; causing, almost upon the spot, a free and easy Breathing, to such as are scarcely able to draw their Breath. It is prevalent against the Vertigo, Apoplexy, Epilepsy, Lethargy, Carus, inveterate Head-achs,

Megrim, Stitches, Pleurisies, and Obstructions of the Lungs. It is incomparably good against Vapors, Hysterick Fits, Convulsions, Cramps, Palsies, and other like Distempers of the Head, Brain, Nerves, Lungs, Pleura and Womb, proceeding from cold and moist Causes. Dose from 15 Drops to 20, 25 or 30, according to Age, Sex, and Strength in a Glass of Wine, once, twice, or thrice a Day, as need requires.

XXV. *Balsamum Panaristum*, The best or most noble Balsam.

Salmon.] *Take choice Chio Turpentine thirty two ounces; Balsam Capivii twenty four ounces; Gum Elemi sixteen ounces; Balsams of Tolu and Peru, of each twelve ounces; choice Oil of Nutmegs by Expression eight ounces; extract of Flowers of Hypericon, made with Spirit of Wine to the Thickness of new Honey, eight ounces: Styrax Calamita extracted, Camphir, of each six ounces: Melt all in an open Glass Body, in a gentle Sand-Heat, or in Balneo, which done, add these following Chymical Oils,* viz. *Oil of Turpentine eight ounces; Oils of Citron-peels, Limons, Oranges & Sassafras, of each three ounces; of Amber, Angelica, Rue, Savin, of each an ounce and half: of Anise, Caraways, Lavender, Mint, and Penny-royal, of each an ounce; stir all together till they are perfectly mixt; take the whole out of the Sand or Balneo, and continue stirring till the Balsam is cold, then keep it in a Glass close stopt for use.*

It is one of the best of Balsams, and cures simple Wounds of the Muscles, Nerves and Tendons at one Intension, and many Times at one Application: It eases external Pains, as of the Gout, from a cold Cause; and cures Cramps and Convulsions. Inwardly taken, it gives present ease in the Colick, heals Ulcers in the Stomach, Lungs, or other Bowels, and is an excellent thing against Sand, Gravel, small gritty Stones, or Tartarous Matter in the Reins, Ureters or Bladder. It provokes Urine, gives ease in the Stranguary, cures a Gonorrhea, and stops the virulent Whites in Women. It is a thing of an universal Tendency for the curing most Diseases of the Head, Brain, Nerves, Bowels, Reins, Bladder and Womb.

XXVI. *Eclegma ad Laryngis Exulcerationem*, An Electuary for Ulcers of the Mouth and Throat.

Salmon.] *Take choice Honey clarified eight ounces; Madder-roots, commonly called Crop-madder, in very fine Pouder, four ounces; Roch Allom in fine Pouder two ounces: Mix them, and let them simmer over a gentle Fire, till the Mixture is of a good Scarlet Colour, which being cold put into a Gally-pot, and close cover it up for use.*

It quickly cures all Sores and Ulcers in the Gums, Mouth, Throat. or Gullet, and Wind-pipe; and eases the Pain, and strengthens a weak Back. It may be taken Morning and Night, and several Times a Day, as much as a small Chesnut upon a Knive's Point, letting it distill down the Throat very leisurely: And for the Pain and Weakness of the Back, a Spoonful of it may be given at a time, in a Glass of strong Ale, Tent, or Alicant.

XXVII. *Eclegma Stomachicum*, The Stomach Electuary.

Salmon.] *Take choice Barbadoes or Jamaica Green-ginger four pounds:*

pounds; beat it in a Wooden or Marble Mortar, till the Pulp becomes impalpable; add thereto choice Conſerve of Barberries one pound; Syrup of Green-ginger, or of Citron, or Limon, or Orange-peels half a pound: Mix them well together, and keep the Electuary in a Gally-pot, or Jar-glaſs cloſe tied over with a Hogs Bladder and Leather for uſe.

It is a noble Electuary, grateful to the Palate in the higheſt degree; it warms, comforts and ſtrengthens the Stomach, reſtores the Tone thereof being hurt, takes away Nauſeouſneſs, ſtops Vomiting, and cauſes a good Appetite and Digeſtion. It may be taken on a Knive's Point every Morning faſting, and the like at Bed-time, if need requires it; as alſo at any time of the Day if the Stomach is ill.

XXVIII. *Eclegma Sudorificum*, A Sweating Electuary.

Salmon.] *Take Mithridate four pound, or forty eight ounces; of our Cordial Pill, or Volatile Laudanum ſix ounces; choice Oil of Juniper-berries, Oil of Tartar per deliquium, of each three ounces; Oil of Sulphur rectified four ounces: firſt mix the Oils of Juniper and Tartar together, adding gradually the Oil of Sulphur, ſtirring them for ſome time; then add the Cordial Pill making one impalpable Maſs; after which put to the Mithridate, and mix ſo as to make an Electuary of a Congenerous Body.*

It is a noble Sudorifick, eaſes immediately all manner of intolerable Pains, in what part of the Body ſoever, ſtops Fluxes, and does wonders beyond moſt other Medicines, abating Fevers and cauſing Reſt, having the virtue of any other Laudanum. Doſe from ten Grains to a Scruple, half a Dram, or more, at Bed-time.

XXIX. *Poteſtates Antepilepticæ*, Powers againſt the Falling-ſickneſs.

Salmon.] *Take Powers of Amber a gallon; Ropey Wood-ſoot, eight ounces; Aſſa fœtida ſix ounces, in very ſmall bits: Mix, digeſt cold for a Month, ſhaking the Glaſs two or three Times a Day, and then keep it for uſe.*

It is a noble Medicament againſt the Falling-ſickneſs: I have cured ſeveral with it, almoſt to a Miracle, after they had come to a Maturity of Age, and had been afflicted therewith many Years. It cures alſo Vapors in Women, and Hyſterick Fits, beyond moſt other Medicaments, for that purpoſe. Doſe from half a Spoonful to a Spoonful in Water, or in Wine, or in Wine and Water, Morning and Evening, for ſeveral Days.

XXX. *Poteſtates Hyſtericæ*, The Powers againſt Fits of the Mother.

Salmon.] *Take choice Powers of Amber ſeven pound, Pouders of Harts-horn one pound: Mix, digeſt ſome Days, and keep the Mixture for uſe.*

The Title ſhews the uſe: It is a moſt potent Thing to ſuppreſs Vapors, and cure Fits of the Mother. Doſe (Morning and Evening, or in time of any Paroxyſm) from forty Drops to ſixty, or more, in a Glaſs of fair Spring-water, or in Wine, or in Wine and Water mixed together; and to be continued for ſome Weeks or Months, if the Diſeaſe has been of long ſtanding.

CHAP.

CHAP. II. *Of Hypochondriack Diseases in Men, and Hysterick in Women.*

I. WHen the Mind is disordered by some grievous Accident, the Animal Spirits run into irregular Motions; the Urine is sometimes limpid, and in good quantity; the Sick casts off all Hopes of Recovery, and fancy most dreadful Things to themselves.

Salmon.] The irregular Motions are according to the Greatness of the Accidents, and are much more vehement in Women than in Men, in whom it many Times causes first Vapors, than Fits: But the dreadful Apprehensions of being incurable, oftner seise on Men than on Women. In this case, the Sick ought to be first purged with *Tincture of Sena*, or *Tinctura aureæ novæ*, three or four several Times, as the Habit, Constitution and Strength will bear it, and afterwards the *Viscera* ought to be corroborated with some few Doses of *Eclegma Sudorificum*: If it affects with Vapors or Hysterick Fits, you must exhibit for some considerable time this Mixture. *Take Potestates Hystericæ 60 or 70 drops; volatile Salt of Amber seven grains; mix them for a Dose*, which give in a Glass of cold fair Spring or Well-water.

II. Whatsoever part of the Body the Disease doth affect, (and it affecteth many) presently the Symptoms that are proper to that Part appear; in the Head, the Apoplexy, which ends in a Palsy of one half of the Body, comes presently after Child-bearing; sometimes they are affected with Convulsions, that very much resemble the Epilepsie, and are commonly called the Fits of the Mother, in which the Belly and Entrails rise up towards the Throat

Salmon.] The Symptoms appear not only in that Part, but in several of the Parts adjacent. In the Head there may be rather a *Vertigo*, or *Megrim*, and then the *Impetus Mercurii Aurique* is to be given three or four Times, from 10 to 20 Grains, according as the Patient is in strength, and the Disease be recent: If the Disease is inveterate, it must be given to a much greater Dose: If a *Paralysis* seems to attend the ending of any of these Diseases, you must first purge with the *Pulvis Catharticus*, and then give for a Constancy *Sal Volatile Oleosum*, or the *Magistral Tincture*, which are to be continued Morning and Night for several Days. If Convulsions affect, the same *Magistral Tincture* is to be given every Morning, and the *Eclegma Sudorificum* every Night at Bed-time. If the Fits are Hysterick, use what was advised in the other Section. But if the Paroxysms seem to be Epileptick, with foaming at Mouth, give the *Potestates Antepilepticæ* in Cap. 1. Sect. 29. as there directed.

III. At other times they are miserably tormented with the Hysterical Prickings and Shootings, in which there is a violent Pain in the Head, which you may

may cover with your Thumb, the Sick in the mean time vomiting up green filthy Stuff or Choler, of the Colour of Leeks.

Salmon.] In this caſe, give once, twice or thrice, as you ſee occaſion, a Vomit, made of *Tartar Emetick*, from three to five or ſix Grains; ſhave off the Hair, and draw a Bliſter upon the very Place where the Pain is felt, and let it be kept running a pretty while: In the mean Seaſon, let the Patient take at Bed-time a Doſe of *Eclegma Sudorificum*, which continue till all the Hyſterick Prickings and Shootings are perfectly gone.

IV. The Paroxyſm doth ſometimes reſemble the Palpitation of the Heart, the Cough, the Colick and Iliack Paſſion, the Stone and Stoppage of Urine: It is attended with vehement Vomitings, and ſometimes with a Flux of the Belly.

Salmon.] You muſt every Morning give a Doſe of *Tinctura Magiſtralis*, and every Night at Bed-time a Doſe of the Author's *Liquid Laudanum*, or *Eclegma Sudorificum*, and at ten a-Clock in the Day-time, and about four in the Afternoon give a Doſe of *Julapium Cardiacum*, or ſome few Drops of my *Compound Tincture of Coral*, the Compoſition of which you may ſee in the firſt Part of my *Phylaxa Medicinæ, cap.* 4.

V. Outwardly in the muſculous Fleſh it cauſes ſometimes Pains and Aches, and ſometimes Swellings.

Salmon.] Anoint the Parts very well with *Balſamum Panariſtum*; or bathe them well with *Powers of Amber* Morning and Night, purging the Body every other Day with *Pulvis Cathartic-cus*, or with *Pilulæ Panarcæ*, where the Patient cannot take the Pouder: And after purging, the Sick may at Night take ſome Drops of *Liquid Laudanum* to conciliate Reſt.

VI. in the Legs it is like a Dropſy, nor (which is admirable) doth it leave the Teeth untouch'd.

Salmon.] Theſe Symptoms ſeem to be derived from the Scurvy, and therefore you ought to adminiſter Antiſcorbuticks; as, the *Apozema aperiens & Antiſcorbuticum*, and as a Diet, the *Cereviſia purgativa*: and now and then between whiles, to purge with *Pilulæ Panarcæ*, which is indeed a moſt excellent thing in a Dropſy, and will in this caſe carry off the morbifick Cauſe to a Wonder.

VII. The Back is often cruelly pain'd; and almoſt always the external Parts are ſo cold, that a dead Body is not more

Salmon.] Bathe the Back Morning and Night for ſome Days, with *Powers of Amber or Turpentine:* or anoint two or three times with *Oil of Turpentine*; and take inwardly every Night at Bed-time *Eclegma Sudorificum*; and every Morning a Doſe of *Powers of Turpentine* in ſome proper Vehicle, or the *Tinctura Magiſtralis*, which is indeed an excellent Thing.

VIII. The Sick break out fooliſhly into exceſſive Laughter and Tears for no Reaſon; and are ſometimes troubled with Spitting to ſuch a Degree, as were enough to make one believe, that they had been in a Courſe of Salivation.

Salmon.]

Salmon.] Give every Night at Bed-time (Universals being first premised) a Dose of *Liquid Laudanum*, or of *Eclegma Sudorificum*, or of our *Guttæ Vitæ*, none of which will be given without the desired Effects; and every Morning fasting let the Patient take 40, 50 or 60 Drops of *Potestates Hysericæ* in a Glass of Wine, and fast an Hour or more after the same. If the Body is costive, you may exhibit this Clyster. *Take Mutton-broth, or Posset-drink a pint; brown Sugar a quarter of a pound: mix, dissolve, and give it something more than Blood-warm.* If the Spitting yet continues, you may change the former Opiates, and give *Tinctura Mirabilis*, or *Eclegma fortius incrassans*, and when these have been given for some time, to give them over, and use the former again; for that Nature does many Times delight in Variety, or Change of Medicaments.

IX. Hysterical Pains, whatsoever Part they affect, leave for the most part a Tenderness behind them, so that they cannot endure to be touch'd, and the Flesh seems as if it had been beaten with Sticks.

Salmon.] This Tenderness is lodged in the nervous Fibres of the Muscles; and therefore bathing the Places thus affected with *Powers of Amber*, or *Turpentine*, or *Rosemary*, or *Lavender*, and continuing their use for some time, they become perfectly freed from this troublesome Disaffection.

X. Let eight Ounces of Blood be taken away. Apply the Plaister of *Galbanum* to the Navel: And next Morning let the sick Person begin to use the following Pills.

Salmon.] Let not Blood without there be an apparent Plethory, nor in such as are vehemently fat; nor where there is a great pining and wasting, or where there is an exceeding lowness of the Spirits. And as to the Plaister, if it be made with *equal Parts of* Ammoniacum, *and an eighth part of* Assafœtida, it will be so much the better.

XI. *Take the Pills called* Cochiæ *the greater, two drams*; Castoreum *pouder'd, two grains*; *Balsam of* Peru, *three drops. Make twelve Pills*; of which take four every Morning, or every other Day, according to Strength, about four or five in the Morning, sleeping after them.

Salmon.] These Pills are much better. *Take* Barbadoes *Aloes (not Succotrine) two scruples and a half, of our Volatile* Laudanum *fourteen grains*; *mix, and make a mass of Pills, with a few drops of Balsam of* Peru, *for six Doses, to be taken every Night going to Bed, or every other Night, according to the Strength of the Patient.* They will work pleasantly the next Day in the Afternoon, and in the mean Season lay the Vapours and Fumes from the Womb or Hypochondres, and cause Quietness: There is no better a Pill for this purpose in the World.

XII. *Take Rue water four ounces, compound Briony-water two ounces,* Castoreum *tied in a Knot, and hung in the Glass, half a dram*; *Sugarcandy a sufficient quantity.* Of this take four or five Spoonfulls in every Fit. After the Pills take what follows.

Salmon.] Or thus. *Take Milk-water, Simple or Alexiterick, four ounces*; Aquæ Bezoarticæ *two ounces,*

ounces, Tincture of Caſtor half an ounce, Syrup of Popies enough to ſweeten it, which give as the former.

XIII. *Take Filings of Steel eight grains, and with a ſufficient quantity of Extract of Wormwood make three Pills*; let it be taken betimes in the Morning, and repeated at five in the Afternoon, for a Month, drinking after them a Draught of Wormwood-Wine.

Salmon.] *Take Filings of Steel three ounces, boil them in fair Water a quart, mix with* Cremor Tartari *three ounces; boil to dryneſs, then Pouder finely, and put it into White-wine three pints, let it ſtand three Weeks, or a Month, ſhaking it every Day, being well ſettled, decant the clear for uſe.* This the Sick may take two, three, or four Spoonfuls of at a time, in a Glaſs of Ale or White-wine, at Night going to Bed.

XIV. If a Bolus be more acceptable; *Take Conſerve of* Roman *Wormwood, and Conſerve of the yellow part of Oranges, of each an ounce*; *candied* Angelica, *candied Nutmegs, Treacle of* Andromachus, *of each half an ounce*; *compound Pouder of Cuckow-point, or* Wake-Robin, *three drams*; *candied Ginger two drams, with a ſufficient quantity of the Syrup of the Juice of Citrons, or (in want of that) Syrup of Oranges, make an Electuary. Take of this Electuary two drams, Filings of Steel eight grains, and with a ſufficient quantity of Syrup of Oranges make a Bolus*; which is to be taken Morning and Evening, drinking after it a Draught of Wormwood-Wine, or ſix Spoonfuls of the following Infuſion.

Salmon.] Or every Night going to Bed take this Electuary. *Take Conſerve of* Roman *Wormwood two drams, Syrup of Limons half a dram,* Crocus Martis aperitive *half a dram, Nutmegs in Pouder ten grains*; *mix for a Doſe*; drinking after it a Glaſs of Purl Royal, as they call it, which is *Canary mixt with Wormwood Rheniſh*: And every Morning let the Patient take a good Knives-point full, or as much as a large Cheſnut of *Eclegma Stomachicum*, which may be again repeated at eleven a Clock before Dinner, and at four a Clock in the Afternoon; drinking then after it a Glaſs of *Vinum Chalybeatum.* And once a Week let the Sick, according as their Strength will bear it, purge with *Pulvis Catharticus*; or if the Legs, or any other Parts ſwell, with *Pilulæ Panarcæ*; which will not go without their wiſhed for Effects. It is abſolutely neceſſary, that after the Obſtructions of the *Viſcera* (of which kind ſoever) are removed, and their *Meatus* opened, that the morbifick Cauſe or Matter be duly carried off by proper Catharticks, leſt Nature of her ſelf ſhould be too weak, or defective in performing the ſame. Thoſe who cannot take Pills or Pouders may uſe the *Potio Communis Purgativa in Cap.* I. *Sect.* I. aforegoing.

XV. *Take Roots of* Angelica, *Elecampane, and Maſterwort, of each one ounce*; *common Wormwood, leſſer Centory, white Horehound, and Germander, of each one handful: the Peels of two Oranges ſliced*; *pour upon them ſo much Canary or Sherry as will overtop them two Inches, and ſtrain it at time of uſing it.*

Salmon.] You may give it in *Scurvygraſs-wine*, if it be a cold Conſtitution,

Constitution, otherwise in this Mixture: *Take White-wine one pound, pure Nitre two scruples: mix and dissolve, which sweeten with white Sugar.*

Our Author designed the Composition in this Section for a Cordial Stomachick, and it is a pretty good one: But in my Opinion this following is much better. *Take Cortex Peruvianus in gross Pouder, half a pound; Winters Cinnamon in gross Pouder six ounces; Jamaica Pepper bruised, Virginia Snake-root, of each four ounces; Nutmegs bruised two ounces; put all into choice Canary, a gallon; digest cold for fourteen Days, shaking the Glass well three or four Times a Day:* And then being clear'd, let the Patient drink a Sack-glass full of it, as before directed, or else every Morning fasting: And if need be, half an Hour before Dinner.

XVI. Or, to delicate Persons, the Filings may be given by way of Pouder, as follows:

Take Filings of Steel in fine Pouder one ounce, compound Pouder of Cuckupint, *or* Wake-Robin, *six drams; Coriander-seed prepar'd, Seeds of Anise and sweet Fennel, of each half an ounce; biting Cinnamon, red Coral prepar'd, of each three drams, Nutmegs two drams; beat them all to a very fine* Pouder, *to which add of the finest white Sugar the Weight of all the rest.* Take half a Dram of this Pouder in a Spoon, twice a Day, four Days successively, and then a whole Dram twice every Day for a Medicinal Month, or forty Days, drinking after it six Spoonfuls of the following Julep, or of Wormwood-Wine.

Salmon.] Or thus. *Take Filings of Steel in fine Powder an ounce, Nutmegs in fine Pouder twelve drams, Winter's Cinnamon in fine Pouder eight drams; Ginger in fine Pouder four drams; Cloves, Aniseeds, of each two drams, in fine Pouder; double refin'd Sugar in fine Pouder, five ounces: Mix them well together in an Iron Mortar.* Dose a Spoonful of this Pouder Night and Morning, for a Month or six Weeks together, in any proper Vehicle, drinking after it a Sack-glass full of our former Medicinal Canary, or of some of the following Juleps.

XVII. *Take Milk-water twelve ounces, compound Gentian-water four ounces, Wormwood-water of the greater Composition two ounces, white Sugar a sufficient quantity; make a Julep.* Or,

Take half a pint of Rhenish Wormwood-wine, compound Gentian-water two ounces, Syrup of Clove-gilliflowers one ounce; make a Julep.

Salmon.] Or this. *Take steeled Wine a pint, Milk-water half a pint, Syrup of Citron-peels enough to sweeten it.*

Or this. *Take Madera-wine a pint, Wormwood-Rhenish half a pint, Scurvygrass-water ten ounces, Syrup of Violets, enough to make it pleasant.* Or thus: *Take the* Peruvian *Canary a pint, choice Tent half a pint, Syrup of Citron-peels, enough to make it pleasant; mix them, to drink after the former Pouder.*

XVIII. *Take Myrrh, elect* Galbanum, *and* Assa-fœtida, *of each one dram,* Castoreum *half a dram, with a sufficient quantity of the Balsam of* Peru, *make them up into Pills, twelve to a dram;* of which take three every Night, drinking after them three or four Spoonfuls of Bryony-water, during the whole Course of the Cure.

Sal-

Salmon.] The Pills of *Laudanum*, at Sect. 11. aforegoing, are much exceeding theſe; though theſe are a good Medicine too.

Or thus: *Take* Aſſa-fœtida, Ammoniacum, Galbanum, *of each a dram*; Labdanum, *Balſam of* Tolu, *Volatile Salt of Amber, of each half a dram; and with Balſam of* Peru *a ſufficient quantity, make all up into a maſs of Pills.* Doſe from half a Dram to a Dram. Or thus: *Take of the whole maſs, as laſt made up, half an ounce; of our Volatile* Laudanum *a dram: mix, and make a maſs for Pills*; of which let the Sick take at Bed-time, from ten to twenty Grains.

XIX. If theſe Pills purge, uſe thoſe that follow.

Take Caſtoreum *one dram, Volatile Salt of Amber half a dram, with a ſufficient quantity of Extract of Rue, make four and twenty Pills*; of which take three every Night, drinking after them three or four Spoonfuls of the Hyſterical Julep.

Salmon.] Or thus: *Take volatile Salts of Amber and Hartshorn, of each a dram*; Ammoniacum, Caſtoreum, *of each half a dram; opening Crocus of Iron two ſcruples, and with Mithridate a ſufficient quantity, make Pills.* Doſe a Dram every Night, if for a Woman; half a Dram, if for a Boy or Girl.

XX. Spirit of Hartſhorn given frequently to ſixteen or eighteen Drops, is of very good uſe.

Salmon.] Or you may give our *Spiritus Antiaſthmaticus* to forty or fifty Drops, in a Glaſs of Water, or of Wine and Water; or twenty or twenty five Drops of *Sal Volatile Oleoſum*, in a Glaſs of White *Lisbon*-wine, the uſe of which in a very ſhort time will make a ſignal Alteration of the Body of the Patient for the better.

XXI. But if the Diſtemper doth not give way to theſe Medicines, then take the following Pills.

Take Troches of Myrrh pouder'd one ſcruple, Balſam of Sulphur terebinthinated four drops; with a ſufficient quantity of Gum Ammoniac diſſolv'd, make four Pills; which muſt be taken Morning and Evening, drinking after them four or five Spoonfuls of the Hyſterical Julep, with twelve Drops of Spirit of Hartſhorn.

Salmon.] Or this rather: *Take Myrrh in fine Pouder two drams*; Aſſa-fœtida *half a dram; with Turpentine Balſam of Sulphur; make Pills for five Doſes.* We think not ſo well of diſſolved *Amoniacum*, becauſe Pills made up with that Gum diſſolved, if they once grow dry, will never diſſolve in the Stomach, or have any Operation in the Belly.

XXII. The *Antiſcorbutick Electuary*, with the Water there deſcribed, is good alſo in this Diſeaſe; ſo alſo the corroborating Electuary, with the Addition of *Conſerve of Garden Scurvygraſs one ounce, compound Pouder of* Aron *ſix drams*, drinking after it the fore-mentioned Water.

Salmon.] This Electuary is ſingular. *Take Conſerve of Garden Scurvygraſs, or of Watercreſſes, an ounce; fine Pouder of Muſtard-ſeed ten drams; Syrup of Juice of Garden-creſſes, enough to bring the Electuary to a Conſiſtence*; of which the Patient may take at a Time as much as a ſmall Cheſnut upon a Knive's Point

Mineral

now and then. Or this: *Take Conserve of Horse-radish Roots an ounce, Conserve of Brooklime half an ounce, Pouder of Aron-roots and Master-wort, of each five drams; mix them.* This you may give as the former, and in the same quantity. Or this: *Take Conserve of Garden-cresses one ounce, Syrup of Juice of Scurvygrass half an ounce; Aron-roots, Mustard-seed, Masterwort-roots, of each in fine Pouder three drams, mix them to be given as before.*

XXIII. But if all these Medicines prove unprofitable, you must have Recourse to the Waters that partake of Iron; and if these also are ineffectual, to those that are *Sulphureous*, such as are the *Bath*-Waters.

Salmon.] Or you may give the *Magistery of Tartar*, the preparation of which you may see in our *Pharm. Bateana, lib.* 1. *cap.* 9. *sect.* 8. § 5, 6, 7, 8. which may be given from ten Grains to twenty, or half a Dram, in any proper Vehicle: Or *Sennertus* his *Magistery of Tartar*, the making of which you have in the *same Chapter and Section, at* § 9. *to* § 25. and may be given from ten Grains to twenty, in Veal or Chicken-broth, every Night going to Bed, and every Morning fasting. If these Things prove too weak, or will do nothing, then you may exhibit *Tinctura Armoniaci* in our *Pharm. Bateana, lib.* 1. *cap.* 7. *sect.* 5. from six Drops to twelve in any convenient Vehicle: Or rather that of *Le Febure*, in the same Place, made of the *Vitriol of Mars*, which may be given from ten to thirty Drops, in Broth, Wine, or other proper Vehicle. This Tincture as it resolves all Tartar in Man's Body, and opens all Obstructions of the *Viscera*; so it no way offends the Stomach, as many of the Preparations of *Mars* do; but, on the contrary, it strengthens it, and cleanses it from all Tartarous and Viscous Humors, which for the most part cause the Scurvy, Hypochondriack Melancholy, Disaffections of the Spleen, Gout, Stone, Jaundice, Dropsy, Rheumatism, *&c.*

XXIV. As to the use of the Mineral Waters, these Things may be observed. If any evil Symptom appears, which may be imputed to the drinking of the Waters, then you must abstain from them till the Symptom disappears.

Salmon.] Or if the Waters agree not, as might be expected, you may in this place give *Sal Vitrioli Catharticum*, (made of the *Vitriol of Iron*, as we have taught in our *Pharm. Bateana, lib.* 1. *cap.* 10. *sect.* 61.) which may be given from half a Dram to a Dram, to Men or Women: but fourteen grains to twenty, or half a Dram, or two Scruples, to Children, and such as are bigger; and it may be given in thin Water-gruel, or Mutton-broth, or Posset-drink; and during the Operation two or three Quarts of warm Broth, or Posset-drink, ought to be drank. Or you may mix this Salt with fair Water, putting into a Gallon of it an Ounce, or two Ounces of it. If you put in but an Ounce, the Patient may take for a Dose (according to their Age and Strength) from half a Pint to a Pint; but if you put in two Ounces of the Salt, then half the former quantity will do. By this means you may see that an artificial Mineral-

Mineral Water may be made, much exceeding thoſe which are drank at the Wells, which may be made more or leſs purging, according to the quantity of the Salt, more or leſs which you put into it.

XXV. And their uſe may be continued for ſix Weeks at leaſt, or rather two Months. Eat now and then candid Ginger, or Caraway Comfits, to warm the Stomach. You may alſo take three of the Hyſterical Pills the firſt Ten Nights, drinking after them four or five Spoonfuls of the Hyſterical Julep.

Salmon.] *Eaſt-India* or *Barbadoes Green Ginger* is much to be preferred before our *Engliſh Candid Ginger* of the Shops ; for as it is done whilſt it is green, it retains much more of the Vegetable Volatile Salt.

Or if you like it better, you may give the Patient our *Eclegma Stomachicum*, deſcribed in *cap.* 1. *ſect.* 29. of this Book, which being uſed for ſome Time, will be found a moſt admirable Thing to warm, comfort and ſtrengthen the Stomach, and other *Viſcera*, depraved by cold and viſcous Humors.

XXVI. The *Bath* Waters muſt be drank two Days, and then you may bathe with them the third, proceeding thus alternately ſix Weeks or two Months.

Salmon.] But if the Patient is of the Female Sex, and ſubject to Hyſterick Fits, or Vapors, the drinking the *Bath* Waters will be of no good Conſequence to the Sick ; but the bathing in them will be very pernicious, as I can eaſily prove, by many Examples ; Nor indeed are they good for Men, who are apt to have Vapors aſcending up into their Heads.

XXVII. If the Steel heat the Body too much, then during the uſe of it, drink every fourth Morning four Pints of Mineral Purging Waters; which though they move the Belly, yet cauſe no *Cathæreſis*, as the purging Medicines of the Shops commonly do.

Salmon.] Though I have uſed *Steel* very much, and very often, yet I never obſerved it to heat the Body or Bowels, as our Author ſeems here to hint : But, however, if it agrees not, nor yet the Spring or Natural Mineral Waters, the Patient may eaſily have recourſe to thoſe Artificial Mineral Waters of which we ſpoke a little above, at *Sect.* 24. uſing the ſame as the Age and Strength of the Patient and other Accidents will permit.

XXVIII. * If the Steel alſo induces any great Trouble, *Laudanum* may be given every Night for ſome time, mixt with ſome Hyſterick Water.

Salmon.] You may give a *Liquid Laudanum*, prepared with *Oil or Spirit of Sulphur*, or our *Eclegma Sudorificum*, both which are moſt excellent Things, and will certainly never go without their deſired Effects.

XXIX. * If from the length of the Diſeaſe the Patient's Strength ſeems to be broken and decay'd, bleeding and purging are forbidden, and the Cure is immediately to be begun with Chalybeats ; where the Symptoms are more gentle, you may well enough bleed, and move the Belly for three or four Days ; after which you may

give the Hysterick Pills, Morning and Evening, for ten Days.

Salmon.] Bleeding in all Cases in this Disease is pernicious, but due Purging with Specifick Cathartick, according to Strength, may be very beneficial. The *Pulvis Cathartic*us is a most excellent Thing of it self; but if it is made more Specifick, by adding to it twenty or thirty Grains of *Sal Vitrioli Cathartic*um, it will certainly do Wonders: Then at Night, going to Bed, you may give a Dose of *Eclegma Sudorificum*, which may be repeated as often as you see occasion.

XXX. * Where there is extream Pain, with Vomiting, and a vehement Diarrhæa, or Looseness, you may give *Laudanum*, and afterwards Things to cheer the Spirits: But if the Strength will permit, before the use of the *Laudanum*, you may let the Sick Blood; also a Purge may be given, more-especially if the Patient be strong, and of a Sanguine Constitution of Body.

Salmon.] Where there is such a vehement *Diarrhæa* and *Vomiting*, with much *Pain*, it is to be feared that the Stomach is very foul; and then in this case, give a Dose of *Emeticum Commune*, of *Tartar Emetick*, with good Regiment: After this is done, at Night, give a Dose of our *Volatile Laudanum*, which will induce gentle Rest, and strengthen the Sick: The next Day exhibit *Pulvis Cathartic*us, or *Potio Communis*, if Strength will permit it; otherwise give the *Laudanum* for two or three Days running, and afterwards *the Purge*; then assume the *Laudanum* again, and continue it as long as need requires.

XXXI. * But if the Patient be of a weak Habit of Body, it will suffice to cleanse the Stomach, which may be done by taking a Gallon of Posset-drink, which being given by Draughts, may presently be cast forth again by Vomiting; after which a large Dose of *Venice Treacle*, or *Orvietan*, may be given, with a few Spoonfuls of some Cordial Spirit or Water, mix'd with a few Drops of *Liquid Laudanum*.

Salmon] Or the Vomiting may be performed better with *Carduus Posset-drink*; and where the Patient is very weak, with *Simple warm Water*, drinking five or six Quarts of it, till the Stomach is throughly cleansed. At Night give a Dose of *Mithridate*, or of our *Eclegma Sudorificum*, or some few Grains of our *New London Treacle*, with a few Spoonfuls of our *Aqua Bezoartica*, or a Glass of Canary, with 25 Drops of our *compound Tincture of Coral*.

XXXII. * If the Sick shall have vomited some time before, and that no further use can be made of Emeticks without Danger, you are then to give *Laudanum* without delay, and in such a Dose as may be able to quiet or repress the Symptoms, and that after every Vomit, so often to be repeated, as the very best Thing either in a solid Form, or in a Liquid, in a small quantity of a Vehicle, *viz.* some few Drops in one Spoonful of the stronger Cinnamon-water, the Sick in the mean while repairing to their Rest, and keeping their Head quiet and still.

Salmon] In this Case *Liquid Laudanum* is much the best, because it immediately, or upon the

the Spot, affects the Stomach, and other *Viscera*; and it may be given in a Spoonful of *Cinnamon-water* mixed with a small Glass of Canary, or white *Lisbon* Wine; which is to be continued so long till the Sick has attained to a good degree of Strength.

XXXIII. * The Symptoms being thus mastered, the use of the *Laudanum* is to be continued Morning and Evening for some few Days.

Salmon.] Not for some few Days only, lest the Symptoms should recur; but for many Days, it may be twenty, or more, as the occasion requires, that a sure Foundation of Health may be laid; and the next Morning, every Day, let the Patient drink fasting a Glass of the *Peruvian* or *Bitter Canary*, described at Sect. 15. aforegoing of this Chapter.

XXXIV. * These two Things are carefully to be noted, that when once (after the Evacuation) we begin to make use of *Laudanum*, it is to be taken in such a Dose, and that so often to be repeated, till all the Symptoms shall be vanquish'd; and that such a space of Time may be between each Dose, that the Operation of the former may be determined or pass'd off before we attempt the giving of another. The other thing is, that when with the *Laudanum* we come to attack the Disease, nothing is to be disturbed, nothing to be evacuated, though by the most gentle Clyster.

Salmon.] The Advice concerning the Method of taking *Laudanum* is very excellent, and ought to be observed and followed by every Practiser of our Art: But with this note also, that it be at first used in a very small Dose, and afterwards gradually increased, as the Strength or Weakness of the Patient, and the necessity of the Disease imports. But the latter Direction of our Author is to be received, *cum grano Salis*; for if there is a vehement Constipation of the Bowels, and it continues for some time, a Clyster must necessarily be given. This is best. *Take Mutton-broth a pint; brown Sugar four ounces; mix, dissolve, and exhibit it warm.*

XXXV. * *Venice-Treacle* is often and long to be given, it is a great Remedy in this and many other Diseases, arising from a defect of Heat, and hurt of the concoctive Faculty.

Salmon.] I am apt to believe that *Caloris*, in the Latin Text, ought to have been the Ablative Case, and then the Translation from Heat and Hurt in the Concoctive Faculty is good: And my reason is this, That I never observed, in all the Course of my Practice, but a Hypochondriack *Flatus* proceeded always from Heat of the Stomach, or other *Viscera*; because it is impossible that such a *Flatus* can be raised without a preternatural Heat, which by *Venice-Treacle* or *Mithridate* is effectually allay'd.

Salmon.] If to every Dose of the *Treacle* there is added Volatile Salt of *Amber*. gr. viii, or x, or gr. v, or vi of *Sal Armoniack*, it will be more than of double Virtue.

If the Patient seems to be afflicted with Epileptick Convulsions or Explosions of the Nerves, then ten or twelve Grains of volatile *Sal Cornu Cervi*,

will be much better than the former; but above them all, we commend the Volatile Salt of Vipers, which to a Man or Woman may be given to twelve Grains; which in a few Minutes penetrates through the whole Body.

XXXVI. * If the Sick is not of a thin or cholerick Habit of Body, *Spanish* Wines, as *Canary*, *Sherry*, &c. impregnated by infusion with *Gentian*, *Angelica*, *Wormwood*, *Centory*, yellow of *Orange-peels*, and other strengthning Things, are wonderfully profitable, some Spoonfuls of them being taken thrice a Day.

Salmon.] But above all, any of these Wines being impregnated with the *Cortex Peruvianus* in gross Pouder two Parts; *Virginia Snake-roots* one part, will be incomparable, and indeed transcend any Infusion of the Ingredients our Author has named, though they are indeed very good in their kinds: And I am sure, if this Advice be put in practice, both Physician and Patient will afterwards give me Thanks; for I faithfully believe these two Vegetable Ingredients are the greatest Stomachicks in Nature, and transcend most other Things of that kind.

XXXVII. * The Jesuit's Pouder being given Morning and Evening to a Scruple for some Weeks, chiefly in Hysterick Convulsions, is of wonderful Efficacy.

Salmon.] Here our Author comes to the Test; and indeed he is admirably right in the main of the Prescription; and therefore the aforementioned impregnated *Peruvian Wine*, used Dietetically, must be of extraordinary Force. Those that cannot take the Pouder, may take the *Tincture* or *Infusion*; and those squeamish Stomachs which cannot take them, may take the *Extract made up into Pills.*

XXXVIII. * In thin and bilious Habits of Body, a Milk-dyet may be used, chiefly in an Hysterick Cholick, if they can away with the Trouble which it causes for some few Days, to wit, the curdling in the Stomach, where if it be to conserve, and sustain the Strength of the Body, the less may suffice.

Salmon.] If Milk should curdle in the Stomach, it ought to be taken sweetned with double refined Sugar, which much hinders it; or if it should yet curdle, the Curd would be short, tender and soft, and become apt to nourish. But if the Patient cannot away with Milk, then I commend *Broth of Eels*, which is indeed an admirable Thing; so also *Broth made of Knuckles of Mutton and Veal*, which sweeten the *Juices*, and nourish very much withal; and where greater Nourishment is required, it may be thickned with *choice Rice*; or if the Sick likes not Rice, with *Hulled or Pearled Barley.*

XXXIX. * Lastly, nothing does so well comfort and confirm, or restore the Blood and Spirits, as almost every Day to ride long and much on Horseback; riding in a Coach or Chariot, though they want not their Success, being less advantagious or profitable.

Salmon.] And if the Sick is able to do it, walking much on Foot is very profitable; so also playing

playing at Bowls, Leaping or Jumping, Running, and the like; and when tired to drink a Glass of good Tent, or Alicant, mixt with a third part of Milk-water. And at returning Home to take a Dish or two of well made Chocolet, made only with Water.

CHAP. III. *Of the Mortal Fever in the Years* 1661, 62, 63, 64.

I. IF the Sick be young, a Vein must be open'd in the Arm; and the same Day, some Hours after, or the next Day, two Hours after a light Dinner, let him take a Vomit of the Infusion of *Crocus Metallorum*, and when that has done working, drink a sleeping Draught, such as that which follows.

Take Black Cherry-water an ounce and a half, Plague-water half an ounce, Liquid Laudanum *sixteen Drops; mix them for a Draught.*

Salmon.] The best of all Antimonial Vomits, and indeed of any kind of Vomit whatsoever, is the *Tartar Emetick*, which may be given from gr. i. to gr. vi. according to the Age and Strength of the Patient; it is safe, and if the Sick be plentifully supplied with Posset-drink, works easily; and when it has done working upwards, then moves the Belly two or three times gently downwards.

But for want of it you may take *Emeticum Commune*, in *cap.* 1. *sect.* 2. according to the Directions there given: Or an ounce of *Vinum Antimoniale* or *Benedictum*, more or less, according to the Age and Strength of the Patient, observing always to keep the Stomach full of Posset-drink, Gruel or Broth, to facilitate the working, and make the Operation the more easy.

II. From this to the eleventh or twelfth Day, the following Clyster is to be exhibited every Morning.

Take of the common Decoction for a Clyster one pint (or the like quantity of Cows Milk) brown Sugar, and Syrup of Violets, of each two ounces. Make a Clyster.

Salmon.] For vulgar Use, in these Cases, no Clyster exceeds this. *Take Posset-drink one pint, brown Sugar four ounces; mix, dissolve, and exhibit it warm.*

And if there is a Costiveness of Body, it is not much material at what time of the Day the Clyster is given; but this ought always to be considered, that it be given so long before Bed-time, that it may have perfectly done working first; after the working is over, give the Patient this following Draught. *Take Canary four ounces, Milk-water two ounces, Syrup of Juice of Citrons one ounce; mix them.*

III. After that Day, you may let his Belly be constipated, that so the Morbifick Matter may the sooner be concocted, for which Purpose also moderate Cordials may be given during these last Days, to very good purpose: As,

IV. *Take Pouder of Crabs-claws compound fourteen Grains, Electuary* de Ovo *half a scruple, with sufficient quantity of Syrup of Clove-*

Gilliflowers, make a Bolus, which may be taken every eight Hours, drinking after it five or six Spoonfuls of the following Julep.

Salmon.] This is very Cordial. *Take Eclegma Stomachicum half an ounce: Bezoar Mineral eight grains, with Syrup of Citron Peels a little, make a Bolus*, which may be taken thrice a Day. Or thus. *Take Eclegma Stomachicum three drams; Cochinele in fine Pouder fifteen grains; Bezoar Mineral seven grains; Saffron in Pouder four grains: Syrup of Citron Peels a little. Mix and make a Bolus*, to be taken twice a Day, drinking after either of them the following Julep.

V. *Take Milk-water, Black Cherry-water, of each three ounces; Plague-water, and Syrup of Clove-Gilliflowers, of each one ounce; mix them, and make a Julep*, or such like.

Salmon.] *Crabs-eyes* are much before *Crabs-claws*, having a more singular Operation by Urine, by which way the Morbifick Matter is in some measure carried off. *Take Crabs-eyes levigated twelve grains, Oriental Bezoar*, Terra Sigillata, *of each seven grains; Cochinele, Bezoar Mineral, of each five grains; mix, and with Juice of Alkermes make a Bolus*, to be given as the former. The Julep may be this: *Take Spring-water six ounces, Salt of Tartar Vitriolate a scruple, Syrup of Violets, our* Aqua Bezoartica, *of each one ounce.* Mix them.

VI. If you carefully observe this Order, you will about the fifteenth Day perceive (as well by the laudable Breaking of the Urine, as by the manifest Remission of all the Symptoms) that it is time to exhibit the common Purging Potion, in *Cap.* 1. *Sect.* 1. aforegoing.

Salmon.] They that cannot take *Potions* may take *Pills*, such as our *Family Pills*, than which there are not many better Medicines in the World: Or the *Pulvis Catharticus* in *Cap.* 1. *Sect.* 20. aforegoing: But among all the Catharticks proper in this Case, none exceeds the *Sal Mirabile*, which may be given and repeated three or four several times, or as often as the Physician sees need.

VII. * Many Times it happens, but chiefly to old People, that though the Fever is cured, and the Body cleansed, yet notwithstanding the Patient remains very weak, sometimes having a Cough, sometimes a Reaching and Hauking, spitting forth plenty of Glutinous and Viscous Phlegm. In this case the Patient may drink old *Malaga* Wine, with a Toast in it.

Salmon.] I do not deny that where such Weakness remains after the Fever is profligated, but a Glass of choice Wine, as of *Malaga* or *Tent*, with a Toast in it may be given, as also Gelly of Hartshorn, Chocolet, *&c.* but in case of a Cough or Catarh, the Patient ought to take every Night going to Bed, till a perfect Restauration is accomplished, a Dose of *Laudanum* in that Form they like best, as *Eclegma Sudorificum*, our *New London Treacle*, our *Volatile* or *Specifick Laudanum*, *Liquid Laudanum*, or our *Gutta Vitæ*, &c.

VIII. * If the Iliack Passion comes upon the Sick, give this. *Take Juice of Limons one spoonful, Salt of Wormwood one scruple, mix them*, which give Morning and Evening. In the times between

give

give some Spoonfuls of Mint-water without Sugar, twice in ever Hour

Salmon.] This much exceeds it. *Take Chymical Oil of Mint fifteen drops, which mix well with white Sugar, and give it in a Glass of Wine.* Or this: *Take Ætherial Oil of Turpentine from a scruple to two drams; mix it in like manner with white Sugar, and give it in a Glass of white* Lisbon. Or thus: *Take Chymical Oil of Limons or Oranges from a scruple to a dram; Balsam of Peru half a Dram; mix them well; then mix again with white Sugar, and give it in a Glass of Wine, mixt with an equal quantity of Mint-water.*

IX. * Whilst these Things are doing, let a live Kitling or Puppy-dog be laid and kept continually to the naked Belly; then after two or three Days, when the Pain and Vomiting shall have ceased, give *Pil. Cochiæ maj.* one Dram, dissolved in Mint-water, not removing the Kitlings, or young Whelps, before the use of the Pills.

Salmon.] This of our Author's is a very odd Prescription, nor is any thing more intended by it, than keeping the Parts warm: Anointing all the Belly over with pure *Oil of Turpentine*, or bathing it often with choice *Powers of Amber*, is much better, especially, if afterwards a Plaister of *Oxycroceum* upon Leather, be applied upon the same; moreover the *Chymical Oil of Savin* to anoint withal, or the *Powers thereof*, to bathe the Belly often withal, are inferior to none of the other Things.

X. * To prevent the return of the Disease, you must continue the use of the Water aforesaid for a long time, applying to the Belly a double Flannel, to keep or defend it from cold.

Salmon.] Or you may instead thereof give a Dose of *Liquid Laudanum* (to be continued as long as need requires) in a Glass of the bitter or *Peruvian Wine*, the Preparation of which we have taught in Chap. 2. Sect. 15. aforegoing; or, for want of it, in a Glass of *Madera, Sherry*, or *White Lisbon-Wine.* And instead of the double Flannel (if it is a Woman) a Plaister of *Galbanum* will be much better, or *Emplastrum Hystericum* in Cap. 1. Sect. 11. aforegoing of this Book; or (if a Man) *Emplastrum Oxycroceum* spread upon Leather.

CHAP. IV. *Of the Pestilential Fever of the Years* 1665, 1666.

I. WHen the Sick has been let Blood in his Bed, let him be covered all over with Cloths, and his Forehead bound about with a piece of Woollen Cloth; and then if he doth not Vomit, let some Medicine to procure Sweat be exhibited to him.

Salmon.] *Barbet* advises against Letting Blood in all Pestilential Fevers; and his Advice was good, for 'tis generally Fatal

His Words are these. *The* French, Italians, Spaniards *and* Portugals (*great Blood-letters*)

will I expect (says he) *tell me, that Nature when by bleeding she has had Vent, and is somewhat discharged, shall be better able to throw out the remaining Evil: And this does as it were seem to be true; for the Blood indeed receives Air, that the Spirits may the better fly away; and is robbed of that Strength which it so necessarily wants; whereby Nature exchanges the Life of the Patient for Death, and extorts Tears from the By-standers Without alledging other Reasons, they ground themselves upon Experience; and it were to be wished that they had that Ground indeed: For we find such Patients of theirs, who in the Morning were in no Danger, even after the taking away of but five or six Ounces of Blood, to be cold and stiff at Night. Whence it may easily be collected, what it is they call Experience;* viz. *If the Patient by Chance escape, then Bleeding must have the Honour of it; but if they die, as for the most part they do, then the Malignity of the Disease was the cause of it. Wherefore I alledge Experience against Experience, and praise God Almighty, that he has vouchsafed to furnish all those, who without Envy, Passion, or slavish Dependance upon others, will duly consider Diseases with surer Means. Others* (says he) *proceed yet farther, and shed innocent Blood in all sorts of Fevers, without any Consideration of Spots of the Plague, or of the Poison it self. Thus freeing themselves from a great deal of Labour and Trouble, caused otherwise to the Physician from the Variety of Fevers. But because the nature of all Poison, and all malign Humours, is continually to assault the Heart, and suddenly to prostrate the Strength of the strongest Persons; and since Bleeding likewise does both, not only diminishes Strength, but also draws the Malignity towards the Heart, driving in again (for the oppressing of Nature) what she had before thrown out for her Relief: I do intreat all Practisers of our Art, That as they love the quiet of their Mind, or Soul, they would beware of Bleeding in Pestilential or other Malign Fevers; as also in all Cases which may befal People by Poison, either inward or outward.* Thus Barbet. *Avicen, Fen.* 4. *lib.* 1. *cap.* 20. has these Words: *And letting Blood many times causes a Fever, and many times brings Corruption or Putrefaction.* &c. *Galen de Humoribus, lib.* 1. *com.* 12. says, *That in* Febres continentes, *where in the Fever coming does continue at the same Greatness* &c. *we must be exceeding careful, not to take away any Blood from the Body.* The same *Galen* says, *Happy are they who fall not into the Hands of such unlearned Doctors, who prescribe Receipts by Hap-hazard, and as it were by casting of Dice.* And *Galen Meth. Med. lib.* 9. *cap.* 13. says, *If we endeavour to cure any Disease which requires Evacuation, or Bleeding, it must be when they have attained so much Strength, that Bleeding will do them no hurt. And,* lib. 12. cap. 1. *he that would ease Pain must see to preserve Strength; he that transcends these Bounds is cruel, and with the Disease takes away the Patient's Life. And, Celsus* says, *to let Blood in the Fit of an Ague or Fever, is to kill the Patient. Fuchsius,* a very learned Man and great Physician of much Experience says, *That in a Pestilential or Malign Fever, the Universal Motion of Nature is to the Skin; this Motion, the Physician is to assist by such Things as induce or force Sweating;*

and

and he must be as careful as may be, not to evacuate by Stool (much less by Bleeding) *because that Motion is Diametrically opposite to the Design of Nature.* And *Fermelius de Abditis rerum causis, lib.* 2. *cap.* 12. says, *In the Pestilence we must abstain from Bleeding and strong Purging, for all the Danger and Mischief arises from a venemous or malign Quality; such Things therefore are to be prescribed as do not evacuate, but which do by gentle cooling and astringing, stop the violent Motion of the Spirits, Blood and Humours, such as are Acid Things; and which by Property of their whole Substance, weaken the force o' the Poison, or expel it by sweating; for these are the Antidotes for this Disease, being Antipathetical to the Malignity or Pestilential Venome. Dolæus* (a modern Author) in his *Encyclopædia Medica, lib.* 4. *cap.* 5. has these Words: Willis (says he) *in the Cure of this most violent Disease, very seldom or never admits of Bleeding, because the stock of Blood being too much exhausted, Sweating is not so easily promoted. As to the Chirurgical Remedies,* (says *Dolæus*) *Bleeding comes first to be considered, which is wholly to be omitted in malignant Fevers, because it renders the Blood more sharp and fluid.* Again, *Bleeding therefore* (says he) *Purges, Vomits, Clysters,* &c. *we reject.* Again, *Now for the Cure it self, in the first place, as we said before, we exclude Bleeding, which some at* Erfurt, *during the Plague, celebrated to the great hazard of the Patient's Life: He that desires Testimonies in this Case may consult* Paræus, Massa, Andernacus, Fonseca, Forestus; *and among the Moderns,* de Sorbait, Waldschmidius, *and others: For it is certain, that by Bleeding the Fermentation of the Blood is increased, to the Destruction of the Patient: Wherefore I very much wonder the Famous English Practitioner Dr.* Sydenham *has approved of it in these Diseases.* Thus *Dolæus.*

And this is truly the Opinion of many other learned Physicians, who abhor Blood-letting in any Malign or Pestilential Disease, like Death it self; much more, when they see that Nature begins to expel the Morbifick Matter or Venome through the Pores of the Skin, which then to divert her in her Course by contrary Indications, is truly to kill the Patient.

II. *Take Treacle of* Andromicus *half a dram, Electuary* de Ovo *one scruple, Pouder of Crabs-claws compound twelve grains, Cochinel eight grains, Saffron four grains, with a sufficient quantity of the Juice of* Kermes, *make a Bolus,* which must be repeated every sixth Hour, drinking after it six Spoonfuls of the following Julep.

Take Carduus Benedictus *Water, and compound* Scordium *Water, of each four ounces; distilled Treacle-water two ounces, Syrup of Clove-Gilliflowers one ounce; mix them for a Julep.*

Salmon.] This is good. *Take Mithridate a dram and half; Bezoar Mineral a scruple; Cochinel twelve grains; Saffron six grains; Oil of Nutmegs by Expression three grains; the Cochinel and Saffron being in fine Pouder; mix all together with the Mithridate, and with Juice of Kernes, or Syrup of Citron-peels a sufficient quantity, make a Bolus to be repeated every sixth Hour,* Or this: *Take Mithridate, Extract of Juniper-berries, of each two scruples; Bezoar Mineral a scruple;*

Scruple; Cochinel, Saffron, both in Pouder, of each eight grains; Chymical Oil of Rue six drops; mix and make a Bolus, to be given as aforesaid. After the said Bolus's are swallowed, let the Patient drink five or six Spoonfuls of this following Julep. *Take Scordium Water, Rue Water, of each four ounces; Spirit of Saffron two ounces; Syrup of Citron-peels one ounce and half; mix, and make a Julep.*

III. But if he be afflicted with Vomiting, the Sudorifick ought not to be exhibited till the weight of the Cloths alone make the Sweat begin to appear, his Face being in the mean while covered with part of the Sheets.

Salmon.] If the Disease begins with Vomiting, the best way is to give a Vomit first, to take away the Recrements of the first Passages; then you may safely give a Sudorifick, without any hazard of fouling the Blood. This is an excellent one: *Take Viper Pouder one Scruple, Bezoar Mineral sixteen grains, Cochinel twelve grains, Saffron ten grains, Salt of Amber Volatile eight grains: Mix, and with Mithridate, or Juice of Alkermes, make a Bolus for four Doses,* to be given every six Hours.

IV. The Sweat thus beginning, must be promoted with repeated Draughts of Sage-Posset, or Beer boil'd with a little Mace, and continued in this Method the space of 24 Hours; in the mean while he may be allowed some comfortable Broths for his Refreshment.

Salmon.] This of *Roger Dixon* is much better. *Take Leaves of Carduus and Scabious, Butter-Bur Roots, of each four ounces; Posset-drink three quarts; make a Decoction, strain out, and let it be taken as ordinary drink.* If you have not Posset-drink, you may use a thin Water-Gruel, which in my Opinion is better. With this Drink, he told me, he cured many Hundreds infected, who by drinking largely of it, were often times cured in the space of twenty four Hours, when nothing but Death has been expected, and by which he also stayed Pestilential Vomitings and Loosenesses. An Hour or two after the Sweat is taken, give the Sick, thin Mutton or Chicken-Broth, or some Alexipharmick Posset-drink, and let them sweat well, wiping the Sweat continually off with warm Cloths, forbearing to shift the Patient: And the Sweating is to be repeated every Day, till you find the Malignity of the Disease is abated. And afterwards sweat still every third or fourth Day, as you see occasion; and this you must do for some time, lest the Poison and Malignity of the Disease should revive, and surprise you again.

V. After the coming forth of the Bubo, I durst not Bleed. Let the sick Person keep his Bed four and twenty Hours after the Sweating is over, and carefully avoid all manner of Cold, permitting his Shirt to dry of it self upon his Body.

Salmon.] It is much better to continue the use of *Roger Dixon's* Decoction, which effectually encounters with the Radical Poyson: Nor will it be safe neither the next Morning, nor yet for some Days to attempt

tempt Purging, till you are sure all the Malign and Venemous Matter is fully discharged by Perspiration through the Pores of the Skin: When you are satisfied that thing is compleatly effected; then you may boldly come to Purging, which let be done with those Things most agreeable to the Habit and Constitution of the Body. Shifting the Patient is very dangerous, its infinitely safer to let their Shift dry leisurely upon their Bodies; for the Matter which Nature has once protruded, can never recur or strike in again: Besides, the external Clammines of the Sweat closes the Pores, and in a great measure prevents the Sick taking cold after it.

VI. Let him drink nothing but what is hot, and still continue in the use of the Sage-posset: Next Morning let him take the common Purging Potion.

Salmon.] It is indeed my Opinion, that the former Sudorifick and Antipestilential Mixture for four Bolus's, ought rather to be continued for three or four Days or longer, before the Purging Potion be given, because Experience has demonstrated in the late great Plague, that the Malignity and Poyson of the Disease has not been expelled out of the fleshy Substance sometimes in six, eight, or ten Days time, and while that was not done, I am sure Purging must be very dangerous, much more Bleeding, if a Bubo appears.

VII. The Years 1667, 1668, produced the Small-Pox, and a Fever a-kin to them.

In the Years 1669, 70, 71, 72, a Dysenterical Fever reigned.

And the Years 1673, 74, 75, were infested with a Comatous or Sleepy Fever.

I do not touch upon the Cure of these Fevers, because I think that they might have been cured by the Method described in the Account of the Fever of the Years 1685, *&c.*

VIII. *Salmon.*] The Fever which afflicted in *London*, and in most Parts of the Kingdom, even through the whole Year 1665, was highly Putrid and Malignant, to wit, the Spotted-Fever, and the Plague it self; all which time my self was in *London*, nor was I absent from the City one Day, from the first beginning of that Raging Pestilence to the conclusion thereof, though I believe there died in the City and Suburbs at least an Hundred Thousand, and in some Weeks between Eight and Nine Thousand a Week.

IX. *Salmon.*] I made many Observations of other Mens Practice as well as of my own, and this I can aver as the greatest of Truths, that I knew not one Person (among some Scores) which were let Blood, but died; for the Strength thereby became prostrate, and for want of a vital Potency, which resides mostly in the Blood, Nature was not able to protrude the Morbifick Matter by a proper Diaphoresis, as it ought to do, and so the miserable Patient was lost; and this agrees perfectly with *Barbet*'s Judgment in the case.

X. *Salmon.*] And though many died (through the Poison and Violence of the Disease) which

which took the right Course, yet six in seven lived, to whom the right Method of Cure was applied. which was immediately repairing to Bed, and taking proper Sudorificks: This I generally gave. *Take Bezoar Mineral. Cochinel, of each ten grains; Saffron, Salt of Amber, of each five grains; Volatile* Sal Armoniack, *four grains: Mix, and give it in the Pap of an Apple,* which repeat three or four times in twenty four Hours. And for Drink, *Decoction of Petasitis,* mixt with a quarter part of the *Aqua Elementaria,* which is a Solution of Nitre in fair Water; and sometimes a Glass of Generous Wine mixed with a quarter part of the said Nitrous Water. Most of those I took this Course withal, lived and did well, and that in a few Days.

XI. *Salmon.*] To many Hundreds of the common and poor People I gave this. *Take pure Crystaline Nitre four scruples; Flower of Sulphur one scruple; Saffron, Cochinele, of each six grains; all being in fine Pouder, mix for a Dose.* This was repeated Morning and Night, so long as need required. It is a *Catholicon* in this Case; and I also gave it to some Thousands, (especially if in the beginning) yet do not remember that one Patient which took it died of the Disease.

XII. *Salmon.*] It is almost unknown how great the Powers and Forces of *Nitre* and *Sulphur* are in resisting the Poison and Malignity of the *Plague,* and all sorts of Pestilential Venome: But the almost innumerable Cures performed in the Last great *Pestilence* in *London,* by the just above prescribed Composition, are a Demonstration of its Excellencies above all refutation; for *Nitre* does not only formally, and by its own proper Virtue, allay all preternatural Heats, and extinguish every kind of Fever; but also by its Purity, and a peculiar or Specifick Power, it resists all kinds of Putrefaction, and destroys the Effects of the strongest Putridity, by quelling and destroying even upon the Spot, all sorts of putrid Fermentations.

XIII. *Salmon.*] But how far *Sulphur* contributes to the same end, those only do truly know, who are acquainted with its Effects in stopping, almost in a Moment, the violent Career of the strongest Salivation. It will do that in the most vehement Spitting upon the Spot, which scarcely any thing in the World will do besides, nay, not the strongest Purges, nor *Opium* itself: And in an external acrid and saline Fermentation of the Juices, as in an Itch or Leprosy, it outdoes all other Things whatsoever, and this purely by Tact. If it then does such great Things thus momentarily, and only by touching, where the Sharpness of the Humours and Impetuosity are so violent, what may it be imagin'd to do where the Motion is softer, and with a more silent Foot? Especially there where the Acritude of the Juices may be thought to make even a Dissolution of its Substance or Particles, whereby it may be fitted to act more immediately upon the Poisonous Putridity, or Morbifick Matter? But the farther Philosophick Consideration of this Subject, we shall leave to the more intelligent Sons of Art.

CHAP.

CHAP. V. *Of Agues*

I. THey begin with Cold and Shivering, which is immediately ſucceeded by Heat, and that by Sweating, after which the Fever vaniſhes, though during the firſt Days of the Diſtemper, eſpecially in the Fall of the Leaf, there ſometimes happens a Remiſſion, rather than a proper Intermiſſion of the Ague.

Salmon] An Ague is that which is commonly called an intermitting Fever; and ſo it properly is, for it is a Fever which is firſt attended by cold, and then by hot Symptoms; and then intermits or ceaſes for a time, till the Diſcraſy of the Habit has heaped up more and freſh Fuel for the Fire.

II. Both the cold and hot Fits are for the moſt part attended with an Inclination to Vomit, extream Sickneſs, Thirſt, and Drineſs of the Tongue.

Salmon.] In ſome the Rigor is more remiſs, or not very vehement; in others even to an Extremity, ſo that in ſhaking the Body, it ſeems even to ſhake the Bones alſo: And in ſuch where the Cold comes to ſuch Extremities, the burning Heat after it becomes as violent; ſo that in weak Habits, ſuch Agues (eſpecially if attended with any Malignity) many times become Mortal; or at leaſt bring the Patient into a very dangerous and deep Conſumption, which ſtrangely preys upon the Vitals.

III. The Swelling of the Belly in Children, and of the Feet in grown People, ſignify the Solution of the Fever. A Pain in the Jaws, Hoarſneſs, hollow Eyes, and a ghaſtly Countenance, foreſhew Death.

Salmon.] So alſo a Water thick and muddy, with great Sediment; Shingles, or Breakings out in ſeveral Parts of the Body, chiefly in the Face; Bubo's in the Groins, Swellings in the Arm-pits, which being hard at firſt tend to Suppuration, are all Symptoms of a ſpeedy Recovery; but indeed a profound Hoarſeneſs, with a great difficulty of Hearing, dimneſs of Sight for no preceeding Reaſon, Reiteration of cold Sweats, and ſuch as have a faint and earthy Smell, with a true Hippocratick Face, are all true Signs of an approaching Diſſolution.

IV. *Take of the* Peruvian *Bark in fine Pouder one ounce, and with a ſufficient quantity of Syrup of Clove-Gilliflowers, or of dried Roſes, make an Electuary*, to be divided into twelve Doſes, of which one Doſe is to be exhibited every four Hours, taking after it a Draught of any ſort of Wine, beginning immediately after the Fit.

Salmon.] Or you may give Extract of the *Cortex* made up into *Pills*, from half a dram to a dram, or dram and half, which in ſome Conſtitutions much exceeds the Pouder. Thoſe who can neither take Pouder nor Pills, may take this following Infuſion. *Take choſen Cortex in groſs Pouder three ounces, Cremor Tartari in Pouder ſix drams, red Port Wine a quart, Well-water three quarters of a pint; mix, and let them ſimmer over a gentle*

gentle Fire (for the most part covered) till half a pint or better is evaporated; then being cold, pour off the clear into another Vessel, which divide into eight Doses, one of which is to be taken three Hours before the coming of the Fit; a second, presently after the Fit is off; and the rest to be taken one after another every six Hours: After which repeat the same Course with three other ounces of fresh *Cortex*: This Method will not go without the desired Effects.

V. But if these *Bolus*'s move the Belly, add ten Drops of *Liquid Laudanum* to the Draught of Wine after every second Dose, as you see occasion.

Salmon.] In some Habits of Body the *Cortex* will bind vehemently; but in other some again, it will loosen the Belly as much: In this last case, *Liquid Laudanum* may be given from ten to twenty drops, or my *Volatile Laudanum* from one grain or two, or more; or my *Gutta Vitæ* may be given from fifteen to thirty Drops, more or less, as need requires.

VI. To prevent Relapses, (especially of *Quartans*) the foregoing Process must be thrice repeated in the three following Weeks.

Salmon.] Indeed, for Prevention sake, the said Courses of the *Cortex* ought to be continued without Intermission for twenty Days, or more, after the ceasing of the Fits.

VII. If the form of Pills be more grateful, then

Take of the Peruvian *Bark in Pouder one ounce; and with a sufficient quantity of Syrup of Clove-Gilliflowers make Pills of a moderate bigness*; of which take six every four Hours.

Salmon.] Or you may make *Pills of the Extract* as before directed; and every four Hours a Spoonful of the Tincture of the Bark made of equal Parts of common Spirit of Wine and Canary may be given, to corroborate the Force of the Pills.

VIII. *Take Pouder of the* Peruvian *Bark two ounces, Rhenish Wine a quart. Let them stand together in a cold Infusion, and strain them through a Woollen Bag.* Dose three Ounces every four Hours.

Salmon] In my Opinion it is better to boil it a little in a Vessel close covered, for the actual Heat of the Fire will more powerfully loosen and extract the Operative Particles of the *Cortex*.

It is true, if it is to be used *Dietetically*, a cold Infusion is enough, and then three Ounces of it may be taken every four Hours: And after the *Ague* is profligated, four or five Ounces of it may be taken Morning, Noon and Night, by way of Prevention to hinder its return. But if you would make an effectual Infusion of the *Cortex* against all sorts of *Agues*, you ought to do it thus. *Take* Madera *Wine, or Sherry, two quarts; or if the Patient does not like any of those Wines, then take Canary three pints, choice* French *or* Barcelona *Brandy a pint; of the best Cortex in gross Pouder seven or eight ounces; digest in a gentle Sand-Heat for fourteen Days, or more, shaking the Bottle well twice a Day; then letting it stand to settle, decant off the clear, straining it through* Hippocrates *his Sleeve, and keep it close stopt for use: Or you may let it stand upon the Faces, and pour it off as you*

you use it. Dose two, three, or four Ounces, according to Age and Strength.

IX. * But if there be a continual Vomiting as it were, so that the Sick refuses to take the *Cortex*, you may give six or eight Times this Mixture, in the space of two Hours *Take fresh Juice of Limons one spoonful, Salt of Wormwood a scruple; mix them.* Afterwards you may give *Liquid Laudanum, gutt. xvi. in a spoonful of the stronger Cinnamon-water*; and in a short time after the Vomiting ceasing, you may come to the use of the *Cortex.*

Salmon.] What our Author here prescribes, is the usual Remedy against Vomiting: But if *Salt of Wormwood* cannot be gotten, *Salt of Tartar*, or any other *fixt Vegitable Salt*, will do as well, and this I have oftentimes tried: So also where Juice of Limons cannot be had, choice *Lime juice* will do full as well, or better, and in defect of that, you may use the best *Dutch White-wine Vinegar*, and this I have tried some Hundreds of Times.

X. * Agues happening in the Spring are sometimes happily cured, by timely giving a Vomit, but so long before the coming of the Fit, that the Operation of it may be over before the time of the usual Access.

Salmon.] Some will prescribe for the Vomit, *Vinegar*, or *Wine* of *Squills:* Some *Carduus* Posset-drink, or *Decoction*, or *Juice of Groundsel*, which indeed vomit very well: But none of them equal *Antimonial Vomits*, which very rarely go without the desired Effects. *Vinum Benedictum* (which is the Infusion of *Crocus Metallorum*) one Ounce, in Canary a Pint, or *Vinum Rubellum* (which is the Infusion of *Stibium*, or *Vitrum Antimonii*, an Ounce; with *Cloves* sliced or bruised two Drams in Claret-Wine, a Quart; (or *Vinum Antimoniale)* which is the Infusion of *Regulus Antimonii* in fine Pouder, four Ounces, in three Pints of White-wine;) are all excellent Things, and perform admirably: But none of them exceed, in my Opinion, *Tartar Emeticum*, which may be given from gr. ii. to vi. according to Age and Strength. The *Wines* may be given from half an Ounce to an Ounce, more or less, as the case requires, and as the Physician shall prescribe.

XI. * And sometimes a Clyster may be given in the Intermitting Days, three or four Times, whereby the Disease is many Times cured; giving afterwards also the following Draught.

Salmon.] I am of Opinion that Clysters of all sorts as well as Purges ought to be forborn, till the Cure is perfectly confirmed; for I have oftentimes found it by Experience, that upon any Motion of the Belly the Ague has return'd, and that as often as such Provocations have been given.

XII. *Take* Virginia *Snake-root in fine Pouder fifteen grains; White-wine three ounces*; Give it to the Sick two Hours before the Fit, and covering him with Cloaths, let him sweat three or four Hours: Repeat the same Doses the two following Fit-days in the same manner.

Salmon.]

Salmon.] I rather approve of my *Guttæ Vitæ*, from thirty to sixty Drops, in a Glass of Canary, or some Cordial Water, to be given after some Doses of the *Cortex*; or which is better, my *Volatile Laudanum*, from gr. i. to iv. or a fit Dose of the *Eclegma Sudorificum*, or other Opiate, to confirm and perfect the Cure.

XIII. * If the Fit returns again this is highly necessary for the Sick. *Take Conserves of the Flowers of Borrage and Bugloss, of each one ounce; Conserve of Rosemary-flowers half an ounce; candied Citron-peels, candied Nutmegs,* Venice-*Treacle, of each three drams*; Confectio Alkermes, *two drams*; *mix, and make an Opiate.* Of which you may give the quantity of a Hasel-Nut at a time, Morning and Evening, drinking after it a few Spoonfuls of the more simple *Aqua Epidemica*, or *Plague-Water*, sweetned with Sugar. In the mean time, Clysters are forbidden to be used.

Salmon.] The Cure is to be begun again, either with an *Opiate* in a due Dose; or else with some of the former Preparation of the *Cortex* in a double Dose, because it is much more difficult to restore in a *Relapse*, than in the beginning of the Disease; and then after the use of the *Cortex*, you are again to assume *Opiates* as before.

XIV. * If towards the end of the Disease a Dropsy happens, the Cure of the Fever not being yet perfected; yet purging Medicines are not to be given, but *an Infusion of Horse-radish Roots, tops of Wormwood, and the lesser Centory, Juniper-berries, Broom-ashes*, &c. *made in Wine*; for Catharticks and opening Medicines cause a return of the Ague.

Salmon.] 'Tis true, any Cathartick or Emetick Medicament, yea, any solutive Clyster, will be apt to cause a return of the Disease; and therefore other Courses must be persued to gain the great end of Health. What Things our Author has here advised, are very good for the purpose; but if more potent Things can be given, it will be yet for the greater Advantage of the Sick: For this Purpose I commend *the Infusion of Lignum Nephriticum in White-Port Wine*, to be taken daily for some time; and if *Pouder of Winter Cherries* be added to it, to be taken either in their Infusion, (or in their Substance, half a Dram for a Dose) the Medicament will be yet so much the better. *Salt of Tartar given from a scruple to a dram in Parsly-water, or in Arsmart, or Onion-water*, prevails almost to a Miracle: But very few Things seem to outdo *Mustard-seed bruised, a pound, infused in White Wine three quarts*, to be drunk daily two, three or four Times a Day; sometimes adding to the same the *Powers of Juniper-berries and Turpentine*, or either of them singly.

XV. *For Children sick of an Ague.*

Take Black Cherry-water, and Rhenish *Wine, of each two ounces; the* Peruvian *Bark in fine Pouder, three drams; Syrup of Clove-Gilliflowers one ounce: Mix them, and make a Julep.* Dose a Spoonful or two, according to the Child's Age, every four Hours, till the Fit returns no more; adding to every second Dose,

Doſe, if there be a Looſneſs, one or two Drops of *Liquid Laudanum*

Salmon.] It will be almoſt impoſſible to make Children take this Julep, with the Pouder of the Bark in it, becauſe they will ſo nauſeate it in the going down; or take it with a vehement Reluctancy. It will be much better to give the proper Doſe either in *Extract*, or *Tincture*, or *Infuſion*, which may be diſſolved, or mixed and dulcified with the *named Syrup*, or with the *Syrup of Citron-peels*, or other like proper matter.

XVI. *Salmon.*] We now think fit to communicate in this place another Secret for the Cure of all ſorts of Agues, and it may poſſibly be no Ways inferior to that of the *Cortex*, which is the following. *Take Roch Alum in fine Pouder ſix ounces; Crocus Martis Aperitivus, or Aſtringens, (it matters not much which) two ounces; mix, and make a ſubtil Pouder, which keep for uſe.* Doſe from two Scruples to a Dram, Dram and half, or two Drams, according to Age and Contumacy of the Diſeaſe. It is to be given three Hours before the coming of the Fit in *Syrup of Glove-Gilliflowers*, or in *Syrup of Citron-peels*, or of *Mulberries*, or in thick *Watergruel*. I have ſome Hundreds of Times cured an Ague with one ſingle Doſe of it, but have hardly ever failed with two Doſes; yet commonly give three or four, and ſometimes more Doſes, for confirmation of the Cure, eſpecially when the Diſeaſe has been inveterate, ſtubborn and rebellious: And I have found it equally good in curing all ſorts of Agues, whether Quotidian, Tertian or Quartan; whether ſingle, ſemi, or double; for which Reaſon I account it a veery valuable Remedy.

XVII. *Salmon.*] But almoſt innumerable of Agues have been cured with *Emplaſtrum febrifugum magnum*, deſcribed in our *Pharmacopœia Bateana*, *Lib.* 3. *Cap.* 6. *Sect.* 29. *Pag.* 704. *a.* of the Second Edition, being ſpread upon an Oval Piece of Leather about eight Inches long, and five Inches broad, and applied to the Pit of the Stomach; and being alſo ſpread upon Pieces of Leather, Cloth, or brown Paper, ſo long as to go round ones Wriſt, and about two Inches broad, which are to be applied to the Wriſts of both Hands, and to be pretty hard bound on, yet not ſo hard, as to benumb the Part, or cauſe it to ſwell: All theſe Plaiſters are to lie on as long as they will ſtick, and to be renewed once more if you ſee occaſion. This Emplaſter is ſaid to cure all ſorts of Agues, whether Quotidian, Tertian, or Quartane, without any other help, and that moſtly at one Application: In an Hundred Examples together, it has not failed of one. Now becauſe of the exceeding uſefulneſs of this Topick Medicament, and for that the ſaid Book is not in every one's Hands, we ſhall here, for the publick Good, give you again the *Recipe* thereof. *Take Frankincenſe ſixteen ounces; Oil-Olive one ounce, or a ſufficient quantity; Cinnabar in ſubtil Pouder two ounces: Melt, mix, and make an Emplaſter which may ſtick,*

CHAP. VI. *Of the Continual Fever from the Year* 1685, *to* 1690.

I. THE Signs are, Heat and Cold coming by turns, Pain in the Head and Limbs, the Pulse in the mean time almost well, sometimes a Cough, a Pain about the Neck and Chops, and the return of the Fever towards Night, Unquietness, Thirst; the Tongue either moist, and cover'd all over with a white and rough Matter, or dry, and of a dark Colour in the middle, which is surrounded with a whitish Border.

Salmon.] It appeared first of all with a kind of shivering, and Alternations of Cold and Heat; sometimes with a Pain at Stomach, and a sickish kind of Belly-ach, which in some degenerated into a periodical Colick, or Griping of the Guts: If it happened to the Female Sex, the Patient was many times affected with Vapors, or something rising up in their Throat, as if it would choak them, which, when Time or Strength of Nature had suppressed, and the Preternatural Heat being abated, the Patient presently fell into (not a cold, but) a faint and clammy Sweat, which continuing for a considerable while after every Fit, and being every Day renewed, brought such a Weakness (if not Death as at length induced a real *Tabes*, or Consumption; and thereby from an Acute Disease degenerated into a Chronick.

II. They that constantly keep their Beds, are thereby exposed to *Coma's*, and Phrensies, and Spots, Purple Specks, Millet-like Eruptions, (as they are called) which are more ruddy than Measles, inequality of the Pulse, Motion or quivering of the Tendons, and at last Death; all which are the Effects of a hot Habit or Constitution of Body.

Salmon.] But these Symptoms happened many Times in such as were of a cold Habit of Body, and in whom they seemed to be more acute; for the Morbifick Matter being wonderfully rarified by a Putrefactive Heat, and that being in great Plenty, did, as it were, by a kind of Antiperistasis, wonderfully burn and scald, till it even flamed again, and set the whole humane Frame on Fire, to the Destruction of the entire Man.

III. In the beginning Symptomatical Sweats appear, which if provoked by Art, break forth clammy in the Head, and translate the Morbifick Matter to the Head or Limbs.

Salmon.] A Vomit may do well in this case out of the Fit, or in the Intermission; but if it be given in the hot Fit, it generally translates the Morbifick Matter from the Inferior Parts to the Head, and so causes *Delirium* or Madness.

And after an Emetick has been seasonably and artfully given, Diaphoreticks and Sudorificks may be safely given, as this. *Take Venice Treacle or Mithridate a dram, Bezoar Mineral a scruple, Salt of Amber four grains, mix for a Dose.* Or this: *Take of*

of the Eclegma Sudorificum a scruple, Antimony Diaphoretick fifteen grains; Salt of Tartar, Volatile Salt of Amber, of each five grains; mix for a Dose.

IV. Let the sick Person bleed in the Arm ten Ounces of Blood; which must be repeated, if difficulty of Breathing, a vehement Pain in the Head, with a Cough, and other Signs of a Bastard *Peripneumony* appear. For in this Case both Bleeding and Purging must be constantly repeated till the sick Person recover.

Salmon.] I am of the contrary Opinion as to Bleeding, because it prostrates the Strength of the Sick, and draws the Morbifick Matter into the Veins, which Nature had before cast forth for her Relief; and this is true in all putrid Fevers whatsoever.

And 'tis so indeed in all Diseases where Nature tends to send the putrid Matter from the Center to the Circumference, as in the Small-Pox, Measles, *&c.* Therefore where these Signs are, which our Author speaks of, it is much better to promote a Diaphoresis, by giving the *Eclegma Sudorificum*, or our *Guttæ Vitæ*, or some few Drops of *Liquid Laudanum*, as the Physician shall prescribe.

V. At Night let a blistering Plaister be applied, and the next Morning a lenitive Potion, which must be thrice repeated every second Day; and always after Purging, a composing Draught is to be taken at Night.

Salmon.] Blistering is here prescribed more for Custom, and a Fondness of doing something, than from Reason; there is more need of adding Humidities, than of taking what there is away.

A Fever is an over Fermentation or boiling of the Blood, and resembles a boiling Pot; if you would cease the boiling, you ought not to take out any of the Liquor which is within it; for so the Quantity being lesser, the same Heat or Fire continuing, will have the greater Power over it; but if you would allay the boiling, you must either put more Liquor into it, which must be cold; or else, (which is the better and true Way) take away or much abate the Fire, which causes the vehement Fermentation or boiling.

VI. *Take Cowslip-water three ounces, Syrup of Poppies one ounce, Juice of Limons fresh, two spoonfuls: Mix them for a Draught.*

Salmon.] *Take* Syrupus Antifebriticus *two ounces, Milk-water four ounces; mix them for three Draughts.* What the *Syrupus Antifebriticus* is, see our *Pharmacopœia Chirurgica*, lately printed. Let this Medicine be often repeated.

But the Medicament which I have (I may truly say) several Thousand Times experimented is this. *Take of my Spiritus Aperiens a full large spoonful; pure Spring-water a quart; double refined Sugar enough to make it very pleasant to the Palate, so as the Patient may drink a good Draught of it at a time.* Of this the Patient may drink as much, and as often as he pleases; it immediately abates the Fever, and in an Hours time makes him as cool, as if he never had any. When ever any Heat appears, or begins to come on, let the

Patient drink as much as he pleases of this Mixture, and it will prevent the Accession; and thus continuing it for some Days, the Fever will be easily, pleasantly, and infallibly cured, though at first it appeared in an Extremity to the highest degree.

VII. Blisters in the Mouth and Throat, as also the Hicough, do sometimes come of their own accord, after the Fever is cured, and usually go away of themselves quickly after. But if they remain, they may be easily driven away, by *one ounce of the Jesuits Pouder reduced into an Electuary, or Pills, with the Syrup of red Poppies*, drinking after every Dose a draught of Whey. This Remedy will most certainly do, if its Vertue be not frustrated by constant lying in Bed.

Salmon.] The only Specifick for the Cure of a sore Throat is the *Eclegma ad Laringis Exulcerationem*, to be given as in the Place directed: And the chief Medicine for Removal of the Hicough is *Laudanum*. You may give either *Liquid Laudanum* of the Author, or our *Guttæ Vitæ, Cordial Pill*, or *Eclegma Sudorificum*, which will not fail perfectly to remove it: After the taking of the *Laudanum*, which is chiefly at Night, let the Patient take a Glass of the *Peruvian* or *Medicinal Canary*, the Preparation of which you may see *Cap.* 2. *Sect.* 15. aforegoing.

VIII. In those Days that are free from Purgation, the following things are to be prescribed.

Salmon.] If you give any thing of the Jesuits Pouder, *Purgation* must be wholly forborn; otherwise you will by Purging undo all whatever was done by the other.

The *Cortex Peruvianus* may be given either in fine Pouder made into an *Electuary*, or in an *Extract*, which may be reduced into *Pills*; or in a *Tincture* extracted with common Spirit of Wine, or in *an Infusion in Canary*, &c. in which last Case it may be used Dietetically.

IX. *Take Conserve of Wood-sorrel, of Sweet-briar, of each one ounce; Cream of Tartar one dram; with a sufficient quantity of Syrup of Limons, make an Electuary*; of which take about the Quantity of a Nutmeg thrice a Day, drinking after it six Spoonfuls of the following Julep.

Salmon.] Or you may make and give this which is better. *Take Conserve of Barberies two ounces; Conserve of Quinces one ounce; Syrup of Juice of Citrons, a sufficient quantity; mix and make an Electuary*; of which the Patient may take the Quantity of a small Chesnut now and then.

X. *Take Water of Purslain, of Lettuce, and of Cowslips, of each three ounces; Syrup of Limons one ounce and a half; Syrup of Violets one ounce: Mix them, and make a Julep.*

Salmon.] *Take* Aqua Elementaria *four Ounces*, Syrupus Simplex *two ounces: Mix them for a Julep.* Or, *Take* Aqua Tartarisata *four ounces, Syrup of Limons an ounce and a half: Mix them for a Julep.* See these Medicines in our *Pharm Chirurgica.*

Or thus: *Take Water one pound; Rose-water, Juice of Limons, white Sugar, of each four ounces; boil gently and scum*: Of which take six or seven Spoonfuls at Pleasure; and with the same you may

may also Gargarise the Mouth. Or, *Take Verjuice half a Pound, Syrup of Raspberries or Mulberries one ounce: Mix and make a Gargarism.*

Or you may make this Julep, which is inferior to none of them. *Take pure Spring-water a quart, Damask Ros-water a pint, Mint-water half a pint, Syrup of Juice of Citrons a pound, Syrup of Mulberries eight ounces; mix them.* Of this let the Patient drink now and then a little Sack Glass full. If the Julep seems too cold for the Stomach, let the Patient eat now and then a bit of *Barbadoes Green-ginger*, or take a Knive's Point full of our *Eclegma Stomachicum*, which will be of good use in this Case.

XI. If the Stomach be so disordered by the Fever, that it cannot retain a Potion, prescribe Pills *Cochiæ* the greater, two Scruples for a Dose; and also a Sleeping Medicine; for Example, one Grain and a half of *London Laudanum*, with the like Quantity of Mastick, or eighteen Drops of *Liquid Laudanum* in an Ounce of Barley Cinamon-water.

Salmon.] If Purging be admitted, you must be sure it be always done before the Exhibition of the *Cortex*, otherwise you will labour in vain.

And the reason is, because Purging after the use of the *Cortex*, always causes a Return of the Disease; for which Reason *Opiates* of any kind, yet of such Forms as the Patient can best take, are always to be made use of after this Remedy; except in such Persons as have a natural Aversion or Antipathy to any thing of *Opium*, or in whom it causes Explosions of the Nerves and Animal Spirits, Convulsions, Faintings, Swoonings, *&c.*

XII. Let the sick Person drink the *Decoctum album*, and small Beer also at pleasure.

This Decoction is made by boiling *calcin'd Hartshorn an ounce and half, in two quarts of Water; then straining, and a little sweetning of it, with double refined Sugar.*

Salmon.] If you make it grateful also, with *Juice of Limons*, it will be so much the better; it will strengthen the Stomach, and resist the Violences of the Fever. In Country Towns, where *burnt Hartshorn* is not to be had, you may instead thereof use *Calves-Skulls* or *Heads*, *Sheeps-Heads*, *Hogs-Heads*, and *Bullocks-Heads calcin'd*, which will do the same thing, and in some Cases may be much better: And again, in want of these, you may use the *second Decoction of hull'd Barley*, or the *third Decoction of our common Barley unhull'd*, adding *Juice of Limons*, and sweetning with double refined Sugar: If the Patient is apt to be sick at Stomach, by taking any of these *Decoctions*, a little Glass of Canary, White Lisbond, White Port, or other Wine, may sometimes be added.

XIII. * After the Sick has twice purged, give them Chicken-broth; and after the last Purgation, the Fever being in a manner abated, three or four Spoonfuls of Canary, Morning and Evening, as also after Dinner for some Days.

Salmon.] I have said before, that after the use of the *Cortex*, purging is wholly to be forborn, because it will absolutely

undo, all whatever the Bark before had done: But you must, on the contrary, perfect the Cure with *Eclegma Sudorificum*, or *Liquid Laudanum*, or some other *Opiate*, *&c.* the Patient in the mean time taking comfortable and nourishing things, good Chicken-broth, and eating Fish in gravelly Places.

XIV. * If it be accompanied with a *Phrensey* or *Coma*, nothing more is to be done, but the Head of the Sick is to be shaved, applying no Emplaister, but a Woollen Cap only.

Salmon.] Whilst these Accidents are present, the Sick ought to be made to smell often to *Spirit of Hartshorn*, and Rags dipt in the same may be put up the Nostrils; also inwardly you must daily give *Sal Volatile Oleosum*, or *Spirit of Hartshorn*, from fifteen to twenty or twenty-five Drops, or more, in some proper Vehicle. The Forehead and Temples may also be bathed three or four times a Day, with Powers of Rosemary, Lavender, *&c.*

XV. * If this Fever, happening to Women troubled with Fits, after Bleeding and Purgings of this kind iterated, should yet continue, and still increase, but without any Signs of a *Peripneumony* or Inflammation, about or near the vital Parts, let Anodynes be given every Night, and the Parts anointed twice or thrice a Day with hysterick Medicines.

Salmon.] Bleeding and Purging are totally opposite to the Intentions of this Cure: If there is Inflammation, it ought, in the beginning, to be allayed with *Spiritus aperiens*, a Spoonful of it being put into a Quart of Spring-water, and sweetned with double refined Sugar, of which the Sick may drink at Pleasure; if the Inflammation has been of some standing, *Spirit of Hartshorn*, *Tincture of Castor*, *or Sal Vol. Oleosum*, are to be given in some proper Vehicle: If there is no Inflammation, the *Julapium Cardiacum* may be often given in the Day-time; and at Night *Eclegma Sudorificum*, or our *Guttæ Vitæ*, or *Liquid Laudanum*, in some proper Antifebritick Vehicle.

XVI. *Of the continual Fever in Children.*

Let Leeches be applied, one behind each Ear, and a Vesicatory to the hinder Part of the Neck.

And then purged with the Infusion of Rhubarb in Beer.

Salmon.] I like none of this awkward way of Practice. *Take Black Cherry-water, Milk-water, of each a Pint; Oil of Sulphur per Campanum thirty or forty Drops; double refined Sugar, enough to make it grateful and pleasant,* of which give the Child at pleasure: At Bed-time give this; *Take Tincture Bezoartica twenty Drops, Liquid Laudanum three Drops, Black Cherry-water, Canary, of each two spoonfuls; Syrup of Clove-gilliflowers a sufficient quantity; mix them for a Dose.*

XVII. If after Purgation the Fever seem to intermit, give them the Julep with the *Peruvian* Bark, described in the Chapter *Of Agues in Children.* Cap. 5. Sect. 15.

Salmon] If the Fever is not perfectly cured by the Use of the afore-prescribed things, you must come to the Use of the *Bark*; of which you may give either the *Pouder, Decoction, Infusion, or Extract*, which the Child

Child can be prevail'd withal, eaſilieſt to take; always giving it with the uſual Cautions, that it may be effectual, and not given in vain.

CHAP. VII. *Of the Scarlet Fever.*

I. CHildren are chiefly troubled with it about the latter end of Summer. At the firſt they are ſeized with a Coldneſs and Shivering, yet they are not very ſick.

Salmon.] It is a Diſeaſe which often afflicts not only Children, but ſuch as are grown up to Ripeneſs of Age, even to thirty or thirty-five, but ſeldom affects ſuch as exceeds thoſe Years, ſcarcely ever ſuch as have come to an advanc'd Age, and may be accounted old or well ſtricken in Years: But it is found to be as frequent in the middle of Summer as in the end of it, eſpecially if the Seaſon has been exceeding hot, and accompanied with Moiſture alſo.

II. The whole Skin is ſpotted with little red Specks, that are thicker, broader, and of a redder Colour than in the Meaſles.

Salmon.] The Patient is affected with an intenſe Heat, with Thirſt, Drineſs of the Throat, Tongue and Mouth; the Skin of the whole Body is red or reddiſh, and pretty full of Pimples, or rather red Specks, which are yet much redder than the Skin it ſelf; this Rednes at times ſeems to vaniſh, and then returns again, according to the Remiſſion of the Heat; which at length, as the Heat encreaſes, comes to be of a moſt exalted Colour.

III. They continue two or three Days, and then go away, and the uppermoſt Skin falling off, the under Skin appears ſtain'd with mealy Scales.

Salmon.] The Continuance is ſhorter or longer, according to the Remiſneſs or Vehemency of the Cauſe: When the Diſeaſe begins to decline, and the Spots to vaniſh, the whole Body, at leaſt ſo much of it as was affected with the Spots and Rednes ſeems to be full of a ſmall whitiſh Scurff; which the more full it is, and the greater the Quantity of Scurff, it is an Indication of the happier End of the Diſeaſe, becauſe the morbifick Matter, has had ſo much the greater Vent through the Pores of the Skin.

IV *Take burnt Hartſhorn, and compound Pouder of Crabs-claws, of each half a dram; Cochinel two grains, Sugar-candy one dram; mix them, and beat them to a very fine Pouder, to be divided into twelve Papers,* of which one is to be taken every ſix Hours, drinking after them two or three Spoonfuls of the following Julep.

Salmon.] This is much more powerful. *Take Bezoar Mineral ten grains, Cochinel five grains, Saffron two grains; being in fine Pouder, mix it with Sugar-candy in Pouder a dram and half; for one Doſe,* and to be repeated every ſix Hours.

Or you may give this. *Take Virginia Snake-roots two drams; Bezoar Mineral, native Cinnabar, of each one dram; Cochinel two scruples; English Saffron one scruple; reduce each a part into fine Pouder, and mix it with double refined Sugar in fine Pouder five drams, to be made into fifteen or twenty Doses,* one of which is to be taken every six Hours, drinking after it some few Spoonfuls of a proper Julep. Or this: *Take Contra-yerva, Virginia Snake-root, of each a dram and half; Cochinel, English Saffron, of each half a dram; each being in fine Pouder, mix them with double refined Sugar half an ounce, to be made into twelve or fifteen Doses,* to be given as aforesaid. Or this: *Take Mithridate an ounce; Snake-root, Contra-yerva, of each half a dram; Bezoar Mineral, Cochinel, of each a scruple; Saffron, Salt of Amber, of each ten grains; mix, and make an Electuary for ten or twelve Doses.*

V. *Take Black Cherry-water, Milk-water, of each three ounces; Syrup of the Juice of Citrons one ounce: Mix them, and make a Julep.*

Salmon.] Or you may make the Julep thus. *Take* Aqua Elementaria *six ounces;* Syrupus Volatilis, *Syrup of Limons, of each six drams; mix them.*

Or this, *Take Angelica Water a pint, in which Cochinel in fine Pouder, Saffron, of each half a scruple have been infused; Syrup of Juice of Limons an ounce and half; Syrup of Citron-peels one ounce; Syrup of Clove-gilliflowers half an ounce: Mix them, and make a Julep,* for the use aforesaid. But if it is where the former things cannot be had, you may make this. *Take pure Spring-water a Pint, (in which Borrage and Bugloss Leaves and Flowers have been infused cold for an hour or two) Syrup of Vinegar three ounces or more, to make it very pleasant, with which compleat the Julep.*

VI. Also let a Vesicatory be apply'd to the Nape of the Neck, and every Night exhibit a resting Draught of Syrup of Poppies; the Symptoms ceasing, prescribe a purging Medicine.

Salmon.] This Blistering, whether it be in old or young, is truly a torturing of the Patient; and in this Disease is so far from doing good, that it indeed adds Flames to the Fire, as we have else-where sufficiently proved: But the resting Draught at Night is admirable; or some other *Opiate corrected with Oils of Sulphur or Vitriol, Juices of Limes or Limons,* or some other Acid; as *Liquid Laudanum*, prepared as we are taught in *Cap.* 1. *Sect.* 14. of this Book aforegoing; or *Eclegma Sudorificum*, in *Cap.* 1. *Sect.* 28. aforesaid, or other like *Opiate* so prepared; because such a Medicine not only gives ease and rest, but by reason of the Acid, utterly exterminates even the Root of the Fever. Some few Days after the Patient seems to be perfectly freed from his Fever, you may cleanse the Bowels with *Potio communis purgativa, Cerevisia purgativa, Pulvis Catharticus, Pilulæ Panarcæ,* or some other proper Purge agreeing with the Age, Strength, and Habit of the Body.

CHAP.

CHAP. VIII. *Of the Pleurisy.*

I. IT Reigns Spring and Summer: It begins with Coldness and Shivering, which are quickly accompanied with Heat, Thirst, Inquietude, and the other Symptoms of a Fever.

Salmon.] It is an Inflammation and Tumour of the *Pleura*, or Membrane, girding or investing the Ribs and Sides; and *Dolæus* says, that he doubts not but a Pleurisy may happen about the intercostal Muscles; and says, he saw a young Man, who under his left Arm, about the intercostal Muscles, voided at times four Pounds of purulent and serous, coagulated Matter, whom he cured. It is caused of much Blood, and other Humors, flowing to the said Membrane or Muscles.

II. After some few Hours a pricking Pain will be felt in one of the Sides, about the Ribs, which sometimes extends it self towards the Shoulder-blades, sometimes to the Back, and sometimes towards the Breast.

Salmon.] In the former Section you have the Definition of the Disease, and the Parts it chiefly affects: But there are some Signs by which it is particularly known; any of which being absent, it cannot be said to be a true, but rather bastardly Pleurisy. Those Signs are Five; 1. *A continual Fever.* 2. *A Stitch, or vehement pricking Pain.* 3. *A Cough.* 4. *A Difficulty of Breathing.* 5. *A Tumour about the Parts affected: to which some add,* 6. *A hard Pulse like a Saw.* In this Disease the *Lungs* for the most part suffer, as also the *Mediastinum*, *Pericardium*, *Mesopleural Muscles and Diaphragma.* Sometimes *the Pain is sharp and pricking, sometimes it is a dull one*; and sometimes accompanied with Heat, and often encreased and exasperated by continual Breathing; and the sudden Encrease of the Pain causes Inflammation, for which reason the Sick cannot endure the Place to be touched; and if you press directly upon the intercostal Muscles, irritating the Nervous Fibres, the Pain is intolerable, because the extravasated Blood every Hour acquires greater Acrimony by which the Membranes are inflamed and vellicated, whence is excited that vehement Pain. But *the dull Pain* arises from the Inflammation being in the fleshy Substance of the Muscle, which because of its Nervous Fibres, is in some measure sensible, yet far less than that which possesses the Membrane it self. Sometimes it throbs and swells, whilst the inflamed Apostem is digesting and converting by Suppuration. *The Fever in this Disease is continual and encreasing*, especially whilst the Putrefaction is approaching and perfecting, because the intense Heat brings on the Maturation; and this Fever seems to be exasperated every other Day towards Evening. *The Cough is exceeding violent*, and the evasated Blood grows sharp insensibly; but at first it is not in that quantity in the Lungs, that it can be spit up in any great Proportion, because it comes not immediately to the *Bronchia*,

chia, for which reason it is impossible it should then be coughed up. *The difficulty of Breathing is, because the Breast cannot be commodiously dilated*, for which reason Inspiration is interrupted, and so becomes weaker; since therefore such Respiration is not sufficient to temper the effervescent Blood, the Smalness thereof is made up by the Frequency, and therefore the Pulse is frequent and quick. *The Tumour cannot be avoided, because of the Straightness of the Membrane*, which being inflamed attracts Blood largely to create it; and if it is not discust, it grows yet much greater, by its coming to Suppuration. *The Pulse also in this Disease* is soft, great, quick, unequal, intermitting, and recurrent or double beating, from the Perturbation of the Vital Spirits.

III. The Morbifick Matter that is cast forth with the Spittle in the beginning of the Disease, seems to be thin, and in small quantity, and is often mixt with Spots or Streaks of Blood; but afterwards it is raised more plentifully, is better concocted, and still comes forth mixt with Blood.

Salmon.] As the afflux of Blood is greater or lesser, so more or less Blood is voided; and in this Disease, Spittle also of divers Colours is raised; at first it is red and bloody; when it comes to Maturity, it is purulent; if nothing is spit, it is bad: And sometimes *Pus*, or *Matter*, has been expectorated, without any preceeding appearrance of Blood. There is also many Times an unquenchable Thirst, because sharp Particles are sent to the Throat and Tongue, which make them dry, and so to require much Moisture.

IV. The Fever holds pace with the Cough, Spitting of Blood, and Pain; and, according as the Expectoration is more or less free, abates by Degrees. The Belly is sometimes constipated, and sometimes too loose. The Blood of Pleuritick Persons resembles Tallow, when it is cool'd.

Salmon.] These concatenated Symptoms arise from a preternatural Fermentation of the Blood extravasated, or poured out of its Receptacles; in which Fermentation, the sharp Particles do by their Points or Acrimony, vellicate the Membranaceous Parts, and being intimately fixt in the Nervous Fibres, they make a Concussion therein, which because it is continued to the Origination of the Nerves, a sad Sensation or Pain does arise, which is various, dull, pungent, rending, throbbing, distending, corroding, *&c* according to the Nature of the Part affected, Quality of the Spirits, and concurrent Particles of the Blood and Humors. If little or nothing is raised by Spitting, or if Spitting quite ceases while the Pain remains, the Sick is in a dangerous Condition: So also, Spittle all bloody, or all yellow, or all black, for it signifies a total Corruption. A small Serratil, frequent and hard Pulse, signifies Death. Spittle green, viscid, frothy, and a little round, is bad. A Cough ceasing, and an Hiccough coming, it portends ill; so also a Looseness and Bleeding at Nose: But otherwise a Pleurisy terminates in a short

ſhort time, like other acute Diſeaſes. If it exceeds the fourteenth Day, it turns to an Empyema, a Conſumption, or putrid Ulcer; and if the Diſeaſe is not cured in forty Days, the Sick falls into a Conſumption.

V. Bleed on the affected Side, and take away ten Ounces of Blood.

Take red Poppy-water four ounces, Sal Prunellæ *one dram, Syrup of Violets one ounce: Mix them for a Draught,* to be taken immediately after the firſt Blood-letting.

Salmon] This much tranſcends. *Take Carduus-water four ounces, Spirit of* Sal Armoniack *forty or fifty drops, white Sugar, enough to ſweeten it.* It gives Eaſe almoſt upon the Spot; and is to be repeated once every five or ſix Hours, till the Pain abates, or is gone.

Or the Juice expreſſed out of *Horſe-dung*, with Water drawn from *Ox, Calves, Sheeps,* or *Hogs-Blood,* is commended as an excellent Thing, becauſe it imbibes the Pleuritick Acid. Wine is to be forbidden the Patient till the Heat abate. *Helmont* rejects Bleeding as an accurſed Remedy; becauſe a Pleuriſy cured by Bleeding, often leaves a Conſumption behind it; and that they who uſe Bleeding much do often fall into this Diſeaſe: He commends *Pouder of Stags Pizzle,* which may be drank to a Dram at a time; ſo alſo *Goats-blood,* which may be taken while Liquid and warm; or dried and given in Pouder to a Dram, or more. *Pouder of Bulls Pizzle* is alſo good, and of a *Boar's Tooth*; *Juices of Wild Cichory, and of Flowers of Red or Wild Poppies, Daiſies, &c.* but *Goats-blood* he prefers before all other Things. *Take Pouder of Goats-blood, and of a Stag's Pizzle, of each one ſcruple; red Poppy-water an ounce and half; mix for a Doſe.* Or, *Take Flowers of red Poppies, and of Daiſies, Leaves of Wild Cichory, of each a handful; Horſe-dung an ounce and half; boil in Barley-water a ſufficient quantity, ſtrain, and ſweeten with Syrup of red Poppies:* Of which let the Sick take a Draught now and then.

VI. *Take blanch'd Almonds',* N° 5. *Seeds of Melons and Pompions blanch'd, of each half an ounce; white Poppy-ſeeds three drams, Barley-water one pint and a half, Roſe-water two drams; with a ſufficient quantity of Sugar-candy, make an Emulſion according to Art.* Doſe four Ounces every four Hours.

Salmon.] At Night give this. *Take White-wine four ounces, of* Liquid Laudanum, gut. 15. ad 20. *Spirit of* Sal Almoniack *half a dram; white Sugar, enough to ſweeten it.*

Spirit or Volatile Salt of Man's Blood tranſcends all other Things in the World, becauſe it gives Relief in leſs than an Hours Time, and probably puts the Patient out of the Danger of Death, and all this it will do though no Blood-letting preceeds, and the Experience of this Medicine I have ſeen ſeveral Times: The Spirit may be given from fifteen to thirty Drops; and the Salt from five to fifteen Grains, in any convenient Vehicle: And next to theſe are the Spirit and Volatile Salt drawn from *Goats-blood, Hogs-blood, Ox-blood, and Sheep's-blood,* and may be almoſt as powerful, being given in the ſame

ſame Manner and Doſe. Add to theſe Things the *Spirit and Volatile Salt of Vipers*, which are incomparable Things; ſo alſo the *Volatile Spirit and Volatile Salt of Tartar*, both to be given in the former Doſes. *Take Madera Wine two ounces; Spirit of Man's, Ox's, Goat's, Sheep's or Hog's Blood, or Volatile Spirit of Vipers, twenty or thirty drops; Tincture of Cochinel thirty drops; mix for a Doſe*, to be repeated two or three Times a Day. How the *Spirit and Volatile Salt of Man's Blood*, and indeed of the Blood of all other Craetures, are to be drawn, we have taught plainly and at large in our *Seplaſium*, or *Druggiſt's Shop*, *Lib. 7. cap. 51. Sect. 12 & 13*

VII. *Take of the Pectoral Decoction a quart; Syrup of Violets, and of Maiden-hair, of each an ounce and a half; mix them.* Doſe half a Pint thrice a Day.

Take Oil of Sweet Almonds two ounces; Syrup of Violets, and of Maiden-hair, of each one ounce; Sugar-candy as much as is ſufficient: Mix them, and make a Lohoch, to be frequently uſed.

Salmon] In the Intervals of giving the former Medicines, other Things, as occaſion may require, are to be given, ſo as they contribute to the ſame end, ſuch as theſe our Author has here preſcribed; or in place of them ſome of theſe following. *Take Waters of Parſly, Hyſſop, and Fennel, of each an ounce; Treacle-water half an ounce; Spirit of Sal Armoniack half a dram, or Volatile Salt of Hartſhorn ſix grains; Laudanum Opiatum four grains; Syrup of red Poppies one ounce; mix them.* Of this let the Sick take a Spoonful or two, now and then, that ſo the Obſtruction may be removed; with this Mixture *Sylvius* cured ſeveral Pleuriticks in the Hoſpital at *Leyden* without Blood-letting. But if the *Obſtruction is radicated*, the Cure will be very difficult; and therefore Things which remove the Obſtructions of the Veſſels, and diſſolve Congelations or Coagulums, and quicken the Motion of the ſtagnating Blood, are to be choſen, and ſuch are chiefly *Volatile Spirits, and Salt of Urine, Blood, Hartſhorn, Fleſh of Animals, Soot*; of which *Volatile Spirit and Salt of Goat's Blood* are ſaid to be Specificks, for that they do not only diſſolve and make fluid what is coagulated, cauſe Sweat, and ſo expel the peccant Matter; but alſo correct the Blood poured into the *Pleura* when it is devoid of Spirit, and grown Acid. In this laſt Caſe of a *Radicated Obſtruction*, *Sylvius* highly commends *Helmont*'s Compoſition, as it follows in the next Section.

VIII. Oil of Sweet Almonds by it ſelf, or Lindſeed Oil may alſo be exhibited.

Salmon.] This is a Specifick, and ſeldom fails of giving Relief in an Hour's Time. *Take Juice of Camomile ſix ounces, Spirit of* Armoniack *two drams*: Mix, and give it the Sick at once; which you may repeat after four Hours.

Linſeed Oil has been the Wonder-working Preſcript of our late *Quacks*, in Order to this Cure; yet is but a *Horſe-Medicine*, and more fit for *Brutes* than for *Mankind*; for beſides that, it is a naſty Medicament, and given always in large Quantities: I have obſerved oftentimes, that it has been given without

without the least Success. *Helmont*'s Composition is this. *Take Crabs Eyes, Mandible of a Pike, Bone of a Stag's Heart, of each in subtile Pouder half a dram; diaphoretick Antimony two scruples: Mix, and make a Pouder.* It is an excellent Remedy to absorbe the Acidity, and by its alcalious Property, it dissolves grumous and coagulated Blood.

IX. *Take Oil of Sweet Almonds, of Lillies, and the Ointment* Dialthææ, *of each one ounce; mix, and make a Liniment,* with which the affected Side may be anointed Morning and Evening, laying over it a Cabbage-Leaf.

Salmon.] These Oils and Ointments are thick, and of a gross Substance, and penetrate not, so as to do any good; and besides, their evil Smell are very nasty Things to be applied to a delicate and nice Patient. Let the Patient bathe two or three Times a Day with the *Potestates of Angelica, Penny-royal or Savin, mixt with an eighth-part of Spirit of Hartshorn*; these things (besides that of their comfortable Smell and Neatness) will not go without their Effects, and that in half an Hour's Time.

X. Bleeding must be repeated yet three Times more, taking away still the same quantity of Blood for four Days together, if the Pain and Difficulty of Breathing seem to require it.

Salmon.] But this you may be sure of, That if you use the Composition made of *Sal Armoniack*, at *Sect.* 5 or that of *Camomile*, at *Sect.* 8. you will have no occasion for this Repetition of Blood-letting. And instead of Spirit of *Sal Armoniack*, you may use *Spirit or Volatile Salt of Man's Blood*, which is yet more Excellent.

Or the like Preparation of *Goat's Blood*; or the other Remedies before enumerated in some of the aforegoing Sections, which have been indeed assertain'd to us from manifold Experiences; and truly the Prescripts of *Helmont* and *Sylvius* are not enough to be praised; but that we may not seem to be poor in the most admirable Remedies for the Cure of this Disease, we shall here give the following Prescripts.

XI. *Salmon.*] *Dolæus* (that very Learned Physician) says, when a Pleurisy is caused by a coagulating Acid, and by the Motion of the Blood being hindred, we presently apply our selves to Blood-letting: But if there is any Malignity we omit it, and instead thereof we Cup, Scarrify, or apply Leeches in several Places, because these may be born without much loss of Strength. And the principal Things which do this, are such as consist of an *Alkali*, as well Fixt as Volatile. *Fixt Alkali's* absorb the Acids in the primary Digestions; but *Volatiles* do not only immediately imbibe the Acid, in all Parts, through the whole Body, but are also Alexipharmick and Diaphoretick. In the first Case this is very good. *Take Crab's Eyes, Mandible of a Pike, both in fine Pouder; Goat's Blood poudered, Flowers of Sulphur, Salt of Wormwood, of each equal Parts; mix them for two Doses, to be given twice or thrice a Day, in Syrup of Field or Corn Poppies.* Or this: *Take Hartshorn prepared by a Philosophick Calcination, Ivory so calcin'd, Pike's Jaw, each in subtil Pouder*

Pouder a ſcruple; Native Cinnabar, Boar's Tooth, of each half a ſcruple; Salt of Scurvygraſs ſix grains; Laudanum Opiatum a grain and half; mix for a Doſe, which repeat often. Or this: *Take Pouder of Goat's Blood, Pouder of Man's Blood, Sal Prunellæ, extract of Red Poppies reduced to a Pouder, of each a dram; Volatile Salt of Man's, or Goat's, or Ox's Skull's a ſcruple; Volatile Salt of Hartshorn half a ſcruple; Opium in fine Pouder one grain; mix them for two Doſes,* with a fit Vehicle.

XII. *Salmon.*] In the ſecond Caſe, where a Pleuriſy is accompanied with Malignity; here Alexipharmicks and Diaphoreticks are chiefly if not only uſeful. *Take Volatile Salt of Vipers, Volatile Salt of Hartſhorn, and Volatile Salt of Urine, of each a dram; fixt Salt of Scordium a dram and half; Pouder of Virginia Snake-root, and of Goat's Blood, of each four ſcruples; Choice Mithridate two ounces; mix them for twelve Doſes to be given every ſix hours, with a little Syrup of Corn Poppies.* Or this: *Take Tinctura Bezoartica four ounces; Spirit of Goat's Blood, or of Hartſhorn, an ounce; Tincture of Caſtor half an ounce; mix them for twelve Doſes,* to be given every ſix Hours in red Poppy-water, or in a Limpid, or ſmall Spirit drawn from *Opium* it ſelf, as we have taught at large in our *Pharmacopœia Bateana.* Or this: *Take Tinctura Bezoartica two ounces; red Poppy-water an ounce and half; Volatile Salt of Goat's Blood, or of Man's Blood, or of Hartſhorn, twelve grains; Liquid Laudanum thirty drops; Spirit of Sal Armoniack twenty drops; mix for two Doſes,* to be given in any proper Vehicle. This to be repeated every four or five Hours, more eſpecially if the Malignity be great.

XIII. *Salmon.*] If there is a great Thirſt) (but without Vomiting or Looſneſs) you may make this. *Take red Poppy-water, Angelica-water, Scordium-water, of each half a pint; Spirit or Water diſtill'd from Opium, Water of Ox, or Goat's Blood, or Milk-water, of each a quarter of a pint; Spirit of Salt, or Spirit of Nitre, ſo many drops as will make it pleaſantly ſharp, dulcify it with double refined Sugar,* and let the Sick drink of it moderately at pleaſure.

XIV. *Salmon.*] Outwardly to the pained Side apply a hot Loaf cut in two Pieces, as hot as it can be endured coming out of the Oven, ſome Mithridate or Venice-Treacle being ſpread upon it: Or, *Take Camomile (with the Flowers if in Seaſon) two handfuls; Featherfew, Mint, Southernwood, Tanſy, of each a handful; make them very hot in a Frying-Pan; then put them into a fine thin Linnen Bag, and bind it to the pained Side, as hot as it can be endured:* Have two of theſe Bags, that when the one is cold, the other may be preſently applied, and thus renewed *Alternatim*, till the Patient finds Eaſe.

XV. *Salmon.*] If the *Apoſtem* will not diſcuſs, but is in probability to come to *Suppuration*, or that the Blood is already turned into *Pus*, and that a Purulent Ulcer is made, ſo that great ſtore of Purulent Matter is raiſed, then you muſt give *Balſamum Sulphuris Terebinthinatum*, or *Balſam of* Peru, *made up into a Bolus, with Flower of Florentine Orrice-root, mixed in equal quan-*

quantity, with fine Pouder of Aniſeeds, or Zedoary, which may be repeated every ſix Hours: And ſometimes you muſt give *Spirit of Hartſhorn Aniſated,* which is for the moſt part exhibited with very good Succeſs; more-eſpecially if ſome few Drops of our *Guttæ Vitæ,* or *Liquid Laudanum,* be added to the ſame.

XVI. *Salmon.*] Laſtly, this is to be obſerved, That Cathartick, or Purgatives, are not to be given, but in the end of the Diſeaſe; for in ſo doing you will perturb the Natural Oeconomy, and put the Patient into immediate Danger of his Life.

CHAP. IX. *Of a Baſtard* Peripneumonia.

I. IT comes upon the approach of Winter, and many Times towards the end of it. At firſt, the Sick is hot and cold by Turns, he cannot ſtir without being troubled with a *Vertigo* or Swimming of the Head, and his Cheeks or Eyes are red and inflamed.

Salmon.] A *Peripneumony* is an Inflammation of the Lungs; and either the whole Subſtance of the Lungs is inflamed, and then it is a perfect and true *Peripneumony*; or one part only of the Left or Right Side, which if the latter, it is by ſome, tho' improperly, called a *Baſtard Peripneumony*: But in all theſe kinds of this Diſeaſe, the Blood in its Fermentation diſcharges its Recrements, or Viſcous Parts, upon the Subſtance of that *Viſcus*; ſometimes upon the whole, ſometimes upon one part, ſometimes upon another; and it differs from a *Pleuriſy* only in its Place or Situation; the former being only an Inflammation of the *Pleura*, this of the *Lungs*, and therefore may be thus deſcribed, *A* Peripneumony, *or* Pleuripneumony, *(as ſome call it) is an Inflammation of the Lungs in one or both Sides, joined with* 1. *An acute Fever.* 2. *A great Difficulty of Breathing.* 3. *A pricking Pain of the Breaſt.* 4. *Extenſion or great Oppreſſion of the Breaſt in and about the Heart.* 5. *And a violent Cough, ſometimes dry, ſometimes with frothy Spittle, and oftentimes Bloody.* Now the Blood cauſing this Diſeaſe is always too hot, which being ſtopt in its Motion, ſtagnates, and then evaſates, turns acid, and at length vellicates the Fibres, whence comes the Fever, vehement Pain or Pricking, and great Extenſion or Oppreſſion of the Breaſt. From this Deſcription it is evident, that every Pain, or Stich in the Side, may not be called a *Pleuriſy*, or *Peripneumony*, but only that which follows an acute Diſeaſe, as a Fever, and is attended with the aforeſaid Symptoms.

II. He coughs, and in coughing is afflicted with a vehement Pain in his Head; he vomits up liquid Things, his Urine is thick, and very red; his Blood is like that of a Pleuritick Perſon, he breaths thick and ſhort, and with a Pain in his Breaſt.

Salmon.]

Salmon.] These are Symptoms of a *Bastard Peripneumony*; now the *Bastard Kind* is that where either the Inflammation lies in the outward Muscles; or where the Violence of the Pain is excited through a Plenitude of Wind affecting those Parts, and being pent up in the same; and in this Case, *there is neither a Fever, nor spitting of Blood*. A Pain is indeed felt in the Region of the *Thorax* or Breast, which is in some measure exasperated by touching; yet it is not so fixed but that it will abate by applying Things which discuss Wind. In a *true Peripneumony*, the Substance of the Lungs are inflamed by a Diffusion of Blood, *&c.* for by reason it is soft, spongy, rare and porous, it is very subject to be inflamed, and the Pores are easy to be obstructed. *Hyppocrates de loc. in Homine, Text.* 24. says expressly, that *in a Peripneumony both Sides are affected; but in a Pleurisy only one is hurt.* And *Herophilus* says, that *a Peripneumony is a Tumour in the whole Body of the Lungs, but a Pleurisy only in one Part*: And in Dissections of some who have died of a *Peripneumony*, the Lungs and their Membranes have been found torn and corroded.

III. This Disease is plainly differenced from a dry *Asthma*, in which no Signs of a Fever appear, but in this are manifestly discovered, though they are much more obscure, and less vehement than in a *true Peripneumonia*.

Salmon.] Pathognomick Signs of a *true Peripneumony* are, 1. A Fever. 2. Difficulty of Breathing. 3. Pricking Pain in the Breast. 4. Extension of the Breast. 5. A dry Cough. See our *Synopsis Medicinæ, Lib.* 4. *cap.* 21. of the Third Edition.

How much a *true Peripneumony* differs from a *Pleurisy*, may be fully known from what has been already said; as also how much a *true Peripneumony* differs from a *Bastard*: This present Section is to shew us, how it may be distinguished from an *Asthma*, and other Diseases akin to it. Now a *Peripneumony* differs from an *Asthma* in this; that in the former the Substance of the Lungs and Membranes are repleat with stagnating Blood inflamed; whereas in an *Asthma*, the *Bronchia* of the Lungs, or *Trachea Arteria*, and Gristles or Lappets of the Lungs, are almost filled and stopped up with gross, viscous, and pituitous Humors, which compressing the Lungs, cause a stoppage in the Throat almost to Choaking, but at least to cause a very great Difficulty of Breathing, making the Respiration short, with a rattling Noise or Wheezing, and for the most part without a Fever.

IV. Let the sick Person be let Blood in the right Arm, to the quantity of ten Ounces, and the next Day take the following Potion.

Salmon.] If it be perceived at first, one single Vomit of *Vinum Benedictum*, or *Tartar Emeticum*, may happily do the Cure, by evacuating the Morbifick Matter of the first Passages and contiguous Parts: After which you must give Things cooling, as *Volatile Sal Armoniack*, or of Man's Blood, in a Glass of Milk-water, which does Wonders, and makes the Disease va-

our *Aqua Elementaria*, a little dulcified with double refined Sugar.

As to Bleeding, if it is a *true Peripneumony*, it may well enough be done: But if a *Bastard*, there is no occasion for that Operation; because it will certainly weaken the Patient, whose Srength, in this Case, the Physician ought to take great Care to conserve; nor though never so often repeated, it will remove any, not so much as the least part of the Morbifick Cause. You may exhibit at Bed-time a Dose of *Eclegma Sudorificum*, and drink after it some of this following Julep. *Take Powers of Juniper two ounces; Parsly-water eight ounces; Syrup of Juice of Parsly three or four ounces, or so much as may make it pleasant.* These Diureticks are used in the Julep, because they first assist the Sudorifick, by virtue of a secret Fermentation with it; and afterwards persue their own Course by precipitating the serous Matter, and so carry off the greatest part of the Morbifick Cause by Urine.

V. *Take extracted* Cassia *one ounce, Liquorice two drams, four fat Figs, Leaves of* Sena, *two drams and a half, Troches of* Agarick *one dram: Boil them in a sufficient quantity of Water to four ounces; then strain, and dissolve in the Liquor* Manna *one ounce, Solutive Syrup of Roses half an ounce.*

Salmon.] I know Authors prohibit Purging till the Declination of the Disease, and the Reason is, lest they should cause a Flux, which is said to be the most dangerous Symptom in this Distemper, and so the Concoction of the Humours will be hindered or prevented.

My Advice therefore is to use Sudorifick, Discussive, and Resolutive Remedies, till such Time as you are satisfied the Patient is out of all Danger. And if you find that the Fever is at all Malignant, you may use this Mixture from beginning to the end. *Take Angelica Water eight ounces; Spirit of Saffron two ounces; compound Tincture of Antimony one ounce; Syrup of Citron-peels, enough to make it pleasant:* Dose one or two Spoonfuls at a time, three or four times a Day, dropping into it every time it is taken, *twelve, sixteen, or twenty drops of Spirit of Hartshorn.*

VI. But if he cannot take a Potion, let him take two Scruples of the Pills *Cochiæ*, the greater, at four in the Morning.

Salmon.] This Purging ought, as I said before, to be in the Declination of the Disease. The much better way at first, is to give Relief by the Administration of Volatile Animal Salts.

Such are *Volatile Salt of Man's Blood, of Bullocks, Sheeps, Hogs, and Goat's Blood, Volatile Salt of Ox Flesh, or of Vipers, or of Hartshorn, Volatile Sal Armoniack*, made not with Quick-lime, but with Salt of Tartar: To these Things you may add *Volatile Salt of Beans, Sal Volatile Oleosum*, made after *Sylvius*'s Method; *Spirit of Hartshorn, of Ox, Goats, Hogs, or Sheep's Flesh; Spirit and Salt of Ox Horns; Volatile Salts of Man's Skull, and of Ox Heads, Goat's Heads, and Sheep's Heads*, all which have been found of excellent use: And afterwards, when the Danger is over, and you see purging is necessary; if the Patient is a Child, or

one of the Female Sex, you may purge them with *Potio Communis Purgativa*, either that of the Author, or that of our Prescription; or with *Cerevisia Purgativa*, or *Catharticum pro Infantibus*; and if a young Virgin, with *Decoctum Amarum Purgativum*: But if it is one of Years, or a Man, then purge with our *Family Pills*, or *Family Powder*, or with *Pulvis Catharticus*, or *Pilulæ Panarcæ*, which are to be so often prescribed and given as the prudent Physician shall direct.

VII. The next Day Bleed again, and take away the same Quantity of Blood as formerly.

Salmon.] That is, let Bleeding be, if the Administration of the Volatile Salts do nothing, or do not apparently deliver the Sick out of danger.

But I am apt to believe, yea, I may say I know, and that by Experience too, that if the former Method I have directed in this Chapter is persued, that there will be no farther occasion for Bleeding: For the Fever being abated, the Coagulum destroyed, and the Blood being once made fluxile, there is no fear of the Patients being restored to their perfect Health: If there is any external Pain, or the Breast or Side is very much pained, so as the Sick can scarcely endure it to be touched, you may bathe the Place with *camphorated Spirit of Wine*, mixed with a small Quantity of *Spirit of Sal Armoniack, or of Hartshorn*, and then you may apply to the Place, the *one half of a houshold Penny-loaf hot out of the Oven*, or the *Cataplasm made of Camomile*, as is directed in the former Chapter.

VIII. And the Day after let the Purging Medicine be again exhibited, and so repeated once in three Days, if the consideration of the Strength do not require longer Intervals to be allowed.

Salmon.] That is, the Symptoms being evidently abated, and the Disease in apparent Declination, then Purgation is rightly prescribed, and agrees with the Indication of Cure; for it is not fit to provoke Nature by Purges, till the Morbifick Matter is sufficiently concocted.

The Purge may be repeated every Day, or every other, or every third Day, according as the Strength and Habit of the Patient's Body will bear it, and as the Nature of the Purge may be: : If you use the *Sal Mirabile*, which (by reason of its cooling and antifebritick Properties) I judge to be the best and most absolute Purge in this Disease, it may be given either every Day, or every other Day at farthest, for four, five or six Times: And if the Patient is of a fat and gross Body, and full of evil Humours, the Quotidian use of it will be absolutely necessary.

IX. Moreover, if the Symptoms still continue, he must Bleed once, twice, or oftner, interposing always some Days, as you see reason: But for the most part the second Bleeding will be sufficient.

Salmon.] Be sure the *Volatile Salts*, or *Sal Prunellæ*, be often repeated in proper Vehicles, and I am very confident (from manifold Experiences) you will have no occasion for this repeated Blood-letting.

After

After the use of *Volatile Salts*, or *Sal Prunellæ*, (which can scarcely go without their Effects, unless the Body is wonderfully repleat with ill Humors) give the Patient an Ounce or more of *Cassia newly extracted* in Sack-Whey, which repeat twice: If the Symptoms should return, then apply your self again to the use of the Volatile Salts, or of *Sal Prunellæ*, till you see all the evil Effects of the Disease are mastered, and those Things may be given in *Angelica* and red Poppy-waters mixt in equal Quantities, and so dulcified with Syrup of red Poppies: The Symptoms being vanisht, you must then Purge with *Sal Panaretum*, or the Universal Salt, which is the only Cathartick to be now made use of, after the Disease has shewn it self to be so rebellious and stubborn.

X. In the mean time, while this Method is followed, let him use the Pectoral Decoction, *Lohoch*, and Oil of Sweet Almonds, prescribed in the foregoing Chapter, especially in the Days that are free from Purgation.

Salmon.] These Things open, make smooth and slippery, and prepare the way for Purges, which are to carry off the Morbifick Humors concocted. The usual Medicine now a Days, both in *Pleurisies* and *Peripneumonies* also, is to swallow large Quantities of *Linseed-Oil*, which is a thing loathsome enough; but the Quacks every where use it, for want of knowing a better and more generous Remedy.

XI. *Salmon.*] Whilst the Blood circulates aright in its Vessels, the Body is kept in its State of Health, because of the exact Commixtion, and Distribution of this Vital Liquor for the nourishing of the Parts: But when and where-ever it is evasated, or is stagnate, or stopt in any Part, it is converted into an Acid Ferment: So long as it is contained within its Vessels, so long it acts the salubrious Part, and makes the Body Healthful; but when by solution of Continuity, it flows out of the Vessels into any of these Pectoral Parts, it commonly acts a Tragical Part, being repleat with a very thin and acid *Serum*. For all Humors (even the *Lympha* it self (when evasated into any Part, if they continue there long, will degenerate and become Acid, because they then lose their Spirits; when this Extravasation is made in the *Pleura*, and Muscles of the Breast, it causes a *Pleurisy*; but if it is made in the *Lungs*, it causes a *Peripneumony* (as aforesaid) and hence comes sometimes an Apostem, and an Ulcer, if the Matter will not admit of Dissipation, but will come to Suppuration.

XII. *Salmon.*] If a *Peripneumony* follows a *Pleurisy*, it is very dangerous, and for the most part mortal: If a *Quinsey* succeeds it, and Blood breaks forth violently out of the Jaws, the Sick dies generally before the first Crisis: But if they escape the first Crisis, the *Apostem* will come to Suppuration, and then *an Ulcer of the Lungs* is generated, which is not cured without much Difficulty: So also if the Sick does not expe-

ctorate within 14 Days, or before the second Crisis, the *Apostem* will come to Maturation, which is the converting the inflamed Tumor of the Lungs into a purulent Ulcer. Long want of Expectoration, or vehement Sweating about the Neck and Head, which proceed from danger of Suffocation, and from the Force and Violence of the Disease, are all dangerous Symptoms. And if the whole Lungs be affected, so as the Pain and Tumor extend to the Side, it presages a Palsy to succeed: Because the Blood flowing largely into the *Arteria Magna* fills thereby the intercostal Arteries, and make the little Branches passing through the Holes of the *Vertebræ Thoracis* into the Spinal Marrow to swell, whence the Nerves passing from the said Spinal Marrow being compressed, the Flux of the Animal Spirits are hindered, and so a Palsy is inevitably induced.

XIII. *Salmon.*] As to the Cure of this Disease, it differs little or nothing from the Cure of the *Pleurisy*, and is to be performed for the most part with the same Medicines. *Sal Prunellæ* (if skilfully used) is a Specifick in this Cure: And if the Tumor comes to Suppuration, the healing of it is to be performed by giving *Balsam of* Peru, from one Dram to two Drams, or three, and that twice a Day. Or you may give this: *Take Balsam of* Peru *four ounces, Balsam of* Tolu *two ounces, Styrax Calamita extracted one ounce, Chymical Oil of Limons half an ounce; mix them well together.* Dose from a Dram to two Drams, twice a Day in any convenient Vehicle. As to the rest of the Cure, you are to proceed in it according to the former Directions delivered in this and the aforegoing Chapters.

CHAP. X. *Of a Rheumatism.*

I. IN this Distemper they are first taken with Coldness and Shivering, and the other Symptoms of a Fever; and in a Day or two (sometime sooner) they are attack'd with a most sharp Pain, sometimes in one part, and sometimes in another, more-especially in the Wrists, Shoulders and Knees, which it leaves, and returns by Fits, the Part last affected continuing for some time after red and swoln.

Salmon.] This Disease is called Ῥευματισμὸς, *Rheumatismus*, a Rheumatism; and by some Authors *Arthritis vaga*, the Running Gout, which is when the Pain is not fixed in any particular Part or Joint, but runs from one Place to another. If it is from a Scorbutick Root or Fountain, it makes many, and often removes; and sometimes it is in almost all Parts of the Body at once. But if it is from a Hypochondriack Root or Fountain, it pricks and afflicts the Limbs with sharp Pains, extending the Skin and Muscles, as if they were swelled or tumified; the Stomach is also very ill, and is afflicted with

with a dull and heavy Pain; and indeed the whole Stomach, Hypoconders, and Belly are affected for many Hours together; sometimes six, eight or ten, or more, almost every Day, with a sad, melancholy, and dispiriting sick kind of Bellyach, so very unpleasing to the Patient, as to make him almost to desire Death to relieve and give him ease. It seizes almost all the Joints of the Body, but it acts its part after a more singular manner upon the Shoulders and Hips.

II. The Fever goes off by Degrees, the Pain still remaining, yea, and sometimes raging more vehemently than before.

Salmon.] It manifests it self sometimes with a Fever, and sometimes without. If it comes with a Fever, though the Fever goes off, yet the Rheumatism for the most part remains, unless a critical and mighty Flux of Urine succeeds; for by that means the Morbifick Cause is oftentimes happily carried off, and so well, that a perfect Cure ensues: Otherwise upon the going off of the Fever, the Pain is translated to some new Part, not yet affected, and then rages with more Violence; and sometimes it is translated to the Stomach and Bowels, to the great danger of the Patient's Life. If it comes without a Fever, it wanders or moves slower, and remains longer in a Place, as if it had taken up its Habitation in that part, and was loth to remove; the Pain is more equal and constant, and seems to have Periodical Paroxysms, being almost every Day certain to an Hour, and in this Condition the Patient remains not only many Months but Years, unless he be so happy as to meet with a Cure in the mean Season.

III. In Rheumatick Pains of the Loins, there is one most violent, which remains fixed about the Region of the Loins, not much unlike to the Stone; only the sick Person is not affected with a desire of Vomiting.

Salmon.] This Symptom of Vomiting being wanting, it is plainly to be distinguished from the Stone; because that, or a Sickness at Stomach, and a Quamishness always accompany Tartarous and Calculous Diseases. Sometimes this Rheumatick Pain of the Loins, by its Acuteness and Vehemency extends it self to the lower Parts of the Spine, and affects even the Huckle-bone, and Hips, or Buttocks themselves, after the manner of a *Sciatica*; and then it is so violent, that the Patient cannot turn himself in his Bed, nor is any ways able to help himself; and if a Cure does not suddenly come on, it many Times encreases to such an Extremity, as to inervate the whole Man.

IV. He cannot lie in his Bed, but either leaps out of it, or sits upright in it, continually tossing his Body backwards and forwards, up and down. The Blood is like that in a Pleurisy.

Salmon.] This is only when it has taken a Seizure of the Loins, and Huckle-bone or Hips; as also when the Matter is translated into the Stomach and Bowels; for by the Natural Ferment, always present and

lodged in those Parts, the Morbifick Matter becomes augmented; and is dispersed, by their innate and natural Heat, into all the adjacent *Viscera*, whence comes that almost intolerable Inquietude and Restlesness, which is such, that no Posture of sitting, standing, or lying, can be any ways easy; so that the Patient is forced to try all manner of Ways, though without Relief, and sometimes even to the farther exaggerating of the Pain.

V. Bleed ten Ounces on the Arm of the Side affected.

Salmon.] Bleeding now-a-days is the general Remedy for this Disease, but nothing seems to be more ill adapted, and sometimes more fatal to the Patient than this, especially if they be very young, very old, very fat, or in a Consumption; and where it may be more freely used, it is not without its Inconveniencies; for though sometimes it seems to give a present Relief, yet it is found by more than a Thousand Experiences, that the Disease always returns, and that with more Impetuosity, till such time as the Patient can receive no more good by it, and is left in an incurable State; or the Liquor in the Veins becomes all Water through the manifold Effusions of Blood, and an irrecoverable Dropsy be induced; and this is generally the ultimate Effect of the inconsiderate Bleedings, now mostly used in the Cure of this Disease; which I hope the Prudent, by this Admonition, will take notice of for the future, and carefully avoid, as they value the quiet of their own Minds, and the Peace of their Souls.

VI. *Take Water of Lettice, Purslain, and Water-Lillies, of each four ounces; Syrup of Limons one ounce and a half; Syrup of Violets one ounce: Mix, and make a Julep to be drank at Pleasure.*

Salmon.] The first thing to be done is to give a Vomit of *Tartar Emetick*, and in three or four Days time to repeat it; which being given a third Time in some Hundreds (to my Knowledge) has absolutely done the Cure without any other means: But if the Disease be rebellious, and will not submit to this, you may after the Vomits give two or Three Purges of the *Pilulæ Mirabiles*, or those of *Chalmetæus*, which seem to take away the Pains as if it were done by Enchantment, as these Pills mostly do; yet in some Patients we have met withal, they have been ineffectual: In this case we have been forced to have recourse to the *Aurum Vitæ*, or *Turbith Mineral*, which has been given *a gr. ii. ad iii. ʃs.* or *gr. iv.* made up into a Pill with the Pulp of a roasted Apple, and given two Nights together, intermitting two Nights, and then repeating the Doses for two Nights more; and thus continuing for six or eight Doses, till a gentle Flux does arise, which does truly, and beyond all other means most effectually cure this Disease; I speak from a long and through-tried Experience: But in some Persons, where I would not have a Salivation or Flux, I have given gentle and pleasing Catharticks in the Intervals of the two and two Doses: And these Methods I have never found to fail.

VII.

VII. Prescribe an *Emulsion of the four greater cold Seeds, and a Cataplasm of the Crums of white Bread and Milk, ting'd with Saffron, to be applied to the Part affected.*

Salmon.] You are to consider whether the Sick be of a hot or cold Habit of Body, and so accordingly to order the External Application: If of a hot Habit, you may anoint the Parts affected with Balsam of *Saturn*, or with this. *Take* Saccharum Saturni *one ounce, which dissolve in a little Spirit of Vinegar, and mix it with Oil of Ben eight ounces, shaking them well together,* to anoint with Morning and Evening. If the Patient is of a cold Habit, you may anoint the Parts affected with this. *Take Chymical Oils of Rosemary, Savin, Lavender, Sassafras, and Amber, of each one ounce; Oil of Ben two ounces and a half*; mix and anoint well therewith Morning and Evening. If the Pain is inveterate or rebellious, use this. *Take Oil of Amber three ounces, Camphire one ounce; mix and dissolve, to which add Oil of Ben one ounce and a half*; and sometimes you may use it without the Addition of Oil of Ben, especially if a Trembling, Coldness of the Part, Numbness, or Paralysis, seem to be present.

VIII. The Day after Bleed as before, which let be repeated after a Day or two, and the same Operation must be reiterated four Times, or oftner, if Necessity requires: Observing that after the second Time the Intervals must still be longer.

Salmon.] I have delivered my Opinion before concerning Bleeding; and I am confident that this Course will so weaken the Patient, that afterwards the true Method of Cure will be very hazardous to be attempted: I speak Experimentally; I know my own Course to be the best and certainest way of Cure.

After that an Emetick has been twice or thrice given, which ought to be either the *Emetick Tartar*, or *Crocus Metallorum*, in Substance, or in Infusion, which is the *Vinum Benedictum*, and may be given from half an Ounce to an Ounce, or in strong Bodies, mixed with half an Ounce of *Oxymel simple*, or *Syrup of Limons*; or the *Vinum Rubellum*, which may be given in the same Dose and Manner: I say, after that some one of these Things has been successively given, an interval of Time being between, let the Patient purge two or three Times with the *Pulvis Catharticus*, described *in Cap.* 1. *Sect.* 20. of this Book: This Medicine (if the Disease is recent, and the Body not gross, or much stuft with ill Humors) being some few Times repeated, may compleat the Cure: But if the Distemper is inveterate, and proves stubborn, so as to resist all the other Remedies, you must then give this. *Take Pulvis Catharticus, Impetus Mercurii Aurique, of each an ounce; mix them*: Of this you may give the Patient from half a Dram to a Dram, in any convenient Vehicle in the Morning fasting, a Gallon or more of Posset-drink, or rather Mutton-broth, being before-hand made, to be taken in the Working, of which the Patient ought to take half a Pint almost every

half hour, at least so long till it is evident that the Operation is over, and the Medicine has done working for that time.

IX. In the Days that are free from Bleeding, let a Clyster of Sugar'd Milk be sometimes injected, or that which follows.

Salmon.] The Clyster of Sugar'd Milk is thus made. *Take Milk a pint, being scalding hot, dissolve in it brown Sugar four ounces*, and exhibit Blood-warm. But if the Body be full of acid Humors, it will be better to take Posset-drink, which will not be apt to curdle in the Bowels: However, if you pursue my Method of Cure, all this is needless, unless a vehement Constipation of Body happens.

Bleeding in this Cure (as I hinted before) is better let alone than used: But where there is a Plenitude of sharp Humors, the Clyster in the Intervals of Purging may be profitably used: But to persue the Course of the Cure, where there is an Inveteracy and Stubborness of the Disease, the last prescribed Medicine ought to be given three or four Times, every other Day, if the Strength of the Patient will permit it; and then the Sick may rest for ten or twelve Days, or more, as the Physician shall direct.

X. *Take of the common Decoction for a Clyster one pint, Syrup of Violets and brown Sugar, of each two ounces:* Mix them for a Clyster.

Salmon.] Let this Clyster be sometimes given in those ten or twelve Days of the Intervals of Purging; and let the Rheumatick Parts be twice a Day well bathed with this Mixture. *Take Powers of Amber, of Rosemary, of Penny-Royal, of each two ounces; Powers of Savin, of Sage, of Lavender, of each one ounce; Powers of Sassafras, of Limons, and of Caraways, of each half an ounce: Mix them* to bathe withal as before directed: And inwardly, let the Sick take every Morning fasting this Dose. *Take Impetus Martis from thirty drops to forty five or fifty; Tincture of Coral twenty drops; choice Canary four ounces; mix for a Draught* Or this: *Take Liquid Laudanum twenty to thirty drops, or more, according to Age and Habit of Body; Tinctura Bezoartica twenty drops; Tincture of Damask Roses made with Canary four ounces: Mix for a Dose*, to be given every Night at Bed-time. Or this: *Take Eclegma Sudorificum from a scruple to half a dram; Tartar Vitriolate twelve grains; Cochinele eight grains: Mix for a Dose*, drinking after it four Ounces of *Tincture of Damask Roses made in Canary*: And these Doses are to be continued every Day either Morning or Night, as is directed, so long till the Symptoms are abated, or the Physician shall think convenient. If the Morning Dose is used, then *give fifty or sixty drops of the Tincture Bezoartica, in four ounces of Tincture of Damask Roses in Canary*, every Night at Bed-time: But if the Night Dose is given, then *the said Tincture, in Tincture of Damask Roses*, &c. is to be given every Morning fasting.

XI. If the Patient's Weakness will not suffer this repeated Bleeding, then after the second or third Time the Cure is to be thus pursued

Salmon.] If the Pain, notwithstanding all that has been yet done, shall still remain, which

which I have ſcarcely ever obſerved, for that the Remedies are truly ſo potent, I adviſe (inſtead of Bleeding, which our Author has ſo often preſcribed) to apply a large Veſicatory to the Part, eſpecially if the Pain is fixed in the Shoulder, brawny Places of the Arm, Hips, or Thighs, or other like muſculous Parts, which is to be kept open and running as long as they can be; and when they are healed up, in a Day or two after, let other Bliſters be applied in like manner, and kept open; and after this, let them be renewed twice or thrice more, as the Phyſician ſhall think fit, till ſuch Time as the whole Morbifick Matter is drawn forth and exhauſted; taking during all the time of this bliſtering Courſe, the Morning and Evening Doſes, which we have preſcribed in the former Section, and in the ſame Order, without Intermiſſion.

XII. Let him take the common Purging Potion at *Cap. 1. Sect.* 1. aforegoing, every other Day, while his Diſtemper continues, and the ſame Nights a Reſting Julep of the Syrup of Poppies.

Salmon.] This Purge our Author here adviſes, is only to be given to ſuch as are very weak, and where the Diſeaſe is recent; otherwiſe it will be given in vain, and to no Purpoſe; for in an inveterate Rheumatiſm, and where the Patient is ſtrong, and vaſtly repleat with ill Humors, it will only diſturb the Morbifick Matter, and make the Diſeaſe worſe; and this thing the Phyſician ought always to conſider, that he may not put his Patient to trouble without effect. If the Purge works ſtrongly, and thereby weakens the Sick too much, you ought to give an Opiate, to ſtrengthen and refreſh the diſturbed *Archæus*, as from fifteen to thirty or forty Drops of *Liquid Laudanum*, or a Scruple of *Eclegma Sudoriſicum*, or ſome ſuch like thing, which will as it were revive one from the Dead

XIII. But if theſe Medicines prove ineffectual, and the Weakneſs of the Sick be ſuch, that he cannot endure Purging, let him uſe the Antiſcorbutick Electuary and Water deſcribed in the Chapter *of the Scurvy*, which are alſo profitable in the Scorbutick Rheumatiſm,

Salmon.] The great Remedy of the World is the *Anticolick* of *Sylvius*, which may be given in twenty, thirty, or forty Drops, in any proper Vehicle.

Our *Spiritus Aperiens* may alſo be given in Water-gruel, or Mutton-broth, and in all that the Patient drinks, whether Ale, Beer, or Wine: If the Patient is of a cold Habit of Body, this following Electuary may be taken. *Take Cortex Winteranus in fine Powder four ounces, Zedoary three ounces; Virginia Snake-root two ounces; conſerve of Garden Scurvygraſs an ounce and half; Nutmegs in fine Powder one ounce; Syrup of Citron-peels, enough to make it into an Electuary*, of which the Patient may take as much as a large Nutmeg, Morning, Noon and Night, upon the Point of a Knife, waſhing it down with a little of this following Water. *Take Muſtard-ſeed, Rocket-Seed, Scrapings of Horſe-radiſh Roots, Aron-roots, of each one pound; Leaves of Garden Scurvy-*

Scurvygrass, of Garden-cresses, of Water-cresses, and of Brooklime, of each six handfuls; of Fennel, Hyssop, Mint, Winter-savory and Thime, of each four handfuls; Orange-peels, Scurvygrass-seed, of each half a pound; Nutmegs, Cloves in gross Pouder, of each two ounces; white Lisbon Wine two gallons: Mix, digest warm for four or five Days, and in Balneo draw off six quarts of Spirituous Water for use, as aforesaid.

XIV. In Youth, and such who are not not much addicted to Wine, the Rheumatism may be more happily cured by a very cooling and indifferently nourishing Diet, than by repeated letting of Blood, which they cannot so well bear. For Example,

Salmon.] Our Author has hit much upon the right in this; for repeated Blood-letting many times draws the Scorbutick Taint, and Rheumatick Malignity out of the musculous Flesh into the Blood-Vessels, and defiles the whole Mass at once; and so fixes the Disease in the vital Juice, that scarcely after that the most potent Remedies will do almost nothing at all, to the very great Scandal both of the Art of Physick, and of the Physician too; for which reason, all young Artists ought to be advised, and follow more prudent Courses, if they desire to be attended with Success.

XV. Let the Sick live only upon Whey four Days together; and afterwards besides his Whey, he may once a Day, instead of a Dinner, eat a little White Bread, till he is well recovered. Only during the last Days of his Illness, he may be allowed to eat another piece of Bread for his Supper.

Salmon.] If through the Violence or long Continuance of the Disease, the Patient becomes Tabifick or Consumptive, this thin Course of Diet will not do, but rather quickly send him to his Grave. In this case let him eat half a Pint or better of well made Chocolet; wherein a quarter of a Pound of Chocolet is allowed to a Pint of the Vehicle; and if the Stomach will bear it, let the Vehicle be half Water, half Milk, or two Thirds Water, one Third Milk: But if their Stomach will not away with it, then let it be made of pure Water alone, in the former Proportion, and let him drink it at least twice a Day, eating with it a hard-baked Toast, made of pure White Bread: *Potatoes*, both English and Spanish, are also good for him: So also choice sweet *Parsneps*; but above all, the sweetest sort of *Turneps*, by the plentiful eating of which Root alone for a Month or six Weeks, and abstaining from all other Food, this Disease, under its worst Circumstances has been cured.

XVI. After the ceasing of the Symptoms, he may eat boil'd Chickens, and other Food of easy Digestion, observing every third Day to drink only Whey, till he be perfectly restored to his former Health.

Salmon.] Or Veal, and any Meat of a slippery and juicy Quality; Fish of Gravelly Places, Whitings, Flounders, Soals, Smelts, *&c.* And after eating, he may drink a little sup of Generous Wine to help the Concoction.

Or

Or Milk, if it curdles not in the Stomach, which is better than all of them: Gelly of Hartshorn is of singular use, so also is Gelly made of Goats and Rams-horns, of Neats and Calves-feet, and of Sheeps-trotters; Neats-tongues, Hogs, and Sheeps-tongues, and young Udders, may also be profitably eaten for change of Diet, if agreeable with the Stomach of the Sick: Add to these Things Boiled, Roasted, and Poached Eggs, eaten with pure White Bread well toasted, and Hulled Barley or Rice-Milk; all which things sweeten the Blood, breed sweet Humors, and reinstate the Patient in a good Degree of Health.

CHAP. XI. *Of the Erysipelatous, or Red Swelling Fever.*

I. ALL the Parts of the Body, chiefly the Face, are swoln red, and full of Pain. The Face and Head are overspread with little thick Pimples, which sometimes become Blisters, the Eyes are hid under the Swelling; Coldness, Shivering, and other Signs of a Fever do also appear.

Salmon.] Heat and Coldness appear here *alternatim*; the Patient is many times sick at Stomach, and seems inclined to Vomit: After the Cold is gone off, the Heat succeeds, but gradually, much exceeding the Cold in its degree; this Heat remains for a long time, by which the Blood being put into a small Fermentation, and mixing with some Parts of the bilious Recrements, a small Portion of morbid Matter is protruded to the Skin, not at all like to the Small-Pox, but more like in Form to the Itch, all which is accompanied with a kind of flatulent Tumor or Swelling.

II. There is another kind of this Disease, (caused by the drinking of Wines, or other spirituous Liquors) in which there is a gentle Fever, accompanied with Wheals, like those that are caused by the pricking of Nettles, which mostly rise up into Blisters, then suddenly vanish, and lurk under the Skin, where they occasion a very troublesome Itching, and after Scratching they appear again.

Salmon.] In this case there is seldom any Cold preceeds the ambient Heat; but the Pimples when they break out are commonly larger, than in the former, prick and smart more, from the sharp Particles derived from the Wine, and sometimes by reason of the Acrimony of the Humors become absolute Blisters, the whole Skin being of a fiery red Colour: But these as their Cause seems to be from an acrimonious Flatus, so the Wind being discussed they commonly fall of their own accords, leaving an Itching behind them.

III. There is yet another sort of Eruption, which usually comes forth in the Breast; and is a discoloured Spot that scarcely arises above the Skin, being Scurfy and full of yellow Scales.

Salmon.]

Salmon.] If this should spread it self all over the Body, it could be accounted nothing else but the Itch; but as it confines it self to this part only, or some few other adjacent Parts, and besides that it is not contagious, or to be catcht by touching; it so far differs from the Itch; nor indeed is it to be accounted any kind of that Disease, notwithstanding its so near Resemblance thereof, but is truly of the Species of the Erysipelatous Fever, it being always accompanied with a Feverish Heat.

IV. The Person affected with it is well so long as it continues, but after its disappearing there follows a gentle Sickness, and the Urine is without Digestion and yellow.

Salmon.] And the reason is, because the Morbifick Matter ceasing to be any longer protruded, it falls upon the more vital Parts; but being for the most part without Malignity, has no farther ill Effects; except in some sanguine People, where it many times falls upon the *Fauces*, *Larynx*, *and other Parts belonging to the Throat*, and produces sometimes dangerous Humors and Apostems there, and sometimes the Pleurisy. In this case a gentle Emetick ought to be immediately given, and after that, this. *Take choice Canary three ounces; Spirit of Sal Armoniack made with Salt of Tartar thirty drops; mix them for a Dose*, which ought to be given twice a Day: And if the Throat grows soar, you must often gargle it, and the Mouth with this Gargarism. *Take Milk-water, or Black Cherry-water, or Angelica-water, a pint; Sal Prunellæ, an ounce in Pouder; mix and dissolve, and then add new Honey, if it can be gotten, an ounce and half; shake all together for a Lotion.* But if the Throat shall become Sore and Exulcerated, you must use the aforesaid Mixture four or five Times a Day, and if that heals it not, or not so speedily as you desire it, you must then make use of the *Eclegma ad Laryngu exulcerationem*, as directed in *Cap.* 1. *Sect.* 26. of this Book aforegoing.

V. It is cured with the same Remedies that are prescribed for a confirmed Itch. Let the Patient drink Wine, and feed upon Meats of light Digestion.

Salmon.] You may apply the same Medicines, where the external Eruptions are many, and the Itching vehement, as to anoint with *Unguentum cnulatum cum Mercurio*, *Unguentum Neopolitanum*, or *Hogs-Lard, a quarter of a pound, mixed with Flowers of Sulphur, an ounce and half*, &c. But for the generality, there is no need of any of those things; for besides the Internals before, and hereafter to be prescribed, these following Externals are only necessary. *Take Damask Rose-water a quart, white Vitriol two ounces, Roch Allom an ounce, mix and dissolve; and sometimes to this Mixture you may add white Port Wine half a pint, or more.* Or this: *Take Damask Rose-water a quart, white Lisbon Wine a pint, Sal Prunellæ two ounces; mix and dissolve, and keep it for use.* Or this: *Take Damask Rose water a quart; Juice of Limons, or the best Dutch Wine Vinegar half a pint; Sal Prunellæ two ounces, mix and dissolve.* Or this: *Take white Lisbon Wine a quart, of our Spiritus Cosmeticus eight ounces;* mix

mix them for a Waſh. With any of theſe *Lotions* the Patient may have the external affected Parts bathed, Blood-warm, for almoſt a quarter of an hour at a Time, two, three or four Times a Day, as the Neceſſity may require, and Conveniency will admit.

VI. Let a Vein be opened in the Arm, and nine or ten Ounces of Blood taken away; the next Day let the common Purging Potion be exhibited, at *Sect.* 1. *Chap* 1. aforegoing.

Salmon.] In theſe Diſtempers Nature has caſt forth the Recrements of the Blood into the fleſhy Subſtance; and therefore you ought to be cautious of Bleeding, leſt you draw the Morbifick Matter again into the Blood, and ſo do more Miſchief. The beſt Way in my Opinion is upon the firſt approach of the Diſeaſe, to give one Doſe of *Tartar Emetick*, which may be given from two Grains to ſix; after which you ought the next Day to promote the *Diaphoreſis* with this. *Take Bezoar Mineral gr.* x. *ad dram* i. *Cochinel a gr.* vi. *ad* xii. *Saffron a gr.* ii. *ad* iv. *Volatile Salt of Amber a gr.* iii. *ad* vi. Mix, and give it with Care in a naked Bed, two or three Hours before the uſual Time of the Fits approach; and the next Day repeat the ſame, and if need, the third and fourth Days. In the time of Sweating give the *Pearl Cordial*, or *Cordial Julep*, at Sect. 3 & 4. Chap. 1. aforegoing.

VII. *Take of the Roots of Marſhmallows and Lillies, of each one ounce; Leaves of Mallows, Elder, and Baſe Mullein, Flowers of Camomile and Melitot, Tops of St.* John-wort *and leſſer Centory, of each one handful; Linſeed, Fœnugreek-ſeed, of each half an ounce. Boil them in a convenient quantity of Water to three pints; ſtrain out the Liquor, and when you uſe it, add to every pint two ounces of Spirit of Wine.* Dip Pieces of Woollen Cloth in this Decoction, and having ſqueezed them, apply them hot twice every Day, bathing the Parts affected, after Fomentation, with the following Mixture.

Salmon.] You may, beſides bathing the affected Parts with the Mixtures which I have preſcribed in the former Section, apply Woollen Stuphs dipt in the ſame, (particularly in the laſt Mixture) hot, twice or thrice a Day; becauſe thereby the Pores will be kept open, and much more of the Morbifick Matter latent in the *Cutis* will be drawn forth, as well as the Itching thereby will be allayed; yet we exclude not what our Author has here adviſed, which is a thing of good uſe. But in the uſe of all Things of this Nature, the prudent Phyſician ought to be conſulted; becauſe a ſmall Fault in the beginning (though only in the uſe of Externals) may prove a great Error, and be of bad Conſequence in the end. If the Parts ſhould grow dry or hard, you muſt anoint with this. *Take Oil of Ben an ounce; Camphire a dram; Sperma Cæti two drams; Mix for an Ointment.* Or this: *Take choice Golden-coloured Palm Oil two ounces; Sperma Cæti three drams; Camphire a dram; Oil of Limons twenty drops: Mix them, and keep it for uſe.*

VIII. *Take Spirit of Wine half a pint; Venice Treacle two ounces; Pouder of long Pepper, and of Cloves, of each two drams; make*

a

a Mixture. In which dip a Piece of brown Paper, and wrap about the Part affected.

Salmon.] Instead of all this, you may better anoint with this Oil, which in twenty four Hours time will not go without its Effect. *Take Saccharum Saturni two drams; Vinegar two spoonfuls, or sometimes more, to dissolve the Saccharum; then mix the Dissolution with Oil of Ben four ounces; shaking them well together:* Anoint the sore Places three, four, five, or six Times a Day therewith, as you shall see occasion; in one Day and Night the Inflammation will be wholly taken away. Or you may use this. *Take Spirit of Wine six ounces, Camphir half an ounce, mix and dissolve; then take red Poppy-water three ounces, Saccharum Saturni two drams; mix and dissolve over a gentle Heat: Mix these two Dissolutions together, and therewith bathe well the Parts inflamed or affected, several Times a Day.* Or this: *Take red Poppy-water six ounces, Juice of Limons one ounce, Spirit of Wine two ounces; mix for a Lotion to bathe with. Take Juice of Houseleek, Cream, of each eight ounces; boil them together till the Oil swims on top, which take off, and keep for use:* With the Water being warmed, bathe the Parts afflicted, which being well done, and the Part dried, then anoint the same with the reserved Oil.

IX. If the first Bleeding be not enough, it may be repeated; and if the Disease still remains, it may be reiterated yet once more, letting always one Day be between.

Salmon.] As to my Thoughts of Bleeding in this case, I refer you to what has been said before; but if notwithstanding all that is said has been done, and the Cure not compleated, it is necessary to continue the use of the same Means, till such time as Nature has made a perfect Conquest: As *Rome* was not built in a Day, so neither are Diseases perfectly overcome, but by a gradual and continued Use of the Means: And those Diseases which by the same Remedies if happily used, might have been obliterated; by the foolish and indiscreet Discontinuation, are left almost in a State of Obduration; for which Reason, the Patient is desired not to be tired out, or wearied, with the use of the Means, but contentedly to sit down under the prescribed Course, till such time as the happy Issue is produced. And this very Observation ought to he considered, in the Cure of almost all Diseases happening to humane kind, especially in such as are Chronick, or such Distempers, which being originally acute, degenerate and become inveterate.

X. In the Days in which you Bleed not, prescribe a Clyster of Milk, with Syrup of Violets, and cooling Emulsions and Juleps.

Salmon.] This is a Famous one. *Take Posset-drink a pint, brown Sugar four ounces, Oil of Mace by Expression two drams; mix them, and give it warm.* Or this which is beyond all other Clysters. *Take Turpentine one ounce, Yolks of Eggs N° two; mix and grind them well together in a Mortar, then add to them Posset-drink a pint, sweetned with Sugar; mix all together, and give it warm.* This Clyster will be of extraordinary Use, if the Virulency

lency of the Diſeaſe has attacked the Bowels, or the Colick, or Wind ſhould affect any of thoſe Parts.

XI. *Salmon.*] This cooling Emulſion may be made; *Take hull'd Barley boiled to perfect ſoftneſs eight ounces, Milk-water ſixteen ounces, grind them well in a Mortar, and pulp them through a Sieve; which done, add Syrup of Limons, Syrup of Juice of Citrons, of each three ounces; mix them for an Emulſion,* to be given a Spoonful at a time now and then, as the Sick likes it. Or *an Emulſion may be made of Sweet Almonds, or of the four cold Seeds, and ſweetned with Syrup of Juice of Limons,* to be taken as aforeſaid.

XII. *Salmon.*] This following Julep is of excellent Uſe. *Take Angelica, and Black Cherry-waters, of each four ounces; Fennel-water, Milk-water, of each two ounces; Syrup of Limons, and Syrup of Citron-peels, of each two ounces and a half: Mix for a Julep.* Or this: *Take red Poppy-water ſix ounces, Borrage-water three ounces, Syrup of Violets and of Limons, of each ſo much as to make it pleaſant,* of which give the Patient two or three Spoonfuls now and then.

CHAP. XII. *Of Fevers from Breeding of Teeth.*

I. GIve two, three, or four Drops of Spirit of Hartſhorn, as the Age of the Child may require, every four Hours, in a Spoonful or two of Black Cherry-water, or ſome other proper Julep, repeating it four or ſix Times.

Salmon.] This Medicine 'tis true is good to abate the febrile Heat, but by reaſon of its alkalizate Taſte, it will be very apt to pall the Stomach of the Child. For this Reaſon, I ſhould rather adviſe to the uſe of *Oil of Sulphur*, or *Vitriol*, which may be dropt into Milk-water till its Heat is allayed, and then mixed with *Syrup of Clove-Gilliflowers*, to a grateful Acidity: This may be often given the Child, either in *Mint or Milk-water*, or in a kind of *Barley-broth*, or in *thin Water-gruel*, which being often repeated will infallibly cure the Fever. But if the Child ſucks, it muſt not be given preſently after Sucking; nor muſt it ſuck till an Hour after taking it: And if the Child ſucks not, it is to be fed with *Panada*, *Broth*, and other like Things, and be debarr'd the taking of *Milk-meats*, till ſuch Time as the Fever is cured, and the uſe of this Medicine is given over.

II. *Salmon.*] For to prevent this kind of Fever, you ought to prevent the hard breeding of Teeth, which is done by the uſe of Corals, and for which Reaſon they were invented; for by the conſtant uſe of them, Children will breed their Teeth with much more Eaſe and Safety: But the Matter of Coral is no Specifick in this caſe; for any other thing of like poliſhed Hardneſs will do the ſame thing; whether it be an *Agat*, *Cornelian*, *Cryſtal* or *Flint-Glaſs*, *&c.* And this thing Experience has evinced, ſeveral Hundreds of Times. III. *Sal-*

III. *Salmon.*] The Nurse ought always to be rubbing the Child's Gums with the Coral, and she ought always to be playing with it in its Mouth, that it may be a biting of it, as Children are very apt to do, and that hard too. By this Means, being long and constantly used, the Sharpness of the Teeth within the Gums, meeting with the hard smooth Coral without, promotes the cutting of them, and by deadning or benumming of the Gums, as it were, through often, constant, and long rubing, the Child cuts them, as it were, without any Pain, and that almost insensibly.

IV. *Salmon.*] But if through the neglect of this, there be Pains, and withal a Fever excited, there is something else to be done. The Feverish Heat you may first abate with this. *Take Milk-water eight ounces, Syrupus Antifebriticus four spoonfuls, Syrup of Limons an ounce and half; mix them*; of which give the Child very often two Spoonfuls, or more, in the time of the Febrile Heat; and you may, if you please, give it every Day, so long as need requires it.

V. *Salmon.*] Or you may give this, if the Child is very froward, or is griped. *Take Mint-water, red Poppy water, of each four ounces; Syrupus Antifebriticus, Syrup of Clove-Gilliflowers, of each two ounces; Syrup of red Poppies one ounce; mix for a Julep*, of this you may give the Child now and then a Spoonful, till you find the Symptoms abate.

VI. *Salmon.*] If with the Fever the Child has a *Thrush*, or its Mouth is very sore, you must often wash it with this Lotion. *Take of the Eclegma ad Laryngis Exulcerationem an ounce; Milk-water, or Barley-water, four ounces; mix them for a wash*; to be often used: And if the Nurse can, let her with her Finger apply the *Eclegma* in substance also to the sore Places, repeating the same several Times, till the Ulcers are perfectly well.

VII. *Salmon.*] This being done, and the Fever abated and gone, you must purge the same two or three Times with *Cathartic um pro Infantibus tenellis*, or with the *Potio Communis Purgativa*, or *Syrup of Peach-flowers*, or *Syrup of Roses solutive*, or with *Sal Mirable*, which you may give from half a Dram to a Dram, in Posset-drink, thin Water-gruel, or Mutton-broth.

CHAP. XIII. *Of Hectick Fevers in Children.*

I. THey pine with a sensible Heat, and Weakness of Appetite; the Trunk of the Body and Limbs waste also away.

Salmon.] The Preternatural Hectick Heat is is only to be abated with Acids, of which the Oils of Vitriol or Sulphur are chief. Take Oil of Sulphur a Dram, Black Cherry-water four Ounces; mix them, then dulcify, with Syrup of Violets; of which put a Spoonful now and then into the Child's Food, such as Panada, Broth made with Rice, and Water, white Water-gruel, made only of the fine

fine Flower of the Oat-meal: Alſo when the Child drinks, whether it is Ale, or Wine mixt with Water, one drop or two, (according to the quantity which the Child may drink) of the Oil of Sulphur or Vitriol, is to be mixt with it, ſtirring them well together, leſt the Oil ſhould ſettle to the bottom. Though theſe Medicaments ſeem to be harſh, yet beſides the extirpating the Hectick, they will ſharpen the Child's Appetite, cauſe it to eat, and add Fleſh to its Bones.

II. *Salmon.*] Then beſides, as a natural Reſtorative, give the Child twice or thrice a Day Chocolet, made only with Water, and not too ſweet: In doing of this, you muſt allow full two ounces of Chocolet to half a Pint of Water, which will make it good and nouriſhing; and you muſt chuſe always that which is well made, and without Perfumes, becauſe they agree not very well with the Nature of Infants: A *Panada* alſo made with Rice is very good in this caſe, which is to be made ſavoury with Salt only, and not with Sugar, unleſs it is now and then, leſt it ſhould clog the Stomach of the Child.

III. *Take two drams of Rhubarb ſliced; put it into a Glaſs-bottle big enough to hold a quart of Small-Beer, for ordinary drinking.* And after it is drunk up, put upon the ſame Rhubarb another Quart of Beer, and ſo a third Time.

Salmon.] I am of Opinion, if the Beer be half ſmall, and half ſtrong, (provided it be mild) it will be much better. This is an excellent Drink indeed if the Child is troubled with Gripings, or any continued Looſeneſs, by which the Body is commonly waſht and worn away: For it ſtops the *Diarrhæa* (though it is purging) and ſtrengthens the Bowels to a wonder, and indeed does that which no other Vegitable Medicament can do.

IV. But if the Drink be too much impregnated with a purgative Virtue; after one Pint is drunk up, let another be preſently added to that which remains.

Salmon.] For this reaſon the Child may begin to drink of it after twelve Hours Infuſion, and ſo continue to drink of it, till the Cathartick Power is troubleſome; then you may fill up the Bottle again, and continue the uſe of it as before; thus doing it will not go without the deſired Effects.

V. *Salmon.*] If the Febritick Heat ſhould yet continue to be Vexatious, you muſt conſtantly give (at certain ſet Times, *viz.* when the Heat is moſt pregnant) of our *Syrupus Antifebriticus* in *Milk* or *Mint-water*, or in *Black Cherry-water*, (as is in the former Chapter directed,) which muſt be as often repeated, as you find the Heat to return: Or if the Child likes the uſe of the *Oil of Sulphur* better, as is before adviſed, you may uſe it inſtead of the *Syrup*.

VII. *Salmon.*] In the Intervals of the Heat, you may give *Volatile Salt of Ox-fleſh*, or *of Beef*, or *of Hartſhorn*, from two to four or ſix Grains, according to the Child's Age, becauſe they are the moſt abſolute Reſtoratives in Conſumptions; and if you give it five or ſix Times in twenty four Hours, two or three

Grains will be enough at a Time. It may be given in Water-gruel just Blood-warm, or mix it with *Syrup of Clove-Gilliflowers*, or *of Violets*, and so let the Child take it.

VIII. *Salmon.*] Or for want of it you may give three or four Drops of Spirit of Hartshorn in *Mint* or *Milk-water*, or *Black Cherry-water*: For these Things thus given, lay the Foundation of destroying the Febrifick Ferment in the Mass of Blood itself, where indeed you ought to begin: If the Stomach of the Child is weak, you may add to the three, four or six Drops of the Spirit of Hartshorn, two or three Drops of Oil of Sulphur, which will abate much of the alkalizate Taste, and make it yet more cooling.

IX. *Salmon.*] After this Groundwork is laid, you may come to Purging, which you may do with what our Author prescribes: But by reason Rhubarb is apt to heat, in some Constitutions, and also to leave a binding Quality behind it, which in some Habits of Body may be of no good Consequence; the thing I best approve of, to purge the Child with, is *Sal Mirabile*, because upon its Dissolution it enters into the Mass of Blood, in order to an Universal Purification.

X. *Salmon.*] For this Salt being given from half a Dram to a Dram, or more, according to the Child's Age and Strength, does two Things at once; *viz.* cools and removes the Hectick Heat, and also carries off the Morbifick Matter; more-especially if it be several Times repeated, whereby all the Obstructions of the *Viscera* are opened, the Rickets prevented, and the Child restored to its perfect Health; and all this it does without the least Griping or Pain.

CHAP. XIV. *Of the Epilepsy in Children.*

I. CHildren are commonly afflicted with the Falling-sickness, either during the first Month after a Looseness; in which case *Diascordium*, as much as a Pepper-corn, dissolved in *Saxifrage-water*, or the Mother's Milk, and given, is a very excellent Remedy.

Salmon.] It is something difficult to know, whether it be the Epilepsy or Convulsions in Babes so young, and this is purely to be discerned by the foaming or frothing at Mouth; for if this Sign is absent, the Fits are for certain not Epileptick, but only Convulsive: In Infants this Disease of the Falling-sickness is by Sympathy with the Stomach and Guts; and in both these *Viscera*, it arises from an acid, eruginous and porraceous Cause, which the Excrements being black, or of a blackish Green, do testify. In this Case I have seldom failed of the Cure by giving the Child three or four Drops of my *Guttæ Vitæ*, or two Drops of *Liquid Laudanum* in a little Breast-milk, or in Sack-whey or Panada: And in Place of those Things I have many Times done the Cure with

with six or eight Drops of *Tinctura Bezoartica*, or as many Drops of my *Compound Tincture of Coral*, which is a Remedy without Exception.

II. The Epilepsy comes sometimes to Children about the Times of their Breeding of Teeth, from the seventh to the tenth Month.

Salmon.] And sometimes (as well as the Breeding of Teeth) Worms are the cause thereof; and oftentimes it happens before the coming out of the Small-Pox or Measles in Children: Now when Children yawn and stretch often, have a quivering in their Eyes and Eye-lids, their Hands shake, and they extend their Arms, when they start and tremble, and keep too long awake, or awake often, an Epilepsy may be feared to be approaching. When Froth appears about the Mouth in large Quantities, and the Child shrieks much, it shews danger of Death: And in such who hold their Breath in the Fit, or void their Excrements involuntarily, and after the Fit are much changed, the Disease is for the most part mortal.

III. It is accompanied with a Cough, or (which is yet much worse) with Vomiting and Looseness) the Child voiding green Excrements, after the manner of Hysterical Women.

Salmon.] In this case you ought to give the Child a Scruple of the fine Pouder of Aniseeds at a time in Panada, which is to be repeated eight Times in twenty four Hours: For this single Ingredient will alone purge the Child, ease its Griping Pain, and discharge the Guts of the sharp and acrid Excrements, which do so excruciate and torture the Infant, and are the cause of the so often return of Convulsive Fits and Motions.

IV. Sometimes the Fit comes suddenly and unawares, distorting the Mouth and Eyes, overspreading the Face with Blackness, and causing convulsive Motions in divers Parts.

Salmon.] This always proceeds from the Acrimony of the Humours in the Stomach and Bowels, and therefore such Things which alleviate that Acrimony, as are all Alcalies, whether fixt or volatile; and also cleanse them from the Excrements offending, for which the Pouder of Aniseeds afore directed has been found a most excellent Remedy; are the very Medicines which are intended and chosen. But fixt Alcalies, such as have a lixivious Taste, as *Salt of Tartar*, &c. Children will not so easily admit of; in this case then, *Pouder of Crabs-eyes*, and *Terra Sigillata*, to be often repeated in small Doses (especially the first of them) are to be made use of.

V. Sometimes the coming of the Fit is known beforehand, by the Contraction of the Fingers into the Fist, and a settled and unusual fixedness of the Eyes.

Salmon.] These are indeed previous Signs of the coming of the Fit, to which you may add those other also, which we have enumerated in *Sect.* II. aforegoing. And it is necessary for a Physician to know the advent thereof; because sometimes a Medicament may be so opportunely given as to prevent its seizing the Patient. Here you have nothing to do, but upon the Spot to administer an Opi-

ate (proportioning the Dose to the Age of the Child, and then afterwards, in the Intervals of the Fits, to exhibit Alkalies, and other proper Remedies for the Cure, which we shall presently advise.

VI. The Fits are sometimes later and slower, and sometimes sooner and shorter; sometimes they return at set Times; again, other whiles, they keep no certain Period: But when Death is at Hand, they come so fast, that they seem to tread as it were upon one another's Heels.

Salmon.] Where the Fits are later and slower, it shews a weakning of the Morbifick Cause, and that *Nature* will prevail (especially if assisted with proper Remedies) against the Disease. But where they come sooner and shorter, it shews that the Disease prevails against *Nature*; and if here, proper and specifick Remedies be given also, without any manifest effect, it shews the Child is in extream Danger. When the Fit returns at set Times, the Physician has the Advantage to prepare before hand, the Medicaments proper for Prevention: But when the Fits keep no certain period, it shews that *Nature* is on the worst side of the Hedge, and that if the Physician does not speedily encounter the Disease with potent and effectual Remedies, that she will be at length (and that not long neither) overcome.

VII. If at any time they yield a Truce, the Infant is drowsy and prone to sleep, till he is awaked by a new Paroxysm.

Salmon.] In this case Neuroticks ought to be given inwardly, and also outwardly applied, as *Powers of Rosemary and Lavender*, which may be given often to six or eight Drops in Sack-whey; and the same Powers may be mixed in equal Proportion with Canary; and the Stomach, Head, Temples, and Nostrils of the Child ought to be bathed with the same: Also *a Plaister of Mithridate spread on Leather*, may be applied on the Stomach and Belly, as also to the Pulses of the Wrists: But if it shall be thought troublesome, instead of the Plaister, the Stomach and Belly of the Child may Morning and Night be anointed with Oil of Mace or Nutmegs by Expression, as also the Crown of the Head and Temples, which alone thing will be of great Comfort to the Infant. But you ought to be careful that the Oil of Mace be true, not of the counterfeit sort, which is of no value.

VIII. Apply a Vesicatory, as soon as may be, to the Nape of the Neck.

Salmon.] This is a troublesome and vexatious thing to be done to Children; and as to the Good it does, it is no ways answerable to the Pain and Vexation: And if I should give you truly my Opinion thereof, it does not so much as one Atome contribute to the Cure: And this is that we are now come to, which consists in part in a due Regulation of the Non-naturals, especially those respecting Meat and Drink, which ought to be such as will not easily corrupt, nor easily turn acid in the Stomach and Bowels: For this reason Milk Meats, by reason they are apt to curdle in the Venticle are forbidden: Panada made

made of Bread and Water is good, so also made with Rice and Water; or it may be made of Bread, or Rice, and Chicken-broth: And their Drink ought to be Barley-water boiled with whole Aniseeds, or bruised Liquorice; if the Child refuses it, because of the strong Taste of those Ingredients, you may use Carraways, or Coriander-seed, or Ginger, not poudered, but only cut into thin Slices, which may be either boiled, or infused in the same. If an Acid super-abounds in the Child's Stomach and Bowels, purge it with Pouder of Aniseeds, as before directed in *Sect.* III. or with Syrup of Peach-flowers, which is an incomparable Thing; though where that cannot be had, the Aniseeds alone will do the Work, and cleanse the Belly very well. Or you may give the Child a Clyster *of Whey and Honey*, or put up a *Suppository* made of a *Candles-end*, or of *Venice or Genoa Soap*.

IX. *Take of* Langius *his Epileptick Water three drams; Liquid Laudanum, one, two, or more drops, according to the Age of the Child; Syrup of Peony one dram; mix them for a Draught*, which must be immediately given.

Salmon.] The *Epileptick Water* of *Langius* is in the *Augustane Dispensatory*, but because that Book is not in every Man's Hand, we will from thence now give you the Receipe thereof, which is this. *Take Flowers of Lillies of the Vallies twelve handfuls, put upon them three quarts of Mosehcat, or Greek Wine, or Muscadine, or any other generous kind; infuse for five days, and then distil in a Glass Alembick in Balneo, till two quarts are drawn off: Then take Cinnamon six drams, Nutmegs four drams, long Pepper two drams, Lavender Flowers eight drams; Flowers of Rosemary, and of Stæchas, of each four drams; Cubebs two drams, Misselto of the Oak, Roots of Male Peony, and of our Dittany, of each four drams; all being grosly bruised, digest them in the afore-distilled Water in the heat of the Sun, or a warm Sand-heat for eight days, and then distill in Balneo as before to driness.* This is that which I suppose is here meant: But there is another of the same *Langius*, which is called his *Aqua Aurea*, from its Excellency in the Cure of this Disease, which if we should be so unhappy as to misunderstand our Author, and he should intend this and not the former, we will also give you the latter in this place. *Take Flowers of Lilly-Convally twelve handfuls, of the best White-wine a gallon; infuse for eight days; then in a Glass Alembeck, distil by Balneo with a very gentle heat, almost to Driness, or till three quarts are drawn off: Afterwards take Water of Black Cherries a pound and half, which mix with the former, and add thereto Flowers of Lavender, and of Rosemary, of each a handful and half; Cloves, Mace, of each two scruples; of Squills prepared two drams and half; Cubebs half a dram; Misselto of the Oak, Roots of Peony and of white Dittany, of each two drams; cut them which are to be cut or sliced, and bruise them which are to be bruised; and let them be thrice distilled by cohobation in Balneo Vaporis, and then keep the Water in a Glass close stopt for use.* Now as to the making of either of these Waters, it is

much to be feared, that the full and entire Virtues of all these things will never be gotten out by this Method of Distilling; for which reason I should advise, *That in the last distilled Water you should infuse fresh Misseltoe of the Oak well bruised; Roots of Peony and of white Dittany, very thin sliced, of each six drams; Lavender and Rosemary Flowers, of each four drams; Cloves, Nutmegs and Cubebs of each two drams: Let it be performed in a very gentle Sand-heat for seven days, shaking the Bottle once or twice a day; and then let it be kept upon Fæces so long as it is in using, that it may the better extract the intire Virtue of the Ingredients.*

X. *Take of Rue-water three ounces; of* Langius *his Epileptick Water, and compound Bryony-water, of each one ounce; Syrup of Clove-gilliflowers half an ounce; mix and make a Julep*; of which give a Spoonful every Hour, if the former already prescribed Medicine has not already removed the *Paroxysm.*

Salmon.] What the *compound Bryony-water* is, or how it is made, see in our *Pharmacopœia Londinensis, Lib.* 4. *Cap.* 1. *Sect.* 17. As to the Cure, we ought to persue the first Indications first; and those are such as are derived from the Essence and Nature of the Disease: And therefore fixt Alcalies which absorb the acid are to be given, as *Hartshorn Philosophically calcin'd, Sea Unicorns Horn, Bezoars Stone, Filings of Ox-horns, Rams-horns, and Goats-horns, Filings of Horse, Ox, Sheep, Goat, Hart, and Elk's-hoofs; Man's Skull filed, or Philosophically calcin'd; Crabs Eyes, Crabs Claws, Magisterium Lunæ,* and a great Number of other Things: To these Things add, *Native Cinnabar, and that of Antimony, and Artificial Cinnabar*, exalted with some proper *Laudanum Opiatum*: as, *Take Native Cinnabar, Mans Skull, Elk's-hoof, both prepared, of each a dram; Pouder of the Heart and Lungs of a Mole, a dram and half; Bezoarticum Lunæ, Crabs Eyes levigated, of each a dram; Saffron a scruple, Ambergrise, our Volatile Laudanum, of each five grains; mix them, Dose from a scruple to two scruples, according to Age, in Water of Lilly Convally Flowers, and Syrup of Citron-peels.* Earth-worms dried and poudered, and given to half a Scruple, have been experimented effectual; so also *the Ashes of a Mole* given in like Dose. Cinnabar of Antimony, impregnated with Clyssus of Antimony and Sulphur, is accounted as an Arcanum in these Fits. Or this: *Take the Secundine of a Male Birth prepared, Native Cinnabar, filings of Elks-hoofs, Man's Skull prepared, of each three grains, Salt of Amber two grains; mix and give it in a proper Vehicle. Take Crabs Eyes levigated sixteen grains; Nasive Cinnabar, and Cinnabar of Antimony, of each four grains; make a Pouder for four Doses.* Authors commend *Aurum Fulminans*; and the Spirits drawn after Fermentation from Flowers of the Lime-tree, of Rosemary, of Peony, of Lilly-Convally, of Lavender, of Stœchas, and of Oranges; from Black Cherries, and Bramble-berries; Tinctures from Wood-soot, Assafœtida, Ambergrise, Musk and Castor, are all admirable Remedies against an Epileptick Acid; so also Opiates, Volatile Balsamicks, and *Spiritus Cornu Cervi*

Suc-

Succinatus; add to theſe things *Poteſtates Antepilepticæ*, which may be given to young Infants, and ſuch as ſuck, from ten Drops to twenty; but to young Boys or Girls, from ten Years old to twenty, from half a Spoonful to a Spoonful, in Sack-Whey, or Peony-water, ſweetned with Syrup of Peony-flowers.

XI. *Salmon.*] The next Things to be given are Aperitives, and ſuch Things as powerfully open Obſtructions of the Nerves, as *Volatile Spirit of Vitriol*, and *of Sulphur*, called *Gas Sulphuris*, which moſt effectually do their Parts; to theſe alſo add, Volatile Animal Salts and Spirits, ſuch as are Salts and Spirits of Man's or Beaſt's Blood, of Ox, Elks, Deers, or Goat's Fleſh; of Man's or Beaſt's Skulls; and Spirits or Salts of Harts, or Deers, Elks, Oxes, Goats, or Sheeps Horns or Hoofs; any or all of which being orderly given, firſt in the Morning Faſting in Orange, Tile-flower, Lilly-convally, or Peony-water, or other proper Vehicle, and laſt at Night going to Bed in like manner, will do mighty Service.

XII. *Salmon.*] *The Second Indication is to remove the Cauſe.* This in new-born Infants, and ſucking Children, is done by gentle Purging, either with *Pouder of Aniſeeds*, (which does the Work admirably well both upwards ſometimes, and alſo downwards) or with *Manna* mixed therewith, or with Syrup of Peach Bloſſoms. As alſo by cleanſing the Bowels by Clyſters, made of Mutton-broth, ſweetned well with brown Sugar, or Manna; all which things are to be done in the Intervals of the Fits: But if the Diſeaſe is in Children ſome Years old, you muſt uſe yet ſtronger Things, as Emeticks properly ſo called, as Infuſion of *Crocus Metallorum*, called *Vinum Benedictum*, *Vinum Antimoniale*, *Vinum Rubellum*, or rather with *Tartar Emeticum*, none of which are mean Things, but will do Wonders, being given in a proper Doſe (according to Age and Strength) and in a proper Vehicle. And to ſuch as are come to greater Years, as from fifteen to twenty, you may give *Vinegar of Squills*, or *Oxymel Sciliticum*, which may be given every Morning Faſting, (if the Fit is not preſent) a Spoonful or two Spoonfuls at a time, in a Glaſs of Ale or Wine, and to be continued for a Month, giving every Night at Bed-time *Poteſtates Antepilepticæ*, as directed in *Cap.* 1. *Sect.* 30, of this Book aforegoing. After all which you may purge eight, ten or twelve times, with the *Lunar Pills* (made of the Vitriol of Luna) than which for this purpoſe there is no better Medicine in the World.

XIII. *Salmon.*] *The third Indication* has reſpect to the Fits, which is in ſome Meaſure performed by blowing up the Noſtrils *Powers of Amber*, or anointing the Temples and Noſtrils in time of the Fit, with *rectified Oil of Amber*; and by letting (though but with Caution) the Fumes of *Volatile Sal Armoniack*, or *Spirit of the ſame*, aſcend up into the Head by the Noſtrils: *Volatile Spirit of Vitriol*, and of *Hartſhorn*, are yet more commended: And for common People in the Country, where things cannot be had, you muſt make uſe of the Fumes of Hair,

old Hose, old Woollen Cloth, Pieces of old Hats, of Leather, and old Shooes or Gloves, and indeed of any thing made of Hair, Wool, Skins or Leather, and in especial the Fumes of Feathers, of what Birds soever it matters not, for not any of these Things will go without the desired Effects.

XIV. *Salmon.*] *The Fourth Indication*, which is *the Vital Indication*; and this has respect to the Parts hurt, which are Head, Brains, and Nerves chiefly, and in young Infants the Stomach and Bowels. And these are strengthned, comforted, and restored, by giving Morning, Noon and Night, *Tinctura Castorei*, *Tinctura Lunæ*, *Tinctura Bezoartica*, *Potestates Angelicæ*, *Aurantiarum Carophyllorum*, *Lavendulæ*, *Limonum*, *Majoranæ*, *Nucis Moschatæ*, *Pulegii*, *Rosmarini*, *Sabinæ*, *Salviæ*, and the *Potestates Virtutum*, any of which may be given from fifteen to thirty, fifty, or seventy Drops (according to Age) four times a Day in some proper Vehicle; *viz.* in the Morning Fasting, at ten before Noon, at five Afternoon, and at Bed-time; at which last Time you may mix some Drops of *Liquid Laudanum* with the same, *viz.* from five to twenty five Drops, according to the Age, *&c.* if Rest be required: And if upon the use of that, the Body be at any time bound, you may loosen it, either by giving a Clyster, or by gently purging it now and then with a fit Dose of *Sal Mirabile*.

XV. *Salmon.*] Outwardly Topicks may be applied. As a Plaister to the Crown of the Head, Stomach and Navel, made of Mithridate, with a little Oil of Mace by Expression, and rectified Oil of Amber: Or a Plaister of Oxycroceum with Galbanum, and ropey Woodsoot, the Nostrils may be anoinred with rectified Oil of Amber, or Chymical Oils of Camomile, Rue, or Savin; or moistned with Spirits of Harts-horn, or Sal Volatile Oleosum, or with Spirit of Angelica, or Powers of Lavender, Rosemary, Sage or Savin, than the last of which few Things are of more force. *Emplastrum Epilepticum Cratonis & Mynsichti* are commended to be applied to the Crown of the Head, and the Head is to be strengthned with *Potestates Pulegii & Sassafras*. Frictions are not to be neglected; and several Authors commend Blisters in several Parts; but because of the Torture, and that there is no medical Reason for their Application, I have never used them.

CHAP. XV. *Of the Rickets.*

I. IT is a Disease known by Loosness, Softness, Feebleness, Faintness, Lazyness, Dulness, and unequal Nourishment of the Parts of the Body.

Salmon.] That is, when through an unequal Distribution of the Nutritious Juice, by reason of great Obstructions in the *Viscera*, and some principal Vessels, there is want of it in one

one Place, for which Reaſon it ſeems to waſte, grow thin, lean and poor; and too great a quantity of it in another, becauſe it is obtruded into thoſe Parts, being not yet obſtructed, whereby they grow over big, and ſeem to ſwell, and become unequal to the next adjacent; whence it is that ſome Parts feel looſe, ſoft, and feeble, whilſt others are more lightly bound up (as the Breaſt and Ribs) with a Hardneſs or Knottineſs in them, which is the cauſe of Faintneſs, Dulneſs, and Uneaſineſs to the poor Child.

II. The Head is bigger than is convenient; the Face fuller and more florid; the fleſhy Parts under the Head pine away; the Joints are afflicted with knotty Swellings, chiefly the Wriſts, but the Ankles leſs: The Bones are bowed, chiefly thoſe of the Legs, and next to them thoſe of the Cubit, between the Elbow and Wriſt; and ſometimes the Shoulder-bones, and Thigh-bones, are alſo bent.

Salmon.] The *Phænomena* of this Diſeaſe are, a very great Head, and here and there divers Protuberances in it, and ſometimes it feels ſoft and pappy on the hinder Parts of it, whilſt the Temples feel poor and bare; the Child has alſo a Wit beyond its Age, and takes notice and is very obſervant of every thing it ſees, as though it would ſeem even to give Directions: The Breaſt and Stomach grow very narrow almoſt to a Ridge; the Ribs are poor and lean, and for the moſt part afflicted with hard knotty Swellings, which ſeem not to have much Pain in them when felt on: The Joints at the Wriſts grow very big, and the upper part is ſo ſwell'd or tumified, that it hangs over the lower Part as it were; but I never found or obſerved Knots, or knotty Swelling in thoſe, or any other Joints: The Joints of the Ankles are overgrown, but not ſo big in proportion as thoſe of the Wriſts, and there is always (when the Diſeaſe becomes inveterate) a bowing or bending of ſome of the principal Bones of the Limbs.

III. The Teeth cut ſlowly and with Pain; they are looſe black, and fall out; the Breaſt is narrow towards the Sides, and ſharp before.

Salmon.] As there is a ſtraitneſs of the Breaſt, ſo there is a ſticking out of the *Cartilago enſiformis*, and a Swelling of the *Abdomen*: The Child is liveleſs as it were, and cares not much to ſtir, and delights in ſitting, even when it is at play; and by reaſon of this Straitneſs of the Breaſt, the Bowels of the *Thorax* have not room enough to diſplay themſelves in as they ought, by means of which the Child is troubled with ſhortneſs of Breath, and a difficulty of Breathing. Thoſe Children which are ſo young as to have the Rickets before they have their Teeth cut, commonly have their Gums ſwell very red, ſore and painful, but the reaſon of this is, becauſe of the Careleſneſs of the Nurſe which attends the Child, who uſes not the *Coral* with that aſſiduity it ought to be uſed withal; for if that was duly and daily kept in uſe in the Child's Mouth, the Teeth would cut with all the eaſe imaginable, notwithſtanding

ing its being diseased with the *Rickets*. Again, it is true, that where the *Rickets* happen to over-grown Children, *viz.* Such as have all their Teeth, those Symptoms of Blackness, Foulness, Looseness and Falling of them out, may be present: But then again, it is manifest, that all those things arise purely from the *Scurvy*, and not from the *Rickets*; because a very great Number of Children vehemently troubled with the *Rickets*, that for a long time together, are daily to be seen, whose Teeth are not affected. Besides, if the Disease continues long, it many times distorts the *Vertebræ* of the Back, and causes a Crookedness; and their Back (besides the Painfulness and Uneasiness thereof) becomes so weak, as that it can scarcely bear the Head.

IV. Other Signs are a stuffing of the Belly, or Paunch; Distention of the *Hypochonders*, or Sides of the Belly, and Places under the short Ribs: There is for the most part a vehement Cough, or much Coughing, and a Faultiness of the Lungs: There is an Unwillingness to lie on one Side, which sometimes chances to be the right Side, and sometimes the left.

Salmon.] Being big-bellied is for the most part a Sign of the Rickets, being accompanied with the other Signs: There is always a Cough and Faultiness of the Lungs, by reason of the great Obstructions of that *Viscus*; so that at length, if the Disease shall continue long, the obstructed Matter will become acid and sharp, and at last ulcerate the Part, upon which the Child's Breath will stink, and by reason it has not Wit, nor Strength enough to expectorate the morbid Matter, it so obstructs the Part as to cause a vehement Cough and Rattling in the Throat and Breast, an Uneasiness in drawing its Breath, and by this means induces a *Phthisis* or Consumption. Some Authors make the Cause of this Disease to arise from an Obstruction of the Nerves and Spinal Marrow, and in the defect of the nervous Influx depending thereon: And this may be a true Cause indeed; but then it is to be considered, that though it may be a Cause, yet is not a primary Cause, but is it self caused from something which is primordial to it: Without doubt the *Serum* is in fault, as also the Lungs and Spleen, and that the Glands of the Mesentery are obstructed; which makes the *Abdomen* or Belly to swell, from whence the Lymphatick Juice it self becomes affected.

V. *Salmon.*] The Prognosticks. The older the Child is before the Rickets seize it, and if the Disease follows a Fever, or if the Itch come after it, all these things shew the greater Hope of Recovery: Children come to seven, eight, ten, or twelve Years of Age, are seldom troubled with it, because in the first the Bones are come to their hardness, and in the more ripe Years to their full Growth. If through the Violence of the Symptoms the Disease turns to a Consumption, Dropsy, or King's Evil, it is incurable; otherwise it seldom proves mortal. If a Child affected with the Rickets is not cured, before it is five Years old, it is generally

generally Sickly all its Life after. If the Breast is so straitned that the Child cannot breathe without Wheezing and Rattling, and that the Lungs have not room enough to play in, but an Asthma is produced, the Disease is incurable.

VI. *Salmon.*] The Cure of this Disease consists, First, in removing the Morbifick Matter, which obstructs. Secondly, In restoring the Tone of the Parts affected, and strengthning them. The first Indication then is to purge the Child well with Sal Mirabile, for four, six, eight or ten Times, or more, which you may give from one Dram to two in Milk-water, or Barley-broth, a little sweetned with white Sugar; and this to be repeated either every Day, or every other Day, (as its Strength will bear) till six, eight, ten or twelve Doses of it are taken. The reason of the so long taking of such Absterfives, and Openers of Obstructions, is, because the Disease is of a rebellious and stubborn Quality, and not to be removed but by powerful and often repeated Remedies. Or you may give this. *Take Tamarinds half an ounce, Sena two drams, Rhubarb a dram and half; boil them in a sufficient quantity of Water, in three ounces of the Colature, of which dissolve Manna and Syrup of Roses solutive, of each an ounce, mix them for a Potion.* Of this the Child may take according to its Age, a Spoonful or two, every Morning, or every other Morning, for ten several Times. But this is to be observed, that the Cathartick may not exceed above five, six or seven Stools a Day. The Elder Children may be purged with *Jalap*, or rather with *Pulvis Cathartic*us: And where the Body is Costive, and not easily be Purged, you may exhibit this Clyster. *Take Mutton-broth from six ounces to sixteen, Tincture of Sena an ounce to two ounces; brown Sugar from one ounce to four ounces; mix for a Clyster.* This will empty the Belly very well; if a viscid Humour adhere to the Guts, add to it Salt of Tartar, from half a Dram to two Scruples, and so give it.

VII. *Salmon.*] After due Purging Absterfives ought to be given, as Medicines from Iron, from Vitriol, and Tartar. Tincture of Steel made with Oil of Vitriol, or Spirit of Nitre, is of incomparable Use; so also *Oil of Vitriol, or Oil of Sulpur per Campanum*; either of these being given daily in Mutton or Chicken-broth, or in Panada, have done Cures of this kind beyond all Expectation; the Child in the mean Season drinking neither Ale, Beer, Water nor Wine, without so many Drops in it as to make it gratefully pleasant; and with the *Oil of Vitriol* alone I have known more Children cured of the *Rickets*, than by all other Medicines proposed by Authors, though the most specifick; and therefore from my own Experience commend it to the World, as one of the greatest Secrets of this kind. *Cremor Tartari* given daily in their Broth, Panada, *&c.* is of most excellent use, because it cuts and attenuates the most viscid Humours, and cleanses the Bowels from the same: But while these Medicaments are used, all sorts

ſorts of Milk-Meats muſt be forborn.

VIII. *Salmon.*] The other Intention is to reſtore the Tone of the Parts hurt, and to ſtrengthen them. Our Famous *Boyle* commends *Ens Veneris*, which is made of Sal Armoniack ſublimed from Colcothar twice or thrice. The Doſe in ſmall or very young Infants is from three Grains to ſix or eight, in ſome proper Vehicle; to ſuch Children which are elder, it may be given from gr. 6. to a Scruple, in ſome opening Decoction, ſuch as this. *Take Rain-water three quarts; Figs ſlit, Raiſons ſtoned, blew Currans, of each ſix Ounces; Liver-wort, Spleen-wort, of each a Handful; boil till a quart is conſumed; and then ſtrain it out for uſe.* And of this let the Child conſtantly drink, for at leaſt three or four Months; and ſometimes it may take it by its ſelf alone, and then you may ſqueeze into it the Juice of an Orange to make it gratefully acid. This following Preparation is commended: *Take Volatile Salt of Hartſhorn, or of Urine or of Blood, put it into a Bolt-head, or a Glaſs with a long Neck, drop into it rectified Spirit of Salt, or Oil of Sulphur* per Campanum *rectified, drop by drop, till the Ebullition ceaſes: Filter the Salt thus diſſolved, and evaporate in a Glaſs Veſſel over a gentle Sand-heat to driness*; of this you may give from four Grains to eight, firſt in the Morning faſting, and laſt at Night going to Bed, in ſome convenient Vehicle. Among the number of the reſt of the Specificks for this Cure, we ought not to forget *Tartar Vitriolate*, which has performed Cures of this kind beyond all Expectation, and may be given from five to ten Grains in *Panada* or other proper Liquor.

IX. *Take common Wormwood, leſſer Centory, white Horehound, Germander, Scordium, Calamint, Fetherfew, Saxifrage, Hypericon, Golden Rod, Wild Thyme, Mint, Sage, Rue, Carduus Benedictus, Penny-royal, Southernwood, Camomil, Tanſy, Lilly-convally, all freſh gathered, and cut ſmall, of each one handful; Hog's Lard four pound; Sheep's Tallow two pound; Claret-wine a quart; let them ſtand twelve hours ſoaking on hot Aſhes, in an Earthen Veſſel; then boil away the Moiſture, and afterwards ſtrain them for a Liniment.* With this anoint the Belly and Hypochonders, or Parts under the ſhort Ribs, and alſo the Limbs or Joints, every Morning and Evening, for five or ſix Days, or till the Child recovers.

Salmon.] This of our Author's may be a very good thing, but 'tis a long Receipe which I do not naturally love, beſides its Tedioufneſs in making. This following is much better and eaſier to be done. *Take pure ſweet-ſcented golden-coloured Palm Oil eight ounces: rectified Oil of Amber, Chymical Oils of Angelica, Carraways and Savin, of each an ounce, mix them,* to anoint with, all the Joints, Ribs, Stomach, Hypochonders, Belly, and Backbone, Morning and Evening, for ſome conſiderable Time. Or this: *Take Oil of Ben, or Neat's-foot Oil, eight ounces; Chymical Oils of Camomile, Lavender, Limons, Mint, Penny-royal, Roſemary, Sage, Saſſafras, of each two drams; mix them, and keep the Mixture for uſe;* with this anoint the

the Parts aforenamed, as before directed.

X. Take of each of the prescribed Ingredients two Handfuls; infuse them cold in four Gallons of Ale, to give the Child for its ordinary Drink.

Salmon.] That is to say of all those Vegetable Ingredients before enumerated for the prescribed Liniment. Some prescribe this: *Take Root of Osmunda Regalis, and of Male Fern, of each two ounces; Sage, Burnet and Betony, of each one ounce; Water two quarts: boil gently, and strain out; sweeten it with white Sugar or white Sugar-candy*; and let the Child drink it for its constant Drink. Or this: *Take Ceterach, Liverwort, of each a small handful; Osmund Royal, Speedwell, of each half a handful; infuse twelve hours in fair Spring-water three pints; then add, Raisons of the Sun stoned, blew Currans, of each a quarter of a pound; boil all together till it comes to a quart, and strain out, for the Child's constant Drink*: If it is too sweet, make it gratefully acid with a few Drops of *Oil of Vitriol*, or *Oil of Sulphur per Campanum*; and indeed without some few Drops of one of these Oils, none of these Drinks ought to be given, lest they by their too great Sweetness, should clog the Stomach of the Infant.

XI. Sometimes Tumours or Swellings possess the Bellies of Children, caused by excessive Evacuations.

Salmon.] In this case you must purge three or four Times, with *Sal Mirabile* before-mentioned; then strengthen the Blood and Bowels, by giving inwardly *Tinctura Martis* in Milk-water, or *Tinctura Bezoartica* in Sack-whey, or *Tinctura Mirabilis* in Decoction of Osmund Royal, or of Ceterach, or of Liver-wort: Nor ought the Child to take any of its ordinary Drink of what kind soever, whether Ale, Beer, Wine, Water, or any of the afore-prescribed Decoctions, without some Drops of Oils of Vitriol, or Sulphur in them. And outwardly, the Stomach and Belly of the Patient ought to be daily anointed with the afore-prescribed Liniment, or Ointment, or Oil; or with this, which is inferior to none of them. *Take choice Oil of Mace or Nutmegs by Expression, six ounces, Balsam of Peru two ounces, Balsam of Tolu one ounce, Styrax Calamita extracted half an ounce, Chymical Oils of Angelica, Penny-royal and Savin, of each two drams; mix them, and keep it for use*; and with this the Spine of the Back ought also to be daily, twice a Day anointed.

XII. Let the Blood and Bowels be strengthned with Corroborating Herbs, or in the Rickets, (properly so called) let the Arm-pits only be anointed on both Sides, but not the Limbs.

Salmon.] You may if you so please use the Decoctions of strengthning Herbs in Ale, Beer, Water or Wine, as Liver-wort, Harts-Tongue, Spleen-wort, Angelica, Bawm, Burnet, Caraways, Dill, Lavender, Mint, Penny-royal, Savory, Thyme, Sweet Marjoram, Rosemary, Fennel-seed; to which add, Cloves, Mace, Nutmegs, Orange and Limon-Peels, *&c.* But because Infants are so difficult to be gotten to take any quantity of a Decoction, I think it much more natural to use the *Powers* of some of those Things, which

which besides their Pleasantness being given in any proper Vehicle, are also given in a very small Quantity, and with all as they have ten times the Strength of any Decoction, so also do ten times the good. And therefore if you exhibit the *Powers*, you may give a Mixture of three, four or six, or more of them together, and then change them for other Mixtures; and sometimes you may give the *Potestates Virtutum* from ten to twenty Drops, or more, in Milk-water, Black Cherry-water, Angelica-water, Sack-whey, or Barley-broth, and this may be done Morning, Noon and Night; and sometimes these *Powers* may be given the Child in a little Ale, Beer or Wine. You must often change the Medicine, giving sometimes *Powers of Angelica*, at other times *Powers of Lavender* or *Mint*; then again *Powers of Penny-royal*, or of *Oranges or Limons*; and sometimes *Powers of Cloves, Mace or Nutmegs, &c.* in the Vehicles before named, and in the same Doses and Order, changing the Medicine as often as the Child shall refuse it, or not take it well; or as you may see the Necessity, or Occasion shall require.

CHAP. XVI. *Of Convulsive Coughs in Children.*

I. BLeeding and repeated Purging generally prevail against this kind of Cough; if this course proves unsuccessful, the Disease is stubborn, and will be difficultly overcome: But the more gentle Catharticks are here only proper, and such as may be taken *Cochleatim*, or by Spoonfuls, according as the Age of the Child will admit.

Salmon.] Our Author is very short here in the Cure of a Disease so common in Children, and of so great Consequence, to be rightly managed for the good of Infants. A Cough therefore with the Concomitant of Convulsions, or convulsive Motions, is for the most part attended also with an *Asthma*, or difficulty of Breathing, and shortness of Breath; which of how great trouble they are to Infants, I leave to such to judge whose daily Conversation is with them. Such a Cough as this arises from an acid Mucilage or Tartar, lodg'd, yet fluctuating in the Lungs, Bronchia, Stomach, and pectoractoral Muscles serving for Respiration, whence this hooping Cough proceeds.

II. *Salmon.*] The Cause seems to proceed from a salt and acid Flegm, distilling, as some Authors say, from a moist Brain, whence trickling down it irritates the Throat as it passes, and so causes a hooping Cough; and some part of it slipping down into the *Bronchia* of the Lungs, and their Fibres turns into an acid viscous Matter, which is the immediate cause of an *Asthma*.

III. *Salmon.*] If the Convulsions, or convulsive Motions caused by the Cough, are but now and then, or very seldom, it is so much the better, or less dangerous; but if they happen very often, and almost continually

nually with other bad Symptoms, the hope of Life can be but ſmall, for the Child will die choaked. If the Child vomits ſpontaneouſly, and has relief thereby, it is a good Sign, and gives hopes of overcoming: So alſo if Sneezing follow, it is good. If the Child ſleeps with its Mouth open and much diſturded, or with groaning, it is an evil Sign; ſo alſo if it rattles in the Throat in the Day-time, when awake.

IV. *Salmon.*] The Cure conſiſts in abſorbing the Acid, and diſſolving the Tartar, and abſterging the Parts affected, which are the Stomach and Lungs, and Parts adjacent to them. For the firſt Intention, *Alcalies* are of uſe, the chief of which are Flowers of *Sulphur*, which may be thus given. *Take Flowers of Sulphur four drams, Ginger in fine Pouder two drams: Syrup of Red or Corn Poppies, enough to make it into an Eclegma or Electuary,* of which give the Child as much as a Haſle-Nut, two, three or four times a Day. Or this, *Take Flowers of Sulphur four drams: Catechu in fine Pouder, Native Cinnabar, of each two drams; Crocus Martis aperitivi one dram; Syrup of red Poppies, enough to make an Electuary,* to be given as the former. Or this, *Take Flowers of Sulphur four drams; Catechu two drams; Pouder of Thebian Opium, half a dram; Syrup of red Poppies enough to make it into an Electuary.* Doſe as much as a Grey Pea, Morning and Night, or more, according to Age, which let be given in ſome proper Vehicle.

V. *Salmon.*] The ſecond Intention is diſſolving the acid Mucilage or Tartar. Give the Child *Balſamum ſulphuris aniſatum*, from five to ten Drops, or more, according to Age, in *Hyſop-water*, or *Syrup of Juice of Hyſop*; or give *Syrup of Juice of Radiſhes* by it ſelf, or mixt with *Syrup of Colts-foot*; or it may be given *alternatim* with the aforenamed *Balſam*. But if the wheezing or ſhortneſs of Breath is great; then mix with the Syrup *Fæcula of Aron Roots* from ten Grains to a Scruple: Let Milk Meats be wholly forbidden the Child, and let it be nouriſhed with Mutton, Lamb, Veal, or Chicken Broth, or *Panada*, in which ſome few Drops of *Spirit or Oil of Vitriol*, or of *Sulphur per Campanum* is put; ſo many Drops as to make its Food pleaſingly grateful; nor let it drink any thing, whether *Ale*, *Beer*, *Wine*, *or Wine and Water*, but what is made gratefully acid with one of thoſe Oils, and then dulcified with double refined Sugar: Or let the Child's Food and Drink be made gratefully acid with *Syrup of Vinegar*, *or of Limons*, or *Juice of Citrons*; becauſe all theſe things by their own Nature cut Flegm and tough Humours, diſſolve the Tartarous Mucilage, and open Obſtructions of the Stomach and Lungs, giving preſent Relief in all ſorts of *Coughs and Aſthmas*, where the ſhortneſs of Breath and difficulty of Breathing are ſo great, as to make Life even deſpaired of.

VI. *Salmon.*] The more adult Children, ſuch as are three, four or five Years Old, are not to be cured (if an *Aſthma* is preſent, as for the moſt part it is) without the uſe of the *Oils of Vitriol or Sulphur*, which do Wonders in this caſe: But in the Intervals of giving

giving those things, the Child may take *Syrup of Juice of Liquorish with Fæcula of Aron Roots, and Powers of Aniseeds:* Also this, *Take Oil of sweet Almonds new drawn four ounces; Syrup of Violets eight ounces, mix them well by shaking them in a Bottle;* of which let the Infant take by Spoonfuls or half Spoonfuls, according to its Age, now and then, and if possible, every Hour or two Hours. And sometimes you may give the Child this. *Take Sal Volatile Oleosum, from four to ten drops; Chymical Oil of Mint one drop; Powers of Aniseeds twenty drops; mix them, and then add Mint-water two ounces; Syrup of Mint one ounce; mix them for two Doses.* Or this. *Take Spiritus Aperiens forty drops; Powers of Mint thirty drops; Syrup of Mint one ounce; Mint-water two ounces; mix them for two Doses, as before; repeating the same as often as need requires.*

VII. *Salmon*] The third and last Indication is the removal of the near or proximate Cause. And this is to be done both by Emeticks and Catharticks, in the use of both which the Child's Age is very much to be considered: Some Authors advise to this. *Take Hyssop, Mint and Fennel-waters, of each an ounce; Tinctura Proprietatis half a dram: Syrup of Tobacco half an ounce; mix them, and give a spoonful at a time.* Or this. *Take Oxymel of Squills, Syrup of Colts-foot, of each one ounce; Syrup of Juice of Radishes half an ounce; Balsamum Sulphuris Anisatum, five drops; mix them;* of which let the Child sometimes lick. These now prescribed are pretty strong Emeticks, not very pleasing, and therefore not to be given to very young Children. To such the most excellent Vomit in this case is, *Salt of white Vitriol,* which may be given daily for some time, from ten to twenty Grains, according to the Age, in *Carduus Water:* And where the Stomach is very foul, you may give *Vinum Benedictum,* from forty to an hundred Drops in *Carduus Water,* or other proper Vehicle, which Dose may be encreased as you see reason, and to be continued for two or three times taking, till the Stomach seems to be very clean. If it should work too much, you must put a stop to it by giving Mutton Broth well seasoned with Salt; and after that you may give *Syrup of Limons mixt with Mint Water.*

VIII. *Salmon.*] The first Passages being thus cleansed by Emeticks; the next thing we have to do, is to cleanse the inferior *Viscera,* with proper Catharticks. You may give the *Catharticum pro Infantibus* (in Cap. I. Sect. 12. of this Book) from one Spoonful to two, which may be repeated two or three times, or oftner, as you see occasion. Or, in place thereof, you may use *Syrup of Roses solutive* in the same Dose; or *Syrup of the infusion of Peach flowers,* which is an incomparable thing. To Children which are elder, you may give the *Potio communis Purgativa,* or the *Pulvis Cathartic us,* which cleanses and carries off the Tartarous Matter in the Stomach and Guts to a Miracle: You may give it from six Grains to a Scruple, according to the Age of the Child. See their Preparations in *Cap.* I. *Sect.* 1. and 20 of this Book. To Children which are three, four

four, or five Years old, you may give *Sal Mirabile*, from a Dram to two Drams, in Water-gruel, or Posset-drink, or in Mutton-broth, dissolving the same in the Vehicle, and then sweetning it with *Syrup of Violets*; repeating the same as often as the necessity requires. And if the Child's Body is Costive, it must be first moved by some proper Clyster, or by a *Suppository* made of *Castile*, or *Genoua Soap*, or of a *Candle's End*, or of a *piece of Roch Alum scraped into Form*, which last will serve many times.

IX. *Salmon.*] As a Specifick, *Native Cinnabar, is to be given from six grains to half a dram, in Syrup of red Poppies*, is accounted among the Number of great Remedies: And *Crato and Etmuller* commend as a Specifick *Decoction of Turneps sweetned with Sugar*; *Pouder of Olibanum and Mastick* may be given inwardly, from a Scruple to half a Dram, in *Diacodium*, or *Syrup of red Poppies*: So also, *Pouder of Amber and Benjamin*; *Spiritus Cornu Cervi succinatus*, is accounted by some as a most admirable thing; and so without doubt it is, being given *alternatim*, with *Oils of Sulphur*, or *Vitriol*, or *Gas Sulphuris*, *Volatile Spirit of Vitriol*, or other the like things.

X. *Salmon.*] Lastly, in the greatest Vehemency of this Disease, you may give *Spirit of Poppies* (which how it is made, you may see in our *Pharmacopœia Bateana*, *Lib.* 1. *Cap.* 2. *Sect.* 59, 60 *&* 61.) which may be given Morning and Evening; or whenever the Fit of Coughing comes, in *black Cherry*, or *Milk*, or *Mint-water*: Or if the Violence presages any Danger, in *Lettice* or *Poppy-waters*, which are of good use, Or you may give *Spiritus Opii*, the various Preparations of which we have in the aforesaid *Pharmacopœia*, Lib. 1. Cap. 2. Sect. 58. And this may safely be given to little Ones; for it alleviates and gives Rest and Ease, and stops the Cough upon the Spot, so wonderfully (especially in Infants) that one could scarcely imagine its Power, without seeing it, and that without the least imaginable Danger; Dose from a Scruple to half a Dram, two Scruples, or a Dram, or more, according to the Age, in *Syrup of Limons*, *or Juice of Citrons*, *or of Mint*, and to be repeated as often as need requires.

CHAP. XVII. *Of the Itch, and other Cuticular Diseases.*

I. *Salmon.*] THE Itch is a Disease called in Greek Κνησμὸς, and in Latin *Puritus*, being an Itching generally over the whole Body, so great, as to cause scratching; and is accompanied with some small Exulcerations of the Skin, which is a most troublesome and filthy Companion. It is contagious, for it communicates it self by Tact, or Touching; and so vehemently infectious, that if one lies but a Night in the Sheets in which one affected therewith has lain before-hand, it infallibly gives them the Disease: The very wearing of a

Glove, of an Itchy Person, or whose Hands are polluted therewith, is enough to confer the Disease.

II. *Salmon*] It may have its beginning in many Parts of the Body; in some it often begins on the Fingers, or between the Fingers; in others, first upon the Thighs, or the Breast or Stomach between the Shoulders, on the Reins of the Back or Sides, or Belly, *&c.* but where-ever it first begins, it soon after sends forth its Filthiness to the Fingers, where it exerts its force with a great deal of Diversion.

III. *Salmon.*] As the Disease is Cuticular, so it breaks out there, it scarcely having any deeper Root; and manifests itself, besides its Itching, in a vast Number of small watery Pustles, containing a very sharp ichorous Juice; which, when the said Pustles are prickt or broken, comes forth like clear fair Water at first, but by continuance they come to Maturation, and then a purulent Ichor or Matter issues forth; and this Matter, or the former clear Water, if they happen but to touch any other part, as yet clear, they presently infect it with the same contagious Distemper.

IV. *Salmon*] If it gets into the whole Habit of the Body, it is very rarely cured; so also, if it continues three or four Years, without being overcome; and then it is the fore-runner of a *Scabies* or *Scabbiness* not long after to follow; because by its long continuance it corrupts the *very Fountains of the Blood and all the other Juices*, which being collected and sent into the *Cutis* and *Cuticula*, and becoming very acrid and putrid, it corrodes the *Cuticula*, and excites a *Scabbiness*; which, by reason of the continual flowing of the Humours, and their vast and universal wasting from Day to Day, without any ceasing, it at length brings the Body into a Consumption; with which, and the disquiet the Disease continually gives, hindring the Patient both of Rest and Sleep, terminates, in no very long time, in Death.

V. *Salmon.*] As to the Cure, Internals are least requisite in this Disease, yea, scarcely at all necessary; for as the Distemper is received only by Tact, and not at all from any Putridity or Acrimony within, so only Topicks or Externals are of absolute Necessity. And therefore the Vulgar Remedies are, 1. *Flowers of Sulphur* mixed with *fresh Butter* or *Hogs-Lard*, to be anointed with Morning and Night. 2. *Flowers of Sulphur* mixt with a half part of *Quicksilver*, killed with *Syrup of Limons*, or *Turpentine* or *Spittle*, and then mixed with *fresh Butter* or *Hog's Lard*. 3. *Oil of Bays* mixed with *Quicksilver* killed. 4. A broad Girdle made with *Quicksilver*, killed and mixed with some Oily and Emplastick Body. 5. A Bath made with the Decoction of *Tobacco-leaves* or *Tobacco-stalks*. 6. A strong Bath made of *Quick-lime*, or *Salt of Tartar*, or *Ashes of Tobacco-stalks*, Elixivating them with fair *Water* or *Urine*.

VI. *Salmon.*] But the more excellent and effectual, as well as clean and neat Applications, void of Greasiness or any ill Scent, are these following, *viz.*

Take

Take Powers of Mercury three or four ounces; Damask Roſe-water, a quart; mix them, and therewith waſh the Part affected, chiefly the Joints, twice or thrice a Day, Or this, *Take Powers of Mercury three or four ounces; Lixivium of Quick-lime, of a moderate Strength, a quart; mix them, ſhake the Glaſs or Bottle when you uſe it, and waſh therewith as before.* Or, *Take Powers of Mercury three or four ounces; Spring-Water a quart; Salt of Tartar from two to four drams; mix and diſſolve, and keep it for uſe.* This you may uſe as the former. At the bottom of the Glaſs there will be by Precipitation *a yellowiſh or Orange tawny Pouder*; this Pouder you may take and apply it to any Part very ſore and ulcerated with the Itch, and in a very little time it will heal it.

VII. *Salmon.*] Or you may take *Corroſive Sublimate, reduc'd into a groſs Pouder (by beating it between Leather, leſt it ſhould fume up into your Noſtrils) two ounces; Spring-water a Gallon; boil all to the Diſſolution of the Sublimate; ſtrain through a Flannel Bag, and keep the Water for uſe.* With this the Patient may be bathed on the Joints, and on the Places infected twice a Day, and in a ſhort time it will effect the Cure, the Stomach and Belly only excepted.

VIII. *Salmon.*] If by the long continuance of the Diſeaſe the Fountains of the Blood and Juices ſhall be contaminated, then Topicks, or external Applications will never do alone, but with them you muſt come to the Exhibition of Internals, ſuch as purifie the Blood, and by a Diaphoretick Quality drive the malign Matter through the muſculous Fleſh and Skin to the *Cuticula*, where through the Pores it may have an Evacuation; and of this kind are *Bezoar Mineral, Antimonium Diaphoreticum, Tincture of Antimony., Tinctura Bezoartica, Eclegma Sudorificum,* and other things of like Nature.

IX. *Salmon.*] And if the Age of the Patient will admit of it, you are to aſſiſt the former Medicaments by going into the *Bagnio*, or into a warm Bath of fair Water every Day; by which means the Skin becomes ſupple and looſe, and the Pores opened and rarified, and the acrid Juices lodged in the *Cutis* and *Cuticula* to be drawn forth in great Plenty, to the apparent benefit of the Patient: But where this cannot be admitted of, you muſt give other kinds of Internals; which, beſides their Sudorifick Power, have a virtue to deſtroy the eſſential and latent Malignity, of which ſort are *Gas Sulphuris*, and *Spirits of Sulphur, Vitriol and Salt*, to be given conſtantly in proper Vehicle.

X. *Salmon.*] This being ſaid, you are to underſtand, that all theſe things referring to the Itch in particular, may be applied in general to all other contagious Diſeaſes of the Skin, and Defœdations of almoſt what kind ſoever, proceeding from a Morbid and Malign Acid, as Scurf, Morphew, Tetters, Ringworms, Leuce, Leproſie, and other the like Diſeaſes, very common to humane Kind. Now let us hear what our Author ſays of this Subject.

XI. *Take Venice Treacle half a dram, the Electuary de Ovo one ſcruple, the Root of Virginia Snake-*

root in fine Pouder fifteeen grains ; with a ſufficient quantity of Syrup of Citron-peels make a Bolus, to be taken at Bed-time, drinking after it ſix Spoonfuls of this Julep.

Salmon.] This is much better. *Take Mithridate two drams, Flowers of Sulphur one ſcruple ; mix them for a Doſe.* Or this. *Take Mithridate, Juice of Alkermes, of each one dram ; of the Pulvis Herculeus half a dram ; mix for a Doſe,* to be given at Night going to Bed, and if need be, to be two or three times repeated. See the *Pulvis Herculeus* in our *Pharm. Chirurgica*, lately Printed.

But in my Opinion, the *Eclegma Sudorificum*, given from ten Grains to half a Dram in ſome convenient Vehicle, is not inferior to any of the former: And if they be Children you may give either *Tinctura, Bezoartica*, or *Sal Volatile Oleoſum*, which do both of them Sweat, and alſo abſorbe the malign Acid, thereby deſtroying the Fermentative Power of the Morbifick Matter.

XII. *Take of Carduus Benedictus Water ſix ounces, diſtilled Treacle-water, Plague-water of each two ounces, Syrup of Clove-Gilliflowers one ounce : Mix and make a Julep.*

Salmon.] Or you may give this. *Take Spirit of Saffron two ounces, Angelica-water three ounces ; Spirit of Hartſhorn ſixty drops ; Syrup of Citron-peels, enough to make it pleaſant : Mix and make a Julep for three Doſes.* Or this. *Take Simple Angelica and Rue Waters, of each three ounces ; Scordium-water two ounces ; Spirit of Angelica one ounce ; Spirit of Scurvy-graſs two drams ; Syrup of Citron-peels enough to dulcifie it : Mix and make a Julep for four Doſes,* to be taken after ſome of the Preſcriptions in the former Section.

XIII. Let the Patient drink every Morning half a Pint of warm Poſſet, and ſweat an Hour after it.

Salmon.] You may make it with *Canary*, and put into it a few Blades of *Saffron.*

Or you may give the Patient this. *Take Angelica-water, Mint water, of each three ounces ; choice Barcelona Wine two ounces ; Syrup of Clove-Gilliflowers one ounce ; Tinctura Bezoartica a dram : Mix them for a Doſe,* to be given in the Morning faſting in Bed, and to Sweat half an Hour or an Hour, if Strength permit, after it ; and if in time of Sweating the Patient is dry, you may give a Glaſs of *White Liſbon Wine with ſix, eight, or ten drops of pure Oil of Sulphur per Campanum mixt with it.*

XIV. This Courſe being finiſhed, if the Pimples ſtill remain, let the Parts affected be anointed with the following Ointment.

Take Unguentum ex Oxylapatho two ounces ; Pomatum one ounce ; Flowers of Sulphur three drams ; Oil of Rhodium half a ſcruple : Mix and make an Ointment,

XV. *Salmon.*] *Take Unguentum Enulatum cum Mercurio one ounce and a half, Oil of Ben half an ounce, Oil of Rhodium a ſcruple ; mix them.* Or, *Take Unguentum Neapolitanum one ounce and a half, Oil of Roſes half an ounce, Oil of Rhodium a ſcruple ; mix them.* With either of theſe Mixtures you may every Day at Night going to Bed gently anoint the Joints, Palms of the Hands, and Soles of the Feet, and other Places affected (excepting the Breaſt

Breaſt and Belly, which you are by no means to touch) and in a little time the whole Defedation will be gone.

The *Ung. Oxylapatho* here preſcribed by our Author, is a Shop Medicine, and is thus made. *Take Roots of ſharp pointed Dock (boiled in Vinegar till they are ſoft, then Pulped) Brimſtone in ſubtil Pouder, waſhed in Juice of Limons, of each an ounce and half; Hog's Lard often waſhed in Scabious Water, half a pound; Unguentum Populneum, ground with Juice of Elecampane half an ounce; Oil of Rhodium a few drops; mix and make an Ointment in a Mortar according to Art.* The *Pomatum* is thus made: *Take freſh Hog's-Lard three pounds; new Sheep's Suet nine ounces; Pome-waters pared and cut a pound and half; beſt Damask Roſe-water ſix ounces; Florentine Orrice groſly poudered, ſix drams or an ounce: Boil altogether in Balneo, till the Apples are ſoft; then ſtrain (without preſſing) and when but juſt warm, waſh it with freſh Damask Roſe-water, and add to every pound thereof Oil of Rhodium twelve drops.*

XVI. *Salmon.*] Some have been cured by waſhing with *Ens primum Sulphuris*, others with a *Decoction of Tobacco ſtalks boiled in Urine*, or a *Lixivium of Tobacco Aſhes made with Water or Urine.* But the firſt waſh at *Sect.* VI. above, made of *Powers of Mercury one ounce and a half, Damask Roſe-water, a pint never fails.* With this waſh all the Places affected Morning and Evening, (except the Breaſt, Stomach and Belly) and in a few Days it will perfectly cure: It neither ſtinks nor is loathſome, or ſpoils the Shifts, Sheets and Linnen, as the other naſty Medicines do; but is ſweet, neat, and clean, and may be uſed to the greateſt Perſonage, and the moſt tender and delicate in the Land.

XVII. But theſe things ought not to be applied, till the Patient's Body hath been firſt duly prepared by Bleeding and Purging.

Salmon.] Letting of Blood muſt abſolutely be avoided in this Cure, for thereby the Impurity is drawn into the Blood, and that defiled which before was pure: for theſe Diſtempers are generally Cuticular, or but only Skin deep. For an ordinary Waſh among the Vulgar, who cannot go to high priz'd Medicines, this will do. *Take boiling Water a quart, or better, Flowers of Sulphur four drams, ground with Juice of Limons, Corroſive Sublimate (beaten to fine Pouder, wrapt up in Leather or Paper) a dram and half: Mix, and diſſolve the Sublimate by boiling in a Pipkin* With this waſh the Places affected Morning and Evening, the Stomach and Belly only excepted.

CHAP. XVIII. *Of the Quinſy.*

I. THE Quinſy doth generally happen betwixt the Spring and Summer. The firſt Onſet of the Fever is accompanied with a Pain and Inflammation of the Jaws; which, together with the ſwelling of the *Uvula*, *Tonſils*, and *Larynx*,

makes the Sick unable either to swallow or breathe.

Salmon.] The Quinsey is an Inflammation of the Jaws and Parts adjacent, accompanied with a Tumor sometimes inward, sometimes outward; and the Parts affected are chiefly the Tonsils, Jaws, Roof of the Mouth, Muscles of the *Larynx* and *Oesophagus*, as also the Palate itself; and is caused from Blood, offending in quantity, and vitiated by a sharp or acid Lymphatick Juice. Sometimes it is caused from a viscous pituitous Blood, which is indeed the primary and most common Cause thereof, which is inflamed by a preternatural Heat, and sometimes by too great or violent Stirring or Motion of the whole Body, by which the Viscous Flegm is heated, dissolved and made more fluid, which afterwards by the cold of the Ambient Air, drawn in by the Mouth and Nostrils, becomes coagulated: And *Hippocrates de victu ægrorum, Text.* 39. says, That *a Quinsey is caused by a fluxion of Viscous Matter.*

II. *Salmon.*] There are four differing kinds of the *Quinsey*, viz. 1. *Cynanche*, which is when the inward Muscles of the *Larynx* are inflamed, and seem to have no Swelling, but the Sick draw their Breath with their Mouths open as the Dogs do, which are tired: And altho' in this no Tumor appears, neither Internally nor Externally, yet the Disease is very dangerous. 2. *Parachynanche*, which is when the outward Muscles of the *Larynx* are inflamed with a little Swelling. 3. *Synanche*, which is, when there is an inward Inflammation and Tumor or Swelling, effecting (as some Authors say) the inward Muscles of the *Larynx*, or the Tumor shews it self within the Jaws. 4. *Parasynanche*, which is when the outward Muscles of the Jaws are swelled with a redness, and the Tumor appears more externally, seizing upon the Neck alone, with the external Muscles belonging to the Tongue and Hyoid bone. Again, Authors divide a Quinsey into 1. *Cynanche* a true Quinsey. And 2. *Parasynanche*, or Bastard Quinsey: But these Differences are comprehended in the others; so that nothing more need be said of them.

III. *Salmon.*] The Signs of an approaching Quinsey are, when the Patient cannot use his Neck as he used to do, and he has withal a difficulty of Breathing, cannot very well swallow, but finds a Burning and Pain in his Jaws. But the Signs of a present Quinsey are that the Patient is near choaking for want of Respiration, and that neither Drink nor any liquid Thing can well be got down the Throat, but is rather thrown up by the Nostrils: There is also a Fever present, with Inflammation of the Parts affected, redness of the same, driness of the Tongue, and a small Voice. To these Signs add Tumor or Swelling in all the kinds except the first: The *Cynanche* is without swelling; but in the *Paracynanche*, *Synanche* and *Parasynanche*, there is always a Tumor or Swelling, and for the most part with a redness of the Face.

IV. *Salmon.*] The Prognosticks. No kind of Quinsey whatsoever can be safe, because of the straitness of the Parts which

which the Disease possesses. In a Quinsey by how much the less there appears of a Tumour, there is so much the more Danger; and for this reason, a *Cynanche* is more dangerous than any of the other three kinds; for in this sort, the Muscles of the *Larynx* are inflamed without any manner of swelling: And this agrees with what *Hippocrates*, Sect. 6. Aphor 37. and Sect. 7. Sect. 49. says, That in a Quinsey, if there appears a Swelling in the Neck it is a good Sign: A *Paracynanche* is less dangerous than the former; and a *Synanche* is less dangerous than that; but a *Parasynanche* is that kind in which there is the least Danger of all. *Hippocrates*, Sect. 5. Aph. 10. says, That they who are free from a Quinsey, by a Conversion of the Matter upon the Lungs, die within seven Days; but if they escape that time, the Matter is turned into Pus: See also *Celsus*, Lib. 2. Cap 7.

V. Bleed in the Arm, and let a good Quantity of Blood be taken away. Let the inflamed Parts be touch'd *with Honey of Roses*, mixt with *Spirit of Vitriol*, or of *Sulphur*, to a considerable or very great Acidity, or with *Spirit of Vitriol* alone.

Salmon.] The Cure. Other Authors, besides our Author, here, advise to Blood-letting as soon as may be, tho' it be in a Body which is not Plethorick, and that first in the Right Arm, and to be repeated as often as need shall require, and afterwards in the Sublingual Veins, the Disease requiring it. And yet again some there are who doubt whether Bleeding be proper at all or no: Some are for it again, but only in the beginning, as it were, on the very first Day after the Invasion of the Disease; but yet totally disapprove of it, if any Malignity be conjoined with it: Some again are for Phlebotomy in all Cases, if Malignity be absent, provided it be not too plentifully administred, and within the Space of three Days after the Invasion: 'Tis doubtless a beneficial Operation if timely used, and with Discretion.

VI. *Salmon.*] The acid Lymphatick Juice is to be absorbed, the Bile in the Blood is to be allay'd, and if that is absent, the pituitous Viscosity is to be dissolved, that the aggregated Blood and Juices may be inverted, or made to flow as soon as may be. In order to this, such things as are Alkalies, and especially *Volatile Alkalies* are to be exhibited, and such are *Spirit of Sal Armoniack*, *Spirit of Urine*, or *of Man's Blood*, or *Spirit of Harts horn*, to be given from twenty Drops to thirty or forty in a Glass of Canary, and to be repeated every five or six Hours, either in that, or in some cooler Vehicle, as half Wine, half Water, *&c.* which sometime perform the Cure in twelve or twenty-four Hours, being two, three or four times repeated.

VII. *Salmon.*] But if it is a pituitous Viscosity, then Inciders are to be given, which alone, and by themselves overcome the Disease in a very short time. *Take Spring-water a quart*; *Spirit Aperines a spoonful*; *double refined Sugar, enough to make it pleasantly sweet*, of which let the Patient take three or four Spoonfuls at pleasure. Or, *Take black Cherry, or Angelica, or Mint water a pint*; *Honey of Roses three ounces*,

Oil of Vitriol or Sulphur thirty Drops or more, mix them to be taken as before; and with the same you may also oftentimes gargle the Mouth and Throat.

VIII. *Salmon.*] In the beginning Gargarisms also do much good; such as are made of the Roots of *Masterwort*, *Orrice*, and the like Vegetables: *A Gargarism* also made with *Spirit of Sal Armoniack, or of Urine, or of Man's or Beast's Blood, by mixing it with white Lisbon Wine or Madera, or other proper Wine,* has cured many: I cured one desperate Patient even upon the Spot, by Gargarizing the Mouth and Throat therewith five or six times a Day, and withal taking it as often down into the Body, by which the Fever was taken away, and the Patient saved almost to a Miracle. Some of these, or the former things being first administred, or an *Inciding Sudorifick, with Lapis Prunellæ*, if possible to be got down the Throat, Topicks are outwardly to be applied, such as we shall hereafter prescribe.

IX. *Salmon.*] Some Authors commend Emeticks in the Cure of a Quinsey; yea, tho' it be Malignant or Epidemical, and especially the *Aqua Benedicta Rulandi*: But this is to be observed, that if you will admit Vomits, they ought to be used the very first Day, for otherwise they are given in vain, and do more harm than good: But this of *Rulandus* being given to two Ounces, does (as *Riverius* says) Wonders; but it ought to be given only to such as are strong.

X. Presently after, this Gargarism may be used, but not after the usual manner, only held in the Mouth, without any Agitation, till it grows hot, and then spit out, and now and then repeated.

Salmon.] I know not why a Gargarism should not be used in this Disease in the same manner, as is usual for Gargarisms to be used; since the Patients may repeat it as often as they please, or as often as they find the Lotion grow hot; however, I leave every one at Liberty to use that Method they like best, and which by their Experience they have found most profitable.

The Gargarism.

XI. *Take Plantain-water, Rose-water, and Frog Sperm-water, of each four ounces; the Whites of three Eggs, by shaking reduced to Water; Sugarcandy three drams: Mix and make a Gargarism.*

Salmon] Or this. *Take Aqua Elementaria eight ounces, Mel Rosarum an ounce and half; mix and dissolve for a Gargarism.* Or this. *Take Spring-water ten ounces; Nitre Roch Alum, Saccharum Saturni, of each half a dram; Syrup of Mulberries two ounces: Mix them for a Gargarism.*

XII. *Salmon.*] Medicines and Gargarisms made of *Mustard-seed*, Seeds of *Lovage* and *Rocket*, *Rape-seed*, and *Bay-berries*; as also of *Spirit of Wine*, of *Spirit of Sal Armoniack*, and of *Spirit of Nitre* of *Salt*, *Sulphur* and *Vitriol*, &c. in the beginning, being light Astringents, and Inciders are to be exhibited: For any of these things being taken by little and little, they not only qualifie the Part, but being sent through the Liver and Veins, wonderfully cool the Blood, and allay the Inflammation of the Jaws and Tonsils.

Tonsils. But Spirit of *Sal Armoniack*, and other like Spirits of Urine, Blood, Horns, *&c.* have a peculiar Faculty, not only to discuss Matter, and Blood heaped up, but also to dissolve all sorts of Coagulums and Congelations in any Part whersoever. In the third Edition of our *Synopsis Medicinæ*, Lib. 4. Cap. 1. Sect. 30, 31. and 32, you have several other Gargarisms of good use, being such as repel the Flux of Humors into the Part: But this is to be observ'd, that tho' you ought to be cautious in the use of *Repellers* (especially if the Disease be Malign) lest the offending Matter being drove back, be forced upon the Heart, Lungs or Brain itself, thereby causing other vehement Diseases; yet this is certain, that if the Inflammation continues, *Repellers* must be made use of, but joined with Discussives and Astringents, lest the Parts which are by Nature soft, should be more relaxed, and so made fit, the more easily to receive a Defluxion. This following is of good use. *Take Tincture of Red Roses made with Red Port Wine six Ounces; Damask, or White, or Red Rose Water, Water of Elder Flowers of each three ounces; Cyder, or Juice of Apples two ounces; Spirit of Wine one ounce, Sal Prunellæ in fine Pouder two drams; Syrup of Mulberries three or four ounces; mix and make a Gargarism.* Or this. *Take unripe Bramble-berries two ounces, or Bramble Tops four ounces; boil them in Barly-water a quart, strain out, and add thereto, rectified Oil of Vitriol or Sulphur thirty drops; Honey of Roses, or Syrup of Mulberries two ounces, or more: Mix and make a Gargarism.*

XIII. *Salmon*] When the Inflammation and Tumor abate not, but the Sick is in manifest Danger of Death by choaking, some Authors advise to *Laryngotomia*, or cutting of the *Larynx*, and indeed there is no other way of saving Life: See *A. Severinus de efficacia Medicinæ*; and *Tho. Fienus his Chirurgery*, Lib. 12. p. 35. Also our *Synopsis Medicinæ*, Lib. 4. Cap. 1. Sect. 43, and 44. This is a desperate Remedy it is true, but it is better than none at all: Yet it is not so dangerous as some would have it, but the way and manner how it is to be perform'd, we have taught in our *Ars Chirurgica*, Lib. 1. Cap. 14. Sect. 2, 3. *&c.*

XIV. *Salmon.*] But if the Tumor does come to Suppuration, it must then be immediately opened with an Incision Knife, and then the Sore is to be cured by Cleansers, Driers and Healers, as in other Ulcers. I had a Patient sick of a Quinsey where the Tumor came to Suppuration: I caused it immediately to be opened, and the Patient had present Relief; for almost half a Quarter of a Pint of Corruption came forth, after which the poor Patient swallowed well, who had received nothing down his Throat for three Days before. It was healed up by a Gargarism made of *Barley-water, Syrup of Mulberries, Honey of Roses, with a little Spirit of Wine, and Spirit of Vitriol, added and mixed together.*

XV. Let the cooling Emulsion prescribed for the Pleurisy be daily used.

Salmon.] *Take Poppy-water, Aqua Elementaria, of each four ounces; Syrup of Corn Poppies two*

ounces,

ounces, Aqua Bezoartica three ounces and a half; mix for a Cordial Julep. Or, *Take Spring-water eight ounces, Syrup of Poppies, Aqua Theriacalis, of each an ounce and half; Spirit of Sal Armoniack half an ounce; mix them,* to be taken at three Draughts, and to be repeated so long as the Pain and Shortness of Breath remains.

Or this. *Take of an Emulsion of the four greater cold Seeds half a Pint; Barley-water a pint; Damask Rose-water two ounces, Syrup of red Poppies one ounce and half with Syrup of Mulberries a sufficient quantity; make a Julep to be often taken, two spoonfuls at a time.*

XVI. Next morning, unless the Fever and Difficulty of Swallowing be abated, Bleeding must be repeated, and the Purging put off till the Day after, which otherwise ought to have been attempted with some Linitive Medicine.

Salmon.] If Bleeding is reiterated, let it be to eight or ten Ounces, or more, in the sublingual Vessels; and repeat this as oft as need requires *Take choice Canary three ounces, Spirit of Man's Blood thirty or forty drops, or for want of it as many drops of Spirit of Sal Armoniack made with Salt of Tartar, or for want of it sixty drops of Spirit of Hartshorn; Syrup of Red or Corn Poppies half an ounce: Mix for* a draught. But as for Purging, I am of Opinion, that it ought not to be attempted till such time as the Disease is manifestly overcome, or at least till the Danger of Death is over. Then you may purge the Patient with *purging Spirit of Scurvygrass*, given in a Glass of Ale, twenty, thirty or forty Drops to be taken at a time, according to Age and Strength; or with the *Potio communis purgativa*, or *Cerevitia Purgativa*, or rather (if the Patient is subject to glandulous Tumors in the Neck and Throat, or the Evil) with the *Pulvis Catharticus*, which is no mean thing.

XVII. If, after all, the Disease do continue (which happens very rarely) both the Bleeding and Purging must be repeated. Let a large and sharp Vesicatory be applied to the Nape of the Neck after the first Bleeding.

Salmon.] There is generally a want of *Serum* in the Blood in this Disease, whence in part comes the *Coagulum*, and therefore I approve not of the Abstraction of the *Serum* by Blistering; for, 1. It is against the first Indication of Cure. 2. It puts the Sick to a great deal of Pain to no purpose. 3. It is apt to induce a Strangury, which in this Disease is many times fatal; for as much as the morbifick Matter is mostly piss'd forth, if the Sick recovers.

XVII *Salmon.*] Topicks are the next things to be considered; as to *Vesicatories* we have already in the former Section given you our Opinion: The other kinds are, 1. *Clysters*, which derive from the superior Parts to the inferior, and do much good, because they actually draw away the morbifick Matter to the lower Parts; for this purpose you may exhibit this. *Take Mutton-broth a pint, Cassia newly extracted an ounce, Cambogium a dram, brown Sugar two ounces, mix and dissolve for a Clyster,* which let be repeated when and so often as the Physician shall direct 2. *Cataplasms*, which either *discuss*, or *repel*, or *maturate*; in the first place

is

is the *Cataplaſma de Nido Hirundinis Mynſichti*; which let be often applied, becauſe it is ſaid to cure deſperate Quinſies: Or the *Cataplaſma Reſolutivum Forreſti*, which is good: Or a Cataplaſm *of Hens-dung, mixed with a quarter part of Album Grecum, and Aſhes of burnt Crabs or Creviſes, a ſufficient quantity.* A Repelling Cataplaſm: *Take Balauſtians two parts, red Roſes one part, boil in red Wine, and add thereto Catechu, Pouder of Acorns, of each a like quantity, Oil of Olives Omphacine enough to make it into Form.* A Suppurative Cataplaſm: *Take Onions roaſted two ounces, Figs roaſted one ounce, Roots of Briony, white Lillies, Garlick, of each an ounce and half; Pouder of Linſeed, Hens-dung, Pigeons-dung, of each ſix drams; Hens-greaſe, Gooſe-greaſe, of each an ounce; mix and boil to a Cataplaſm*: And while this is applied, keep *Pulp of Caſſia* in the Mouth, and uſe a *Gargariſm* ſomething more than Blood warm, made of *Milk and Honey*. 3. *Cupping-Glaſſes*, which are cautiouſly to be applied upon the Neck and Shoulders, and other parts, either without or with Scarification, as the Phyſician ſhall adviſe.

XIX. In the Intervals of Purging, let a cooling and ſoftning Clyſter be exhibited in the Morning. Let the Sick uſe a thin Diet, and abſtain from his Bed every Day for ſome Hours.

Salmon. The beſt thing you can purge withal is this. *Take White Wine a pint and half*, Sena *half an ounce, Liquorice bruiſed two drams*, Sal Prunellæ *a dram and half; mix and infuſe two hours, at laſt give it a ſimmering heat; then ſtrain out, and ſweeten with Syrup of Roſes Solutive for two Doſes.* It purges both by Stool and Urine, and ſo carries off the Recrements of the Diſeaſe both ways.

For a cooling Clyſter you may exhibit this: *Take Barley-broth a pint, Caſſia newly drawn an ounce*, Sal Prunellæ *in Pouder a dram and half Syrup of Violets two ounces; mix them for a Clyſter, which give warm*: And if the internal Tumor comes to Maturation, and is broken, whether of its own accord, or by force, waſh and cleanſe it with *Barley-water* and *Honey of Roſes*; or with *Hydromel*, or with *Wine mixed with Honey*; then dry it with *Allum Water*, and ſo conſummate the Cure. Where note, 1. That ſome touch the Apoſtem with Oil of Vitriol, or Butter of Antimony, which ſoon break it. 2. That others open it with an Inciſion Knife when ripe, which is the better way: But where Death was at Door, I twice cauſed them to be prick'd or opened with an Inciſion Knife before Ripeneſs, and ſo evacuated from the Part half a Quarter of a Pint of Blood, which abated the Swelling, allayed the Inflammation, and truly ſaved the two Patients Lives; afterwards I cured the Sore, as an ordinary Wound or Ulcer.

XX. In all theſe Fevers, which I call *Intercurrent*, as alſo in ſuch as are continent, or continual, it is to be obſerved, that the Sick carefully muſt abſtain from his Bed a great part of the Day.

Salmon. In any of theſe Fevers, it matters not, whether the Patient keeps his Bed, or keeps it not, provided the Medicament given exterminates

nates the preternatural Heat; and therefore if Strength permits, the Patient may abstain from his Bed; if not, he has the Liberty of keeping it for his Weakness sake: In the mean Season, that the febrile Heat may be abolished, the Sick may drink Mutton broth, or Water-gruel, in every half Pint of which, *twelve, or fifteen, or twenty grains of Salt of Tartar vitriolate,* is to be dissolved, which will not only destroy the Essence of the Fever, but also allay the Inflammation of the Throat, and drive the morbifick Matter to the lower Parts.

XXI And that his Food must be Barley or Oatmeal Broths, and such other like things, using small Beer hopp'd, and Milk and Water for his ordinary Drink.

Salmon.] *Hull'd* and *Pearl'd Barley* are very good things, because they are both cooling and slippery, which in this Case is much required; as also all Meats of a cooling and slippery Juice, and when he begins to eat Flesh, that of Veal is good.

It is good that his *Beer* be well *Hopp'd*, because it will then purge by Urine, and many times in this Disease, the morbifick Matter is carried off that way: But *Milk and Water* can never be good for ordinary Drink, because if the Acidities of the Stomach do not turn it to Curds, it will be apt to pall the Ventricle, and cause Loathings, if not Vomitings, and sometimes Gripings of the Bowels: For my part, I like better a thin and clear sort of Posset-drink, Barley-broth, or a thin Water-gruel, or Water brewed cold with the Flower of *Oatmeal*, and made a little acid with *Oil of Sulphur*, *Salt of Vitriol*, or our *Spiritus Aperiens*, all of which are Specifick's against the present Disease. *Hull'd Barley*, and *Rice*, boiled to softness, and eaten with a little fresh Butter, Salt, and fine Sugar, adding also so much of the Juice of an Orange or Limon, as to make it gratefully pleasant, may be good Food for the Sick to eat of, when he is hungry; to these things you may add *Gelly of Hartshorn, and Calves feet*, *Sheeps-Trotters* boil'd in Water, and *Fish of Gravelly Places*, all which things cool, make the Bowels slippery, and keep the Belly soluble, in order to the Restoration of Health.

CHAP. XIX. *Of the Measles.*

I. THEY chiefly invade Children, and the younger sort of People. The first Day they are taken with a Chilness and Shivering, and grow hot and cold by turns.

Salmon.] If the Measles succeed upon a Surfeit, the Fever manifests it self the second Day, but comes not to the Height till the Third, at what time the Heat is very intense: There is at first a great Redness, afterwards Spots only appear, which look like to small Pimples, but if you feel them, they are only flat without the least Protuberance; then (the Fever still continuing)

ing) they come to have some kind of Eminence, and feel a little hardish and rough, but yet small like Pins Heads.

II. The next Day the Fever is at the highest, and the following Symptoms appear: Vehement Sickness, Thirst, Dejection of Appetite, the Tongue white (but not dry) a little Cough, Heaviness of the Head and Eyes, and an Inclination to Sleep, with an Humor continually dropping from the Nose and Eyes, which Tears are a true sign of the Measles.

Salmon.] According as the previous Causes have been, such are the times and height of the Fever; sometimes the Fever is not at highest till the third Day (as aforesaid) and sometimes not till the fourth Day; and yet in some Patients it is in its Declination on the third Day; and many times with a Sickness at Stomach, there is also a great Pain of the Head.

III. As also Sneezing, Swelling of the Eye-lids a little before the breaking forth of the Pimples, Vomiting, a Looseness, Greenness of the Excrements, especially in Children that are breeding Teeth.

Salmon.] The Head and Face, and some other Places, feel sore before the eruption of the Pimples: The Vomiting proceeds from the Sickness of the Stomach; and the *Diarrhæa*, and discolouring of the Excrements from the Sharpness and Virulency of the Humors, which oftentimes presage Danger.

IV. The Symptoms still increase even to the fourth Day, in which (and many times in the fifth) the Forehead and Face begin to have little red Specks, not much unlike to Flea-bitings.

Salmon.] The *Symptoms* encrease not till the fourth Day, unless the Fever also encreases; but as that encreases, or is in height, so also are the *Symptoms*, which in some Patients encrease even to the fifth Day; nor do they diminish till the Eruption is compleat and perfect.

V. Which being afterwards encreased both in Bigness and Number, run together into Heaps or Clusters, and defile the Face with great red Spots, that are made up of small Pimples raised so little above the Skin, that you can scarcely perceive their Protuberancy with your Eye, but may feel it by slightly touching them with your Finger.

Salmon.] In some Patients the Protuberancy of the Pimples is so little, that it is scarcely to be felt by the Fingers, the Skin only feeling a little rough: Again, in other Patients, it is manifest even to the Eye, but perfectly felt by the Fingers, with a considerable redness, which afterwards decline to a whitish Colour.

VI. From the Face, where at the first they only appear, they scatter themselves over the Breast, Belly, and last of all the Legs, in which Parts they are broad and red, and scarcely rise above the Surface of the Skin.

Salmon.] Though they appear in the Face first, yet in all other Parts of the Body, where they are at length manifest, they come out (as it were) all at once; but by reason of a kind of *Diaphoresis*, which the Parts which are always covered, or are in Bed are subject to, they never

never appear so protuberant or high, as they do in those Places, which are more exposed to the ambient Air.

VII. After the breaking forth of the Measles the Symptoms are not alleviated, as in the Small-Pox. The Vomiting indeed ceases, but the Fever, Cough, and difficulty of Breathing still increase, as also the Defluction upon the Eyes, the Sleepiness, and want of Appetite still continue.

Salmon.] Though the *Symptoms* do no not abate after the coming forth of the *Measles*, as they commonly do in the *Small-Pox*, it is because the Fever does not then presently abate: But upon the abating of the Fever, the *Symptoms* gradually decrease, not all at once, but first one *Symptom*, then another: But if the Sick sleeps well and easily, then the *Symptoms* abate the faster, because Sleeping causes so great a *Diaphoresis*, as to evacuate that way, a vast quantity of the morbid Matter; and therefore such things as excite a *Diaphoresis*, hasten on the Cure of the Disease, and that with the greatest Safety.

VIII. On the sixth Day, or thereabouts, the Forehead and Face grow rough, the Wheals dying away, and the uppermost Skin being broken; in the other Parts of the Body the Spots appear very broad and red.

Salmon.] This is according to the time of the Pimples coming forth; if they come out very early, and good *Sudorificks* have been given, they will die away, and the Skin grow rough, on the fifth Day, or sooner, and sometimes on the fourth Day: But if it be the fourth or fifth Day before they come forth, then it may be the sixth or seventh Day before they wither and decay.

IX. About the eighth Day, the Spots or Wheals in the Face vanish, and scarcely are there any to be seen any where else in the Body.

Salmon.] Sometimes they vanish away in the Face sooner than the eighth Day, but that is when the Protuberance was very early, and withal very small, or few in Number: But they always go away from those Parts which are covered, or kept warm and in Bed first; because of the *Diaphoresis* or openness of the Pores, which those Parts are subject to, by which there is a more early Evacuation of the Morbid Matter.

X. The Day following they perfectly disappear, leaving behind them certain white or mealy Scales in the Face and Limbs, and sometimes in other Parts of the Body; at this time also the Fever, Cough, and difficulty of Breathing increase

Salmon.] There is a kind of mealy Scurff almost all over the whole Body, even where the Measles never broke out at all: And the reason is, because the Morbifick Matter sweating forth, is of a clammy, glutinous Substance, which drying on the Superficies of the Skin, becomes of a white, mealy or scurfy Colour and Consistence: But that after the ninth Day, that the Fever should encrease, is what I scarcely ever observed, (though I have seen some hundreds of the Measles) unless the Patient had taken fresh cold, and then all the *Symptoms* would seem

ſeem to revive, and that ſometimes to the hazard of the Life of the Sick.

XI. In Perſons of ripe Years that are kept hot, the Spots grow firſt livid, or of a leaden Colour, and then black.

Salmon.] In what Patient ſoever the Spots grow livid and black; they foreſhew a high Putrefaction of the Blood and Juices, and that the Sick is in a great deal of Danger: For thoſe Colours very rarely ariſe or appear, till the vital Powers are aſſaulted with a high degree of Malignity; and that is the cauſe of thoſe evil Signs, and not the ripeneſs of Years; becauſe we have ſeen many of ripe Years vehemently affected with this Diſeaſe, in whom the Spots never degenerated into thoſe evil Colours, but all along retained their uſual Appearance.

XII. *Take of the Pectoral Decoction a pint and a half, Syrup of Violets, and of Maiden-hair, of each an ounce and a half: Mix and make an Apozem.* Doſe three or four Ounces, three or four times in the Day.

Salmon. } *Take Black Cherry-water ſix ounces, Canary an ounce and a half,* Guttæ Vitæ *twenty drops; mix them,* to be given at time of ſleeping. The next Morning give this: *Take Milk-water four ounces,* Aquæ Bezoarticæ *half an ounce, dulcified Spirit of Nitre twenty or thirty drops; mix for a Draught.* And this may be given ſeveral times in the Day-time to quench Thirſt, if need requires.

What our Author has here preſcribed, has reſpect chiefly to the *Cough and difficulty of Breathing*; and may be given now and then as he has ordered: But the chief thing to be conſidered is to defend the Heart from the Malignity, and to expel the Morbifick Matter through the Pores of the Skin by Alexipharmicks and Sudorificks, for which purpoſe the firſt of theſe our Preſcriptions is of good uſe; or the ſecond of them, if there is great Thirſt and Shortneſs of Breath. This following is of incomparable uſe, and what I have uſed ſome hundreds of times with admirable Succeſs. *Take Tinctura Bezoartica a dram, Spirit of Saffron half a dram, Liquid Laudanum ten drops, Scordium-water two ounces, Syrup of Poppies ſix drams; mix for a Doſe.*

XIII. *Take of Oil of ſweet Almonds two ounces; Syrup of Violets, and of Maiden-hair, of each an ounce; white Sugarcandy a ſufficient quantity; mix and make a Lohoch,* to be taken often licking, eſpecially when the Cough is troubleſome.

Salmon] Or, *Take Oil of ſweet Almonds newly drawn two ounces; Syrup of Liquorice, and of Limons, of each an ounce; mix them, by ſhaking them well together in a Glaſs,* which give as the former.

Or you may give from fifteen to thirty Drops of our *Impetus Martis in Scordium-water four ounces, dulcified with Syrup of red Poppies, an ounce.* Or this: *Take Canary, Scordium-water, of each three ounces; Syrup of Clove-Gilliflowers an ounce and half, Liquid Laudanum from 30 to 40 drops; mix for two Doſes,* to be given every Night at Bed-time. Or this: *Take of the Eclegma Sudorificum from half a ſcruple to a ſcruple, Scordium or Parſly-water*

three

three ounces, Syrup of Juice of Citrons an ounce; mix them for a Dose.

XIV. *Take of black Cherry-water three ounces, Syrup of Poppies one ounce; mix them for a Draught,* which is to be taken every Night, from the beginning to the end of the Distemper; the Dose according to the Age of the Sick.

Salmon.] Or this, which is better *Take the* Laudanum Liquidum *(in Chap. 1. Sect. 14. made with an Acid) from ten to twenty drops, Alexiterick Milk-water four ounces,* Syrupus Simplex *half an ounce; mix for a Draught* at time of sleeping.

Or this. *Take Catechu in fine Pouder, Flowers of Sulphur, of each a scruple; Mithridate half a dram; mix for a Bolus* to be taken early in the Morning fasting, washing it down with this. *Take Scordium water, Alexiterick Milk-water, of each two ounces; Syrup of Corn Poppies, and Syrup of Citron-peels, of each half an ounce; mix them.* And at Night at Bed-time give this: *Take Eclegma Sudorificum from ten grains to a scruple; Catechu Flowers of Sulphur, of each fifteen grains; with Syrup of Red Poppies make a Bolus for one Dose;* which wash down with a small Glass of pure, red *Barcelona* Wine.

XV. Let the Sick keep their Bed two Days after the first coming forth of the Spots.

Salmon.] If the Heat and Violence of the Disease continues, it will be safe for the Sick to keep Bed a Day or two longer, and in the mean Season to exhibit this Sudorifick: *Take Water of Scabious and Scordium, of each four ounces; Mithridate two drams, Bezoar Mineral one dram; Saffron, Cochinele, in fine Pouder, of each a scruple; Mix and dissolve for four Doses, and to be given every eight hours.* Or this: *Take Treakle-water an ounce, Borrage water two ounces, Mithridate half a dram, Liquid Laudanum ten drops. Syrup of the Juice of Citrons an ounce; mix for a Dose,* to be given twice in twenty-four Hours, if the Patient sweats not so well as he ought. Or this: *Take Scordium-water three ounces, Tinctura Bezoartica a dram, Laudanum Liquidum gut. 7 Syrup of Limons and of Violets, of each six drams; mix them for a Dose,* to be given once in twenty-four Hours. Or you may *dissolve Eclegma Sudorificum from ten grains to a scruple, in Damask Rose-water two ounces, and sweeten with Syrup of Limons one ounce,* for a Dose.

XVI. If after the disappearing of the Measles, there succeeds a Fever, Difficulty of Breathing, and other Symptoms much like to a *Peripneumonia,* in such a case Bleeding in the Arm is advisable, and much Blood may be taken away once, twice or thrice, as need shall require, interposing always a due Space of time betwixt.

Salmon.] Let great Caution and Advice be taken about his Bleeding, lest the vital Potency of the Sick be so violated, as to put the Hopes of Life out of Doors. In this Case this following Mixture is better to be often given. *Take Aqua Angelicæ six ounces, Syrupus Antifebriticus two ounces, Spiritus Salis Armoniaci two drams;* mix for three Doses, to be given at the end of every third Hour. And at Night give this: *Take*

Aqua

Aqua Elementaria two ounces and a half, Canary one ounce, Guttæ Vitæ from twelve drops to thirty; mix for a Dose.

If the Difficulty of Breathing is great, or Symptoms much like to a *Peripneumonia* manifestly appear, you must immediately give this. *Take Madera Wine, Scordium-water, of each two ounces; Spirit of Man's-Blood, or of Bullocks's-Blood, or of Hartshorn, thirty drops; mix them for a Dose*; which repeat again in six or eight Hours. And at Bed-time give this: *Take Scordium-water four ounces, Spirit of Hartshorn thirty drops, Liquid Laudanum from ten to twenty drops, Syrup of Corn Poppies an ounce; mix for a Dose.*

XVII. Let the Sick also continue the use of the Pectoral Decoction above described, as also of the *Lohoch*, or Oil of sweet Almonds by it self.

Salmon.] That is, if the Cough and Difficulty of Breathing, or Shortness of Breath continue: And yet in this very case this following Prescription will be much more effectual. *Take Mithridate from half a dram to a dram, Liquid Laudanum from ten drops to twenty; Spirit of Sal Armoniack, or of Hartshorn, thirty drops; choice Canary, red Poppy-water, of each two ounces; Syrup of Violets an ounce and half; mix for a Dose*, to be given every Night at Bed-time. Or this: *Take Eclegma Sudorificum from ten grains to a scruple; Syrup of red Poppies an ounce; Parsly-water, white Lisbon-wine, of each two ounces: Mix them for a Dose to be given at Bed-time.*

XVIII. And about the twelfth Day from the first beginning of the Disease, let him be purged with a Linitive Medicine.

Salmon.] 'Twill be better to defer Purging to the fourteenth or sixteenth Day; and if there be a great Constipation of the Bowels, to loosen the Belly with this Clyster. *Take Posset-drink one pound, Syrup of Violets eight ounces; mix and dissolve*, which exhibit Blood-warm.

And when the time comes that Purging is necessary, there is nothing better than to do it with *Sal Mirabile*, which may be given from two or three Drams to six Drams, or an ounce (according to Age and Strength) dissolved in warm Spring-water, or very thin Water-gruel, or clear Posset-drink; and this may be repeated two, three or four times, according to the Foulness or Grosness of the Body, as the prudent Physician shall advise; other Catharticks may be used for strong Persons, but as a general Purger in this case, *Sal Mirabile* is the best; because it cleanses and cools the Body both at once.

XIX. The *Diarrhœa* or Looseness, that comes after the Measles, is cured by Bleeding.

Salmon.] Bleeding I am sure is not the natural way of curing this Flux; 'tis much better to do it by giving for three or four Nights two or three Grains of *Laudanum*, and taking after it this Mixture. *Take Milk-water three ounces, Tinctura Mirabilis six drams, white Sugar one ounce, mix* for a Draught.

Or this. *Take Canary or white Lisbon, Poppy-water, Scordium-water, of each two ounces; Liquid Laudanum from fifteen to twenty-*

five drops; mix for a Dose to be given at Bed-time: And in the Morning you may exhibit this. *Take Barcelona Wine, pure without mixture, four ounces; Tinctura Mirabilis six drams; white Sugar-candy in fine Pouder one ounce; mix, dissolve, and give it for a Dose.*

CHAP. XX. *Of the Small-Pox.*

I. THEY are of two sorts, the Distinct and Confluent, or Running (commonly called the Flux'd) Pox.

Salmon.] The distinct kind are also two-fold, *viz.* either small like Gromwell-seed; or large, being sometimes as big as white or grey Pease, or bigger. And these are either few in Number, or in vast Proportions spread over the whole Body. The confluent kind, are also either manifest in some particular Part or Parts, or fill and replenish the universal Surface of the Body.

II. The first at the beginning are attended with Chilness and Shivering, intense Heat, vehement Pain of the Head and Back, Disposition to Vomit.

Salmon.] There is generally an external Chilness, and a Sickness at Stomach; and where there is much of the morbifick Matter to be protruded, the Pains of the Back and Head will be in Extremety; for according as they are, so will be the Smalness or Greatness of the Disease.

III. In Ripeness of Age, there is a great Propensity to sweat (from whence you may judge that they will not run together) there is a Pain under the hollow Part of the Breast, if it be prest with the Hand, with Dulness and Drowsiness, and sometimes Fits of the Falling-Sickness (especially in Children) which if they come after the breeding of Teeth is over, you may presage that the Small-Pox is at hand.

Salmon.] Dulness and Drowsiness, also being often sick at Stomach, with unusual Flushings in the Face, whether in Children, or those of ripe Years, many times presage an approaching Small-Pox; so also unusual, convulsive Motions in Children, often Peuking, and Redness of the Flesh and Skin.

IV. Insomuch that if the *Epileptick* Fit happens over Night, the Small-Pox will appear next Morning, and are generally of a mild sort, and not often run together.

Salmon.] But the most eminent Signs of an approaching Small-Pox in Children, are a gentle Ague-fit or two, Colick Pains in the small Guts, and after them, sleeping much beyond the accustomed Hours.

V. On the fourth Day inclusively from the beginning, and sometimes later, seldom sooner, the Pox come forth, at which time the Symptoms either abate or disappear.

Salmon.] Sometimes the morbifick Matter is protruded on the third Day, yea sometimes on the second Day; and if there is a Plenitude of Matter, I have found

found the Signs of them in twenty-four Hours after the firſt falling Sick : But ſometimes they come not forth till the fifth or ſixth Day, the Cauſe of which is either the Paucity of Humours, or the Remiſneſs of the Fever; which if it is the latter, the Sick is in apparent danger.

VI. At the firſt reddiſh Wheals appear ſcattered over the Face, Neck, Breaſt, and whole Body ; then comes a Pain in the Jaws, which increaſeth as the Wheals grow higher.

Salmon.] If there is a Paucity of the Matter, they always come forth without Pain, or very little Sickneſs at Stomach; but if there is a Plenitude of Humours, the Pain is vehement, and the Patient compares the Heat he is in, to that of the Mouth of a vehement hot Furnace ; and withal, till they are perfectly come forth, the Sickneſs at Stomach is exagerated to almoſt the laſt Degree; for which reaſon Phyſicians have thought it convenient to give a Vomit in the beginning of the Diſeaſe.

VII. About the eighth Day from the firſt Invaſion of the Diſeaſe, the Intervals between the Wheals, which were hitherto white, begin to be red and ſwoln, and affected with a continual Pain ; the Eye-lids ſwell, and like blown Bladders hide the Eyes.

Salmon.] Indeed where the morbifick Matter is in vaſt Plenty, all Parts where they break out ſwell extravagantly, even to the total diſguiſing of the Body : Firſt, the whole Skin is red, then the Eruptions come forth much redder, which having yet Age upon them, then turn white, and afterwards yellow.

VIII. Next after the Face the Hands ſwell, and the Fingers are diſtended; the Wheals in the Face, which before were ſmooth and red, now appear rough (which is the firſt Sign of coming to Ripeneſs) and whitiſh : Moreover they caſt forth a yellowiſh Humour, in Colour not much unlike that of a Scald-head.

Salmon.] The Small-Pox is not always of the ſame Nature, but the Diſeaſe depends in a great meaſure upon the Fever, and the Puſtules are diſpoſed in their Protuberancy, according to the Turgeſcence of the Matter, which diſturbs and alters the *Craſis* of the Blood, making them ſometimes more, ſometimes leſs ; ſometimes malign, ſometimes benign; and ſometimes of one Colour, ſometimes of another.

IX. The Inflammation of the Face and Hands being now at the Height, the Interſpaces between the Wheals appear of a florid Colour, like that of Damask Roſes ; and the milder the Pox are, ſo much the more lively, in both them and the Skin, is that Colour expreſſed.

Salmon.] The Inflammation ariſes from the Fever, and the Wheals (which give Denomination to the Small-Pox) appear according to the Quantity of the Matter, and Malignity or Benignity of the Diſeaſe. They are called *Variolæ*, either *a variando*, from altering the Skin ; or from *Vari*, Pimples, becauſe they are little Pimples, though commonly they

ſurpaſs Pimples in Magnitude: Here we take the word *Variolæ* in the moſt uſual Signification, *viz.* Thoſe *Exanthemata*, Pimples or Pox, which by way of *Criſis* break out in thee Skin with a malignant Fever, and come to Suppuration, being uſually attended with ſeveral Symptoms.

X. The Wheals in the Face grow ſtill rougher and yellower as they grow riper; but in the Hands, and other parts of the Body, they daily grow whiter, and leſs rough.

Salmon.] This is according to the Height and Intenſeneſs of the Fever which makes the Protruſion; but I know that ſome make a Queſtion, whether the Small-Pox be always attended with a Fever, or not? Some Authors affirm, they are not always ſo attended; others the contrary, of which Opinion I am: For ſince the Small-Pox are protruded by way of *Criſis*, and by means of a great Efferveſcency of the Blood, without which they cannot come forth, which Efferveſcency cannot be without a Fever; it follows from hence, that the Small-Pox cannot come without a Fever. I confeſs, I have ſeen ſeveral who as have had them, without the Appearance of any Fever or Heat, or any other Symptom, and were as quiet as if they had no Diſeaſe upon them; but this only happens in ſuch as have but a very few of them, from the Paucity of the morbifick Matter, where no violent Efferveſcency of the Blood can be, and ſo the Fever not diſcernable, or, perchance, the Illneſs was not the Small-Pox it ſelf; and yet we ſay, no ſuch Eruption can be without an Efferveſcence, nor an Efferveſcence, without a Fever, either great or ſmall, which in the latter Caſe is ſometimes ſcarcely to be diſcerned.

XI. The 11 Day, the Swelling and Inflammation abate, and the Wheals being come to their due Maturity and Largeneſs (which equals that of the greater ſort of Peaſe) wither and fall off.

Salmon.] The Swelling and Inflammation never abate, nor do the Wheals come to their due Maturity and Largeneſs, till the Protruſion of the whole morbifick Matter; and then of courſe, the Fever goes away of its own accord: If therefore the Small-Pox fill not well, or flatten, and fall in as it were in a Point in the middle of the Puſtule, and grow purple or livid, it is a Sign that the whole Protruſion is not perfect; and if ſo, the Fever vaniſhes away, which is the cauſe thereof, and ſo the Patient dies, or is in a very dangerous Condition; and now nothing can ſave the Sick, but a Revival of the Efferveſcence, and a new Excitation of the Fever.

XII. On the fourteenth or fifteenth they go away entirely; but they that are in the Hands are of a more tenacious Nature, and remaining ſtill white and freſh, they continue a Day or two longer, after which they break.

Salmon.] That is, upon the ſecond *Criſis*, when the *Moon* comes to the *Oppoſition* of her Place at the *Decumbiture*: If therefore the *Criſis* is good and promiſing, a good End of the Diſ-

Diſeaſe may be expected; but if evil, the Patient will certainly die in a very little time after. But if the Sick is brisk, and looks with a lively Eye, the Puſtules are compleatly full, and break of their own accord, and the Fever does abate, and the other Symptoms of Thirſt, Sickneſs at Heart, and Fainting go away, the Patient may be ſaid to be in a hopeful Way.

XIII. Whilſt theſe that are in the Face and the reſt of the Body fall off in Scales, thoſe in the Face are ſucceeded many times by Holes or Pits.

Salmon.] The Pitting of the Small-Pox proceeds from the exceeding Malignity and Virulency of the Matter, and its lying long upon the Cutis before it dries, which is for want of Heat enough: And therefore all ſuch Parts as are kept warm and in Bed never pit, but only ſuch as are expoſed to the Cold of the Ambient Air; as the Face and Hands many times, if not kept in Bed: To prevent this Pitting therefore in the Face, when the Puſtules are very long and full, or run one into another, I commend the pricking them with a Needle, or Lancet, or Point of an Inciſion Knife, or opening them with the fine Point of a ſmall pair of Sciſſars; for by this means the virulent and corroding Matter is preſently let forth, and the Puſtules turn forthwith into dry Scabs, which in a very little time fall away without any ways diſfiguring the Skin.

XIV. During the whole Courſe of the Diſtemper; the Belly is either quite bound up, or not often performs it Office.

Salmon.] And the Conſtipation ought to be continued, even during the whole time of the Protruſion; if otherwiſe, Nature will be wonderfully weakened, ſo much, that ſhe will not have Strength enough to perfect the Eruption; and this is the reaſon that ſuch as have a Flux of the Belly in the Small-Pox, for the moſt part die: If therefore there be a laſſitude of the Bowels, the Phyſician ought forthwith to take care to ſtop the Flux; for the Patient's Well-being, or Life depends upon it. After the Expulſion is over, and the Puſtules begin to die, the Belly may be gently moved, either by Clyſter, or Suppoſitory, or ſome lenitive Medicament given by the Mouth.

XV. The greateſt part of thoſe to whom this Diſeaſe proves Mortal, die on the eighth Day in the diſtinct Pox, and on the eleventh in the Confluent or Running ſort.

Salmon.] If the Diſeaſe proves very malignant, and the Fever intenſe, with Faintings, and as it were Swooning away, or extream Sickneſs at Heart; or that the Puſtules fill not, but grow livid, and pit or fall in the middle, the Sick for the moſt part dies preſently after the firſt *Criſis*, and ſometimes lives not ſo long as to ſee the *Criſis* over; otherwiſe, if with the Malignity, there be an indifferent Strength of Body, they live till near the time of the ſecond *Criſis*; *viz.* to the eleventh, twelfth, or thirteenth Day: In this Caſe, approved

and Specifick Alexipharmicks ought to be given, though only for the sake of the hopes or desires of Life.

XVI. For when, in the first sort of Pox, Sweating is endeavoured with Cordials, or a hot Government or Regulation of the Body, on the forementioned Day, the Face, which should be swoln and inflamed in the Spaces between the Wheals, on the contrary appears flaccid and whitish; whilst in the mean time the Pox are manifestly red and high, and even cease not to be so after Death.

Salmon.] Not long before those fatal Hours approach, there is exceeding thirst, with driness of the Mouth, nor will plentiful drinking cool the inflamed *Viscera*; there is a Palpitation of the Heart, shortness of Breath, difficulty of Breathing, as if the Sick was nearly suffocated, Anxiety of the Stomach, Swooning, and a quick Pulse in the Temporal Arteries; vehement Head-ach, Watching, and if any Sleep, it is very unquiet, with Startings, Catchings, Frightfulness, Gnashing of Teeth, *Delirium*, Convulsive Motions, or a Lethargy, *&c.*

XVII. That Sweat also which has hitherto flowed abundantly, immediately vanishes: The Sick becomes Light-headed, grievously Sick and Anxious, tosses up and down, pisseth little and often, and within a few Hours after dies.

Salmon.] These, with those aforegoing, are all Symptoms of the approaching, or rather immediately impending Fate: The *Delirium* shews, that the Animal Powers are smote with a fatal Blow; and the Sickness of Heart shews the Wounding of the vital Powers, without retrieve.

XVIII. *In the Running or Confluent kind*, the Symptoms are the same, but more vehement. The Fever (for Example-sake) Anxiety, Sickness, Inclination to Vomit, *&c.* do more severely torment the Sick; but there is not the disposition to sweat, as in the other sort.

Salmon.] In the confluent kind, all the Symptoms are yet more vehement, which come from the Plenty and Virulency of the Morbifick Matter. There is sharp Heat, frequent Pulse without Intermission, painful Lassitude, great Languishing, and a notable Pain in the Back and Loins: The Fever more vehemently encreases on the second or third Day, which is attended with Head-ach, Thirst, Loathing, Vomiting; sometime they appear about the middle of the second Day, more follow on the third, and still encrease on the fourth; the Face ought not only to be viewed, but the whole Body, especially the Back.

XIX. A Looseness, or Flux, sometimes comes before the breaking forth of the Pox, and continues a Day or two after, which seldom ever happens in the distinct sort.

Salmon.] If a Flux goes before, it is dangerous, except it presently stops, because it hinders the Protrusion of the effervescent Matter; and then there precedes a kind of itching with a pricking all over the Body; the Eyes are red and Water, and grow a little dim. In this case Medicaments which cause

cause a Constipation of the Bowels ought to be given, as *Liquid Laudanum*, *Eclegma Sudoriſicum*, *Guttæ Vitæ*, and such other like. There is also a hoarseness of the Voice, and a kind of dry Cough, with prodigious Heat.

XX. On the third Day, or sonner, scarcely later, they come forth, and the sooner they break out, the more they run into one.

Salmon.] Even upon the fourth Day and fifth they still continue to come forth, and in some Patients where the diseasy Matter much abounds, I have known the Expulsion to last to the seventh or ninth Day, yea, to the eleventh and longer, in which space of time the Skin is very red, swells in particular Places with single Pustles, like the distinct kind, then all of a sudden they seem to grow flat or spread themselves, and the neareſt run one into another, and still they grow flatter, and those which have already run one into another, make another Conjunction, with other the like spreading Pustles, till their Height and Form seem to be almost lost, and the Skin to be universally swelled, and the whole Body or Places where they seem to break out, to be wholly deformed.

XXI. Sometimes their breaking out is retarded till the fourth or fifth Day, by the vehemence of some Symptom, such as (for Example) a pain in the Lions, Side, or Limbs, resembling the Stone, Pleurisy, or Rheumatism; or in the Stomach with Vehement Sickness and Vomiting.

Salmon.] That which most detards their coming out, is either a vehement Vomiting, or a continued Flux or Looseness, or both of them together; or the Patient's taking Cold; all which if not quickly taken off, suddenly prove fatal to the Sick: Here *Antiemeticks*, *Alexipharmicks*, and *Sudoricks* are absolutely necessary: Nor is the Physician to wait for the approaching *Crisis*, lest the Malignity of the Disease puts a period to it, and overcomes Nature beforehand, and saves any farther Labour for the Benefit of the Diseased.

XXII. The Symptoms abate not presently after the coming forth of the Pox, as they do in the other sort; but the Fever and the other Symptoms also continue to trouble the Sick many Days afterwards.

Salmon.] And the Reason is, because the Blood, and other Juices are wonderfully vitiated, in which not only the Excrementitious Parts of the Blood, but the pure Blood itself, is, as it were, converted into Putridity; from whence it comes to pass, that this confluent kind of Small-Pox is always very dangerous, and, for the most part, at least oftentimes, Mortal: As also, because it always goes along with a malign Putrefaction, which is absolutely necessary to such a dangerous Effervescence.

XXIII. Sometimes they come out after the manner of an *Erysipelas*, and sometimes like the Measles, but are evidently to be distinguished by the time of the breaking out.

Salmon.] And therefore it is a very foolish thing for any Physician to say (when such

and Specifick Alexipharmicks ought to be given, though only for the sake of the hopes or desires of Life.

XVI. For when, in the first sort of Pox, Sweating is endeavoured with Cordials, or a hot Government or Regulation of the Body, on the forementioned Day, the Face, which should be swoln and inflamed in the Spaces between the Wheals, on the contrary appears flaccid and whitish; whilst in the mean time the Pox are manifestly red and high, and even cease not to be so after Death.

Salmon.] Not long before those fatal Hours approach, there is exceeding thirst, with driness of the Mouth, nor will plentiful drinking cool the inflamed *Viscera*; there is a Palpitation of the Heart, shortness of Breath, difficulty of Breathing, as if the Sick was nearly suffocated, Anxiety of the Stomach, Swooning, and a quick Pulse in the Temporal Arteries; vehement Head-ach, Watching, and if any Sleep, it is very unquiet, with Startings, Catchings, Frightfulness, Gnashing of Teeth, *Delirium*, Convulsive Motions, or a Lethargy, *&c.*

XVII. That Sweat also which has hitherto flowed abundantly, immediately vanishes: The Sick becomes Light-headed, grievously Sick and Anxious, tosses up and down, pisseth little and often, and within a few Hours after dies.

Salmon.] These, with those aforegoing, are all Symptoms of the approaching, or rather immediately impending Fate: The *Delirium* shews, that the Animal Powers are smote with a fatal Blow; and the Sickness of Heart shews the Wounding of the vital Powers, without retrieve.

XVIII. *In the Running or Confluent kind*, the Symptoms are the same, but more vehement. The Fever (for Example-sake) Anxiety, Sickness, Inclination to Vomit, *&c.* do more severely torment the Sick; but there is not the disposition to sweat, as in the other sort.

Salmon.] In the confluent kind, all the Symptoms are yet more vehement, which come from the Plenty and Virulency of the Morbifick Matter. There is sharp Heat, frequent Pulse without Intermission, painful Lassitude, great Languishing, and a notable Pain in the Back and Loins: The Fever more vehemently encreases on the second or third Day, which is attended with Head-ach, Thirst, Loathing, Vomiting; sometime they appear about the middle of the second Day, more follow on the third, and still encrease on the fourth; the Face ought not only to be viewed, but the whole Body, especially the Back.

XIX. A Looseness, or Flux, sometimes comes before the breaking forth of the Pox, and continues a Day or two after, which seldom ever happens in the distinct sort.

Salmon.] If a Flux goes before, it is dangerous, except it presently stops, because it hinders the Protrusion of the effervescent Matter; and then there precedes a kind of itching with a pricking all over the Body; the Eyes are red and Water, and grow a little dim. In this case Medicaments which cause

cause a Constipation of the Bowels ought to be given, as *Liquid Laudanum*, *Eclegma Sudoriſicum*, *Guttæ Vitæ*, and ſuch other like. There is alſo a hoarſneſs of the Voice, and a kind of dry Cough, with prodigious Heat.

XX. On the third Day, or ſonner, ſcarcely later, they come forth, and the ſooner they break out, the more they run into one.

Salmon.] Even upon the fourth Day and fifth they ſtill continue to come forth, and in ſome Patients where the diſeaſy Matter much abounds, I have known the Expulſion to laſt to the ſeventh or ninth Day, yea, to the eleventh and longer, in which ſpace of time the Skin is very red, ſwells in particular Places with ſingle Puſtles, like the diſtinct kind, then all of a ſudden they ſeem to grow flat or ſpread themſelves, and the neareſt run one into another, and ſtill they grow flatter, and thoſe which have already run one into another, make another Conjunction, with other the like ſpreading Puſtles, till their Height and Form ſeem to be almoſt loſt, and the Skin to be univerſally ſwelled, and the whole Body or Places where they ſeem to break out, to be wholly deformed.

XXI. Sometimes their breaking out is retarded till the fourth or fifth Day, by the vehemence of ſome Symptom, ſuch as (for Example) a pain in the Lions, Side, or Limbs, reſembling the Stone, Pleuriſy, or Rheumatiſm; or in the Stomach with Vehement Sickneſs and Vomiting.

Salmon.] That which moſt detards their coming out, is either a vehement Vomiting, or a continued Flux or Looſneſs, or both of them together; or the Patient's taking Cold; all which if not quickly taken off, ſuddenly prove fatal to the Sick: Here *Antiemeticks*, *Alexipharmicks*, and *Sudoricks* are abſolutely neceſſary: Nor is the Phyſician to wait for the approaching *Criſis*, leſt the Malignity of the Diſeaſe puts a period to it, and overcomes Nature beforehand, and ſaves any farther Labour for the Benefit of the Diſeaſed.

XXII. The Symptoms abate not preſently after the coming forth of the Pox, as they do in the other ſort; but the Fever and the other Symptoms alſo continue to trouble the Sick many Days afterwards.

Salmon.] And the Reaſon is, becauſe the Blood, and other Juices are wonderfully vitiated, in which not only the Excrementitious Parts of the Blood, but the pure Blood itſelf, is, as it were, converted into Putridity; from whence it comes to paſs, that this confluent kind of Small-Pox is always very dangerous, and, for the moſt part, at leaſt oftentimes, Mortal: As alſo, becauſe it always goes along with a malign Putrefaction, which is abſolutely neceſſary to ſuch a dangerous Effervescence.

XXIII. Sometimes they come out after the manner of an *Eryſipelas*, and ſometimes like the Meaſles, but are evidently to be diſtinguiſhed by the time of the breaking out.

Salmon.] And therefore it is a very fooliſh thing for any Phyſician to ſay (when ſuch

Symptoms appear) that it was a very dangerous Small-Pox, because it was a Complication of many Diseases together, as the *Small-Pox*, *Erysipelas*, *Purples*, *Spotted-Fever*, and the like, by reason of which Complication, 'twas impossible (say they) for the Sick to escape Death, what Course soever should be taken. To which I answer, That this is only a blind for Ignorance, and an excuse for Male-Practice. But as for the Complication of the above-named Diseases in the Small-Pox, I confess, for my part, that I never knew it, in the Thousands of Cases I have seen, nor do I believe it possible to be. It is the Nature of the Disease not to admit them. The Small-Pox is Disease enough of itself, we need not add others to it to make it worse. As for an *Erysipelas*, the Small-Pox itself is so like it, in its first approaches and coming out, that 'tis not every one that can distinguish between them. But however, the Small-Pox cannot in any wise admit of an *Erysipelas*, as its Copartner to be joined therewith, because the Natures and Causes are as different as are the Method of their Cure. And when *purple* or *livid Spots* appear upon the falling down of the Pustules, or Death of the Patient, they no more demonstrate a *Purple* or *Spotted Fever*, than they do the *Dropsy* or *Gout*. 'Tis the Nature and Property of the Disease, when Nature is upon the yielding Point, or is already overcome, to send forth those *Symptomata*, or Tokens of her ensuing Fate.

XXIV. During the increase of the Distemper, they do not rise to any eminent height, but being joined as it were together in the Face, like red Blisters, they cover the whole Countenance, which swells sooner than in the distinct sort.

Salmon.] Indeed in the confluent kind, the whole Body, at least in all Places where the Pox breaks forth, the Parts seem to be absolutely blister'd; and for their swelling sooner, than in the distinct sort, that is from the plenitude of the Matter to be protruded. As for the manner of their Production, it may be compared to the working of new Wine; as that by Fermentation throws off the fæculent Parts, so the Effervescence of the Blood separates the Recrements thereof.

XXV. Afterward they seem to be like a white Skin glu'd to the Face, and are not much higher than the Surface thereof.

Salmon.] That is, when the protruded Matter by Heat and Stagnation turns into *Pus* or Matter, the white Swellings dry into a Scab, *viz.* when the thinner Parts of the Matter are evaporated or transpired, the rest grows hard; which when the Cuticle is eaten through or broken, they scale or fall off like a Scab: But they dry not away in the confluent kind so soon, as they do in the distinct kind, by reason of the great quantity of their Moisture.

XXVI. The eighth Day being past, the white Skin grows daily rougher, but by little and little, and of a brown Colour. The Pain in the Skin is the more intense, till at last the Scabs fall off, which in so terrible a Distemper happens not till after the twentieth Day.

Salmon.]

Salmon.] The Skin grows rougher only in ſuch, where the Puſtules in ſome little meaſure break, and that is for the moſt part, when they riſe to a very great Magnitude; but they very rarely break till the tenth or elventh, and ſometimes the twelfth Day, eſpecially if it is Winter-time: And almoſt all the time the Wheals are growing, the whole Body (if the Diſeaſe univerſally affects) ſeems to the Patient to be at the Mouth of a hot Furnace: As the Puſtules dry, and become Scabs, ſo that vehement and almoſt ſuffocating Heat gradually decreaſes, and therewith the Pain, which with the ſame affects the Patient.

XXVII. This in the Interim is worthy to be obſerved, that by how much nearer to ripening the Wheals approach, by ſo much to a duskiſh Colour, and ſo much more dangerous are they, and alſo diſappear more ſlowly; but the yellower they are, they flux or run the leſs together, and go away the more quickly.

Salmon.] As the Wheals are coming to Ripeneſs, there is indeed Danger, if the Patient takes Cold; and that is ſeen by the Interſtices turning blew, livid, or purple, or by the Puſtules falling flat; or if not flat, yet denting in, in the middle, and in the hole or dent growing blackiſh, brown, or dark: But their keeping plump or full, and growing of a yellow Colour, and breaking, or weeping out, as it were their Ichor, are good Signs of a happy and ſpeedy Termination of the Diſeaſe.

XXVIII. After the Skin is fallen off, there appears no roughneſs in the Face; but it is preſently overſpread with mealy Scales of a very eroding Nature, which leave Pits behind them, and many times Scars or Seams; and ſometimes the Skin of the Shoulders and Back comes off.

Salmon.] In ſome, where the Puſtules are long a drying, and the Ichor is very ſharp and acrimonious, it commonly eats into the Cutis, and ſo cauſe a pitting or ſeaming of the Skin: But in ſome the Humour is not ſharp or corroſive, and there it leaves no Marks nor Scars: Yet leaves a Mealineſs or Scurf upon the affected Places: And in ſome Parts (thoſe eſpecially which are kept very warm) the whole ſcaby Cuticula comes off together, and leaves the Skin it ſelf ſmooth.

XXIX. The danger of the Diſeaſe is to be eſtimated by the number and frequency of the Wheals in the Face alone.

Salmon.] I think in this our Author is out of the way; becauſe many have died of the Diſeaſe, who have had but a few in that part, in the mean Seaſon, the other Parts being very full; but the danger is, when they come not well out, tho' there be Signs of Abundance, or where they flag, or grow flat, or diſcoloured, or pit in, in the middle, and a Sickneſs at Heart, and fainting ſucceeds.

XXX. Thoſe that are in the Hands and Feet are largeſt; and the higher you aſcend from the Extremities of the Limbs, the leſſer and ſmaller they grow.

Salmon.] This may poſſibly be true in ſome particular Perſons;

ſons; but it is not generally true in all: For ſome have the Wheals largeſt in the Body, as Thighs, Belly, Breaſt, Back, Face, *&c.* whilſt they are diminutive in the Hands and Arms.

XXXI. In Perſons of ripe Age, Salivation, and a Looſeneſs in Children (though not ſo certainly) goes along with the Confluent or Running kind.

Salmon.] This may be true; but it is ſometimes otherwiſe, the contrary being many times manifeſt: For where there is ſuch a vaſt Protruſion of the acrid Morbifick Humour, it is ſent thro' the Salvatick Glands and Guts, and ſpent otherwiſe; and, I believe, ten to one have a drineſs of the Mouth and Throat, and a conſtipation of the Bowels; where it happens not ſo, the Sick, for the moſt part, dies of the Diſeaſe, becauſe of the vaſt quantity of the malign and acrimonious Humour, which ſo abundantly afflicts every way.

XXXII. The Salivation or Spitting ſometimes begins at the time of their breaking forth, ſometimes two or three Days after; the Sick ſpitting at the firſt a thin Matter, which on the eleventh Day grows more viſcous or thick, and is voided with great difficulty.

Salmon.] That is to ſay, in ſuch Perſons as have a Salivation or Spitting; and in this Caſe, the Phyſician may with great Reaſon preſage a great deal of Danger: I ſay nothing but what I know by manifold Experience: and in ſuch, they lie ſo much in the Throat, that the Sick is many times ſuffocated or choak'd.

XXXIII. He is thirſty, hoarſe, extreme dull and drowſie; the Cough ſometimes ſeizes him as he drinks, and the Drink returns through his Noſtrils.

Salmon.] The vehement Heat, and vaſt quantity of Matter protruded, is the true cauſe of the great Thirſt and Hoarſneſs: But it is the Nature of the Diſeaſe in general, to make the Patient dull and drowſie: The Cough proceeds from the Acrimony of the Morbifick Matter or Salivatick Juice, which is ſhed up and down in the Mouth and Throat, and entrance down into the Stomach; and the Tumification of thoſe ſtraight Paſſages with Puſtules, or the like, cauſes what is drank to come thro' the Noſtrils.

XXXIV. Then the Salivation uſually ceaſeth, and unleſs the Swelling of the Face and Hands now apparently beginning, and very laſting, ſupplies its room, the Sick forthwith expires.

Salmon.] That is to ſay, if the Protruſion is not abſolute, or perfect, or in a very large meaſure, the Sick muſt neceſſarily die: For the Matter which is not caſt forth, falls upon the principal Parts, and ſmites the vital Powers with the irreſiſtible Hand of Death.

XXXV. For though, according to the kind of the Diſtemper, the Swelling of the Face ſhould decline a little on that very Day, yet ought it not wholly to go away till a Day or two after.

Salmon.] What Day it is, which our Author means, is hard to determine; the tumifying of the Face will not abate, till the Matter is perfectly protruded, and come in a great meaſure to

Suppu-

Suppuration, unleſs Death be at Hand; and then it will fall of Courſe.

XXXVI. The *Diarrhœa*, or Flux ſeizes not Children ſo early as the Salivation or Spitting does Men.

Salmon.] This is a hap-hazard matter; for it is according to the great or ſmall quantity of the Morbifick Humour, and the Acrimony thereof; where it is ſmall and not acid, there is many times no Salivation at all; and if there be any Flux, it laſts not any long time, but quickly goes away of its own accord.

XXXVII. In both theſe kinds of Small Pox, the Fever is preſent from the beginning to the time of the breaking out, from which to the time of the ripeneſs of the Wheals it abates, and, that being finiſhed, vaniſhes away.

Salmon.] The Fever is not only preſent from the firſt, to the time of beaking out, but continues in its Vigour, till the compleat excluſion is over, after which, it indeed abates: If it vaniſhes before that time, it is commonly fatal to the Patient; for if the Heat is languid, the Malignity, inſtead of moving outwards to the Circumference, retires inwards to the central Parts, and contaminates the vital Powers.

XXXVIII. The bad ordering or Government of the Sick Perſon, occaſions ſeveral irregular Symptoms; ſuch as the Flaccidity and falling down of the Pox, Phrenſy, *Coma*, or continual Sleepineſs, Purple Spots ſcatter'd between the Wheals, and little black Spots on the tops of them, with a kind of falling down, or depreſſion in the middle, piſſing and ſpitting of Blood about the beginning of the Diſtemper, Suppreſſion of Urine, *&c.*

Salmon.] Not only the bad ordering of the Nurſe or Perſons about the Sick, may be the cauſe of theſe ill Symptoms; but alſo, the ill or unskilful Proceſs or Directions of the Phyſician, in doing, or cauſing to be done, ſuch Things as are diametrically oppoſite to the Indications of Cure, of which we ſhall have occaſion to ſpeak more largely in what follows: For tho' ſometimes the Diſeaſe may be ſo malign and contumacious, to produce theſe dangerous, if not mortal Symptoms; yet it often times happens, that where the Patient, in reſpect to the Diſtemper itſelf, might be ſafe enough, and would have done well if nothing had been done to them, ſuch Symptoms as theſe may enſue or be produced, by the ill or unskilful Practices of the attending Phyſician.

XXXIX. The Separation of the Morbifick Matter, and Febril Ebullition or Fermentation, are in the firſt three or four Days. The Expulſion or coming forth is perfected in the following Days by means of little Abſceſſes or Wheals ariſing in the Skin.

Salmon.] This Fermentation continues not only for the firſt four Days, but even to the end of the Protruſion; and the Expulſion is not perfected ſo long as the Fermentation laſts; when the firſt ceaſes, ſo does the latter; what follows is the Suppuration of the Puſtules; after which, the Fever in a manner totally ceaſes, at moſt no more Heat remains but to cauſe their Maturation,

Maturation, and to prevent the Malignity from retiring inwardly to the Heart and Vitals.

XL. Bleed in any of the three first Days, and let nine or ten Ounces of Blood be taken away; and afterwards give a Vomit of an Ounce, or an Ounce and a half of the Infusion of *Crocus Metallorum*.

Salmon.] To give a Vomit in the beginning of the Distemper, if there be a Cacochymy or Fulness of Humours, or the Sick has formerly fed high, or has led a disorderly Course of Life in respect of Diet, is good; for otherwise the Sick (if there is a Plenitude of the Morbifick Matter) may be in very great danger of Suffocation or Choaking; and tho' there be not a Cacohymy, yet an Emetick can do no hurt, but be of good use, if it be given with the usual Precautions of giving Vomits, *viz.* always to keep the Stomach full of Broth or Posset-drink, *&c.* after every Motion of Vomiting, that the Vomit may work the more easily; and when the Vomit has done working, to give something to strengthen the Stomach, comfort the Vitals, and defend the Heart from Sickness and Fainting away; and lastly, to comfort the Bowels with some strong well made Chicken-broth, which cleanses the Guts downwards.

XLI. *Salmon.*] 1. But Bleeding, whether in the Disease, or before, is diametrically opposite to all the *Indicationes Curativæ*: For Bleeding is by all Authors accounted a Revulsive Remedy, which calls from the Circumference to the Center, and so indeed it is. And so it is opposite to the first Indication of Cure, which is taken from the Nature of the Disease, which is to protrude or thrust forth the Morbifick Matter.

XLII. *Salmon.*] 2. It is against the second Indication, which arises from the Cause, which is, the Morbifick Matter to be thrust forth; for it augments, yea, creates that Matter *de novo*, which ought to be diminished by casting forth; for by this means it is drawn into the Blood, and thereby the whole Mass becomes in a very short time putrified, and that by Circulation coming to the Heart, empoisons the Central Parts, stagnates the Bloody Juice, and suffocates the Vital Flame.

XLIII. *Salmon.*] 3. It is against the third Indication of Cure, which has respect to the Symptoms, which is the diminution of the Febrifick Heat; which ought by all means to be kept up to the height, otherwise the Protrusion will be weak and imperfect, which generally proves fatal to the Sick. 'Tis the greatest of Errors in curing of this Disease, to cause an Abatement of the Fever, and is for the most part mortal; for 'tis the strength and height of the Fever which saves the Life of the Patient; 'tis that violent Heat which is the effectual Cause of a compleat Protrusion of the Matter into the Surface of the Skin; the more languid that Heat, the more danger; and if the Fever either goes quite away, or considerably abates, 'tis a thousand to one but the Sick dies suddenly, or in a little time becomes past all hopes of Recovery. But encourage the Heat, and let the Fever alone, and in a short time by the plentiful Eruption, the danger of Death will quickly be over; and after Nature has made a sufficient Protrusion,

Protruſion, the Fever (for want of Fuel) will preſently vaniſh of it ſelf without the Help of any Medicine; and this is that which in the Space of forty Years Practice, I have, I believe, twice a thouſand Times obſerved,

XLIV. *Salmon.*] 4. It is againſt the fourth and laſt Indication of Cure, which is the Vital Indication, and has reſpect to the Strength or Weakneſs of the Sick: For take away the Blood, in which the Vital Potency reſides, and you apparently diminiſh the Strength of the Sick; ſo that Nature being weakned (not only by being rob'd of her Defence, but by letting the Enemy into her by an univerſal Defœdation of her Oeconomy, and quenching the Vital Flame) there is immediately an univerſal Inability, and the Conteſt of Nature with the Diſeaſe ceaſes, by Nature's being overcome; which Truth is ſo apparent, that we cannot but ſpeak it with Grief, when we do but think of that late precious Life, which by that means we faithfully believe was loſt.

XLV. *Salmon.*] However we will bring Experience againſt Experience, and juſtifie by the univerſal Practice or Courſe of the whole Kingdom almoſt, yea, almoſt of the whole World, wherein, generally ſpeaking, every one that is born and lives, that has in his Order, this Diſeaſe, without Bleeding in it, lives, which ought to be oppoſed to the Novel Practice of theſe Times; and among thoſe which have it, there is not One to a Thouſand that are let Blood, nay, ſcarcely of Ten Thouſand, and yet they generally live and do well: Whereas let us examine among thoſe which are let Blood, and we ſhall find by ſad Experience, that ſcarcely Ten live in a Hundred.

XLVI. *Salmon.*] But we will ſuppoſe again, and take an equal Number on both Sides: Suppoſe a Thouſand which have this Diſeaſe, and are not let Blood, we find with careful looking after, that at leaſt Nine hundred and fifty live and do well: Whereas in a Thouſand which have the ſame, and are let Blood, above Nine hundred of them dye; but ſuppoſe they ſhould half live, yet the Odds of Living is on our Side, who are againſt Bleeding; and to confirm us in this Opinion, we ſee the Nation at this Day full of People, and that the greateſt part of them have had the Small-Pox; and yet it may be juſtly aver'd, that of the vaſt Body of this Nation, which have paſt this Diſeaſe, (take the whole throughout) not One in Ten thouſand of them has been let Blood in this Caſe, which is a Conſideration worthy to be taken Notice of.

XLVII. *Salmon.*] And for my time of practiſing, I believe I have had above Two thouſand Patients ſick of this Diſtemper, of all which, neither in the time of the Eruption, nor yet any time before it, did I ever let any one of them Blood, or cauſed it to be done; and yet (I bleſs God for it) I never had a Patient ſick thereof under my Hand which died: Though it muſt be confeſt that the Diſtemper is ſometimes ſo malign and extream, that no Methods whatſoever can ſave.

XLVIII. *Sal-*

XLVIII. *Salmon.*] I have had some Scores of Patients since Her Majesties Death, sick of the Small-Pox under my Hands, none of which I have let Blood, and yet they are now all living and well; of some of which the Learned and Reverend Dr. *Dent*, one of the Prebends of *Westminster*, can give a good Account. My Reasons against Bleeding in all Malign and Pestilential Fevers, you may see at large in my *Ars Chirurgica*, *Lib.* 1. *Cap.* 12. *Sect.* 14. to the End: As also in *Cap.* 4. *Sect.* 1. aforegoing of this Book.

XLIX. During the first Days, let the Blood be made thin by frequent Draughts of small Beer hopp'd.

Salmon.] I like this Julep better. *Take Milk-water eight ounces, choice Canary an ounce and half, Spirit of* Sal Armoniack, *two Drams*; mix for four little Draughts.

But if there is a great Thirst withal, this Mixture will be much better. *Take simple distilled Angelica water, black Cherry water, of each a pint: Spiritus Aperiens, 6 drams: mix, and make it very palatable with white Sugar-candy in fine Pouder*; of which let the Sick drink now and then a few Spoonfuls. If there is a Sickness at Heart, add to the former Quantity of the Mixture, *Tinctures of Cochinele and Saffron, of each an ounce.* Or this. *Take Angelica and Bawm-waters, of each a pint: Dulcified Spirit of Nitre, half an ounce: Treacle-water, 2 ounces: Syrup of Citron-peels enough to make it pleasant*: Dose now and then 2 or 3 Spoonfuls.

L. As soon as all the Pox are broke out (which is generally on the sixth Day of the Disease) let an Ounce of Syrup of Poppies be given at Night, which may afterwards be continued every Night to the tenth Day after the Invasion.

Salmon.] Or you may give from 20 to 30 Drops of our *Guttæ Vitæ, in simple Angelica-water mixt with a little choice Canary, or the liquid Laudanum, in Cap.* 1. *Sect.* 14. *of this Book*; which may be given in its due Dose, and in the Vehicle now prescribed; and this will be so much the more convenient, if either a Salivation or Flux downwards be attending. Or, *Take Elect. de Ovo a dram: Eclegma sudorificum, from* 8 *grains to* 16, *(according to age and strength) mix and make a Bolus*, to be taken every Night, drinking after it two or three Spoonfuls of any of the former *Juleps*. And if the Stomach is sick, in the Day-time, let the Patient take now and then a little of the *Eclegma Stomachicum*, upon a Knive's Point; drinking after it a little *Angelica* or *Bawm-water*.

LI. Let the Dose be increased that Night (if the Pox be of the Running kind) to an Ounce and an half, and one Ounce in the Morning, and repeated in like manner till the Sick begins to grow well.

Salmon.] Or thus. *Take clear Posset-drink three ounces; of our* Guttæ, Vitæ, *or Liquid* Laudanum, *from twelve to twenty drops; double-refined Sugar two drams; mix for a Dose*, to be given at Night. The next Morning you may give this. *Take Bezoar Mineral fourteen grains, Cochinele seven grains, Salt of Amber four grains; mix for a Dose*, if it be a Man; but if it be a Child, it will serve for

for two Doſes, and repeat it every ſix Hours.

As to any thing of an *Opiate*, which is given in this Diſeaſe, it ought to be given with great Care and Caution; and if you find that the ſame Doſe being continued, will not do what is deſired, you ought to increaſe it; but it muſt be gradually, and by very ſmall Additions: If it be a *ſolid Laudanum*, the Augmentation at a time ought to be only a quarter of a Grain, or half a Grain at moſt; if an *Electuary*, then only two, three, or four Grains; if our *Guttæ Vitæ*, from four to eight Drops at a time; but if the *Liquid Laudanum* in this Book, from 2 Drops to four only: And this Obſervation you are to take notice of in the Uſe of *Opiates*, of what kind ſoever directed in this Diſeaſe, that you may not err in your Preſcriptions, which unawares may prove fatal to the Sick.

LII. If the Syrup of Poppies does not agree with them, you may take Liquid *Laudanum* in its place, *viz.* eighteen Drops for an Ounce of the Syrup, and five and twenty Drops for an Ounce and a half.

Salmon.] I commend *Helmont's Liquid Laudanum*, much before Syrup of Poppies; or rather *Our Stomachick Laudanum*, deſcribed in Chap. 1. Sect. 14, aforegoing: They are admirable Preparations, and will do excellently well, never making the Patient ſick, or diſagreeing with the Stomach; and this properly has every kind of Opeate, which is prepared with an Acid; for the *Acidum* is an abſolute Corrector of the *Opium*, and truly deſtroys the Heterogene or inimical Quality of its Sulphur, which is ſo very obnoxious to ſome ſingular Conſtitutions.

LIII. In the mean time you ought to take notice, that if the reſting Medicine given twice a Day be not powerful enough to allay the Commotion (as it oftentimes happens about the End of the Eruption, when the Pox run notably together) in that caſe you may reiterate it every eight Hours, or oftner, if need require.

Salmon.] If the Sick is very thirſty, and cries out vehemently for Drink, ſo that there is no ſatisfying them without it, it muſt not be deny'd them (I have ſeen ſeveral periſh for want of it) in this caſe you may ſafely give this. *Take ordinary hopp'd Beer ſix or eight ounces, Tincture of Saffron and Cochinele two drams, dulcified Spirit of Nitre thirty drops; mix for a Draught.* And be ſure to give at Night the former preſcribed Doſe of *Guttæ Vitæ*, or *Liquid Laudanum*.

Our Author ſays, that if giving the reſting Medicine twice a Day be not enough, that then it ought to be given thrice a Day, that is, once every eight Hours. But if any of the Opiates we have preſcribed in the former Sections be given, it is poſſible that twice a Day may be often enough, and in moſt Conſtitutions, once a Day; but as to this of the Number of Times, the Patient ought to be guided by the Direction of the Phyſician.

LIV. But when the Pox are diſtinct, it will be enough to give a reſting Draught once every Night, after the full coming forth; and alſo in a ſmaller Doſe.

Sal-

Salmon.] But you must not forget to give in the Intervals, as afore directed, the Mixture of Bezoar Mineral, Cochinele, and Salt of Amber.

For these things wonderfully corroborate and strengthen the vital Powers, and so one Dose of the resting Medicine in a Day may be enough; as also, because in the distinct kind, the morbifick Matter is more crass, or thick, and so not so apt to pass into a Flux of the Bowels; which if by any Accident unforeseen, should chance to happen, the Care of the Physician is doubly necessary; because it may prevent, in a great measure, the Propulsion, and so endanger upon the Spot the Life of the Sick: And in this Case, you may advance with *Liquid Laudanum*, or *Eclegma Sudorificum*, to be given in a *Decoction of Scordium and Contrayerva, made in Red Port-wine.*

LV. But of what sort soever the Pox are, and in what time soever of the Disease a Phrensey is induced, it is truly necessary to curb the irregular Motion of the Spirits; and therefore if the former resting Dose prove ineffectual, it must be reiterated again and again, till the Disorder be wholly asswaged.

Salmon.] If the resting Dose is prepared with an Acid, it will scarcely ever fail of the desired End, and the induced *Phrensie* will vanish as if it was done by Inchantment; for *Acids* resist the *Flatus* ascending to the Brain, full as much as *Opiates* cause Rest: And therefore if there is a Necessity of reiterating of the Opiate or resting Dose, it will be done with so much the more Safety, as that it is prepared with such a happy Ingredient. But whilst these resting Doses are thus administred, Corroboraters are not to be forgotten; such as *Bezoarticum Minerale, Cinnabrium Antimonii, Antimonium Diaphoreticum, levigated Crabs-Eyes, Terra sigillata, Zedoary in Pouder, Mercurius Diaphoreticus*; which last, it is possible, is one of the best Medicaments against the Small-Pox in the whole Art of Physick; and this I write not only from the Authority of that great Man *Helmont*, but from the manifold Experience I have had in the Use thereof.

LVI. But you must always allow convenient time between the Doses, that we may know whether the last Dose hath already done as much as is desired, before we adventure to give another.

Salmon.] This is most admirable Advice, and what every Physician ought to be careful to observe: For without this Consideration, the poor Patient may be sacrificed in a few Hours, who otherwise might have been cured, and liv'd many Years after. But then it is necessary to know when the former Dose has done its desired Work, or that the Force of all its Operation is over: And this is known, not only from the Time, how long it is since the last Dose was given; but also from its usual Effects in the Operation ceasing, and Nature's manifest requiring its Repetition again.

LVII. If the Urine be wholly stopt, let the Sick be taken out of his Bed, and endeavour to walk a little.

Salmon.] You may safely give this, notwithstanding the Dis-

ease.

eaſe. *Take* Aqua Tartariſata *three ounces*, Syrupus Nephriticus *ſix drams*, *Powers of Juniper two drams*; mix for two Doſes.

Or this. *Take Parſly-water*, *Infuſion of Lignum Nephriticum*, *of each four ounces* : *Syrup of Juice of Parſly three ounces* : *Syrup of green Ginger an ounce and half* : *Mix and make a Julep*; of which give the Sick three or four Spoonfuls now and then. Or this. *Take Decoctions of Burdock-roots*, *of Parſly-roots*, *and of Butchers Broom-roots*, *of each four ounces*; *mix them.*

LVIII. If the Spittle by reaſon of the Heat be ſo tough, that it cannot be ſpit forth, let a Gargariſm be very often injected into the Throat with a Syringe. It may be made of *ſmall Beer or Barley-water*, *with Honey of Roſes* : Or thus.

Salmon.] In the confluent Kind, when the Spittle is become ſo craſs and viſcid with the preceeding Heat, ſo that the Patient is in Danger of choaking, as is uſual on the tenth, eleventh, and twelfth Days, a Gargariſm ought to be uſed, which ought to be carefully ſyringed into the Throat, ſuch as this. *Take Angelica and Fennel-waters*, *of each three ounces and half*; *Aqua Nitrata two ounces and half*; *Syrup of Vinegar an ounce and half*; *White Port-wine three ounces* : *Mix for a Gargariſm.* Or this : *Take Barley-water*, *black Cherry-water*, *Milk-water*, *of each three ounces*; *Syrup of Limons*, *Honey of Roſes*, *of each an ounce*; *Red Port-wine two ounces* : *Mix them together for a Gargariſm.*

LIX. *Take of the Bark of the Elm-tree ſix drams*, *Liquorice-roots half an ounce*, *twenty ſton'd Raiſins*, *Red Roſes two Pugils*; *boil them in a ſufficient quantity of Water to a pint and an half*, *in which being ſtrain'd out*, *diſſolve* Oxymel *ſimple and Honey of Roſes*, *of each two ounces. Mix them for a Gargariſm.*

Salmon.] This is good, and very effectual. *Take* Aqua Elementaria *eight ounces*, *Syrup of Mulberries two ounces*, *Juice of Limons one ounce*; *mix them* : With which let the Mouth and Throat be often gargarized. Or thus. *Take* Aqua Elementaria *ten ounces*, Syrupus Limonum *two ounces and a half*, Syrupus Volatilis *one ounce* : *Mix them*, and uſe it as the former.

Indeed the Decoction of the Elm-bark is a famous and often approved Remedy; more eſpecially if it is prepared as in the ſecond Edition of our *Pharmacopœia Bateana*, *Lib.* 2. *Cap.* 5. *Sect.* 29. or after this following manner. *Take the Inner Bark of the Elm-tree ſix ounces*, *Spring-water three pints and a half*, *Cremor Tartari one ounce*; *mix and boil till one half is conſumed*, *and the ſtrained Liquor looks red like Claret-wine*; *add Syrup of Mulberries four ounces*, *Red Port-wine three ounces*; *mix and make a Gargariſm.* It is a moſt excellent thing to waſh and cleanſe the Mouth and Throat with : And in caſe of great Thirſt, if now and then three or four Spoonfuls of it be ſwallowed, it may be of good uſe, and prove ſanative to the Patient. Or this. *Take twelve ounces of the former Decoction of Elm-tree Bark*; *Syrup of Limons*, *Syrup of Mulberries*, *of each two ounces*; *Red Port-wine three ounces*, *Spirit of Wine one ounce* : *Mix for a Gargariſm*, *to be uſed with a Syringe.*

LX. If upon the eleventh, or any other succeeding Day, the Secondary Fever, with Unquietness, or Uneasiness, Tossing of the Body, and such other like Symptoms, be so vehement and high, that all the resting Medicines (how often soever reiterated) are not able to put a Stop to its Violence, and Death seems to be at hand, bleed immediately, and that plentifully, *viz.* to above twelve Ounces, and the same once or twice repeated in the following Days, if the Necessity of the forementioned Symptoms require it, but not otherwise.

Salmon.] If these Symptoms our Author speaks of, be present, yet Bleeding must be avoided as the most pernicious thing, because it infallibly prostrates the Strength of the Sick, causes a Revulsion of the morbifick Matter to the inward and more noble Parts, and certainly introduces Death. In this Case the Violence of the Fever is to be abated by other means more safe, as the Exhibition of our *Pulvis Antifebriticus, from half a dram to two scruples, or a dram*, which many times abates the Heat in half an Hour's time, and never, as far as I have observed, goes an Hour without its Effects: Or in place thereof, the Sick may drink this Mixture. *Take* Aqua Elementaria *six ounces, White-wine or Sherry two ounces; mix them* for a Draught. And at Night *Liquid Laudanum to twenty drops*, or our *Volatile Laudanum from one grain to three*; or for want of it, our *Guttæ Vitæ, from fifteen drops to forty*, may be given in a little Barley-water, or other fit Vehicle; and by these means (if the Vital Powers be not already overcome) you need not fear a certain and timely suppressing those pernicious Symptoms. The next Morning you may give *Sylvius* his *Anticolick*, or *dulcified Spirits of Nitre*, or *Salt*, or *Sulpeur*, 20, 30, or 40 Drops in a Draught of Beer, Ale, or Posset-drink.

Or this. *Take Spring-water, or rather Angelica-water a quart, of Our Spiritus Aperiens half an ounce or six drams; Syrup of Citron peels, so much as to make it very pleasant to be drank*; of which let the Sick sip at pleasure; it will take off the Fever in an Hour's time. Then let the Forehead and Temples, Nostrils, and Parts adjacent to them, be bathed every Hour (for some Hours) with this Mixture. *Take of Our Guttæ Vitæ three ounces, of the sharpest Vinegar of Roses, Spirit of Opium, of each an ounce; mix them for a Laver.* And if the Patient has Pain in any other Part of the Head, or Body, let those Places also be well bathed with the same. Or you may use this. *Take Liquid Laudanum made with Canary only, two ounces; Spirit of Opium, tartariz'd Spirit of Sal Armoniack, of each an ounce; mix them to bathe withal.* You may also dip Rose-Cake, or Linnen Rags four or six times double, in the same bathing Mixtures, and bind them on upon the Forehead and Temples: It is almost impossible that these things can be done in vain, or without giving the Patient ease and rest.

LXI. And in this Case, after the Bleeding, the Sick may be gently purged on the Thirteenth, or any other succeeding Day, but not before: As for Example, let him take *an ounce of the Le-*

Lenitive Electuary, diſſolved in four ounces of Cichory or Milk-water.

Salmon.] 'Tis good to let Purging alone till the End of the Diſeaſe; and then the beſt Purge in the World to be given in this Caſe, is *Sal Mirabile*, which you may give from three Drams to ſix, according to Age and Strength, mixt in half a Pint, or a Pint of fair Water, Water-gruel, or thin Mutton-broth; or in as much Poſſet-drink, and ſo give it, with Obſervation as in other Purges; it neither makes the Stomach ſick, nor gripes, enters actually into the whole Maſs of Blood, and cleanſes it throughly, which ſcarcely any other Cathartick Medicine does beſides: You may ſafely enough repeat it three or four times.

But this is to be obſerved, that at the end of the Diſeaſe, before Purging is attempted, Corroboraters of the *Viſcera*, and ſuch things as ſtrengthen the whole Body, ought to be given for ſome Days; ſuch as are *Our Compound Tincture of Antimony, Tincture of Coral Compound, Tincture Bezoartica, Spiritus Croci Anglecani, Spiritus Angelicæ compoſitus, Cinnabar Native, and of Antimony, Bezoarticum Minerale, Mithridate mixed with an equal Part of Extract of Juniper-berries, Spiritus Cornu Cervi, Tincture of Caſtor, Spiritus Sanguinis Humani*, and other things of the like Nature, which are to be made choice of by the diſcreet and prudent Phyſician, according as they may beſt comport with the Habit and Conſtitution of the various Sexes and Bodies to which they may be given; which are alſo to be adminiſtred in proper confortative Vehicles, ſuch as the Phyſician ſhall alſo adviſe.

LXII. But neither Bleeding nor Purging doth forbid the uſe of Opiate Medicines, which (notwithſtanding theſe) ought to be given both largely and frequently, if need be: And after all, we muſt always have recourſe to them in this Diſeaſe.

Salmon.] If what we have above adviſed be followed, there will be no need of Bleeding at all: And as for the uſe of *Opiates*, they ought to be adminiſtred with much Care and Caution, and exactly, (as near as may be) according to the Rules and Directions before given. It is true, that Purging will not forbid their uſe, becauſe *Purging Medicines* are for the moſt part given in the Morning, and *Opiate Medicaments* generally at Night. But if the Condition of the Patient is ſuch, that the Phyſician is dubious, or afraid to give *an Opiate* by the Mouth; yet the uſe of the *External Opiate Mixtures* at *Sect.* 60. above, may ſafely enough be applied as is there directed; an *Opiate Clyſter* may alſo be ſecurely given, made after this manner. *Take Mutton-broth from half a pint to a pint (according to Age) of Liquid Laudanum of the Author, from* 40 *drops to* 80 *or* 100, *Stomach tincture a dram; mix for a Clyſter to be given in the Day-time.*

LXIII. When the Pox are fully dried up, let the Face be annointed with a *Liniment made of equal parts of Oil of ſweet Almonds and Pomatum, two Days, and no longer.*

Salmon.] This is the beſt of Liniments. *Take* Saccharum Saturni *two drams, diſſolve it in Juice*

of Limons half an ounce, with which mix pure white Sperma Ceti *one ounce, Oil of Ben three ounces and a half*, and keep it for uſe, and anoint therewith twice a Day.

Hogs Lard is commended by ſome Authors as a thing excellent, with which they may be anointed all over: So alſo is *Palm oil*, which is freſh and ſweet, and of a pure golden Colour. Or this. *Take Palm-oil two ounces, choice Sperma Ceti one ounce, Oil of Rhodium twelve drops; mix and make a Liniment to anoint with.* But as for the Continuation of the Unction, as it is to be begun, when the Puſtules tend to Suppuration, ſo it is to be continued till it is perfected: And if an Apoſtem be any where feared, anoint with *Balſamum Sulphuris Aniſatum vel Succinatum*, or with *Balſam of Jupiter*. If the Eyelids are hurt, or the *Tunica Cornea* is fretted, waſh them with *Breaſt-milk mixt with a little Roſe-water and Saffron*: Or rather with *Juice of Cervil mixt with Roſe Water and Fennel Water*; which may be alſo applied with a Linnen Cloth doubled to the Eyes.

LXIV. On the twenty firſt Day of the Diſeaſe bleed in the Arm, and the Day after let a purging Medicine be exhibited, and thrice repeated every ſecond Day.

Salmon.] Let the Purge be only the *Sal Mirabile* before-mentioned, and given in the ſame Doſe and Order aforeſaid.

You are to regulate the Doſe according to the Age of the Patient: To young Children, you may give from two Scruples to a Dram and a half, or two Drams; to ſuch as are older, from a Dram and a half to three Drams; but to ſuch as are grown up, from three Drams to four or ſix Drams, or more, as the prudent Phyſician ſhall direct: And thoſe Doſes may be repeated three or four times, or oftner, as you ſee the Habit and Conſtitution of the Sick may require.

LXV. As for the Government of the Sick, let him not keep his Bed till the ſixth Day, after the firſt Invaſion of the Diſeaſe; and afterward keep his Bed till the ſeventeenth Day, being covered only as he uſed to be, when in Health.

Salmon.] I am of a contrary Opinion, as to the firſt ſix Days, if the Diſeaſe invades the Sick with Violence, for then I am ſure the Bed is the fitteſt Place to be in; more eſpecially when you perceive the Fever to increaſe, and be troubleſome.

And the Sick ought to be continued in Bed (if the Eruptions are many and plentiful, and generally over the whole Body) till the Protruſion is perfect, and the Puſtules come to Suppuration, and begin to break, and dye away or ſcab; becauſe if thro' riſing, the Patient ſhould take cold, the End might then be worſe than the Beginning; beſides, the warm Bed, as it keeps the Pores more open, ſo it haſtens their drying up and ſcaling off.

LXVI. Let his Food be Oatmeal and Barley-broths, boil'd Apples, and ſmall Beer; and after the eleventh Day, let him drink if he pleaſes, four or five Spoonfuls of *Spaniſh* Wine, twice every Day.

Salmon.] You my give the Sick often *Panada*, and *Canary-Whey*, which can give no Aſſiſtance

ſtance to the Diſeaſe, but do certainly comfort the Spirits; and ſometimes a pretty white Poſſet-drink made with Ale, and a little ſweetned with double refined Sugar.

I approve of *Panada*, and of Food made with *Wheat-flower*, much before thoſe things made with *Oatmeal and Barly*, leſt by their ſlipperineſs they ſhould induce a *Diarrhæa* or Looſneſs; tho' if they be prudently uſed, they may be given as in change of Diet; ſo alſo a *Panada* made with Rice, which very much ſtrengthens the Stomach and Belly, and reſiſts Fluxes of the Bowels. And what occaſion ſoever you have of *Sugar*, you ought always in this Diſeaſe to uſe *Loaf-Sugar*, and that which is double or treble refined.

LXVII. If the Swelling in the Legs gives not place to the Evacuations above preſcribed, it may eaſily be removed with *Fomentations of Mallows, Baſe Mullein, Elder, and Laurel-leaves, with Flowers of Camomile and Melilot, boil'd in Milk.*

Salmon.] If you purge, as directed, with the *Sal Mirabile*, there will be no occaſion for this Courſe; for that will effectually carry off the Morbifick Cauſe.

And this I have proved many times: But if notwithſtanding due Purging having gone before, the Swelling of the Legs and Feet ſhould yet remain, then you may have recourſe to bathing of them with Decoctions made with Emollient and Diſcutient Herbs, as Leaves of Mallows, Mullein, Fennel, Dill, Featherfew, Penyroyal, Hyſſop, Flowers of Elder, Melilot, Camomil and Daiſies, with other things of like kind; adding alſo to every Quart of the Decoction when it is made, three Ounces of common Spirit of Wine, becauſe this alone Ingredient procures an admirable Diſcuſſion of Humours, by a peculiar opening of the Pores of the *Cuticula.*

LXVIII. If during the firſt Days of the Diſtemper the Sick ſpits or piſſes Blood, let the Pouder and Mixture, preſcribed in the Chapter *of Spitting of Blood*, be carefully exhibited every ſixth Hour, till theſe Symptoms perfectly go go away: In which caſe alſo large Doſes of Opiate or Reſting Medicines may be given.

Salmon.] I have much a better Opinion of this following. *Take Catechu in fine Pouder, Crocus Martis Aſtringens levigated, of each a dram; Roch-Alum in fine Pouder, Henbane-ſeeds in Pouder, of each half a dram; Opium dried, and reduced into a ſubtle Pouder four grains: Mix them for four Doſes*, to be given Morning and Night in a little Glaſs of the following Decoction. *Take inner Bark of Oak, inner Bark of Elm, of each ſix ounces; Cremor Tartari half an ounce, Spring-water two quarts; boil to a quart, ſtrain out, and ſweeten it with Syrup of Comfrey.* Beſides giving the former Pouder in it, you may alſo give the Patient three or four Spoonfuls of it between whiles in the Day-time. If the Patient is ſick at Stomach, you may add to every Pint of the ſtrained Decoction *about three ounces of the beſt Red Port, or Red* Barcelona *Wine.* If the Patient cannot be perſuaded to take theſe things, you muſt then have recourſe to our *Guttæ Vitæ*, or *Volatile Laudanum*, or the *Liquid*

Laudanum of our Author, or *Eclegma Sudorificum*, regulating the Doses of them according to the Age, and State or Condition of the Patient; and repeating the same, as the Urgency of the Symptoms may require.

LXIX. *Salmon.*] In the distinct kind, the Symptoms are not so vehement as in the Confluent; and in both these are, 1. The Febrile Invasion of the Disease. 2. The Eruption and Suppuration of the Pustules. 3. The state of the Disease, and drying away of the Pustules. Now that all things may be rightly performed, a thin Diet is to be observed thro' the whole Course of the Disease; and that the Patient neither in the beginning, nor eruption of the Pustules, be kept vehemently hot, lest the Vital Powers be suffocacated; nor yet too cool, lest the Expulsion be hinder'd: But an even degree of Heat and Cold ought to be kept, that the Ebullition or Protrusion may come naturally on: But the more youthful the Patient is, and the more exalted his Blood is, with high Drinking, Heat of the Weather, *&c.* the cooler he ought to be kept, and the more to avoid hot Cordials. Purges, Vomits, Bleedings, Cupping and Clysters are also to be avoided, because by these Evacuations the Effervescence will be too much abated, and those Humours will be carried off or diverted another way, which should have been separated and sent through the Skin; and that very Matter will be carried off which should have supply'd the Secretion which Nature had now begun.

LXX. *Salmon.*] If upon taking of Cold, Purging, or any other natural Evacuation, the Pustules should strike in, Cordials and Sudorificks are to be used, with this Caution, that we exceed not in the too great use of them, nor use them at all, if possible they can be avoided for the first six or seven Days; but rather to give gentle Acids and Stypticks, such as Juice or Syrup of Citrons, or Limons mixt with Tincture of Columbine-leaves, or Columbine-seeds: Or this; *Take Diascordium a dram, Angelica and Bawm-waters, of each an ounce, Syrup of Juice of Citrons three drams; mix them for a Dose.* Or this: *Take Angelica, Scordium, and Butterbur-waters of each an ounce; Liquid Laudanum twelve or fourteen drops; mix for a Dose, and give it. Irish Slate* is commended for its Bezoartick Virtue beyond Oriental Bezar: And *Columbine-seed* is said to be an incomparable thing, each of which may be given to a Dram in any Cordial Water. Or this Mixture: *Take Irish Slate levigated, Antimonium Diaphoreticum, or in place thereof Bezoarticum Minerale, Columbine-seed in fine Pouder, of each two drams; mix them for six Doses*: To be given Morning and Evening in simple Angelica or Scordium-water, sweetned with Syrup of Clove-Gilliflowers. Or this: *Take Bezoarticum Minerale two drams, Cochinele one dram in fine Pouder, English Saffron in fine Pouder half a dram; mix them for seven Doses*, to be given every eight Hours in the vehicle just before-named.

LXXI. *Salmon.*] When the Pustules are come out, consider whether the Disease is the distinct or confluent Kind; the first

firſt of which are known by their Greatneſs, Fewneſs in Number, ſlow Protruſion, and want of violent Symptoms: In this caſe, Cordials may be given, and a little hotter and ſtronger Diet; alſo Panada, made of white Bread, or white Biſcuit, or Rice, and other like things may be good, with the Addition of a little Wine; with which you may (as before directed) give either of the two juſt preſcribed Pouders.

LXXII. *Salmon.*] In the confluent Kind, (which is always attended with very dangerous Symptoms) after the full Protruſion, and coming to Suppuration, there is many times a new attending Fever, which is a continual One, and many times Malignant; then Acids are to be frequently given, as Syrup of Juice of Citrons, dulcified Spirits of Nitre and Sulphur, and proper Bezoarticks, with a little Pouder of Myrrh *Take Bezoarticum Minerale, Cinnabar of Antimony, of each a dram; Cochinele, Saffron, of each a ſcruple; Myrrh in fine Pouder fifteen grains: Mix for ſix Doſes to be given every eight Hours.* Or, *Take Crabs-Eyes, Native Cinnabar levigated, of each a dram; Iriſh Slate, Myrrh, both in fine Pouder, of each half a dram: Mix and make a Pouder for ſix Doſes,* to be given as aforeſaid: Theſe things not only expel, but alſo haſten on the Suppuration; which by the Addition of the *Myrrh* is admirably promoted, ſo as that many times they fall off without Pitting. To theſe things add *Harts Horn Philoſophically calcin'd, Contrayerva, Virginia Snake-root, Roots of Butterbur, Nutmegs,* &c.

LXXIII. *Salmon.*] As to the *Salivation* or *Spitting* in this confluent Kind, Authors are for its being continued, and not ſtopt till the thirteenth or fourteenth Day; and then you may terminate it with *Opiates*, or other *Paregoricks. Take Nutmegs in Pouder, Catechu in Pouder, of each a ſcruple; Opium dried and poudered finely one grain or more; mix for a Doſe,* to be given in the Evening, or at Bed-time: Or, *Take Angelica and Scordium Waters, of each two ounces; Liquid Laudanum, from ten drops to twenty; mix for a Doſe* to be given as foreſaid.

LXXIV. *Salmon.*] *If a Looſneſs* be attending in this confluent Diſeaſe (which troubles Children moſt, as Salivation does grown Perſons) it is not to be ſtopt too ſoon, becauſe in ſuch a great quantity of Morbid Matter, which is preſent, Nature contrives this way alſo to evacuate it; afterwards you may give *Diaſcordium*, alſo *Liquid Laudanum*, mix'd with any proper Vehicle; alſo Cordial Juleps may be compounded and made with thoſe things, which may not be unpleaſant to Children.

LXXV. *Salmon.*] If *Epileptick Fits* are preſent, which ariſe from a vehement Acrimony and mighty Ebullition of the Blood, about the time of the firſt Eruption, you ought to exhit *Poteſtates Antepilepticæ*, or *Spiritus Cornu Cervi Succinatus*, and *Volatile Salt of Man's Scul, or of Hartshorn; Cinnabar Native, and of Antimony, Volatile Salt of Amber, Bezoarticum Solare, Pouders of Nutmegs, of Man's-skul, and of Elks hoofs,* &c. This following Pouder is good. *Take Bezoarticum Solare, Nutmegs in Pouder, White Amber prepared, Native Cinnabar levigated, of each half a*

dram; Thebian Opium dried and finely pouder'd three or four grains; mix and make a Pouder for four, five or six Doses, according to Age and Strength. Or this: *Take Native Cinnabar levigated; Bezoarticum Solare; Man's-skull, Elks-hoof, both finely pouder'd, of each half a dram; Salt of Amber, Saffron in pouder, of each ten grains; Ambergrise three grains: Mix and make a Pouder for four or five Doses to be given Morning and Evening in Peony-water, or other fit Vehicle.*

LXXVI. *Salmon.*] If there is a *Strangury* or *Suppression of Urine*, which many times afflicts young and brisk Persons; it is said to arise from the Confusion and Disorder of the Spirits, (which serve for the Excretion of the Morbid Matter,) in the Blood and Humours, being afflicted with excessive and vehement Heat; or rather thro' a violent Precipitation of the Matter by the Emulgents to the Kidneys, which being in too vast Plenty, obstructs the Passages. Here gentle Diureticks are to be used as *Parsly, and Onion, and Arsmart-waters, Crabs Eyes levigated, Pouder of Alkengi, and Tincture of the same, Infusion and Tincture of the Lignum Nephriticum, with Syrup of Althæa Roots; sweet Spirits of Salt, Sulphur, and Nitre, mixed with Spirit of Sal Armoniack, and fortified with some few drops of Chymical Oils of Parsly-seed, or Juniper-berries, or the Potestates or Powers of the same.*

LXXVII. *Salmon.*] The Eyes (where Blindess may be feared) may be defended with this. *Take simple Angelica and Damask Rose-waters, of each three ounces; Spirit of Wine one ounce, Saffron half a dram; mix and make a Collyrium to wash the Eyes with.* If they are inflamed, *Take Corn Poppy-water, Night-shade Water, of each three ounces, Spirit of Wine one ounce, Saccharum Saturni a dram; mix and make a Collyrium for the Eyes.* If the Throat is sore with a burning Heat, it is cured with this: *Take Decoction of Columbines in Wine and Water six ounces, Syrup of Mulberries two ounces, Red Port wine one ounce; mix them for a Gargarism,* with which the Throat is often to be wash'd or gargarised Or this: *Take Poppy- or Nightshade-water six ounces, Sal Prunellæ three drams, Clarified Honey, or Honey of Roses, or Syrup of Mulberries two ounces; mix and make a Gargle to be used as before.*

LXXVIII. *Salmon.*] If the Pustules strike in with great Anxiety or Pain, Fainting or Sickness at Heart, besides the Cordials, which we have already before prescribed in this Chapter, *Volatile Salts* are to be given, as well *Vegetable* as *Animal:* Of the first kind are *Volatile Salt of Amber, of Tartar, of Wood-soot, of Benjamin, of Beans and Peas of all sorts*; which being given inwardly in any proper Vehicle, from six to ten or twelve Grains, according to Age, and repeated as need requires, defend the Heart, and drive forth the Morbifick Matter from the Centre to the Circumference, giving Rest and Ease to the Patient: of the second kind are the *Volatile Salts of Bloods* of all sorts, as well Humane as Bestial; of *Urines* of all sorts, of *Horns* of all sorts, chiefly of *Harts-horns, Goats-horns, and Elks horns*; of *Hoofs* of all kinds of Beasts, of *Hair and Wool*, of the *Flesh of Beasts*, of *Vipers and Serpents*, of *Hog-*

lice

lice and other *Inſects*, &c. Theſe are much more potent, than thoſe of the vegetable kind, perform admirably, and may be given from five to ten Grains in Wine, or Wine mixt with a little *Angelica* or *Scordium Water*, and ſo given Morning and Night: *Eſſence of Myrrh* is wonderfully commended, made with *Vinous Spirit of Sal Armoniack*, and it is ſaid ſeldom or almoſt never to fail; to this add *Exalted Tincture of Myrrh*, and *Elixir Proprietatis Peſtilentiale*, which may be given from fifteen to thirty or forty Drops, in any fit *Vehiculum*, which is a Medicament of ſingular uſe, not only in the Small-Pox, but in all malign and Peſtilential Fevers, and even in the Plague it ſelf.

LXXIX. *Salmon.*] To take away the Redneſs and Spots, Authors have commended Frog-ſpawn Water, and Waters diſtill'd from *Solomon*'s Seal, Scurvy-graſs, Brook-lime, Water-creſſes, Garden-creſſes, Aron-roots, Radiſh-roots, Rocket, White Lillies, Bean-flowers, *&c.* We commend our *Spiritus Coſmeticus* uſed either alone, or mixed with an equal quantity of *Canary*, or a third part of *Juice of Limons*; alſo this following Mixture. *Take Waters of Frog-ſpawn, of Nightſhade and Solomon's Seal, of each three ounces; Spiritus Coſmeticus an ounce and a half, Spirit of Vinegar one ounce, Fæcula of Aron-roots half an ounce; mix and make a Waſh for the Face and Skin:* Where note, that if it is uſed to ſome tender Skins, the *Spirit of Vinegar* is to be left out, and ſo much *common Spirit of Wine* put in. This alſo is a good Cleanſer and Whitener of the Skin. *Take Damask Roſe-water a quart, common Spirit of Wine three ounces, Spiritus Coſmeticus an ounce, Oil of Tartar per deliquium, two or three drams; mix them for a ſingular Coſmetick for the Face.*

CHAP. XXI. *Of St. Vitus's Dance.*

I. 'TIS a kind of a Convulſion that troubles Children from ten Years old to Ripeneſs of Age.

Salmon. This is a very ſtrange kind of a Diſeaſe, and *Proteus*-like, manifeſts it ſelf in almoſt a Thouſand Forms and Appearances, ſo that it is very difficult to deſcribe it truly, and to ſhew it in a juſt Light as it is: It is really a Convulſion, not only of a part, but of the whole Body; nor is there any particular Nerve in the whole humane Frame, but what is affected by it; in ſome, it is with great and vehement Pains, in ſome, with little Pain, and in others again, with no Pain at all; and ſometimes in one and the ſame Perſon, it will be with Pain at one time, and without Pain at another: The Patients are for the moſt part in their perfect Senſes, and know and underſtand very well what every one of the Standers-by ſay and do; but by reaſon of the almoſt infinite Number of Convulſive Motions of the Muſcles, and Diſtortion of the Nerves, being pull'd and drawn ſometimes this way, ſometimes that

that way, now on the one side, then on the other, one while upwards, another while downwards; sometimes forwards, and then again backwards; also vehemently contracted, and presently stretched out at length beyond the natural size; some of the Limbs almost twisted one way, and presently again twisted the contrary way: I say, considering all these various Contorsions of the Muscles and Nerves, it is hard to give such a true Description of the Disease, and so fully, as to be understood by any one who has not seen it.

II. It is known by their limping, or by the Instability of one of their Legs, which they draw after them, after the manner of Ideots.

Salmon.] This limping and manner of going, is either at the first Invasion of the Disease, or at the going off of the same: And this I speak because (tho' I have seen about eight or ten Persons affected therewith) yet I never saw any thing in it periodical, or like the return of Paroxysms, but in less than an Hour after its first beginning it always continued the same Night and Day, till such time as by the force of Medicines it began to be profligated; and then as the Disease yielded to a stronger Force, the Symptoms and Contorsions gradually abated, and they drew their Legs after them, or used them after the manner as our Author does express it; but not only the Legs, but also the Postures of the Hands would be much after the same rate, and bespeak from those unusual and preposterous Actions, rather Idiotism than any thing else; tho' at the same time the poor Patient was in a right Mind, and had as good an understanding as formerly.

III. If the Hand of the same side be laid upon the Breast, or any other part of the Body, they can scarcely keep it a moment in the same Condition or Posture, but it will be forced by the Convulsion into another Situation and Place, whatever Endeavours they make to the contrary.

Salmon.] And this is true of any other Member, Limb, or Part of the Body: The Eyes will not remain in the same Posture, sometimes drawn to the right side, sometimes to the left, sometimes upwards, sometimes downwards, and sometimes almost all ways together: The Lips will sometimes be extended making the Mouth almost as wide again as it was, sometimes contracted like the *Anus* of a Hen; sometimes drawn upwards shewing the Teeth, sometimes downwards, and sometimes extreamly awry, making the Face very deformed; and many times all these Motions are in a few Minutes of an Hour; the like judge of other Parts; by which it appears that the Affections of this Disease are as uncertain, as they are wonderful and extravagant.

IV. Before one thus affected can put a Cup to his Mouth, he useth a thousand foolish Gestures, and ridiculous silly Tricks: For he brings not his Hand to his Mouth in a straight Line, but being strangely drawn aside by the Convulsion, he as it were plays with it a good while, tossing it hither and thither, till at last as it happens to come near to his Lips, he suddenly throws the Liquor into

into his Mouth, and greedily ſwallows it down, ſo that it looks like making Sport to the Spectators.

Salmon.] And the ſame thing happens if the Hand be deſign'd to be put to any other Part; ſometimes it is pull'd upwards, downwards, ſide-ways, contracted, extended beyond meaſure, and ſometimes writhed or twiſted, now outwards, anon inwards, and managed by the convulſive Motion almoſt in a thouſand ill contrived Poſtures, which Words are wanting to expreſs; and as the Hands and Arms are thus affected, ſo in like manner the Feet, Legs, and Thighs ſuffer innumerable Contorſions, and the reſt of the Body conformable, as is if the Patient was managed or acted by a Spirit of Inchantment and Witchcraft. 'Tis admirable to ſee, with what an Artifice theſe convulſive Motions are effected, how ſtrong in the Action, how violent in the Contorſions, how ſwift in the Change and Alteration of the Motions out of one Poſture into another, and yet the Patient not ſeeming to be weary.

V. Let him bleed eight ounces, more or leſs, according to the Age of the Sick, by opening a Vein in the Arm.

Salmon.] Rather bathe the Head, Temples, Back-bone, Noſtrils, and Parts affected, with this Mixture. *Take Pouders of Amber, Roſemary, Sage, Turpentine,* and, *mix them,* with which bathe four or five times a Day.

I knew a very beautiful Girl about 13 Years of Age taken with this Diſeaſe, who when the Doctor was ſent for, was by his Order let Blood, according to the Direction of our Author; and this not having the deſired Effect, the Diſeaſe grew more impetuous: She was then order'd to be let Blood again, and yet ſtill the Patient grew worſe: She was let Blood a third time, and conſiderable Quantities of Blood were drawn away in all theſe three times; yet the poor Patient receiv'd not the leaſt benefit thereby, but ſtill grew worſe; and the convulſive Motions ſtill encreaſed upon her, coming faſter and faſter, and grew ſtronger and ſtronger; and tho' all other things which were thought proper, were afterwards given her inwardly, and apply'd outwardly, yet without the leaſt ſucceſs; but the Diſeaſe ſtill encreaſed, till it put a period to Life: From this Caſe, I made this Obſervation, at the Abſtraction of the Blood only weakned the Patient, and contributed nothing to the Cure of the Diſeaſe, or alleviating of the Symptoms; but on the contrary, as it very much diminiſhed the Strength of the Sick, ſo it rendred them leſs able to contend with the Diſtemper, and left the Diſeaſe it ſelf incurable.

VI. The Day following let him take one half of the common purging Potion in *Chap.* 1. *Sect.* 1. or ſomewhat more, with reſpect to his Age, and at Night the following Draught.

Salmon.] Purge and only with *Sal Mirabile,* giving it from three Drams to ſix, according to Age and Strength; for mixing intimately and circulating with the Blood, it is immediately directed to the Root of the Nerves and Brain, where the Foundation of the Diſeaſe is laid. But

if

if the Stomach be ill, or foul, then first Vomit once or twice with *Tartar Emeticum*, and afterwards purge with the *Sal Mirabile.*

But after all that has been said for Purging, unless the Patient be strong and of a vigorous Constitution, it ought to be forborn; nor ought any thing to be done, which may prostrate the Strength, or weaken the Habit of the Body; for by how much the Body is made weaker, by so much does the Disease prevail and get Strength, the convulsive Motions multiply, and bid defiance to all the Efforts of Medicines, tho' the strongest and the most proper: So that it much behoves the Physician to take all the care he can to conserve the natural Forces and Strength of the Patient.

VII. *Take Black Cherry-water one ounce*, Langius *his Epileptick Water three drams*, Venice-*Treacle one scruple*, *Liquid Laudanum eight drops*; *mix for a Draught.*

Salmon.] In the Intervals of Purging this is an approved thing, and never fails, *viz.* The *Potestates Virtutum*, which may be given every Morning fasting, at ten in the Forenoon, at four in the Afternoon, and at Bed-time, in a Glass of Generous Wine. Dose from one to two Drams; it is a rare thing, and beyond all other Medicines. See it in our *Ars Chirurgica*, *Lib.* 1. *Cap.* 63. *Sect.* 11.

What the *Epileptick Water of Langius* is, we have already declared in Chap. 14. Sect. 9. aforegoing of this Book: It is a good Medicament, and as our Author has composed it with other things, may be of excellent use; but yet notwithstanding more potent Remedies ought to be apply'd: As first this internal Mixture. *Take Powers of Angelica*, *Oranges*, *Limons*, *Nutmegs*, *Cloves*, *Lavender*, *Time*, *of each two ounces*; *Powers of Aniseeds*, *Carawaies*, *Marjoram*, *Sage*, *Juniper*, *Mint*, *Sassafras*, *Spiritus Cosmeticus*, *Tincture of Antimony Compound*, *of each one ounce*: *Spiritus Antiasthmaticus*, *Spirit of Hartshorn*, *of each two ounces and a half*; *mix them, and keep it in a Bottle close stopt for use.* Dose from forty to an hundred Drops, Morning, Noon and Night, in a Glass of choice Canary. Secondly, this external Application: *Take Powers of Amber*, *and of Turpentine*, *of each six ounces*; *Powers of Camomile and Juniper-berries*, *of each four ounces*; *Spiritus Cosmeticus*, *Powers of Limons and Oranges*, *of each three ounces*; *Spirit of Hartshorn*, *and of Sal Armoniack*, *of each one ounce*: *Mix them, and keep the Mixture in a Bottle close stopt for use.* With this bathe Morning and Night all the Back-bone from the *Vertebræ* of the Neck, to the lower Parts thereof near the *Anus*; as also all the Arms from the Shoulders to the Fingers end, and from the Throat down to the Bottom of the Belly, as also the Thighs, Legs and Feet: But let it be most part upon those Places which you find most affected with Convulsive Motions.

VIII. Let the Purging Potion, with the Pacifick Draught at Night be thrice repeated, once every second Day.

Salmon.] Let the repeated Purge be only *Sal Mirabile*, as before directed.

But

But this is to be underſtood after the long uſe of the two former Mixtures internal and external, *viz.* till ſuch time as you manifeſtly ſee, that the Powers of your Medicaments have ſo prevailed againſt the Force of the Diſeaſe, as to quell all the convulſive Motions thro' the whole Body; which they will happily do if uſed with a *Continuando*, according to the former Directions: With theſe very preſcriptions, I have already cured four or five ſeveral Patients, vehemently afflicted with this Diſeaſe.

IX. Afterwards bleed again, and the purging Potion reiterate as before, and ſo on this wiſe the Bleeding and Purgation, to a third or fourth time, allowing always a due Space of time between the Evacuations, that the Patient be not expoſed to danger.

Salmon.] You muſt be cautious of Bleeding, leſt you proſtrate the Strength of the Patient, and ſometimes, to my certain Knowledge, it has been found to increaſe the Diſeaſe; but Purging, as before directed, and taking the Specifick of *Poteſtates Virtutum*, is the Method you may profitably take. Or you may uſe the internal and external Mixtures in Sect. 7. which are indeed excellent, and will not go without the deſired Effects, if the Strength of the Sick be not by untoward means proſtrated beforehand: I have uſed them with Succeſs, and therefore commend them from that large Trial I have had of them: It is alſo found by Experience, that the *Sal Volatile Oleoſum* is ſingularly beneficial in this Cure. I cured a young Lady in *Leadenhall-ſtreet*, ſeized with this Diſeaſe, ſo that ſhe was almoſt become fooliſh, who is now at the time of writing this in perfect Health, and has been well ſome Years.

I only gave her the *Poteſtates Virtutum* inwardly, Morning and Night, in a Glaſs of Canary: and at ten a Clock in the Morning, and about five at Night, ſhe took thirty Drops of my *Sal Volatile Oleoſum*; and at other times 25 or 30 Drops of my *Tinctura Stomachica* in a Glaſs of White Port-wine; and outwardly Morning and Evening ſhe was well bathed with the external Mixture in Sect. 7. aforegoing, according to the Directions there given; and ſometimes for change ſhe was only bathed with this Mixture, *Take Spiritus Coſmeticus, Spiritus Antiaſthmaticus, of each five ounces, Spirit of Hartſhorn two ounces, mix them*: By the uſe of theſe things, ſhe was in about ſix Weeks time reſtored to her perfect Health.

X. In the Days that are free from Purgation, preſcribe as follows:

Take Conſerve of Roman *Wormwood, and of the yellow part of Orange-peels, of each one ounce; Conſerve of Roſemary-flowers half an ounce, old* Venice *Treacle and candied Nutmeg, of each three drams; candied Ginger one dram, with a ſufficient quantity of Syrup of the Juice of Citrons make an Electuary.* Doſe as much as a Nutmeg in the Morning, and at five a-Clock in the Afternoon, drinking after each Doſe five Spoonfuls of the following Wine.

Salmon.] The *Poteſtates Virtutum* are a thouſand-fold beyond all this, and therefore 'tis beſt to

to apply your self to the use of them, as directed.

Or you may use the two Mixtures in Sect. 7. above, as there directed, or this following Composition. *Take Powers of Savin ten ounces, Powers of Penyroyal six ounces, Spiritus Cosmeticus four ounces, Spiritus Antiasthmaticus three ounces; mix them.* Dose from 40 to 100 Drops in Canary or other fit Vehicle, two or three times a Day as there directed, bathing the Parts affected with this following Mixture. *Take Powers of Amber and Turpentine, of each eight ounces; Spiritus Cosmeticus and Spiritus Antiasthmaticus, of each four ounces; mix them,* and keep them to bathe with as before directed.

XI. *Take of the Roots of Peony, Elecampane, Master-wort, and* Angelica, *of each one ounce; Leaves of Rue, Sage, Betony, Germander, white Horehound, and the tops of lesser Centaury, of each a handful; Juniper-berries six drams, the Peels of two Oranges. Let all be sliced and infused cold in three quarts of Canary Wine.* When you use it, strain out so much as you intend to drink.

Salmon.] Or in place of the *Potestates Virtutum* you may give this Mixture. *Take Powers of Rosemary, Limons, Sage, Camomile, Penny-royal, Juniper, of each one dram;* Guttæ Vitæ *two drams: mix them.* Dose from one to two Drams, twice or thrice a Day in Milk-water, or Sack-whey.

Or this. *Take Powers of Angelica, Lavender, Limons, and Oranges, of each four ounces; Tartariz'd Spirit of Sal Armoniack two ounces, Liquid Laudanum one ounce; mix them,* of which let the Patient take from thirty to sixty Drops in Canary, Morning and Night. This gives Rest and Ease to the *Archæus* overburthen'd with the numberless convulsive Motions, and causes a profound Quietness; but it ought only to be used, where the Disease exercises its Malignity with Violence.

XII. *Take of Rue-water four ounces,* Langius *his Epileptick Water, and Compound Briony-water, of each one ounce; Syrup of Peony six drams: Mix and make a Julip.* Dose four Spoonfuls every Night at Bed-time, with eight Drops of the Spirit of Harts-horn

Salmon.] Or the *Powers of Oranges or Limons* may be alone given in a proper Vehicle, for change-sake.

And if the Patient has formerly been troubled with Vapors, or apt to have Hysterick Fits; then you may now and then in the Day-time give 20 or 25 Drops of our Hysterick Tincture in a Glass of Borage-water, or Penny-royal Water; which thing will be of good use: Or let the Sick take Morning, Noon and Night this following Composure. *Take Powers of Angelica, Penny-royal and Savin, Tinctura Hysterica, of each equal parts; mix them.* Dose from 40 to 100 Drops in simple distilled Water of Saxifrage. Or this: *Take Powers of Cloves and Nutmegs, of each three ounces; Powers of Savin and Sassafras, of each two ounces; Spirituus Antiasthmaticus and Spirit of Harts-horn, of each one ounce; of our Hysterick Tincture four ounces; mix them;* to be given in the same Dose and manner, and in the same Vehicle as the former. But all the while that these Medicines are thus exhibited inwardly, you must not forget to use the external Mixture,

ture, according to the Directions already given.

XIII. Let a Plaister of *Caranna* be applied to the Soles of the Feet.

Salmon.] Or you may apply this. *Take Frankincense two ounces,* Caranna, Styrax *liquid, of each half an ounce; mix and make a Plaister,* which apply as directed.

These things are applied chiefly to such Patients who are apt to be troubled with Vapors, or Hysterick Fits, or a Hypochondriack Flatus (which even some young People I have seen to be affected withal:) and for these Reasons the Plaister of Our Prescriptions exceed in Virtue that of Our Author; and yet there is no need of any of these Applications, except the aforenamed Symptoms begin to infest the Sick, or the Patient is sick at Stomach, or afflicted with an extream Pain of the Head.

XIV. The next Year, about the same Season of the Year in which the Disease first appeared, bleed again, and let a Purging Medicine be exhibited some Days, for Prevention of a Relapse.

Salmon.] Where the Patient has been well cured, I never saw any Relapse afterwards, nor the Appearance of any danger of it; but if at any time any such Fears should be, I think to go over again with the whole Course of the Cure, before prescribed, would be much the better prophylactick Method; forasmuch as it must be reasonably supposed, that those Remedies which had such a Potency to resist and overcome the Disease, when it was in its Acme or exalted Strength, would much more resist and prevent it in its Approaches; and destroy the Seeds of the Malignity thereof so as never to suffer it to make a second Invasion.

XV. It seems probable to me, that the Falling-sickness in such as are of ripe Years might be cured by this Method, which nevertheless I have not yet experienced. But since tender Ages are wont to be infested by St. *Vitus*'s Dance, if this Method be applied to the Cure of Epilepsies in Persons grown up, both the Quantity of the Blood to be drawn, and the Doses of the Purging Medicines ought to be increased.

Salmon.] I very much doubt, whether the simple Method of the Cure of this Disease would have any Effect upon the Epilipsy, tho' most of the things here used are Neuroticks, and might have some Virtue in them of resisting the same: But this I am fully perswaded of, that if they were used either conjunctively, or as Concomitants with the *Potestates Antepilepticæ* in Chap. 1. Sect. 29. of this Book, they might profligate the Disease to the last degree; and in that manner I should advise to their use in the *Falling Sickness*; for that, with that single Medicine alone I have cured several thereof in some few Months time, which I am easy to believe, that if it was used with these things here prescribed might have been done much sooner.

XVI. *Salmon.*] *Observations.* About the Year 1697 I cured a young Girl of about eleven or twelve Years of Age, whose Name was *Margaret Wray*, the Daughter of Mr. *Wray*, late Mini-

Minister of *Bromley* by *Bow*, near *London*: The Extravagancies of the Convulsive Motions or Contorsions, are beyond the Powers of Words to express: The Cure was effected in about eight Weeks time only by the use of the *internal and external Mixtures* declared in Sect. 7. aforegoing. And in the Year 1703 I cured a Youth, *Bat. Wray* by Name, the Brother of the aforenamed Girl, who was affected with the same Disease, to the greatest Extremity and highest Violence of the Symptoms: He was cured with the same *internal and external Mixtures* in about three Months time, tho' the Season was cold, being then the middle of Winter.

Explicit Liber Primus.

THE

THE PRACTICE of PHYSICK.

LIBER SECUNDUS.

CHAP. I.

Of the Apoplexy.

I. IT is like a moſt profound Sleep, and total Privation of Senſe and Motion, excepting only Reſpiration or Breathing, which is yet done, but with Difficulty and Snorting.

Salmon.] The Cauſe of this Diſeaſe, as *Platerus* ſays, is either from Blood or Water, *i. e. Lympha*; or from a Grumous Subſtance made of both, mixed together, and filling the Ventricles of the Brain: How the Blood or *Lympha* can come to fill the Ventricles of the Brain, can no ways be conceived but by a *Diæreſis*, or Rupture of ſome of the Sanguiferous or Lymphatick Veſſels, to wit, thoſe of the leſſer ſort, or Capillaries; if the Sanguiferous Veſſels be broke only, Blood is the cauſe of the Diſeaſe; if the Lympatick only, then Water alone: But if both be broken, then from a Mixture or theſe two Subſtances, a grumous thick Matter, not much unlike to thick Milk for Subſtance, is produced, which is the Cauſe. Now the Morbifick Matter, of which kind ſoever, it matters not, fills the Ventricles totally or in part; if totally, the firſt Fit is always fatal, and the Sick never comes to himſelf again; and this kind is wholly uncurable, unleſs by any previous Signs it is foreſeen, and a due Evacuation by Errhines be timely made, whereby it may be prevented. If the Ventricles be but only filled in part, upon any violent Agitation of the Head, as a great Blow, or Fall, turning round, *&c.* the extravaſated Matter ſtriking againſt the Meninges of the Brain, and making as it were a Compreſſion of the ſame, thro' their exceeding Senſibility, immediately induces a Paroxyſm. But this is curable: For ſetting the Sick upright in a Chair, in an Hour or two's time, the extravaſated Matter ſettling, and the Animal Spirits being revived through proper Volatile Smells, the Sick comes to himſelf again; after which, time is given to abſtract the Morbifick Matter by Errhines through the Noſtrils, *&c.*

II. Bleed immediately in the Arm, and take away twelve Ounces of Blood, and afterwards eight Ounces more out of the Jugulars. Straightway after give a Vomit of an Ounce and an half, or two Ounces, of the Infusion of *Crocus Metallorum*.

Salmon.] Why Bleeding should be instituted here I cannot apprehend; for the Disease weakens the Sick enough, there is no need to destroy the Strength by Bleeding, whereby Nature (made utterly unable to encounter with the Disease) is overcome. *We oppose here against Bleeding the First Indication of Cure*, which is from the Essence or Nature of the Disease, to wit, the extravasating of the Juices; for unless by Bleeding they can be caused to regurgitate or intravasate again, Bleeding is wholly in vain, because the Strength is much thereby diminished, the whole Morbifick Matter remaining. *It is against the Second Indication*, which is from the Cause; for thereby the Blood and Juices are made thinner, and more watry, and therefore more apt to flow through the Breaches, to the increase of the Matter already made. *It is against the Third Indication*, which is the Paroxysm or Fit; for by diminishing the Blood, you diminish the Animal Powers, and so the Strength of the Fit is increased. Lastly, *It is against the Fourth Indication*, which has respect to the Strength of the Sick; for that this manifestly prostrates the Strength of the Patient, and can cause no regurgitation of the Matter into the Vessels, whereby an Amendment can be hop'd for.

III. Let a large and sharp Vesicatory be applied to the Nape of the Neck.

Salmon.] Vesicatories can do no more good here than Bleeding can; they only weaken the Patient, causing a great deal of Pain and Trouble, to no purpose.

And it is manifest, that they abstract the Lymphatick Juice as well as the Serum, which weakens the Sick beyond what can at first thought thereof be apprehended: And this is seen in such who have had many Blisters drawn upon them at once; who have been so debilitated in their Limbs, that their Legs have scarcely been able to support them, tho' they before had been strong lusty Men; and so much the nervous Tone was hurt, as not to be restored by the Power of any Medicament: And also so craz'd in their Understandings and Memories, as to be reduced almost to the State of Idiotism; and these sad Effects of Blistering I have several Times seen.

IV. While these Things are doing, let the Sick sit upright in his Bed, not cumbred with too great a Burthen of Cloaths.

Salmon.] This is understood. in a partial Apoplexy, (for a Perfect is always Mortal) you need but set the Sick upright in a Chair, and of his own accord (even without the help of Medicines) he will come to himself again; for the Matter subsiding, the Animal Spirits recover themselves, and the Paroxysm goes off.

But it will be good to cause the Patient to smell either to *Sal Volatile Oleosum*, or to *Spirit of Sal Armoniack*, or *Spirit of Harts-horn*,

Harts-horn, or some such like volatile thing: Afterwards some proper *Errhine* ought to be blown up the Nostrils, such as the *Pouder* of *Asarabacca-leaves*, or *Pouder of Masterwort-roots*, or *Nutmegs poudered and mixt with Ginger*, or *Pouder of Roots of Pellitory of Spain*, or which is instead of all, *Decker's* his *Errhine* made of *Turbith Mineral*, *Rosemary-flowers*, *and Pouder of Liquorice*, which is famous for this purpose, but is to be used with much Caution and Care, and exhibited only by a learned and skilful Artist.

V. Let Spirit of *Sal Armoniack*, well rectified, be held to his Nose.

Salmon.] Or you may use Volatile Sal Armoniack, Volatile Salt, or Spirit of Beans, or Harts-horn, or any other like Volatile Salt, or Volatile Salt of Urine, as we have in part before declared; and inwardly you may give this following Dose. *Take Tincture of Castoreum, Tincture of Amber, of each half a dram; Salt of Amber six grains; Powers of Lavender, Spiritus Antiastmaticus, of each a scruple; Mix for a Dose*, to be given in a proper Vehicle. Or this: *Take Powers of Rosemary, Lavender, Limons, Oranges, Cloves and Nutmegs, of each a scruple; Spirit of Harts-horn half a dram: Mix for a Dose*, to be given in a Glass of Canary, either simple, or sweetned with Syrup of Clove-gilliflowers. Or this: *Take Powers of Savin two drams, Volatile Salt of Vipers ten grains, Salt of Amber six grains; Spirit of Angelica a dram; mix for a Dose*, to be given as before either in the time of the Paroxysm, if it may be, or upon the going off the same.

VI. After the Vomit has done working, let three or four Spoonfuls of the following Julep be now and then exhibited.

Salmon.] Any Antimonial Vomit is good in this case, but such as are the more gentle, which are those where the Mineral is not given in Substance, as *Vinum Antimoniale*, which may be given to an Ounce or ten Drams; or rather the *Tartar Emetick*, which may be given from two Grains to six: Afterwards you may do well to purge with some Solutive Medicament, but such especially as may circulate with the Blood, and be Balsamick; the chief of which kind is *Sal Mirabile Glauberi*, prepared from Common Salt, which may be given from three Drams to six, according to Age and Strength, dissolved in Water, from half a pint to a Pint. This being done, it will be necessary to blow up the Nostrils *Decker's his Errhine*, some small quantity, made of *Turpethum Minerale*, *Pouder of Liquorice and Rosemary-flowers*, as he has described it in his *Exercitations*. It is a wonderful Medicine, and cures by bringing the Morbifick Matter through the *Os Ethmoides*; but it must be several times repeated, as the Necessity requires: So also *warm Water in which Nitre is dissolved*, being snufft up the Nose so long till it comes out at the Mouth; it is an admirable thing, and brings the Humour plentifully through the Nostrils, which is the only true and right way of Cure, and by these Methods I have cured several; as one Mr. *Garret*, a Soliciter at Law, not long since living in *Cursiter's Alley* in

Chancery-lane, and that after he had four Fits; it is near eleven Years since I effected the Cure, and he remains perfectly well to this Day, without any fear of a Relapse. And it is my Opinion, that Errhines do more in this case, than all other Forms of Medicaments in the World. I write what I know by Experience.

VII. *Take Rue-water four ounces, compound Bryony-water, and* Langius *his Anti-Epileptick water, of each an ounce; Spirit of Hartshorn twenty drops, Sugarcandy as much as sufficeth; make a Julep.*

Salmon.] As an Apoplexy is a sudden Abolition of all the Animal Actions both of Sense and Motion, with the hurt of the principal Faculties, and Depression of the Powers of the Animal Spirits; so all the Medicaments proposed for the Restauration of the Sick, ought to be such as may restore the depressed Spirits to their pristine Vigor; and therefore there ought to be as well an Abstraction of the extravasated Juices or Humour, (as we have before hinted) as a Refocilation of the said Animal Powers: Except the first be done, it is in vain to expect a Cure to succeed, for that the new Cause or Morbifick Matter is still present: We do not say, but that what our Author has here prescribed, is excellent good to refresh and revive the profligated Spirits; it gives a present Relief, if the Disease is not total, and may be a Paliative for the time, but it will indeed do nothing to the Cure: This being said, we are to consider, that besides the use of *Errhines*, which abstract the Morbifick Matter, you are to use Incrassatives or Thickners, such as may hinder the Juices from being so apt to flow, or extravasate them for the future; if this is not done, notwithstanding the Abstraction of the present *Mucus*, there will be a perpetual renewing of the Evil, and a continual Course of the Juices to the affected Parts, till such time as the Strength of the Patient shall be exhausted, and the Animal with even the Vital Powers shall meet the ultimate Conflict, and be totally overcome: The Patient is as it were Thunder-struck, without any sign of Reason remaining, the Mind is stupid as well as the Body, and the whole Man seems in all Appearance to be dead, and it is next to a Miracle, if he survives this dreadful Fit: But if by the Goodness of God, and the great Skill of the prudent Physician, something can be done to retrieve the poor Patient out of the Jaws of the Grave, yet we must conclude, that his Condition is dangerous, and that surviving this almost fatal Paroxysm, he will always live after it Paralytick. Now that we may rightly proceed in the Pharmaceutick Cure, we will in some few of the following Paragraphs enquire a little nicely into the Nature of this Disease.

VIII. *Salmon.*] The Brain without doubt is a Part affected in this Disease, so also the *Rete Mirabile*, more-especially; yet the Disease seems to be more in the Ventricles and *Cerebellum* of the Brain, than in the Substance of the Brain or any where else: But when the *Paroxysm* seizes, the *Medulla Oblongata*, Nerves, Animal Spirits, *Præcordia*, Lungs, and

and others Parts are all affected by Conſent; and this appears by the Signs of the Diſeaſe in the time of the *Paroxyſm*, which are a Deprivation of Senſe and Motion, and lie as if they were almoſt dead, they rattle in the Throat, breathe difficultly, fall ſuddenly to the Ground, and oftentimes with a Shriek, upon which preſently the difficulty of breathing is ſo great, that the Sick can ſcarcely be perceived to breathe, but lies as if he was ſtrangled, and his Breaſt feels as if it was tied down with a Cord and hindred from breathing: All the Animal Actions are for the preſent obliterated, Reſpiration only remaining, as not being quite aboliſhed, becauſe the Nerves through which the Animal Spirits flow, being more open, are not ſo apt to be obſtructed; and the Reſpiratory, by reaſon of their great openneſs, are ſcarcely to be ſo obſtructed, but that ſome Pores will ſtill remain open: Some froth at the Mouth, others ſnivel at the Noſe, and ſend forth thence what is taken in by the Mouth: The Urine is uſually thick, ſometimes of an æruginous Colour, with a ſettling like Meal; and the Pulſe is ſometimes great, unequal, and intermitting, ſometimes languid, and ſometimes ſwift: Their Eyes are ſhut as if they did ſleep; but yet they ſleep not, but lie dull and ſtupid as Stocks; and tho' they ſeem to look on the By-ſtanders, yet they neither ſee nor hear, nor do they feel, tho' they be burnt or prickt, ſo that not any ſign of Knowledge or Underſtanding appears: The Limbs hang lank, and if they be lifted or ſet up, they fall down like a dead thing, rattle in the Throat as aforeſaid, breathe with their Mouth open; and in ſhort, are ſo fully like to a dead Man, that they are only known to be alive by their Breath. When the Patient can ſcarcely be perceived to breathe at all, it is a ſtrong Apoplexy, and is for the moſt part fatal: But when they take ſome Breath, tho' unequally and diſorderly, and Senſe is left, and now and then Motion, tho' ſtupid, the Diſeaſe is milder, and the Patient is in more hopes.

IX. *Salmon.*] The remote Cauſes of this Diſeaſe may be Crudities of the Stomach, Surfeit, Gluttony and Gormandiſing, Drunkenneſs, long Watchings, extreme Coldneſs of the Air, and taking vehement Colds, and the overmuch uſe of *Venus*; all which are ſaid to cauſe an Obſtruction of the Paſſages, and a Diſſipation of the Animal Spirits: So alſo a Fall or Blow on the Head, may cauſe a Flux of Humours to the Brain; which if they fill the principal Ventricles of the Brain, will cauſe an Apoplexy. But the new or immediate Cauſes, are ſaid to be the hindrance of the Influx of the Animal Spirits into the Nerves, by Humours, extravaſated Blood, or condenſated Vapours; alſo tough, thick, and cold Flegm, becauſe theſe things obſtruct the Ventricles of the Brain, and compreſs the Original of the Nerves, the Arteries, and *Rete Mirabile*; for that it is the Animal Spirits do in the order of Nature paſs or flow thro' theſe into the Ventricles of the Brain, and are diſſeminated thro' the whole Nervous Syſtem: And therefore if the a-

forenamed Vessels and Ventricles be filled and obstructed, of necessity the Animal Spirits and Faculties will be hindred from being diffused into the Organs of Sense and Motion; by which the Cause why the Patient is deprived of Sense and Motion is manifest. *Galen* ascribes the Impotency of Motion to the Obstruction of the Ventricles of the Brain: *Hippocrates* ascribes it to the Stagnation of the Blood; for, says he, from its Stagnation, there is extream Chilness, Vertigo, and loss of the Voice; and in this Disease, People are Epileptick and half Paralytick: And in another place he says, the Stagnation of the Blood causes the Body to be without Motion and stupid: And indeed both these Causes ascribed by *Galen* and *Hippocrates*, may be true. *Tachenius* says, the remote Cause is a coagulating Acid, or wild Gas, drawn in extrinsically with the Air, which fixes the Spirits, and checks the Motion and Fermentation of the Blood. *Sylvius* makes the proximate Cause the Defect or Obstruction of the Animal Spirits: The Deficiency arises, says he, by reason of the Straitness or Obstruction of some Nerves compressed by Flegm, or an Acid; or cutting of some of the Nerves, or from some Fault in the Blood being coagulated or repleat with a Narcotick Spirit. The Obstruction is caused from a Rupture of the Arteries (I suppose he means in the Brain) or when the Spinal Marrow is any way preternaturally straitn'd or compressed. This is the Summ. The true Cause is either from 1. Blood coagulated in the Vessels, as also the Lymphatick Juice: Or, 2. Blood, Lympha, or Serum, or all of them extravasated, compressing the Meninges of the Brain, and Origination of the Nerves. 3. The cutting of large Nerves asunder. 4. The dividing of the Spinal Marrow.

X. *Salmon.*] As to the Prognostick Part, it is manifest from manifold Observations that old People, such as are very fat, and apt to be drowsy and sleepy, who have a Heaviness of their Heads, have swoln Eyes, and have a Mist or Darkness come over them; and such as are heavy and lazy, are most commonly overtaken with this Disease; but more-especially they, who have been for some considerable time constant and extravagant Snush or Snuff-takers: For this Snuff being frequently and long taken, has this Property to draw away from the Ventricles of the Brain a thin or watery Humour, leaving that which is thicker behind; this being constantly done, the thicker Recrements of the Brain are made unfit to pass thro' the *Os Ethmoides* or *Cribrosum*, where stoppiug they continually multiply and increase; and by reason of their Crassitude, they not making their way thro', they begin to obstruct the Ventricles, and in process of Time so press upon the Meninges, as to cause manifold Obstructions in the Vessels belonging to those Parts, by which the Influx of the Animal Spirits become stopt, and the Blood not having its Liberty of passing as it ought, the capillary Blood-vessels swell, and continue

tinue swelling till they many times break, and so that vital Juice is extravasated, and thereby induces an Apoplexy. The daily matter of Fact proves this thing beyond all manner of Exception; for considering the vast Numbers of People who die here in *England*, since Snuff has been taken, to the inconsiderable Numbers which died before, cannot but be very remarkable, they being by my Observation above an hundred to one; and tho' some one here and there are taken with an Apoplexy who are no Snuff-takers, yet where one dies of that Disease who is not a Snuff-taker, above an hundred die of it who are vehement and extravagant Snuff-takers: I believe within this last twelve Years, I have known between two and three hundred die of Apoplexies; and among all this I do not remember above one Person who was not a Snuff-taker, all the rest being perpetual Followers of the Trade. And in *France*, where Snuff is much more taken than in *England*, the Numbers of such as are taken with this Disease very much exceed what they do here; and by relation of such as know and have lived sometime in the Country, there are daily above two hundred to one which die of this Disease now, than did formerly in like Space of time: And in *Spain*, where the Disease was much more usual than in any other Nation; yet it is believed, that since Snuff has been so universally and extravagantly taken there, that there is nearly a thousand die of this Disease now to one who died of it formerly, in like Number of Months. This Truth is too notorious to be obscured; I leave the farther Consideration of it to all such as are Lovers of their Lives and Healths.

XI. *Salmon.*] The other Prognosticks are taken from the Vehemency of the Disease, according as the Symptoms are more or less dangerous. In a *Total Apoplexy* the Disease is incurable, nor does the Patient ever come out of the Paroxysm; and this is discovered from the manner of the breathing; for in a Total or Violent Apoplexy the Breath is so far gone, or is so faint and weak, that it is scarcely to be perceived, or it is with a rattling in the Throat like that of dying People; for breathing, as it is the chiefest and most absolute or necessary of all the Animal Functions, so when it is quite gone, Life is gone: For which reason no Physician ought to do so much Injury to his Art, as to promise to cure a *Total or strong Apoplexy*; tho' I own he ought not so to despair, but that he ought to try all things, and leave nothing unattempted which may seem to be a probable means for the Cure. A *Partile* or *milder Apoplexy*, is not without its hopes of Cure, or at least without hopes of outliving the *Paroxysm*; for I my self have cured above twenty of them: Yet *Hippocrates* says, that to cure a slight Apoplexy it is not easy; and they who have the Brain gangren'd die within three Days, but if they outlive them they recover. He also says, that in an Apoplexy which is curable, arising on a sudden, if a Fever comes upon it, it is mortal. In a *Total Apoplexy*, if all the Ani-

mal Faculties are sunk, and there is a continual rattling in the Throat, there is no hopes of Recovery; so also, if Sweat breaks forth upon the Straitness and Difficulty of Breathing, Death is at hand. Coldness of the Body, and Numbedness of the Limbs, with an unequal and intermitting Pulse, persage present Death; for in these Cases the Disease has gotten deep rooting, and therefore will hardly be overcome. In a *Partil Apoplexy*, if the Hemorrhoids happen, or a Bleeding at Nose or Ears, they are good Signs of Recovery: A rattling and loud Respiration is sometimes mortal, and sometimes not; but when it is not, the Disease is apt to be converted into a Palsie of one side. And many who recover of an Apoplexy, are apt to fall into some other Disease of a long continuance, as a Palsie, sometimes of one side, and sometimes of the whole Body: Or they lose their Memory to that degree, that they cannot remember the least thing, and grow mere Children again. If they fall naturally into a Salivation, or an Extravagancy of Spitting, it many times cures them. If strong Sternutatories are used without effect, *viz.* so as that the Patient neither sneezes, or is sensible of it, it foreshews that Death is a coming.

XII. *Salmon.*] The next thing we are to consider, is the Dietetick Cure. Let the Sick be placed in a hot and clear Air, not in that which is moist, cold, cloudy, or smoaky: Let their Food be always hot and easy of Digestion; let them eat sparingly, but often; as the Flesh of Chickens, young Pullets, young Capons, Cock-broth, Veal-broth, Knuckles of Veal, Sheeps-trotters, Soles, Flounders, Whitings, *&c.* and let every thing be drest with good Sauces, and made pretty hot with Spices: Let their Drink be a thin, clear, and strong Wine, which sometimes may be diluted with simple distilled Angelica, Baum, Borage, Lavender, or Mint-waters, or with a cold Infusion of Rosemary, Savory and Thyme; but the daily drinking of Brandy, and other strong Spirits, is to be avoided: Let all the benumbed Parts be daily used to Frictions, twice a Day at least, and for half an Hour at a time, or longer if convenient; let the Measures of Sleeping not exceed, because it is apt to indulge the Disease; too much Watching is also bad, because it is apt to profligate the Spirits: The Belly ought always to be kept soluble, because by that means the Disease is many times carried off; and therefore loosening Broths, as of Chickens and Veal, are to be commended, so also Barley-broth, or Water-gruel made with blue Currants, and made savory with Salt, and sometimes sweetned well with Sugar; *Panada* also made with white Bread, or white Biscuit, salted or sweetned, and made strong with some generous sort of Wine. Let the Patient, if possible, and the State and Habit of Body will permit, be carried abroad in the Air in an easy Coach, or Chariot, or Horse-litter, and be made to walk about their Chamber (if they can walk) as much as they can, by which means the whole Body

dy is moved, and the Blood and Humours are continually put into Motion. Let nothing be repreſented to, or come near the Patient, which may cauſe Anger, Grief, or Sorrow, or put him into any Fears or Frights, nor indeed into any exceſſive Joy; for the reſult of all Paſſions, of what kind ſoever, are in this Diſeaſe always detrimental to the Sick: And if the Body is apt to be bound, it ought to be kept open and looſe by giving half an Ounce more or leſs of the *Sal Mirabile*, two or three times a Week (as the Phyſician ſhall adviſe) in thin Barley-broth, Water-gruel, or ſome other proper Vehicle. All theſe preparitory things being thus ſaid, we come now to purſue the Medical Proceſs, or Phyſical Method of Cure, as our Author has laid it down.

XIII. *Or a Spoonful of compound Spirit of Lavender* may be given two or three times by it ſelf, during the Fit, letting the Space of an Hour, or half an Hour, be between the Doſes.

Salmon.] Or inſtead of thoſe you may give theſe things. *Take White Port-wine ſix Spoonfuls, Powers of Lavender, Roſemary, and Limons, of each half a dram; white Sugar two ounces; mix* for a Doſe. Or thus: *Take Milk-water three ounces, Powers of Amber two drams, white Sugar enough to ſweeten it*; mix for a Doſe, to be given in like manner.

Or this: *Take Powers of Lavender Penny-royal, Roſemary and Sage, of each four drams; Powers of Saſſafras two drams, Angelica-water a pint, dulcifie it with Syrup of Citron-peels*, and let the Patient take a Spoonful or two of it every two Hours. Or this: *Take Powers of Angelica, of Lavender, of Limons and of Oranges, of each an ounce; Spiritus Antiaſthmaticus, or in place thereof Spirit of Hartſhorn ſix drams; Eawm-water a pint and a half; mix and make it pleaſant with double refined Sugar*; of which let the Sick take a Spoonful or two every two or three Hours, either alone, or mixt with a Glaſs of Generous Wine: Or let the Sick take 25 or 30 drops of Our *Sal Volatile Oleoſum*, every ſix or eight Hours in a Glaſs of Wine; and alſo often times ſmell to the ſame.

XIV. Obſerve alſo carefully, that Cordials ought not to be given too often, and ſuch as are too hot not at all, as it is the manner to do: For, after all, whatever Specifick Vertue they may ſeem to be endued withal, they do more hurt than good to the Sick by melting the Humours, and conſequently increaſing the Diſeaſe; which Inconvenience alſo ariſes no leſs from too great a Burthen of Cloaths.

Salmon.] I am glad that ſomething is acknowledged, that ſuch things as melt the Humours and make them thin, are naught for the Diſeaſe; and if this be true, it muſt be granted that Bleeding does do that in the higheſt and moſt exquiſite Senſe that can be; ſo alſo that barbarous way of melting the Brain with red-hot Frying-pans held over the Crown of the Head, which infallibly deſtroys the Patient, and puts them paſt all hopes of Recovery for ever.

However, the common Cordials ought not to be given conſtantly, after the ordinary way

way of Tippling, which have no relation to the Cure: Yet such spirituous things as are specifick Cephalicks and Neuroticks, are not to be forborn, but daily given at Medical Hours, according to the Prescription of the Physician, such as are the things before enumerated in the former Section: Besides, the whole Body almost, especially the Head, and *Vertebræ* from the Nape of the Neck to the Hips, and other extreme Parts, which seem to be affected with the Disease, are daily Morning and Night to be bathed with this following Mixture. *Take Powers of Amber twenty ounces, Powers of Turpentine twelve ounces, Spiritus Antiasthmaticus eight ounces, Spiritus Cosmeticus six ounces: mix them, and keep the mixture for use:* With this let the Parts affected afore-named be very well bathed cold, (by the Fire's side if Winter-time, otherwise not) twice a Day at least, *viz.* Morning and Night; and if the Convenience of the Sick and Attendants will admit it, at Noon-time of the Day also; from the constant doing of this, with a *Continuando*, you will see admirable Effects.

XV. After the Fit is over, to prevent a Relapse, these things are prescribed.

Take of the Pills Cochiæ, *the greater, two scruples for a Dose, to be repeated six times*, once every third Day, at Four of the Clock in the Morning, sleeping after them.

Salmon.] I do not say but that these Pills prescribed by our Author may be good, and may do in some strong Constitutions, and where they may agree with the Habit of the Body; but they will not be fit for the weaker kinds of Patients. Besides in the Cure of this Disease, I am for such Purges as may actually enter into the Mass and Substance of the Blood; such as this following: *Take choice Alexandrian Sena ten ounces, Cremor Tartari in fine Pouder one ounce, Spring-water a quart, Spirit of Wine a pint, mix and infuse in a large Vessel close covered down, or rather in a Glass Alembick, with its Receiver luted to in Balneo, for three or four days; then unlute the Receiver, and put what is in it upon the Ingredients, and add thereto White Lisbon Wine, or choice Canary three pints more: Let them stand together (shaking the Glass well) close stopt for three or four days more, then decant or strain off the Clear, and keep it for use:* Of this the Patient may take one, two, or three Spoonfuls at pleasure, according as you find its Operation, and to be repeated every third Day, as the Physician shall see requisite. But in some Habits of Body *Sal Mirabile* will exceed all other Catharticks; for it not only actually enters into the Blood, but purges incomparably well, without griping or making the Patient sick, and is withal a specifick Cathartick in this Disease, for which reason we here recommend it: It may be given from three to six Drams, or an Ounce, as the Physician shall direct.

XVI. *Take Conserve of Sage-flowers, and of Rosemary-flowers, of each one ounce; Conserve of the Yellow of Orange-peels, six drams, candied Nutmeg, and candied Ginger, of each half an ounce;* old Venice-*Treacle two drams, the Pouders of the Electuaries* Diam-

b x

bræ *and* Diamoschu Dulcis, *of each one dram; with a sufficient quantity of the Syrup of Citron-peels, make an Electuary.* Dose as much as a Chesnut, every Morning and Evening, drinking after it two Spoonfuls of *Langius* his Epileptick Water.

Salmon.] This Prescript of our Authors, is indeed designed for the Stomach sake, where it is weak, and in which Case it may do much good: But the *Eclegma Stomachicum*, in *Lib.* 1. *Cap.* 1. *Sect.* 27. of this Work, may possibly be more agreeable to the Patient; because it not only warms and comforts the Stomach, but gratifies it to the last degree. If it is good and well made, it is a most excellent thing for this purpose; it may be taken not only in the Morning fasting, and at Bed-time, but also at any time of the Day, if the Patient finds himself ill, or sick, griped, or afflicted with Wind, or in Stomach or Bowels finds himself any other way oppressed.

XVII. *Take of Ambergrise half a dram, distilled Oils of Aniseeds, Cinamon and Nutmegs, of each two drops; Oil of Cloves one drop, Sugar dissolved in Orange-flower Water, as much as is sufficient to make Tablets according to Art*: Let the Sick take one at pleasure.

Salmon.] That the spirituous Things, and other Corroborators, are to be given in the Course of the Cure, there is no doubt; but yet these things will not do the Work alone; something ought to be first proposed, which may remove the proximate Cause in Substance. For this purpose Authors prescribe Vomits: *Helmont* is for a Vomit of *white Vitriol*, which is to be given about the beginning of the Disease; and, he says, it cures a recent Apoplexy: And after that, Volatile Salts, and Cephalick and Stomachick Aromaticks, as of Cinamon, Lavender, Marjoram, which, says he, will do the Business. *Sylvius* is against Vomits, unless the Disease proceeds from a *Narcosis*, or drinking too much Wine, in this case only he admits them. He is against them for this reason, because a Vomiting cannot be raised unless the Animal Motion of the *Diaphragma*, and especially of the Muscles of the *Abdomen* be assisting in the Operation, which, says he, in an Apoplexy are quite abolished, and therefore nothing can be expected from Vomits but a vain Endeavour, and possibly some ill Effects succeeding the same. Yet notwithstanding all that *Sylvius* has said, Experience has confirmed the good use of them, especially in the beginning of the Disease; and in a milder Apoplexy it is certain, that those Offices of the Animal Spirits in the *Diaphargma*, *Abdomen*, *&c.* are not quite abolished, but such a Power of Life and Motion is remaining as is sufficient to assist in the Operation of the Vomit; and therefore among those which we should commend in this Case, are *Vinum Benedictum*, *Vinum Rubellum*, *Vinum Antimoniale* (of which he hath said something in *Lib.* 1. *Cap.* 5. *Sect.* 10. of this Work:) and *Tartar Emeticum*, than which nothing seems more excellent: For that with these things, the Disease is very often profligated and overcome; but herein respect is always to be had to the

the Strength of the Patient, leſt the Medicine becomes alſo a Diſeaſe too, and then Nature will have two Enemies to contend withal at once.

XVIII. *Salmon.*] But that every thing may be done methodically, and according to the Rules of Art, you are forthwith to come to the Uſe of *Errhines*, which may abſolutely remove the morbifick Matter or proximate Cauſe, which is the extravaſated Blood or Humours, of which we have already diſcourſed; for this purpoſe we commend the *Pouder of Aſarabacca Leaves*, than which no Vegetable ſeems to be more excellent, a little of which may be blown up each Noſtril with a Quill: *Fine Pouder of Reſinous Scammony* is an admirable one; ſo alſo this: *Take Scammony in fine Pouder two parts, Cambogium in fine Pouder one part, white Hellebore in fine Pouder half a part, mix them for uſe. Tartar Vitriolate* is a famous thing, and has been found of extraordinary Effect. Theſe following ſolid Errhines I have oftentimes proved both in Apoplexies and Palſies, and in many other Caſes with very great Succeſs: *Take Confection Hamech what quantity you pleaſe: Make it into a Conſiſtency for Pills, with Reſinous Scammony and Cambogium, both in fine Pouder, of each equal parts.* Of this form long ſlender Rouls, about an Inch and a quarter long, more or leſs, one of which let be put up each Noſtril, and ſo muffled up that they may not fall out, which let remain there about an Hour and a Quarter, and then let them be blown or taken out: Theſe will evacuate ſuch a Plenty of Humour thro' the *Os Ethmoides* and *Noſtrils*, as may well be wonder'd at; after which, at fit Diſtances of Time, and as often as the Phyſician ſees reaſon for it, they are to be apply'd again.

XIX. *Salmon.*] I have ſometimes upon great Exigencies fortified the former ſolid Errhines, or Rouls, by adding to the Pouder of Scammony and Cambogium, an eighth part of Turpethum Minerale, which then have had indeed wonderful Effects. But however we cannot ſufficiently enough commend the Learned *Deckers* his Compoſition, which for the Excellency thereof we ſhall here give you. *Take Turpethum Minerale one ounce, Roſemary-flowers in fine Pouder an ounce an a half, fine Flower or Pouder of Liquorice three ounces; mix them:* Of which a ſmall quantity is to be blown up each Noſtril: His Words are theſe, *Minima (hujus pulveris) fere quantitas ſufficit, multumque pituitæ viſcidæ educit; cum ſucceſſu præſcribitur hic pulvis in Apoplexia, Epilepſia, Lethargo, capitiſque affectibus ſoporoſis omnibus, nec non in quibuſdam capitis affectibus recentibus, & inveteratis, Vertigine, gravedine, &c.* Decker's Exercitat. de Errhinis, cap. 1. pag. 15. This following Compoſition is not inferior to the former: *Take Roſemary and Lavender-flowers in fine Pouder, Marum in fine Pouder, Florentine Orrice-roots in fine Pouder, of each half an ounce; Liquorice in fine Pouder an ounce and a half, of the Princes Pouder an ounce; mix them, and keep the mixture for uſe:* It has all the Vertues of that of *Decker's*, nor do I think it any ways inferior to it, and

is to be uſed in the ſame manner.

XX. *Salmon.*] But ſometimes by reaſon of the Vehemence of the Diſeaſe, and great Stupidity of the Patient, being almoſt like Death it ſelf, Sternutatories are rather adviſable for the firſt Application, for which purpoſe very few exceed theſe of the learned *Decker*'s: *Take of the beſt Tobacco-leaves, ſweet Marjoram, Roſemary, Sage, of each half a dram; Roots of White Hellebor, Ginger, of each a ſcruple, Muſk two grains; make each into a moſt ſubtil Pouder, and then mix them together,* and keep the Mixture for uſe; a very little of which being blown up each Noſtril, will excite ſneezing. Or this, *Take Roots of White Hellebor, and of Pellitory of Spain, of each half a ſcruple; Flowers of Marigolds, of Lavender, and of Lillies of the Valleys, Nigella-ſeeds, of each two ſcruples; Caſtoreum half a ſcruple, Ambergriſe three grains: Make each apart into a very fine Pouder; then mix them, and keep the Mixture in a Bottle cloſe ſtopt for uſe.* In my Opinion, theſe Errhines and Sternutatories are the Medicaments which truly perform the Cure, which are infinitely beyond all other Forms of Medicines of what kind ſoever, preſcribed by Authors: Theſe Medicaments being able to do more in this Caſe than a Cart-load of all others; and may poſſibly retrieve Life, when other uſeleſs Medicines ſhall either do nothing, or give up the Cauſe, and ſo be the Introducers of Ruin and Death.

XXI. *Salmon.*] In the Interim or Spaces of time between the giving or uſe of theſe things, Exciters of the Animals Spirits and Corroboraters ought to be given. Among Galenick Medicines theſe are commended, *viz. Aurea Alexandrina, Anacardina, Mithridatium, Venice Treacle, Diamoſchum Dulce, Diacorum, Diambra, Acorus condited, Green Ginger, Conſerves of Betony, Marjoram, Sage, Tinctures of Aromaticks in ſtrong Wines,* &c. *as of Spicknard, Nutmegs, Cloves, Mace, Ginger, Stæchas, Origanum, Camomil, Bawm, Bay-leaves, Marum, Penyroyal, Roſemary, Rue, Sage, Savory,* &c. Among Chymical Preparations, thoſe are to be uſed inwardly, which powerfully rouſe up the drouſie and ſleeping Animal Spirits; ſuch are all *Volatile Spirits and Salts, as of Sal Armoniack, Hartſhorn, Amber, Soot, Horns and Hoofs of Animals, Sculls of Animals, Man's Blood, and Bloods of other Creatures,* which may now and then be given in ſome *Cephalick, Hyſterick,* or *Neurotick Julep,* or other proper Vehicle: To theſe things add *Elixir Vitæ Quercetani, Spirit of Lavender, Treacle-water, Spirit of Angelica the greater Compoſition, Spiritus Camphoratus, Spiritus Antiaſthmaticus, Tinctura Bezoartica, Tinctures of Amber, Antimony, Coral compound, Caſtor, Peony-ſeeds, Spiritus Salis Armoniaci ſuccinatus,* &c. Spirit of Wood-ſoot, and Volatile Salt of the ſame, are commended as the moſt admirable things; ſo that it is ſaid, that if their Vertues and Excellency were but well known, we ſhould not need to fetch Drugs from the *Indies.*

XXII. *Salmon.*] Theſe following things are admirable Corroboratives: *Take Salts of Wormwood, Scurvy-graſs and Carduus, of each a ſcruple; Volatile*

Salt

Salt of Amber seven grains, Ambergrise in fine Pouder five grains; mix for three Doses, which may be given in this Water. *Take Scordium, and Mint Waters, of each an ounce, Spirit of Black Cherries half an ounce, Spiritus Cornu Cervi succinatus two drams, Powers of Savin two drams, Syrup of Citron-peels an ounce and a half; mix them* to give the Salts in, and also to give now and then a Spoonful of it by it self. *Take Volatile Salt of Amber, and of Elks-horns or Sculls, of each a dram; Antimony Diaphoretick, or rather Cinnabar of Antimony half a dram; Oils of Limon-peel, and of Lavender, of each six drops; Oils of Peny-royal and Savin, of each four drops; Flowers of Benjamin a dram, Treble refined Sugar three ounces; mix them.* Dose half a Dram at ten in the Morning, and at six in the Afternoon. *Seeds of Mustard, Rocket, and Garden-cresses,* which abound with a Volatile Salt, are much commended; so also *Spirits of Scurvy-grass, of Mustard-seed and Radish-seed,* which have a kind of Vital Potency: *Spirits of Lilly's Convally, and of Black Cherries, fortified with Spirit of Hartshorn and Camphir, well digested together,* make a Specifick in this Disease: But scarcely any thing in the World exceeds our *Sal Volatile Oleosum,* of which we have already discoursed in *Lib.* 1. *Cap.* 1. *Sect.* 24. of this Work, to be given as is there directed.

XXIII. *Salmon.*] This following Compositum is of singular use. *Take rectified Spirit of Harts-horns, of Harts-skulls, of Elks-hoofs, and of Goats-blood, of each a dram; Volatile Salt of Amber, and of a Deers scull, of each two scruples; Tincture of Amber, of Castor, and of dried Goats-blood, of each half a dram; Essence of Ambergrise a dram, Spirit of Lavender, of Oranges and Limons, of each two drams; Scordium and Angelica-water, of each twelve ounces; Syrup of Citron-peels two or three ounces, or enough to make it gratefully sweet:* Mix them to be taken Morning and Night, about an Ounce and a half, or two Ounces at a time. This is good. *Take Spiritus Cosmeticus, Spirit of Man's Blood, Spirit of Harts-sculls, Spirit of Goats Blood, of each a dram; Spirit of Orange and Limon-peels, and of Lavender and Rosemary, of each two drams: mix them. Dose twenty or thirty drops in any proper Vehicle.*

XXIV. *Salmon.*] Between whiles, as once or twice a Week, the Patient may purge with our *Family-Pills:* But in such Constitutions where they are not agreeable, I commend the *Sal Mirabile,* which indeed not only purges the Bowels, but entering actually into the whole Mass of Blood, which scarcely any other Cathartick in the World besides, does, it perfectly purifies the whole, and reinstates the Humours in their pristine Purity, redintegrates the Tone of the Viscera already hurt, and perfectly restores the Blood to its due Crasis. In the Intervals of Purging, the Sick may take any of the *Composita* in the two last Sections, or Our *Sal Volatile Oleosum,* or some of the following Specifick. *Mynsicht's Infusion of Sassafras* is much commended: *The Spirit of Black Cherries, or Spirit of full ripe Bramble-berries, cohobated upon Hungarian Vitriol or Vitriol of Iron, becomes a potent Remedy against this Disease. Cinnabar of*

Antimony

Antimony is a thing much commended by many Authors; but *Native Cinnabar* very much exceeds it, and next to this laſt is our *Artificial Cinnabar*; any of theſe three being finely levigated, may be given from a Scruple to a Dram every Morning faſting in a Spoonful of *Syrup of Citron-peels*, or *Syrup of Green Ginger*. An Apoplectick who had loſt his Speech, was reſtored to it again by the uſe of Spirit of Caſtor, and Spirit of Mother of Thyme.

XXV. *Salmon.*] If the Fit laſts long, ſharp Clyſters are to be exhibited, ſuch as this following: *Take Mutton-broth a pint, Hiera Diacolocynthidos a dram, Sal Gem two drams; mix, and let it be given warm.* Or this: *Take Poſſet-drink a pint, Infuſion of Crocus Metallorum two, three, or four ounces; mix and exhibit it Blood-warm.* Or this: *Take Barley-broth a pint, Hiera Picra, from one to three drams, Sal Gem a dram and a half; mix and exhibit it Blood-warm as before.* Or this: *Take Water-gruel a pint, Cambogium, fine Aloes, of each half a dram, brown Sugar three ounces; mix for a Clyſter to be given as aforeſaid.* Some Authors commend the Infuſion of Volatile Saline Liquors into the Veins of the Apoplectick, becauſe, ſay they, the congealed and ſtagnating Blood is thereby the more eaſily diſſolved; but of this thing I have had no Experience, and therefore can ſay nothing of it upon my own Knowledge; but *Etmullerus* approves it.

XXVI. *Salmon.*] Externally the *Spina Dorſi*, and other Parts affected, ought to be bathed with ſubtil and volatile things, ſuch as will immediately pierce thro' the *Cuticula*, *Cutis*, Muſcles and nervous Parts, even to the Bone it ſelf; which by their ſpecifick Property may reſtore the Tone of the Parts being hurt, and ſtrengthen them, being much weakened by the Diſeaſe. The following Compoſitum is of good uſe for this purpoſe: *Take Powers of Amber and Turpentine, of each eight ounces; Powers of Caraway and Camomil, of each three ounces; Powers of Roſemary two ounces; mix them,* and herewith bathe the Back-Bone, and other affected Parts twice a Day. Or this: *Take Powers of Amber and Roſemary, of each ſix ounces; Spiritus Coſmeticus and Antiaſthmaticus, of each four ounces, Spirit of Hartſhorn two ounces; mix them.* With this you may bathe twice a Day the Parts affected, according to the former Directions. Or this: *Take Spiritus Coſmeticus twelve ounce, Tincture of Balſam of Peru eight ounces, Elixir of Angelica four ounces; mix them* to bathe withal, as aforeſaid.

XXVII. Let him forbear all ſorts of ſtrong Drink, and take Broths made of Barly, Oats, or of Chickens; and ſometimes the Fleſh of Chickens and Lambs, and ſuch other like Meats of eaſy Digeſtion, eſpecially whilſt Catharticks are given.

Salmon.] The Dietetick Part of the Cure we have already handled, in what has gone before; yet we think it requiſite to add theſe few following Directions. 1. That theſe kinds of Broth and Diet which make ſlippery the Bowels, ought to be uſed ſome time before the Adminiſtration of Catharticks, becauſe they add to the Operation of the Purge, making it the

the more easy and speedy. 2. Because they are apt to keep the Belly soluble, by which means the sharp Humours are continually a carrying off. 3. Because they help to keep the Bowels cool, and precipitate the Juices downwards, and so hinder Vapors from ascending up to the Head. As for strong Drink and Wines, they ought to be forbidden, or to be drank sparingly, because of the Heat and Volatility of the Medicaments, which are usually given in this Cure; which both together might either cause a Fever, or create an Inflammation of the Viscera, to the very great damage of the Patient.

CHAP. II. *Of the Palsie.*

I. BOTH the Faculties of Sense and Motion, or one of them singly, are wholly lost, or at least very much diminished and vitiated in the Parts affected.

Salmon.] It is called in Greek, Παρέλυσις, *a* παρὰ *ad*, *&* λύεθαι, *enervare*, *solvere*, to loose; and it is *Resolutio Nervorum*, a loosening or enfeebling of the Nerves; and is a Privation or Abolition of Sense and Motion, or one of them, either in the Body (which does not often happen) or in some Parts from a Relaxation of some particular Branch of the Nervous System, or Spinal Marrow; which being obstructed by some Morbifick Matter, hinders the free access of the Animal Spirits to those several Parts affected with this Disease. This Spinal Marrow is divided into two Branches, *viz.* the right and the left: If this Morbifick Matter falls upon, or obstructs but one Branch only, then a Palsie is caused on one Side only, either the right or the left, accordingly as it is the right or left Branch which is obstructed; but if it insinuates into, or obstructs both Branches, then a total Palsie is caused on both Sides of the Body. A Palsie may happen in the Head, Eyes, Jaws, Tongue, Lips, Arms, Hands, Fingers, Hips, Thighs, Legs, Feet, Sphincters of the Anus and Bladder, *&c.* according to the particular Branches affected, which repleniſh those Parts. And it may so happen, that any part may be deprived of Sense, the Motion being unhurt; and it may also be deprived of Motion, the Sense remaining entire.

II. *Salmon.*] A Palsie is either True or Bastard: A real and true Palsie is, when the Parts affected neither feel nor move A Bastard Palsie is, when the Parts affected have Feeling without Motion, or when there is Motion without Feeling; and this is caused by the less or more Influx of the Animal Spirits into the Conduits of the Nerves. Where Motion remains, and the Sense is obliterated, or very dull, or depraved, or in some measure diminished, it is called a Sleepiness of the Limbs, and there is a kind of Pricking (as it were) in the Parts affected; and this is many times a Forerunner of a true Palsie. A Pal-

sie

ſie on both Sides of the Body, called *Paraplegia*, is more rare to be ſeen; which if it be old and confirm'd, ſcarcely admits of Cure; nor if it be recent, does it eaſily admit of help, tho' ſometimes by applying proper Medicines Health is reſtored. But if one ſide of the Spinal Marrow is affected, called *Hemiplegia*, (which is often ſeen) if it is recent, eaſily admits of Cure, if a wiſe Phyſician has it in hand; but if it is inveterate, the Cure is more deſperate, and it many times degenerates into a true Palſie.

III. *Salmon.*] But if the Palſie is univerſal, which is not often to be met with, the original or primary Beginnings of the Nerves are vehemently affected: Some ſay the *Corpora Striata*, the *Medulla Oblongata*, and *Nerves*, are the Parts affected; and this doubtleſs is true, becauſe theſe Bodies perform the Functions belonging to Senſe and Motion; for which Reaſon it is neceſſary to underſtand Anatomy ſo well, as to know the Diſtribution of all the Nerves, and from what part of the Spinal Marrow each part of the Body has its repletion of Nerves, without which it will be hard to determine where the Root of the Cauſe may lie. But how theſe Nerves and Animal Spirits, flowing in their Conduits, ſerve for Motion and Senſe, *Carteſius* tells us, *viz.* from a continual Heat implanted in the Heart, which is a kind of Fire, by which the whole Body and all its Parts are put into Action. *Sylvius* will have the Muſcles or Animal Spirits to be the Subject of the Palſie: Without doubt the proximate Seat of the Diſeaſe is in the Nerves, they being primarily affected, and next to them the Muſcles maintain'd every ways by motive Fibres, which are deprived of Motion and Senſe, not ſo much thro' their own Fault, as thro' the Fault of the Nerves inſerted in them.

IV. *Salmon.*] There is then a Hurt of Senſe or Motion, or both; a Numbneſs, with ſometimes a Senſe of pricking in the Limbs; and many times a Vertigo and a Miſt before the Eyes, and ſometimes Thickneſs of Hearing go before an approaching Palſie: The Parts affected many times grow lean for want of Blood, loſe their natural Heat and Colour, and become cold and flabby to the Touch; ſometimes a Swelling may be obſerved, and ſometimes a Contraction of the Fingers, whilſt ſome Senſe is yet remaining; and if the affected Limb is lift up, it falls down again by its own Weight, and tho' warmed with hot Cloths and other Things, eaſily grows cold again: The Urine is white and thin, and the ſide affected is often cold, and the other hot, and the Eye, Mouth, and Lip of the ſide affected, are contracted and drawn upon one Side; and if the Jaw, or any part of the Face be paralitick, it is drawn to the ſound Side: The Pulſe is ſlow, languid, little, and ſometimes none; and if the Sphincter of the *Anus*, or Bladder, is Paralitick, the Excrements go away from the Patient involuntarily.

V. *Salmon.*] The Cauſe is ſaid by ſome Authors to be from a cold and moiſt Intemperature; or from pituitous, ſerous, and watery Recrements, which

flow in upon the Nerves, which being incraſſated obſtruct them, and ſo hinder the Influx of the Animal Spirits: Or it is from Obſtruction of the Nerves of the Spinal Marrow, by ſerous and thin Humours derived from the Brain; which inſinuating themſelves into the ſaid Nerves by their Pores, make them ſoft, and ſo looſen and relax them; and ſo by imbibing too much Moiſture, ſtop or obſtruct them, not only in their Original, but ſometimes thro' their whole Syſtem, whereby the Paſſage of the Animal Spirits from their Original in the Brain is hindred. Others ſay, that it is from a conjunct Cauſe, *viz.* the Obſtruction of the Paſſages, and the Impotency of the Animal Spirits, as they are either narcotically affected, or being ſmall in quantity, do not exert themſelves with Vigour enough: Therefore in a general or univerſal Palſie, (which, for the moſt part, follows an Apoplexy or Lethargy, or ſome other like Diſeaſe, from a Tranſlation of the Morbifick Matter) the Animal Spirits are obſtructed in their Influx into the whole nervous Syſtem, and ſo all the Limbs muſt of neceſſity be affected with this Diſeaſe; and not only the Obſtruction of the Nerves, but the Obſtructions alſo of the Corpus Striatum and ſometimes of the Medulla Oblongata and Spinalis, are Cauſes of this Affection, by hindering the Irradiation of the Animal Spitits from falling by the Nerves upon the Muſcular Parts of the Body: And ſometimes it is cauſed by extraneous, Vapours, which being malignant do as it were ſmite and deject the Animal Spirits, and ſo like blaſting hinder their Motion and Influence, like as it cauſes ſometimes blaſting in Trees.

VI. *Salmon.*] *Sylvius* ſays, that the Cauſe of the Diſeaſe is either from want of Animal Spirits in the Muſcles, or from Straitneſs of the Paſſages of the Nerves, or from the Immobility of the Animal Spirits cauſed by a Lethargy, Sleepineſs or Stupidity: And he farther ſays, that all thoſe things which can obſtruct or ſtraiten the Nerves, are apt to produce this Diſeaſe, as Flegm falling on the Root of the Spinal Marrow, which will cauſe either a *Paraplegia* or *Hemiplegia*: Alſo that Wounds, and all other things which cut the Nerves, and all Narcoticks which render the Animal Spirits turpid and immoveable, do contribute to it; and among remote Cauſes, a watery Moiſture, which is able to make the Fibres of the Muſcles ſoft and flaccid, or looſe. The Animal Spirits do indeed puff up the Muſcles, as Wind does a Bladder; if therefore they be obſtructed from entering them, they muſt become ſoft and looſe: And therefore when they are ſtopt, or flow not plentifully enough, a flagging and Relaxation of the Nerves and Muſcles muſt needs enſue, whence Senſe and Motion, one or both of them ceaſe. If Lympha or Serum does fall within the Spinal Marrow, or Vertebra's, ſo much, that by its Weight or Quantity the Nerves are compreſſed, from thence an Excluſion of the Animal Spirits will follow, and then an Abolition of Senſe and Motion of neceſſity ſucceeds; and thus you

ſee

see that Cold may remotely contribute something to this Disease, because it coagulates the Serum; and this we have oftentimes seen. And when a Nerve is cut in sunder, a Palsie of that part must necessarily follow, to which the Nerve should convey the Animal Spirits, because by this Accident their Passage is stopt. These Animal Spirits are very subtil Powers, yea, the most subtil, saline, sulphureous and mercurial Particles of the living Body; which in a due and uninterrupted Contiguity, and a fit Quantity, are indued with operative Powers, motive and sensative, according to the Nature and Properties of the Substance which they inhabit; and therefore if their Influx into their proper Conduits or Channels are stopt, the Animal Functions must cease, as is before declared.

VII. *Salmon.*] As to the Prognostick Part; That which follows an Apoplexy lasts many Months and Years, and is for the most part incurable. If it proceeds from the cutting of a Nerve asunder, it is incurable: So also, a Palsie coming in Winter, or happening to such as are aged: Or, if an Atrophy happens to the paralytick part, which shews a more dangerous Obstruction, scarcely to be removed: So also, if the paralytick Parts feel cold to the Touch; for then it shews that few Spirits are conveyed thither by the Nerves, and that there must be a wonderful Obstruction; or if the Excrements and Urine pass involuntarily. *Hippocrates Prorrh. lib.* 2. says, if any one is affected in the Spinal Marrow; or if after a Fall, or any other Cause, the Person is deaf, and when touched, feels not; and if at first, goes neither to Stool, nor makes Water unless forced; and when the Disease is inveterate, if the Excrements and Urine come away involuntarily, the Sick dies within a little time. In old Age, because the Nerves are grown more hard, and the Fibres thick or gross, and not pliable, from which Causes the Obstructions bred in them, are scarcely to be removed; this Disease is said to be incurable: So also, if it comes from a weak Apoplexy, or if an Apoplexy and Consumption, and a melting Sweat follow it. That which follow a Colick, or comes from the Scurvy, is more easily and sooner cured, than if it proceeds from other Causes: So also, if it comes from a defluxion of Lympha, or is a Palsie only of a particular part, as of the Tongue, Lip, Finger, Leg, *&c.* or if a Fever or Trembling supervene; or there be no Atrophy in the Parts affected; or if it is in Youth, or in a good Habit, or some little Sense returns again; or if both internal and external Senses are safe and sound, tho' Motion is lost; if Trembling or Pain follow; or the Eye on the paralytick side be not lessen'd; or the Patient keeps his Strength without Head-ach, Megrim, Vertigo, or Lethargy; I say in all these Cases there is hopes. But if it proceeds from a Fall, Contusion, Laxation, or the like; or if it is a perfect and universal one; or if an Atrophy on the Part is coming on, with Coldness to the touching, or

Excrements pass involuntarily; or if Convulsions follow it, from a saline or acid Acrimony pricking the Nerves, it is very dangerous. For all these Reasons, you ought to weigh carefully the State of the Patient, and the Strength of the Disease, without determining any thing positively concerning Life or Death; tho' in general this may be safely presaged, that considering the Morbifick Matter, and the principal part affected, *viz.* the Spinal Marrow, it is a Disease very hard to cure.

VIII. *Salmon.*] The Diet of the Sick is next to be considered. Let a hot and dry Air be chosen for the Patient to reside in, and in Winter time, let him sit by a good and clear Fire, avoiding all cold and moist Places, as being Enemies to the Nerves: The Food also must be healing and drying, roasted, but full of good Juice, and let it be eaten with Aromatick Spices, the Liquids as Drink with Ginger and Nutmegs: Broths, and other solid Food with Pepper, and Mustard with things it is proper to: Let his Ale be pure and fine, with Scurvy-grass in it; his Wine generous, with grated Nutmeg in it, very fine and free from Tartar: Spirit of Wine may be drunk in Drams, but very moderately, lest it prove soporiferous, and so profligate the Animal Spirits; violent Motion is to be forborn, because it wearies the Limbs, and exhausts the Spirits; and yet too much Rest is to be avoided, because it renders the whole Body cold and flaccid or loose. Let him sleep moderately and by Night, for too long Sleep benumbs the Nerves, and stifles as it were the Animal Spirits, as too much watching also exhausts them: Let the Belly be kept soluble, and proper Diureticks given, to make the Urine free and plentiful, because sometimes the Disease is piss'd away; and now and then gentle Sweating is to be provok'd, both to perspire the cold, viscous, and morbid Juices, as also to direct and send forth the Animal Spirits to the Circumference, where they are wanting. Let him be chearful and brisk, avoiding Grief, Sadness, and Care, which smite the Animal Spirits, and have sometimes alone been the Cause of Convulsions first, and then of a Palsie: Frights and Fears are also to be avoided, because of the Discomposure they put upon the whole Body at once: Anger is likewise dangerous in this Disease, for that it is one of the greatest Enemies to the Nerves and Animal Spirits. These things being said, we now come to see what our Author speaks as to the Cure, and to pursue it in as short a Method as may be.

IX. Take of Pills Cochiæ Minoris two Scruples, let them be exhibited every other Morning for six times: After which let the Sick take the antiscorbutick Electuary for thirty Days together; the Recipe of which you may see in the Chapter of the Scurvy.

Salmon.] As for the purging part, you cannot give a better Medicine than Our *Family Pills*, which may be given to half a Dram every other Morning, or at least twice a Week; or in place of them, you may give Our

Our *Pilulæ Catharticæ* (described in Our *Pharmacopœia Chirurgica*) from one Scruple to half a Dram, which you may repeat as often as you shall see convenient. Or the *Pulvis Catharticus* (in *Lib.* 1. *Cap.* 1. *Sect.* 20. of this Book) which may be given from a Scruple to two Scruples, according to Age and Strength; or the *Pilulæ Panarcæ* (in *Lib.* 1. *Cap.* 1. *Sect.* 22.) which are seldom given without a good Effect; and in an inveterate Palsie, the *Impetus Mercurii Aurique*, which ought only to be exhibited by the Direction of the Physician, and to be repeated as he shall see fit: Others prescribe *Pilulæ de Agarico*, *Hiera Diacolocynthidos*, *Diacatholicon*, *&c.* but they withal advise that Preparatives should be given first, as Hydromel, Oxymel, Decoctions of Florentine Orice-root, Nutmegs, Cinamon, Sage, and Flowers of Sage, Flowers of Lavender, Betony, Marjoram, Thyme, Savory, and other Aromaticks. The Purges ought to be such as may evacuate the thickned *Serum and Lympha*, which obstruct the Nervous Conduits; but they ought to be given with Consideration to the Patient's Strength.

X. *Salmon.*] *Vomits* are also proper, which may be given once in eight or ten Days, such as the *Emeticum Commune*, in *Lib.* 1. *Cap.* 1. *Sect.* 2. but more especially *Tartarum Emeticum*, from one Grain to five or six, which is a very singular Medicament: Afterwards, as the Physician shall see requisite, *Errhines* are to be apply'd, *Sternutatories* and *Apophlegmatisms*; and if the Patient is of a cold, moist and pituitous Habit of Body, *Mercurials* ought to be given, or mixed with the Purges, among the Preparations of which, *Sylvius* commends *Mercurius Dulcis*; but in my Opinion, *Præcipitates* are much more proper than *Sublimates*, and therefore I should rather chuse *White Præcipitate*, or another which much exceeds it, *viz.* the *Prince's Pouder*, the Preparation of which we have taught in Our *Pharmacopœia Bateana*, *Lib.* 1. *Cap.* 9. *Sect.* 108. *Pag.* 458. of the Second Edition. But if the Patient is of a cholerick Habit, then *Antimonials* and *Antimonial Cathartick*s are to be chosen; and if it proceeds from a *Narcosis*, sharp things repleat with a lixivious Volatile Salt, are to be exhibited, of which kind are the Volatile Salts of Pease, Beans, Scurvy-grass, Tartar, *&c.* because the Disease for the most part proceeds from a preternatural or morbid Acid; and therefore such things as absorb that Humour, are to be chosen and administred.

XI. *Salmon.*] *Specifick Alteratives are next to be consider'd.* Volatile Salts are the best Medicaments in this Disease; and indeed, in all cold and moist Distempers of the Head, Brain, and Nerves, because they warm and comfort the Parts affected, immediately penetrate thro' the whole nervous System, excite and stir up the depressed, dull, and flagging Spirits, and so give them a lively Motion and free Passage, and cause them to pierce thro' the whole Substance of the musculous Flesh, by means of the nervous Fibres, with which they are repleat. Volatile urinous Salts, and solid fix'd Salts are of great Efficacy; the one causes a Fermentation

in the Blood and Juices; the other excites and rouſes up the ſtupid or benummed Animal Spirits, freeing them from the Narcotick Recrements, which they expel out of the Body.

XII. *Salmon.*] Among the grand Specificks for the Cure of this Diſeaſe, we commend the *Spirit* and *Volatile Salt of Man's Blood*, than which nothing has been found yet which is better, or exceeds it: They may be given in the ſame Doſe and Manner, with the *Spirit and Volatile Salt of Hartſhorn.* But becauſe theſe things are not eaſily, or common to be had, eſpecially by the Vulgar, we will come to other Preſcriptions, which tho' not ſo great, may yet be very profitable in their kind. Among theſe latter Sort, we commend the *Spirit and Volatile Salt of Deers or Harts-blood, and of Goats-blood*, which are no inferior things; and next to theſe, the *Spirit and Volatile Salt of Ox-blood and Sheeps-blood*, which are alſo powerful in their Kind. The *Volatile Spirit and Salt of Hartſhorn ſuccinated*, is an excellent thing; ſo alſo the *Spirit and Volatile Salt of Woodſoot*, with which Wonders has been done. Preparations of Vipers are famous, and ſcarcely inferior to any other Specifick, as the *Spirit and Volatile Salt of the whole dried Viper*, *viz.* of its Fleſh and Bones, and the *Poteſtates Viperarum*, all which being highly Neurotick, open the nervous Obſtructions to a Miracle; ſo likewiſe the *Powder of Vipers Fleſh and Vipers Bones*, which may be given Morning and Night from half a Dram to a Dram in any proper Vehicle.

XIII. *Salmon.*] To the former enumerated things, let us add the *Spirits and Volatile Salts of Elks-horns and Elks-hoofs, of Harts-hoofs and Harts-ſculs, of Goats-ſculs, Horns and Hoofs, and of Ox and Sheeps ſculs, Horns and Hoofs*, all or any of which are of extraordinary Uſe in their Kind; ſo alſo the Spirit and Volatile Salt taken from the dried *Fleſh of Human kind* (which is inferior to no other Medicament) and from the dried Fleſh of *Elks, Deer, Goats, Oxen, Sheep, Hogs, and Hedghogs*; as alſo the *Spirit and Volatile Salt of Man's Hair, and the Hair of all the aforenamed Beaſts*, foraſmuch as the Hair is the Production of the nervous Juice in Conjunction with the Animal Spirits: To theſe add the *Poteſtates* or *Powers* made (according to Art) from all theſe things, which by reaſon of their Pleaſantneſs are very eaſie to be taken by the Patient.

XIV. *Salmon.*] Theſe following *Compoſita* have been confirmed Specificks from manifold Experience. *Take rectified Spirit of Wine nine ounces, Spirit of Hartſhorn one ounce and an half, Chimical Oil of Nutmegs three or four drams; mix them* Doſe from 50 to 100 drops, Morning, Noon, and Night in a Glaſs of generous Canary. Or this: *Take rectified Spirit of Wine, Volatile Salt of Earth-worms, or Vipers, a dram and a half; Chimical Oils of Nutmegs and Limons, of each two drams Mix them*, to be given in the ſame manner and Doſe as the former. Or this: *Take Spirit of Angelica, the greater Compoſition eight ounces, Spirit of Hartſhorn ſuccinated one ounce and a half, Oils of Roſemary and Savin, of each two drams;*

mix

mix them, to be taken as before. Or this: *Take Spirit of Lavender eight ounces, Volatile Salt of Man's Blood, or of Vipers, a dram and a half; Chimical Oils of Savin, and of Cinamon, of each a dram and a half; mix*, and keep it for uſe as before. Or, *Take Spirit of Lily Convally eight ounces, Volatile Spirit of Goats Blood two ounces, Oils of Savin and ſweet Marjoram, of each a dram and a half; mix them*, to be uſed as the former. Or *Take of Our Bezoartick Tincture eight ounces, Volatile Salt of Vipers, or of Goats Blood two drams, Chymical Oils of Limons and Nutmegs, of each a dram, Oils of Savin and Roſemary, of each half a dram; mix*, and keep it for uſe. Or, *Take Tinctures of Salt of Tartar, and of Caſtor, of each four ounces; Volatile Salt of Man's Blood, or of Man's Scull, or of Vipers, a dram and a half; Oils of ſweet Marjoram and Penyroyal, of each two drams; mix them.* Or, *Take Tincture of Caſtor four ounces, Spirit of Lavender and Angelica, of each two ounces, Volatile Spirit of Goats Horns, or Goats Blood ſuccinated, an ounce and a half, Oil of Savin three drams; mix them*, and keep the Mixture for uſe. Or, *Take Tinctura Bezoartica twelve ounces, Volatile Salt of Wood-ſoot two drams, Oil of Savin four drams; mix them*, and keep the Mixture for uſe, to be given in like manner as the former.

XV. *Salmon.*] The other Remedies are Topical: *Iſſues* and *Setons* are ſometimes profitably apply'd; ſo alſo *Veſicatories*, but chiefly in groſs and impure Bodies, where there is a plenitude of morbifick Matter and ſuperfluous Humours: Where the Head has been much affected, *Ptarmicks* have done admirable things, and given great Relief, as well *Errhines* as *Sternutatories*: Cupping is ſometimes profitable, as alſo *Frictions* with a courſe hot Cloth, becauſe theſe things attract or draw the Spirits to the external or affected Parts: *Fomentations*, with Decoctions of hot Aromaticks, are beneficial, and *Baths* made of Neuroticks for the Patient to ſit in; but if the Diſeaſe proceeds from a preceding Colick, then ſulphureous Baths are to be uſed, as alſo the natural hot Baths, at *Bath* in *Somerſetſhire*: Bleeding is to be avoided, becauſe it proſtrates the Strength of the Patient already debiltated, and farther enfeebles all the Parts affected.

XVI. *Take of Unguentum Nervinum three ounces, Spirit of Lavender compound, Spirit of Garden Scurvy-graſs, of each an ounce and a half; mix them*: And with this Liniment anoint the Parts affected, as the Back-bone, *&c.* (from the Nape of the Neck to the Buttocks, according to the Branches of the Nerves, repleniſhing the paralytick Members) which repeat as often as you ſee need requires.

Salmon.] Where the Palſie is not perfect, but that either Senſe or Motion remains, you may anoint the Back-bone with ſome greaſy Ointment or Liniment, ſuch as this: *Take Oil of Ben, or Oil Olive two ounces, rectified Oils of Amber, and of Juniper-berries, of each one ounce; mix them*: With which anoint Morning and Evening, rubbing the Oil in before the Fire, for half an Hour at a time or more. Or you may anoint with this: *Take pure ſweet-ſcented golden coloured Palm Oil, or pure red Oil of Hi pericon*

ri con three ounces, Chymical Oils of Amber, Lavender and Roſemary, of each one ounce; mix them, with which anoint as before. Or, *Take the true Oil of Mace or Nutmegs by Expreſſion three ounces, Oils of Lavender, Limons, and Oranges, of each one ounce; mix them* to anoint withal, as before directed. But if the Palſie is perfect and compleat, wherein Senſe and Motion are both loſt, then you muſt uſe ſtronger Medicaments, and ſuch as may pierce more powerfully, as this following: *Take rectified Oil of Amber three ounces, Oils of Turpentine, Lavender, Limons, and Sage, of each two drams; mix them.* Lay the Patient upon a Flock-bed before a good Fire, with a Skreen behind, and in a warm Room: Then with this Mixture anoint the Back-bone, and indeed all the Parts affected from Head to Foot, rubbing it well in with your Hand, or a courſe Cloth for an Hour, more or leſs together; which do twice a Day, (if the Phyſician ſhall think convenient) and let it be repeated for fourteen or twenty Days, more or leſs, either every Day. or every other Day, as the Diſeaſe, and Condition of the Patient may require.

XVII. *Salmon.*] The *Vertebræ* of the Back may be anointed with this alſo. *Take Unguentum Nervinum two ounces, rectified Oils of Amber, and of Roſemary, of each a dram; Oils of Spike, Juniper, and Sage, of each half a dram; mix them.* Or this: *Take Balſam of Peru three ounces, rectified Oils of Amber, Lavender, Limons, Oranges, and Nutmegs, of each two drams; mix them* to anoint with. Or this: *Take Oil of Nutmegs by Expreſſion, Balſam of Peru, of each two ounces; Chymical Oils of Angelica, Caraways, Lavender, Limons, Oranges, Penyroyal, Roſemary, Sage, and Savin, of each a dram and a half, or two drams; mix them,* and keep it for uſe. Or this: *Take Powers of Amber and Roſemary, of each ſix ounces, Spiritus Coſmeticus three ounces, Spirit of Hartſhorn two ounces, Spirit of Sal Armoniack an ounce; mix them,* to bathe the Parts affected withal. It is alſo ſaid, that *Oil of Cantharides mixt with other Aromatick Oil,* and the outward Parts anointed therewth, is an excellent Remedy: So alſo the *Volatile Spirits of Ants, Earthworms, and Hog-lice, mixed with rectified Spirit of Wine, Aromatick Tinctures, Tincture of Caſtor, and Powers of Amber, Angelica, Lavender, Limons, Nutmegs, Penyroyal, Roſemary, Sage, and Savin,* are admirable Medicines beyond moſt other things.

XVIII. *Salmon.*] In a ſcorbutick Palſie, and that which comes from the Colick, Antiſcorbuticks, are to be mixed with Cephalicks and Neuroticks, which may rectifie the Diſcraſy of the Blood, and ſtrengthen the Head, Brain, and Nerves. As for Example: *Take Spirits of Scurvy-graſs and Garden-creſſes, of each three ounces, Elixir Proprietatis prepared with Spirit of Scurvy-graſs, Spirit of Earth-worms, Spirit of Tartar, of each one ounce, Oils of Juniper-berries and of Parſly-ſeed, of each a dram, Tincture of Mars half a dram; mix them.* Doſe from 40 to 60 or 80 Drops in any proper Vehicle, or ſome diuretick Wine or Decoction, becauſe, by ſuch like means, the morbifick Matter is many times carried off by Urine. This following

lowing Pouder is alſo commended: *Take Roots of Maſterwort, Cloves, Nutmegs, Cortex Winteranus, of each in fine Pouder two drams; Muſtard-ſeed and Rocket-ſeed in Pouder, Tartar Vitriolate, of each a dram and a half, Crabs-Eyes levigated a dram, Salts of Scurvy-graſs, Germander, and Scordium, of each half a dram; Chymical Oil of Angelica, or of Mint ten drops; mix them well, and keep them in a Glaſs cloſe ſtopt for uſe.* Doſe from half a Dram to a Dram, every Morning faſting, and at Night going to Bed.

XIX. The moſt part of the Medicines preſcribed in the Chapter of the Scurvy, tho' they ſeem to be fitted only for the Cure of the Scurvy; yet ſince they are eſpecially qualified for the volatizing of crude and fixt Humors, they are alſo beneficial in the Cure of the Palſie.

Salmon.] The *Spirit* of *Muſtard-ſeed*, or of *Rocket-ſeed*, or of *Naſturtium*, being daily given with Neuroticks and Aromaticks, have a mighty Power in opening Obſtructions of the Nerves, and reſtoring paralytick Patients: But as the Scurvy is many times carried off by the uſe of *Diureticks*, ſo I ſhould adviſe that theſe *Antiparalytick* and *Antiſcorbutick* Medicaments, ſhould be given in Diuretick Vehicles, ſuch as Tincture, Infuſion, or Decoction of *Lignum Nephriticum*; or in Decoction or Infuſion of Parſly-roots or Parſly-ſeeds, or in Parſly-water mixt with white Port-wine, or other Liquors of like nature.

XX. *Salmon.*] Indeed all ſuch Antiſcorbuticks, which are hot and biting, and full of Volatile Salt, as Scurvy graſs, Garden and Sea-Creſſes, Garden and Indian, Brooklime, Rocket, Radiſh, Horſe-Radiſh, and Muſtard-ſeed, are of mighty uſe in this Diſeaſe; eſpecially their Volatile Spirits diſtilled from them, as we have taught in our *Doron Medicum*, *lib.* 1. *cap.* 25. *ſect.* 92, 93, & 95. and more eſpecially in the Second Edition of Our *Pharmacopœia Bateana. lib.* 1. *cap.* 2. *ſect.* 9. & 67. to which you are referred. But where theſe things cannot be had, this ordinary Medicine may do ſomething: *Take Poſſet-drink two quarts, Muſtard-ſeed bruiſed five or ſix ounces, infuſe for three Hours over a very gentle ſimmering Fire cloſe covered, or at leaſt in a ſcalding heat; then ſtrain out, and ſweeten with double refin'd Sugar, and give it the Patient to drink at four draughts, ſweating well upon it.* This is to be repeated ſeven or eight times, or more, as the Reaſon of the Thing, and Prudence of the Phyſician require.

XXI. *Salmon.*] And let their Drink be ſtrong clear Ale, or Wine, in which Scurvy-graſs, Creſſes, Rocket, or Muſtard-ſeed have been infuſed; Or let them not drink any thing, without adding to it *Powers of Roſemary or Lavender*, one or two Drams at a time, in every Draught they drink; or for want of them, *Spiritus Nitratus* half a Dram or more, which comfort and warm the Blood and Juices, rouſe up the clouded and oppreſſed Spirits, diſſolve the Tartar of the Lympha and Serum, and make an Excretion of the morbifick Matter by Urine.

XXII. *Sal-*

XXII. *Salmon.*] Where those hot Oils aforenamed in this Chapter cannot be had, you must do otherwise what may be done; as this: *take rectified Spirit of Wine a pint, Camphir one ounce and a half, Tincture of black Pepper one ounce; mix and dissolve.* Bathe the Parts affected therewith; warm, very gently, repeating it as often as you shall think fit, or the reason of the thing may require: And if sometimes 40 or 50 Drops of it be given inwardly in any thing the Sick drinks; it may be of good Service, in order to the Cure of the Disease; more especially, if the Disease was the Production of a preceding Colick: And the *Spiritus Mirabilis* used in the same manner, both outwardly and inwardly, may have mighty Effects in order to a speedy Cure.

CHAP. III. *Of Convulsions.*

Salmon.] OUR Author has said nothing of this Disease in this Work: Now because it is one of the Epidemick Distempers of the City of *London*, and that very great Numbers die of *Convulsions* every Week, more than almost of any other Malady, as is manifest every Day by the Bills of Mortality; I thought good to add this Chapter, in this place, as being something a-kin to the Disaffections we have been even now a discoursing of, as well as for the Necessity of knowing the Nature of the Disease, and the Order and Method of its Cure.

I. A Convulsion is called in Greek, Σπάσμα ἀπὸ Σπασμὸς, *a* σπάω, *trahere, contorquere*, to contract: In Latin, *Spasmus* (from the Greek) and *Convulsio*, *a Convello*, to draw up together, or to contract: But *Spasmus* is commonly taken with us in our Language, for that kind of *Convulsion*, accompanied with a most vehement Pain, usually called the *Cramp*. Now a Convulsion is an involuntary and painful Contraction of the Muscles, proceeding from a more inward Irritation of the nervous Parts, or a too strong Inflation of the Animal Spirits. It is involuntary, because this Disease forceably moves and draws the Nerves, or their Fibres and Muscles without the Consent of the Will, making an involuntary Motion in that Part, which before might have had a voluntary one; and it is painful, because it contorquates or draws up, and together those Parts, *viz.* the Nerves and Tendons, and muscular Parts repleat with Multitudes of small Nerves, which have the most exquisite Sensation.

II. There are several kinds of a Convulsion, *viz.* 1. *Emprosthotonos* (*raptus pronus, Aureliano*) in which the Parts of the Body are couvulsed, contracted, or bended and drawn forwards. 2. *Opisthotonos* (*supinus raptus*, Aureliano) in which all the Parts of the Body are bended, contracted, or convulsed backward. 3. *Tetanos*, in which all the Nerves and Muscles, both anterior and posterior, are convulsed of a sudden; so that the whole

whole Body is kept upright and ſtretched out, remaining wholly inflexible and unmoveable. 4. *Spaſmus Cynicus*, which is when the *Muſculus Latus* is convulſed or contracted only on one ſide, and the Noſtrils are drawn awry, as in a Dog's Mouth which ſnarls. 5. *Riſus Sardonicus*, which is when the *Muſculus Latus* of the Mouth is convulſed or contracted on both ſides, whereby the Patient looks like one laughing. 6. *Triſmos, vel Tryſmos*, called alſo *Stridor*, which is a Convulſion of the Muſcles of the Temples and Jaw-bones, by which a Concuſſion or gnaſhing of the Teeth is made. 7. Φυσώδης, *Phuſodes*, That which proceeds from Inflation or Vapors diſtending the Muſcles, in the Calf of the Leg, Feet, Toes, Arms, Hands, Fingers, and is commonly called the *Cramp*. There are alſo Convulſions of ſeveral other particular Parts, as of the Skin of the Forehead, Neck, Eye, Tongue, Gullet (in which laſt the Patient cannot ſwallow) Jaws, and Parts under the Chin, ſome of which continue not long, but with Frictions and Heat go away; and ſome have their Legs, Arms, or Fingers, ſo ſtrongly contracted, that all the Strength of By-ſtanders is ſcarcely enough to bring them to their due Poſture again, before the Fit is over.

III. As to the Parts afflicted, the *Ancients* thought the Brain to be primarily affected; *Sylvius* the *Cerebrum* and *Cerebellum*, with the beginning of the Roots of the *Medulla Spinalis*: *Some* the Tendons; *others* the *Caro Fibroſa*; but the greateſt part, the Muſcles and Nerves; and *ſome* the Animal Spirits, as being the Inſtrument of Motion: Without doubt the Muſcles, being full of nervous Fibres, are Inſtruments of Motion both voluntary and involuntary; for *Helmont* affirms, that the Muſcles have two Motions, one in which they obey the Will, another when they act by their own force againſt the Will; and when their nervous Fibres are prickt or hurt, Convulſions many times follow; alſo after Wounds of the Nerves, Bitings of Vipers, and other poiſonous Creatures, from whence we conclude, that the Nerves and their Fibres are the Subject of Convulſive Contractions; for as they have the quickeſt Senſe, ſo they firſt feel the Irritation before the other Parts, and at the ſame time put the Animal Spirits they contain into a violent Motion, by which a depraved Motion and painful Senſe ſucceed: And by Nerves here, we mean incluſively their Fibrous, Tendinous, and Membranous Productions, repleat with Animal Spirits; all which after a ſtrong Irritation, are ſpaſmodically contracted, and ſo draw together the whole Muſcle: And this Convulſive Motion of the Muſcles, may be ſeen in Cattle newly kill'd whilſt hot; for they tremble throughout the Body, and are variouſly mov'd up and down (tho' without Blood) by the Animal Spirits yet remaining in them.

IV. The Signs by which this Diſeaſe is known, are very obvious: It is accompanied with Pain, which much decays the Strength, eſpecially if it continues long; the Part affected alſo ſo ſtrongly inclines to its Ori-

Original, thro' the Mediation of the Tendons, Nerves, Muscles, Fibres, and Animal Spirits, against the Consent of the Will, that it is with Difficulty reduced to its former Posture; and whilst all the Parts subject to the Head are convuls'd, it happens besides this Attraction, that the Body either cannot be turn'd at all; or else, that it is either drawn forwards, that the Chin is sometimes join'd to the Breast, or so distorted backwards, that the Head is forceably drawn down upon the Shoulder-blades Sometimes the Head is forceably shaken to and fro, the Face growing very red and full of Pain: Sometimes the Eyes when distorted shed Tears, and the Sick can scarcely open his Mouth: The Mouth is also sometimes drawn awry: The Muscles under the Chin are sometimes contracted with a Vehemency of Pain: Sometimes the Back, Cheek-bones, Hands and Legs are stiff, and cannot be stretched out. When the Disease is inveterate, and has gotten a deep Root, the Patient has oftentimes such an Extremity of Pain, that he cries out with Vehemency, and acts almost the Part of a Mad-man.

V. The Causes of this Disease seem to be excellently hinted at by *Paracelsus*; as 1. That it may be caused by some Hurt, Wound, Blow, Bruise, Fall, Nerves shrunk, Apostem not well cured. 2. From the Stone and Gravel in the Reins, Ureters and Bladder. 3. From the Colick caused by the Sharpness of Choler yellow or black, pricking the Membranes so as to excite a Convulsion. 4. From vehement Anger, or other violent Passions of the Mind, as Fear, Joy, *&c.* 5. From Wine, Brandy, or other hot Spirits drank to an Excess. 6. From a Mercurial Spirit, impregnated or joined with an acid Salt, which he holds to be a principal Cause; and this has been often seen to happen to such who upon their first taking of Tobacco, have immediately fallen into a Paroxysm, sometimes almost beyond Relief. To the aforegoing Causes of *Paracelsus*, we may add these few following, *viz.* 7. From the pricking of a Nerve or Tendon. 8 From the Bitings of poisonous Creatures, as Vipers, Rattle-snakes, mad Dogs, and other venomous Beasts. 9. From a Wound made with a poisonous Arrow, Sword, Knife, Bullet, or other Weapon. 10. From Oils of Sulphur or Vitriol, Spirits of Nitre or Salt, Oil of Tobacco, or other the like violent things injected into the Veins, which excite Convulsions to that Degree as to become mortal. 11. From sharp Poisons taken into the Body, as Corrosive sublimate, red Precipitate in quantity, Oils of Sulphur, Vitriol or Salt, Spirit of Nitre or Arsenick, Oil of Tobacco, white Arsenick in Substance, with many other things of like Nature; which penetrating the Tunicles of the Stomach excite mortal Convulsions. 12. From the too vehement Irritation of violent Vomits and Purges, which excite sometimes strong Convulsions by reason of their violent Operation beyond the Strength of Nature; and sometimes such as are mortal. 13. From acid Saline Vapours arising from the Hypochonders and

and Womb, which sometimes cause vehement Paroxysms. 14. From poisonous Vapors or Fumes arising from Antimony, Arsenick, Mercury, Nitre, *&c.* received up into the Head by the Mouth or Nostrils, *&c.*

VI. Without doubt Convulsions, whether general or particular, proceed immediately from the Fury and Discomposure of the Animal Spirits, but in somewhat a less degree than in an Epilepsy: For as all Motion comes principally from the Spirits, thro' the help of the motive Fibres; so when ever any part, and those sensible Fibres are affected with Pain, thro' their inordinate Vibration, the Spirits in their own Defence are excited to a kind of Violence, and so stir up spasmodick Paroxysms. For the Conduits of the Muscles being obstructed, the Humours stop there, which hindering the Spirits from entering in, they violently rush into the Fibres, near to, or about the Obstruction, and by that violent and irregular Motion twitch or pull the Nerves: The principal or first Cause of a Convulsion sometimes lies in the Brain, but very often in the Member it self, and not in the Brain, where the Animal Spirits, by impetuously running into the nervous Fibres, they contract them, and the Muscles by swelling are shortned, which causes a hardness, with a vehement Pain; and this shrinking up of the Muscles with vehement Pain, cause by the violent Influx of the Animal Spirits into the nervous Fibres and Parts adjacent, is that which is called a Spasm or Convulsion. Thus Poisons, strong Purges, and violent Antimonial Vomits, (some of which are as bad as Poison) by their sharp Particles pricking the nervous Fibres of the Stomach, and other *Viscera*, cause them to be drawn up together, which many times cause universal Convulsions even of the whole Body; and therefore it is, that violent Vomits are said to be the Precursors of a Convulsion to ensue. Acrimonious and vehemently acid Juices in the Stomach, by pricking the nervous Fibres, excite universal Convulsions; but these are a more fixed and grosser Acid, mixed with something moderately viscid; for if it was a volatile Acid, it would immediately ascend and penetrate the Pores of the Brain, and so produce an Epilepsy, rather than a Convulsion.

VII. As to the Prognosticks, we have some few Observations, 1. That such who are affected with a *Tetanos*, commonly die in four Days time; if they pass those well, they recover, as *Hyppocrates* says in his Aphorisms. 2. Convulsions are mortal, when the Patient by being tired out with frequent Contortions, becomes distracted and speechless, is spent and affected with great and cold Sweats, throwing out what he drinks by his Nostrils. 3. So also, if a continual Fever is present, with Distortions of the Eyes, Eyebrows, Nose and Lips. 4. It is mortal also, if the Morbifick Matter is transferr'd to the Brain; or an Apoplexy, Epilepsy, or Lethargy supervenes, with total loss of Strength. 5 A Convulsion caused by a Wound, is many times mortal, according

to

to the place and quality of the Wound, and Instrument it was made with, as being poisoned or not. 6. Convulsions are dangerous, which are caused by an Hypercatharsis, or vehement Purging, with a Profusion of Blood and great Weakness; so also, if it is caused by *Hellebore*, or other strong Vomits, chiefly such as are Antimonial. 7. Convulsions proceeding from burning and malignant Fevers, are hard to cure: It is better a Fever should follow a Convulsion, than a Convulsion a Fever; because a Fever many times cures Convulsions, by causing the Morbifick Matter to perspire.

VIII. Let the Patient be placed in a temperate, or rather warm Air, avoiding Cold and the North-wind, because Cold, as *Hippocrates* has observed, is apt to cause Convulsions: Let his Food be *Panada*, Ptisan, Poch'd Eggs, Chickens, Lamb, Veal, Fish of gravelly Places, Rice, and other Meats of good Juice, and rather roast than boiled: Let his Spices be Aromatick, Cephalicks and Neuroticks, avoiding acid, sharp, salt, and briny Sauces. Let him eat moderately, that he may the better digest what he eats; for eating more than can be digested, it is apt to turn to a Viscosity, and so to breed nervous Obstructions. Let his Drink be fine clear Ale, or a generous sort of Wine, in which Aromaticks, Cephalicks, and Neuroticks have been infused, and let him drink measurably, or rather sparingly, lest the Fumes of the Liquor provoke the Animal Spirits. Let him rest much, and avoid immoderate Motion, lest it causes an Explosion of the Animal Powers; but Frictions of the Vertebræ, and other Parts, are allow'd. Let Sleeping and Watching be moderate: for too much of either are prejudicial. Let the Excrements be duly evacuated; and if the Body is costive, let it be moved by a Clyster. If the Flux by Stool is immoderate, or accidentally there is an Hypercatharsis, it is to be stopt by spirituous things given both by Mouth and Anus. Excessive Sweating, and too much use of *Venus* is evil; for they both put the Spirits upon irregular Motions. Let the Mind also be always easy, pleasant and chearful; for Perturbations trouble the Spirits, and increase the Disease; and among the rest, Anger and Fear, as they many times cause unusual Disorders, so sometimes they so affect the Animal Spirits as to create Convulsions, even where they could be least suspected.

IX. As to the Cure, Authors first prescribe Purgers, as the *Potio communis Purgativa*, or the *Pulvis Catharticus*, which is an excellent Medicine; so also our *Family Pills*, or our *Cathartick Laudanum*, which may be given from ten Grains to a Scruple or half a Dram; the Preparation of which you may see in our *Ars Chirurgica*, *Lib.* 1. *Cap.* 70. *Sect.* 7. or rather a Cathartick, which enters with its whole Substance into the Blood, such as the *Sal Mirabile*, because the Root of the Disease for the most part lies in the Blood and Juices. But they say withal, that before purging Medicaments are given, a Preparation of the Humors ought to precede;

ceed; which can only be done in this case, by the Exhibition of Spirituous and Neurotick Medicaments, for that this Disease proceeds from a Perturbation and Explosion of the Animal Spirits, in the Blood and Humours, whose ill Qualities should be corrected by Dulcid and Spirituous Medicaments; after which, all other Operations will succeed the better.

X. And indeed so far are the Chymical Practisers in the right, to give those things first, which assuage the Fury of the *Archæus*, and remove malignity from the Spirits; which according to *Helmont*, is best performed by *Opiates*, with other Volatile Things. This is commended: *Take simple Angelica-water 4 ounces, pure Thebian Opium, 10 grains; mix, dissolve, and extract the aqueous Tincture; decant the pure and clear, and add to it, rectify'd Spirit of Wine, 3 ounces, Volatile Spirit of Blood, or of Hartshorn, or of Wood-soot, half an ounce, Tincture of Castor, Tincture of Amber, of each 2 drams; mix them for 6 or 8 Doses*, to be given Morning and Night in any proper Vehicle, as the Physician shall advise. And outwardly to the Parts affected, this may be apply'd: *Take rectified Spirit of Scurvy-grass, or rather Tincture of Salt of Tartar, an ounce, Choice Thebian Opium, 2 drams, Camphire, half a dram, Oil of Nutmegs Chymical, a scruple; mix and dissolve*, and then apply it *Paræus* applies, *Emplastrum Diachalciteos, melted and mixed with Oil and Vinegar*; because this resolves and softens the contracted Nerves, Muscles, *&c.* and he commends gentle Rowling or Bandage, because it presses the distended Muscles, and hinders them from a hurtful Distension of the Fibres, which sometimes causes them to break.

XI. And if the Pain will not abate with these things, the same *Paræus* advises to *Oil of Turpentine mixt with Spirit of Wine*, to be used warm; and if this will not do, even to the Cutting of the Nerve, or Tendon, or Membrane; but this is when the Convulsion comes from the Pricking of a Nerve or Tendon; or from an Ulcer, or a Fistula, or such other-like Cause: And Inwardly Sudorificks are given, consisting of a Volatile Spirit, and Volatile Salt; such as *Spirit of Tartar, Treacle-water without the Acids, Spirit of Wood-soot, Spirit of Ants or Hog-Lice, or of Mans or Harts Skull, or Horns, or Blood.*

XII. *If the Convulsion comes from Blows or Wounds of the Head, or a Fracture of the Cranium*, in which some Fragments may fall upon, or prick the Meninges of the Brain; In this case, these little Bits are to be taken out, and if there be no other way to do it, as with the *Levatory, Forceps*, &c. the *Trepan* must be used, and when the Wound is cleared, it is to be drest with *Oil of Turpentine mixt with Spirit of Wine*, by pouring this Mixture into it: But if the Convulsion comes from a Burn, the same *Paræus* advises to use *Oil Of Nuts*, or of *Rape-seed* by Expression: And among the General Remedies, *Sulphureous Baths*, because they are able to penetrate deepest into the Parts affected; and in defect of which, he advises to a Bath made of *Spring-water, in which Salt of Tartar well calcin'd with*

to the place and quality of the Wound, and Instrument it was made with, as being poisoned or not. 6. Convulsions are dangerous, which are caused by an Hypercatharsis, or vehement Purging, with a Profusion of Blood and great Weakness; so also, if it is caused by *Hellebore*, or other strong Vomits, chiefly such as are Antimonial. 7. Convulsions proceeding from burning and malignant Fevers, are hard to cure: It is better a Fever should follow a Convulsion, than a Convulsion a Fever; because a Fever many times cures Convulsions, by causing the Morbifick Matter to perspire.

VIII. Let the Patient be placed in a temperate, or rather warm Air, avoiding Cold and the North-wind, because Cold, as *Hippocrates* has observed, is apt to cause Convulsions: Let his Food be *Panada*, Ptisan, Poch'd Eggs, Chickens, Lamb, Veal, Fish of gravelly Places, Rice, and other Meats of good Juice, and rather roast than boiled: Let his Spices be Aromatick, Cephalicks and Neuroticks, avoiding acid, sharp, salt, and briny Sauces. Let him eat moderately, that he may the better digest what he eats; for eating more than can be digested, it is apt to turn to a Viscosity, and so to breed nervous Obstructions. Let his Drink be fine clear Ale, or a generous sort of Wine, in which Aromaticks, Cephalicks, and Neuroticks have been infused, and let him drink measurably, or rather sparingly, lest the Fumes of the Liquor provoke the Animal Spirits. Let him rest much, and avoid immoderate Motion, lest it causes an Explosion of the Animal Powers; but Frictions of the Vertebræ, and other Parts, are allow'd. Let Sleeping and Watching be moderate: for too much of either are prejudicial. Let the Excrements be duly evacuated; and if the Body is costive, let it be moved by a Clyster. If the Flux by Stool is immoderate, or accidentally there is an Hypercatharsis, it is to be stopt by spirituous things given both by Mouth and Anus. Excessive Sweating, and too much use of *Venus* is evil; for they both put the Spirits upon irregular Motions. Let the Mind also be always easy, pleasant and chearful; for Perturbations trouble the Spirits, and increase the Disease; and among the rest, Anger and Fear, as they many times cause unusual Disorders, so sometimes they so affect the Animal Spirits as to create Convulsions, even where they could be least suspected.

IX. As to the Cure, Authors first prescribe Purgers, as the *Potio communis Purgativa*, or the *Pulvis Catharticus*, which is an excellent Medicine; so also our *Family Pills*, or our *Cathartick Laudanum*, which may be given from ten Grains to a Scruple or half a Dram; the Preparation of which you may see in our *Ars Chirurgica*, *Lib.* 1. *Cap.* 70. *Sect.* 7. or rather a Cathartick, which enters with its whole Substance into the Blood, such as the *Sal Mirabile*, because the Root of the Disease for the most part lies in the Blood and Juices. But they say withal, that before purging Medicaments are given, a Preparation of the Humors ought to pre-

ceed;

ceed; which can only be done in this case, by the Exhibition of Spirituous and Neurotick Medicaments, for that this Disease proceeds from a Perturbation and Explosion of the Animal Spirits, in the Blood and Humours, whose ill Qualities should be corrected by Dulcid and Spirituous Medicaments; after which, all other Operations will succeed the better.

X. And indeed so far are the Chymical Practisers in the right, to give those things first, which assuage the Fury of the *Archæus*, and remove malignity from the Spirits; which according to *Helmont*, is best performed by *Opiates*, with other Volatile Things. This is commended: *Take simple Angelica-water 4 ounces, pure Thebian Opium, 10 grains; mix, dissolve, and extract the aqueous Tincture; decant the pure and clear, and add to it, rectify'd Spirit of Wine, 3 ounces, Volatile Spirit of Blood, or of Hartshorn, or of Wood-soot, half an ounce, Tincture of Castor, Tincture of Amber, of each 2 drams; mix them for 6 or 8 Doses*, to be given Morning and Night in any proper Vehicle, as the Physician shall advise. And outwardly to the Parts affected, this may be apply'd: *Take rectified Spirit of Scurvy-grass, or rather Tincture of Salt of Tartar, an ounce, Choice Thebian Opium, 2 drams, Camphire, half a dram, Oil of Nutmegs Chymical, a scruple; mix and dissolve*, and then apply it *Paræus* applies, *Emplastrum Diachalciteos, melted and mixed with Oil and Vinegar*; because this resolves and softens the contracted Nerves, Muscles, &c. and he commends gentle Rowling or Bandage, because it presses the distended Muscles, and hinders them from a hurtful Distension of the Fibres, which sometimes causes them to break.

XI. And if the Pain will not abate with these things, the same *Paræus* advises to *Oil of Turpentine mixt with Spirit of Wine*, to be used warm; and if this will not do, even to the Cutting of the Nerve, or Tendon, or Membrane; but this is when the Convulsion comes from the Pricking of a Nerve or Tendon; or from an Ulcer, or a Fistula, or such other-like Cause: And Inwardly Sudorificks are given, consisting of a Volatile Spirit, and Volatile Salt; such as *Spirit of Tartar, Treacle-water without the Acids, Spirit of Wood-soot, Spirit of Ants or Hog-Lice, or of Mans or Harts Skull, or Horns, or Blood.*

XII. *If the Convulsion comes from Blows or Wounds of the Head, or a Fracture of the Cranium*, in which some Fragments may fall upon, or prick the Meninges of the Brain; In this case, these little Bits are to be taken out, and if there be no other way to do it, as with the *Levatory, Forceps*, &c. the *Trepan* must be used, and when the Wound is cleared, it is to be dress with *Oil of Turpentine mixt with Spirit of Wine*, by pouring this Mixture into it: But if the Convulsion comes from a Burn, the same *Paræus* advises to use *Oil Of Nuts*, or of *Rape-seed* by Expression: And among the General Remedies, *Sulphureous Baths*, because they are able to penetrate deepest into the Parts affected; and in defect of which, he advises to a Bath made of *Spring-water, in which Salt of Tartar well calcin'd with*

with Sulphur, is dissolved by Boiling. After bathing, he advises to anoint with *Mans Grease, Fat of Eels, and proper Oils*, that by this means the Acrimony of the *Lixivial Sal* and *Acid Spirit*, and the causes of the *Pain* and *Convulsion* may be abated, or destroyed: To which add, *Fomentations*, and *Cataplasms* of *Heating* and *Aromatick*, *Plants*, *Gums*, &c.

XIII. In a *Spasmus Cynicus*, *Powers of Amber*, *of Angelica*, *of Lavender*, *of Limons*, *of Oranges*, *of Nutmegs*, *of Rosemary*, *of Sage*, *of Sassafras*, *of Turpentine*, *and of Virtues*, are of incomparable use for this Cure; inwardly to be given to two Drams in any fit Vehicle, and outwardly to be applied to the Part; and that any of them may be used alone, or several of them conjunctively together. I have several times cured a Cramp in the Calves of the Legs, or under the Chin, by the use of *Powers of Amber* alone, being bathed upon the Places affected; and this in some Persons who had been many Years afflicted with the same. And the like Cure I have performed with the Chymical *Oils of Lavender*, *Limons*, *Oranges and Turpentine*, singly used, being anointed some few times upon the affected Parts.

XIV. *If the Convulsion comes from the biting of Vipers, Rattle-Snakes, or of any other poysonous Serpent, or Venomous Creature*, the Wound must be dilated, and a Vesicatory must be applied to the Part: After which, for some Days, *Venice-Treacle, or Mithridate, or our New London Treacle, or our Theriaca, or Antidote, dissolved in Spirit of Wine*, must be applied to the Wound. If it proceeds from the Pricking of a *Tendon* or a *Nerve*, then the Wound must be enlarged, and *Oil of Turpentine* must be dropt into it; and if the Case is desperate, the *Nerve* or *Tendon* must be absolutely cut asunder, or quite cut off; and then *Aromatick Chymical Oils*, as of *Amber*, *Spike*, *Turpentine*, &c. which assuage Convulsions, are to be applied, more-especially if they be fortified with Volatile Salts, Oils, Fats, and Grease of Animals, extracted by Boiling or Roasting, &c. and Gross Vegetable Oils, Liniments, or Ointments made by Insolation or Coction, are to be avoided, not for their Filthiness only, but because they fill and obstruct the Pores of the Skin, and do very little good; and in their Places Chymical, Volatile Oils, and Spirituous Substances, are to be chosen and used.

XV. *Frictions are of mighty use in the Cure of Convulsions*, if at the same this following Composition be applied, and rubbed in: *Take choice Oil of Mace or Nutmegs by Expression, two ounces, Chymical Oils of Lavender, Limons, Oranges, and Pennyroyal, of each a dram; mix them.* Or this: *Take Balsam of Peru, two ounces; Chymical Oils of Angelica, sweet Marjoram, Sassafras and Savin, of each a dram; mix them.* Or this: *Take choice Oil of Mace or Nutmegs by Expression, Balsam of Peru, of each an ounce; Chymical Oils of Angelica, Pennyroyal, Rosemary and Savin, of each a dram; mix them.* Or this: *Take Balsams of Peru, and Tolu, of each an ounce; Oil of Mace or Nutmegs by Expression, half an ounce; Chymical Oils of Angelica, sweet Marjoram,*

Marjoram, Pennyroyal and Savin, of each a dram; Spirit of Hartshorn, 2 drams; mix them. With any of these Mixtures, the Friction may be performed upon the Spine, and other Parts affected, twice a Day: And Inwardly, 20, 30, or 40 Drops may be given Morning and Night, in any convenient Vehicle, the Drops being first well mixed with a little fine White-Sugar.

XVI. Authors commend this: *Take choice Oil of Nutmegs by Expression, an ounce; Venice-Treacle, 2 drams; Saffron in Pouder, a scruple; Chymical Oils of Marjoram and Cloves, of each half a scruple; mix them,* and therewith anoint the *Neck* and *Spina Dorsi.* In a Flatulent Convulsion, bathe with this: *Take Powers of Caraways, of Cloves, of Juniper and Nutmegs, of each an ounce; Spirit of Hartshorn, 2 drams, Spirit of Goats-Blood, Tincture of Castor, of each one dram; mix them.* Outwardly, bathe the *Spina Dorsi*, Nape of the Neck, and other Parts affected, twice a Day; and inwardly, take it from a Dram to two Drams, or more, Morning and Night, in *Angelica-water.*

XVII. *If the Disease proceeds from the Womb,* you may give *Spiritus Cornu Cervi succinatus, & Terebinthuatus,* which will very rarely go without their Success: And in this Case, *Hystericks* are always to be mixed with *Antispasmodicks*; and if the Stomach be full at the same time, *Emeticks* may safely be given.

XVIII. *If there is a Convulsion of the Stomach after the eating of Poysonous Meats,* as Mushrooms, and such other-like things. Vomits are then very proper, and indeed first to be given, that the Matter causing the Convulsion may be evacuated: But if by reason of what is eaten, a Vomiting come of it self, then you are to give *Powers of Amber* to 2 or 3 Drams in a Glass of *Canary*; or *Tincture of Castor* from 2 Drams to half an Ounce: And at Bed-time you may give this Pouder: *Take Crabs-Eyes levigated, Man's Skull levigated. Castor in Pouder, Cinnabar levigated, of each a scruple; Winter Cherries in fine Pouder, 12 Grains, Camphire 8 grains, Thebian Opium in fine Pouder, 1 grain; mix them for a Dose,* which let be repeated every Night so long as the Physician shall think convenient.

XIX. Some Physicians in all Contractions of the Nerves, administer *Opiates*; because *Opium* checks the Impetuosity of the Spirits, giving Rest and Ease, as is manifest by large Experience: And in this Case you may safely give *Our Laudanum Volatile, New London-Treacle, Our Antidote, or Eclegma sudorificum*: Or if the Patient cannot take any of those things, you may give the *Laudanum liquidum Authoris in lib. 1. cap. 1. sect. 14*: Or *Our Liquid Laudanum* made with an Acid; because these things, more or less, stop the violent Motion of the Animal Spirits, and correct the Malignity.

XX. *If the Convulsion arises from a Scorbutick Malignity,* you must always mix *Antiscorbuticks* with your *Antispha smodicks.* Thus *Take Powers of Angelica, Lavender, Limons, Oranges and Savin, of each 2 drams: Spirit of Goats-blood, or of Hartshorn, 3 drams: Spirit of Scurvygrass and of Mu-*

ſtard-ſeed, of each 4 drams; mix them for 7 or 8 Doſes, to be given in ſome proper Vehicle. Or this: *Take Powers of Amber and Savin, of each 4 drams: Tincture of Caſtor, and our Spiritus Coſmeticus, of each 4 drams: Volatile Tartariz'd, Spirit of Sal Armoniack, 2 drams: Spirit of Garden-Creſſes, and of Scurvygraſs, of each 3 drams; mix them for 8 or 10 Doſes*, to be given in a Spirituous Water to be diſtilled from Tanſie.

XXI. *When Convulſions are accompany'd with a Tremor*, this following is of extraordinary uſe: *Take Powers of Lavender and Limons, of each 4 drams; Powers of Sage, 2 drams; Tincture of Caſtor made with Tincture of Salt of Tartar, or Powers of Angelica, a dram and half; mix them, doſe from 20 to 40 drops*, more or leſs in diſtilled Water of Tanſie. Or this: *Take Spirit of Saffron, 4 drams; Spirit of Sage 3 drams; Tincture of Caſtor ut Supra, Volatile Spirit of Ox-Horns, of each 2 drams; Tincture of Cloves drawn with Tincture of Salt of Tartar, 1 dram; mix them*, Doſe 30 or 40 Drops or more, 2, 3, or 4 times a Day in a Glaſs of Angelica-water. Or this: *Take Native Cinnabar levigated, 4 drams; Pouder of Amber, 3 drams; Crabs-claws levigated, 2 drams; Lac Sulphuris, 1 dram; Cinnabar of Antimony, half a dram; Camphir in ſubtil Powder, 15 grains; Thebian Opium finely poudred, 10 grains; mix them for 10 or 12 doſes*, to be given Morning and Night in any proper Vehicle, encreaſing the Doſe 3 Grains, for three or four Days.

XXII. The following Medicaments are accounted as Specificks in the Curing of Convulſions, viz. *Spirit, Oil, and Powers of choice Engliſh Saffron; Saffron in Tincture, or in Subſtance*, made into a Pouder; *Spirit, Oil, and Powers of Lavender; Spirit, Oil, Powers and Elixir of Angelica, Mint, Pennyroyal, Roſemary, Sage, Saſſafras and Savin; Spirit, Oil, and Powers of Juniper and Amber; Spirit, Oil, Powers and Elixir of Garden-Tanſie; Volatile Spirits and Salts of Blood of moſt kinds of Animals; as alſo Volatile Salts and Spirits of Skulls, Horns, Hoofs, and Hair of Animals*: All or any of which given in a fit Doſe, and in a proper Vehicle, either ſingly by themſelves, or conjunctly in a due Mixture, as the prudent Phyſician ſhall adviſe, twice or thrice a Day, will ſcarcely ever go without their deſired Effects. To theſe things you may add, *Sal Volatile Oleoſum Cinnabar Native and of Antimony; Bezoarticum Minerale, Joviale, Lunare, and Solare*, given in fit Doſes, and in a proper Vehicle; as in *Mithridate*, or *Venice-Treacle*, or in *Juice*, or *Confection of Alkermes*; or in *Spirit of Angelica, Garden-Tanſie*, or *Savin*, made grateful with *Syrup of Citron-peels*. Alſo outwardly to anoint with *Oil of Euphorbium*, the *Spina Dorſi*, and the Parts themſelves immediately Convulſed.

CHAP.

CHAP. IV. *Of a Lethargy and Carus.*

Salmon.] THese being usual Diseases, and Our Author having forgotten them, or at least pretermitted them in his *Processus*; we thought good to add a Chapter of them in this place, they being also Nervous Distempers, and having so much Relation to the Head and Brain.

I. The first of these Maladies is called in Greek Ληθαργία, καὶ Λήθαργος, ἀπὸ τῆς λήθης, *i. e.* ab oblivione; *et* ἀργὸς, *otiosus, iners*; in Latin, *Lethargia Plinio*, and *Lethargus Celso*; and in English, the Lethargy: It is called by some *Veternus*, and by others *Sopor Gravis*: It is a drowsie Disease, which causes the principal Faculties to cease, but more especially the Memory, with a Necessity of Sleeping, and a continued lingring Fever, so that there seems to be a perfect Oblivion, and sometimes therewith a kind of Delirium.

II. The other Distemper is called in Greek Κάρος; in Latin *Carus*. *Veterni species est, altusque sopor, congenerque affectus* τῷ λήθαργου, *et inexpugnabilis penè dormiendi necessitas*; in English also *Carus*, or dead Sleep. It is an indispensible Necessity of Sleeping, but without a Fever, never opening their Eyes, nor speaking, or stirring, without Sense or Understanding, but lying as if they were dead, saving that they draw their Breath.

III. Now a *Lethargy* differs from a *Carus* in this, That a *Lethargy* is attended with a Fever, and the Sick will open his Eyes at loud Bawling or making a great Noise, and make some impertinent or foolish Answer when spoke to; but a *Carus* is always without a Fever, nor can they be made to open their Eyes, answer or stir, tho' never so much be done to them; but they continually lye like Stocks or Stones, without the least Sense or Understanding: And herein a *Carus* differs from an *Apoplexy*, for that in a *Carus* there is a free Respiration; whereas in an *Apoplexy*, there is scarcely any, or not without much difficulty. A *Lethargy* and a *Carus* being then so much of a kind, are both of them cured almost the same way; for which reason, we thought good to treat of them both in one Chapter.

IV. *The Ancients thought the Parts affected* to be the Substance of the Brain, and its hinder Parts, but not its Ventricles; because of the Functions of the Brain which are hurt, the *Memory* and *Reason* are chief, which are the particular Offices of the *Cerebellum*, to which may be added the Animal Spirits. But *Sylvius* thinks not the Brain to be the affected Part, but rather the Vessels which carry the Blood: For (says he) tho' the Head in a *Lethargy* is heavy, yet that may proceed from the Humors which are carried with the Blood to the Brain; so that we need not have recourse to a peculiar and primary Fault of that Part. And then from this Conception of *Sylvius*, we may

bring in the *Stomach*, becauſe the Root of the Matter is lodged there, and that is the Place where thoſe evil Humors are originally bred. From what has been ſaid, the Pores and Paſſages of the *Cerebrum* and *Cerebellum*, thro' which the Animal Spirits move, to perform their Duties, may be eſtimated to be the primary Subject; and the *Medullar* Part of the Brain to be that which is chiefly concerned; becauſe this is rather the Concentration of the Spirits, than the Parts where they are bred; including alſo the *Cortex Cerebri*, which diſpoſes the generated Animal Spirits to the Nerves: And as it is ſuppoſed to be the Seat of *Reminiſcencie* and *Dormiſcencie*, ſo without doubt it cannot but ſhare with the other Parts affected.

V. *The Signs by which theſe Diſeaſes are known*, are in part declared in the Deſcription. There is an inſuperable Inclination to Sleep in the firſt of theſe Diſeaſes, and a moſt deep or profound Sleep, like as it were, a dead Sleep in the latter; the firſt with a Fever, and great Oblivion, ſo great ſometimes that the diſtempered Perſon cannot remember his own Name; and ſometimes it is alſo with a *Delirium*, but ſometimes without: But this *Delirium*, which is ſaid to go along with this Malady, can hardly be ſaid to be a true *Delirium*, but rather a kind of *Dotage*; for the impertinent and fooliſh Replys which the Sick make, are but like thoſe of a drowſie Perſon, who being ſpoken to when between ſleeping and waking, or before he is throughly awake, (in whom the Senſe of the Words are ſcarcely carried to the Brain; or if it be, it is but obſcurely and brokenly, whereby are raiſed confuſed Thoughts and Perceptions,) always, or for the moſt part makes abſurd or fooliſh Anſwers, or ſpeaks Words which are nothing to the purpoſe: And this Impertinence and Folly is the ſame in this Diſtemper; ſo that it need not be aſcrib'd to the Malignity in the Brain, but to the Incogitancy of the Soul, whoſe Animal Faculties are now wonderfully clouded. The Lethargick Perſon by reaſon of this vehement Drowſineſs, and great Heavineſs throughout the whole Body, but chiefly the Head, if asked any Queſtion, tho' with great Clamour and Noiſe, makes very ſlow Replies, altho' very much preſt to it; and for the moſt part they lie with their Eyes cloſed, but now and then open them, if you call loud upon them; and then they ſhut them again, and return to their former Sleep; and ſometimes to ſuch a Profoundity or Degree, that if you pull them by the Hair, or nip or pinch them, their Stupifaction will be ſo great, that it will not hurt them, and it may be ſcarcely feel it; and the reaſon is, becauſe the Operations of all their Senſes are ſuſpended, for the time; whence comes the great Oblivion, or hurt of the Memory, that the Patient can call nothing paſt to mind, but like a Mad-man forgets every thing; ſo that ſometimes calling to make Water, they ſhall preſently forget what they are about to do; and if they be turned upon their Back or Sides, they

they will presently turn again to their former Postures: They Yawn often, and have a slow, trembling, and languishing Pulse.

VI. *But a Carus is always without a Fever*, and the Sleep is so profound, that it is like a dead-sleep, the Sick seeming only to breathe. And if thro' great Violence the Patient is awaked, yet he is neither sensible, nor gives any Answer when spoken to, which is a peculiar Signal of this Distemper: And if you should nip, or pinch, or prick him, he will only shew some small Sign of Sensation, by a little moving, or contracting of the Part; but you cannot for all that, do what you can, rouse him up. And indeed, for the most part, all the External Senses become in the end stupified; for which reason, neither can the Internal Senses perform any of their Duties, but in respect both of the External and Internal, the Sick lies as if he was dead, excepting that Respiration or Breathing remains intire. From what has been said, it seems that a Carus is a Middle-Distemper, between an Apoplexy, and a Lethargy or total Palsie.

VII. The Causes remote may be from Drunkenness and Gluttony, whence comes Corruption and Putrifaction: Also from some Narcotick Salt or Sulphur; which by its Viscosity may tie up the Spirits, or by its preternatural Acidity coagulate; or by its simple narcotick Quality stupify them, thereby hindring them in their Motions, and obstructing their Passages to the Organs of the Senses: And this may also be accomplished by either eating or smelling to *Opiates* or *Narcoticks* very much and often, or receiving the Vapors, of some viscous, stinking or narcotick Sulphur, as Opium, Meconium, Poppies, deadly Night-shade, Henbane, Mandrake, and other like Things' which contain within their substance a stinking, viscous, narcotick Oil, abounding with a soporiferous Quality.

VIII. The proximate or near Cause may be from an aqueous putrid Matter, overspreading the external Parts of the Brain; or from narcotick Particles in the Blood, conveyed thither, by which the Motions of the Animal Spirits are hindred or altered; or from an acid and coagulating Serum or Lympha, sent in too great Quantities to the Brain; by whose too great Moistness and Coolness, a Viscidity is begotten, which hinders the Motion of the said Spirits; or a too great Quantity of cold viscid Phlegm, and narcotick Choler, mixt with the Mass of Blood. and transferr'd therewith to the Brain: By the first of which is caused the Stupidity or Sleepiness; and by the second, the lingring Fever in the Lethargy: So that the closing or obstructing the Pores of the Brain by any of the aforenamed ill affected Vapours or Juices, are the immediate causes of these Distempers; and the involving of the Animal Spirits in the same, by which they are oppress, and as it were Imprisoned, or Chained down, whereby they must necessarily desist from performing their Duty, more-especially, if their Passages are also obstructed, by which they pervade the whole Nervous System. But the princi-

pal immediate Cause is really in the Mass of Blood become Viscid, and in the Languid Spirits, so made by the Discrasy of the Blood, and some kind of extraneous narcotick Spirit, Vapor, or Fume: For if any Heterogeneous Matter in either of these, overflow, or overwhelm the Pores in the *Cortex* of the Brain; or if any narcotick Poyson or Vapour, by its Potency causes a Viscosity, and forces away the Animal Spirits, or extinguishes them, or dulls and lays them as it were asleep, it may easily cause these Diseases: For the Blood and Humours becoming Viscid, and thickned, come to a kind of Stagnation, and so cause Obstructions of the Passages by which the Animal Spirits should pass; with which they also mixing, are also made dull and almost motionless: So that the true cause of these Diseases may be taken from the *Viscidity of the Blood and Lympha*, the Obstructions of the Pores of the Brain caused thereby, and the narcotick dulness of the Animal Spirits. Whilst the Viscous Mass of Blood forces its way into the Brain, thro' the two *Carotides*, it leaves in its Passage a slimy Matter, thro' which the Animal Spirits passing, stick by the way, and so the Pores of the Brain are obstructed.

IX. As to the Prognosticks, it is to be noted in General, that these are acute Diseases: Of which *Hyppocrates* says, Lethargicks die in seven Days, but if they outlive that time, they recover. And *Celsus* says, That seeing this is an Acute Disease, it brings Death, if there is not present Help. It is pernicious if the Sick is overcome with a very great Drowsiness, and breathes slowly, or rattles. If a trembling come upon the Patient in these Diseases, it is a very evil and dangerous Sign or Symptom; so also a cold Sweat about the Head and Fore-head. It is very evil and dangerous if they come upon a Fever, or a continual Cholick, or some other previous Disease of the Head. It is more dangerous in old Persons than in young, because in Age the Spirits are not so vigorous, the Pores of the Brain are more subject to Obstructions, and being obstructed, are more difficult to be freed therefrom again. It is dangerous also if the Excrements of the Belly are many and thin, for it shews a great Obliquity of the Animal Spirits. But the Cure is more hopeful if it proceeds from Drunkenness or Gluttony, taking Tobacco, use of Narcoticks, a light Blow on the Head, or too much going in the Wet or Cold; or if Evacuations by Sweating or by Stool, whether Naturally, or by Art, give Relief, so also, if Blisters rise and run well; if the Sick Sneezes often, or their Nose or Eyes drop with Water, or there be any Abscess behind the Ears (which is in this Case Critical) or a Salivation falls upon the Patient, of a sudden, or unawares, without any Provocation by Medicaments.

X. As for the Diet of the Diseased, their Food ought to be sparing, rather too little than too much, easie of Digestion, and Broths made of Fowls, or of Chickens, Hens, Capons, Pullets, Snipes, and other Birds, because their Flesh abounds with

with a large proportion of Volatile Salts, which very much enriches the Broth, and it may be made with the Addition of Spices and Aromatick Herbs, towards the end of the Boiling. Their Meat is to be seasoned with hot Spices. And things Cold, Salt, Windy, Pulses, and Milkmeats are to be forborn. Their Drink may be a brisk small sort of Wine, Ptisan with Wine, and Wine mixed with a little Water; and sometimes our Seamens Vulgar Liquor, called Punch, may be of profitable use, being prudently used. It is thus made: Take choice Brandy, Spring-water, of each a Quart; Lime-Juice, or for want of it, Limon Juice, or Juice of Citrons, a Pint; Double-refin'd Sugar, a Pound; mix and dissolve; of which let the Sick drink now and then moderately, adding a little grated Nutmeg to it, as it is drunk: Coffee also drunk between whiles may also be good. The Air ought to be clean, hot, and dry, or artificially made so by burning Rosemary, Bays, Juniper-wood, Sassafras, *&c.* in their Chamber, avoiding that which is cold and moist. In their sleeping, they ought to be disturb'd as much as may be, by pulling, pricking, friction, rubbing, and holding Aromatick Fumes under their Noses; also Volatile Salts, and Spirits, and rubbing the Nostrils with Spirit of Hartshorn, Tincture of Castor, Powers of Amber, *&c.* If there is a Costiveness, it ought to be removed with Cathartick, Clysters and Suppositories, a retention of Urine, with Diureticks, *&c.* And being roused up from sleeping, let them be diverted as much as may be, with Company, Friends, Servants, Talk, and Interruption with Singing, Musick, Trumpets, *&c.* which may any ways seem to affect the Patient, provided it tends not to Sadness, Melancholy, *&c.*

XI. The Indications of Cure are, 1. To evacuate the redundant Flegm and Choler, or to carry off that vitious Acid, which has created the Viscosity in the Blood and Humours, which obstruct the Pores of the Brain, and dulls the Animal Spirits. 2. To alter the present Discrasy of the Blood, which give rise to the Viscosity. 3. To open the Pores of the Brain now obstructed, and give a free Passage to the Spirits. 4. To strengthen the Parts weakned, quicken the dull or clouded Spirits, excite them to their usual Vigour, and to encrease their Store or Stock.

XII. To answer the first Indication: If the Disease proceeded from Drunkenness or Gluttony, or the unseasonable or unreasonable use of Narcoticks, or the reception of Poison, then immediately give a Vomit, as the *Emeticum commune*, *Vinum Benedictum*, or *Tartar Emeticum*, observing the Rules in giving Emeticks: Otherwise, if it proceeds from other Causes, *Cathartick* which purge Flegm and Choler are to be given; an *Infusion of Mechoacan and Sena* is approv'd, or rather the *Tinctura aurea nova, in lib. 1. sect. 16.* or the *Pulvis Cathartic*, which may be repeated so often as the Physician shall advise. And if the Body is Costive, it ought to be opened with a *Suppository* made of *Roch-Alum*, or

other proper Matter; or else by a *Clyster* made of *Mutton-broth, with four ounces of the Infusion of Crocus Metallorum*, and to be repeated every Day, so long till the Patient has natural Ejections: But in the Administration of any of these things, the Prudent Physician ought to be consulted.

XIII. *The second Indication, is to alter the present Discrasy of the Blood:* That it may cease breeding that Viscidity, with which the Pores of the Brain, and Passages of the Animal Spirits are clogg'd, and also generate Spirits of a brisker and more lively Air. For this purpose, we commend *all sorts of Aromaticks*, as *Acorus*, *Calamus Aromaticus*, *Galangal*, *Cloves*, *Mace*, *Nutmegs*, *Cinnamon*, *Cassia lignea* *Ginger*, *Jamaica Pepper*, *Cubebs*, *Anacardium's*, *Winters Cinnamon*, *Leaves of Marjoram*, *Origanum*, *Rosemary*, *Sage*, *Savin*, *Bay-tree*, *Savory*, *Thime*, *Mother of Thime*, *Mint*, *Hyssop*, *Seed of Bastard-lovage*, *Annise*, *Carawaies*, *Nigella*, *Juniper-berries*, *&c.* which may be given either in Pouder, or in Tincture with *Spirit of Wine, or Tincture of Salt or Tartar*, which is much better; for that all *Aromaticks* cut gross Phlegm. *Sylvius* commends Acids, and among them he prefers *Oil of Sulphur per campanum* before all others, and next to it *the Spirit of Nitre*. *Paracelsus* says, that a Lethargy is a Mineral Distemper, not to be cured by Decoctions out of Apothecaries Shops, but by Minerals. A certain Man, (he says) after a Fever, fell into such a deep Sleep, that he was not sensible when prickt, nor could open his Eyes, nor speak a Word, but lay just as if he was dead, being in a *Lethargy*, (I should rather think a *Carus*) whom he cured with *Oil of Salt*, as likewise he did another with *Oil of Vitriol*. I know the *Volatile Spirit of Vitriol* to be an admirable thing in the Cure of these Diseases, of which I have had some Experience: But among Minerals, *Paracelsus* says, that *the Essence of Antimony* has a Specifick Virtue in rooting out the Cause of these Distempers, for that it mightily strengthens Nature; and this he also used in many other the most grievous Diseases of the Head.

XIV. Other Authors, and that with extraordinary Strength of Reason, (which I also confirm by Experience) commend the use of all sorts of *Volatile Salts*, prepared either from *Vegitables* or *Animals*, whether in *forma sicca*, or *Liquida*. The *Volatile Salts of Pease and Beans*, extracted as we have taught in *Our Doron Medicum, lib. 1. cap. 25. sect. 65, 66, 67*, and 68, is an approved Experiment, with which I have done some Cures in this Disease; so also the *Volatile Spirit and Salt of Wheat and Rye*, extracted as taught in *Sect. 63, and 64*, of the same Chapter. To these you may add, the *Volatile Spirits of Scurvy-grass, of Garden-cresses, Mustard-seed, Brook-lime, Rocket, Radish and Horse-Radish-roots*, as we have taught the Drawing of the same in the second Edition of *Our Pharm. Bateana, lib. 1. cap. 2. sect. 67.* which things are singular in their kind. The Volatile Salts extracted from Grain and Pulses, are not good only against Epidemick Diseases, Asthma's, Pleurisies, Quinsies, Inflammations of the Lungs, and other

Diseases

Diseases of the Thorax, Coagulations of the Humours, and Congelation of the Blood, but they give immediate Relief, and dissolve the Congelation, provided they be given before the Blood or Humours are Putrified, or turned into Corruption. The Volatile Salts in *forma sicca* may be given from gr. iiij ad x. or xij; *in forma Liquida*, from a Scruple to 2 Scruples, or from 20 to 30 or 40 Drops, in any proper Vehicle.

XV. The next things to be consider'd, are Volatile Animal Spirits and Salts, among which the *Tartaris'd Volatile Spirit and Salt of Sal Armoniack* are principal; but the *Volatile Spirit and Salt of Man's Blood* exceeds them all; next, the *Volatile Spirit and Salt of Humane Skulls*, then of the Skulls of other Animals; also *of Goats, Deers, and Ox Blood, Horns and Hoofs*. The *Spiritus Cornu Cervi Succinatus*, is by some celebrated almost to the Skies; the *Spirit of Castor*, and *its Tincture* are also of excellent use. These and other the like things being given Inwardly, dissolve all *Coagulums* of the Blood and Humours, resolve Viscosities, and admirably excite the Animal Spirits; and externally the Patient is to be made to smell often to them, for by their Subtilty and Volatility they immediately pierce thro' the whole *Genus Nervosum*, or *Nervous System*, at once, and as it were momentarily run thro' the whole Mass of Blood and Humours: But if the Disease proceeds from Poison or Narcoticks, things *Spirituous* and *Sulphurous*, seem more adviseable than Medicines which are Saline, because those things have a greater respect to the Impressions made by Narcotick Spirits, and are apter to agitate them, and put them in Motion.

XVI. *The third Indication is to open the Pores of the Brain, and to give a free Passage to the Spirits.* For this purpose we commend the *Volatile Salt of Amber*, given from gr. 10 to 20, in *Spirit of Black-Cherries*, or of *Lilies of the Valley*; next, the *Volatile Spirit of Salt and Wood-soot*, which are very admirable things, and seldom go without their desired Effects: The *Spirit* may be given from 20 to 40 Drops, Morning, Noon and Night: The *Salt* from gr. viij to gr. xvj, in a Glass of generous Wine: But that which exceeds all these things, is *Our Sal Volatile Oleosum*, both to be given Inwardly, and often to be smelt to; and if it be Aromatised with gross Pouders of *Cinnamon, Cloves, Mace, Nutmegs, Jamaica Pepper, and the like*, it will be so much the better, and the more grateful to the Stomach; you may give it from 10 to 20 or 30 Drops in a Glass of Wine. Some commend *Camphorated Spirit of Wine, Spirit of Sal Armoniack Aromatis'd, and Spirit of Amber mixt in equal Proportions*; of which 20 Drops may be given three or four times a Day; and with the same the Fore-head, Temples, Nostrils, and hinder Parts of the Head may be Bathed.

XVII. But that we may the more compleatly effect this Indication, we must come also to the use of Topicks, without which, the former Internals will not so soon perform what is desired. Therefore at first, and without delay, *hard Frictions* with

other proper Matter; or else by a *Clyster* made of *Mutton-broth, with four ounces of the Infusion of Crocus Metallorum*, and to be repeated every Day, so long till the Patient has natural Ejections: But in the Administration of any of these things, the Prudent Physician ought to be consulted.

XIII. *The second Indication, is to alter the present Discrasy of the Blood*: That it may cease breeding that Viscidity, with which the Pores of the Brain, and Passages of the Animal Spirits are clogg'd, and also generate Spirits of a brisker and more lively Air. For this purpose, we commend *all sorts of Aromaticks*, as *Acorus*, *Calamus Aromaticus*, *Galangal*, *Cloves*, *Mace*, *Nutmegs*, *Cinnamon*, *Cassia lignea* *Ginger*, *Jamaica Pepper*, *Cubebs*, *Anacardium's*, *Winters Cinnamon*, *Leaves of Marjoram*, *Origanum*, *Rosemary*, *Sage*, *Savin*, *Bay-tree*, *Savory*, *Thime*, *Mother of Thime*, *Mint*, *Hyssop*, *Seed of Bastard-lovage*, *Annise*, *Carawaies*, *Nigella*, *Juniper-berries*, *&c.* which may be given either in Pouder, or in Tincture with *Spirit of Wine, or Tincture of Salt or Tartar*, which is much better; for that all *Aromaticks* cut gross Phlegm. *Sylvius* commends Acids, and among them he prefers *Oil of Sulphur per campanum* before all others, and next to it *the Spirit of Nitre*. *Paracelsus* says, that a Lethargy is a Mineral Distemper, not to be cured by Decoctions out of Apothecaries Shops, but by Minerals. A certain Man, (he says) after a Fever, fell into such a deep Sleep, that he was not sensible when prickt, nor could open his Eyes, nor speak a Word, but lay just as if he was dead, being in a *Lethargy*, (I should rather think a *Carus*) whom he cured with *Oil of Salt*, as likewise he did another with *Oil of Vitriol*. I know the *Volatile Spirit of Vitriol* to be an admirable thing in the Cure of these Diseases, of which I have had some Experience: But among Minerals, *Paracelsus* says, that *the Essence of Antimony* has a Specifick Virtue in rooting out the Cause of these Distempers, for that it mightily strengthens Nature; and this he also used in many other the most grievous Diseases of the Head.

XIV. Other Authors, and that with extraordinary Strength of Reason, (which I also confirm by Experience) commend the use of all sorts of *Volatile Salts*, prepared either from *Vegitables* or *Animals*, whether in *forma sicca*, or *Liquida*. The *Volatile Salts of Pease and Beans*, extracted as we have taught in *Our Doron Medicum, lib.* 1. *cap.* 25. *sect.* 65, 66, 67, and 68, is an approved Experiment, with which I have done some Cures in this Disease; so also the *Volatile Spirit and Salt of Wheat and Rye*, extracted as taught in *Sect.* 63, *and* 64, of the same Chapter. To these you may add, the *Volatile Spirits of Scurvy-grass*, *of Garden-cresses*, *Mustard-seed*, *Brook-lime*, *Rocket*, *Radish and Horse-Radish-roots*, as we have taught the Drawing of the same in the second Edition of *Our Pharm. Bateana, lib.* 1. *cap.* 2. *sect.* 67. which things are singular in their kind. The Volatile Salts extracted from Grain and Pulses, are not good only against Epidemick Diseases, Asthma's, Pleurisies, Quinsies, Inflammations of the Lungs, and other

Diseases

Diseases of the Thorax, Coagulations of the Humours, and Congelation of the Blood, but they give immediate Relief, and dissolve the Congelation, provided they be given before the Blood or Humours are Putrified, or turned into Corruption. The Volatile Salts in *forma sicca* may be given from gr. iiij ad x. or xij; *in forma Liquida*, from a Scruple to 2 Scruples, or from 20 to 30 or 40 Drops, in any proper Vehicle.

XV. The next things to be consider'd, are Volatile Animal Spirits and Salts, among which the *Tartaris'd Volatile Spirit and Salt of Sal Armoniack* are principal; but the *Volatile Spirit and Salt of Man's Blood* exceeds them all; next, the *Volatile Spirit and Salt of Humane Skulls*, then of the Skulls of other Animals; also *of Goats, Deers, and Ox Blood, Horns and Hoofs*. The *Spiritus Cornu Cervi Succinatus*, is by some celebrated almost to the Skies; the *Spirit of Castor*, and *its Tincture* are also of excellent use. These and other the like things being given Inwardly, dissolve all *Coagulums* of the Blood and Humours, resolve Viscosities, and admirably excite the Animal Spirits; and externally the Patient is to be made to smell often to them, for by their Subtilty and Volatility they immediately pierce thro' the whole *Genus Nervosum*, or *Nervous System*, at once, and as it were momentarily run thro' the whole Mass of Blood and Humours: But if the Disease proceeds from Poison or Narcoticks, things *Spirituous* and *Sulphurous*, seem more adviseable than Medicines which are Saline, because those things have a greater respect to the Impressions made by Narcotick Spirits, and are apter to agitate them, and put them in Motion.

XVI. *The third Indication is to open the Pores of the Brain, and to give a free Passage to the Spirits.* For this purpose we commend the *Volatile Salt of Amber*, given from gr. 10 to 20, in *Spirit of Black-Cherries*, or of *Lilies of the Valley*; next, the *Volatile Spirit of Salt and Wood-soot*, which are very admirable things, and seldom go without their desired Effects: The *Spirit* may be given from 20 to 40 Drops, Morning, Noon and Night: The *Salt* from gr. viij to gr. xvj, in a Glass of generous Wine: But that which exceeds all these things, is *Our Sal Volatile Oleosum*, both to be given Inwardly, and often to be smelt to; and if it be Aromatised with gross Pouders of *Cinnamon, Cloves, Mace, Nutmegs, Jamaica Pepper, and the like*, it will be so much the better, and the more grateful to the Stomach; you may give it from 10 to 20 or 30 Drops in a Glass of Wine. Some commend *Camphorated Spirit of Wine, Spirit of Sal Armoniack Aromatis'd, and Spirit of Amber mixt in equal Proportions*; of which 20 Drops may be given three or four times a Day; and with the same the Fore-head, Temples, Nostrils, and hinder Parts of the Head may be Bathed.

XVII. But that we may the more compleatly effect this Indication, we must come also to the use of Topicks, without which, the former Internals will not so soon perform what is desired. Therefore at first, and without delay, *hard Frictions* with

with course Cloths are to be used, also *pinching and pricking them with Needles*; for by pricking, the Sick is sometimes roused up, by affecting the sensible Extremities of the Nerves, and thereby the Pores in the Brain and Nerves are also opened; by which way is made for the Spirits to flow or move, and do their usual Offices; and the Extremities of the Nerves feel the Pain which is caused by pricking, because some few Spirits yet remain then unextinguish'd; so that by their Sense, they can convey the Motion which is made to the Brain. Some also apply *Vesicatories* to the Nape of the Neck, and behind the Ears. *Apophlegmatisms* are also of good use, because they draw the cold, viscid, and pituitous Humours out of the Head and Parts adjacent. *Cupping-Glasses* may also be applied with Scarrifications. Whether the Body is Costive or no, *sharp Suppositories and Clysters* have been found profitable; and they ought to be so sharp, as by irritating the Intestines, to rouse up the Sick, and powerfully to draw forth, and incide the thick, viscid or glutinous Humours. *Take Mutton-broth, or Decoction of Anise and Daucus-seeds, a pint: Pulp of Colocynthiz tied up in a rag, a dram: Sal Gem two drams: Salt of Carduus one dram; mix, boil, and give the clear Decoction warm.* Or, *Take Mutton-broth, a pint: Infusion of Crocus Metallorum two ounces and a half, Cambogium half a dram: Sal Gem a scruple; mix them.* Or this: *Take Mutton-broth a pint, brown Sugar, Infusion of Crocus Metallorum, of each two ounces: The clear thin Substance of Ox gall two drams; mix them, to be exhibited warm.* If none of these things do good, you must then come to the use of *Sternutatories and Errhines.*

XVIII. Among Sternutatories. This is commended: *Take Virginia Tobacco in Pouder, Asarabacca, Marjoram, Lilly Convally, of each in Pouder a dram: Castor in Pouder half a dram: Resinous Scammony in fine Pouder a scruple: White Hellebor in Pouder half a scruple, mix them for a Sternutatory.* Or this: *Take Tobacco in fine Pouder a dram: Cloves, Scammony, each in fine Pouder half a dram: Nutmegs, Ginger, of each a scruple: Roots of Pellitory of Spain, of Musterwort, Tartar Vitriolate, of each half a scruple; mix them, and keep the Pouder close from the Air.* I know some have made use of *Euphorbium*, but it is a thing very pernicious and dangerous, by reason of its Violence. The Errhines most useful in this Distemper are, 1. *Pouder of Asarabacca-Leaves.* 2. *Tartar Vitriolate.* 3. The solid, composed of *Confectio Hamech, made up into a Mass for Pills with equal quantities of Pouders of Rosemary, Scammony and Cambogium.* 4. That of *Deckers* made of *Turpethum Minerale, &c.* the Description of which we have already given you in some of the former Chapters, which is without doubt in this Case, a Medicament without Compare.

XIX. With this following, the Temples, Nostrils and Tongue, may be often touched. *Take Camphorated Spirit of Wine, Tartariz'd Spirit of Sal Armoniack aromatiz'd, of each a dram: Spirit of Angelica, of Lavender and Rue, of each two drams: Spirit of Amber, and of Castor, of each three drams; mix them.* Let the Sick smell

ſmell alſo often to our *Sal Volatile Oleoſum*, than which there is ſcarcely a better thing. *Spirit of Sal Armoniack mixed with Spirit of Caſtor*, is a good thing to ſmell to; and ſo is this following: *Take Oil of Tartar per deliquium two drams: Powers of Lavender, Volatile Spirit of Sal Armoniack, of each a dram: Tincture of Salt of Tartar, half a dram; mix them*, and let the Mixture be forth-with held to the Noſe. *Boil ſome of the beſt Dutch White-Wine-Vinegar with groſs Pouder of Caſtor, Rue, Savin, and Nigella-ſeed, and then caſt it upon a red-hot Iron*, and let the Fumes or Vapours paſs up the Noſtrils of the Patient: This will have a good effect. *Take Muſtard-ſeed what quantity you pleaſe, beat it in a Mortar, add to it Salt and Leven, a ſufficient quantity, and with a little Wine-Vinegar make a Cataplaſm, which apply to the Soals of the Feet.*

XX. The fourth Indication: Which is to ſtrengthen the Parts weakned, quicken and excite the Animal Spirits to their uſual Vigour, and to encreaſe their Stock or Store. For this purpoſe we commend *Spirits of Lilies Convally, and Spirit of Bramble-Berries, or Black-Cherries fortified with Volatile Spirit of Hartſhorn, or of Man's-blood, or of Goats-blood*: So alſo *Powers of Angelica, of Carrawaies, of Juniper, Lavender, Limons, Oranges, Marjoram, Mint, Nutmegs, Peny-royal, Roſemary, Sage, Saſſafras, and Savin*; and *the ſame Powers fortified alſo with Spirit of Hartſhorn, Spirit of Humane-Skulls, Spirit of Vipers, Spirit of the Fleſh of Ravens, or Spirit of Goats blood, or of Wood-ſoot*, which are all admirable. Or this: *Take Spiritus Cornu Cervi ſuccinatus, Spirit of Goats-blood, Tinctures of Caſtor and of Amber, of each a dram: Spirit or Powers of Angelica, Lavender and Savin, of each 4 drams; mix them.* Of this the Patient may take from 20 to 30 Drops, three or four times a Day in a Glaſs of Canary; and if they like ſweet things, it may be dulcified with *Syrup of Citron-peels.* Or this: *Take Tartariz'd Spirit of Sal Armoniack ſuccinated, Spirit of Ravens-Fleſh, of Goats-blood, and of Elks-Hoofs, of each a dram: Spirits of Angelica, Lavender, Limons, Nutmegs, and Savin, of each two drams; Spirit of Swallows drawn with Caſtor three drams; mix them*; Doſe 30 Drops in any proper Vehicle, three or four times a Day. This Pouder alſo is good: *Take of Our ſweet Sudorifick Mercury three drams: Native Cinnabar, and Cinnabar of Antimony, of each two drams: Aſhes of Swallows, Pouder of Amber, of each a dram and half: Cochinele, Caſtor, Garden-Creſſes-ſeed, Muſtard-ſeed, of each a dram, in fine Pouder; mix them:* Doſe from a Scruple to half a Dram, three times a Day.

XXI. And now and then you may Purge the Patient with this Pouder: *Take Reſinous Scammony in fine Pouder, an ounce: Cremor Tartari in fine Pouder, an ounce and half: Caſtor in fine Pouder, Salt of Amber, of each a dram and half: Chymical Oil of Savin, 40 drops; mix all together, and keep it in a Glaſs cloſe ſtopt*; Doſe from a Scruple to half a Dram, once or twice a Week, or as often as the Phyſician ſhall ſee requiſite. Or you may ſometimes Purge with this: *Take Scammony in fine Pouder an ounce; Roſin of Jallap, Pouder of Man's-Skull,*

Skull, Filings of Elks-Horns or Hoofs, Pouder of Vipers, of each two drams; Cochinele, Saffron, Salt of Amber, of each a dram; make of all a fine Pouder, and then add Chymical Oils of Angelica and Savin, of each 20 drops, or ſomething more; mix them well, and keep the mixture cloſe ſtopt for uſe: Doſe from 20 to 30 Grains.

XXII. *An Obſervation from the Learned* Deckers. A Man 30 Years old, had a Heavineſs of the Head for ſome Days, and a continual Fever, and Urine very Turbid. Sitting in a private Room near a Furnace where Linnen was a-drying, his Heavineſs of Head encreaſed, ſo that he became continually ſleepy. Lying down upon the Bed, he could ſcarcely be awaked; and when awake, he anſwer'd idly to ſuch Queſtions as were asked him, and then fell aſleep again. I being called, preſcribed this Clyſter: *Take Rue, Leſſer Centory, Wild Marjoram, Sage, Ana, a handful; Roots of round Birthwort, of black Hellebor, of each three drams; Sowbread two drams; Seeds of Carthamum, and Agrick tyed up in a Bag, of each two drams; Pulp of Colocynthis half a dram; boil all in a ſufficient quantity of Water; ſtrain, and take ſeven ounces thereof, in which diſſolve Hiera Picra with Agrick one ounce; Salt of Rue one dram; Caſtor one ſcruple, Honey of Roſemary-flowers an ounce; mix and make a Glyſter.* And preſently after I applied the following Medicine to his Noſtrils: Take Vinegar of Rue 2 Ounces; Caſtor poudered one Dram: Spirit of Sal Armoniack half a Dram; mix them. With this he awoke, and fell to ſleep again; and the third Day after I was ſent for, I preſcribed theſe Pills: *Take of the Catholick Extract a ſcruple; Caſtor in Pouder half a ſcruple; Oil of Amber 2 drops; mix, and make 7 Pills:* Being awaked, he took them preſently; and immediately after, his Wife gave him a Spoonful of the following Mixture: *Take Waters of Penny-royal and Betony, of each an ounce and half; Of the Prophylactick-Water an ounce; Tincture of Caſtor a dram; Spirit of Sal Armoniack half a dram; Syrup of French Lavender ſix drams; mix them.* The Pills gave him ſix Stools, with a great deal of eaſe: The fifth and ſixth Day the Fever was encreaſed, and he complained of a heavy Pain of his Head, and again could ſcarcely be awakened. I therefore preſcribed the following Errhine: *Take Turbith Mineral half a ſcruple; fine Pouder of Liquorice half a dram; mix them well.* A little of it being blown up his Noſtrils, he was moved with a little ſneezing. On the ſeventh Day he complained of a great heavy Pain of his Head, and a little burning. Again, a little of the Pouder was blown up into his Noſtrils, upon which there followed ſo great a quantity of *Pus mixt with Blood*, not only out of his Noſtrils, but alſo from his Jaws, that unleſs I had ſeen it with my Eyes, I could not have believed it. The heavy pain of the Head thereupon decreaſed, and in a ſhort time vaniſhed: And uſing the ſaid Mixture all the time, he was in a very little while (by the Bleſſing of God) recovered.

CHAP.

CHAP. V. *Of a Phrenſie and Delirium.*

Salmon.] THESE Diſeaſes having ſome relation to the former Diſtempers now treated of, as alſo to the Head and Brain; We thought good (tho' our Author has ſaid nothing of them in this Work) to treat of them next, in this Place.

I. It is called in Greek φρενῖτις, ἡ φρένησις, ἀ φρὴν, *mens, puta, mentis morbus*; and the Patient φρενιτικὸς *Phreneticus*; in Latin *Phreneſis*, and *Phrenitis*; in Engliſh a *Phrenſie*; which is an Inflammation of the Brain, or Membranes of the Brain with an Acute Fever; wherein there is a Dotage, with loſs of Underſtanding and Memory, which is for the moſt part from the Aſcenſion of the Animal Spirits.

A *Delirium* is called in Greek παραφρόσυνη, and in Engliſh *Dotage*, wich is a being out of one's right Senſes. It is always accompanied with a Fever, and is Symptomatical, ever ceaſing when the Fever ceaſes: And herein it differs from a Phrenzy, for that the latter continues when the Fever is gone. And now becauſe the Method of healing theſe Diſeaſes differs not much, and the Medicines are much one and the ſame, we ſhall proſecute the Cure of both in this preſent Chapter.

II. And it is either a *True Phrenſie*, which with the Fever and loſs of Underſtanding has an Apoſtem either in the Brain, or in the *Meninges* thereof; or it is a *Baſtard Phrenſie*, which having a Fever, with loſs of one's Wits, yet it is always without an Apoſtem in the aforeſaid Parts: And this is commonly followed with a Cholerick Fever, accompanied with great Thirſt, ſo great, that the Tongue is extraordinary dry and rough; the Ravings are not ſo violent nor frequent as in the true, and moſtly happens at the *Criſis* of the Fever, or a little before it, being more violent in the Fit, than in the Intermiſſion. In a True Phrenſie, the Patient never comes to his Wit or Underſtanding again; and ſo far loſe their Memory, as not only to forget their daily Buſineſs, but many times their Names, and the Duties of Nature.

III. As to the part affected, ſome Authors ſay it is the Globous Part, or Subſtance of the Brain, which is the Seat of the Fantaſie and Memory: Others will have it to be the Meninges or Membranes of the Brain; others again, in the Ventricles of the Brain; and ſome in the Brain, as alſo in the *Cerebellum*, and Globous Parts as aforeſaid, as alſo wherever the Animal Spirits move; for which reaſon *Helmont* thinks to be affected the *Præcordia* or *Midriff*, with an Inflammation of the Carneous Parts of the *Diaphragma*, for that the Animal Spirits in this Diſeaſe are violently hurried thither.

IV. *The Signs by which this Diſeaſe is known, are*, That it is alwas accompanied with a continual acute dry Fever, by which Saline-ſulphureous Recrements of the Blood and Humours are precipitated into the

the Brain or its Membranes; whence comes little Sleep, but rather Watchfulness, with trouble or discomposure of Mind. Sometimes the Sick jumps suddenly out of Bed, according as the raging Animal Spirits rush violently into this or that Part or Muscle. They breathe sometimes strongly, and with Breath deeply fetcht, and sometimes more slowly, as the Spirits are more or less exasperated, or flow more impetuously, or more deliberately into the *Diaphragma*. The Eyes and Face are red, from the Volatile Cholerick Particles which fly upwards. One of the Eyes also often waters, and the Veins and Arteries of the Eyes seem to swell thro' the great Ebullition of the Blood: The Body is Dry, and the Skin looks as if it was Tann'd or Sun-burnt: The Eyes themselves look big and fierce, from the great Afflux of Animal Spirits. The Pulse is frequent, swift, and large, with great Thirst and Roughness of the Tongue. There is a *Delirium* present, so great as that they can make no reasonable Answer, nor remember what they say. Their Imagination is confused, with Impressions of false Idea's, which make them furious and bold, and to attempt the most desperate things; are apt to fight, tho' unfit for it, pick Straws, play with Feathers, and sometimes pull the Sheets, but with a trembling Hand. The Urine is yellow and thin, yet sometimes white, which is a very evil Symptom. If a Fever is accompanied with a continual *Delirium*, and the *Delirium* continues after it, it is a true Sign of a *Phrensie*; (for the *Delirium*, which goes with a Fever, if it goes off when the Fever is over, is simply a *Delirium*, and no *Phrensie*;) And therefore if the *Delirium* or Dotage exceeds the Febritick Bounds, and continues longer, and is more intense, a *Phrensie* is certainly at hand. There is also an Obstruction of Urine, because the Animal Powers are unable to make an Expulsion.

V. The cause of this Disease may be from a Discrasy of the Blood inflamed, or from Choler enraged, causing an Inflammation in the Brain or its Membranes; or from adust Choler carried to the *Brain* or *Diaphragma*; or from Blood extravasated, and then it is observed that the Sick is affected with a foolish Laughter, without any great *Delirium* or Fever: If it is from adust Choler, the Sick is raving Mad, and fit to be bound: If the whole Brain is inflamed, the Sick quite loses his Reason and Understanding: If it is the Fore-part only which is Inflamed, the *Imagination* is more disturbed than the Reason; but if the Back-part is only affected, the *Memory* is then lost in a great measure. Sometimes it proceeds from Choler, repleat with a sharp and Volatile Salt, mixing it self with the Spirituous Parts, and disturbing the Animal Spirits; which according to the Parts of the Brain it is directed to, hurts either the Imagination, or Judgment, or Memory, and sometimes all of them together: So that the Soul judging or conceiving, according to the *Idea's* which are brought to it, in this Perturbation of the Animal

mal Spirits, acts all the fooliſh, irregular and mad Things imaginable. Or it may be cauſed from the Animal Spirits, too much irritated or diſordered, and confuſedly hurried up and down the globulous Subſtance of the Brain, where the Seat of the *Judgment* and *Memory* is; from whence fooliſh Fantaſies and falſe Notions of Things have their Original, which cauſe incongruous Speech, and wild or frantick Geſtures and Actions.

VI. *And the Original of this Diſturbance of the Animal Spirits*, may be either in the Blood, as in burning Fevers, in which the Blood is accended and boils as it were; by which preternatural Efferveſcence, and ſpumeous Rarefaction of the Blood and Juices, Heterogeneous and ſharp Particles of Choler and other Humours are carried up, and penetrating the Pores of the Brain, put the Animal Spirits into this frantick Commotion, as is manifeſt oftentimes in malign and peſtilential Fevers, the Meaſles, Small-Pox, Spotted-Fever, Plague, *&c.* in which the Spirits being thus diſordered, cauſe a *Phrenſie* or *Delirium*. Or in the *Nervous Syſtem*, when hurt by a Puncture or Cut of a poiſoned Weapon, or bitings of Serpents, or other Venemous Creatures: Or from Poiſons inwardly taken, as of Night-ſhade, Henbane, Hemlock, Mandrake, Monks-hood, *&c.* by all or any of which the Animal Spirits being irritated, and made raging, and to move with Impetuoſity, a *Phrenſie* or *Delirium* is cauſed. So that without doubt ſulphureous, ſharp and acid Recrements raiſed from the Violence of Continent or continual Burning, malign or peſtilential Fevers, or from drinking too much Wine, Brandy, or hot Cordial Waters, or Poiſons received, whether inwardly or outwardly, may, by vehemently irritating the Animal Spirits, put them into ſuch a violent Motion, as by forcing their way to break their Encloſures, and penetrate into the Pores of the Brain, ſo as to cauſe theſe Diſeaſes. The drineſs of the Mouth and Throat in theſe Diſtempers proceeds either from want of *Serum*, by reaſon of a long previous *Diaphoreſis*; or from ſome Obſtructions in the *Clandulæ Salivales*, ſo that no *Saliva* can come to the Mouth; and in this Caſe Thirſt is not abated by Drinking, but rather encreaſed, becauſe it makes the Obſtruction greater.

VII. *As to the Prognoſticks*, we ſay, A *Phrenſie* is a very acute and dangerous Diſeaſe; and that for the moſt part it kills in ſeven Days time, if not before-hand cured. *Hippocrates* ſays, that a *Phrenſie* is moſt dangerous in which the Urine is white and clear: So alſo when it is pale and clear, it is a bad Symptom. Trembling and Shivering are evil Signs, becauſe they ſhew Obſtruction of the Nerves and a defect of Spirits. When the Excrements are white, it is alſo an evil Sign, becauſe the *Ductus Choledorbus* is obſtructed, ſo that the Choler is not carried to the Inteſtines to tinge the Excrements, but to the Brain. If the Stools are red, it is alſo an ill Preſage, for it ſhews, that either Blood is mixt with them, or that the Heat

Heat of the Fever is in an Extremity. Constant watching, and a lasting or continual *Phrensie* or *Madness*, are for the most part mortal Symptoms. A cholerick, violent and black Vomiting is an ill Sign, and the *Prodomus* of Death. If the *Phrensie* is attended with a Hectick, or a hot and dry Habit of Body, it is rarely cured, for that the Animal Spirits are languid and expended. Often remissions of the Paroxysm, with many Intervals, is much better than when it is continued. It is also sooner cured, and less dangerous in strong or young Persons, than in weak Persons or old People; for those who are young have more vigorous and spirituous Blood, so that their Animal Spirits are more potent, and able to resist the Force of the Disease. If a Phrensie or Delirium are accompanied with Laughter, it is not so dangerous as that which is accompanied with Melancholy or Fury. If the Hemorrhoides break forth, good is at hand, because they evacuate the morbid Blood. If it comes from drinking Wine, Brandy or Strong-waters, and a good *Crisis* is made in the Fever by Urine and Sweat, it is not so dangerous, but that there is hopes of Cure.

VIII. *We now come to the Dietetick part of the Cure.* Let the Air be temperate and clear, rather inclining to cold, avoiding that which is hot and dry, which is apt to irritate the Animal Spirits, more-especially in these Diseases. Let their Food be cooling and moistning, as Barly-broth, hul'd Barly boiled, Ptisan, Panada without Wine; Broths, in which Lettice, Purslane, Endive, Succory, Spinach, *&c.* are boiled; Fish of Gravelly-places; avoiding all things which are Hot and Aromatick; and let what is eaten be eaten rather sparingly than otherwise, for a full Stomach increases the Disease. Let his Drink be Ptisan, or Barly-water acuated with Spirits or Oils of Salt, Sulphur or Vitriol; or Distilled Waters from Lettice, Purslane, Spinach, *&c.* sweetned with Syrup of Limons or Juice of Citrons, or of Vinegar; also Decoction of Tamarinds, and Natural Mineral Waters, avoiding Wines, Brandy, or hot Cordial Waters. Exercise ought to be very moderate, for Rest is rather to be advised, that the Spirits settle as much as may be, and be composed. Sleep for that Cause also, ought to be induced; and that, rather than fail, with Opiates inwardly taken and outwardly applied, for Watching encreases the *Delirium*. Excretions both by Stool and Urine, ought rather to be frequent than seldom, because the Disease is not only abated, but oftentimes carried off those ways; and therefore sharp Clysters, Suppositories, and Diureticks ought to be exhibited. All great Perturbations of the Mind, as Anger, Grief, Love, *&c.* are to be avoided, because they excite the Animal Spirits with great Violence, and therefore Things and Persons, pleasing and agreeable, ought to be brought into their Presence or Sight.

IX. *The Intentions of Cure are,* 1. To abate or take away the Fever, 2. To compose and quiet

quiet the inraged Animal Spirits. 3. To remove the Symptoms. 4. To restore the Tone of the Parts hurt, that the danger of a Relapse may be effectually prevented.

X. *The first Intention is to be performed with proper Antifebriticks*, such as are Our *Antifebritick Pouders, Pouder of Crabs-eyes and Crabs-claws*; Juleps made with Our *Spiritus Aperiens*, or with *Spirit of Nitre*, or with *Spirits or Oils of Salt, Sulphur, and Vitriol*; which upon the Spot enter immediately into the Blood, abate its Turgency, and destroy the Fever. *Take of Our Spiritus Aperiens a large spoonful; Spring-water a quart; Double-refin'd Sugar enough to make it pleasant*, of which let the Sick drink at pleasure. Or, *Take Tartar Vitriolate two drams; dissolve it in Barly-water a quart or more, and sweeten it with Syrup of Violets*, of which let the Sick take in what quantities he pleases. If the Physician finds that the constant use of these Vehicles may be too cooling, a little *White Lisbon Wine* may be added. *Levigated Pouder of Crabs-eyes* absorbs the Acid, abates the Fever, and carries it off by Urine, being given from a Scruple to a Dram: So also Our *Pulvis Antifebriticus*, than which, there are but few better Medicaments against a Fever in the World; for it not only quenches the Flame, and extinguishes the preternatural Heat upon the Spot, but also carries off the morbifick Cause most effectually by Urine. Stools also ought to be provoked by sharp Clysters, which prevents the Febritick Matter from flying from the *Viscera* up to the Head. This is good, *Take Mutton-broth in which Colycinthis a dram has been infused for 8 or 10 hours; Strain it out and add Infusion of Crocus Metalorum; brown Sugar, of each two ounces and a half; mix them, and let it be exhibited warm. Take Sal Prunellæ an ounce and half, Burnt Hartshorn 6 drams; mix them:* Let some of this be put into *Whey* for ordinary Drink. *Spar vel Minera Saturni levigated*, and given to a Dram at a time in *Syrup of Violets*, is an excellent thing. These things profligate the Fever, and powerfully carry it off by the Urinary Passages.

XI. The second Intention is to compose and quiet the enraged Animal Spirits, that the Fury may be taken off. To do this, some Authors of considerable Reputation advise to *Venesection*, and *Arteriotomy* in the Arm, or Fore-head, or rather in the Temples; by which *Arteriotomy* Phrensies have been happily cured, without any other Remedy; the Wound of the Artery after Incision, being bound up with the common Mixture of *Hares-Fur, and the Whites of Eggs*, or some other Styptick Matter or Liquor, enough of which you may find both in Our *Pharmacopœia Bateana*, and in Our *Ars Chirurgica*. 'Tis admirable to think how calm and quiet the enraged Animal Spirits do become thereby, and how they are reduced to their Pristine State. And to this, Authors have added other Chirurgick Operations, as *Bleeding with Leeches, Cupping with Scarrification; transfusion of Mans, Calfs, Lambs. or Sheeps-blood into the Veins of the Diseased Person*, &c.

Heat of the Fever is in an Extremity. Constant watching, and a lasting or continual *Phrensie* or *Madness*, are for the most part mortal Symptoms. A cholerick, violent and black Vomiting is an ill Sign, and the *Prodomus* of Death. If the *Phrensie* is attended with a Hectick, or a hot and dry Habit of Body, it is rarely cured, for that the Animal Spirits are languid and expended. Often remissions of the Paroxysm, with many Intervals, is much better than when it is continued. It is also sooner cured, and less dangerous in strong or young Persons, than in weak Persons or old People; for those who are young have more vigorous and spirituous Blood, so that their Animal Spirits are more potent, and able to resist the Force of the Disease. If a Phrensie or Delirium are accompanied with Laughter, it is not so dangerous as that which is accompanied with Melancholy or Fury. If the Hemorrhoides break forth, good is at hand, because they evacuate the morbid Blood. If it comes from drinking Wine, Brandy or Strong-waters, and a good *Crisis* is made in the Fever by Urine and Sweat, it is not so dangerous, but that there is hopes of Cure.

VIII. *We now come to the Dietetick part of the Cure.* Let the Air be temperate and clear, rather inclining to cold, avoiding that which is hot and dry, which is apt to irritate the Animal Spirits, more-especially in these Diseases. Let their Food be cooling and moistning, as Barly-broth, hul'd Barly boiled, Ptisan, Panada without Wine; Broths, in which Lettice, Purslane, Endive, Succory, Spinach, *&c.* are boiled; Fish of Gravelly-places; avoiding all things which are Hot and Aromatick; and let what is eaten be eaten rather sparingly than otherwise, for a full Stomach increases the Disease. Let his Drink be Ptisan, or Barly-water acuated with Spirits or Oils of Salt, Sulphur or Vitriol; or Distilled Waters from Lettice, Purslane, Spinach, *&c.* sweetned with Syrup of Limons or Juice of Citrons, or of Vinegar; also Decoction of Tamarinds, and Natural Mineral Waters, avoiding Wines, Brandy, or hot Cordial Waters. Exercise ought to be very moderate, for Rest is rather to be advised, that the Spirits settle as much as may be, and be composed. Sleep for that Cause also, ought to be induced; and that, rather than fail, with Opiates inwardly taken and outwardly applied, for Watching encreases the *Delirium*. Excretions both by Stool and Urine, ought rather to be frequent than seldom, because the Disease is not only abated, but oftentimes carried off those ways; and therefore sharp Clysters, Suppositories, and Diureticks ought to be exhibited. All great Perturbations of the Mind, as Anger, Grief, Love, *&c.* are to be avoided, because they excite the Animal Spirits with great Violence, and therefore Things and Persons, pleasing and agreeable, ought to be brought into their Presence or Sight.

IX. *The Intentions of Cure are,* 1. To abate or take away the Fever, 2. To compose and quiet

quiet the inraged Animal Spirits. 3. To remove the Symptoms. 4. To restore the Tone of the Parts hurt, that the danger of a Relapse may be effectually prevented.

X. *The first Intention is to be performed with proper Antifebriticks*, such as are Our *Antifebritick Pouders, Pouder of Crabs-eyes and Crabs-claws*; Juleps made with Our *Spiritus Aperiens*, or with *Spirit of Nitre*, or with *Spirits or Oils of Salt, Sulphur, and Vitriol*; which upon the Spot enter immediately into the Blood, abate its Turgency, and destroy the Fever. *Take of Our Spiritus Aperiens a large spoonful; Spring-water a quart; Double-refin'd Sugar enough to make it pleasant*, of which let the Sick drink at pleasure. Or, *Take Tartar Vitriolate two drams; dissolve it in Barly-water a quart or more, and sweeten it with Syrup of Violets*, of which let the Sick take in what quantities he pleases. If the Physician finds that the constant use of these Vehicles may be too cooling, a little *White Lisbon Wine* may be added. *Levigated Pouder of Crabs-eyes* absorbs the Acid, abates the Fever, and carries it off by Urine, being given from a Scruple to a Dram: So also Our *Pulvis Antifebriticus*, than which, there are but few better Medicaments against a Fever in the World; for it not only quenches the Flame, and extinguishes the preternatural Heat upon the Spot, but also carries off the morbifick Cause most effectually by Urine. Stools also ought to be provoked by sharp Clysters, which prevents the Febritick Matter from flying from the *Viscera* up to the Head. This is good, *Take Mutton-broth in which Colycinthis a dram has been infused for 8 or 10 hours; Strain it out and add Infusion of Crocus Metalorum; brown Sugar, of each two ounces and a half; mix them, and let it be exhibited warm. Take Sal Prunellæ an ounce and half, Burnt Hartshorn 6 drams; mix them*: Let some of this be put into *Whey* for ordinary Drink. *Spar vel Minera Saturni levigated*, and given to a Dram at a time in *Syrup of Violets*, is an excellent thing. These things profligate the Fever, and powerfully carry it off by the Urinary Passages.

XI. The second Intention is to compose and quiet the enraged Animal Spirits, that the Fury may be taken off. To do this, some Authors of considerable Reputation advise to *Venesection*, and *Arteriotomy* in the Arm, or Fore-head, or rather in the Temples; by which *Arteriotomy* Phrensies have been happily cured, without any other Remedy; the Wound of the Artery after Incision, being bound up with the common Mixture of *Hares-Fur, and the Whites of Eggs*, or some other Styptick Matter or Liquor, enough of which you may find both in Our *Pharmacopœiæ Bateana*, and in Our *Ars Chirurgica*. 'Tis admirable to think how calm and quiet the enraged Animal Spirits do become thereby, and how they are reduced to their Pristine State. And to this, Authors have added other Chirurgick Operations, as *Bleeding with Leeches, Cupping with Scarrification; transfusion of Mans, Calfs, Lambs. or Sheeps-blood into the Veins of the Diseased Person*, &c.

XII. As to Internals, *Paracelsus* and others commend *Opiates* and *Narcoticks*: He extols his own *Laudanum*, to be given from 3 to 5 Grains, with which he has made some well both in Body and Mind. These *Narcoticks* and *Hypnoticks* are to be used moderately, lest farther Mischief should ensue. I have used them constantly in these Cases, and always with admirable Success. The *Liquid Laudanum Cydoniatum of Helmont*, as also the *Liquid Laudanum* of Our Author, or *that made with an Acid*, are of incomparable use. So also our *Laudanum Volatile*, given from 2 to 6 Grains Our *Specifick Laudanum* is also of great use; as also *Eclegma incrassans*, *Eclegma fortis incrassans*, and Our *Eclegma Sudorificum*, in *Lib.* 1. *Cap.* 1 *Sect.* 7, 8, and 28. aforegoing of this Work; which may be given by a prudent Physician, and not without great Advantages to the Sick. *Sylvius* prescribes this following Mixture: *Take Diascordium two drams*; *Confection of Hyacinths one dram*; *Syrup of white Poppies one ounce*; *Plantane-water*, *Fennel-water*, *of each an ounce and half*; *mix them*: Give it by a Spoonful at a time very often; this corrects the sharp Choler, which is the cause (as he supposes) of the *Delirium*, and which weakens the natural consistency of the Blood, destroying oftentimes the Foundations of Life. He advises also to *Barly-broth*, *Almond-milk*, *cooling Emulsions*, and *Jellies made of young Flesh*, because they dull and correct the Acrimony, or sharp Particles of Choler. This is good: *Take of White Poppy-seed an ounce and half*; *Of the four greater cold Seeds of each two drams*; *Waters of Endive*, *Lettice*, *and Purslane*, *of each a sufficient quantity*; *mix and make an Emulsion*; *to which add of Coral and Pearl prepared*, *of each a dram*; of which let the Sick take by Spoonfuls. This has been approved: *Take Damask Rose water three ounces*; *Tincture of Red Roses six ounces*; *Of Our Volatile Laudanum 6 grains*; *Confectio Alkermes one dram*; *Syrup of Juice of Citrons*, *and of Wood-Sorrel*, *of each six drams*; *mix them*, and give the Mixture to two or three Spoonfuls at a time, now and then: But these Narcoticks ought to be given cautiously, especially if the Patient is weak, and a *Crisis* is at hand. In this case you may give this: *Take Lettice-water an ounce*; *Syrup of Poppies three drams*; *Of Our Volatile Laudanum one grain*; *mix them for a Dose*: This Dose may afterwards (as the Patient is able to bear it) be increased. But this is to be observed concerning *Opiates* being given in a *Phrensie* which comes of a Fever, that their Effects are not so certain whilst the Fever is predominant, nor so certainly answer Expectation: But if they be given in the Declination of the Fever, they are of extraordinary use.

XIII. Some Authors, as *Helmont* and his Followers, prefer *Metalline* or *Mineral Laudanum* made without *Opium*, of the *Sulphur of Vitriol*, before other *Laudanum's*. He very much extols the *Soporiferous Narcotick Philosophick Sulphur of Vitriol* in all Alienations of the Mind, and so particularly, in this of the Phrensie. What I have had great Experience of in this case, is my *Impetus Martis*, whose excellent Virtues we have declared

red in Our *Collectanea Medica, Lib.* 4. *Chap.* 40. which is a Preparation from the *Sulphur of the Vitriol of Mars.* It may be given to grown Perſons, from 20 to 40, 50, or 60 Drops, in any proper Vehicle once every Day. You may begin with a ſmaller Doſe of it at firſt, and then encreaſe it gradually, as you may ſee the occaſion requires. It offers at all the Intentions of the Cure of this Diſeaſe: It perfectly obliterates the Fever; and by its anodine Property, intirely allays the Fury of the Spirits; removes the Symptoms, and ſtrengthens the whole entire Man, but more-eſpecially the Parts afflicted and debilitated.

XIV. *Topicks are the next things to be conſider'd*, that nothing might be omitted which might any ways contribute to the Reduction of the Sick. 1. *Epithems* may be applied to the Head, Fore-head, Temples, Teſticles, and which may be made after this manner: *Take Garden or Field-Poppy-water, Vinegar of Roſes, of each equal Parts; mix them for an Eipthem* to be applied to the Places afore-named. Or, *Take Nightſhade-water two Parts, Elder-Vinegar one Part; mix them for an Epithem* to be uſed as aforeſaid. Or, *Take Henbane-water, Poppy-water, Emulſion of White Poppy ſeeds, Vinegar of Roſes, of each equal Parts; mix them for an Epithem.* 2. *Ointments or Liniments. Take Oil of White Poppy-ſeeds by Expreſſion an ounce; Extract of Opium made with fair Water, and reduced to a Conſiſtency. a dram; mix them well together for a Liniment*, with which the Parts aforenamed are to be anointed; this mightily appeaſes the Fury of the Animal Spirits. Or this: *Take Extract of Opium made with fair Water a dram; Oil of Nightſhade by Inſolation, Oil of Henbane-ſeeds by Inſolation, Oil of Ben, of each three drams; mix them for an Ointment or Liniment*, to be uſed as the former. 3. *Cataplaſms.* Theſe are generally made of Green Herbs, as of *Hemlock, Henbane, Houſe-leek, Lettice, Water-lillies, Nightſhade, Poppies, Purſlane*, &c. beaten in a Mortar, and brought to a Conſiſtency with Barley-Flower or Crumbs of White-Bread, and then applied at Bed-time to the Places aforenamed. *Bartholetus* very much commends the *Pulp of the Garden-Gourd*; Pultiſe-wiſe applied to the Head (after it is ſhaved) it wonderfully cools, and herewith he ſays he cured a deſperate Phrenſie.

XV. *The third Intention is the removal of the Symptoms.* The chief of theſe are Watching, Thirſt, and Stoppage of Urine. 1. Watching is removed by bathing, and applying to the Head, Fore-head and Temples, this Epithem: Take Vinegar of Roſes eight Ounces; Juices of Lettice, Purſlane and Houſe-leek, of each one Ounce; Opium diſſolved in Vinegar a Dram; Camphir ten Grains; mix them. Or this: Take Frog-ſpawn, Juice of Nightſhade, of each ſix Ounces; Vinegar of Corn-Poppies three ounces; Opium a Dram, diſſolved in Juice of Lettice; mix them and make an Epithem, to be applied as the former. 2. *Thirſt* is removed by thoſe things which remove or diminiſh the Fever. *A Decoction of Tamarinds in fair Water* is of excellent uſe: So alſo *Juice of Limons mixt with fair Water*

and Sugar, adding a small quantity of Spirit of Wine: Spirit of Nitre also, taken some few Drops at a time in fair Water, perfectly quenches it. Wine and Water mixt together, and acuated with Spirit of Salt, or Tartar Vitriolate, prevails against the strongest Thirst. 3. *Stoppage of Urine.* If the Patient forgets to make Water, let the *Pecten* and *Perinæum* be anointed with Oil of Scorpions, and some fixt Salt, that by their Acrimony Pissing may be induced. Or you may anoint with this: *Take Oil of Scorpions half an ounce; Oil of Savin Chymical half a dram; Chymical Oil of Origanum a scruple; mix them,* and therewith anoint the Parts afore-named Morning and Evening. And inwardly give this: *Take Parsly, Persicary-waters, of each* 3 *ounces; Powers of Cantharides* 20 *drops; mix them for a Dose.* Or this: *Take Infusion of Lignum Nephriticum three ounces; Salt of Tartar from a scruple to half a dram; mix them,* to be given Morning and Evening for the purpose intended.

XVI. *The fourth and last Intention of this Cure, is to restore the Tone of the Parts hurt, that a Relapse may be prevented.* Let *Crystals of Luna* be given from two Grains to six, according to Age and Strength, made up into Pills with a little *Mithridate,* which may be repeated twice a Week. Or this: *Take Crystals of Luna from two to six grains in fine Pouder; Bezoarticum Minerale a scruple; Saffron, Cochinele, of each six grains; Mithridate a sufficient quantity; mix and make Pills for one Dose,* to be given at Bed-time twice a Week. Or this: *Take of our sweet Sodorifick Mercury a scruple; Crabs-eyes prepared half a dram; Pouder of Amber, Magistery of Lunæ, of each half a scruple; mix them for a Dose,* to be given every Morning fasting, in any proper Vehicle. We also commend *Our Sal Volatile Oleosum,* which may be given from 15 to 25 Drops in *Persicary-Water,* once or twice a Day, or oftner, as the Physician shall see Reason for the same. This following Pouder is a most excellent thing: *Take Native Cinnabar Levigated half a dram; Bezoarticum Minerale a scruple; Thebian Opium finely poudered from half a grain to a grain; mix them for a Dose,* to be given every Night at Bed-time. Or the Patient may Purge once a Week with the *Potio Communis Purgativa* and between whiles take every Night at Bed-time, this following *Compositum. Take Bezar Mineral half a dram; Solar and Lunar Bezoar, of each half a scruple; Saffron, Cochinele, of each in fine Pouder six grains; mix for a Dose, to be given in Syrup of Citron-peels.*

CHAP. VI. *Of Dog-like Madness.*

I. AFTER six or seven Weeks or more, the Signs of Melancholy appear: There is a Fever, Thirst, Hydrophobia, or fear of Water, and at length Convulsions of the Extream Parts.

Salmon.] It is called in Greek, ὑδροφοβία (*aquæfuga*) παρὰ τὸ φοβεῖσθαι τὸ ὕδωρ; from the exceeding

ceeding fear of Water; and the Parient ὑδροφόβος *Hydrophobus*, *Rabiosus*; in Latin *Hydrophobia*, *& Rabies*; which is a Madness arising from the biting of a Mad Dog.

II. *Salmon.*] The primary Seat of this Disease seems to be in the Blood and Juices, which are first infected with the Canine Poison, by reason of the Wound made by the biting of the mad Dog; and by the infected Blood the Animal Spirits come at length to be affected, and so the Malignity is conveyed to the Brain; which when it has once seized, the Pores of the Brain are contaminated, and at length a Mortification seizes upon the whole Substance of the Brain.

III. *Salmon.*] The Signs of this Madness are considered according to the Times, *viz.* as they have respect to *the beginning* of the Distemper, and to *the Confirmation* thereof. The Signs of it in the beginning are, That the Patient is always uneasie, not satisfied with any thing, has strange Thoughts, and a continual Inclination to Anger, and soon moved into a Passion: They complain when there is no cause of Complaint, and without any Reason, they are offended with the moistness of the Air, and desire no Drink, and are mightily displeased, if they see or come near any Water; and they are so much pleased with Light and Light Places, that they desire Candles to be lighted even in the Day-time; and at Fits and Turns, or upon any sudden Motion, are affected with a Giddiness or Lightness of the Head.

IV. *Salmon.*] But if the Disease is once confirm'd, there is a distention of the Members, (tho' not continual) which is from the sudden and preposterous Motions of the Animal Spirits, driven from their Original, and seeking as it were a new Habitation: There is an unwonted kind of Frowning with Anger in the Face: The Countenance is fierce, with a foaming at Mouth, and they desire to spit or spawl upon such as are nigh: There is present a *Delirium*, or raging Madness, with a purpose of doing Mischief: They sometimes bark like as Dogs, and do their endeavour to bite as many as they can: They abhor Water, and fly from it as from a thing of greatest Danger, from whence this Disease obtained the Name of *Hydrophobia*. They will neither eat nor drink, but refuse the latter from the very fear of Water.

V. *Salmon.*] As to the causes of this Madness, it is manifest; arising from the malign and poisonous Bite of the enraged Dog. This Poison of the *Saliva* is not of equal Virulency with that of a Viper or a Rattle-Snake, because that this latter being an exceeding and subtil Volatile Acid, pervenes thro' all Parts in a very few Minutes; so that sometimes by the bite of a Rattle-Snake in the Leg, the poor Patient has been dead in half an Hour's time, if no present Remedy in those Cases could be applied; the Example of which I saw in *Carolina*: One old *Farr*'s Son, a lusty Youth of near 20 Years of Age, was bit by a Rattle-Snake in the Leg, but being far from

Home, and no Remedy applied presently, being in the Fields, killed him in about half an Hour's time: And this, the Poison by flying almost like Lightning thro' all Parts, contaminates the Juices, and makes in a very short time a Congelation of the Fountains of the Blood, whence comes an universal Stagnation, and by that means Death. But the Poison of a mad Dog, has neither that Subtilty or Volatility in it, nor yet such an Acid, as has such a Power of Congelation, to fix all the Juices at once; but is rather a Volatile Alcalious Poison, which only infects gradually, and carries its Venom with it only by Circulation, encreasing its Strength by a gradual Contamination of the Particles of the adjacent Juices, which when compleated seize the Brain, and so produce this Madness, which Poison in a short time after causes a Profligation of the Animal Spirits, and a Mortification of the Substance of the Brain, whereby the Disease is rendred incurable, and Death presently ensues. Now that it is not so subtil nor volatile a Poison as that of a Viper or Rattle-Snake, appears by this; that the one if proper Remedies be not presently applied, kills in so short a time, it being rare that the Patient lives 24 Hours after it; whereas the Poison of a mad Dog seldom manifests its self under the space of a Lunar Month; and according as the Poison is more or less, so sometimes it is 40 Days, yea 60 or 90 Days, before it comes to acting the Tragedy, for the Destruction of the Humane Life.

VI. *Salmon.*] As to the Prognosticks, it is manifest by Experience, that this Canine Madness happens to some sooner, to others later, according to the Magnitude of the Wound, the place wounded, and the quantity of the poisonous *Saliva*: In some where it operates more speedily, the Madness comes within 30, 40, 50, or 60 Days, seldom exceeding the last Number; yet in some I have known, that it has not appeared 'till about the 90th Day: In others where it operates more slowly, the Madness has not attack'd them 'till a Year or two, and sometimes three have been past: And this comes to pass either from the Quantity, Strength or Weakness of the Poison; or from the Constitution of the Patient, and Season of the Year, or from the Part, as being more or less Noble; or from its Proximity or Remoteness to the Heart, the Fountain of Blood, and of the Vital Spirits. There will be small hopes, if the Poison be not immediately washt off, or strong Attractives be not presently applied; or if sighing and sobbing happen thereupon; or if fear of Water be present, the danger in all these Cases is great. But if once the Signs of Madness appear, it is a sign the whole Mass of Blood is contaminated, and that the Brain it self is seized, and will suddenly suffer a Mortification; so that then all hopes of Cure may be said to be past. I have known many who have been overtaken with this Madness, but never knew one of them escape. But if the Wound pierces not any Vein, Artery,

or

or Nerve; or if it is not deep, or in a noble Part, or is very remote from the Heart; and withal, if the Poiſon was preſently waſht off, and drawn out by ſtrong Attractives, before it penetrates farther into the Body, or its Juices, then there may be very great hopes of a Cure.

VII. *Take of the beſt rectified Spirit of Wine four ounces; Venice-Treacle one ounce; make a Mixture, with which anoint the Part which is wounded thrice every day; and lay over it a Cloth, moiſtned with the ſame Mixture.*

Salmon.] Our Author here comes to the Curative Part, in which he is indeed very ſhort. We ſhall purſue it with reſpect, 1. *To the preventive Cure*, before the Patient has delayed, or loſt any Time. 2. *To the perfective Cure*, after the Patient has loſt Time for two or three Weeks or more, and that there is apparent Danger. As to what our Author has here adviſed, we ſay, that it is true, it is an Alexipharmick in its own Nature; but a Medicament of too weak an attractive Force in ſuch a dangerous Accident as this is, for the poor Patient to truſt his Life upon.

VIII. *Salmon.*] *The Preventive or Preſervative Cure.* That the Poiſon may not penetrate into the Body or Part, and ſeize the Vital and Animal Spirits. A Ligature is firſt to be made upon the Part (where it can be done) to ſtop the Motion of the Blood and Juices: But if it is inconvenient, or cannot be done, things Interceptive and Aſtringent are then to be applied, ſome ſmall ſpace above and below, or rather round about the Wound: Then, if the Wound is ſmall, Cupping-Glaſſes with Scarrification, are to be affixed to it; but if the Wound is large, then without Scarrification, ſuffering it to bleed long and much, that thereby the Poiſon, as much as may be, may be drawn out of the Fleſh: But if the Wound is ſmall or narrow, it ought to be enlarged with an Inciſion-Knife, that the Poiſon may with the Blood, the better flow forth.

IX. *Salmon.*] But if the Patient is in a Place where no Chirurgion is near, or where theſe things cannot be done, apply to the wounded Part ſome ſtrong drawing Emplaſter or Cataplaſm; it matters not much of what kind it is, provided it does but draw ſtrongly. *Take Black Pitch two ounces; Camphir half an ounce; Euphorbium in fine Pouder, Common Salt decripitated, of each three drams; mix for an Emplaſter.* Or, *Take Green Bears-foot-leaves; beat them in a Mortar, add Pouder of Staveſacre; mix and make a Cataplaſm*, which apply with Caution. This is alſo to be obſerved, that the Wound is not to be healed up under Fourty Days at leaſt.

X. *Salmon.*] Or, for want of theſe things, you muſt apply either a *Bliſtring Emplaſter*, or an *Actual Cautery*; and you muſt hold the red-hot Iron to the Part, as it were to burn it, for by theſe means, the Volatile Poiſon will be effectually drawn forth, ſo that no future Danger need be feared.

XI. *Salmon.*] A *Fomentation of Hops* is ſaid to be an excellent thing: So alſo *a Cataplaſm of Rocket or Muſtard ſeed, mixed with Salt and Turpentine*, is of good

force to be applied: Or a *Fomentation of Spirit of Wine, in which a little Pouder of Euphorbium, or Mithridate has been dissolved*, rubbed on so hard, 'till the Blood follows: Or *a Cataplasm of Orobus Meale with Salt and Mithridate*: Or *a Cataplasm of raw Onions beaten up with Salt and Turpentine*, which is admirable, and has cured many. But above all these things yet named, is *a simple Cataplasm of* raw *Garlick*, applied upon the Spot to the Wound, for this will immediately draw forth the Poison, even from the most deep and remote Parts, wheresoever it has penetrated; and upon the Force and Credit of this alone Application, the Patient may safely depend. And now here our Author's Prescription may take place.

XII. *Salmon.*] The External Part of the Work being thus justly performed, we come to the Internal. Let the Sick sweat plentifully, by giving some proper Antidote and Sudorifick: Of which kind, Our *Theriaca Chymica* is no mean thing: Or you may give a Dose of our *Laudanum Specificum*, or rather of our *Laudanum Volatile* over Night, and a Dose of the *Theriaca Chymica* the next Morning, to compleat the *Diaphoresis*.

XIII. *Salmon.*] But where those things cannot be had, let the Patient eat Garlick with Bread, and drink a Glass of good Wine after it, because this defends the Noble and Vital Parts from the Poison. Or, you may give Pouder of *Agnus Castus-seeds* one Dram for a Dose, to be drank in Wine. Or the Pulvis Antilyssus, to one or two Drams: The Preparation you have in Our *Pharmacopœia Londinensis*, *Lib.* 4. *Cap.* 21. *Sect.* 3. I should like much better this following. *Take dried Leaves of Rue, Vervain, Sage, Wormwood, Mint, Baum, Betony, of each in fine Pouder one dram; Virginia Snake-root, Contrayerva, Cloves, Nutmegs, of each in Pouder half a dram; Seeds of Angelica, Cardamums, of each a scruple; Saffron, Cochinele, of each ten grains; Camphir five grains; mix and make a Pouder*, Dose one Dram Morning and Evening in a Glass of Canary. The Pouder of the Liver of a mad Dog, given from a Dram to a Dram and half, two or three times a Day, is said to be an Infallible Remedy: And some have advised to the eating of it Broiled, from two Drams to half an Ounce or more.

XIV. *Salmon.*] The Perfective Cure. This is when the Patient has delay'd the Preventive or Preservative Method for some considerable Time, as 20 or 30 Days, *&c.* by reason of which the Danger is manifest, and so very great, that no Physician can promise the Patient's Life. The Method is this: First exhibit a Vomit with Vinum Benedictum, Vinum Antimoniale, Emeticum Commune, or with Tartarum Emeticum: Or if you please, with the Tincture of the Roots of Black Hellebor, or Extract of the same. Secondly, Purge three or four times with Pilulæ Panarcæ, or Pulvis Catharticus; or rather with Sal Mirabile, because that enters into the Mass of Blood, and corrects the Canine Poison which has got into it, more than any thing else whatsoever.

XV. *Sal-*

XV. *Salmon.*] The next thing the Patient is to do, is to ſweat well with ſtrong Sudorificks, as Treacle-potions, Treacle-water, Mithridate, Venice-Treacle, Electuarium de Ovo, Treacle-water, Our New London-Treacle, Spiritus extribus, or Mixtura ſimplex, Elixir proprietatis, Eclegma ſudorificum, or with our Specifick Laudanum, or Volatile Laudanum, and Theriaca Chymica, repeating this Sweating Courſe at due Intervals, for ſix or ſeven times; Drinking a long in the Intervals of Sweating, an Alexipharmick Diet-Drink.

XVI. *Salmon.*] The ſtrongeſt Veſicatories are to be applied alſo to the Part, or Places near adjacent; or a Cataplaſm of raw Garlick: After which, hot Baths are daily to be uſed, which may attract or draw forth the Poiſon thro' the Pores of the Skin. Let his Diet be moderate, yet avoiding Hunger, as extreamly prejudicial to the Cure. Bleeding is to be avoided; as alſo much Sleeping, becauſe the Humours are apt thereby, to flow back again into the Bowels. He may eat Onions, Leeks, Shalots, and Garlick; as alſo all ſorts of Aromatick, and Alexipharmick Spices, and drink temperately of good fine Wines.

XVII. *Salmon.*] Laſtly, Alexipharmicks or Antidotes in this Caſe ought to be taken in double Doſe, to obliterate the Potency and Foot-ſteps of the Poiſon, which are daily to be given as the Phyſician ſhall adviſe; as Pouders or Tinctures, Electuaries made of Angelica-Roots, Tormentil, Contrayerva, Virginia Snake-Root, Saffron and Cochinele, Tinctura Bezoartica, *&c.* which Preparations are daily to be given in proper Vehicles. Bezoarticum Minerale, and Lunare, may either of them be given to half a Dram in Electuarium de Ovo. Among the reſt of the Medicaments, *which are Antidotes againſt this Diſeaſe, is Native Cinnabar*, which being Levigated and made into a ſubtil Pouder, may be given from a Scruple to half a Dram, in a little *Mithridate*, every Night at Bed-time, for 15 or 20 Days together. Theſe things when Curable, will do; but if they do nothing, the hope of Life is paſt.

CHAP. VII. *Of Madneſs.*

I. THIS Diſeaſe comes from a too ſprightly and exalted Conſtitution of the Blood. There is alſo another kind of Madneſs, which comes after long Agues, and at length degenerates into Folly; which is cauſed by the poorneſs and lowneſs of the Blood, proceeding from its long Fermentation.

Salmon] This Diſeaſe is called in Greek Μανία ἀ μαίνομαι, *inſanio*; and the Sick μανιχὸς, *furioſus*, ἀ μάω, *cum impetu feror.* But ſome will have μανία to come from μαγὸν *quod mentem laxes.*

laxes. In Latin it is called *Insania* and *Furor*; but in English simply, *Madness*; which is a flatulent Distemper in the Substance of the Brain without a Fever, causing a *Delirium*, with an extraordinary Alienation of the Mind; wherein the Imagination and Judgment, or Reason are hurt, (the Memory many times being unconcern'd) caused by the violent and irregular Motions of the Perturbed Animal Spirits.

II. *Salmon.*] *Madness* differs from a *Phrensie*, because this latter has always a burning Fever going about with it. In *Melancholy* and *Madness*, the Reason or Judgment is hurt: But herein they differ; that *Melancholy* is accompanied with Silence for the most part, Sighing, Thoughtfulness, Dejectedness of Countenance, Sadness, and Fear, without a Fever; and the Animal Spirits are as it were dulled, besotted, or darkned with fuliginous Vapours: whereas in *Madness*, there is Turbulency, Anger, Fierceness, Brawlings, roaring out, shouting and dreadful Looks, accompanied with boldness, raging and fury, being as desirous to bite and tare any one as Mad-Dogs, or Ravenous Wolves; and all this without the least appearance of a Fever; and their fury is sometimes so great, that as they do not spare others, so they many times lay Violent Hands upon themselves.

III. *Salmon.*] The Part affected is the Brain without all doubt. because the principal Functions of the Soul are hurt, *viz.* Imagination and Judgment; and the Seat of the Disease seems to be all the Pores of the Brain, because in them the Animal Spirits are lodged, and Idea's are there usually formed. But some will have the Brain to be affected either Primarily or by consent, wherein they draw the Soul in doubtless, as the Primary Subject: For supposing Man to consist of two real and distinct Parts, the one Immaterial, the other Material and Organical; these being intimately joined and united, it is almost morally impossible that the Animal Spirits should discharge their Offices or Duties, but by the Direction and Command of the Soul.

IV. *Salmon.*] The Signs by which this Disease is known, are a wild Madness, and irrational Conceptions; the Sick is as mad as a Wild Beast, and seeks to wound and tear every thing he meets; there is a constant watching, which still more and more alienates the Mind, which is accompanied with a most wonderful Strength, so that some of them are able to break Iron Chains; they endure the greatest Cold, tho' stark Naked, as also Hunger, sharp Whippings and severe Blows, without any sensible Hurt; tear off their own Hair, rend and spoil their Clothes, break their Windows, and ruin whatever they come near, always playing a thousand mischievous Tricks. As they are vastly strong, so they are never tired out, but are always threatning or muttering to themselves, and talking of great Things with all the Wildness imaginable. Their Eyes are wild, sometimes stedfast, looking stern and big, and they are always contriving some Mischief; because

of

of the irregular, swift and furious Passage of the Animal Spirits thro' the Brain, whereby they many times Curse, Swear, Rave vehemently, and if they cannot come to hurt any body else, endeavour to tear and hurt themselves; for which cause they are forc'd to be Fetter'd. Sometimes they bite or strike, rend or tear even their Friends, if they can come at them, with a Savage fury, having a vehement Pain in their Heads, and a constant Wakefulness, Sleeping neither Night nor Day, as aforesaid; because the furious Animal Spirits irradiate, or violently rush thro' the whole Brain. Sometimes they are of a suddain become hasty, angry, rude, and boisterous, even to the breaking of their Chains or Fetters, beating to pieces Walls, Doors, or whatever stands in their way, being incredibly strong, by reason of the fiery Strength of the Animal Spirits, which like Lightning pierce thro' all the Pores.

V. *Salmon.*] *Helmont* says, that Mad-men, altho' they lie stark Naked all Night, upon the bare Ground or Stones in cold or frosty Weather, yet they are not frozen, nor are their Limbs mortified with the sharpest North-Winds. And this insensibility of Cold, seems to proceed from the Soul's being so busy within, that it does not attend to what it thinks of less concern without. Sometimes they have Intervals from their extremity of Raving, and will become more mild and ruleable, yet still they will be wild in their Imaginations, irrational in their Discourses, be Intractable, Sing, Roar, Rant, and be very Talkative, Jumping, Leaping, and using other strange Actions and Postures of their Bodies, looking haughtily and impudently, being surly and fearless, lascivious in their Discourse, libidinous in many of their Postures, abounding with Letcherous Inclinations, and very solicitous about a great Number of Things which do not concern them. Love, Ambition, Pride, Cares, Fears, Study, Envy, Wrath, Shame, and Discontent, are for the most part fore-runners of this dreadful Madness.

VI. *Salmon.*] The causes of this Disease come from adust or over-heated Blood, adust Melancholy, and burning hot Choler, by which the Animal Spirits and Brain become hot and intemperate; so that if it is caused by hot yellow Choler, a Delirium succeeds, with an exertion of vehement Strength: but if from adust or vehemently hot Blood, changed into Choler, and made Volatile, then it causes a laughing, singing or merry Madness. Or it may proceed from the conception or rising up of strange *Idea*'s, which come from perturbations of the Mind, which have their incentive Causes going along with them, causing either a furious, merry, or melancholy Distraction. And this again may be caused by means of the degeneration of the Animal Spirits, from their mild and benign Nature, from their being corrupted in their Passages with some Saline, or sharp, Acrimonious, Poisonous, or Arsenical Sulphur or Quality latent in the Blood and Lymphatick Juice, or Succus Pancreaticus: and this is manifest from the bitings of

Mad

Mad Dogs, drinking of Poison, *&c.*

VII. *Salmon.*] But without doubt, this Disease is promoted thro' the irregular Motion of the inflamed Animal Spirits; for while the Fermentation of the Blood is gentle, and according to Nature, so long the Motions of the other Juices, as also of the Animal Powers, are gentle also, and so long the Soul or Mind is quiet. But when the Motions of the Blood and other Juices become Torrid and Violent, the Animal Spirits become so likewise; and being carried with Violence into the Brain, they no longer obey the Soul or Mind; as the Soul it self is no longer subservient to its own Oeconomy, but is provoked and made furious, by the torrid and too vehemently moved Animal Spirits, which excite Passion, Fear, Terror, Anger, Wrath, Violence, *&c.* But this withal we say, that some external Cause raising Passions in the Soul, may be the first or remote Cause of the præternatural Ferment in the Blood, and other Juices; which raising acrimonious and sharp Particles, by their violent Motion towards the Brain, kindle the Spirits, and cause them to rove up and down the whole Brain; but more particularly about the *Glandula Pinealis*, which shooting violently into, and thro' the Brain and Muscles, like as it were a Thunder-bolt, make a perfect Alienation of the Mind, which being thus conquer'd (as it were) loses all its command over the Body, so that it can no longer govern the Attention, but lets all the disorderly Passions of Madness appear.

VIII. *Salmon.*] And these inflamed and enraged Animal Spirits, furiously rushing into all Parts of the Body, chiefly the Muscular, (as aforesaid) they irradiate the same with a mighty Power and Force, (for it is the mighty Spirit which makes the Body strong) and this is the Reason why such as are Mad are so vehemently Strong, and can endure the sharpest Cold, Stripes, Prickings, Hunger, and other Inconveniencies, without the least sense of Hurt or Pain. And so some sort of Poison inwardly given, or externally received by bitings of poisonous Creatures, as also several other things, may stir up this præternatural Ferment in the Blood, *&c.* whereby either Volatile, bilious, or Sulphureous Particles, or a Volatile Acid being excited, they set the Animal Spirits on fire, and continually add Fuel to them; whereby running violently through every little Channel of the Brain, they form all kinds of *Idea*'s, especially such as lead the Soul or Mind out of its way; and Anger or Wrath being present withal, adds to the Vehemency of the Motion, and gives a double Life to the Fury.

IX. *Salmon.*] *The Prognostics. Hippocrates, Sect.* 2. *Aph.* 2. says, That if Sleep mitigates the Delirium, it is a good sign: And *Sect.* 6. *Aph.* 21. If Mad People have Varices, or the Hemorrhoids, the Distemper will be cured. And *Sect.* 6. *Aph.* 53. That Madness is less dangerous which is attended with Laughter, than that with Seriousness. Young and middle-Aged People are most subject to this Disease; yet old People are not altogether

together free; but when it seizes such, it seldom admits of Cure, for the Animal Spirits seem to be as hot as Fire. If it is Inveterate or Hereditary, or caused by the biting of a Mad-Dog, or other Mad Creature, it is seldom perfectly cured; for the old Impressions of the Brain (which were before Madness) will be worn out, and the inflamed Spirits being degenerated from their natural Temper, are scarcely ever reduced to their former State. That Madness which is attended with great Rashness and Vehemency, is more dangerous than that which is Mild. That Madness which is caused by a certain Ferment, which may at length be spent, may have lucid Intervals; yet it cannot be so obliterated, but that some Reliques will be left in the Muscular and Nervous Parts; which by some external Cause, may be excited again, and so the Madness returns, the Animal Spirits being a-fresh inflamed with the new incentive Ferment. If the Disease has taken deep root, it is difficult, yea, scarcely to be cured; for the Impressions formerly made in the Brain being rased out, and totally obliterated, and new irregular Impressions made after them, being firmly rooted, it will be impossible ever to remove the latter. Sometimes the Disease will turn to Melancholy and Folly, but in such, upon new occasions of Fear or Anger, a new incentive Ferment may be excited, which inflaming the Animal Spirits again, a new Paroxysm of Madness will again appear. If the Mad Person is sick at Stomach, apt to Vomit, or is able to retain nothing within him, has breakings out in the Face, or a great Hoarseness, with obstructions of the Lungs, or has Ulcers in the Arms, Feet, or other Parts, the Case is very Dangerous.

X. *Salmon.*] As for the Diet, let the Sick be rather in a cold Air inclining to moistness, than in a hot; and decline the heat of the Sun, and going abroad in hot Weather, or in the Dog-Days, or in windy Weather; for windy and stormy Weather disturb the Humors in the Body, making them swell and ferment: in which Condition, being carried to the Brain, they disturb the Animal Powers, and increase the Confusion and Distraction of the Mind. Let the Sick avoid hot and windy Meats, and use such as are cooling and moistning, and a little Acid, as Panada, Barley-broth, Barley boil'd and eaten with Salt, a little Juice of Limons, and Sugar, boiled Wheat so prepared; also Broth of Chickens, Partridges, Hens, Pullets, made with cooling and moistning Herbs; sharp Aromatick Spices, Mustard, and other Volatiles are to be avoided. Let the Drink be Barley-water, or Spaw-waters, Decoctions of Lettice, Purslane, and Pimpernel: Decoction of Swallows, with Lapis Prunellæ, has been found good by Experience: So also Spring-water made pleasant with Oil of Sulphur, and double refin'd Sugar, of which the Sick may drink at pleasure; but all sorts of Wines, Brandies, Spirits, and hot Cordial-waters, *&c.* more especially, if they be Spiced, are to be avoided as Poison.

Poison. Exercise ought to be moderate; Running, Leaping, Dancing, Riding, whether on Horse-back, or in a Coach, *&c.* are to be avoided. Long Sleeps are to be induced by both Internal and External Soporiferous Medicaments, which are cooling and moistning; and Watchings, and all such things as occasion them, are to be avoided. The Belly is to be kept always loose, and the Courses and Hemorrhoids, if stopt, are to be provoked: So also Fistula's and old Ulcers, if stopt, must be made to flow again. And let the Mind be kept as much as may be, free from all Passions, by letting none but Friends, and such as the Sick loves, to be present; and by bringing before him whatever may be pleasant, and seems to divert the Mind, avoiding all the contrary things. We now come to the Medicinal Cure.

XI. You must therefore prescribe high Cordials, such as are Venice-Treacle, Electuarium de Ovo, the Countesses Pouder, Sir *Walter Rawleigh*'s Pouder, in Plague-water, Treacle-water, or some other fit Vehicle; and also prescribe a restorative Diet.

Salmon.] If the Madness comes from a Superfluity of hot Blood, the Cure ought to be begun with Blood-letting, to be so often repeated, and in such Quantities as the Physician shall see cause for; Afterwards, the Stomach is to be emptied with proper Emeticks, such as Vinum Benedictum, Vinum Antimoniale, Crocus Metallorum in Substance, Tartar Emetick; which Doses are so often to be repeated, 'till the Stomach is well cleansed, and the Sick even weakened by taking them. But all Physicians have a mighty Opinion of the Roots of black Hellebor, because by the taking thereof, many mad People have been perfectly cured. *Helmont* declares it to be an Excellent Thing, because it alleviates or takes away the uneasiness which numerous and troublesome Phantasms give the Patient: And among other things he commends dipping over Head and Ears in cold Water, by which he says, he has seen many cured.

XII. *Salmon.*] But if the Sick is not very raging, and takes his natural Rest, you may begin the Cure with Purging; for which purpose we commend the *Tinctura aurea nova in Lib.* 1. *Cap.* 1. *Sect.* 16. of this Work, or the *Pulvis Catharticus at Sect.* 20. or *Pilulæ Panarcæ, at Sect.* 22. or *Our Tinctura Cathartica*, any of which may be repeated six, eight, or ten times; after which you may give a resting Dose of some Opiate, either liquid or solid. But among Catharticks none exceeds *Sena*, as I for a long time have proved, and by manifold Experience I can justly affirm: But if the Stomach is foul, or the raging Madness is so great that none of the former Courses will prevail, you must Vomit with *Mel Helleboratum*, given from one Dram to three; and weaker Persons with *Syrupus Rosaceus Solutivus cum Helleboro*, which is two, three, or four times to be repeated, or oftner, as the Physician shall see fit, or need may require. If the raging Madness is with extream Violence, together with a continual Watching, you must then begin

begin with *Opiates*, which are cautiously to be exhibited; for unless the Sick can be brought to rest, all other things will do no good.

XIII. In young Persons, Bleed in the Arm; and take away eight or nine Ounces of Blood, twice or thrice every fourth Day. You may Bleed also in the jugular Veins: After which, pursue the whole Cure with the following Purging Medicine, which must be given every third or fourth Day, whilst the Disease lasts: But in the Interim it is to be Noted, that after the Patient has been purged eight or ten times, the Evacuating Medicine must be omitted for a Week or two. The Purging Medicines are these: *Take White-Bryony-roots in Pouder one dram; Cow's-milk four ounces; mix for a Dose.* Or, *Take of the same Roots half an ounce, or six drams; White-wine four ounces; Infuse a whole Night, and in the strained Liquor dissolve Syrup of Violets one ounce; mix them for a Potion.* Or, *Take Cambogium 14 grains; Black-Cherry-water three ounces; Syrup of Clovegilliflowers half an ounce; mix and make a Potion.*

Salmon.] It is the Opinion of our Modern Physicians, (and it may be not without Reason) that since the Animal Spirits are as it were all on Fire, darting themselves thro' the Brain, *&c.* like Thunder and Lightning, that Heat and Fury ought to be extinguished, and they reduced to a regular Motion: And this is absolutely done by Bleeding, which if often repeated will effect it; but it ought not to be in too great a quantity at a time, lest it induces a Dropsy. And this may be done sometimes in the Arm, sometimes in the Neck, sometimes in the Fore-head, sometimes in the Foot; for by this means, the Soul or Mind is made calmer, for that new Blood is every Day bred of fresh Chylous Juice, and so its Discrasy is amended. According to the Age and Strength of the Patient, Blood may be taken away from 8 to 16 Ounces at a time.

XIV. *Salmon.*] *Venesection* being performed as before directed, *Transfusion of Blood* from other Animals, as from an *Ass*, *Colt*, *Calf*, *Lamb*, *Sheep*, &c. has been of extraordinary Use in this Cure; and by this means I have known several Mad People to be cured, and that with good Success. And some Authors say, that the Infusion of several Medicaments, especially *Opiates*, into the *Meseraic Veins*, will not be unprofitable.

XV. *Salmon.*] What *Emeticks* and *Cathartick*s Our Author has here prescribed, may do in some Patients; but in a vehement Madness, and in very strong People, I am doubtful of their Operation. *Willis* has these following Prescriptions, which are of good use: *Take Sulphur of Antimony from eight to ten grains; Cream of Tartar half a scruple; mix them for a Dose*, which is a pretty strong one. Or this: *Take Mercurius Vitæ two grains; Conserve of Red Roses a dram; mix them for a Dose.* Or this: *Take Emetick Tartar two or three grains; Salt of Wormwood two grains; mix them for a Dose.* He wonderfully crys up *Aurum Vitæ*, as also *Mercurial Medicines*, for as much as they are apt to work both by Vomit and Stool; also by Sweat, Urine, and Salivation:

vation: And for this purpose we commend either the *Princes Pouder*, the Preparation of which you may have in Our *Pharmacopœia Bateana*, the Second Edition; or Our *Impetus Mercurij Aurique in Lib.* 1. *Cap.* 1. *Sect.* 21. of this Work. And these things we commend the more, for that *Willis* says, he had seen some Madmen perfectly cured by Salivation.

XVI. *Salmon.*] *Paracelsus* commends his *Gilla* or *Grilla*, saying it is a Specifick Cephalick, and crys up its hidden Virtues. He orders it to be Distilled in *Vinum Vitæ*, and to be Circulated so long, 'till it cannot touch the bottom, and to be given in Malmsey. This many of his Followers say, is *Nitre distilled with Rectified or Alchoolizated Spirit of Wine, which is afterwards to be Circulated so long 'till it becomes altogether Volatile and Spiritual.* Others think it to be a Preparation of *Vitriol*, viz. *White Vitriol depurated*; and this *Paracelsus* himself seems to say, in his Book *de Rebus Naturalibus, Lib.* 1. *Cap.* 8. where he treats of the Virtues of Crude *Vitriol* and *Colcothar*: See all the Preparations and Uses of it in the Second Edition of our *Pharm. Bateana, Lib.* 1. *Cap.* 9 *Sect.* 65. where you may receive abundant Satisfaction. Other Authors chiefly commend Vomitaries prepared from *Antimony*, as *Tartar Emetick*, *Aqua Benedicta Rulandi*, &c. of which we have already discoursed in *Sect.* XI. afore-going.

XVII. *Salmon.*] Others cry up *Black Hellebor and its Extract.* It grew plentifully in the Island *Anticyra*, and was anciently of Repute for this purpose; whence the Proverb spoken to Mad or Melancholy Men, *Naviga ad Anticyras.* *Willis* as a Cathartick commends this: *Take Extract of Black Hellebor, Calomelanos, or Mercurius dulcis, of each a scruple; mix and make a Bolus for one Dose.* But inferior to no Purge in this case, are the *Crystals of Luna*, or the *Pilulæ Lunares*, which may be given from 3 to 10 or 12 Grains, as the Physician shall advise. This Medicament is a Specifick Cathartick against all Diseases of the Head and Brain. Or this: *Take Magistery or Crystals of Lunæ five or six grains; Magistery of Amber seven grains; Butyrum Perlarum (which is made as Butter of Arsenick)* 10 *grains; Nitrum Antimoniale a scruple; mix and make a Pouder for one Dose.*

XVIII. *Salmon.*] *Paracelsus* says, that in this Cure we must respect two Things, *viz.* to Refrigerate, and to Condense the Peccant Matter; and for this purpose he commends *Narcoticks* and *Anodynes*; of which the most excellent of his, are the *Essence of Henbane, Mandrake*, and *Poppy*, also his *Laudanum Opiatum*, which is beyond Comparison. *Sylvius* commends also the same; likewise *Laudanum Cydoniatum*, and asserts that Cooling Clysters are of very good use. And indeed almost all Authors commend the use of *Opiates*, as the most proper thing in this Cure, for they presently compose the furious and raging Animal Spirits; but they are not to be given at first in too large a Dose, lest the Spirits being much exhausted by the violence of the Disease, and long continued Madness, the Fermentation of the Blood should be so much enfeebled, as to hazard

a

a Stagnation, upon which Death would certainly ensue: But first *begin with Anodynes*, as a Dose of *Camphire*, (instead of *Opium*) which will a little stop the violent Motion of the Blood, and Fury of the Spirits; then come to the use of *Laudanum*, first in a small Dose, then to encrease it gradually: For in a word, from *Opiates* (well prepared) the only and certain Cure of this Disease is to be expected; because they wonderfully lay asleep the furious Animal Spirits, which are violently moved, and absolutely regulate their Course.

XIX. *Salmon.*] Various Authors, have as various Preparations of *Laudanum* which they prescribe; but among them all, either that of Our Author called *Laudanum Liquidum*, or that of Our Prescription *made with an Acid*, as we have taught in *Lib.* 1. *Cap*, 1. *Sect.* 14. of this Work, are of singular good use: Or you may exhibit *Eclegma Sudorificum at Sect.* 28. which may be given from 10 Grains to a Scruple, half a Dram or more. To these things you may add Our *Guttæ Vitæ*, to be given from 30 Drops to 60, 80, or more, once every Day, in any convenient Vehicle. Also Our *Laudanum Volatile*, to which a few Drops of *Oil of Sulphur* may be added, in making it up into Pills, and may be given from 2 Grains to 6 or 8, once every Day: And inferior to none of these things is Our *Laudanum Specificum*, approved by a long Series of Experience.

XX. *Salmon.*] But there are *Mineral Laudana*, commended by Chymical Writers, which are said much to exceed all others. *Helmont* mightily praises the *Narcotick Philosophick Sulphur of Vitriol*, which is Soporiferous, and sweter (in its effects) than Honey; which he says is a Sovereign thing in all Passions of the *Hypochondria*, and Alienations of the Mind, preventing the ascending of those wild and malign Exhalations or Vapors arising from the Womb, Spleen and *Præcordia*, to the Head and Brain. And nothing inferior to this is Our *Impetus Martis*, which is a noble Preparation from the *Sulphur Vitrioli Martis*, and operates in a very small Dose: It may be given daily from 40 to 80 Drops in *Decoction, Juice, or Essence of Pimpernel*, or *of Hypericon*, or *of Purslane*; and after some time it may be given twice a Day, *viz.* Morning and Evening, in the same manner. It is a generous Medicament, and will not go without its desired Success; exceeding any *Vegetable Laudanum* whatsoever.

XXI. *Salmon.*] But sometimes while *Opiates* are in course, either *Emeticks* or *Cathartick*s ought now and then to be given, to cleanse the Stomach and Bowels of those Heterogeneous Humors, which either breed or contribute to the Disease; as also by way of Diversion, to recal back from the Head and Brain, the offending Matter there present. What these Medicaments are, we have already enumerated in some of the former Sections of this Chapter. However, in my Judgment, the *Tartar Emetick* is a much better Vomit to be given in this case, than this of our Author's, made of *Cambogium*; yet they may be both given alter-

alternately, for Variety sake: And many times we see that change of Medicines do good, tho' it be to one less proper or effectual. The *Emetick Tartar* may be given from three to six Grains in a little Posset-drink, sweetned with *Syrup of Clove-gilliflowers or of Violets*, giving them much Posset-drink to take after it. And as for *Cathartick*, the afore-named *Tinctura Cathartica* is of singular use; so also the *Pulvis Cornachini*; Or, *the Extract of Black Hellebor, from a scruple to half a dram, mixt with* 10 *grains of Diagredium*, which is a Specifick in this Disease: But the *Infusion of Sena* (being strong, and well made) ought now and then to be administred, as being inferior to none of them.

XXII. *Salmon.*] Having gone thus thro' the Methodical Course of the Cure, nothing more remains, but that we give you some Specifick against this Disease, which the *great Masters of Our Art* have from time to time left us. *Paracelsus* commends the use of the *Spirit of Saturn, Mars and Mercury, Extract of Camphir, Aurum potabile, Tincture of Luna*, &c. *Polypody of the Oak* is good, given in *Infusion or Decoction*: But to bring the Blood to its due *Crasis*, all *Chalybeat Medicines* are of singular use; for they allay the Fury, and stop the Motion of the raging Spirit, and relax the violent Fermentation of the Blood. This is esteemed: *Take Sal Prunellæ four ounces; Pearls prepared half an ounce; Crocus Martis astringens two drams; Camphir a scruple; Sugar-candy four ounces; make all into a fine Pouder*: Dose twice or thrice a Day, from one to two Drams, in Spring-water, or Water distilled from *Purslane*; and let his Drink be *Whey of Cows, or rather of Goat's-milk*, which he may drink of at Pleasure; or instead thereof, he may drink the *Decoction of Purple-flowered Pimpernel*, or *Decoction of Hypericon*, either alone, or mixed with *Goats-whey*.

XXIII. *Salmon.*] Add to the former things, *Tincture of Meconium, extracted with an Acid Menstruum*, as *Spirit of Sulphur, Lime-juice, Juice of Limons, or Juice of Quinces, or with Canary made Acid with Spirit of Vitriol or Salt. The Blood of an Ass* taken from behind the Ears is a Specifick, and has a singular and wonderful Virtue, in overcoming this Disease: Of which *Michael* a famous Physician has given us this Prescript: *Take a Linnen-Cloth, and soak it a sufficient time in Asses Blood, taken from behind the Ears; then put it in a convenient quantity of Pimpernel-water, and Water of Flowers of Hypericon, infusing it so long 'till the Water is tinged; of which let the Patient drink*: With this Medicine the said *Michael* affirms, he has cured such as has have been Mad. *Hartman's Antepileptick Spirit*, made of a mixture *of Salt of Urine and Acid Spirit of Vitriol* is much commended. *Sal Prunellæ dissolved in Goats-whey*, has a peculiar Virtue of curbing the Fury, appeasing the enraged Animal Spirits.

XXIV. *Salmon.*] *Spirit of Luna* drawn after this following Method, is said to be an excellent Specifick: *Take Filings of Silver one ounce; Sulphur* 2 *ounces; mix and gently melt, and unite them in a Crucible; then pouder*

them

them finely, and affuſe thereon Spirit of Sal Armoniack a ſufficient quantity; Extract a Tincture according to Art, which Cryſtallize, and by a Retort, draw a Lunar Spirit: Doſe from 16 to 20 Drops, in any proper Vehicle. *Oil of Pearls* rightly prepared, is of wonderful Efficacy, to allay and quiet the raging Animal Spirits, the which has been often experienced in the Cure of this Diſeaſe. *Take of Our Specifick Laudanum two or three grains, diſſolve it in Eſſence of Pimpernel and Hipericon, of each an ounce and half: Dulcifie it with Syrup of Purſlane, or of Juice of Citrons, and give it for a Doſe once a Day.* The *Juice of Swallows*, given an Ounce at a time in *Pimpernel-water* 3 or 4 times, is ſaid to have cured many Mad People.

XXV. *Salmon.*] The following Preſcripts I have found effectual by my own Experience. *Take Syrup of the Juice of Citrons four ounces; Tincture of Luna, and of Lapis Lazuli, of each a dram; Amber prepared, Magiſtery of Pearls and of Crabs-Eyes, of each half a dram; Eſſence of Hypericon, and of Pimpernel, of each an ounce; mix them:* Doſe from ſix Drams to an Ounce, or more, Morning and Evening. *Take Eſſences of Agrimony, Hypericon, and Pimpernel, of each two ounces; Extract of choice Sena two drams; Sulphur of Vitriol, Tincture of Luna, and of Lapis Lazuli, of each a dram; Syrup of Limons an ounce and half; mix them:* Doſe from half an Ounce to an Ounce twice a Day. *Take Nitrum Antimoniatum, Native Cinnabar levigated, of each a dram; Magiſtry of Amber and of Lapis Lazuli, Cryſtals of Luna, of each a ſcruple; Butter of Pearls 15 grains;* mix and make a Pouder for 4 Doſes, to be given in Eſſence of Hypericon or of Pimpernel. *Take Pimpernel-water three ounces; Syrup of Violets ſix drams; Clyſſus or Gas Sulphuris a dram; mix them for a Doſe;* and if the Sick cannot Sleep, but watches much, add *Gut.* 15 or 20 *of Liquid Laudanum of our Author:* This appeaſes the *Archæus*, and ſettles the roving Spirits after an admirable manner. *Take Tartar Vitriolate an ounce; Sanguis Draconis, Goat's-blood dried, of each half an ounce; make all into a fine Pouder:* Doſe two Scruples Morning and Night, made up into a Bolus with *Mithridate* or *Venice-Treacle. Take Native Cinnabar levigated one ounce; Bezoar Minerale half an ounce; Flowers of Sulphur two drams; mix and make a fine Pouder:* Doſe one Dram, Morning, Noon, and Night, made up into a Bolus with *Mithridate*, as aforeſaid.

CHAP. VIII. *Of a Scald or Scabbed-Head.*

I. LET the *Potio Communis Purgativa* be twice exhibited: Then, *Take Oil of bitter Almonds, Oil of Bays, Aſhes of Southernwood-leaves, of each one ounce; mix them well for a Liniment*, with which anoint the whole Head, rubbing it in very well, and then cover it with a Hog's-Bladder. But firſt of all,

let the Hair be cut off, and afterwards rub off the Scabs or Scales, by little and little every Morning, according as they are ready to fall away.

II. *Salmon.*] This Disease, which the Greeks call Ἀχῶρες *Achores*, and the Latins, *Favus*, *Crusta Lactea*; we in English, call a *Scald* or *Scabbed-Head*. It is caused from Excrementitious Humours abounding, by reason of an acrimonious, sharp or acid Lympha and Serum, which making a morbid Fermentation in the Blood, expels them in place, manner, and form. Now this Scald or Sore-Head has different Appearances, according as the said Humours are more or less Vitiated, and are more or less Viscous or Thick.

III. *Salmon.*] The remote Cause is (besides what evil Juices the Child might receive from the Parents) from its greediness of Eating and Drinking, more than the Oeconomy of the Bowels can well digest, whence putrid Humours are bred in the Stomach, and from thence many Heterogeneous Particles are communicated to, and mixed wth the Blood; all which not being possible to be discharged by Transpiration, Nature to ease her self of a Burthen, protrudes them upon some weak Part, and fullest of open Pores, as a fit Receptacle to lodge them in, where many times it becomes the Seminary of a most Virulent and long continued Disease

IV. *Salmon.*] *The proximate Cause* is the generated Humour, which is sometimes partly thin, partly thick, partly serous, and corrupted Lympha; which is grumous and biting, of an acrid, or salt and acid Quality, generating a kind of Tumour, with a protruded Matter, which is either of a scurfy Substance, or a dry Scab, or a running Sore, sometimes of a white Colour, sometimes of a yellow Colour, sometimes reddish, and sometimes of other very differing Colours, according to the Nature and Substance of the Humour latent in the Part.

V. *Salmon.*] It is either a kind of Scurff called *Furfures* or *Porrigo*; in which a scurfy Substance, not much unlike to Bran, (in Scratching or Combing) falls from the Skin. Or it is a dry and crusty Scab, of a whitish Colour, which is called *Crusta Lactea*, from its Colour; and this is the Dry Scald. Or it is Moist, Running, and full of Matter, called *Tubercula Ulcerosa*, the moist or *running Scald*. And this is either *Achores*, Ulcerous Pustules, out of which a viscous or glutinous Matter continually issues, which makes a very great Scab. Or it is *Favus*, wherein the Substance of the Flesh and Skin is hollow, like to a Honey-Comb, out of whose spungy Holes, an Ichor or Purulent Juice continually flows, which drying becomes a Scab; but by reason of its continual weeping, often falls off, and so becomes raw again. These Diseases are also either *recent* or *inveterate*, and both these may be either *gentle* or *malign*.

VI. *Salmon.*] These Diseases in their beginnings are not dangerous, but they are generally of difficult Cure: And whether *recent* or *inveterate*, are very rebellious and long in curing, and often when seemingly well, return again. If *inveterate* tho

not malign, it is not cured without much trouble, and with a great length of Time, and sometimes degenerates into a Defluvium, or Alopecia, or Calvities, which is an universal Baldness. *But if inveterate and the Matter is malign*, it many times thro' long continuance, eats thro' all to the very Skull, and sometimes corrupts that, and penetrates it also, making it so rotten, that it will be necessary to take it out.

VII. *Salmon.*] As to the Cure, if the Disease is inveterate, whether gentle or malign, none of the common Purgers will have Power enough to deal therewith; and therefore what our Author has prescribed will be to no purpose: but you must be obliged to use such Preparations as are *Mercurial*; among which are our *Family Pills*, and other Pills of like kind, which have either *Arcanum Corallinum*, *Turpethum Minerale*, the *Princes Pouder*, or *Aurum Vitæ* in them: The *Impetus Mercurii Aurique* may be given in a small Dose in some purging Bolus, or the *Pilulæ Panarcæ*, and in especial the *Pulvis Catharticus*; for that these Things purge out the salt and serous Humors, which are the Morbifick Matter, and destroy it in its root.

VIII. *Salmon.*] And it will be necessary to take some of these Medicaments every Morning, or every other Morning, or every third Morning, as the Strength of the Patient will bear them; and to repeat their taking for at least 6, 8, or 10 times, or more. And sometimes between whiles you may exhibit a Dose of *Sal Mirabile* for change-sake; or in place thereof the *Sal Panaretum*, which is an incomparable thing; for entering into the Mass of Blood and Juices, it will rarely go without the desired Effects. See it in *Lib.* 1. *Cap.* 1. *Sect.* 23. of this Work aforegoing.

IX. *Salmon.*] But if the Patient has been surfeited, or the Stomach is very foul, it will be best to give *Emeticks* first, that the first Regions of the Bowels may be cleansed of the more gross Matter: If Children, the *Gilla*, or *Sal Vitrioli*, which is very safe: If elder, and the Patient is strong, then Vomit, with the *Emetick Tartar*, or such like, proportioning the Dose to the Age and Strength of the Patient. After the *Emetick* has been twice repeated, you may then come to the use of the aforesaid *Cathartick*s, as we have already before directed.

X. *Salmon.*] After the Use of the Design'd *Emeticks* and *Cathartick*s, it will be necessary that a *Purging Diet-Drink* be instituted, for the Sick to drink daily of, that if any Recrements of Humors be left in the Body, which the former Purging had not fully carried off, they may by this be corrected and evacuated. For this purpose there is a very good Prescript in our *Ars Chirurgica*, *lib.* 2. *cap.* 11 *sect.* 14. but because that Book may not be in every Man's Hand, we shall advise either to the *Cerevisia Purgativa*, or to the *Decoctum Amarum Purgativum* in *Lib.* 1. *cap.* 1. *sect.* 10, & 13. *viz.* to that which the Physician shall judge most proper and agreeable to the Habit of Body and Constitution of the Patient.

XI. *Salmon.*] These things being thus prescribed, we must

now come to the application of *Topicks*; of which in a *recent and gentle Scald Head*, this may be effectual enough. *Take Mercurius Dulcis levigated one ounce*; *Lime-water a pint*; *mix and shake them together till the Mercury resolves into a black Pouder*; *then add Damask Rosewater half a pint*; *mix them by shaking*. With this wash the Parts affected Morning and Evening, and sometimes oftner. If the *Lotion* is too strong, you may allay it, and make it weaker, by adding more of the *Damask Rose-water*.

XII. *Salmon.*] Presently after bathing it with the former Wash, you may anoint it with this Ointment. *Take Oil of Ben six ounces*; *Flowers of Sulphur three ounces*; *Oil of Tartar per deliquium*; *Pouder of Tobacco, of each one ounce*; *Artificial Cinnabar levigated half an ounce*; *mix them*; and with this Liniment anoint the affected Parts twice a Day.

XIII. *Salmon.*] In a recent Scald, of what kind soever, this following Compositum is of extraordinary efficacy. *Take Oils of Tobacco, and of the Pulp of the Bitter Gourd (which grows plentifully thro' all the* West-Indies) *made by Insolation, of each* 4 *ounces*; *Pouder of Coloquintida, and of dry'd Virginia Tobacco, of each* 2 *ounces*; *Ox Gall* 3 *ounces*; *Turpentine an ounce and half*; *mix, melt, and make an Ointment*, with which let the Sores be dresst twice a Day. But this is to be observed, that before the Anointing, they ought to be well bathed or washed with *Juice of Wormwood*, or with *Southernwood* very hot, or with *a strong Decoction of Tobacco made in Urine*.

XIV. *Salmon.*] Whether the Affect is recent or inveterate, gentle or malign, dry or moist, you may first wash the Parts well with *a strong Decoction of Pulp of Coloquintida, or of Common Wormwood*, or with *an Infusion of Aloes in fair Water, or Water in which Ox or Sheeps Galls have been mix'd and dissolved*: After which apply this following Cataplasm. *Take Garlike freed from its Skins, what quantity you please, beat it in a Mortar to a Pulp*; *then add Pouder of Tobacco enough to bring it to the consistency of a Cataplasm*: Mix and apply it, renewing it once or twice a day, as you see need requires: It powerfully draws forth the morbid Matter, and disposes the Sores to a speedy Cure.

XV. *Salmon.*] *Juice of Green Tobacco mixed with Wine* is an extraordinary good Lotion; but where that cannot be had, *an Infusion of dry'd* Virginia *Tobacco in Wine or Brandy* may do as well; giving inwardly every Night *Pouder of Vipers Flesh from a scruple to a dram*; and *Sal Volatile Oleosum from gut.* 8 *to* 30, *in fair Water, or Water mix'd with a strong bodied Wine the next Morning*; because these things absorb the Acid, which generates the Morbifick Matter. *Tincture of Antimony* is also good, *Bezoar Minerale*, and other Sudorifics and Absorbents: And some commend *the Fat of Vipers*, some few Grains of it being given in *Conserve of Speedwell*. After the Head is washed with the aforenamed Lotions, you may apply over all this Ointment. *Take Unguentum de Enula, or in place thereof Ointment of Tobacco*, 4 *ounces*; *Flowers of Sulphur, Artificial Cinnabar levigated, of each half an ounce*; *Camphir in fine Pouder, Calomelanos, of each* 2 *drams*;

drams; mix them, and apply the Ointment.

XVI. *Salmon.*] Or you may anoint with this. *Take Golden colour'd Palm Oil, or Veal Fat purified, 4 ounces; Flowers of Sulphur or Sulphur Vive, Mercurius Dulcis levigated, Pouder of Tobacco, Pulp of Colocynthis in Pouder, fine Aloes in Pouder, of each 3 drams; with Juice of green Tobacco, if it can be gotten, or in place thereof Juice of Wormwood or Celandine, or Ox-Gall, a sufficient quantity; mix and make an Ointment,* with which dress twice a Day.

XVII. *Salmon.*] If the Disease is *Inveterate and Malign,* you must either use the *Cataplasm ad Porriginem* in Our *Doron Medicum, lib. 3. cap. 7. sect. 1.* by which all the Hair will be pulled off by the roots, and so the Cure facilitated to a great degree; Or you must apply this following sharp Unguent. *Take Oil made of the Pulp of Coloquintida by Insolation, or rather Boiling, 4 ounces; Juice of Tobacco 6 ounces; Turpentine 3 ounces; Flower of Sulphur, Scammony in fine Pouder, of each 2 ounces; Pouder of Coloquintida, Pouder of Tobacco, of each one ounce; White Precipitate, Verdigrise, of each half an ounce; with Ox Gall a sufficient quantity; mix and make an Ointment,* with which let the Head be drest twice a Day; always washing it with the *Water of the Griffin* before application of the Ointment.

XVIII. *Salmon.*] This follow-lowing Composition has been of approved use. *Take Ox Gall, which boil up to the thickness almost of new Honey, a pint; Abstersive Sulphur of Vitriol four ounces; Flos Æris, or prepared Verdigrise, 1 ounce: mix them, and keep it for use.* This Medicament lays a sure Foundation for Cures of this kind; but a moderate Use of it is to be observed; it is not to be used when the Scald or Scab is in a good condition, but only when necessity requires it. How the *Sulphur of Vitriol* is made, see our *Doron Medicum lib. 2. cap. 9. sect. 7* and how the *Verdigrise,* see *lib. 3. cap. 6. sect. 13.* of the same Book.

CHAP. IX. *Of Inflammations of the Eyes.*

I. IT is known of it self. Bleed in the Arm ten Ounces, and the next Day give the *Potio Communis Purgativa*, which reiterate two Days after; and once more again after the like space of time. The same Night let the Sick take a resting Draught of an Ounce of the Syrup of Poppies. Also let him take four Ounces of an Emulsion of the greater Cold Seeds, and white Poppy Seed, three or four times in the Intervals of Purgation. *Take Plantane-water, Red Rose-water, and Frog-spawn-water, of each an ounce; Tutty prepared in subtil Pouder a dram, make a Mixture.* If the Distemper will not yield to these Medicines, Bleeding (especially if it appears Pleuritick) and Purging must be reiterated twice more: The Sick forbearing in the mean while drinking of Wine, and all sorts of strong Liquors, also abstaining from Meats salt and hard of Digestion, and to drink Milk

and Water boiled together all the Days of the Intervals from Purging. But it is to be noted, that it many times happens, that Bleeding and Purging, how often soever repeated, are still found to be unprofitable. In this case a resting Draught of an Ounce of Syrup of Poppies, given every Night, compleats the Cure, without the help of any other Medicine.

II. *Salmon.*] This Disease is call'd in Greek, Ὀφθαλμία; in Latin, *Ophthalmia & inflammatio Oculorum*; in English, *Inflammation*, or *Bloodshot of the Eyes*: Its Seat is in the Tunicle *Adnata*, and it is evident by Sight; however there is Pain, Redness, Swelling of the Veins of the Eyes, and flowing forth of Tears. *It is caused*, 1. From taking of Cold. 2. Or from Defluxions occasioned by Grief, heavy Blows, Sharpness of the Blood, or sharp Humours, which falling upon the Part, distends the small Veins of the Eyes. 3. From Blood mix'd with sharp Humours, by which the Pain is increased.

III. *Salmon.*] It is either *True and Genuine*, which proceeds from some internal Cause, Heat or Cold. Or *a Perturbation of the Eyes only*, caused by the Heat of the Sun or Fire, or by a Pain of the Head, or from Wind, Smoak, Dust, a Blow, Fall, or Stinging of a Bee, Wasp, or Hornet; and then the Eyes only appear hot, with some Redness, but without many Tears. Or *from an Inversion of the Eyelids*, turning the Inside outward, called *Chemosis*. Or from an *overflowing Rheum*, which is with many Tears. Or *from Dryness without any Swelling or Tears*; and this is *Xerophthalmia*, and is attended only with Redness and Itching. Or *from Dryness, with Hardness of the Eye-lid*: And this is *Psorothalmia*, and is attended with Itching, and a small Flux of Tears. Or from *a Redness and Hardness of the Eyes only*; and this is *Sclerophthalmia*, and is without any Itching or Tears. Or it is Periodical, which returns at certain Intervals of time.

IV. *Salmon.*] *A true and genuine Opthalmie or Inflammation* is from an internal Cause, accompany'd with Pain and Tears; and if it is so great, as that the Eye-lids are inflamed, and as it were inverted, or reverted, so that the Eye can scarcely be cover'd therewith, it is called *Chemosis*, as aforesaid. *A Bastard Ophthalmia or Inflammation* is that which comes from external Causes; this is only a light Inflammation, and is either *Taraxis*, a Perturbation of the Eye; or *Epiphora*, a watering or weeping of the Eyes.

V. *Salmon*] *The Prognosticks.* It is a Disease very seldom accompanied with Danger, and not of difficult Cure, if it proceeds from external Causes, comes by consent from the external Parts, and has had no ill Applications or Management; and if Tears be very plentiful, tho' more smarting, because that plentiful Evacuation in the Pool, the sooner brings the Disease to an end: So also if there be a Flux of the Bowels, for by that means the Disease is many times cured. But if it happens to young Children, in a cold Country and in a cold Time, and the Pain and Inflammation is continual

nual and long, the Cure will be more difficult, especially if the Defluxion inclines to be habitual. If it is from internal Causes, or by consent from the Membranes of the Brain, and Parts contained within the Skull, or from the Kings-Evil or Scurvy, or is accompany'd with Matter or Filth in the Eye, in these cases, tho' the Cure is not impossible, yet it will be performed with much Difficulty.

VI. *Salmon.*] The Cure of this Malady we shall consider in a twofold respect, 1. As it has relation to Internals. 2. As it has relation to Externals, or Topical Applications.

VII. *Salmon.*] The *Antecedent Cause* is to be removed, and this is done by such things as evacuate it, and carry it off. Our Author commends the *Potio Communis*; but if the Stomach is foul, or a Surfeit has gone before, an Emetick is best to be exhibited, as the *Emeticum Commune* (in *lib.* 1. *cap.* 1. *sect.* 2.) or in place thereof, the *Tartar Emetick*, as is there directed: After which the Body may be evacuated with some proper Cathartick, as Our *Family Pills*, *Pilulæ Panarcæ*, or the *Pulvis Catharticus*, which may be given from 15 Grains to half a Dram, or 2 Scruples, according to Age and Strength. Or you may give this Bolus. *Take Cassia new drawn, Electuarium Lenitivum, of each half an ounce; Pulvis Catharticus gr.* 15; *mix for a Dose, to be given with Syrup of Violets:* and some of these things may be repeated for 2, 3, or 4 times every fourth or fifth Day.

VIII. *Salmon.*] If this Course be thought too hard, a gentle Course of Purging, by means of a purging Diet-Drink, may do well: Let the Patient take either *Decoctum amarum Purgativum*, at fit Intervals; or which is better, the *Cerevisia Purgativa*, which may be taken with a *Continuando*, 'till such time as the Patient is made well. If the Cause proceeds from a *Strumous* Matter, or the *Kings-Evil*, such things are to be exhibited as are good and proper against that Disease. Where there is a Complication of Diseases or Causes, the Remedies ought to be as complicate: And here *Antimonial* and *Cinnabarine* Medicaments take place. If in Women there should be an Obstruction of the Terms, they ought to be provoked with a strong Tincture of *Gum Guaiaci*, *Tinctura Martis*, and *Elixir Proprietatis*, or with other Things of like Nature.

IX. *Salmon.*] And if the internal Cause, which is the remote or antecedent Cause, lies in the Blood, Physicians (as our Author) advise the taking of it away by *Revulsion*, as by Bleeding. This may sometimes do good, as it has several times; but sometimes, by our Author's own concession, it has proved unprofitable. Sometimes *Derivatives* have been used with Success, as the Seaton, and Blisters in the Neck, Cupping, *&c.* but things turn not always to the greatest account in the Cure, and besides are accompanied with much Trouble, Pain and Vexation to the Patient. The other sort of *Derivatives*, as *Errhines* and *Apophlegmatisms*, have been many times used with wonderful Success: For the Humours lodg'd in, and afflicting the

the Eyes, have been effectually and perfectly drawn away by the Noſtrils and Mouth.

X. *Salmon.*] In the time the Catharticks are given, as alſo in the Intervals of thoſe times, the Patient may take every Night at Bed-time, ſome pleaſant conciliating Doſe, *viz.* ſome proper *Laudanum*, either Vegetable or Mineral, beginning with a ſmall Doſe at firſt, and increaſing it gradually, ſo much as the Phyſician ſhall ſee convenient. For *Laudanum*, not only cauſes Reſt, and gives Eaſe to the Pain; but by increaſing or thickning the Humours, it ſtops their Fluxion into the Eyes for the future, and ſo gives Relief. Of *Vegetable Laudana*, we commend theſe following, *viz.* *Laudanum Liquidum Authoris*, or the *Liquid Laudanum of our Preſcription*, or Our *Eclegma Sudorificum* in *lib.* 1. *cap.* 1. *ſect.* 14, & 28. and in want of them, Our *Guttæ Vitæ*, all which are admirable in their Kinds. Among the *Mineral Laudana*, nothing is ſuperior to *Helmont's Philoſophical Narcotick Sulphur of the Vitriol of Mars*; and next to that is Our *Impetus Martis*, prepared from the ſame Sulphur, which may be given to Infants and Children, from 6 to 12 or 14 Drops, every Night at Bed-time, in a Glaſs of Canary and Water mixt in equal proportion; and to elder Perſons, from 25 to 50 Drops, in the ſame manner during the whole time of the Cure.

XI. *Salmon.*] We now come to the uſe of *Topicks*. The next Intention is by the uſe of Externals to eaſe the Pain. *A Cataplaſm of Rotten Apples, mix'd with a little Barley-flower*, and applied all Night, is commended as a ſingular good thing. There is not many better things in the World, than my *Aqua Regulata*, which is an excellent thing for almoſt all Diſtempers of the Eyes, and may be dropt into the Eyes three, four or five times a Day. If the Patient cannot away with Pills, or other ſolid Purges, let the *Sal Mirabile* be given at leaſt twice a Week, whilſt theſe Topicks are applying: I approve of it above any other Purge in this caſe; and next to that, *an Infuſion of Sena in White Wine, with a little Sal Tartari, and Juice of Liquorice: Two drams of Sena* will be enough for one Doſe.

XII. *Salmon.*] And if the Eyes are ſore and running, every Night going to Bed, put into them 10 or 12 Drops of this Mixture. *Take Honey of Roſes half an ounce; levigated Pouder of Crabs Eyes 2 drams; Sanguis Draconis in Pouder half a dram; mix them for a Collyrium.* If the Rheum is vehement hot and ſcalding, eſpecially if it has been of any long continuance, whereby the Eyes are much weakned, you muſt drop into the Eyes *pure French or Barcelona Brandy unmixt*: All other Medicaments will prove ineffectual, whilſt this ſhall ſtrengthen the weakned Part, ſtop the Flux of Rheum, and cure the Diſeaſe, the which it will do in about 2 or 3 Days time, or ſomething more, repeating the uſe thereof two or three times, or oftner, in a Day: nor will it ſmart much, the Fear of the thing being worſe than the thing it ſelf.

XIII. *Salmon.*] It is alſo to be obſerved, that if neither Purging nor Bleeding, tho' often repeated, do any good; that after

after that Course, you may give of Our *Laudanum*, from one Grain to three, or more, for 3 or four several Nights together; or Our *Impetus Martis*, as directed at *Sect.* X. aforegoing; because by the force of those things the Defluxion will be stopt, and the Distemper rendred much more obedient to Topick Remedies.

XIV. *Salmon.*] After that by the simple use of *pure French or Barcelona Brandy*, the Disease seems to be mastered, and the Eyes to grow well, a Weakness will yet remain: This is not to be removed by continuing the Use of the said *Brandy*, but will rather be promoted thereby; for tho' the Brandy did wonderful Service, whilst the Disease was in extremity, it is to be considered, that then it had the sharp and acrimonious Humors afflicting the Part to contend withal, which allay'd the great Heat and Strength of that Liquor, and so obtunded its Potency, that by its Subtilty and piercing Spirit it would no ways hurt and affect the Tunicles of the Eye, and other Parts subservient to the same: But those virulent and pungent Humors being overcome by the *Collyrium*, and the Disease seemly obliterated; the Spirit will then begin to act upon and affect the weakned Parts themselves, which being too vehement, hot and potent to be continually used, may after the curing of one Disease, induce another. For which reason it is requisite that its Force should be abated, and its Heat allayed by some proper *Medium*, that by its Gentleness it may become, as it were, familiar in its Use, and yet its intrinsick Power may be retained, so as to remove the remaining Imbecility.

XV. *Salmon.*] The Force of the Disease seeming to be overcome by the Use of the aforegoing Prescriptions, you must consider that the Defluxion and Inflammation have much weakned the Parts, and Strengthners are next to be applied. This following *Collyrium* is excellent. *Take Angelica-water, Fennel-water of each half a pint; Choice Brandy a quart; Cochinele in fine Pouder; English Saffron, of each a dram; mix, infuse cold for* 14 *Days, shaking the Glass twice a-day. Then being well settled, decant the clear, and keep it for use.* Drop this into the Eye or Eyes, three, four, or more times a-day, as you see need.

XVI. *Salmon.*] The former *Collyrium* having been used for 12 or 14 Days, let the Use of it be given over, and the Cure be compleated with this *Collyrium Exegeticum*, which finishes, or declares the Cure to be done. *Take choice Damask Rose-water, Red Rose-water, Smiths-forge-water filtred, of each half a pint; choice French or Barcelona Brandy, a pint and half; Alkanet Root in fine Pouder* 3 *ounces; mix, digest* 14 *Days, shaking the Glass once or twice every Day: Then letting it stand, to be well settled, decant the clear, and keep it for use.* This is a Medicament of admirable use, and never enough to be praised.

XVII. *Salmon.*] If thro' the Acrimony or Sharpness of the Humors, an Ulcer should be formed in any part of the Eye, it is to be cleansed and healed with this following Mixture. *Take of the Collyrium at Sect.* XV. *aforegoing,*

aforegoing, three ounces; Tincture of a dram of Opium made with Roſe-water; Clarified Honey an ounce and half; or two ounces; mix and diſſolve; with which dreſs the Eyes two or three times a-day, or oftner if need requires. When the Ulcer is cleanſed and healed, compleat the Cure by ſtrengthening the Parts affected with the *Collyrium Exegeticum* in *Sect.* XVI. aforegoing. Authors have given us a great Variety of Eye-waters, and other Topicks for this purpoſe, which we think needleſs to repeat here: They that deſire to ſee more concerning the ſame, may ſee the *Third Edition* of *Our Synopſis Medicinæ, lib.* 3. *cap.* 24. *ſect.* 20. *ad finem*, where they may receive great Satisfaction.

CHAP. X. *Of Bleeding at Noſe.*

I. IT is accompanied with Pain and Heat in the fore-part of the Head. 2. Bleed frequently in the Arm, and let a cooling and thickning Diet be enjoined. 3 Order alſo cooling and incraſſating Juleps, and cooling Emulſions. 4. Let a cooling Clyſter be exhibited every Day, and a reſting Draught of *Syrup of Poppies* given every Night; and preſcribe the *Potio Communis Purgativa* to be taken once or twice. 5. Let a Piece of Linnen Cloth four times doubled, be dipt in *Cold Water, in which Sal Prunellæ has been diſſolv'd*; and ſqueezing it a little, apply it to the Nape of the Neck behind, and on both ſides, often times in a Day. 6. After the Evacuations apply the following Liquor. *Take of Hungarian Vitriol and Alum, of each one ounce; Flegm of Vitriol half a pound; boil them 'till the whole is diſſolved, being cold, filter it thro' brown Paper, and decanting it from the Cryſtals, which now and then ſeparate; add to the remaining Liquor a twelfth part of Oil of Vitriol.* 7. Or rather, *Take Plantane Water* 4 *ounces: Bole Armoniack in fine Pouder half an ounce; mix them.* Dip a Tent made of Lint in this Liquor, and put it up the Noſtril out of which the Blood flows, where let it reſt for two Days. 8. If thoſe things do no good, *Diſſolve Roman Vitriol in common Water, and dipping a Tent in the Solution, put it up the Noſe.* Cloths dipt in this Liquor and apply'd, do alſo ſtop Bleeding in any external Part.

II. *Salmon.*] This Diſeaſe is called in Greek Αἱμορῤῥαγία, and αἱμορῤῥαγία τῆς ῥινος, in Latin *Hæmorrhagia* and *Sanguinis eruptio Naris.* It is true that *Hæmorrhagia* ſignifies any kind of Bleeding, or Flux of Blood whereſoever; but ſpecially taken, it ſignifies a Bleeding at Noſe. It is known at ſight, and therefore needs no other Signs, but the Signs of the Cauſes. It is an inordinate Excretion of Blood, above and beſides Nature, by the Veſſels of the Noſe or Brain, ſymptomatically conſidered, being rarified, opened or divided.

III. *Salmon.*] The remote Cauſes of Bleeding at Noſe may be thro', 1. Falls. 2. Blows. 3. Vehement Exerciſe. 4. Vehement Heat. 5. Much thin and

and ſharp Blood, accompanied with Heat and Pain in the Fore-part of the Head. The proximate or near Cauſes are, 1. *Anaſtomoſis*, which is an opening of the Mouths of the Veins of the Noſtrils, which proceeds either from abundance of Blood, and then the Face is red, and the Veins ſwell and are diſtended; or from the ſharpneſs and thinneſs of the Blood, cauſed by an ill Habit of Body; and then there are Prickings and Itchings in the Noſtrils and Parts adjacent. 2. *Diaireſis*, which is a Rupture of the Veins; and this is either by External Force, or by means of a ſharp and corroſive Humour; and then the Blood iſſues forth in great abundance. 3. *Diapedeſis*, which is a ſpringing or leaping forth of the Blood, either from the Excoriation, or wide opening of the Mouths of the Arteries; and then the Blood is hot, ſomething red, thin, and it leaps forth with Violence and Frothing. Now in all theſe caſes the Blood proceeds either from the Veins or Veſſel in the Noſtrils, or from the Veins and Veſſels in the Brain.

IV. *Salmon.*] *The Prognoſticks.* We ſpeak not in this Chapter of a Critical Hæmorrhage, for that always terminates a Diſeaſe, but of that which is Symptomatical. If it can be ſuddenly and eaſily ſtopt, and before any great quantities of Blood are come forth, it is without danger. But if the Bleeding is violent, and that it cannot be eaſily ſtopt, or being ſtopt, it is apt to return again, it is dangerous; and if it often returns, a Dropſy or Conſumption may ſucceed. If the Quantity of Blood is extream, or if it cannot be ſtopt, Life is deſpair'd of; and this is ſo much the more dangerous, if it happens in Cholerick Bodies, or where Choler is inflamed, where the Face is of a yellowiſh Colour; or in Phlegmatick Bodies, where it is of a Leaden Colour; or in Melancholy Conſtitutions, where the Colour is dusky or blackiſh. It is alſo dangerous and of evil Conſequence, where there is preſent a Palſy, or great Trembling or Weakneſs, Difficulty of Breathing, or Pains in the inferiour Parts, or where Chilneſs or Stifneſs follows it, becauſe it ſhews the Spirits and Natural Heat to be exhauſted: So alſo if it is attended with weak, faint, and cold Sweats, or with great ſweating of the Breaſt and Head, with other ill Symptoms. If the Blood proceeds from the Veſſels of the Noſtrils, it comes eaſily, ſmoothly, and without Perception, and is eaſily ſtopped. But if it proceeds from the Veſſels of the Brain, then a Pain of the Head went before it, and the Hemorrhage or Bleeding will not be eaſily ſtopt.

V. *Salmon.*] Let the Air where the Sick is be cooling and drying; his Food thickning and aſtringent, as Wheat boil'd, thick Milk, Rice boil'd in Milk, and Food made of Rice, Calves, Sheeps and Neats Feet, hard Eggs, Cheeſe, harſh and binding Fruits, as Pears, Quinces, Medlars, Services, Limons, Oranges, Pomgranates, Peaſe, Beans, and ſuch like. Let his Drink be Steeled Water, Barley-broth, Water-gruel, Whey, and thin Panada, and forbear as much as may be, things which require

require much Chewing and Gnawing. Let him forbear all sorts of Exercise as much as may be, not walking or talking, and refrain from Coughing as much as may be. Let Sleep be induc'd by soporiferous Medicaments, to be repeated as long as need requires: And let him forbear all Passions and Petrurbations of Mind, as Anger, Wrath, and the like; because they are apt to put the Blood into Motion, and may renew the Hemorrhage.

VI. *Salmon.*] Our Author first proceeds in the Cure by way of Revulsion, which is by Bleeding: It may be of use sometimes at the beginning; but if the Patient has bled much and long, I am sure it must induce great Weaknesses; and then Bleeding, which still more and more prostrates the Strength of the Sick, must be very improper. Cooling and Incrassating Medicines are indeed of good use in this Case; but we have sometimes found some heating things do the Work to all Intentions as well; among which I commend the *Tincture Mirabilis*, taken inwardly, a Spoonful at a time in Red-Port Wine, or in Smiths-forge-water filtred thro' brown Paper. We shall consider the Cure of this Disease, 1. As it has respect to the Exhibition of Internals. 2. As to the Application of Topicks or Externals.

VII. *Salmon.*] After Revulsion, our Author proceeds to Evacuation. If a cooling Cathartick Clyster be first given, it may contribute to the stopping of the *Hemorrhage* by Derivation; after which the Body may be twice (or oftner, if the Physician see need) evacuated with some proper Cathartick. The Clyster may be thus made, *Take Posset-drink a pint; brown Sugar 2 ounces; Infusion of Crocus Metallorum an ounce and half; Infusion of Sena one ounce; mix and exhibit it blood-warm.* After the Clyster you may purge with *Diacatholicon*, or *Electuarium Lenitivum*, giving them from 6 Drams to an Ounce and half or better: Or you may purge with this. *Take Diaprunum Lenitivum 4 ounces; Pulvis Catharticus a dram; mix them for 4 Doses.* See the Electuaries in Our *Pharmacopœia Londinensis, Lib. 4. Cap. 22. Sect. 38, 40, & 44.* This is also good: *Take Pulp of Damask Prunes, of Cassia, and of Tamarinds, of each an ounce; Pulvis Catharticus a dram; mix as aforesaid for 4 Doses*, to be given in the Morning fasting.

VIII. *Salmon.*] Every Night at Bed-time, a resting Draught, or *Opiate*, ought to be given: If they be Children, you may give *Diascordium* from 15 Grains to half a Dram, or more, in Lettice or Purslane-water. Or, *Take Syrup of Corn Poppies 4 ounces; Syrup of Juice of Citrons or Limons 2 ounces; Milk-water, or Water of Purslane 6 ounces; mix and make a Julep.* Dose from a Spoonful to 2, or 3, or more, according to the Age of the Child, at Bed-time: But if it is a grown Person, Man or Woman, you must come to more powerful Remedies, as Our *Guttæ Vitæ*, which may be given from 30 to 50 or 60 Drops (beginning with the least Dose first) in Canary alone, or Canary mixt with Water; or *Our Specifick Laudanum*, from 1 Grain to 3 or 4 made up into a Pill;

or

or the *Laudanum Liquidum Authoris*, or Our *Liquid Laudanum prepared with an Acid*, which may be given from 10 to 60 Drops, at Bed-time, according to Age, *&c.* We also commend Our *Theriaca Londinensis nova*, which may be given from Gr. 15 to half a Dram or more. Or you may give (which is not much inferior to any of them) Our *Eclegma Sudorificum*, which may be given from 10 Grains to half a Dram, or two Scruples. See *Lib.* 1. *Cap.* 1. *Sect.* 14. *&* 28. *aforegoing*. These things may be exhibited every Night, even the Nights of the same Day in which the Catharticks are administred. They immedately icrassate the Blood, and upon the spot stop the Fluxion.

IX. *Salmon.*] Every Morning (except when a Purger is given) you may give this Mixture: *Take Tinctura Mirabilis a spoonful*; *Syrup of Vinegar, or Syrup of Juice of Limons, a spoonful and half*; *Smiths-forge-water filtred thro brown Paper an ounce and half*; *mix them for a Dose*, and let the Patient fast an Hour after it. It is an excellent thing of the kind.

X. *Salmon.*] We come now to the Application of Topicks. If the Flux is vehement, you ought first to tie hard with Filleting or broad Tape, the Joints of the Knees, as also the Joints of both Arms above the Wrists, and above the Elbows: And the Nostrils, Forehead, Temples, and Nape of the Neck, ought to be be well bathed with cold strong White-Wine Vinegar, and the Patient ought to hold his Mouth full of the same. And Spunges dipt in cold Wine Vinegar, or in Vinegar in which *Saccharum Saturni* has been dissolved, being a little squeezed, ought to be applied to the Nape of the Neck, Forehead, and Temples, and to be kept on for some considerable time.

XI. *Salmon.*] So also cold Iron, Brass, Copper or Pewter, and cold Stones, as of Flint, Pebbles, Marble, and other like things, as also Snow-balls or Ice, if the Season of the Year gives them, may be applied to the Forehead and Nape of the Neck; for by reason of their great Coldness, they are found very profitable in this Cure, and make a kind of Revulsion of the flowing Blood. A Cataplasm made of the green Leaves of *Hemlock* or *Henbane*, applied also to the same Places, have the same effect.

XII. *Salmon.*] This following Preparation may be syringed up the Nostril that bleeds, or Tents may be made of Lint, or Linnen Rags, and dipt in it, and then put up to remain 12 Hours, and to be repeated as often as need requires. *Take White Vitriol, Roch Alum, Catechu, of each in fine Pouder one ounce*; *Smiths-forge-water a quart*; *mix and dissolve*; *then filter thro' brown Paper, and keep it for use*: It is a very excellent thing. A Styptick Liquor made also of the Sympathetick Pouder, by dissolving one Ounce thereof in a Pint, or Pint and half, or more, of Smiths-forge-water, and then filtered thro' brown Paper, is a very admirable Topick. You may dip Tents of Linnen-Rags therein, and put them up the bleeding Nostrils; I have never known it so much as once to fail: But you ought not to forget to give a Pill consisting of

2 or

2 or 3 Grains of our *Specifick Laudanum*, every Night at Bedtime; and a Spoonful of *Tinctura Mirabilis* every Morning fasting, in a Glass of Red Port Wine.

XIII. *Salmon.*] A Spunge dipt in White Wine Vinegar, is good to be held to the Nose, and to smell to, drawing up the Breath strongly: Hog's Dung is a Specifick in this case to smell to, and a very excellent thing: So also the Fumes to be taken up the Nostrils from Asses Dung, Hog's Dung, and Horses Dung being burnt; as also the Fumes from Feathers, Hair, old Hats, Horns, Hoofs, Leather, and old Woollen Cloths. The Fumes of Vinegar are highly profitable, raised from the Stone *Pyrites* heat red hot; or from a red hot Brick, or red hot Iron Plate. So also the Fumes raised from Man's Blood or Liver, being burnt; or from the Burnings of dry'd Toads, or Serpents, and other like things, from all which the Blood precipitately flies, as from its greatest Enemy.

XIV. *Salmon.*] The *Aqua Styptica*, whose Preparation you may see in the Second Edition of Our *Pharmacopœia Bateana, Lib.* 1. *Cap.* 1. *Sect.* 56. is a famous thing to be snuft up the Nostrils, or to be syringed up, and afterwards Tents or Cloths to be dipt therein, and to be put up, so as to remain there for some time. And we also commend these following Compositions for the same purpose, and to be used in the same manner. *Take Smiths-forge-water a quart; Roch Alum, White Vitriol, of each two drams; fine Aloes, Saccharum Saturni, of each one dram; mix, dissolve, and strain out for use.* Or, *Take Catechu six drams, Pomgranate Peels in gross Pouder 4 drams; fine Aloes, Sanguis Draconis in Pouder, of each 2 drams; Opium one dram; Smiths-forge-water, White-Wine Vinegar, of each a pint; mix, boil a little, strain out, and keep it for use.* Or, *Take Smiths-forge-water, Frog-spawn-water, Wine Vinegar, of each a pint; Hungarian Vitriol, Vitriol of Mars, of each 2 drams; White Vitriol, Roch Alum, Saccharum Saturni, of each one dram; mix, dissolve, filter, and keep it for use.*

XV. *Salmon.*] The following Compounds I have had great Experience of: You may either blow them up the Nostrils several times in a Day with a Quill, or Tents may be made with fine Bole and fine Aloes, with a little Wine Vinegar, and then rouled in those Pouders, and so put up the bleeding Nostril, to remain there as long as need requires. *Take Pouder of Man's Blood, and of Man's Liver, dry'd, of each an ounce; Pouder of dry'd Earthworms, and of Catechu, of each half an ounce; Pouder of Nutgalls, and of Pomgranate Peels, of each 2 drams; Ashes of an old Hat, or so roasted as it may be rubbed to Pouder, Hogs Dung dried and pouder'd, of each 1 dram; mix and make a fine Pouder.* Or, *Take Pouder of Man's Blood, and of dry'd Toads, of each an ounce; Crocus Martis Astringens, fine Aloes in Pouder, of each two drams; Thebian Opium dry'd and poudred, one dram; mix and make a Pouder.*

XVI. *Salmon.*] With the following I cured several Hemorrhages, after Life was despair'd of. *Take Pouder of Man's Blood, and of Man's Liver, of dr'd Toads,*

and

and of Earthworms, of each half an ounce; Hungarian Vitriol well dry'd almost to Whiteness; Vitriol of Iron gently calcin'd, of each a dram and half; Roch Alum, Saccharum Saturni, Crocus Martis Astringens, fine Bole, of each a dram; mix and make a fine Pouder. Or, *Take Pouder of Man's Blood, and of dr'd Toads, of each an ounce; Salt of Vitriol, of Iron, Catechu, of each half an ounce; Sanguis Draconis, fine Bole, Pouder of an old Hat, of each 2 drams; Nutgalls, Pomgranate Peels, of each in fine Pouder, a dram; mix, and make them into a subtil Pouder, which keep in a Glass close stopt from the Air, for use.*

IX. *Salmon.*] It has been found by Experience many times, that Tents or Rouls being made of *Roch Alum*, and put up the bleeding Nostril, and continued in for some time, stops the bleeding miraculously, even as it were by Inchantment. *Spirit of Vitriol* does Wonders also in this case; it may be given with Essence of Violets to moderate its Acidity. These Acids do the work, by thickning or coagulating a Blood which is too fluid; and yet they will attenuate it when it is grumescent. *Opium* dried and made into a fine Pouder, becomes a most present Remedy against an Hæmorrhage, if soft Tents be rouled in it, and then put up the Nostrils.

CHAP. XI. *Of an Asthma, or Difficulty of Breathing.*

I. HAppening to Persons of a Sanguine Habit of Body, it is of three kinds. 1. *Dyspnœa*, which is a difficult Breathing, in which the Breath is drawn often, and thick, without Noise or Ratling, which is caused from the stuffing of the Lungs. 2. *Asthma*, which is a great and often breathing, in which the *Diaphragma*, or Midriff, and *Intercostal* Muscles, as also the Muscles of the *Abdomen* are vehemently moved with a ratling Noise and Wheesing: In the former kind, the Substance of the Lungs, in the latter the *Bronchia* or lower Parts of the Wind-pipe, are stopped. 3. *Orthopnœa*, which is the greatest Difficulty of Breathing, in which the Patient cannot breath but sitting, and with his Neck stretched upright, the Muscles of the Breast and Shoulders are also strongly moved.

Salmon.] I think, with our Author's Leave, we should add a fourth Species or Kind, *viz. Apnœa*, or the taking away of all sensible Respiration, accompanied with an extream Danger of Suffocation, of which we shall speak more anon.

II. *Salmon.*] A *Dyspnœa* arises from a default or hurt of the Organs themselves; and this arises either from things External; as the Fumes of Mercury, anointing with Mercury, the Fumes of Antimony, Arsenick, Bismuth, Sulphur, the Smoak of Charcole, Sea-cole, Pitch or Tar, Colcothar, Vitriol, Lime, *&c.* Or from things Internal; as from things which make a Streightness or Narrowness of the Vessels, either by *Obstruction*, or by *Compression*, or *Exsiccation*. *Obstruction* is made by too great

a Plenitude of Blood and Humours in the Veſſels themſelves: *Compreſſion* is from the ſame Cauſe, but made without the Veſſels, in Parts approximate to them, as in the Dropſy, *&c.* *Exſiccation* happens moſt commonly to ſuch as work in Mines and in Mettals, from the Vapours or Fume of the ſame; and this for its Cure requires Almond Milk. *Sometimes it happens by Conſent*, 1. Of the *Thorax*, whoſe Motion is hindred by fault either of the Spirits or Muſcles. 2. Of the *Diaphragma*, whoſe Motion is hindred, either from the hurt of the infected Nerves; or from Vapours ſettling near the *Diaphragma*; or from Humours preſſing it down. 3. Of the Liver, Spleen, and Stomach, which are ſometimes diſtended and ſwoln. Now in this Diſaffection of a *Dyſpnœa*, the difficulty of Breathing is but moderate, without a Noiſe and without a Fever. It is leſs than any of the following three Species, becauſe the Matter obſtructing is leſs; and it rather ſtops the Subſtance of the Lungs, than the *Bronchia*, Griſtles or Pipes; and hence it is that there is no ratling at all, becauſe that comes from the Motion or Diſturbance of the Humours contained in the *Bronchia* or Pipes, made by the Air continually paſſing and repaſſing thro' them.

III. *Salmon.*] An *Aſthma* is as our Author has here deſcribed it: It is indeed a difficult Breathing, ſometimes with a Fever, as well as without a Fever; for the moſt part with a Noiſe and Ratling, tho' ſometimes without them; ariſing from an Obſtruction of the *Bronchia* or Pipes of the Lungs; or rather, as ſome will have it, from a Straitneſs of them from ſome adjacent Compreſſion, and then there is a thickneſs of Breathing and a Wheeſing: But in a true *Aſthma*, properly ſo called, the *Bronchia*, or Pipes of the Lungs, are repleat with Flegm, more or leſs, which (as was ſaid before) being moved by the Air, makes that Noiſe. In ſome it is habitual; in others periodical, and then it has Paroxyſms, or Fits, when the Humour at a certain time flows from ſome other Place to the Lungs, which is for the moſt part in Autumn or Winter, as alſo in the Night Seaſon, becauſe then the Humours are moſt apt to move or flow, which are either, 1. *Viſcid* or *Clammy*, ſtuffing up the *Bronchia*, which ſticking faſt in the *Aſpera Arteria*, cauſe that ratling Noiſe or Wheeſing by the Motion of the Breaſt; and here Inſpiration of the Breath is more difficult than Expiration of the ſame. 2. Or *Serous* and *Wheyiſh*, which growing hot in the greater Branches of the *Vena Cava*, and ruſhing violently thro' the Right Ventricle of the Heart into the Lungs, preſs down the ſaid *Artery*, and this is very common; all which proceeds chiefly from the Liver: And hence it is that the Feet of Aſthmatical Perſons ſwell, *viz.* by reaſon of the weakneſs of the Liver; the Humours in the firſt place ruſhing into the Lungs, and then falling into the Reins, they alſo excite and cauſe a Difficulty and Stoppage of Urine. 3. Or from a *Crude Swelling* called *Grando*, or *ſmall Stones and Gravel*, &c. obſtructing the Pipes of the Lungs; which in the Daughter of Sir *R. H.* I obſerved, who ſpit

ſpit up, I believe, ſome hundreds of them.

IV *Salmon.*] An *Orthopnœia* is yet a more grievous Obſtruction of the Breath, in which it is very little, thick, and exceeding ſhort; nor can the Breathing be perfomed but with the Breaſt and Neck ſet upright; the ſuperior Muſcles of the Breaſt and Shoulders likewiſe contributing their Help and Aſſiſtance. The Sick is forced to draw his Breath with his Body erect, for fear of being ſtrangled: There is a Wheeſing, and ſometimes a ratling, growing worſe, eſpecially at Night. Now in an *Orthopnœia* the Obſtruction or Compreſſion of the Lungs is twofold, 1. In the Subſtance of the Lungs, as in a *Dyſpnœia*. 2. In the *Bronchia*, or Pipes of the Lungs, as in an *Aſthma*; for which reaſon this Species is more dangerous than either of the other two.

V. *Salmon.*] An *Apnœa* is the greateſt difficulty of Breathing that can be, even to the extream Danger of Suffocation: And this ariſes from a Complication of Cauſes, there being preſent not only an Obſtruction of the Subſtance of the Lungs, and an Obſtruction of the *Bronchia* or Pipes of the Lungs, with viſcous Humours in great Plenty; but there is alſo at the ſame time a Diſtenſion of the whole *Viſcus*, thro' Vapours aſcending from the inferior Bowels, to that degree, ſo as ſometimes to cauſe a Swelling in the Throat, endangering the Patient by choaking. All theſe Cauſes are peccant in the higheſt degree: But ſometimes it proceeds from the contrary, as the want of the uſe of the Parts relating to breathing, as in an Apoplexy, a Palſy, Swooning Fits, *&c.* in which the Muſcles of Reſpiration are defective in Animal Spirits.

VI. *Salmon.*] The Names *Dyſpnœa* and *Orthopnœia* are commonly applied to all Difficulties of Breathing which happen in *Pleureſies* or *Peripneumonies*, or Inflammations of the Lungs, and ſuch like. But the Name *Apnœa* does not only ſignify a Depravation of Breathing, but a Deprivation or Aboliſhing thereof; as happens in *Syncope's* or ſwooning Fits, Hyſterick Fits, and ſtrong Apoplexies, wherein the Influence of the Animal Spirits is kept from the Muſcles of Reſpiration. Theſe are all various Species of Breathing depraved; but the Diſeaſe which we chiefly intend to diſcourſe of in this Chapter, is an *Aſthma*, generated of Flegm, and obſtructing the *Bronchia* or Wind-pipe, and this is either true or Baſtard. *A true Aſthma* is that which comes from crude Humours, or Pituitous Matter, brought by the *Arteria Venoſa* into the Lungs, which flowing into the *Bronchia*, cauſes a Noiſe and Ratling. *A Baſtard Aſthma* is that which proceeding from the aforeſaid Humours, by the *Arteria Venoſa*, fall not into the *Bronchia*, or rough Artery of the Lungs; but into the *ſmooth Arteries*, or Subſtance of the Lungs, and this is always without ratling.

VII. *Salmon.*] Authors have yet made another Species of Difficulty of Breathing, *viz.* πνευματώδες *Pneumatodes*, which is a *flatulent Aſthma*, which they call *Aſthma Flatulentum*, *vel Hypochondriacum*, *vel Hyſterirum*;

wherein Vapours aſcend from the lower Bowels, and compreſs the *Diaphragma*, and ſo hindering its Action, induce a difficulty of Breathing: Or Vapours may proceed from Diſeaſes of the *Hypochondria*, by conſent, as Obſtructions or Tumours of the Liver, Spleen or Pancreas, which by their Weight alſo draw down the *Diaphragma*, to which they are joined, and ſo hinder its Motion: Alſo Wind ariſing from a *Tympanites*, and fuliginous Vapours from Obſtructions of the Womb, in ſuch as are Hyſterical.

VIII. *Salmon.*] The Seat of this Diſeaſe, *viz.* of an *Aſthma* (with all the Species) is in the Lungs, *viz.* in the *Aſpera Arteria*, and its Branches, as alſo in the Subſtance of the Lungs; and in ſome meaſure in the *Diaphragma* it ſelf; becauſe in Scorbutick Perſons, how difficultly ſoever they breath, yet they complain nothing of their Breaſt, but point to the Place, where they feel their Grievance, to wit, under the *Diaphragma*: Others add alſo the *Muſcles of Reſpiration*, becauſe they give their Aſſiſtance in *Inſpiration*, by enlarging the *Thorax* or Breaſt. But in truth, the Parts centrally affected are the very Lungs themſelves, becauſe we cannot ſubſiſt (not for ſome few Minutes, without their Motion, which without *Inſpiration* will be void, and then a Coagulation of the Blood about the Heart will ſucceed: But then the Lungs are not affected in all Parts alike, for ſome ſuffer more nearly, others more remotely. The *Bronchia*, or Branches of *Aſpera Arteria*, are moſt afflicted in this Diſeaſe; and after them the Subſtance of the Lungs, in the Veſicles and ſanguiniferous Veſſels, which carry the Morbifick Matter into them; whether Viſcid Flegm, Tartarous Matter, Aqueous or Bilious, according to which the Diſeaſe always varies in its Appearances.

IX. *Salmon.*] The Signs by which this Diſeaſe is known, are a thick and great Reſpiration without a Fever, ſometimes with a Shortneſs of Breath, and a Noiſe in breathing, which afflicts more lying than ſitting: The Breaſt is heavy, they cough alſo, but bring up nothing which is purulent: There is ſometimes a Wheeſing and a ratling Noiſe, and a growing worſe, eſpecially at Night; and if it is in a Scorbutick Habit, the Stomach ſeems to be ſwell'd with Wind, a painful Tenſion of the *Hypochondria*, a rumbling in the Guts, Belching, Heart-burning, ſometime a Vomiting, a Palpitation of the Heart, and a frequent Spitting; for that a Catarrh ſeems to attend it. The Face is many times pale, and the Patient is apt to ſweat in the Night: Sometimes the Face is puft up, and ſhining. The Urine is ſometimes high-colour'd, and ſometimes pale, with red Gravel ſubſiding, and often a red Matter ſticking to the bottom and ſides of the Chamber-pot; whence proceeds an Obſtruction in the Reins, and other Urinary Parts.

X. *Salmon.*] The Cauſe is often from a viſcid thick Flegm, ſticking in the Paſſages of the *Aſpera Arteria*, and ſometimes in the Lungs themſelves; which morbifick Matter is bred either in the Part thro' Weakneſs and hurt

hurt of its Tone, or else is sent thither from some other Parts adjacent. Sometimes it is caused from Stones breeding there, as we before hinted; also from the ill conformation of the *Viscous*, or its Vessels, in which there may be too great a Straitness. *Paracelsus* says (among other Causes) that it may proceed from Flegm lying in the *Bronchia*, and so hindering the Air that it cannot easily penetrate; upon which the Patient grows out of breath; and then when it is thickned, and is dry'd as it were, or is made so glutinous, as that it adheres or sticks pretty fast to the Pipes, it raises almost a perpetual Cough. He also says, that Tartar may be bred in the Lungs, and that thereby this Disease may be caused.

XI. *Salmon.*] It may also be caused from a Defluxion of Humours into the Coats of the Nerves, or motive Parts of the Lungs, which if it is in any considerable quantity, and possesses the Nervous and Muscular Fibres of that *Viscus*, serving for breathing, it disturbs the inhabiting Animal Spirits, it brings convulsive Motions, and so induces an *Asthma*. It is sometimes caused also by extravasated Blood, or a thick and purulent Matter, Swellings or Scirrhus, or a violent Fermentation of the Blood, thro' Anger, Heat, vehement Motion, *&c.* And indeed whatever can hinder Inspiration, or keep the Air out of the Lungs, may cause an *Asthma*. Sometimes this Disease follows a little Stagnation of the Blood in the *Præcordia*, occasioned by its coagulating, from the Mixtion of an acid Humour therewith, which disturbing its equal Circulation, must induce a hurt of Breathing.

XII. *Salmon.*] In Hypochondriack and Scorbutick Persons an *Asthma* is not dangerous nor incurable, simply consider'd in it self; but if one considers the Nobleness of the Part, and the Coagulation of the Blood in the Heart, it is not without danger; yet by using proper Remedies, may be kept at a stay or paliated for a long time. A *Scorbutick Asthma* is apt to be converted to some other Disease, as an Apoplexy, Epilepsy, suffocative Catarrh; Cachexia, or Consumption, as *Timæus lib.* 2. has observed. Tho' an *Asthma* in young Men is often cured, yet in general it is dangerous, and is scarcely ever cured in old People. Sometimes it is acute and violent, and then many times the Patient dies in the Fit. Such as have an ill Conformity in the Lungs, and its Vessels and Parts belonging to Respiration, *viz.* where they have naturally a strait Breast, small Lungs, and narrow Vessels, as also those who have very large ones, are apt to be Asthmatick. An *Asthma*, in such as are very low and weak, being attended with a trembling Breath, is dangerous, and so much the more, if the Shoulder Blades and intercostal Muscles rise and fall, at the taking in and letting out of the Breath. If it is also attended with Swooning, and a languid, intermitting, unequal, disorder'd and slow Pulse, Death is near at hand.

XIII. *Salmon.*] Let the Sick be placed in an Air which is temperate, clear, serene and dry; not cold, for that induces an

Asthma, nor yet over-hot, because it makes the Blood turgid, and to work like new Wine or Ale, whereby it imposes abundance of mucilaginous Serum or Tartar upon the Lungs and Branches of the *Aspera Arteria*; and indeed such as is the Air, such generally is the Mass of Blood. Let the Food be easy of Concoction, heating and attenuating, and such as is slippery and moistening, as Lamb, Veal, young Hens, Chickens, seasoned with Aromatick Spices, Juice of Limons, Oranges, Citrons, Lime-juice: Almonds, Raisins, Figs, *&c.* may be eaten because they make smooth and slippery, and dissolve Tartarous Mucilage. Let their Exercise be moderate; not much, because it disturbs the Humors, and puts them into a Fermentation; and on the contrary a slothful and sedentary Life absolutely induces the Disease. Sleep must be moderate, and in the Night-time only; if long, and in the Day-time, it generates flegmatick Excrements, and induces a Catarrh, which is generally the Fore-runner of an *Asthma*: Watching also overlong does hurt to the Lungs, as *Hippocrates*, *Sect.* 2. *Aph.* 3. says, Th Belly ought to be kept always soluble, because the Morbifick Matter is derived downwards, and in a great measure carried off that way. The Passions of the Mind ought also to be moderate; excessive Care, Anger, Fury, and Discontent, as well as excessive Motion and Sleeping, ought to be avoided, for they excite an Obstruction of the Lungs by irritating and enraging their innate Ferment, and so cause an *Asthma*.

XIV. 1 Take away ten Ounces of Blood from the Right Arm; and let the Sick take the *Potio communis Purgativa*, and repeat the same once every Day, for two other Doses. 2. In the Intervals of Purging, let him take this: *Take Aniseeds in fine Pouder 2 drams; Lucatella's Balsam a sufficient quantity to make it up into Pills, of which make twelve*: and let him take three in the Morning, and three more at Five in the Afternoon, taking after them three Ounces of the bitter Draught warm, without any of the Purging Ingredients in it. 3. If the Symptoms shall yet continue, let the whole Process be repeated again.

XV. *Salmon.*] If the Obstruction lies not in the Sanguiniferous Vessels, Bleeding will do little or no good; this it will certainly do, it will very much weaken the Patient, and make him less able to contend with his Disease, but not take away or diminish an Atom of the Matter impacted in the Lungs: But if the Blood in the sanguiniferous Vessels is grown thick, viscid, or inclining to a Coagulation, thro' the innate Acid, or is become poor and degenerated with a Mixture of fluid pituitous Matter, then Bleeding may be of great Service: If the Heart therefore is in danger of being overcome, or drowned, as it were by an *Asthma* proceeding from serous Humours, or from an Ebulition of Scorbutick Recrements, or from a sudden coagulation of a grumous Blood in the narrow Passages of the Lungs, whether it is caused by an Acid, or a fixt Salt, or poisonous Fumes of *Mercury*, &c. In these cases you must Bleed without

without delay, for when the Quantity of the Blood is lessen'd, what remains may the more easily pass the *Pneumonick* Vessels, whereby the Breathing will be restored to its natural State.

XVI. *Salmon.*] But to make the Solution of the Blood by *Phlebotomy* the more effectual, when caused by an Acid, Volatile Oily Salts are to be given, Volatile, Balsamick, Aromatick and spirituous things: But if it proceeds from a viscid Mucilage in the Bronchia, hot Thoracicks mix'd with Antiscorbuticks, are good; and all such things as abound with a *Sinapious* Volatile Spirit, Spirituous and Balsamick, which incide and correct Acidity; such as *Sal Volatile Oleosum nostrum*, Spirits of Mustard-seed, of Roket, of Nasturtium, and of Scurvygrass, Spirit of Gum Ammoniacum made with Sal Armoniack, Volatile Salts of Amber, Hartshorn, Man's and Beasts Blood, Bullocks Horns and Hoofs, Ants, Millepedes, Wood-soot, *&c. Balsamum Sulphuris Anisatum*, and the *Spiritus Asthmaticus Michaelis*, which is made of Nitre, Sulphur, and Gum Ammoniacum. This *Essentia Sulphurata* following is of good use. *Take Hepar Sulphuris made with Salt of Tartar, in fine Pouder, a pound; Tincture of Salt of Tartar, 2 quarts or 5 pints; mix and digest cold 'till the Tincture is of a sublime redness; decant it, and add thereto Chymical Oils of Angelica, and Mint, Volatile Salt of Harts-horn, of each 6 drams; Oil of Cloves and of Cinnamon, of each 2 drams; Oil of Aniseeds, one dram; mix them: Digest cold one Day and Night, then add red Myrrh in fine Pouder 2 ounces; Saffron, Cochinele, Goats-Blood, in fine Pouder, of each half an ounce; Camphir 2 drams; mix, digest 20 Days cold, shaking the Glass once or twice a Day; then being well settled, decant the clear Essence, and keep it for use.* Dose 20 Drops, more or less, Morning fasting, and at Night going to Bed, in a Glass of Generous Wine.

XVII. *Salmon.*] Our Author prescribes Purging, and indeed it is a good derivation of the Morbifick Matter; but the better to promote it (more especially if the Body should be costive) is to give a solutive Clyster. *Take Mutton Broth a pint; Infusion of Crocus Metallorum, brown Sugar, of each 3 ounces; mix for a Clyster*, which give warm. *Take Mutton Broth a pint; Species Hieræ Diacolocynthidos 2 drams; infuse warm for 12 hours, then decant the clear, and add brown Sugar, Infusion of Crocus Metallorum, of each 2 ounces; mix for a Clyster.* After the Exhibition of some such Clyster as these, you may purge with what our Author has directed, or with Our *Pulvis Catharticus*, or some other proper Purge, as the Physician shall advise.

XVIII. *Salmon.*] It is true Pectorals are most commonly used in these Cases; but if the Obstructions are great, and they be in the *Bronchia*, or their Ramifications, then you may give this. *Take White Port or Lisbon Wine, Spirit of Sal Armoniack, a dram to a dram and half; mix them for a Draught.* It will give relief in an Hours time, and sometimes in less: Let it be repeated in the Morning fasting, and at five in the Afternoon, for some Days. Then purge with *Sal Panaretum*, or with *Sal Mirabile*,

bile, four, five, or ſix times. I adviſe to theſe Salts, becauſe they paſs in Subſtance thro' the Lungs, and ſo open their Obſtructions, which nothing in the World will ſo well do beſides.

XIX. *Salmon.*] It is impoſſible there ſhould be a great Obſtruction in the Lungs, without a Flux of Humors to thoſe Parts: And therefore to prevent that, it is neceſſary to exhibit *Opiates*, which ſtop the Fluxion, by thickning the Humors at once thro' the whole Body. Now the *Opiate* may be given at Night going to Bed in a fit Doſe, and to be continued for ſome time, giving in the Day-time ſome proper Pectoral, as *Balſam of Sulphur Aniſated*, *Balſam de Chili*, *Balſam de Peru*, which laſt may be given from a Dram to two Drams, twice a Day in Syrup of Violets, or ſome other fit Vehicle; or you may give the Preſcription of our Author. If the Patient cannot take our Vegetable *Opiata* or *Laudana*, you muſt have then recourſe to our *Mineral Laudana*, ſuch as the *Sulphur Philoſophicum Vitrioli Martis*; or our *Impetus Martis*, which is inferior to no other Medicament in the World. See its Virtues and Uſe in Our *Collectanea Medica*, *lib.* 4. *cap.* 40. lately emitted into the World.

XX. *Salmon.*] If ſomething be yet wanting to compleat the Cure, you muſt daily give the *Spiritus Nitratus* from 30 to 60 Drops, in all the Liquor the Sick drinks for 14 or 20 Days together, or more; it will do wonders. See it in Our *Pharmacopæia Chirurgica*, in our Art of Chirurgery, printed ſome few Years ſince. This Spirit diſſolves the Tartarous Matter in the Blood; as alſo the proximate Cauſe, *viz.* the Viſcid Flegm, whether in the *Bronchia*, or *Veſicles*, or *Subſtance* of the Lungs; it not only removes it, but it alſo prevents a Relapſe. Or you may give this Mixture, *Take Spiritus Nitratus one ounce*; *Chymical Oil of Aniſeeds, or Chymical Oil of Angelica, or of Mint, or of ſweet Fennel-ſeeds, one dram*; *Spiritus Cordialis, or Aqua Bezoartica*, 4 *ounces*; *Milk-water* 3 *quarts*: *Mix them.* The Doſe is half a Pint at a time, twice or thrice a Day, purging alſo twice a Week with the *Sal Mirabile*, as you may find the Neceſſity of the Diſeaſe may require.

XXI. *Salmon.*] This has been commended by ſome Phyſicians. *Take Flowers of Sulphur one ounce*; *Benjamin a dram and half*; *Myrrh a dram*; *Sal Gem half a dram*; *black Pepper a Scruple*; *mix and make a fine Pouder.* Doſe from a Scruple to half a Dram, in a Spoonful of *Syrup of Violets*, or *of Mint*, or in a Reer Egg. When this has been given for ſome time, if the Patient feels a Load at the Stomach, it ought to be evacuated by giving ſome proper Vomit, as thoſe made of *Antimony*, and to weaker Conſtitutions the *Gilla Theophraſti*; which may be given from a Scruple to a Dram. *Paracelſus* and his Followers commend *Flowers of Sulphur*, *Balſam of Sulphur ſimple and aniſated*; *Conſerve of Roſes mixt with Sal Vitrioli dulce*: And he ſays that *Water of Sow-bread or Artanita* is a Secret, which cures any *Aſthma* without Putrefaction: *Bawm Wine* is ſaid alſo to be excellent.

XXII. *Salmon.*] *Helmont* ſays, that all Antepilepticks are good for

for the Cure of an *Asthma*: and *Crembs lib. 2. cap. 1. sect.* 9. mentions one who was perfectly cured of an *Asthma*, by taking seven Grains of the *Cinnabar of Antimony* once a Day for a Month. He also commends *Balsamum Sulphuris Terebinthinatum* taken thrice a Day in some Asthmatick Water; also *Flowers of Sulphur* sublimed with Myrrh and Saffron. The use of *Cinnabars* of all kinds I much approve of, having had great Experience of its Use, and cured several *Asthma's* with them. The *Native* I esteem to be the Best; and after that the *Artificial*, and *Cinnabar of Antimony*; any of which may be given from 15 Grains to 20 Grains or half a Dram, in some proper Vehicle, and that either once or twice a Day, as the Physician shall think most requisite: They are all innocent, and free from any Danger.

XXIII. *Salmon*] The Cure of this Disease is to be consider'd in a twofold respect, 1. As it has relation to the Fit, in which the proximate Cause, or morbifick Matter is fix'd, and presently to be removed. 2. As it has relation to the Habit or Constitution of the Body in general; wherein Care is to be taken, that the Obstruction or stuffing of the Lungs with a gross tartarous or mucilaginous Matter, may for the future be prevented.

XXIV. *Salmon.*] The Fit, if it is caused from Blood filling or coagulating in the Vessels of the Lungs, is cured by Bleeding, so much and so often as the Physician shall see requisite: After which, things which resolve the Congelation are immediately to be given, as *Spirit of Sal Armoniack made with Tartar*, from 15 to 30 Drops, in a Glass of Canary, to be repeated as often as need requires; or *Spirit of Hartshorn*, or rather of *Man's Blood*, which is a Specifick in this case; and scarcely inferior to any of these things, is Our *Sal Volatile Oleosum*, which operates after an admirable manner upon the spot.

XXV. *Salmon.*] If the Fit is caused from a Tartarous Mucilage obstructing the *Bronchia* of the Lungs, let the Patient sit with his Body upright, and all means must be used to free the Lungs and *Aspera Arteria* from the viscid gross Matter which stuffs or oppresses them; and the Sick is so to dispose of himself, that the Bowels may not compress the *Diaphragma* upwards, and so straiten the *Præcordia*; for which purpose it may be good to exhibit a Solutive or Cathartick Clyster, to move the Excrement downwards; and lest the *Serum* should rush too violently upon the Tracheal Ducts, the Sick is to avoid all violent Motions, and such things must be given by the Mouth, as may evacuate pituitous and serous Humours, both by Urine and Stool.

XXVI. *Salmon.*] For this purpose you may give this. *Take Parsley-water* 8 *ounces*; *Syrup of Violets, and of red Poppies, of each an ounce and half*; *Sal Prunellæ in fine Pouder a dram*; *mix and make a Julep*; of which give the Sick 3 or 4 Spoonfuls now and then. Or this: *Take Tincture of Myrrh, Tincture of Sulphur, of each one ounce*; *Tincture of Benjamin half an ounce*; *Syrup of Roses solutive six ounces*; *Tincture*

ture of Sena 3 *ounces*; *mix them.* Dose a spoonful now and then. Or this: *Take Liquorice Pouder, Ginger in fine Pouder, Fæcula of Aron and of Bryonie Roots, of each half an ounce*; *Flowers of Sulphur and of Benjamin, of each* 2 *drams*; *Native Cinnabar levigated* 1 *dram*; *with Syrup of Red Poppies make an Electuary*; of which give a small Knife's point full now and then.

XXVII. *Salmon.*] If the Oppression is very great, *Willis* advises to take this. *Take Aqua Asthmatica and Sowbread-water an ounce and half*; *Syrup of Horehound, of Garlick, and of Tobacco, of each half an ounce*; *Tinctures of Saffron and Castor, of each half a dram*; *mix them*, of which let the Sick take a Spoonful or two, but it ought to be given to such as are strong. *Take Syrup of Elecampane* 8 *ounces*; *Pouder of Elecampane Root two ounces*; *Syrup of Hedg Mustard one ounce*; *mix them*, and let the Sick often take as much as a small Chesnut at a time; it is a most admirable thing. Or this: *Take Sowbread-water, Parsley-water, of each* 4 *ounces*; *Syrup of Elecampane, Oxymel of Squills, of each an ounce*; *Spirit of Sal Armoniack*; *Spirit of Harts-horn, of each a dram*; *mix them.* Dose a Spoonful or two now and then. Antimonial Vomits have been very beneficial, for they oftentimes dislodge the Viscous Matter, by voiding a great quantity of Pituitous Slime both upwards and downwards: For these being carefully given, by causing a violent concussion of the Parts, loosen the viscid Humors which are gotten into, and lodged in the Pulmonick Nerves.

XXVIII. *Salmon.*] This has been approved of. *Take Syrup of Elecampane* 3 *ounces*; *Syrup of Hedg Mustard* 2 *ounces*; *Pouder of Hedg Mustard-seed one ounce*; *Millepedes prepared* 2 *drams*; *Flowers of Benjamin one dram*; *Volatile Salt of Amber half a dram*; *mix them*; of which let the Patient often lick. Or this: *Take Sowbread-water, Hydropiper water, of each* 2 *ounces*; *Spirit of Gum Ammoniacum distilled with Sal Armoniack, half an ounce*; *Tincture of Saffron* 2 *drams*; *Oxymel of Squills an ounce and half*; *mix them*, of which give the Patient a Spoonful or two now and then

XXIX. *Salmon.*] If Convulsions are present, or are feared, Volatile Alkalies are to be given, such as are *Spirits and Tinctures of Castor and Amber, of Harts-horn, of Soot, of Sal Ammoniack, and of Gum Ammoniack drawn with that Salt, Spirits of Man's, of Oxes, Sheeps and Goats Blood*; *Spirits and Volatile Salts of Ox, Sheeps and Goats Horns and Hoofs, Sal Volatile Oleosum, with other things of like nature.* If any Hysterick Passions be present, then *Powers of Amber, Tincture of Assafætida, Wood-soot*, or Our *Tinctura Hysterica*, are to be administred. But if the Matter be very viscid, and strongly impacted in the *Bronchia*, with *Sylvius* we advise to the use of Acids, as *Oils of Salt, Sulphur and Vitriol, and Spirit of Nitre*, which may be qualified and made temperate by mixing them according to Art with Spirit of Wine; and so to be given in all the Patient drinks to a grateful Acidity.

XXX. *Salmon.*] The Paroxysm being thus overcome, the next thing to be done, is to alter and remove the Asthmatick Habit of Body. First, once a Week

Week at leaſt purge with Our *Family Pills*, or with Our *Pulvis Cathartticus*, or with this of the Great *Sylvius*: *Take Gum Amoniacum diſſolved in Vinegar a dram; Maſtick in fine Pouder 2 ſcruples; Troches of Alhandal, Reſin of Scammony, of each half a dram; Oil of Myrrh 2 drops; mix them, and make thereof ſixty Pills.* Doſe 5 or 6 in the Morning faſting, taking Mutton-broth after them in their working. But that which is inferior to no other Purge in this caſe, is, Our *Tinctura aurea nova in lib. 1. cap. 1. ſect. 17.* which by a kind of Specifick Virtue diſcharges the whole Body of the Pituitous Matter, which is daily obtruded upon the Lungs.

XXXI. *Salmon.*] In the Intervals of Purging exhibit *Spiritus Anticolicus* made with Spirit of Nitre, or Our *Spiritus Aperiens*, which let be taken in all the Patient drinks, to a grateful Acidity: Such whoſe Stomachs will not bear ſour Things, let them daily take the *Eclegma* or Mixture made of *Syrup of Elecampane at Sect* XXVII. above, which is a moſt admirable thing: But a Syrup made of *Garlick with clarified Honey*, is ſaid to tranſcend all other Medicaments; it may be taken a Spoonful at a time, 3 or 4 times a Day: *Syrup of Coltsfoot* is commended much by ſome Phyſicians. This Mixture is alſo very good. *Take Flowers of Benjamin, fine white Sperma Ceti, of each 2 drams; Pouder of Elecampane a dram and half: Volatile Salt of Amber half a dram: Mix them for 8 or 10 Doſes.*

XXXII. *Salmon.*] But this is always to be obſerved in an *Aſthma*, to change and alter the Medicaments at due Intervals of time, for which reaſon we have given them variety of Preſcriptions. The Reaſon of this is, becauſe it is a Diſeaſe which cannot be cured of a ſudden, but by a continued Series of taking Remedies; for the Obſtructions lie in the Channels of the Reſpiratory Nerves, which being narrow, are ſlowly de-obſtructed, and the Lungs being a tender Part, cannot endure much Violence: Moreover, if it is a Woman who is troubled with Vapors or Fits of the Mother, proper Hyſtericks are to be preſcribed. Some reſpect is alſo to be had to exceſſive Corpulence, in which caſe Abſtinence and a ſpare Diet are abſolutely neceſſary, gluttonous Feeding being to be eſchewed as much as Poiſon; for in thoſe caſes many times, when the Corpulency and Fatneſs abate, the Aſthma will ceaſe and be cured.

XXXIII. *Salmon*] It has alſo been found by Obſervation, that as well in the *Paroxyſm* as out of it, *Opiates* have been given with admirable Succeſs: A few Grains of my *Laudanum Volatile* or *Specificum* diſſolved in a little Canary, and given at bed-time, has ſucceeded beyond Expectation. And *Opiates* ſeem to be the *Ultimum Aſſylum*, or laſt Refuge many times in this Diſeaſe, becauſe they ſtop Fluxions of Humours into the Parts, and admirably quiet the diſturbed Animal Spirits; but if *Sal Volatile Oleoſum* be given in the Day-time between whiles, the *Laudanum Vegetabile*, whether *Solid* or *Liquid*, exerts its Power more admirably, and performs beyond expectation. And yet the *Mineral Laudana* exceed, nor do I know

know any thing in the whole Republick of Medicine that transcends our *Impetus Martis*, which may be given Evening and Morning in Canary from 30 Drops to 60, advancing 2 Drops every Night.

XXXIV. *Salmon.*] But there are some Stomachs with whom Volatile Alkalies will not agree, and it is generally in such where the Pituitous Matter is very viscid. In this case we prescribe this as a most excellent Remedy. *Take Rectified Oil of Sulphur per Campanum two or three ounces, more or less; and put into it White Sugarcandy in fine Pouder, or in place thereof double or treble refined White Sugar in fine Pouder: Put in so much as you can make the Oil to receive, stirring them well together; digest for a while in a warm Heat, and then keep the Mixture for use.* It may be daily taken upon a Knife's Point, as often as the Sick pleases, or finds occasion for the same: It is a noble Medicament, and beyond Comparison

XXXV. Lastly, let us add to these things the most potent Diureticks, as *Prepared Pouder of Hoglice, Pouder of Turpentine, Balsam of Peru, Oil of Parsly-seed, Pouder of Daucus-seeds, Powers of Turpentine and Juniper-berries, Distilled Waters of Parsly and Hydropiper, Salt and Oil of Tartar per deliquium, Infusion of Garlick in White-Wine, Syrup of Garlick and of Marsh-Mallows*, &c. because these, as they offend not the tender and soft Membrane of the Lungs, so they, by promoting Urine, carry off both the remote and proximate Causes of an Asthma, and very much promote and contribute to the Restoration of the Pristin Health.

CHAP. XII. *Of a* COUGH.

I. THE Cough is manifest of it self. 2. When it is recent, or of no long standing, nor yet is attended with a Fever, or other Signs of a Bastard *Peripneumonia*, or Inflammation of the Lungs, nor came after a *Pleurisie* or *Peripneumonia*, for want of sufficient Bleeding; in such case it will be enough to caution the Sick against the use of Wine or Flesh for some few Days; and to order these or the like Medicines to be used by him at pleasure. 3. Let him take ten drops of Balsam of Sulphur in a Spoonful of Sugarcandy, twice or thrice every day; and often eat one of the following Lozenges, which he ought always to carry about with him. 4. Take Sugarcandy a Pound and half, boil it in a sufficient quantity of Spring-water, 'till it will stick to your Fingers; then add to it fine Pouders of Liquorice, Elecampane, Aniseed and Angelica-seed, of each half an Ounce; Pouder of Florentine Orrice, Flowers of Sulphur, of each 2 Drams; Chymical Oil of Aniseeds 2 Scruples; mix and make Tablets or Lozenges S. A. which may be called *Family Lozenges.*

II. And in the mean time let the Sick use the following Compositum. *Take Oil of sweet Almonds two ounces; Syrups of Maiden-hair and Violets, of each*

an ounce; *Sugarcandy a ſufficient quantity*; *mix and make a Lohoch*: Let the Sick lick thereof with a Liquorice Stick, when the Cough comes upon him. 2. In a thin Catarrh you may preſcribe thickning Lohochs. 3. But if the Cough ſubmits not to theſe Medicines (more-eſpecially if it is attended with a Fever, or ſucceeds after a Pleuriſy or Peripneumony) in theſe caſes 'twill be to no purpoſe to truſt to Pectoral Medicines; for as much as the Cure muſt be performed by Bleeding and Purging, according to the Method laid down in *Lib.* 1. *Cap.* 9. of this Work.

III. *Salmon.*] The Parts affected, Signs, Cauſes, and Prognoſticks, we ſhall firſt conſider, and then afterwards we ſhall come to ſpeak to the Indications of the Cure. A Cough is a ſudden, frequent, unequal and violent Eruption of the Breath, with a Noiſe greater or leſſer, according to the vehemency of the Diſeaſe, wherein the Breath impetuouſly burſting forth by main Strength, excited by a ſharp tickling Rheum in the Throat, ariſing from a depraved Lympha, it cauſes therewith an Excretion of ſome part of the Morbid Matter, to which it is provoked by the ſharp Particles of that acrimonious Juice, vellicating the Trachea and Fibres of the Lungs.

IV. *Salmon.*] It is called in Greek Βήξ, *Bex*; in Latin *Tuſſis (ex ſono tuſſientis, vel a Tundo, quia tundit pectus)* and it is ſaid to be threefold, *viz.* 1. A Catarrhous or moiſt Cough, in which the morbid Matter is gotten into the Paſſages of the Trachea, which is either thin and crude, or thick and concocted, and is generally expectorated at the Mouth by coughing. 2. A husky dry Cough, cauſed by ſubtil, heterogeneous and acrid or ſharp Particles continually irritating the Nervous Fibres of the Trachea and Lungs, in which nothing is expectorated or brought up, but there is rather a drineſs of the Throat and Parts adjacent, which ſome call a Spaſm or Convulſion of the Lungs. 3. A Cough by conſent of Parts, as from the Stomach, when it is repleat with a great quantity of viſcid and tough pituitous Matter, which in ſome is almoſt as tenacious as Birdlime. In this laſt caſe vomiting with proper Emeticks, and repeating the ſame 'till the Stomach is perfectly cleanſed, generally cures it.

V. *Salmon.*] The Parts affected are generally the Lungs, ſometimes by themſelves, and ſometimes by conſent of other adjacent Parts, as the Stomach and Diaphragma, as alſo the Trachea, which is a cartilaginous Pipe repleat with its Fibres. The Muſcles which contract the Fibres of the Stomach, the motive Fibres of the *Bronchia*, the Pulmonick Nerves and other Nerves adjacent, and alſo remote from the Stomach, are all moved and irritated by the force of Coughing.

VI. *Salmon.*] The Signs of this Diſeaſe are evident, nor in a vehement Cough can the Patient refrain from coughing; for the tickling of the ſalt and thin Rheum, vehemently moves the Muſcles of the Thorax, which thereby are much compreſſed in order to Expectoration. The expectorated Subſtance is ſometimes

times thin, sometimes thick, sometimes white, sometimes yellow or red, and sometimes of other Colours. Sometimes this Humour affects or proceeds from the sides of the *Larynx*; and sometimes it lies deeper, in the Pipes of the *Bronchia*, and sometimes in the Vesicles of the Lungs; sometimes also in the utmost Vesicles of the *Trachea*, from all which Places by violent coughing it is expectorated, which is sometimes Rheum, sometimes Matter or Pus, sometimes Blood: In many there is a vehement Catarrh, in others Hoarseness or Wheezing, and sometime Shortness of Breath.

VII. *Salmon.*] The Causes of a moist Cough arise from the Acrimony or Sharpness of the *Lymphatick* Juice plentifully poured out of the neigbouring Glands, upon the Jaws, *Aspera Arteria*, and Pectoral Nerves; it may also be caused from a sharp *Serum* flowing out of the Arteries into the upper parts of the Throat or Larynx, which *Lympha* or *Serum*, by irritating and vellicating as it were those Nervous Parts, induce a frequent and troublesome Cough, and sometimes not without convulsive Motions. These Humours, if they all over besmear the *Aspera Arteria*, or quite fill up the Holes of the said *Aspera Arteria*, they then cause a Hoarseness. *Sylvius* also thinks that Blood or Phlegm, or a coagulated *Serum* translated out of the Substance of the Lungs into the *Aspera Arteria*, may cause a Cough.

VIII. *Salmon.*] The Causes of a dry or convulsive Cough may be from an ill Air, Fumes of Pitch, Rosin, Smoak, or the Discrasy of the Blood, or straitness of the *Pneumonick* Vessels, *&c.* But its conjunct Cause may be in the Irritation of the Lungs, Nerves and Nervous Fibres. This irritating Matter may be an acrid, sharp or salt *Serum* flowing out of the Mass of Blood (from its too loose Constitution or Frame) upon the Pectoral Muscles, and distilling into the Cavity of the *Larynx* by the *Tracheal Arteries*. Or it may be from a Catarrh very viscous, or very thin and sharp; or from a *Flatus* arising from the *Intestinum tenue*, and Stomach, which may be either drawn with the Air into the Lungs, or ascend from an Effervescence of the Bile and *Pancreatick Juice*, which thro' the *Lacteal Veins*, insinuating into the Heart, and thence into the Vessels of the Lungs, and to the *Trachea*, may so affect the *Larynx*, as to cause a Cough.

IX. *Salmon.*] The Causes of a Cough by Consent, as from the Stomach, and other Parts adjacent, is from a salt acid Flegm floating in the Ventricle, which successively irritating the upper Orifice of the Stomach by its offensive Acrimony, so affects the *Draphragma* and Muscles next to it designed for Expiration, as by their convulsive Motions, and shaking of the Parts adjoining, to induce a Coughing.

X. *Salmon.*] 1. A *moist Cough*, if it is with but little straining, and a speedy Expectoration, without much Labour or Pains, is without Danger. But if it continues long, and gets rooting, encreasing every Day, it will scarcely go away without prejudice to the Lungs; and if the Humour is very salt and acrid, by

by its continuing to flow upon the Lungs, it endangers the eroding of them, and at length may bring the Patient into a Conſumption. Sometimes alſo thro' violent ſtraining, and Acrimony of the latent Humours, the Veſſels or Veſicles of the Lungs may be broken, whence comes ſpitting of Blood, which may be the Forerunner of a Phthiſis. 2. A *dry Cough*, with a ſmall Fever, growing worſe after Meat, and that the Patient can ſpit nothing, ſhews a Hectick Fever. A dry Cough with much ſtraining, is very dangerous in Women with Child, and often cauſes Miſcarriage. A dry Cough proceeding from a moiſt Cough, with a Heavineſs of the Breaſt, is dangerous, becauſe it preſages an Exulceration of the Lungs. 3. A *Cough proceeding from Matter in the Stomach*, ceaſes, as ſoon as that is evacuated. If it proceeds from an Ulcer or Abſceſs in thoſe Parts, as of the Lungs or Ventricle, it is very dangerous. A continual Cough from an old Obſtruction, the Lungs being corrupted, or very much obſtructed, is very hard to cure.

XI. *Salmon.*] Let the Patient live in a free and clear Air, inclining to Drineſs, and of a temperate Quality, if poſſible; cold, thick, cloſe, moiſt, and foggy Airs, are naught for him. Let the Food be temperate, freſh, and breeding ſoft and ſweet Humours; high ſeaſoned and ſharp things are to be forborn; feeding on Cabbage, Carrots, Parſneps, Potatoes and Turneps is good; all maulted Liquors are to be forborn, but Ptiſan, Mead, Barly-Broth, Sack, Whey, Clarified Whey, Milk, and Decoctions of Raiſions and Figs are to be choſen, but above them all, a pure ſort of ſweet Spring Water. Violent Motion is hurtful, becauſe it puts the Humours into Motion; ſo alſo is too much Reſt, becauſe it is apt to cauſe Stagnation; but Reſt is much better than too much Exerciſe. Sleeping and waking ought alſo to be in due meaſure. The Belly ought to be kept ſoluble, by Art, if it is not naturally ſo; for by thoſe Evacuations much of the morbifick Humour is carried off: Alſo Diureticks ought to be frequently given, that the ſerous Humours may have Vent that way. Let the Sick avoid Anger, Grief, Sorrow, Care, Fretting, and the like; and be as Jolly, Merry, and Pleaſant as may be.

XII. *Salmon.*] Where the Cough is accompanied with great Obſtruction and Difficulty of breathing, let this Medicament be firſt given. *Take rectified Oil of Sulphur per campanum an ounce: Honey, as much as may embodie it, and make it grateful to be taken, of which let the Sick take often in the Day-time:* Then every Night at Bed-time, let him take of *our Specifick Laudanum*, 2, 3, or 4 Grains, more or leſs, and gradually encreaſe it every third or fourth Night, as the Extremity of the Diſeaſe ſhall require; drinking after it, a Draught of fair Spring-water or Milk-water, ſweetned with refined Sugar.

XIII. *Salmon.*] After the former Mixture of the *Oil of Sulphur and Honey* has been given for ſome time, then let the Patient often take of the *Syrup made of the Juice of Elecampane-Roots*,

Roots, or of a strong Decoction of the same Roots, 2 or 3 Spoonfuls at a time, and that 3 or 4 times a Day: It is an excellent thing; but withal, continuing to take either of our *Guttæ Vitæ*, or of our *Volatile Laudanum*, 2 or 3 Grains or more, every Night at Bed-time: For as *Laudanum* or *Opiates*, thicken all the Juices of the whole Body at once, they by that means, stop the Fluxion into the grieved Parts at once, and so give Relief.

XIV. *Salmon.*] For Drink, I commend Fair Water to be drank, even at Meals, where the Constitution will bear it, or Milk and Water, or Milk-water distilled, or a clear Barly-broth or Water, for that all fermented Liquors are absolutely naught: And now and then the Patient may take the quantity of a Chesnut of this Electuary. *Take of Indian green Ginger 8 ounces; cut it small with a Knife, and then beat it to a mass in a Stone Mortar: Add to it Pouder of Elecampane-roots, Lac of Sulphur, of each an ounce and half; Clarified Honey, enough to make it into an Electuary.* Take of it as often as the Violence of the Cough returns.

XV. *Salmon.*] This likewise to take in the Morning fasting, and at four in the Afternoon, is a thing of good use. *Take subtile Pouder of Elecampane-roots 2 ounces; Syrup of Elecampane-roots 4 ounces: Pure Oil of Sweet Almonds, or Expressed Oil of Wallnuts; or for want of them, of choice Florence Oil Olive, 5 ounces: Mix them well together*; Dose, 1 Spoonful now and then. Or this. *Take Subtile Pouder of Elecampane-roots, Flowers of Sulphur, of each an ounce; Syrup of Aniseeds and of Elecampane-roots, of each 4 ounces; Oil of Sweet-Almonds, or pure Florence-Oil Olive, 6 or 8 ounces: Mix them well together by shaking.*

Dose, a Spoonful now and then.

XVI. *Salmon.*] If these things do not fully answer and come up to the Intention, you may give this following incrassating Lohoc. *Take Syrup of Poppies 8 ounces; Syrup of Lettice 6 ounces; Syrup of Purslane 4 ounces; Pouders of Liquorice, Elecampane, Catechu, Jesuites Bark, all very subtile, of each 2 ounces: Lac, or Flowers of Sulphur, Nutmegs in fine Pouder, of each 1 ounce and half: Spirit of Wine, 2 or 3 ounces: Mix and make a Lohoch.* Of which, let the Patient take a little often in the Day-time.

XVII. *Salmon.*] As for bleeding, I can no ways approve of it, because it will in this case so prostrate the Strength of the Sick, that afterwards the best of Medicines will be given in vain. And as to purging, where and when it is requisite, (which the Physician ought to determine) it will be best to do it with either *Sal Panaretum*, (*in Lib. 1. Cap. 1. Sect. 23.*) or with *Sal Mirabile*: Because these Salts have a Power of dissolving the impacted Humors; of extinguishing the Hectick Heat, if any be present; of opening of the most vehement Obstructions of the Viscera, and of healing and consolidating of an Ulcer in the Lungs, or any other part (if any be:) after which, you may come to the use of Balsamicks.

XVIII. *Salmon.*] *Take Anisated Balsam of Sulphur 2 ounces: Balsam*

Balsam of Peru one ounce and half: Balsam of Tolu one ounce: Balsam of Chili half an ounce: Syrup of Poppies 18 *ounces: Mix them.* Of this you may give a Spoonful twice or thrice a Day, as you see occasion: And if by reason of the long Continuance and Vehemency of the Cough, there seems to be a great wasting and decay of the whole Man; it will be requisite that the Patient every Day should drink or sup good quantities of Gellies, or strong Broths made of Knuckles of Pork and Veal, but more-especially of Lean Beef, and that chiefly of the Buttock part; for these things truly nourish and restore, and being constantly taken, contribute very much to the Cure.

XIX. *Salmon.*] Over and above, let me mind you here, that a *Syrup made of Juice of Cucumbers, with treble refined Sugar, by the heat of a Bath,* is a Specifick for all sorts of Coughs, and even an Ulceration of the Lungs, of which I my self have had good Experience. *Take Syrup of Juice of Cucumbers one ounce: Flowers of Benjamin* 12 *grains: Balsam of Peru* 20 *drops: Mix them for a Dose.* Being used for some time, it does Wonders. Jellies may be given in the Day-time now and then, between the taking of this Mixture, made of Harts-horn, according to the usual Methods; or of Isinglass, dissolved in Water, and then compleated with double refined Sugar. To which you may add Milk, if you so please.

XX. *Salmon.*] *If the Cough is by consent from the Stomach,* it ought to be evacuated with some proper Emetick, as with *Emeticum Commune,* (in *Lib.* 1. *Cap.* 1. *Sect.* 2,) or with the Infusion of *Crocus Metallorum,* or *Vinum Antimoniale,* or *Tartar Emetick,* given in due Proportion, according to Age and Strength, which may be twice or thrice repeated; after which the Body is to be purged two or three times, with one of the afore enumerated purging Salts, or some other proper Purge, by which means, the morbifick Matter will be perfectly taken away, the Cough will cease, and the Disease be compleatly cured.

XXI. *Salmon.*] In the cure of a dry Cough, *Milk* is found to be an admirable Remedy, and if the Acrimony of the Humour is much, it may be given with a little *Honey* dissolved in it, or boiled in the Broth of *Lamb* or *Veal,* but rather mixt with the Broth of a *Chicken,* or some other Bird; or it may be mixt with *Damask Rose-Water and Honey*: And after all other Remedies have been used in vain, *Crabs Eyes levigated, and given from half a dram to a dram, in a Decoction of Lettice, or Purslane, or Cucumber Water,* has been used with singular Success. So also *warm Milk taken in good quantity with fresh Butter, as much as a Wall-nut at a time, and sweetned with Clarified Honey.*

XXII. *Salmon.*] In a Catarrhous or Rheumatick Cough, Bolus's made with *Fresh Butter and Sugar, adding to each Dose a scruple, or half a dram of Flowers of Sulphur,* will give Relief, tho' they be never so vehement: So also, *Butter and Sugar made into a Bolus, with some drops of anisated, or common Balsam of Sulphur,* (so many as the Prudence of the Physician shall think meet)

is a Medicament beyond compare: If this Cough is attended with a Hoarseness, *Lobel's Syrup of Erysimum, or Hedge-Mustard* may be of good use.

XXIII. *Salmon.*] In Convulsive Coughs, especially those in Children, *Spirit of Harts-horn*, or *our Sal Volatile Oleosum*, being given in a few Drops, in some fit Vehicle, is of excellent use, tho' the Cough be never so extream: And among the number of Vegetable Medicaments, our *Willis* commends (from great Experience) the *Decoction of Oak Fern.* This is without compare. *Take Sal Armoniack two Pounds; Quick-lime in fine Pouder a Pound; Water three pints, more or less: Mix and abstract the Spirit the common way, which keep close stopt for use. Then take of the Caput Mortuum, or fæces, Saccharum Saturni, Sal Martis, of each a like quantity, and with Spirit of Wine extract a noble and rubicund Tincture.* Dose, from 10 to 20 or 30 Drops in Milk, or Milk-Water.

XXIV. *Salmon.*] Where the Catarrh is vehement and acrimonious, this *Eclegma* is of excellent use. *Take Mithridate four ounces; Native Cinnabar levigated; Flowers of Sulphur, of each an ounce: Oil of sweet Fennel-Seed half an ounce: Aqueous Extract of Thebean Opium, half a dram: Mix and make an Electuary:* Dose 1, 2 or 3 Drams, (according to Age, *&c.*) every Night at Bed-time. This *Liquid Laudanum of Helmont* has merited in this case, great Commendations *Take Juice of Quinces three quarts: Choice Thebean Opium cleared from its Dross, a Pound: Cinnamon, Cloves, Ginger, Mace, Nutmegs, (all in gross Pouder) Saffron, of each 6 drams: Break the Opium into small Bits, and dissolve it in the Juice, and then put in the Spices. Pick the Saffron asunder, pour out a little of the Liquor into a small Dish, put the Saffron into it, and bruise it well with a Spoon, and then put it into the other things, which put into a Bottle, stopping them well. Digest all a Week or ten Days, shaking the Bottle two or three times a Day: Let it stand a Week longer to settle, and then decant off the clear, (being something more than Blood-warm) or strain it through a Cloth into another Bottle, with a pretty wide Neck and Mouth; and evaporate it in Balneo, or a gentle Sand-heat to the Consistency of Honey; which keep for use.* Dose, from 5 to 10, 15 or 20 Drops or more, in any convenient Vehicle, (according as the Age, Strength of the Sick, and Necessity may require.) Where note, that there is no absolute need of evaporating it away to such a Consistency, but the *Laudanum* or *Tincture*, may be kept without any such previous Absumption; but then you must enlarge the Dose, and give it in near double the quantity.

XXV. *Salmon.*] If the Catarrh is vehement, it ought in some measure to be carried off by Urine; for which purpose, *Pills made of Turpentine and Pouder of Elecampane-root*, are most excellent; after which, some of this Mixture may be given. *Take Oil of Sweet Almonds, new drawn, or Fresh or New Butter out of the Churn, not salted; Syrup of Marsh Mallows, or of Violets, of each 3 ounces: Sugarcandy in fine Pouder, half an ounce: Mix them in a Glass Mortar with a Pestle: Or the Butter being melted*

ted, shake them in a Glass till they grow white; of which let the Patient often lick at Pleasure.

XXVI. *Salmon.*] *In a Cough by consent from the Stomach*, if it is foul, and much obstructed, let the Patient take first a gentle Vomit, made of *Emeticum Commune*, or *Tartar Emetick*; and two Days after, purge either with *our Family-Pills*, or *Pilulæ Panarcæ*, or *Pulvis Cathartícus*, or rather with the *Sal Panaretum*, or *Sal Mirabile*; with which the Stomach and Bowels will be very well cleansed: After which, the Cure is performed with proper Specifícks, such as this: *Take Tincture of Sulphur, Tinctura Mirabilis of each half an ounce: Tincture of Opium made from the Aqueous Extract of Opium, two drams; mix them*: Dose, from 15 to 30 Drops at Bed-time, in Syrup of Violets, or other proper Vehicle: *Balsams of Sulphur, of Chili, and of Peru*, are of excellent use to be taken in the Day-time, from 5 Drops to 15 or 20, in any fit Vehicle. Or this Pouder. *Take Pouder of Elecampane-roots, Lac Sulphuris Terra, Japanica, in fine Pouder, of each half an ounce: Benjamin in fine Pouder, two drams: Mix them.* Dose, half a Dram in the Morning fasting, and about 4 or 5 in the Afternoon. Or thus. *Take Lac Sulphuris, six drams; Benjamin finely pounded, four drams; Sperma Ceti not rank, three drams; Catechu in fine Pouder, two drams; Myrrh in fine Pouder, one dram: Mix them.* Dose, from half a Dram to a Dram, Morning and Evening.

CHAP. XIII. *Of a Consumption, or Pining.*

I. THere are many Kinds of this Disease. The first of which arises from Cold taken in Winter-time; for a little before the Winter Solstice, a cold Season violently coming on, many are taken with a Cough, which when it seizes them, in whom the Lungs from the first are very infirm, it is otherwise impossible, but that by repeated Motions of Coughing, they will be yet more debilitated: And so at length, having assimulated to themselves their proper Nutriment, thro' an evil Disposition in their Habit, they are rendred indeed insufficient to perform their proper Functions as they ought to do: From this Cause a mighty quantity of crude Flegm is heaped up, which by the continual Motion of the Lungs, and a vehement force or striving, is plentifully cast forth by the Mouth.

II. From thenceforth, the Lungs being filled with *Pus*, or pituitous Matter or Slime, the putrid *Miasmata*, are every where dispersed in the Flesh, thro' the whole Body: And from hence come a putrid Fever, whose Fits are excited, and trouble the Sick about Evening, but go off the next Morning, with a plentiful sweating, and diminishing the Strength of the Sick: And to this heap of Symptoms, is added a *Diarrhæa*, or Flux of

the Belly, arising partly from putrid Humours, coming from the mesenterick Arteries, placed in the Intestines, and excreted, and partly from the weakned and subverted Tone of the Bowels: And so in the approaching Summer, the Sick at length submits to his Fate; and even by that Disease, to which the preceeding Winter led the way, meets his Death. And this is the chief kind of a Consumption.

III. *Salmon.*] There are several Kinds of Consumptions, which we will first consider, that you may know what it is we treat of. Of this Disease there are four Species, *viz.* 1. Ἀτροφία ἀνάλωσις, which is called in Latin, *Atrophia & Consumptio*; in English, *a Consumption, Pining, or Wasting of the whole Body*; and this is, that we treat of in this Chapter, which is without any Ulceration of the Lungs. 2. Φθίσις, called in Latin also, *Phthisis, & Ulceratio vel Ulcus Pulmonis, An Ulcer of the Lungs*; by reason of which, the whole Body wasts also and consumes; and of this we shall treat in the next Chapter. 3. Ἑκτικὴ, ἢ Μαρασμώδης, which is called in Latin, *Hectica*, also *Hectica Febris, & Tabes, Morbus Liquescens*, an Hectick or melting Consumption, which by a continual preter-natural Heat, melts away, as it were, and so consumes the whole Body: Of which in another Place. 4. Καταναλωσις, which is called in Latin, *Consumptio Symptomatica*, a symptomatical Consumption, or that which proceeds from some other Disease, being a Consequence thereof, and is only cured by curing the previous Distemper, of which we have nothing to say here.

IV. *Salmon.*] The Parts affected are next to be considered, which in the beginning of this Disease are, 1. *The Stomach.* 2. *The Mesentery.* Afterwards as the Disease gets Strength, the other *Viscera* are also concerned, as the *Lungs*, *Liver*, and *Spleen*; and in process of time, all the fleshy Substance of the whole Body, which is known by its apparent Pining and Wasting away, and continuing so to do, till the miserable Patient becomes nothing but Skin and Bones, and in a manner, a meer Skeleton.

V. *Salmon.*] *The Signs of a Consumption.* In its beginning there is a decay of the Stomach, the Appetite is depraved, or very much hurt or weakned, so as that the Patient desires very odd and unnatural things, or has but little Hunger, or desire to eat, tho' the most delicious Food: Or if the Appetite craves any thing, as it does sometimes, and that with Vehemence too, yet when they have eaten, they cannot digest it, (because the Tone of the Stomach is hurt) and are either very sick with it, or vomit it up again; so that it is not converted into a good chylous Juice, whereby the Body may be nourished; and there is either a loathing or nauseousness; and what Chyle is made, it is crude and indigested; from hence comes gradually a Decay of Strength, Faintness and Weakness, Leanness, and a silent wasting of the Body, every Day creeping on insensibly: The Sick eats his Food 'tis true every Day, but 'tis so, as if he did not care whether

whether he eat or no: A Laziness of Body grows upon him, so that he does not care for stirring, and is every Day as if he was tired and extream weary, either with great Travel, or hard Labour, altho' he has scarcely walked about his House or Chamber, nor done any the least kind of Work to affect him: This Wearisomness and Tiredness, grows still every day more and more upon him, and then he finds a Hollowness and Emptiness within, a sinking, as it were, of his Spirits, Faintness and a daily Decay of Strength, and shall wonder with himself all this while, what he ails, because he cannot do as he used to do: Sometimes he has a dull Pain in his Bowels, sometimes small wandering Pains thro' the external Parts of his Body; and upon taking any Refreshment, or a Glass of Wine, will be apt to have a light preternatural Heat in some particular Parts of the Body, or Flushings in the Face, contrary to their usual Custom; which Food or Drink, shall not cease to trouble them, till it is perfectly gone off the Stomach, either upwards by Vomiting, or downwards into the Belly.

VI. *Salmon.*] The Breast grows narrow and thin; the Stomach is drawn in, almost to the Ribs, and the Ribs in the Breast, standing out The Gristle *Ensiformis* is crooked; the *Diaphragma* or Midrif, is so contracted, that the Sick seems to have no Guts: The Pulse of the Heart may be seen or felt under the Stomach: The Shoulder Blades and Coller-Bones appear like Bows; the Back-Bone shews it self, the Belly is fallen and contracted; the Buttocks flaccid, or withered and consumed; the Thighs little more than Skin and Bone, besides the Muscular Membrane: The Arms, Hands, Legs and Feet, only like withered and dry Substances, covered with Skin; the Joints swelling and standing out, the Nails grow roundish, bending or crooked; the Hair falls, the Skin becomes wrinkled, pale, swarthy and dry; yet the Veins swelling out, being conspicuous every where, for want of Flesh to fill up the Skin round them. The Temples are fallen, the Eyes are hollow, and as it were, sunk in, dry, and sometimes with thick Recrements in them; the Nose sharp, the Cheeks hollow, the Cheek-Bones and other Bones sticking out, the Lips thin and pale, and the Mouth gaping; the lively Colour of the Face is extinguished, and becomes wan, discoloured or livid; the Jaw-Bones appearing edged, so that the whole Countenance is a true *Hippocratical Face*: And lastly, thro' this Universal Consumption, Pining or Wasting of the whole Body, and of all its Parts, the Sick being affected with a continued Coldness and Dryness, has in a manner, the very Appearance of a Ghost.

VII. *The Causes.* When also at this time, the Blood abounds with humid Particles, and the breathing by a hasty and unthought-of Contraction of the Pores very much is hindered, the said Particles fall into the Lungs, by the interspersed Branches of the *Vena Arteriosa*: Or upon the Glandules of the Fauces, by the salival Ducts. From whence it is, that an Humour immediately falling upon the

Lungs, by the *Aspera Arteria*, after the manner of a Catarrh, it so continually irritates the Sick, as to cause frequent and vehement Coughing: In short, it causes both that Weakness, and those other Symptoms we have been speaking of.

VIII And when the Lungs are no longer able to preserve to themselves, their natural State and Constitution or Habit, little Kernels or Pustules or Wheals, are wont to grow on them; the which (if the Lungs be viewed, in such who have dyed of this Disease) they will be found for the most part, to be distended or filled with a purulent Sanies or Matter. When once this Disease is confirmed, and has taken root, it despises for the most part, all Remedies.

IX. *Salmon.*] Our Author is very defective in shewing the true Causes of this Disease; and the latter part of it, seems to deviate from the *Theme*, and shews us rather some of the Causes of a *Phthisis*, or Ulceration of the Lungs, of which we shall speak at large in the next Chapter. However, the Defects of the Text, we will endeavour to supply in the following Supplement, and make Discovery of those things which have never been taken notice of by any Author before us, whatsoever. The Causes then of an Universal *Atrophia* of the whole Body, are either *Proximate & conjunct*, or *Primary & Remote*: And the *Proximate* we will first consider, and afterwards those which are *Remote*, or *Primary*.

X. *Salmon.*] *The Proximate, near, or conjunct Cause*, is Obstruction either of the *Parenchymous Substance of the Viscera*, i.e. of the Vessels running thro' them; as of the Stomach, Liver, Spleen, Pancreas and Mesentery; as also of the Lumber Glandules; and then of some other Vessels in the Musculous parts of the Flesh; and chiefly such as are small and capillary, whether in the Flesh or Skin. All the while the Obstruction is breeding and making, the Body, or some of its Parts are wasting: For as those Vessels which carry or convey the Nutriment to the respective Parts are stopt up, so those Parts must decay and waste. And it stands with Reason that it should be so, for they can no longer subsist, (at least in a State of Health) than they are nourished, and they can't be nourished, if the Nourishment is kept from them, by any Matter which obstructs its course: And then it follows, that these nutricious Juices, if they cannot go to their destinated places, that they must find out some other way; and therefore where the Stomach and Lungs are weak, they immediately induce a Catarrh, which is either moderate or vehement, according to the State and Habit of the Body: Or if perchance the rectitude of those Bowels is such, that they do not admit of a Catarrh, then a wasting Looseness of the Belly succeeds, which cannot be presently nor easily stopt; whereby that which should support the Human Frame, is prodigally, or licentiously carried off, many times to the utter undoing of the poor Patient.

XI. *Salmon.*] I have also further observed in the Bodies of several Patients, who have died of an *Atrophia*, or Pining Con-

Consumption, that in some the Lungs, in some the Stomach, in others the Liver, and in others again the Spleen, have been prodigiously tumified and hard, by reason of the vast quantity of Matter impacted in them: I could scarcely ever have believed that so great a heap of obstructed and heterogeneous Matter could have been crouded up together, in one particular *Viscus*, if my Eyes had not seen it. I have seen the *Vessels of the Stomach*, extended to three or four times their usual Bigness, and filled with a viscid or clammy Substance. I saw in another (who died of this Disease) the Substance of *the Liver*, grown to above twice, near thrice its natural Bigness, and the *Parenchyma* full of gravelly and stony Concretions in some parts of it, and other parts of it stuft with a Viscid, or clammy Substance, as tenacious almost as Bird-lime. I saw in a Woman which was opened, *the Spleen*, grown to a prodigious Magnitude, near four times as big as it ought to be in its natural State; *the Liver* being almost as much diminished in proportion. In another Woman I saw *the Lungs* swell'd to an admirable Magnitude, all the *Bronchia*, and other Vessels, and even the *Substance of the Lungs*, wonderfully stuft with a glutinous, sticking, pituitous Matter, and yet perfectly whole, without any Ulcer. In another I saw the *Lacteals* and other Vessels of the *Mesentery*, so vehemently obstructed with a viscid or tartarous Mucilage, that it appeared admirable to me, how the poor Patient liv'd so long in such a lingering and wasting Condition: In the same Body, one of the *Lumber Glandules* seem'd to be wasted away, or dry'd up; the other was grown to more than twice the natural Bigness, and full stuft with a tenacious, viscid Slime.

XII. *Salmon.*] *The Remote or Primary Causes.* The first Cause is lodg'd in the Stomach, either from the Weakness thereof, Diminution of its natural Heat, or hurt of the Tone thereof, so as that it is not able to elaborate a good and healthful Chyle; and this is many times caused by Gluttony, or overgorging the Stomach with Food more than it can digest, whereby the Body comes to be surfeited; or by extraordinary drinking of Ale, Beer, or Wine; or from a constant and too liberal or free drinking of Brandy, or other hot and strong Liquors, by which the Stomach is weakned, and its natural Heat in a manner destroyed: For I have known some, both Men and Women, drink Brandy and Strong-waters so long and constantly, and so often in a Day, that at length they could not live without them; and have so long persisted in their course of drinking them, till they drank them like ordinary Liquors, and have declared they have found no more Heat in them in the Stomach, than if they had drank so much fair cold Water: By which it was manifest the Heat of the Stomach was, I will not say totally destroyed, but much impaired and decayed, so that they had no Appetite to Food, eat without Desire, and then without Digestion, or with so bad an one, that a very vitiated

Chyle was educed therefrom, being all the while ſick and out of order, ſo long as what they eat, remain'd in the Stomach: The Stomach then I ſay, being thus hurt, whether by Gluttony, Surfeiting, Drunkenneſs, Poiſon, Salivation, Faſcination, or any other Cauſe whatſoever, the Foundation of this Diſeaſe is there laid; and from thence the remaining remote Cauſes take their Riſe, to the compleating of all the Structures, and Superſtructures of this Malady.

XIII. *Salmon.*] The firſt of the remote Cauſes being thus ſtated, it appears that a crude and vitious Chyle muſt be produced, from whence an evil and degenerate Blood and Lympha will be generated, which partaking of the Vices of the Chyle, will be either poor and diſpirited, or Viſcid and Mucilaginous, or Salt and Acrimonious; by any of which vitious Qualities, the nouriſhing Faculties of thoſe Juices will in a little time become fruſtrate. And this is done, 1. Either becauſe the generated Juices are poor, heterogene, and ſo unfit for Nouriſhment. 2. Or they may be too thick, viſcid, and clammy, by which, in their Paſſages thro' the Veſſels, chiefly the leſſer, and thoſe which are Capillary, whether of the Veins, Arteries, or Lympheducts, they may obſtruct, clog, or fur up the ſame; which by degrees will prevent the Nutriment to be conveyed to the reſpective Parts, as we have before declared; and gradually, as by theſe viſcid Juices theſe Veſſels are ſtopt or furr'd up, ſo the Conſumption or Pining, as gradually comes on; and when the Obſtruction in the principal Parts is compleated, the Diſeaſe is then ſaid to be come to its Height, and to become incurable. 3. Or they may become acid and acrimonious, and by a morbid Ferment, may ſo encreaſe their acritude, till they exulcerate the Lungs, or ſome of the other Viſcera, and ſo create a Phthiſis, of which we ſhall ſpeak at large in the next Chapter.

XIV. *Salmon.*] *The Prognoſticks.* This Diſeaſe whilſt it is recent, or in its beginning is curable, but if it is inveterate, or of long continuance, and the Sick does conſiderably or apparently conſume, or waſte every day, it is very dangerous, more eſpecially if there is an obſtinate Flux of the Belly, or Looſeneſs joined therewith: And if with the Flux, or a vehement Diaphoreſis, the Hippocratick Face is concomitant, the Sick is paſt all hope of Recovery. If it is accompanied with an acute Diſeaſe, it is very dangerous; but if the Conſumptive falls into an acute Diſeaſe, Death is then near at hand. If the Food is ejected almoſt as crude as it is received, (which ſhews the Weakneſs of the digeſtive Faculty, and an almoſt extinction of natural Heat:) or if the Urine or Stools be black, the Sick ſtill growing worſe and worſe; or the Stomach either comes or goes away of a ſudden, without any manifeſt Cauſe; or a long preceeding Looſeneſs ſtop of its own accord; or if the Thighs, Legs, or other Parts ſwell as if there was a Dropſie; or the Sick becomes vehemently hungry of a ſudden, the hopes of Life is paſt.

XV. *The*

XV. *The Cure.* 1. It ought to be attempted by diminishing the Cause of the Defluction upon the Lungs, by bleeding in the Arm, and by exhibiting gentle Purges. 2. Then Pectoral Medicines accommodated to the various States of the Disease, are to be exhibited, to wit, incrassating Medicines or Thickners, where the Humor is subtil and thin, thereby deceiving as it were, the Power of the expulsive Faculty. 3. But where the Sick is troubled with a thicker sort of Phlegm, and it is ejected by the Mouth with much Pains and Labour, here Attenuators, or things making thin, are to be administred. 4. And after them, Medicines cooling and contemperating, thereby to repress or subdue the Hectick Fever: Of which kind are *Asses Milk, Milk-Water, Emulsions of Sweet Almonds, Seeds of Melons, Musk-Melons, White Poppy-Seed, Cowslip Flower-Water*, &c. 5. Lastly, things are to be given for the Cure of the Ulcer, the chief of which are thought to be *Liquid Turpentine*, as that of *Strasburg*; also *Cyprus*, or *Chio Turpentine*, and *Opobalsamum*, that commonly so called.

XVI. In my Opinion, the Cure of the Disease ought first to be attempted, by bleeding in the Arm. 2. The next thing is the moving the Belly downwards continually for three Days together, which may be done with *Pilulæ Cochiæ* the greater; or with our *Lenitive, or purging Decoction.* 3. The third Night following the first Purge, exhibit *Syrupus de Meconio*, half an Ounce: And intermitting the space of two or three Days (as the Nature of the Matter may require) to repeat again the Purgation, and that so often as it shall seem needful, till the Symptoms either go away, or are very much diminished. 4. After every purging Dose, its Operation being over, the Patient may take of *Opobalsamum* twenty Drops; which may be dropt into, and mixt with a good quantity of white Sugar; and this he is to take, without taking any thing after it. 5. Or he may take Pills made of *Chio Turpentine, with Sugarcandy*: But the *Opobalsamum*, is not to be taken, unless due Evacuations have gone before: And in place of this, you may substitute an Electuary made of *Lucatellas's Balsam, with Pouder of Turpentine, Liquorice and Aniseeds.*

XVII. After Evacuation, you must earnestly endeavour to stop the Cough; lest the Lungs by such a motion of the Throat, and *Aspera Arteria*, should yet be made worser, and more diseased. 2. Here is brought besides other things for this purpose, a Syrup in good estimation, which you make after this manner. *Take Pectoral Decoction a Pint: Syrup of Poppies and Syrup of Maidenhair, of each two ounces, mix them.* Of this the sick may take five Spoonfuls thrice a Day. 3. And this mixture being often taken, it will by degrees stop the Catarrh, which thus falls upon the Lungs, and will bring them again to their pristine or healthful Habit, except they had for a long time before, very much declined from their natural State, it does also promote the Concoction of the purulent Matter, which is heaped up in them.

them. 4. But that which carries away the Palm in the Cure of this Diſeaſe, is, that the Sick every Day rides a Horſeback: He who applies himſelf in this Cure, to this exerciſe of his Body, need not then be tyed to any ſtrict Rules of Diet, nor forbear any ſort of Food or Drink, for upon this one point, the whole Cure depends. 5. In ſome of thoſe who recover their Healths by this Method, a Tumor is found to ariſe in the Neck, which is not much unlike the King's Evil.

XVIII. *Salmon.*] All our Author's Diſcourſe in theſe three laſt Sections, *viz.* XV. XVI. and XVII. ſeem to be intended *for the Cure of a Phthiſis*, of which he has a particular Diſcourſe in the following Chapter; and where we alſo (God willing) ſhall handle the ſame at large. Yet becauſe he has ſaid ſo much thereof here, we do not think it fit altogether, to let it paſs, without ſome few *Animadverſions* thereupon. If therefore the Diſeaſe is once come to that State as to be confirm'd, and to reject all Sorts, or at leaſt moſt Remedies, I am confident, that ſuch a Weakneſs muſt abſolutely forbid this Courſe of Bleeding. 1. Becauſe it is diametrically oppoſite to the Fourth, or Vital Indication of Cure. 2. Becauſe it diminiſhes nothing of the Morbifick Matter. 3. Becauſe it can by no means induce a Cure to the Ulcer contracted in the Lungs: So that we are of Opinion, that bleeding is abſolutely to be forborn. And if our Reaſons prevail not, we think that which we have ſeen with our Eyes, and the daily Practice of ſome, whom we have known to uſe it with the illeſt ſucceſs imaginable, ought to be of force againſt that Practice.

XIX. *Salmon.*] *As to the buſineſs of Purging in a Phthiſis*, it ought to be done with much caution, becauſe of the waſted Fleſh, and decayed ſtrength of the whole Body: And when it is done, it ought to be perform'd with ſuch a Cathartick as may mix intimately with the Blood, and withal carry along with it, a Traumatick or Vulnerary Quality, which in its paſſage thro' the Lungs with the Blood, may contribute towards their healing. Of Purges of this kind, there is but one or two in the World, which are known to have that Property, and they are the *Sal Panaretum*, and the *Sal Mirabile Glauberi*, which only carry off the morbifick Matter, kill the *Animaleula* in the Ulcers of the Lungs which eat and conſume the Part, and by their Balſamick property, heal them when they have done: And theſe Effects you, may eaſily perceive and prove, even by applying them to external Wounds and Ulcers.

XX. *Salmon.*] Then as to *Balſamicks with Sugar, or Sugar-candy*, we own that they are good, but will yet be all given in vain, unleſs you lay a ground for breeding of Fleſh, which muſt be done by that which is the root of Fleſh, and has that Property and Principle in it, of aſſimulating the Nutriment to it, and converting it into Fleſh. And the thing which is alone does this, is the Volatile Salt, and Spirit of the Fleſh and Blood of Animals, and whatever Things or Compoſitions do contain it. *The Volatile*

Salt:

Salts of Bullocks, Sheep, or Hog's Blood, or Flesh, made by Retort from the dryed Flesh, or dryed Blood, are Medicines beyond comparison; three or four ounces of such a like thing, will do more than a Cart-Load of other Medicaments, they being Specificks in this Cure, and therefore *the Volatile Salts of Vipers*, and *of Harts-horn*, are of singular use, and may be taken or given in the Morning fasting, and at four in the Afternoon, as also at Bed-time, in a Glass of *Generous Wine, mixt with Milk Water*, and sometimes in *Milk Water sweetned with Sugar, or Sugarcandy*, and sometimes in a *Decoction of Sarsa*.

XXI. *Salmon.*] Also the Patient ought often to eat, or rather drink *Milk sweetned with double refined Sugar, or Sugarcandy*, and that in large Quantities, because that concrete contains the Volatile Animal Salt in large Quantities, as they that please to extract it by Retort from the dryed Curd, may easily prove. And for the same Reason, *Strong Broths and Jellies of Beef, Veal, Mutton, Lamb, Pork, Pigs Flesh, as also of the Flesh of Fowls*, are of extraordinary use. For it is the Volatile Animal Salt which is in them, which gives them their Strength and Taste. This is the Method which is to be followed, and these are the things which are to be taken, and without which, a Cure of this kind can scarcely be performed. And this is the true reason (the want of following this Course) that so many die of this Disease, or that so few are cured under the Hands of the Learned: The dose of the Volatile Salt of Flesh, Blood, Bones or Horns, or of Vipers, or Harts-horn is from seven Grains to a Scruple *pro re nata*.

XXII. *Salmon.*] As to the stopping of the Cough (without which, all is done in vain) nothing can so effectually do it as *Opiates*, or Preparations of *Sulphur*, or *Catechu*. Our Specifick and Volatile *Laudana*, are of mighty use: So also *Liquid Laudanum* given in a due Dose. This Electuary of the Flowers of Sulphur always prevails. *Take* Indian *green Ginger six ounces, cut it small and beat it into a Mass in a Stone Mortar, then add to it Syrup of the same a small quantity, flowers of Sulphur, Pouder of the Cortex, and of Catechu, of each three drams: Thebean Opium in fine Pouder two Scruples, mix them.* Dose as much as a small Chestnut, 2, 3, or 4 times a Day. And not much inferior is *our Tinctura Mirabilis*, which may be taken in *Milk-water sweetned with Honey, or double refined Sugar*, a Spoonful at a time two or three times a Day.

XXIII. *Salmon.*] As to his last Advice which he says bears away the Palm; I own that I had much rather give ear to the Doctrine, than to try it, by putting it in Practice upon any of my Patients, tho' at the same time, I do not deny, but a change of Air, especially to one more Salubrious, is a thing almost absolutely necessary, however our Author's Devise, is like *Galen*'s Liberty, which he gives to such, as take his Vinegar of Squills. *Hoc Aceto qui utitur* (says he) *in Victu quamvis licentiosus esto; omnia enim cibaria conficiet, & a nullo unquam offendetur sampatietur; neque valde implebitur*,

tur, sed in melius proficere videbitur. He who uses (says he) this Vinegar, tho' he eats all sorts of Food, and lives never so licentiously in his Dyet, yet he shall never be hurt by it, or take any Surfeit, but be plainly the better for the same. This is for any one to believe it, that pleases.

XXIV. *Salmon.*] Add to the former things, this following Prescript. *Take Anisated Balsam of Sulphur 4 ounces: Balsam of Peru and Tolu, of each 3 ounces, Chymical Oil of Angelica one ounce, mix them.* Dose from a Scruple to 2 Scruples in a Spoonful of Syrup of Poppies twice a Day, as you see there is occasion. But if the decay and wasting of the Flesh is much, it is requisite, that the Patient should drink or sup every Day good quantities of Jellies, or strong Broths made of Legs of Pork, or rather, Buttock of Beef; because these truly nourish and restore, and being constantly taken, contribute very much to the Cure of the Disease. So also Jellies of Harts-horn, made according to the usual Methods, also a Jelly of Ising-glass dissolved in Water by boiling, and then compleated with Milk and double refined Sugar.

XXV. *The second kind of Consumption* proceeds from a Cough, in a much different Season of the Year, *viz.* in the Beginning of Summer: This very often seizes upon young People, who are of a more weak habit of Body, and whose Blood abounds with hot and acid Particles. 2. These bring forth Blood from the Lungs by Coughing, being before-hand too much heated by drinking of Wine: and the Sick perceive or feel a Pain, or certain Grief in their Lungs; which Symptoms, unless they are timely remov'd by proper Remedies, there comes first a Hoarsness and Soarness; and presently after an Ulcer, in which matter being generated, it is at length Spit forth.

Salmon.] All this is nothing but a *Phthisis* in the beginning (but proceeding at a different Season of the Year, of which our Author has been speaking in *Sect.* XV, XVI, and XVII, a foregoing) which when it comes to an Ulcer in the Lungs, is then a true or confirm'd *Phthisis*, of which we shall particularly treat in the next Chapter: A pining Consumption, being the peculiar Argument of this Chapter, which we shall prosecute anon.

XXVI. Now in order to the Cure of this kind of Consumption, there must be a repeated alternate course of Bleeding and Purging, more especially in the beginning of the Disease, by which means it will be easily overcome. 2. And if the Sick will submit to a Diet, it ought to be cooling and thickning, and wholly to abstain from Flesh.

XXVII. *Salmon.*] As to Bleeding, it is of the same consequence here in the beginning of this Disease as we have discoursed before; for whatever prostrates the Strength of the Patient, by hurting the Vital Potency, must be opposite to the last Indication of Cure: and Purging must also be done with Caution, as before directed, lest you make the poor Patient a Sacrifice to Ignorance: But when any Indication induces it, it is to be performed with

with either the *Sal Panaretum*, or *Sal Mirabile*, as before declared: giving every Morning fasting a Spoonful of *Tinctura Mirabilis*, and in the Day-time, some few Grains of *Sal Volatile Viperarum*, in a Glass of simple generous Canary, or mixt with an equal quantity of *Milk-water*, or in place thereof twenty five or thirty Drops of the *Potestates Viperarum*, or for want of it, of the Powers of *Beef*, or of *Bullock's Blood*, which are not much inferior to most other things in the World; and every Night going to Bed, a Dose of our *Specifick Laudanum*. But enough now of a *Phthisis*, 'till we come to treat of it in the next Chapter.

XXVIII. *The third kind of this Disease*, owes its rise to a Febrile Matter, now sent forth into the Lungs by a melting Fever; which, the more infirm (made so by the Symptoms before enumerated) are by little and little afflicted withal. 2. Sometimes it arises from that purulent Matter put forth by Pleuriticks, not being plentifully enough cast forth by Expectoration: In which case, the Cure is to be persued, in all respects, as if it was an *Empyema*. 3. *There is a fourth Species or Kind of this Disease*, which proceeds from too plentiful and frequent Evacuations; into which purely, by making weak through the same, the Patient is precipitated: These about Evening are vexed with a Hectick Fever, from the Food and Drink they have taken.

XXIX. *Salmon.*] These 3d and fourth kinds of a Consumption, spoken of by our Author, are our third and fourth Kinds hinted at in Sect. III. aforegoing of this Chapter, *viz. Hectica, vel Marasmodes, Morbus Liquescens*, an Hectick or melting Consumption; and *Catanalooſis, Consumptio Symptomatica*, a Symptomatical Consumption, or a Consumption proceeding from some other Disease: Of which, since our Author has not been pleased to give us here any particular Methods of Cure, neither shall we, but rather refer them to be treated severally of in another place, where their Descriptions, Parts they afflict, Signs, Causes, Prognosticks and Indications of Cure may be treated of at large. In what follows we shall give you the various Methods and Prescripts, for the cure of the first kind of Consumption of this *Classis*, which is an *Atrophia*, or a pining or wasting away of the Flesh of the whole Body, whose Signs, Causes and Prognosticks we have already treated of in some of the Sections going before.

XXX. *Salmon.*] The Cure of an *Atrophia*, or Pining Consumption. The first intention of Cure is to open the Obstructions whether in the Vessels of the fleshy Substance of the Body, or in the Parenchyma of the *Viscera*. The second Intention is to comfort and fortifie the Stomach, and to restore its Tone and native Heat. The third Intention is to stop the Fluxion, whether it falls on the Lungs, or on the Back and Spinal Marrow. The fourth Intention is to nourish and restore the Flesh already wasted and consumed.

XXXI. *Salmon.*] *The first Intention, to open the Capillary Vessels of the external Parts of the fleshy Substance;*

ſtance; the Patient ought often, as Morning and Evening, or at leaſt once every Day, to bathe the whole Body in warm Water, or in a Decoction of *Angelica*, *Bawm*, *Centaury*, *Dill*, *Elder Leaves*, *Fennel* and *Mint*, in which the Patient may ſit half an Hour, or more, as their Strength will permit, taking heed that the Bath be not made ſo hot as to cauſe fainting. This being done daily for ſome Weeks, will open the cloſed Pores of the Skin, melt and thin the thickned and congealed Juices in the Capillary Veſſels, which, as it were, fur them up; draw thoſe glutinous Subſtances forth thro' the Pores, and withal attract a more limpid or thinner Juice, and of a more pure and ſpirituous Subſtance into the room thereof, for the nouriſhing and reſtoring of the waſted and decayed Fleſh.

XXXII. *Salmon.*] In the mean Seaſon, while this Work is doing, internal Aperitives are to to be given, *viz.* 1. Such as may incide and diſſolve the Congelation of the Viſcid Humours in the *Viſcera*, and ſuch are all ſorts of Volatile Spirits and Salts, as Spirits of *Scurvy-graſs*, Garden *Creſſes*, *Horſe-Radiſh*, *Rocket*, and the like; and *Volatile Salts of Hartshorn*, *of Sal Armoniack*, *and of Amber*, to which add *Our Sal Volatile Oleoſum*: The Humours and Blood being made more fluxile and eaſy by this means; the morbid Matter is then to be carried off by all the Ways which Nature has provided for the ſame; as *Firſt by Purging*, in which the proper Cathartick is either *Sal Mirabile Glauberi*, or our *Sal Panarætum*; for theſe not only purge, but enter into the Maſs of Blood and Humours, and ſo carry off with them all thoſe vitious Recrements which render thoſe Juices viſcid and obſtructive. *Secondly by Diureticks*, that thoſe Recrements of the Blood, and Juices devolving to the Reins by the Emulgent Arteries, may that way be evacuated; and this is done, ſometimes by fixt Vegetable Salts, as Firſt, *Salt of Scurvy-graſs*, *Wormwood*, *Broom*, *Bean-ſtraw*, *Aſh-wood*, *Tartar*, &c. and ſometimes by Mineral Salts, as *Oils of Salt*, *Sulphur and Vitriol* diluted in proper Vehicles, as the Phyſician ſhall adviſe. *Thirdly*, *By Sudorificks*, ſuch cauſe an expulſion of the remaining and deeper rooted Matter through the Pores of the Skin, and this is beſt performed with *our Volatile Laudanum*, which ought to be given with Prudence and Diſcretion.

XXXIII. *Salmon.*] The ſecond Intention which is to reſtore the native Heat and Tone of the Stomach, that thereby the Blood and other Juices may be generated pure, florid and healthy; and thoſe which are already generated may be reſtored to their due *Craſis*. We will not trouble the Patient with a great number of Medicaments to anſwer this Indication; for as the Stomach is a nice Part, and its Tone now hurt or depraved, ſo it is requiſite that it ſhould be reſtored with the fewer things, and ſuch as may be in ſome ſort, as well as effectual to the intended purpoſe, ſo alſo grateful to the ſame, without which the Buſineſs will not be very well performed: For this purpoſe we commend our *Tinctura Antimonii Compoſita*, alſo

also *Our Tinctura Stomachica*, and *Our Spiritus Stomachicus*; any of which may be given from twenty five to thirty or thirty five Drops in a Glass of pure clear Ale, or rather generous Wine, and that two, three or four times a Day; or you may give this. *Take of our Spiritus Aperiens two ounces; of our Tinctura Stomachica three ounces*, Dose thirty or forty Drops, or more at a time in a Glass of Ale or Wine. I remember I once cured a Woman in the deepest Consumption that ever I saw any one in, who after recovered, by giving her continually every Day (several times in a Day) this our *Tinctura Stomachica* forty Drops or more at a time in Cows Milk, the use of which she continued for about a Month together.

XXXIV. *Salmon.*] But because it is the Nature of this Disease (by reason of the Weakness and Disorder of the Stomach) to require Variety and Change of Food, of which we shall discourse anon; so likewise it is reasonable, not to continue in the use of one and the same Medicine too long, but now and then to change the same, and make use of Variety: Sometimes the afore described Mixture, and sometime the *Tinctures of Steel*, both the *Black* and the *Nitrated*, which are Specificks for rectifying the Discrasy of the *Blood* and *Lympha*, as also for opening all the Obstructions of the *Viscera*; but this take for a sure and certain Truth, that unless the Stomach be restor'd to its healthful State, there can be no hopes of curing this Disease; and because the Tone thereof is so much deprav'd or hurt, by reason of the great decay of its natural Heat, such things as revive that, are by the Patient to be often taken; among the Number of which, is that of *Barbadoes Green Ginger*.

XXXV. *Salmon.*] Add to these Remedies this following *Elixir Caryophyllorum. Take of the best rectify'd Spirit of Wine a quart; choice Oil of Cloves one ounce; rectify'd Oil of Sulphur two ounces; Pouder of Cloves two ounces and half: Mix, digest cold for thirty Days, in a Glass Bottle close stopt, shaking the Bottle twice a Day; let it stand and settle, till it be purely fine; then decant the Elixirated Tincture, and keep it in another Glass close stopt for use.* Dose from twenty to thirty or forty Drops, more or less in a Glass of Wine or Ale, two or three times a Day. This is a choice Medicament, and will not go without its Effects; and by it alone, I have sometimes cur'd not only recent Consumptions, but such also, as have been of considerable Standing.

XXXVI. *Salmon.*] *The Third Intention is to stop the Fluxion, whether it falls on the Lungs or Back and Spinal Marrow*; and this is done by such things as by their proper Powers, shall stir up a new Ferment in the Stomach, and the *Viscera*; and by their volatile Qualities, shall presently send the Juices and Humours (now diverted in the Fluxion by their Deadness and want of Spirits) into all the Parts of the humane Frame, being made lively and spirituous. And this is performed either by *Vegetable Laudana*, and Diureticks, or by such as are of the *Mineral Kind*.

XXXVII. *Salmon.*] Among the Number of *Vegetable Laudana*, our

our Authors *Laudanum Liquidum*, or that of *our Prescription*, in *Lib.* 1. *Cap.* 1. *Sect.* 14. may be made use of; or the *Eclegma Sudorificum*, in *Sect.* 28. of the same; but if it be an incipient Atrophia, then his *Eclegma Fortis incrassans*, or *Eclegma in defluxione tenui*, may be successfully prescrib'd (in *Sect.* 8. and 9 of the place afore-cited) giving in the Day-time, the *Elixir Caryophyllorum*, in *Sect.* 34. just now describ'd. But such as will make use of more potent Remedies, may have recourse to our *Guttæ Vitæ*, which may be given from twenty to thirty Drops, or our *Volatile Laudanum*, which may be given from one to four Grains, by a gradual encrease of the Dose; and in the Day-time this following Julep may be exhibited; *Take common Spirit of Wine, Spring Water, of each two quarts; pure Lime-juice, such as has not lost either its Taste or Smell, a quart, double-refined Sugar two pounds; mix and dissolve:* Of this let the Patient drink a Pint, or a Pint and half, or a Quart a Day, at four several times of the Day; and let it be continu'd till the Patient is perfectly restor'd: It excites a new ferment in the Stomach and Bowels, and potently provokes Urine, by which a Diversion is made of the diffluent Matter.

XXXVIII. *Salmon.*] Among the number of *Mineral Landana*, we commend the *Narcotick Sulphur of the Vitriol of Mars*, which is a noble Medicament; or our *Impetus Martis*, prepar'd after a peculiar manner from the same; which alone Preparation is worth a thousand other Preparations; it may be given from 15 to 40 Drops in a Glass of choice Canary every Night at Bed-time, beginning first with the smaller Dose, and encreasing three Drops every Night, till they come to the largest Dose, if need so require. If the languishing be much, and the dejectedness of Spirit be very great, a Dose of our *Angelus Mineralis* is to be given every Morning fasting, made up into a Bolus with a few Drops of *Balsam* of *Peru*, or of our *Panacea Balsamina*, giving it from fifteen Grains to half a Dram: Or otherwise our *Pilulæ Angelicæ* may be exhibited in place thereof, which may be given from two Scruples to two Drams, according to Age, Strength, force of the Disease, and other Accidents, and is a Medicament without Comparison.

XXXIX. *Salmon.*] *The fourth and last Intention is to nourish the decay'd Bowels, and to restore the Flesh already wasted and consumed.* This has respect first to Medicine; Secondly, To Diet. The Medicinal Part is perform'd by giving *Volatile Salt of Vipers*, a gr. vj. ad xij. in any fit Vehicle, or *the Powers of Vipers* a gut. 15. ad 30. in a Glass of Canary. Where these things cannot be had a *Volatile Salt* may be drawn from the dry'd Blood, or dry'd Flesh of Bullocks, Sheep, Goats, Hogs, Deer, or other edible Animals, which will do Wonders; or *the Potestates or Powers made of the Bloods or Flesh of those Animals*, may be prepar'd according to our Order, and given in the same Dose and Manner as we have directed *Powers of Vipers* to be given. Among Vegetable Preparations, the chief are the Juices or Essences, but chiefly the Sanguis or Blood of Satyrion or

or Tulip Roots, of Parsneps, Eddo's, Potatoes, red Beet Roots, Comfery Roots, *&c.* all or any of which restore admirably; nor is *the Juice of Baked Turneps prest out*, and mixt with a Glass of Wine, a quarter of a Pint or more at a time, a very mean thing in this case, if constantly adhered to for some considerable time, changing it now and then for some other Medicament, as the Stomach may require.

XL. *Salmon.*] As to the Diet, the Food ought to be fresh not salt, rather to induce a laxative Habit in the Bowels than a Constipation, because the Matter of the Catarrh is that way best remov'd; it ought to be mild and sweet, which may quiet the exorbitant Motion of the Membranous, Fibrous, and Sensible Parts of the Stomach and Lungs, and other Parts adjacent, Rice and Rice-milk, hul'd Barley eaten with fresh Butter, a little Salt and Sugar, or with New Milk or Cream may be profitable; pure white Bread, also white Biscate hard baked, is good often to be eating of; and it may be eaten dipt into the red Juice or Gravy of Beef, Mutton, Pork, Veal, or Lamb: Chicken-Broth boiled to a Gelly, is profitable; so also strong Broths made of Buttock of Beef, Legs of Mutton or Pork, *&c.* which may be taken in large Quantities, and often in the Day-time, and continu'd for many Weeks; for these things restore the pined and wasted Flesh, and strengthen the decay'd Parts to Admiration. Veal is commended to be eaten, as also Chickens, Pullets, and Broths made of them, Hens, Ducks, and Turkies Eggs nourish and restore very much, so also Cockles, Oisters, and Cray-fish, and Broths made of them: Parsneps and Potatoes are Restoratives.

XLI. *Salmon.*] Of Fruits we commend *Almonds*, and Emulsions made of them with New Milk; *Raisins* eaten raw often in the Day-time, also boiled in Broths or with Meats; or plentifully put into light Puddens made of grated Bread and Eggs, with Cream. *Dates* and *Figs* are incomparable Things, and some have been cur'd of Consumptions by eating those things alone; drinking New Milk warm from the Cow, or kept artificially warm in a Sand Furnace all Day; for this affords good Nourishment for Bodies very much pined away or emaciated. *Asses* Milk drank warm is commended, but *Womens* Milk above them all: Where these cannot be had, *Goats* or *Cows* Milk may do, and are indeed of incomparable use; and tho' viscous things, as Gellies, Sheep's Feet, Calves, and Neat's Feet are commended, if fitted for eating by the Art of a skilful Cook; yet they are not too often to be eaten (unless with some Laxative Vehicle) because they are apt to clog and glew up the Capillary and other small Vessels of the *Mesentery*, and stop the Passage of the Chyle, whereby the Nutriment may be hindred in its Distributions to the wasted Parts of the Body.

XLII. *Salmon.*] As for Drink, *Aqua Vitæ*, *Brandy* and Strong-Waters are to be avoided, especially as to any Quantities of them. Maulted Drinks seem not to favour this Disease; however a strong Drink made of the Juice

of the Birch Tree in the Spring-time, has been said to recover Thin, Lean, and Consumptive People: And instead of Beer, a Decoction of Hull'd or Pearl Barly, with Raisins and blew Currans or Figs, will be found very profitable: So also Whey or Cows Milk itself, where they are found to agree with the Stomach. Some commend a thin Water-gruel; but I know by Experience that a thin Mutton, Beef, or Pork Broth (made pretty strong of the Meat without any Oat-meal) mixt with an equal quantity of New Milk from the Cow, is an extraordinary Restorative beyond most other Drinks. Where Milk is not used, or where it is used, after it is gone off the Stomach, generous and strong Wines may be moderately drank, especially at Supper-time, because they strengthen the Stomach, envigorate the Spirits, and contribute much to Nutrition, especially in Age, or where the Animal Spirits are low, and seem to be sunk; but high or much drinking of them is to be avoided like the Plague itself.

XLIII. *Salmon.*] Motion and Exercise, as also Watching, ought to be moderate: Moderate Sleeping ought to be induc'd if it is wanting, because Sleep nourishes much; and the Consumptive ought to sleep more than he watches. The Belly ought not to be bound, nor yet to be loose, because the Lask or Flux wasts the whole Man more than any thing else, unless violent preternatural Sweats. And if the Belly is Costive, it ought to be loosned by Solutives: For this is reasonable to be thought, that all Excretions ought to be in a Medium, or due Proportion; for if there is a Retention of what ought to be discharg'd, or a discharge of what ought to be retain'd, the hopes of cure will be frustrated.

CHAP. XIV. *Of a Phthisis or Ulceration of the Lungs.*

I. 1. THE *Phthisis* or *Ulceration of the Lungs* is observ'd to happen to People mostly from eighteen to thirty five Years of Age. 2. The Signs of it are these; there is an Hectick Fever, which is increased in its heat after Meat; there is also an apparent swiftness in the Pulse, and a redness of the Cheeks. 3. The Matter which is spit forth with Coughing, is bloody or mattery; and being spit into the Fire, it sends forth a stinking Smell; and if it is spit into a Bason of Water, it sinks to the bottom. 4. There is also sweating at Night, blewness of the Cheeks, paleness of Face, and sharpness of Nostrils. 5. There is also a sinking of the Temples, crookedness of the Nails, falling off of the Hair, and a wasting Flux of the Belly, which latter Symptoms are the immediate Fore-runners of Death.

II. If after all that is prescrib'd in the former Chapters, the Cough doth both continue to vex the Sick, and by long and

and violent Concuſſion of the Lungs, it has exceedingly weakned them, thereby introducing a *Phthiſis* or *Ulcerated Lungs*, you muſt proceed thus; *Take Syrup of ground Ivy, a ſpoonful, Balſam of Peru, ten drops; mix them in a Spoon*, and let it be taken thrice a Day, drinking after it four Ounces of the bitter Draught, made without the purging Ingredients. 2. But if that ſhould cauſe a Flux of the Belly, then you ought to leſſen the Doſe to three Ounces. 3. It is alſo to be noted, that if the Sick diſlikes the *Syrup of Ground Ivy*, that you may take inſtead thereof, a ſufficient quantity of *Sugarcandy in fine Pouder*. But if all the Remedies which have been hitherto found out, even the moſt excellent and efficacious, avail nothing; the Sick muſt take long and far Journies on Horſeback. 5. It is likewiſe obſerv'd; that ſuch as are already come to ripeneſs of Years, muſt ſpend more time in this Exerciſe, than if they were Boys or Youths; and truly the *Peruvian Bark*, is not a much more certain Remedy for *Agues*, than in this Age, Riding is for an Ulceration of the Lungs.

III. *Salmon.*] This Diſeaſe is call'd in Greek Φθίσις (*ex* Φθίνω *tabeſco,*) in Latin *Ulcus, Ulceratio vel Exulceratio Pulmonis*; *Pulmo exulceratus*; and in Engliſh, an Ulcer or Exulceration of the Lungs, or Lungs ulcerated. It is a Diſeaſe accompanied with a lingring Fever and a purulent Cough, caus'd by ſharp Particles of a pituitous Matter, Tubercles or Knots in the Lungs, which corrode and make an Ulcer, by which not only the Lungs themſelves waſte and conſume, but even the whole Body likewiſe. This Diſeaſe manifeſts itſelf firſt with a Cough without ſpitting, but in proceſs of time by a continual Spitting, firſt of frothy or ſometimes bloody Recrements, and afterwards of a purulent or putrid Matter.

IV. *Salmon.*] The Subſtance of the Lungs are the Parts which are nearly affected, for the Ulcer is actually there; but the Blood, and Heart, and Glands of the Meſentery are not free from a Diſaffection, which is manifeſt from the lingring Fever, and the waſting of the whole Body; the Nutriment thereof being conſumed in a great meaſure, by being converted into frothy and purulent Recrements, and continually coughed and ſpit forth.

V. *Salmon.*] The Signs of an approaching *Phthiſis*; there is a continual defluxion of Salt or ſharp Rheum, a tickling Cough, Spittle ſharper, and more in quantity than uſual; a ſmall heat in the Hands, and other Parts of the Body; paleneſs of Face, Conſumptive or waſting Habit, a growing weaker and weaker every Day, the Nouriſhment not being aſſimulated; the Breaſt grows narrower and narrower every Day; Shoulder-blades begin to ſtick out, and the Neck looks long, by reaſon of its looſing its Subſtance, and growing more ſlender; and many times there is a previous Spitting of Blood, or Blood Recrements for ſome time, and gradually the Cough grows more violent; there comes on alſo, by Degrees, a difficulty of Breathing, a raiſing of a cinereous, greeniſh, blewiſh,

yellowish, and sometimes a blackish Spittle, either frothy or purulent, which being spit into the Fire gives a stinking Smell, but if into Water it sinks.

VI. *Salmon.*] To these previous Symptoms, you may add an Hereditary Disposition, which gives more certainty to all the former Signs: For as usually one troubled with Gout, or Stone, Asthma, King's Evil, Mania, Frenzy, or Epilepsy, usually get Children affected with the same Diseases; so likewise one troubl'd with *Phthisis* or a Consumption, may beget a Child apt to have the same Disease, and the Children begot by such distemper'd Parents, are commonly the Inheritors of their Father's Diseases, as well as of their Estates: For as healthy People breed healthy Seed, of which healthy Children are begotten: So diseased People breed diseased Seed, impregnated with the Seeds or Taint of their Diseases, by which the Parents Diseases are transferr'd to their Children; the morbid Idea, in process of Time, growing ripe, and shewing its self in its Colours, in their wretched Off-spring.

VII. *Salmon.*] The Signs of a confirm'd *Phthisis*; the Feverish Heat encreases for about two Hours after eating; an apparent wasting or consuming of the whole Body, almost continual Coughing, great Expectoration, sometimes more easily, sometimes more difficultly, the Recrements being either frothy, bloody, sanious, or purulent, fœtid, and of several Colours, a dull Pain about the Shoulder-blades and Breast; Appetite decay'd or deprav'd, or Canine Wind in the Stomach and Bowels, great Thirst many times, and sometimes a great swelling of the Legs or Feet, and sometime a Rupture of the Lymphatick Vessels, the Belly sometimes Costive, sometimes too loose, great Sweats, or a faint sweating Habit of Body, which are cold, and smell soure, by which the Patient is continually and wonderfully emaciated, and these happening, for the most part, in the Night, or if in the Day-time, when the Patient is a Sleep, so that these Sweats are colliquative, like as those in Hectick Persons. Sometimes the Sick is subject to Fainting, has a weak Pulse, with a lingering Fever for some few Hours after eating; a flushing in the Face, and a more intense Heat towards Evening; the Stools and Urine stink, and in the Urine there is sometimes purulent and fatty Excretions, because the Blood continually passing thro' the purulent or sanious Lungs (as also the Chyle after it is elaborated into Blood) become contaminated with the Malign and Corrosive Particles of that putrid Matter. And in the Height or Consummation of the Disease, the Pores become obstructed, whence follows a loosness of the Bowels, whereby all the Moisture of the Body seems to be voided; and then there is a falling of the Hair (the sharp Humours corroding and corrupting its Roots) the Nails grow ill shaped, or much bowed, the Face looks pale, wan and wasted, the Eyes are hollow, the Nose is sharp, the Temples sunk or compressed, the tips of the Ears cold and contracted, the Skin of the Fore-

head

head hard and dry, the Chin peaked, and the Chaps or Jaws, pale, livid, or black, and consum'd even to Skin and Bone, so that the whole Countenance looks like to a true Hippocratick Face.

VIII. *Salmon.*] But tho' Authors, and even daily Experience itself have approv'd all these signs to be the Characteristicks of a confirm'd *Phthisis*, yet it is as true, that they do not all happen to every Patient, but some of them to one Patient, and others of them to another, and that according as the Strength, Nature, Constitution, and Habit of the Body, will admit them: But the few Pathognomick signs of a *Phthisis*, are these seven following, 1. A frequent Cough. 2. Difficulty of Breathing. 3. Putridity of the Blood. 4. A lingring Fever. 5. Colliquative Night Sweats. 6. A wasting Flux of the Belly. 7. Sanious or Purulent Matter expectorated. But this last Symptom has been observ'd by very learned Physicians to have been sometimes wanting, even in those who have a *Phthisis*. Now, in this case, if I may speak my Opinion, I do believe it has been wanting in such only, who have been for a long time a wasting, have not only spit up almost the whole substance of their Lungs, but also almost all the humidities of the whole Body; or that otherwise have spent those Humidities either by natural melting Sweats, or a continu'd and draining Flux of the Bowels. To the former Pathognomick Signs are also added. 8. A true Hippocratick Face before describ'd.

IX. *Salmon.*] This Disease may arise from many and various Causes, as, 1. From a Chronical continu'd Cough, which being vehement, may, by its violent motion, break the Membranes of the Lungs. 2. From violent Vomiting, by which sometimes some Vessel of the Lungs or Parts adjacent are broken, whence follows spitting of Blood. 3. From a Peripneumony or a Pleurisie, when they end in a Purulency, and the Pus or Putrid Matter from its first appearing, is not timely expectorated. 4. From an Apostem of the Lungs, which breaking, pours out the purulent Matter, contain'd therein, upon the substance of the Lungs, where stagnating, and becoming acrimonious or corrosive, it induces an Ulcer. 5. From sharp Humours, Vapours, or Steems falling upon the Lungs, which by the Acrimony, may corrode the Coats of the Lungs, and Ulcerate their tender Substance. These Humours, according to *Willis*, are discharg'd from the Blood upon the Lungs, which intruding into the Tracheal and Pulmonany Vesicles, fill and distend them; then at length they break, and there is an evasation of that peccant and putrid Humour, whereby at length a sordid Ulcer is bred. Now these acid Humours may come from an acid Blood, which having lost its consistency, discharges its Serotisies both out of the *Pneumonick and Tracheal Arteries* into the substance of the Lungs. For when the Blood has contracted an Acrimony, and is not fit for Nutrition of the Parts; upon its coming into the Vessels of the Lungs, it, by its sharpness and quality, opens them, whence proceeds spitting of Blood, then a purulent Spit-

tle, which at length introduces a Consumption. 6. From a too serous and acrid *Lympha*, or a salt and acrimonious *Serum*, which, by their sharp Particles, may vellicate the Lungs by frequent and vehement Coughing; by which means, the Coats of the *Aspera arteria* will at length be fretted, and then an Ulcer will presently after be induc'd. 7. From the remote Cause, which is chiefly an Acrimony of the Blood, whose sharp and corrosive Particles by passing thro' the Lungs, exulcerate them. 8. From the acrid or corrosive Exhalations arising from the slacking of Lime (and other fumes from corrosive and poisonous Minerals, *&c.*) which being drawn into the Lungs, exulcerate them.

X. *Salmon.*] The causes of some of the Symptoms, 1. The causes of the Cough are from the Acrimony of the Juices flowing into the Lungs, or the Particles of the vitiated and sharp Flatus or Steem drawn in by the Mouth and Nostrils, and several other Accidents, largely related in the foregoing Chapter. 2. Difficulty of breathing is caus'd usually from abundance of pituitous Matter, Tartarous, Mucilage or Pus, stuffed up in the Lungs, which so oppresses them, as to hinder natural respiration, and prejudice the Voice. 3. The Cause of the putridity of the Blood is either 1. Remote from the evil Way of living in former Times, or by Hereditary induction from Diseas'd Parents. Or, 2. Proximate, from the Blood passing through the ulcerated Lungs, whereby it becomes contaminated with the putrid and acrid Particles of the Ulcer. 4. The lingring Fever is from the Fermentation of the Blood, caus'd by the mixing of the acid, corrosive and putrid Heterogeneous Particles, with its other homogene Substance, deriv'd continually from the Ulcer already made in the Lungs 5. The melting Night Sweats are from the putrifactive febritick Heat, which melts and dissolves not only the Juices filling and residing in the Pores, but all the juices in the parts adjacent to the same; by which means being made thin and fluid they incessantly flow forth without interruption, whence comes an universal wasting and consuming of the Substance of the whole Body. 6 The wasting loosness or Flux of the Belly (which is generally fatal, and a Token of incurability) arises from the universal depravation and acritude of the Juices, attended with an universal poorness of the Blood, as being divested of its spirituous, sulphureous and balsamick Parts; and withal a dissipation of the Spirits ensuing thereupon, from the Bloods being unreasonably tainted with the Malignity of the Pulmonick Ulcer; which, by reason of its own sharp Particles, and being also acuated with the sharp Particles of the degenerate Bile proceeding from the *Ductus Choledocus*, so prick the Bowels as to excite a continual Provocation of going to Stool. 7. The Cause of the sanious or purulent Matter expectorated, is from Natures endeavouring to expel the Enemy, or the offending Matter which disturbs her in her Oeconomy, an Ulcer being first made in the Lungs by in-

breathed,

breathed, sharp or corrosive Particles, or the innate Acrimony of the Blood and Lympha, or an Apostem of the Lungs now broken, or any other of the Causes before enumerated. 8. The Hippocratick Face is caus'd from the result of all the former Causes conjoined together, and continu'd to the end of the Chapter, which ends in Lypothymies or Swoonings, from a Congelation of the Substance of the Blood for want of heat and Spirits to make it fluid; which, as they are Signs of the Disease confirm'd, so they fore-shew that Death is at the Door, or not far off.

XI. *Salmon.*] *The Prognosticks. Hippocrates de morb.* lib. 2. has this Passage, If he who is seiz'd with an Inflammation of the Lungs, purge not at the Critical Days, but the froth and pituitous Matter remains there, so as to be suppurated, the Sick if he be presently taken into Cure, for the most part, does well; but if he is neglected, then the Apostemated Matter corrupts, and by its remaining there putrifies within; which breaking afterwards, becomes an Ulcer, and continually generates Pus or purulent Matter, after which the Patient never gathers any Nourishment worth speaking of: Nor does he raise any thing by Spittle, but he is as it were suffocated and continually oppress'd with greater difficulty of breathing; and when he does breath, he rattles and wheezes, from Matter sticking in or stopping the upper part of the Breast, and at length, when the Passages are all stopt up for want of Expectoration, or by the viscid, purulent Matter sticking there, he dies.

XII. *Salmon.*] A *Phthisis* or Ulcer of the Lungs is a Chronical Disease, which, tho' it is thought to be easily cured in its beginning, and in process of time becomes uncurable, yet it will not be imprudent to follow the Advice of *Galen*, viz. To predict the Danger, and advise the Sick to have Thoughts of their approaching End, for thereby we shall clear our selves from all manner of Blame and Disgrace. And this so much the more for that *Timæus a Guldenklee, Lib.* 2. *Ep.*2. tells us in these or the like words, *viz.* In all my Practice (says he) and I have practis'd above seven and thirty Years, I never could restore any one who had an Ulcer in his Lungs, to perfect Health, tho' I have left nothing unattempted, which could any ways conduce to the Cure of this Disease. But tho' ulcerated Lungs are difficultly cured, partly in respect to the tenderness and rarity of their Substance, and partly by reason of their continual Motion which hinders their Consolidation, for which cause Parents often exclaim against their Physicians, as being either unlearned or ignorant, or careless and unsuccessful; yet I am not altogether of *Guldenklee*'s Opinion, but can affirm from my own Experience, that a *Phthisis* or Ulcer of the Lungs is truly curable, if taken in hand, before it becomes inveterate, and the mortal or fatal Symptoms attend it; and I have some Histories of this Cure by me, perform'd by my self, which evince it. But this I say, that the ordinary or common Medi-

cines, us'd by the vulgar Physicians in this case, will do nothing; whereas the exalted antiphthisical Arcana, and such as I can produce, will indeed do Wonders.

XIII. *Salmon.*] If the expectorated Matter is equal, white, and easily raised, the Symptoms be few and mild, the Appetite good, and the strength not much diminish'd, and the Morbifick Humour be translated to the Emunctories, or some other Parts, there is hopes of recovery. But if there is a Want of Appetite, and the Hypochondria be withal tumified with Wind, and the Stomach swell'd up with much ill Humor, the Pulse is slow and weak, the Cough frequent and violent, melting Sweats, Fluxes of the Belly, oily or fatty Urine, with Cramps or Convulsions and Faintings, the danger of Death is not small. If the Disease is inveterate, the Spittle stinks much, or is hereditary; if there is also a suppression of Spitting, a Coldness, or something like an Ague Fit suddenly seizes the Sick, Death is then near at hand. If the Disease is caus'd by Fascination (as some Authors are of the Opinion) as it is very difficult to be known, so it is as hard to cure, because it is scarcely ever to be discover'd till the Patient becomes past Cure. If it happens in old Age, it is incurable: So also, if there is a falling of the Hair, a Swelling of the Feet, or a great breeding of Lice; for then Death will quickly follow after. *Hippocrates, Sect.* 2. *Aph.* 1. says, In whatsoever Disease, if Sleep does disturb, it is Mortal; but if it refreshes, it shews Safety: So in a *Phthisis*, if the Sleep is disturb'd, and that it rather afflicts than refreshes, it shews the Disease to be incurable. Hoarseness also is an evil Sign in this Distemper: So also where the Tone of the *Viscera* is destroy'd, the Habit of the Body shews a perpetual wasting of the Substance.

XIV. *Salmon.*] As to the Dietetick Cure; let the Air be temperate and serene, rather inclinable to Cold; as a very hot and dry one is to be avoided, so one vehemently cold, or that is fill'd with suffocative Fumes, or is impregnated with contagious and corrosive, or putrid Particles: For which reason it is of ill Consequence even for such as are in Health to live with Phthisical People, their Breath coming from ulcerated and putrid Lungs, being fill'd with the like Particles, being suck'd or drawn in by the healthy Person, will, in a little time, seize upon him, and create in him a like Disease; of which some instances are to be found in *Riverius*, as also in other Authors. And for this reason it is, that the change of the Air or Country, does, in many Phthisical Patients, contribute more to the Cure of the Disease, than any Course of Physick whatsoever.

XV. *Salmon.*] As for Food, change of Diet is that which is absolutely necessary in this Cure, let not the Patient eat twice of one thing, that the Appetite and Tone of the Stomach may be preserv'd as much as may be. Milk is a Balsamick thing for the Lungs in this Cure: Womens Milk is said to be best; next to it Asses or Mares Milk, and after them Goats

Goats or Cows Milk. I have known Cows Milk to do the Cure alone, but it was in a manner the only Food for forty Weeks together, and drank daily in very large Quantities Blood warm, for which purpose it was kept in a great Bottle in a Sand heat all Day, of which the Patient tippled at pleasure; sometimes he would drink it, sometimes eat it, sometimes eat it with pure white Bread, sometimes with boiled Wheat, and sometimes with boiled Rice, and one Day with another he would drink a Gallon or more a Day, of which I my self am an Eye-witness; from this, and some more Examples of like kind, I am apt to believe, that Milk shews not forth its Effects and Excellency taken in small Quantities, but when it is taken liberally and in full and great Measures, and that for a considerable time: Now while this Milk Diet is attempted, all sorts of Wines, Cyder, Maulted, and other fermented Liquors are to be avoided, as also all other things which are acid, sharp, salt, bitter, or viscous, which last is to be disallowed of, lest it should clog and obstruct, or stop up the small Vessels of the Mesentery and the Passages of the Chyle, by which the Nutriment of the whole Body is hindred. For their other Food (if they cannot adhere wholly to a Milk Diet as afore-said) they may eat Chickens, Pullets, Pigeons, Partridge, and other wild Birds, Veal, Lamb, young Mutton, Pork, Pigs, Hens, Ducks, and Turkies Eggs, Crabs, Lobsters, Craw-fish, Cockles, Oisters, *&c.* and strong Broths made of those things, adding to the same the Pulp of Pulses, as of Pease, Rice, Wheat, Barly, hull'd, *&c.* Among Fruits, sweet Almonds, Raisins, Figs, *&c.* are excellent good, many having been cur'd by the eating of those things alone.

XVI. *Salmon.*] As for Drink, Maulted Liquors, as Ale and Beer, are to be avoided, and all sharp and acid Liquors, as Cider, sharp and prickt Wines, *&c.* because they encrease the Acrimony of the Humors. But, where the Body is not much wasted, Water is the principal Liquor which the Patient ought to drink, or the white Decoction, or a Barly-broth made with Raisons of the Sun, and China-root; also Whey clarified, with Raisins of the Sun stoned; and sometimes Milk in which Steel has been often quenched. But if such pursue a Milk Diet, New Milk from the Cow may then be Meat and Drink too. If the Patient cannot stick to Milk alone, he may use this mixture. *Take Spring-water, New-milk from the Cow, of each a quart; double refined Sugar, or rather white Sugarcandy in fine Pouder, two ounces, more or less, to make it agreeable to the Palate of the Sick; dissolve, and let the Sick drink of it cold, at pleasure.* If the Sick has been accustom'd to drink Wine, and cannot abstain from it whilst in his Milk Diet, it is to be a little permitted and born with; but it ought to be drank when the Milk is perfectly gone off the Stomach; and it ought to be a spirituous, generous and strong bodied Wine, (not eager, sharp, acid, or over hard) for such a bodied Wine, being very moderately drank, strengthens the Tone of the Stomach,

mach, preserves the Appetite, encreases the Spirits, and contributes to the Nutrition of the Body: Whereas being too largely drank, it, on the contrary, depraves, if not destroys, the Tone and Fermentation of the Ventricle, palls the Appetite, enrages and weakens the Spirits, thins and sharpens the Blood, and so makes it unfit for the conservation of the humane Frame. Some say, that even choice *Brandy* or *Sugar Spirits* are to be avoided as Poison; and yet by experience I know, that fair Water drank with the addition of a sixth or seventh part of Brandy, *&c.* and dulcified with a little double refined Sugar, has contributed to the Cure of a *Phthisis*, when all other things have failed.

XVII. *Salmon.*] Motion of the Body, especially if it is violent is to be avoided, because in some measure it hinders the free Respiration; and then consequently the Circulation of the Blood in the Heart, will be so encreased, and violently forced thence, as to hazard the breaking of some one little Vessel or other: At least it may cause such a Concussion or shaking of the Parenchyma of the Ulcerated Lungs, as may considerably hinder the healing. On the contrary, Sloathfulness and too much Rest is not to be indulged, lest it induces a kind of Stagnation, at least a thickning of the Blood and Juices, and thereby render them more sharp and corroding. Sleeping and Watching ought also (for the former reasons) to be in a mean; yet Sleeping is to be indulged rather than Watching.

XVIII. *Salmon.*] The Bowels, if they be Costive, ought to be loosned by Solutives given either by the Mouth or Clysterwise: But if there is a Flux of the Belly, it is of absolute necessity to be stopt, because otherwise the Substance or Nourishment of the Body is drained out that way also. All retentions and excretions ought to be according to Nature; if they be not so, they ought to be made so; because if any thing be discharged which ought to be retained, or retained which ought to be discharged, this Disease may be caused, at least the Cure thereof may be hindred. Authors say, that a Suppression of the Seed may cause this Disease: But this is certain, that if the Hemorrhoidal Flux (in such where it has been formerly usual) or the Menstrua in Women are preternaturally stopt, they will not seek their own Passage again by the Hemorrhoidal or Uterine Vessels, but will take another Course, and vent themselves by those of the *Lungs* and the *Aspera Arteria*, where, if the Blood, or any of its Recrements, should remain, they would be apt to grow acid, corrosive and putrid, and so induce the Ulcer we now in this Chapter are treating of.

XIX. *Salmon.*] All such things, or Passions of the Mind, which disturb the animal Spirits, and cause a more than ordinary motion of the Lungs and Parts adjacent are to be avoided. The Mind or Soul ought to be kept calm and temperate; for the violent Passion of Anger, Care, Fear, Grief, Love, Lust, and too much use of *Venus*, confuse, and cause an unnatural

tural motion of the Spirits, affect the Mass of Blood, excite a preternatural Ferment therein, where heterogeneous Particles being stirred up, they are presently acuated, which making the Juices acid and corrosive, contribute to the prolongation of the Disease.

XX. *Salmon.*] The indications of the Cure are threefold, *viz.* 1. To rectifie the discrasie of the Blood, and to carry off its salt, acid and corrosive Particles, in which consists the Root and Foundation of the Disease. 2. To cleanse and heal the Ulcer already in the Lungs. 3. To restore the wasted and consumed Flesh, and the whole Body to its pristin state of Health. To which add, 4. The removal of the Symptoms.

XXI. *Salmon.*] To answer the first Indication. Tho' Testaceous Medicaments are good in general, because they absorb the Acid; yet *Crabs Eyes levigated* exceed them all, because they have a tendency to the Urinary Parts, and withal carry off the acid Recrements of the Blood by Urin, being given from two Scruples to a Dram in some proper Vehicle. So also Volatile Salt of Harts-horn, of Mans, Goats, or Bullocks Blood, or Volatile Salts of their Horns or Hoofs, for that these things correct the acrimony of the Juices above all the common or Vulgar Medicaments. But effectually to carry off these morbid Particles of the Blood, it is necessary now and then to use gentle Catharticks, not such as are made of *Gums*, *Rosins*, *Roots*, *Colocynthis*, *Sena*, &c. but such as may actually enter into the Mass of Blood, and as well depurate it, by separating its heterogeneous Particles, as by its Absterstive and Cathartick Qualities to carry them off. Of this kind is the *Sal Mirabile Glauberi*, and our *Sal Panaretum*, in *Lib.* 1. *Cap.* 1. *Sect.* 23. aforegoing, after Purging, which may be done after the second time, once every fifth Day, you are yet to go on with your absorbents, which may be either the Crabs Eyes aforesaid, or the *Antibecticam Poterii*, which may be given twice a Day, in the Dose before prescribed, *Antimonium Diaphoreticum*, *Bezoar Minerale*, &c.

XXII. *Salmon.*] The second Indication which is to cleanse and heal the Ulcer. The Ulcer is cleansed by the continued use of Balsamick Absterstives: Some have been cured by giving *Balsam of Turpentine* alone. It is made several ways, but you may use one of the following Prescriptions of my own designation, and which I have used with good Success; *Take Chio Turpentine three ounces*, *Oil of Angelica six drams*, *rectified Spirit of Wine*, *so much as may dissolve and make the Turpentine of a Balsamick consistence*; Dose from ten to twenty Drops in a Rear Egg, or dropt into white Sugar. Or this; *Take Chio Turpentine three ounces*; *whitned Bees Wax one ounce*; *Chymical Oil of Angelica six drams*; *Oil of Nutmegs two drams*; *Oil of sweet Fennel-seed one dram*; *rectified Spirit of Wine enough to bring it to a Consistence*; give it in the same Dose and manner as the former. Authors commend the *Balsam of Sulphur Anisated*, *Fæniculated*, *Terebinthinated and Succinated*. in this Cure, and they are of singular

gular good use in Bodies apt to have the Colick, or in such as are oppress with Wind, and gripings of the Bowels.

XXIII. *Salmon.*] This likewise is excellent; *Take anisated Balsam of Sulphur, Balsams of Peru and of Tolu, of each two ounces; Chymical Oil of Angelica half an ounce; Syrup of Poppies twenty ounces; mix them*; dose a Spoonful twice or thrice a day as you see occasion. Or this; *Take Chio Turpentine, Balsam of Peru, of each an ounce; blood red Oil of Hypericon, eight ounces; mix them*: of which let the Sick take half a Spoonful Morning and Evening. If the Oil of *Hypericon* should go against the Stomach of the Patient, you may substitute in the place thereof the same quantity of *Honey of Roses* or *Juice of Alkermes*. So excellent is the *Balsam of Peru* in this case, that I have known three or four in this Disease given over as incurable, which have been perfectly restored by the use of that thing alone. For cleansing and healing the Ulcer, the *Rubicund Tincture* also, in *Cap.* 12. *Sect.* 13. just aforegoing, is very much to be valued, its excellency appearing from a long series of Experiences. Or this; *Take Vitriol of Mars one ounce; Saccharum Saturni an ounce, made liquid with a sufficient quantity of Vinegar; mix these very well together, and let them stand in a warm digestion for twenty four Hours, then evaporate to driness; affuse thereon rectified Spirit of Wine, a sufficient quantity, and by digestion extract a Tincture for use*; dose ten or twenty Drops in *Angelica-water, Barly-broth*, or *Milk-water*.

XXIV. *Salmon.*] These things being said, I think it is now time to come to those Remedies which are the Crown of the Work, and indeed superior to all others, and these are *Opiates*, Mercurial and Solar Medicaments, without which (if the Disease has been of any considerable standing) it is utterly impossible for the Cure to be performed. I have had a long and large Experience of the Efficacy of *Opiates* in my Practice, but that you may not depend upon my Judgment alone, let us hear what the learned *Etmullerus* has said concerning them, *De Opii vi diaphoretica*, Cap. 1. Sect. 15. *Certainly* (says he) *in Ulcers or Consumption of the Lungs, the Patient finds sensible benefit by Opiates rightly administred, for thereby abundance of Filth is abated, not by suppressing it, but by preventing the breeding of it afresh continually; and being come to a better consistency, it is the more easily expectorated. It is admirable how Consumptive People could bear the constant use of Opium so long, yea for several Weeks together without any sensible harm or remarkable alteration*; *but* Crollius *has likewise long since observed the same in his* Basilica Chymica. These words are an Oracle, which ought to be written in Letters of Gold.

XXV. *Salmon.*] *Opiates* by their own proper Qualities and Virtues do many things, which no other Medicaments in the World can do besides. They thicken all the Juices of the Body at once, and thereby hinder the afflux of Humors to the aggrieved Part, and so prevent the supplying the Fire with fresh Fewel. They are high *Alcalies*, and absorb the acid in all Parts of the Body at once, beyond any

any other Medicament whatſoever. An *Opiate* is alſo a Medicament of the greateſt Volatility, for as ſoon almoſt as it is in the Stomach, at fartheſt as ſoon as it is diſſolved there, its Vertue, Power and Efficacy is immediately felt and communicated from the Crown of the Head to the Sole of the Foot, and through the whole Body, from the Center to the Circumference: It is the more grateful alſo, becauſe it not only gives univerſal Eaſe in any Part, in what Part ſoever, but it alſo procures Sleep and Reſt. In ſhort, as it has an *Anodyn*, ſo alſo it has a *Vulnerary* and *Balſamick Energy*, by which it heals more than all other things in the World; and the which, if it is rightly managed, becomes highly reſtorative beyond what the Vulgar Phyſician conceives: But in the uſe of *Opiates* you muſt begin warily, and with ſmall Doſes, encreaſing the quantity gradually, till the Patient is accuſtomed to their Uſe, and that as they can take them without Danger, ſo alſo with Pleaſure; and ſince there are ſeveral Preparations of them, the Phyſician is carefully to find out, which of them all will beſt comport with the Stomach, Conſtitution and Habit of the Sick, that as he may not ſeem to do any thing againſt Nature, ſo he may do nothing in vain.

XXVI. *Salmon.*] Now as all the Danger of this Diſeaſe lies in the Ulcer of the Lungs, from which *Pus* is communicated to the whole Maſs of Blood, whereby not only a lingering Fever is cauſed, but alſo at length a mortal Conſumption; ſo this intention of cleanſing and healing the Ulcer, is the chiefeſt to be conſidered. We have in the four laſt Sections hinted at ſome excellent Medicaments for performing hereof; but we muſt acknowledge that they are not always ſufficient (in a very much vitiated Habit of Body, or where the Diſeaſe ſeems to be inveterate) to overcome, for which reaſon we muſt repair to more potent Remedies, among which (as *Opiates* are not to be neglected in their turns) ſo *Mineral Laudana* are to be exhibited, which have a Power tranſcending them, among which are *Helmont's Sulphur of the Vitriol of Mars*, and our *Impetus Martis* made from the ſame Vitrioli, which do Wonders: This laſt ought to be given in ſome Laxative or Diuretick Vehicle, that the Recrements both of the Blood and Ulcer may be ſeparated from them, as well as from the Lungs, and that the Lungs may be cleanſed from the purulent Matter ſticking in them. The *Impetus* may be given from ten, to twenty, thirty, forty, or ſixty Drops, as Age, and other Accidents may permit; beginning with a ſmall Doſe firſt, and increaſing it two Drops every Night or Morning (according to the Patient's Courſe of taking it) till you come to the higheſt Doſe the Stomach will bear without nauſeating, and ſo continuing its uſe till the Ulcer is cleanſed and healed. It may be given in *Parſly or Hydropiper-water*, or in a *Tincture of Lignum Nephriticum*, or in a ſmall *Spirit of Turpentine* drawn with *Spirit of Wine*, or dropt into *Balſam of Peru, or Chio Turpentine*, and being well mixt together, to be exhibited in any proper Vehicle

hicle the Physician shall advise to.

XXVII. *Salmon.*] But after all, by reason of the Inveteracy and contumacy of the Disease these things should not do, or be sufficiently effectual, we must come to the ultimate or last Remedy, beyond which nothing more excellent is yet known; and this is *Helmont's sweet Coralated Mercury*, which is sweet, Balsamick, and a true *Panacea* for healing in the highest degree; but as this is not ordinarily known, he having no where left behind him the plain or clear Process thereof; so we shall presume to put in the Place thereof a Preparation of our own, which (if it be not the same, as I am apt to believe it is, yet) will perform all the same things with the same Ease, Certainty and Safety; for as it is sweet, so it has no manifest Operation, neither by Purging, Vomiting, Salivation, nor yet by Sweating, unless this last, very gently. It insinuates it self into the Mass of Blood, and tho' it has no manifest or intense Heat, yet it is an invisible Fire which melts all the congelated and purulent Particles in the Blood, Humours and Lungs, depurates or cleanses them, and gives to the *Blood and Lympha* a Balsamick Property of healing, far exceeding any thing I yet know.

XXVIII. *Salmon.*] This Remedy is our *Angelus Mineralis*, which is a Preparation of Gold and Mercury; but is so safe a Medicament, that it may without Hesitation, be given to a Child new born. It may be given once a Day, either Morning or Night (as the Patient pleases himself) and be exhibited in Water-gruel made pretty thick, that it may not settle to the bottom, or in some proper Syrup, or in *Juice of Alkermes*, and washt down with a Dish of thin Broth, or of Milk-water, or black Cherry-water: Or it may be made up in a *Bolus* with *Mithridate*; or rather into *Pills*, with a few Drops of *Balsam of Peru*, or with a little *Chio Turpentine, or Balsam Capivi*, as the Sick likes best. It may be given from fifteen Grains to a Scruple, or half a Dram, either once or twice a Day, as the Physician shall think fit, or the Necessity of the Disease may require.

XXIX. *Salmon.*] A *Phthisis* is a Disease so difficult to be cured, that very few who are affected with it, overcome it, or are cured of it: And tho' some have superseded its Virulency and Contumacy, yet it has been with long Courses and great Difficulties, and where it has not been inveterate; but when it comes by long standing to be confirmed, I am of Opinion, it is not then to be conquered but by the means of our *Angelus Mineralis*, all other Medicaments proving ineffectual, as I in a long Course of above 40 Years Practice, have oftentimes observed. This Medicament carries its own Reason, as well as its own Force with it, and performs its work of purifying, or cleansing and healing, without any manifest Operation, it eases all Pains, nor does it ever overturn the Stomach, or make it in the least measure Sick. *Doleus* says, That *Helmont's* Medicine made of *Mercury* which is sweetned by frequent Cohobation

tion with Spirit of Wine is good; as also *Sweet Vitriol* freed from all its Acidity; for that this sweetness of *Vitriol*, depending upon its *Sulphur*, destroys the Corruption of Wounds and Ulcers. And that *Antimonial Sudorificks* are rather proper, which are fixt, and neither Purge nor Vomit, such as *Antimonium Diaphoreticum*, *Bezoarticum Minerale*, *Antihecticum Poterii*, &c.

XXX. *Salmon.*] The third Intention is to restore the wasted and consumed Flesh, and the whole Body to its pristin State of Health. To restore the lost or consumed Flesh, it is requisite that the Patient every Day drinks or sups good quantities of Gellies, or strong Broths made of Beef, more-especially of the Buttock, adding to the same a little Juice of Lemons or Sevil Oranges; for this truly nourishes and restores, and being constantly taken, contributes very much to the Cure of the Disease. Sometimes also Gellies of *Hartshorn*, made according to the usual Method; or a Gelly of *Ising-glass*, or of *Sheeps Trotters*, or Calves or Neats Feet depurated and made very fine, which may be taken warm, either alone or mixed with a generous sort of Wine, or with Milk, with double refined Sugar.

XXXI. *Salmon.*] And in a confirmed *Phthisis*, in which the Patient is nothing but Skin and Bone, Milk is said to be the last Refuge: For its *Serous* Parts are absterſive and correct the Acrimony of the Blood. Its *Oily* or *Buttery* Parts alleviate, cleanse and heal the Ulcer. And its *Curdy* Parts consolidate and nourish the whole Body and all its Parts; but it ought to be drank warm from the Cow, and kept so in Sand-heat all Day, till the Evening's Milk comes again, and it ought to be drank very often in the Day-time, and in large Quantities, as to two, three, or four Quarts, as the Patient is able to take it, beginning with the smaller quantity first, and increasing it gradually, and this to be continued for twenty, thirty or forty Weeks or more together, as the urgency of the Disease may enforce: There is to be no trifling in this case, for that without extraordinary Courses nothing will be done. If it should be apt to curdle upon the Stomach, it must be sweetned with double refined Sugar, till those Accidities of the Stomach are overcome, but afterwards it may be taken without the Sugar, and with the same Success.

XXXII. *Salmon.*] *The Blood of Comfry Roots* is good; as also of *Parsneps*, *Potatoes*, *Tulips* and *Eddoes*, which restore wonderfully: But where the Blood of these things are wanting, the Roots boiled, baked or roasted, and eaten as ordinary Food either alone, or with sweet Butter, or Juice of Oranges, or with New Milk, will not go without their desired Effects. A Diet of *Turneps* baked or boiled, and eaten for six or eight Weeks alone, without any other Food, has cured some, and this I say upon my own Knowledge, so powerful a sweetner of the *Blood* and *Lympha* is that Root.

XXXIII. *Salmon.*] The Patient may also drink Milk-water, Barly-water, or Waters distilled from Beef, Mutton, Veal, Lamb,

Ox

Ox and Sheep's Hearts, Cockles, Muscles, Oisters, Crabs, Crawfish, Bullocks, Sheeps, or Swines Blood, all which have a healing and balsamick Property in them. *Tachenius* says, that Wounds of the Lungs which come through an external Cause, and through some fault in Digestions, may be perfectly cured with vulnerary Potions; but not Ulcers when they proceed from a decay of innate Strength, and radical Moisture.

XXXIV. *Salmon.*] *The fourth and last Indication is the removal of the Symptoms, if any be. If there is a preternatural Heat, or a lingring Fever*, it may be remov'd by a *Water distilled from Cucumbers*; or a *Syrup may be made of the Juice of Cucumbers with double refined Sugar by the heat of a Bath.* It is a kind of Specifick in a *Phthisis* or Consumption of the Lungs, as also for all sorts of Coughs, and preternatural Heats, of which I my self have had good Experience. So also *a Water distilled from Purslane*, or a *Syrup of the Juice of Purslane, Clarified and made in the same manner*, does the same thing: And if these Syrups be a little acuated, with the Juice, of Limons or Oranges, or with Spirit of Sulphur, they cool so much the more. To these things add Emulsions made of the four greater cold Seeds, and of sweet Almonds, which last is of a healing quality withal.

XXXV. *Salmon.*] Another Symptom is Colliquative Sweating, and this is removed by the Spirit of Sulphur thus given, *Take Parsly Water a quart, Oil of Sulphur fifty drops, sweeten with double refined Sugar, so as to make it drinkable*; of which let the Patient sip at pleasure. *Gelly of Harts-horn, with Juice of Sevil Oranges*, often taken, not only profligates these preternatural Sweats, but also nourishes the Body, and helps to restore it. So also *the Tincture of Vitriolum Martis*, &c. *at Sect.* XXIV. *aforegoing*, given in the Dose and Manner there prescribed, which admirably strengthens, and presently stops the excessive Sweating; and also the insensible emission of Seed, if any be, and which sometimes happens in this Disease, to the greater weakening of the Patient.

XXXVI. *Salmon.*] Another Symptom is a vehement tickling Cough, which is alleviated by taking *Diacodium*, or *Eclegma incrassans in Tussi*; *Eclegma fortis incrassans*; or *Eclegma in defluctione tenui, in Lib.* I. *Cap.* I. *Sect.* VII. VIII. and IX. *aforegoing.* The Patient ought also to be often eating of Raisins of the Sun and dry Figs, which singularly contribute to its removal. Figs are so singular a Remedy of this kind, that some have been cured of a *Phthisis* by eating of them alone. Pouder of Horse-Radish-roots, mixt with its equal quantity of Honey, is good: So also the Pouder or Fæcula of Aron Roots, mixt with an equal quantity of Flowers of Sulphur, and given to two Scruples, or more, in any convenient Vehicle, as Syrup of red Poppies, mixt with Parsly-water, *&c.*

XXXVII. *Salmon.*] As this Disease is said to be catching, and infectious by the Breath, by reason of the respiring morbid Particles, which I have many times seen; so some Authors tell

tell us of a Sympathetick Cure, which as I will not absolutely commend and trust to, yet, 'tis possible, that as there is a Sympathy in Nature, so there may be a consent of Spirits in the diseased Body, drawing to its assistance, as an auxiliary, the Powers of the *Periapta* or *Amulets* designed in this Case. *Hartman* gives us this Experiment: Take an Egg, boil it in the Patient's Urine, and then put it into an Ants Nest or Hill, and let it lie there till the Ants have eaten it up. This is another: Dip, or throughly wet a Linnen Cloth in the Patient's purulent Spittle; then hang it up in the Chimney, where the Smoke continually goes up, and upon doing of this, by a wonderful Sympathy arising, as is supposed from the consent of Spirits (but the Operation seems to be very obscure) the Ulcer will be healed by virtue of the Smoak, and the Nutrition of the whole Body will ensue. The same thing has been experimentally found to be done by the means of Sir *Kenelm Digby's Sympathetick Pouder*, and which I have twice observed, to my admiration.

XXXVIII. *Salmon.*] Lastly, Altho' we have already spoken of *Helmont*, or rather *Paracelsus* his *Corallatum dulce Mercurii diaphoretici*, by which Medicine *Paracelsus* cured many Consumptions, and which *Helmont* so highly magnifies; yet we think it a Duty we owe to the Publick to speak a little more of it, or rather of our *Angelus Mineralis*, which we judge to be either the same, or a Preparation so near to it; that it is an equivalent for its Virtues and Excellencies. And tho' *Laudana* of all kinds are justly commended, with many other Specificks; and *Colothar* boiled in Linseed Oil, which being taken inwardly is said to cure all Ulcers, especially those of the Lungs; yet nothing that we have yet met with comes near to the Excellencies of this our *Angelus*, having actually cur'd five or six several Patients of a suppos'd incurable *Phthisis* (after they had been given over by several other Physicians) and that by this only Remedy.

CHAP. XV. *Of a* Catarrh.

This Chapter is wholly added by the Commentator
W. SALMON.

I. THIS Disease is call'd in Greek Καταῤῥοὴ, in Latine *Catarrhus*, in English, a *Catarrh*, which is a Flux of Rheum (whether *Lympha*, *Saliva* or *Serum*) into the Mouth and Parts adjacent to it, in such a Quantity as causes the Patient to be almost always a spitting. Authors will have several other Distempers to be *Catarrhs*, as Κόρυζα, *Coryza*, *gravedo*, a running at Nose, Βράγχος, *Raucedo*, an Hoarsness; and Ῥεῦμα καὶ Ῥευματισμὸς, *Rheuma*, a Flux of *Rheum* or *Lympha* upon the

Breast; but these are by no means the Disease properly call'd a *Catarrh*, but other different disaffections, of which we may have occasion to speak in some other places.

II. *The Parts affected seem to be the Lymphatick Vessels, and the salivatick Glands*; the said Glands being swell'd, or overflow'd, thro' a Rupture of some of the adjacent Lymphaticks, as it is believ'd, by reason of which those Kernels are not only very much distemper'd, but their Mouths are also open'd continually to emit in a very large and plentiful manner, their juices into the Throat and Mouth, thereby causing the Patient to be almost always either a Swallowing or Spitting.

III. *A Catarrh is said to be cold or hot*: It is said to be cold when the Rheum flowing into the Mouth is insipid, or without taste, or sweet rather, and without any kind of Smell, being thick, glutinous, and without fixed Salt as it were, causing at some times, and in some parts, a dull kind of Pain only. It is said to be hot, when it is found to be Salt, Bitter, or Acrimonious, Strong or ill Scented, (which arises from a sulphureous Heat) being thin in substance and acuated with a saline quality, which, by its sharpness pricking the Nervous Meanders of the Tubes as it passes, causes a kind of pricking Pain. This is the Vulgar distinction; but I had rather call the first, *a flatulent Catarrh* (because it many times breeds Wind) the other a sharp or acid *Catarrh*, because it is apt to produce a salt, bitter, or sharp Taste, redness of the Eyes and Face, soreness of the Throat, *&c.*

IV. *The Cause.* The prime or remote Cause may be cold, moist and ill Air, evil Smells or Fumes, preternatural Ferments from the Food, or Meat and Drink receiv'd into the Body, violent Motions, excessive Drinkings, by which means a vitious Blood and Lympha are bred, and a great quantity of vitious Serum abounds thro' the whole Body, which here and there is evasated, and being by an ill ferment made Salt, Sharp, or Acid, and falling or being obtruded upon Membranous, Nervous, or Tendinous parts, causes Pains and Inflammations; for it is manifest, that its first Production or Cause is from Colds taken, and cold moist Weather; for the Pores of the Body being obstructed or stopt, transpiration is hindred, and so the *Lympha* and *Serum* are thereby encreased, which since they cannot find their way through their common and usual Passages, fly up to the Throat and Mouth, and so force it through the Salivatick Glands. If there is an evasation of the *Serum*, and a Stagnation of it about the *Præcordia*, then it causes a difficulty of Breathing, a Fever, heaviness at Heart, and danger of a present Suffocation, which are frequent in this Disease.

V. *But the Proximate or near Cause*, is the exceeding thinness of the *Lympha* or *Serum*, which being obstructed in their Natural Passages, fly with a mighty force, and pour themselves out upon the Salivatick Vessels and Glands; so that their Mouths being dilated, by the quantity as well as the quality of the *Saliva*, there is an almost continual as well as perpetual Spitting, the

the which thing may eaſily be obſerv'd by the Artiſt who is frequent in the Practice of *Salivation*. It overſpreads the Throat and *Aſpera Arteria*, and by its Acrimony many times cauſes Excoriation, whence Pains, Inflammation and Hoarſneſs ariſe, which Hoarſeneſs may ſometimes laſt a Year or more, and yet at length go off, without a Conſumption.

VI. *The Signs.* It is known ſometimes by the ſwelling of the Glands in the Mouth and Throat, ſtraitneſs of the Paſſage in the Throat, a difficulty in Swallowing, and ſometimes of Breathing; but the Pathognomick Sign, is a continual and almoſt perpetual Spitting; the Patient has no ſooner ſpit forth, but immediately, as it were, the Mouth and Throat are full of Spittle again, ſo that the Sick muſt be forc'd either to ſwallow it preſently, or ſpit it forth, for that the capacity of the Mouth can no longer contain it. If the Flux of the Rheum is made in the Stomach, then the ferment of the Stomach is ſpoiled, and all the Food the Patient takes corrupts, ſo that a tough and thick *Lympha* unfit to digeſt Meat, hinders and ſpoils the Fermentation, and being turned acid, ſalt, or ill taſted, ſo becoming thin and acrimonious, it makes its way up to the Throat and Mouth, pouring itſelf like a Flood upon the Salivaticks.

VII. *The Prognoſticks.* Whilſt it is recent it is eaſily cur'd: If it becomes inveterate and violent, it commonly ends in a pining Conſumption. If it becomes very Acrimonious, and falls upon the Lungs, it induces a Phthiſis. The *Catarrh* whilſt it is in the Mouth, may be ſaid to be mild and gentle, if it falls upon the Throat it is worſe, but if upon the Lungs, worſt of all. A gentle *Catarrh*, if it is neglected, or negligently or ill treated, ſo as it takes deep root, becomes dangerous, becauſe it may make the Patient obnoxious to ſeveral other Diſeaſes, as an Apoplexy, Palſy, Pleuriſy, Quinſy, Conſumption, Phthiſis, Strangury, Diarrhea, Cholick, Blindneſs, Deafneſs, Tooth-ach, *&c.* If it is attended with a continual Head-ach, it is more difficult to cure, than if it is without a Head-ach. Old Men and Women are more eaſily ſeiz'd with a *Catarrh* (becauſe of their Age and weakneſs) as *Hippocrates* ſays, *Sect.* 3. *Aph.* 31. and therefore in ſuch they are more difficultly cur'd. The more noble the part is which a *Catarrh* ſeizes, the greater the Danger, and therefore a ſuffocative *Catarrh*, or that which falls upon the *Lungs* or *Præcordia*, always threatens imminent danger of Death, and kills the Patient, juſt as if he was taken with an Apoplexy. It is alſo to be noted, that *Catarrhs* are moſt obnoxious to the Autumnal Seaſon, becauſe of the frequent alteration of the Weather, and coldneſs and moiſture of the Air.

VIII. *The Dietetick Cure.* The Particles of an ill Air drawn into the Lungs, are in a great meaſure the prime Cauſe of this Diſeaſe, and therefore a good Air is principally to be choſen. A Windy, Rainy, Cloudy, Raw, and Cold Air, alſo Northern, North-Eaſt, and North-Weſt Winds are to be avoided; for exceſſive cold, if it is moiſt withal, does vaſt miſchief; for by

coagulating or thickning the *Lympha* or *Serum*, and the Juices in the innumerable Glands of the Skin, and cloſing the Pores thereof, Perſpiration is hinder'd. As for the Food, it ought to be drying, and eaſy of Digeſtion, and ſuch as breeds a fine, equal and good Juice: Of Bread, Manchet and Biſcake are beſt, and ſometimes Mackroons, and a fine ſort of Ginger-bread may be eaten. Rice, and Broths made of Rice are profitable, alſo Eddoes, Parſneps, Potatoes, Skirrits. Of Meat, tho' Lamb, Veal, Mutton and Beef may be good, yet the Fleſh of Birds, as Larks, and other ſmall Birds, Chickens, Pigeons, Partriges, young Pullets, young Capons, *&c.* are rather to be choſen, but yet Roaſted rather than Boiled. Drink is to be pure and fine, as Wine mixed with Water, and ſometimes pure Red Port, or *Bar-a-bar* Wine unmix'd; Smiths Forge Water filtred through brown Paper, and Water in which red-hot Iron has been often quenched, and Quinces ſliced thin have been infuſed. Sleep ought to be moderate, not long, and to be avoided in the Day time. Moderate Exerciſe ought to be be us'd, and Slothfulneſs and Idleneſs to be avoided, which are apt to create a Stagnation of the Juices. or make them to flow up to the Salivatick Glands. The Paſſages of the Reins ought to be kept open, and the Belly ſoluble, becauſe by thoſe ways much of the Catarrhous or Morbifick Matter is carried off. Fear, Sadneſs, Grief, Melancholy and Diſpair are to be avoided, becauſe they hinder the fluidity or motion of the Blood, *Lympha* and Spirits, and ſo engender Seroſities; on the contrary, the Patient is to be chearful, pleaſant and eaſy, and by ſome agreeable Diverſions, put his whole Body into motion.

IX. *The Indications of Cure.* 1. The Humor as much as may be is to be carry'd off with proper Emeticks or Catharticks. 2. The Diſcraſie of the Blood and Lympha is to be remov'd or alter'd. 3. The Fluxion itſelf is to be ſtopt. 4. The parts weakned are to be ſtrengthned, that the return of the Fluxion may be prevented in ſuch Patients, where a Relapſe may be feared.

X. *The firſt Indication is, the Evacuation of the Morbifick Humor.* If there is a great repletion of the Stomach, or a heavineſs thereof, or a nauſeouſneſs and want of Appetite, or an aptneſs to Vomit, let the Stomach be cleanſed with an Emetick, as with *Emeticum Commune*, or with *Mynſicht's Emetick Tartar*, which is a thing without compare, and many times carries off the Humor both upwards and downwards, which may (if the Phyſician ſhall ſee neceſſary) be repeated again. Afterwards the Bowels may be cleanſed either with *Sal Mirabile*, or *Sal Panaretum*, which powerfully evacuate the Morbid Matter: If that nauſeouſneſs or fulneſs of the Stomach be not preſent, the *Emetick* may be pretermitted, and *Catharticks* only us'd. Afterwards in the Courſe of this Cure, our *Family Pills* may be taken, one every Night at Bed-time, as the Body and Conſtitution of the Sick ſhall be found able to bear them.

XI. *The ſecond Indication is to remove the Diſcraſie of the Blood and*

and Lympha. If an acid abounds fixt Alcalies are of good use, such as *Terra sigillata, Fine Bole, Crabs Eyes, Pearls, Oister-shells Coral.* These latter things being *levigated*, and given from half a Dram to a Dram, two, three, or four times a Day in a little thick Water-gruel. Or this; *Take Terra sigillata, an ounce; Crabs Eyes levigated, Pearls levigated, of each half an ounce; mix them,* to be given as before directed, and in the same Dose. Or this; *Take Terra Sigillata in fine Pouder, one ounce; red Coral levigated, half an ounce; mix them,* to be taken as the former. Then the Mass of *Blood* and *Lympha* is to be altered with *an Infusion or Decoction of the Cortex Peruanus*; or with a *strong Decoction of Burdock Roots,* or *of Juniper Berries*; or with the *Pouder of Juniper Berries,* given to two Drams in some proper Vehicle. This following Tincture is also of extraordinary use, *Take highly exalted Tincture of Salt of Tartar, or choice Tincture of Antimony, a pint; choice Myrrh in fine Pouder, four ounces; mix, and by a gentle Digestion, make a Tincture, which abstract in Balneo almost to driness, and cohobate three times; then digest till the Tincture is very deep, and decant it for use.* Dose fifty or sixty Drops at a time two or three times a Day, in a Glass of generous Wine.

XII. This following Diet-drink has been prov'd with wonderful Success. *Take Juices of Angelica, Bawm, Brook-lime, Cresses, Garden and Water, Parsly, Smallage, Scurvy-grass, Garden and Sea, of each a pint; Juice of Oranges a quart; Roots of Burdock, a pound; of sharp pointed Dock, Ginger, Horse-radish, all bruised or shaved thin, of each four ounces; Seeds of Anise, of Carawaies, Coriander, sweet Fennel, of each two ounces and half; of Mustard four ounces; all bruised; Cloves bruised, Nutmegs thin sliced, of each an ounce; Orange Peels cleared from the white, six ounces; Alexandrian Sena, eight ounces; new Ale, five Gallons. Put the Juices first into the Ale; then put all the other Ingredients into a long close knit Net Bag, with a Stone in it, which put also into the Ale. Let them work together, and after two or three Days let the Patient drink of it,* a Pint (or less, according to Circumstances) at a time Morning and Evening, renewing the *Recipe* with fresh Ingredients, as oft as need shall require.

XIII. This following has been much commended. *Take Raspings of Guaiacum and of Sassafras, of each three ounces; Raspings of fresh Oak Wood, and of yellow Sanders, of each two ounces; Raspings of Brazile, and of Clove Bark, of each an ounce; Winters Cinnamon, Elecampane, of each half an ounce; Liquorice, Bark of Guaiacum, of each six drams. The four last things being well bruised, put all these Ingredients into a Water distilled from Cresses, Scurvy grass and Parsly six quarts; Angelica Water two quarts: Digest altogether for twenty four hours, or more; then distil to driness in a Glass Alembick.* Dose two Ounces Morning and Evening in a Glass of generous Wine.

XIV. This is famous. *Take Spirit of Thime distilled from choice Wine, and cohobated four or five times upon fresh Thime, a pint; Pouder of Sassafras-Wood made by grinding in a Mill, or very thin Raspings of the same, two ounces; Florentine, Orice Root in Pouder,*

half an ounce; mix, and make a Tincture by Digestion. Of this the Patient may take two Drams or more at a time, twice a Day, in any proper Vehicle, as a *strong Decoction of Burdock Root*, &c.

XV. These following things correct the Acrimony, Saltness, Acidity of the *Blood* or *Lympha*, free it from Heterogenous Particles, cleanse it, and restore it to its due *Crasis*. *Take deep Tincture of Antimony, a pint; rectify'd Oil of Juniper-Berries, half an ounce; mix, digest ten Days, and decant the clear Essence.* Dose from a Dram to two Drams in Scurvy-grass Water dulcified. Or this; *Take high exalted Tincture of Salt of Tartar a pint; Ætherial Oil of Scio Turpentine, one ounce; Winter-Cherries in fine Pouder, an ounce and half; Daucus-seed half an ounce; mix, digest cold for 14 Days, shaking the Glass twice a Day: then being perfectly settled, decant the clear for use, as you have occasion for it.* Dose from a Dram to two Drams or more, Morning and Evening in white *Lisbon* Wine, or *Hydropiper Water*. Some commend *Liquor Cornu Cervi Succinatus*, which may be given from seven to fifteen Drops in any convenient Vehicle; also *Spiritus Salis Armoniaci anisatus, vel Juniperisatus*, more-especially if a Cough be present. And this Bolus; *R. Sal. Volatilis succini gr. x. Mithridate, a dram; mix them for a Dose*, to be given every Night at Bed-time. Or this; *Take prepared Pouder of Hoglice, gr. x. Bezoar Mineral, a Scruple; Venice Treacle, a dram; mix for a Dose to be given as aforesaid.* Or the Patient may take of our *Pilulæ Angelicæ a gr. xx. to two Scruples*, or a Dram every Night going to Bed.

XVI. *The third Intention, which is to stop the Fluxion.* Where the *Lympha* is sharp and salt (sometimes caused by an exceeding cold Air) and a Cough is present, a shortness of Breath, and an Oppression at Heart or Stomach, *Sperma Ceti* may be given alone to one Dram in Gruel or Chicken Broth, or this following; *Take pure white Sperma Ceti, a dram; prepared Amber, flowers of Benjamin, each half a dram, mix them for two Doses*, to be given going to Bed. Or this; *Take Sperma Ceti, a dram and half; Flos or Lac Sulphuris a dram; Flowers of Benjamin, two Scruples; mix them for three Doses to be long used. Tachenius* commends *Camphir* to be dissolved in some proper Oil as a Specifick; *Take Balsam of Peru two ounces; pure Camphir half an ounce; mix by grinding them in a Mortar.* Dose from half a Dram to a Dram, or more, Morning and Night.

XVII. When the Fluxion is vehement, Authors advise to *Diacodium Simplex and Compositum, Pilulæ de Cynoglossa, Laudanum Paracelsi*, with other like *Opiates*. *Oil of Vitriol* given in *Mint-water*, and repeated several times, is said, by a Specifick and singular Vertue to waste and dissipate *Catarrhs*. *Spirit of Vitriol and Oil of Sulphur* are also said to perform the said effect. *Water of Mother of Thime* drawn Chymically with Spirit of Wine, is said to be a peculiar Remedy; and so are the Chymical Oils of *Angelica, Anise, Caraways, Fennel-seeds, Juniper-berries, Marjoram, Rosemary, Sassafras and Turpentine*, given in proper Vehicles.

XVIII. We have found by *Experience*, that *Flowers of Sulphur* given a gr. xv. to half a Dram

or

or two Scruples in any fit Vehicle, and repeated as often as need ſhall require, to be a perfect Cure in this Diſeaſe: So alſo the *Lack Sulphuris*, which may be mixed with a little *Mithridate* and given to the better ſort of People; as alſo a *Tincture of Sulphur*, which is incomparable in this caſe. If the Diſeaſe has been Inveterate, you may exhit the *Terebinthimated, Aniſated, or Juniperizated Balſam of Sulphur*, which may be given from ſix Drops to 20, or more, according to the Age and Circumſtance, and that twice a Day, *viz.* in the Morning faſting, and at Night going to Bed. If the Diſeaſe be vehement, any of theſe Medicaments now enumerated, may be given an Hour before Dinner. Whether it be the *Flores*, or *Lac*, or *Balſams*, they may be taken in *Mithridate*, or in a Spoonful of *Syrup of Violets* or *Clove-gilly-Flowers*, or other proper Syrup, as the Patient beſt likes, drinking after it a Glaſs of Wine.

XIX. If theſe Sulphurine Medicaments are found by continuing their Uſe, not to be powerful enough, we muſt at laſt come to the uſe of Opiates. Let ſome of thoſe Preparations of Sulphur, be uſed in the Morning faſting, as is before directed, and at Night going to Bed, let a Doſe of *Eclegma Incraſſans*, or *Eclegma fortis incraſſans*, be given mixed with Lettuce Water; or in place thereof our Author's *Laudanum Liquidum*, or that of *our Preparation* which excel it; or our *Gutta Vitæ*; from 25 Drops to 60, gradually encreaſing the Doſe.

XX. But if the Sick had rather take Pills, then I commend the Uſe of my *Laudanum Specificum* or *Laudanum Volatile*, which may be given (the Age and other Circumſtances being reſpected) from one Grain to four, five, or ſix, by a gradual and ſlow increaſe of the Doſe, which is conſtantly to be exhibited every Night at Bed-time, in ſome proper Vehicle the Sick beſt likes. Nor is the uſe, or conſtant uſe of the *Laudanum* to be feared, that by ſtopping the Fluxion ſo upon the Spot, any Suffocation ſhould ſucceed; for it as well prevents the danger of Suffocation, or Strangling, as it certainly ſtops the Fluxion; and this it does at the firſt Intention, by thickning the *Lympha* and other Juices, at once, throughout the whole Body, whereby their too great fluidity being abated by being incraſſated, there ſeems to be a gentle Stagnation as it were (if I may ſo call it) or at leaſt a ſlowneſs in their Motion to the Parts affected, and by this means the Catarrh ſeems to fail, for want of a ſupply of Matter or Humour.

XXI. *If the Catarrh becomes Suffocative*, the caſe of the Patient is then very dangerous; for the Motion of the Lungs, and of the Heart, keep time with Life it ſelf; when that is ſtopt, any Creature that has Lungs, muſt neceſſarily be ſtrangled and die; for then the Blood by reaſon of Congelation, ſtagnates in the *Præcordia*, and the *Syncope Cardiaca* prevailing, the poor Patient yields to his Fate. If Froth riſes alſo out of the Lungs to the Throat, the Caſe is extream dangerous. Therefore to remedy this Stagnation and Coagulation of the Blood and *Lym-*

pha, you must immediately exhibit 30 *Drops of Tartariz'd Spirit of Sal Armoniack in a Glass of Canary, or White Lisbon, or Port Wines*; which done, a sharp Clyster is presently to be exhibited, such as this. *Take Thin Mutton-broth, or Posset-drink, a pint*; *Tincture of Colocynthis an ounce: Infusion of Crocus Metallorum, brown Sugar, of each 3 or 4 ounces, mix them for a Clyster*, which presently exhibit in a few Hours: If in a few Hours these things give no Relief, Authors advise Bleeding immediately in the Arm or Foot, because thereby the Congelation of the Blood is dissolved by Circulation, for by Experience it has been found that presently as a Vein has been opened, the Patient begins to breath: And they fly also to Cupping, and Blistering, as the last Refuge.

XXII. In this Case also all Volatile Salts are good, such as *Volatile Salt of Mans or Beasts Blood, of Mans or Beasts Flesh, of Vipers, of Sal Armoniack, Hartshorn, Bullocks and Goats Horns and Hoofs, of Amber and Soot*, also Volatile Spirits of the same things, and *Spiritus fuliginis succinatus*, which you may make in this manner. *Take Pitch-like Wood Soot, out of the Chimney, Amber, of each a like quantity, mix them, and distil according to Art into a Receiver, which was before washt with Spirit of Wine, which rectify the usual way*, of this you may exhibit from 20 to 30 Drops in any convenient Vehicle, or in this following Wine. *Take off all the Rines of all the Myrobalons together with their Kernels first dried, of each an ounce: Red Roses dryed, Cinnamon, of each half an ounce: Rosemary flowers, Lavender Heads, of each a dram and half: Cardamoms, Cloves, Cubebs, Galangal, Grains of Paradise, Nutmegs, of each half a dram: bruise all well together, and put them into two Gallons of choice Canary, letting them infuse cold, together, shaking the Bottle once a day*: This was *Pope Adrian's* Wine, invented to be as a constant Liquor, to be drank by such as are troubled with Catarrhs, for which it is estimated as a Secret: It excellently strengthens the Head, Brain, Nerves, Stomach, and is said to cure all manner of Distillations, being drank, Morning, Noon, and Night.

XXIII. *Juice of Radishes mixt with Sugar*, is said to be an experienc'd Remedy; so also *Sperma Ceti* given from two Scruples, to two Drams at a time, dissolv'd in a sufficient quantity of Angelica-water, and sweetned with Syrup of Hyssop. *Crabs Eyes* are also potent Dissolvers of congelated or coagulated Blood, and Lympha, which may be given to a Dram or more at a time. This is a singular Experiment. *Take Pouder of Wood-lice prepared, Lac Sulphuris of each half a dram: Flos Sulphuris Myrrhatus, Pouder of Goats Blood, of each one dram: Flowers of Benjamin, Volatile Salt of Vipers, of each 10 grains, mix for a Dose, to be given in any proper Vehicle*; this is good. *Take of the strongest Tincture of Myrrh, a dram: Spiritus fuliginis succinatus, Spiritus Cornu Cervi, of each half a dram: mix them*: Dose 20, 30 or 40 Drops, in a Glass of the above prepared Wine.

XXIV. These things being said, we now come to the last Remedies which are derived from Minerals, and these are, 1. *A Tincture of Gold*, which is a singular

lar thing. 2. Our *Impetus Aureus*, which may be given to a Scruple in Syrup of Citron Peels, or other fit Vehicle. 3. *The Cryſtals of Luna*, which may be given him from 1 to 3 Grains, made up into Pills, which carry off the Morbifick Matter by Stools, and derive it downwards. 4. *Helmont's Corallated Mercury*, to be given from 10 Grains to 20, or more. 5. *Helmont's Narcotick Sulphur of the Vitriol of Mars*; Than which, there are but few better things. 6. *Our Impetus Martis*, which performs all that any Medicine can do; it is a Preparation from the *Sulphur of the Vitriol of Mars*; it is an Acid, yet will diſſolve coagulated Blood, (for all Acids do not diſſolve coagulated Blood) and to a Miracle ſtops the Fluxion, when all other Remedies have failed: Doſe from 20 Drops to 60, or 70, in a Glaſs of Canary every Night; and if the Catarrh be vehement, it is then to be taken in the Morning alſo. 7. *Our Angelus Mineralis*, which may be thus given. *Take Flos Sulphuris 2 drams: Angelus Mineralis one dram: Flowers of Benjamin half a dram: mix them for 10 Doſes*; to be given in the Morning faſting (if the *Impetus Martis* be not given:) mix the Pouder with a little Syrup of Violets, or ſome ſuch like, and ſo let the Patient ſwallow it; taking withal, the *Impetus Martis* conſtantly every Night.

XXV. *The fourth and laſt Intention, is to ſtrengthen the weakned Parts, that the Diſeaſe may not return again upon the ſame foot.* Let the Patient take Morning, Noon, and Night, 20, 25, or 30 Drops of an *exalted Tincture of Myrrh* in a Glaſs of the Wine before preſcribed, at *Sect.* XXII. and this to be done for ſome conſiderable time, as for a Month or ſix Weeks together, after the Catarrh is ſtopt; the Patient taking withal at Bed-time, a Doſe of the *Impetus Martis* as afore directed, in the largeſt Doſe, diminiſhing one Drop every Night, till the Doſe comes to be but 10 Drops, at which time it may then be left off. The *Tincture of Myrrh* ought to be extracted with the *Tincture of Salt of Tartar*, or *Tincture of Antimony*, or with the *Elixir Metallorum*, as it is taught in our *Ars Chyrurgica*, *Lib.* 1. *Cap.* 62. *Sect.* 3. The particular way of performing this Tincture we have declared in *Sect.* XI. aforegoing of this Chapter, ſo that no more need to be ſaid upon this Subject.

CHAP. XVI. *Of Scrophula, or King's-Evil.*

This whole Chapter is added by the Commentator
W. SALMON.

I. IT is called in Greek Χοιρὰς, *vel, Pl.* Χοιράδες, in Latin *Scrofula* vel *Struma*, and by ſome in the plural *Scrofulæ* or *Strumæ*; in Engliſh, *Scrofula*, *the Evil*, and *the King's Evil*. I ſuppoſe that the Greeks and Latins uſe them chiefly in the plural Number, becauſe many times ſeveral of theſe Tumours

mours hang together. The Greek and Latin Names are taken from *Swine*, becauſe that kind of Beaſt is often troubled with theſe Diſeaſes.

II. It is a Tumour of the Glands or Muſculous Subſtance of the Fleſh ariſing from the Lymphatick Juice depraved, plentifully affuſed upon thoſe Parts, which ſuffering a Congelation, ſtays there, and continually encreaſes with great Pain ſometimes, and Deformity of the Part, till it comes to a putrid Ulcer, vitiating not only the Parts adjacent, but many times even the whole Body, contaminating even the Blood, and all the other Juices thereof, and oftentimes corrupting the Nerves and Tendons of the Joints, and rotting the very Bone it ſelf.

III. *The Parts affected* are generally the Neck, and the Glandules thereof, with parts adjacent thereto: The Tumour is contained ſometimes in a *Cyſtis*, or Bag, ſometimes not; nor ſometimes do the Swellings concrete into the formal Subſtance of Glandules, or Kernels; but ſometimes affecting the Muſcular Parts are diſtended, and increaſed by *Congeſtion*, as in thick upper Lips, Swellings in the Brawny Parts of the Arm; Nervous and Tendinous Parts of the Joints, Hands, Feet, Back, *&c.* and ſometimes affecting the Bone, may cauſe a *Spina Ventoſa*, in which the *Perioſtion* it ſelf is affected, corrupted, and many times deſtroyed, with a rottenneſs of the Bone under it.

IV. The Parts uſually affected, are either Glandules, Muſcles, *Viſcera*, Membranes, Tendons, or Bones. The Nerves are very rarely affected immediately, by the acrid Humour; if they be, their Juices are rather corrupted and diſſolved, and their Fibres corroded by the Acidity, as the Bones many times are, and then Tumifie, to the very great Danger of the Patient. The Glandules are indeed the moſt eminent Seat of this Diſeaſe, and the Glandules, in what part of the Body ſoever, tho' chiefly thoſe of the Neck. But in ſtrumous Patients, tho' the more viſible Glands may remain ſafe, as to outward Appearance; yet for the moſt part the inward ones, thoſe eſpecially of the *Meſentery* are obſtructed and tumified. And this you may be ſure of, that when ever the external Glands appear ſwell'd, the Glands of the *Meſentery* are ſo too, they being the firſt which are affected in this Diſeaſe.

V. Nor is the *Meſentery* alone, but all the *conglobated Glandules* partake with it, (which Glands are thoſe from whence the *Lymphaducts* have their Original; as the *conglomerated Glandules* of the Neck are thoſe from whence the *Salivaducts* have their Root and Spring:) Theſe *Conglobates* are frequently affected, their Office being a percolation of the *Lympha*, and therefore if that is depraved, theſe muſt be ill affected alſo; which is viſible in the Neck, on the ſides of the *Muſculus Maſtoideus*, quite down to the Clavicle, from whence they paſs into the *Thorax* down along the Back-bone, and about the Lungs, which *Viſcus* it ſelf is often found to be Strumous.

VI. *Scrofulæ*, or the Evil, does many times affect the Glan-

Glandules in the Arm-pits, and in the Groin, as also the conglomerated Glandules aforenamed, the *Tonsillæ*, *Glandulæ Lachrymales*, the *Thymus Pancreas* and *Mammæ* (in which it is very apt to degenerate into *Cancer*) sometimes the *Conglobate* and *Conglomerate* are affected together, and sometimes separately; sometimes the *Conglobates* of the Neck have been all tumified, and many of them found to press hard upon, and between the Parts of the *Salivals*, and yet the *Conglomerate* all safe.

VII. The *Tonsillæ and Glandulæ Lachrymales*, are often strumous, and produce several sorts of Tumours about the Eyes, as a *Lippitudo*, an affection of the Lachrymal Vessels, which being derived from them, terminate near the *Cilia*, together with other Distempers of the Eyes; so that it is often seen, that the whole Ball of the Eye has been thrust out of its hole, by the Tumour of these Glandules: An *Ophthalmia*, and a *Fistula Lachrymalis* do oftentimes owe their Original to this Cause.

VIII. Sometimes the *Conglomerates* are affected by themselves (the *Conglobates* being safe) as is several times seen in the *Ranula*, it being but the Tumour of the *Glandula Salivalis inferior*, which in a Man lies immediately under the sides of the Tongue. The *Parotis* likewise, which is the *external Salival*, is very often strumously affected. The *Pancreas* and *Thymus* have been both of them surrounded, with *Scrofulæ*, whilst themselves have remained untouched: Again, a strumous Tumour has been found in the *Pancreas*, containing about a Pint of Matter when the other *Glands of the Mesentery* have been wholly free.

IX. Also in Places where there are no manifest Glandules, as in several musculous Parts, *Morbifick Glandules* are bred, from the Power of the Disease, in the several Interstices of the Muscles, and that in the Arms, Hands, Fingers, Thighs, Legs, Feet, and Toes; and sometimes they are scatter'd almost all over the whole Body, as in the Balls of the Cheeks, upon the part of the *Os Zygoma*, neareſt to the external *Canthus* of the Eye, above the *Parotis*; on the Sides, Back, Breast, Belly, Shoulders, Hips, *&c.* scattering up and down, some deep, others superficial in the Skin.

X. *The Tendons* are not always free from the Infection of the strumous Matter, especially those of the Hands, Fingers, Feet and Toes; the Elbows, Knees and Ancles, are oftentimes considerable Seats of this Disease.

XI. *The Viscera*, are not only often found infested with this cruel Malady, but some of them are many times primary Causes of the external Appearances thereof, as chiefly the *Mesentery*: We also frequently find strumous Swellings in the Lungs, Liver, Spleen, Thymus, Pancreas, and Parts appendent to them: And this seems to be more probable from the Structure of those Parts, being most of them made up of a great Number of natural minute Glandules, through which the *Lympha*, Blood and other Juices are continually percolating.

XII.

XII. *The Bones*, are also very often affected in this Disease, but in them the manner of the Tumor differs; for tho' the Bone swells, the outward Shell thereof appearing hard, yet within it is many times putrid and rotten; and this Species of the Evil, some Physicians are pleas'd to call *Spina Ventosa*: But it is certain that the Bones of the Digiti, Carpus, and Metacarpus, of the Digiti Pedum, Tarsus and Metatarsus, are very lyable to this Affection; yea, the Jaw Bones and the Skull it self, and even all the other Bones of the whole Body, which upon the laying open of Scrofulous Tumors when laid bare, might appear sound, but being pierced into, have been found rotten within. They are likewise many times affected on the outside, by the *Strumæ* which touches them, whether in Membrane or Tendon, *&c.* which by laying open, the Bone it self is found bare, without the *Periostion*, and many times carious, which often times proves of pernicious Consequence to the poor Patient.

XIII. *The Differences.* This Disease is some times more mild without Inflammation or Pain, or any great hardness, and of a round Figure, which are esteem'd to be the mildest sort; and these sometimes suppurated without change of Colour in the Skin, and after some time, become hard again as before. It is sometimes with Inflammation, which is always with a mixture of Blood, and then the Tumors are call'd *Phlegmonoides*. It sometimes is with such a hardness, that in time it grows *Scirrhous*, yet by a putrid Heat, may grow Painful, and soft in its upper part, which some have mistaken for a Suppuration, but being opened, did only Gleet, and then growing Malign, do sometimes degenerate into a *Cancer*. The Disease is also either Hereditary from Scrofulous Parents; or accidental either, 1. from an Original ill habit of Body, or, 2. arising from some preceeding Disease, as particularly a Fever, which many times terminates in a Congestion of Matter; or after a Catarrh, or some other Distemper. Again, it is either, in the Glandules, and so is called *Glandulous*; or in the Substance of the Flesh, and then it is called *Musculous*, &c. Other differences hereof you may see in our *Ars Chyrurgica*, *Lib.* 3. *Cap.* 27. *Sect.* 5. to which you are referred.

XIV. *The Signs.* If the *Conglobate Glandules* are affected, the Tumor is most commonly round, moveable, without Pain, and moderately hard. If the *Conglomerates* are the Seat of the Disease, it usually observes the shape of the Glandule, especially if the whole Gland is diseased; and these Glands, (which are indeed but many lesser Glandules cluster'd up together like a bunch of Grapes) are commonly and particularly affected; so that some of those lesser *Glandulæ*, or Kernels, shall swell into oval, roundish, or flat Figures, or other Forms, leaving the rest belonging to them sound and well. If the Tumor is of an oval Figure, and very hard, it will be accompanied with Pain and Inflammation, and has a malign Quality in it; this if it grows unequal, is apt to degenerate into a Cancer. *If the Disease is Muscular*, its Shape or Figure is uncertain, and always distinct from the

the Muscle; and the Tumor is harder or softer, according to the place it happens in; and if the Figure is round, it is a sign that it is of a more benign Quality; in the Lips it is commonly a thick, broad Swelling, and sometimes chopt: In the Eyes it is manifest by a *Lippitudo*, *Opthalmia*, *Soreness*, and other disaffections. *If the Bone, or Bones are affected*, they tumifie, grow hard and big; and if you open them, tho' they seem to be well and sound without, yet they are found rotten within, and sometimes the *Periostion* is eaten away, and they are found rough and carious without.

XV. *The Causes. They are either Remote, or Proximate.* The primary or remote Causes are twofold, *viz.* 1. Hereditary, as being Born of Scrofulous Parents, and so deriving it from them, receive an universal Taint, into their *Blood* and *Lympha*. 2. Accidental, as from sucking a Strumous Nurse; or from a vicious, or depraved *Blood* and *Lympha*, made Acid and Acrimonious by living in an ill Air, evil Diet, Gluttony, Drunkenness, over-heating the Body, catching of Cold, want of Exercise, or too violent Labour, or over-straining the Body, Blows, Falls, or the remains of malign Diseases, *&c.* Those who live in an Air too thin and sharp, are very apt to have this Disease, as on the Alps, and some of the Mountains of *Switzerland*, where the Disease is said to be Endemical; so also where the Air is too Cold, Thick and Foggy, as in Low Lands, and Fen-Countries. A constant Diet of salt and sower Things, and gross, slimy Meats, also over Eating, and Drinking, and Surfeiting the Body with Food, lay the Foundations of *Scrofulæ*, or *Strumæ*. Many Heats and Colds, alter the habit of the Body, sower the Blood and Juices, and sometimes at once so over-turn the rectitude of the humane Frame, as to be the first Cause of this Malady. Want of Exercise is likewise a great Cause of the Blood and Lympha's growing Acid, Mucilaginous and Acrimonious. And many times external Accidents, as Blows, Falls, Bruises, Over-strainings of a Part, or of a Joynt, a Wrench of the Hip, Knee, Ancle, Shoulder, Elbow, Wrist, Fingers, *&c.* are Causes of the King's Evil; but we always suppose a Predisposition of the Natural Habit of the Body to the same. And lastly, it may proceed from the relicks, or remains of some former malign, or ill Distemper not well cured, as a long and tedious Ague, chiefly a Quartane; the Measles, or small Pox, which when not throughly protruded as they ought to be, always leave the Seeds either of the King's-Evil, or Leprosie, *&c.* To these add the Rickets in Children, where the heat being but little for Concoction, the *Lympha* is apt to a Congelation, whence we find crude Tumors to arise, which are quickly follow'd by visible Symptoms of the Evil, as glandulous Tumors in the Neck, Tumors in the Musculous Parts, Tumors on the Bones, Ulcers and Fistula's on the Back-bone, Shoulders, Arms, Thighs, Legs, Fingers, Toes. *&c.*

XVI. *The Proximate, or near Causes*, are a want of Spirits and Volatility in the *Blood* and *Lympha*, as also an Acidity, so great as to make them apt to Congela-

tion, upon the least taking Cold, or a Coagulation in their Receptacles of the Glands; where, by their thickness and clamminess, not moving and sliding swiftly on in their natural Course, as they ought to do, they are found to stagnate either in the Conglomerates, or in the Conglobates, or in the Interstices of the Muscles, or other Parts, which being weak by Nature, are apt to receive a Fluxion of Humors, where not passing off they encrease, grow still more Acid, stagnate in many Places by their Mucilaginity, then form Tumors of several kinds, according to the places where the unnatural Ferment has protruded the Morbid Matter, which are either mild and gentle, and with little or no Pain; or else, very hard, inflamed, and painful, according to the Nature of the Matter offending, as being either less or more Mucilaginous, Acrimonious, Malign, *&c.*

XVII. *The Prognosticks.* If the Disease is Hereditary or by Descent, it is scarcely ever cured, or with much difficulty: So also, if it is suckt in with the Nurses Milk, because then by its early mixing with the *Blood* and *Lympha*, it makes such a perfect or intimate Unition, as is hardly ever to be destroyed, by the Power of the most exalted Remedies. If it is changed into a *Schirrhus*, the Cure will be very difficult: but if it degenerates into a *Cancer*, it becomes absolutely uncurable, or at most, admits of no more Cure, than a *Cancer* does. If it happens in the Neck, or under, or near the Jaws in Persons of above 40 Years of Age, they seldom recover, because they generally labour under great Obstructions, and are apt to be affected also with the Scurvy, Dropsy, Jaundice, loss of Appetite, Vomiting, Fainting, and many times a tedious Cough, in which case, they always dye in a *Consumption.*

XVIII. If Strumous Tumors, Tophs or Gums, arise from a foulness or rottenness of the Bones in the Hands, or Fingers, Feet, or Toes, or in the *Os Calcis*, Ancles, or *Astragalus*, in the Knee, *Ischia*, or Elbows, *&c.* where you cannot lay them open, or where you cannot judge of the rottenness, or foulness, the Case will be deplorable, at least very difficult; for the very discharge of the Matter, will not only exhaust the Spirits, but also hurt the Tone of the Stomach, and waste the whole Body, so that the Patient will die of a *Marasmus*, or deep Consumption. But if the Habit of the Body is tolerably good, and the Ulcers be well handled with proper Internals, as well as Externals, and that by the strength of the Body, and proper application, the Ulcers do digest, the rotten Bones do sometimes break, and come forth in small bits, being cast forth by a Callus bred within, by which the Member is supplied, and so possibly the Patient may recover, whereas otherwise the Case is always attended with much Danger.

XIX. When the Ulcers in the *Evil* have been of long standing, and are become Virulent and Sinuous; and if they are near one to another, they often have a Communication, tho' to outward appearance, they seem to be so many several Ulcers; in this Case, the Lips grow Callous, and the Ulcer becomes Phagedenick

gedenick or Corrosive, and very Sordid, and therefore a Cure is not to be hoped for, so long as any one *Cystis* remains, or the Vessels which feed the same: If they run under the great Vessel, the danger will be very great; but if the Ulcer is simple without Putrefaction, the Cure will be the more easy.

XX. If the *Scrofulæ* be moveable, and free from any remarkable Vessel, the Extirpation will not be difficult: But if they be in an ill Habit of Body, and immoveable, they are not to be meddled with: If they be moveable, yet lye deep among the great Vessels, their extirpation will be dangerous; besides in the best Habits of Body, new Tumors are apt to arise, even whilst you are extirpating the old ones. If they have been of long standing, are hard, and fixed deep among the Vessels, the work will not easily be done, without they resolve, or come to Suppuration. But if the Habit of the Body is good, the Patient young, the Tumors recent, and not very hard, an easy Resolution or Suppuration is to be hoped for. In a word, you are to consider, 1. The place, 2. Near what great Vessels, 3. Near to what Joint, Nerves, Tendons, or Bones, 4. Whether they be single, few, or many, 5. Whether distinct, or in Clusters, 6 Whether great or small, 7. Lying deep, or superficial, 8. Moveable or immoveable. 9. Whether soft, or hard, 10. Round or tuberous, 11. Benign or malign, 12. The age and habit of the Body; and accordingly, you are to exercise your Reason, and make your Prognosticks: And this Prognostick you may always make, that if the Disease is recent, it is much easier to be cured, (especially if the Patient be young, and not of an evil Habit of Body) than when it is inveterate, and in a Person of Years, or is in one who has lived a Dissolute, Extravagant and Debauched course of Life, and continued it for a long time; for in such the Disease is more desperate, and many times admits of no Cure.

XXI. *The order of Diet.* If the Patient is Young, and of a cold and moist Habit, and if a Surfeit preceeded, fasting for some time, or times, or a very spare Diet is absolutely necessary, which was the Method of the Ancients; and what the Patient eats, ought to be easy of Digestion, and moderately heating and drying: Of Bread, Biscake without Salt, and with some Seeds in it is best: Of Meats, Mutton, Lamb, Wether, Goats-flesh, Kid, Rabbets, Pullets, young Cocks, Chickens, Partridges, Pheasants, Quails, and other small Birds, roasted; avoiding all Meats of gross Nourishment, as Water-fowls, Fish, Crabs, Lobsters, Pork, *&c.* but choice Beef may be eaten, roasted with moderation, now and then: Of Roots, Parsneps, Carrots and Potatoes may be moderately eaten, because they sweeten the Blood and Juices; so also the *Carolina Eddo*: But none of them come near to the goodness of *Turneps*: I have known two or three Patients cured of an Inveterate Evil, only by eating that Root for 8 or 10 Weeks together, abstaining from all other Food whatsoever, except white Sea Biscake; it perfectly sweetens the

Blood

Blood and Lympha, keeps the Belly soluble, alters the whole Habit of the Body, deriving the Humours downwards both by Stool and Urine, which feed the Tumours and create the Disease. They may be eaten either baked or boiled, or roasted, with a little Salt and sweet ordinary fresh Butter, and Biscake, and that if the Patient pleases, Morning, Noon and Night: However the Diet ought to be such as to keep the Stomach always Hungry or Craving: And this *Turnep Diet* is of extraordinary Service to such as have hot and dry, and thin Bodies, or are inclining to a Hectick, or Consumption.

XXII. *As to Drink*, Medicated Ale or Beer, or Metheglin, may be given; *Decoctum Ulmi* is of excellent Use, so also a Cyder made of *Juice of Turneps*, which is an excellent Liquor, vastly exceeding that made of Juice of Apples: Wine, chiefly Port Wines, and Wine mixt with Water may be allow'd: But *Water* (says *Wiseman*) is wholly forbidden. This I take to be a mistake, for if the Strength and Constitution of the Body will admit of it, and it may be moderately taken, it will sweeten the *Blood and Lympha*, beyond any other Liquor whatsoever. Bodies which are hot, dry and Consumptive, may drink Asses Milk, Cows or Goats Milk, if it will agree with their Stomachs, and they may use it *ad libitum*; also Whey, or rather Whey clarified with Fumitory, which has a Specifick Virtue in this case. And a small Decoction of Coriander Seed, or Cummin Seed, or of Liquorice, adding a few Grains of Salt of Parsly, Tartar or Wormwood to it in the boiling. If the Body is Gross, Fat, Flegmatick, Cold and Moist, a small Decoction of Guaiacum, Sassafras, China and Sarsa, with Coriander Seed, Cumin Seed and Liquorice, to be constantly drank, as ordinary Drink, will be of extraordinary Service, so also a Decoction of Turneps.

XXIII. *As to the Air, it ought to be mild and gentle*, as that of *Kensington* near *London*, which is very Salubrious; it ought not to be very cold, nor very hot, nor over much piercing, as are those of *Hampstead* and *Highgate*, but rather moderately heating and attenuating, mild and gentle; and the farther removed from the Smoak of the City so much the better. The Patient ought to use due Exercise, because that keeps the Pores open, and perspires a great part of the Morbifick Matter. The Body ought always to be kept open, rather Soluble than Costive, that the Bowels may daily have their due cleansing. Sleeping in the Day-time is naught, because it makes the Blood and Juices thick and mucilaginous, unless in case of Pain, which in some sort it alleviates. Lastly the Patient ought to stifle all sudden and violent Passions of the Mind, because they disorder the Body, and stir up new and preternatural Ferments in the Humors to the great Detriment of the Sick.

XXIV. *The Indications of Cure.* They are four-fold, *viz.* 1. To attenuate and evacuate the Morbifick Matter, or *Vitious Lympha*. 2. To dissolve the Congelation of the Juices or Humours,

and to absorb the Acidity, and take away the Acrimony of the *Blood and Lympha*. 3. To discuss the Tumour, if possible; or otherwise to soften and maturate, or suppurate it. 4. After Suppuration, to take it away either by Incision, Excision or Escaroticks.

XXV. *The first Indication which is the attenuating and carrying off the morbifick Matter, or vitious Lympha.* And this as it is contained in the first Passages, as Stomach and Bowels, so it is to be done both by Emeticks and Catharticks. *First as to Emeticks*, though Vinegar, and Wine of Squills are commended as excellent Things, and that even by the Suffrage of *Galen* himself; also Decoction or Juice of Groundsel, which cleanse the Stomach very well, yet neither they, nor any other Vomits do any wise equal, those made of Antimony, which do not often go without their desired Effects; for this purpose we commend, 1. *Tartarum Emeticum Mynsichti*, which may be given from 2 to 6 Grains. 2. *Vinum Rubellum*, (which is the Infusion of *Vitrum Antimonii* one Ounce, Cloves bruised 2 Drams, in Claret Wine a Quart.) 3. *Vinum Antimoniale*, (which is the Infusion of *Regulus Antimonii*, in fine Pouder four Ounces, in White Wine three Pints.) 4. *Vinum Benedictum*, (which is the Infusion of *Crocus Metallorum* in fine Pouder two Ounces, in Canary a Quart) any of which three Preparations may be given from two Drams, to an Ounce, or Ounce and half, according to Age, Strength, and other Accidents, in Canary, or any other proper Vehicle, with those Precautions and Observations as are usual in giving of Vomits, and to be repeated three or four times, at due Intervals, as the Physicians shall direct.

XXVI. But of all these Emeticks, I take the *Vinum Benedictum* to be the best, and easiest Vomit; and I remember that I once cured with this Medicament alone (as to the internal Prescription) an inveterate *Scrofula* in a young Man's Hand, which had been of more than seven Years standing, and left off as incurable. The Hand was swell'd as big as two Hands, and had many Holes in it as well in the outside of the Hand as in the Back, and Palm thereof, any of which being Syringed into with an Injection, it would come out at all the other Holes. I vomitted him twice a Week with this Emetick; and in the Intervals of Vomiting I gave him it dietetically in Wine mixt with Water, so much at a time, and that three or four times a Day, as might not make him Vomit or Sick, or nauseate his Stomach, and outwardly it was dreſt twice a Day with an Injection made of the *Water of the Griffen*, and then bound up with *Empl. de Ranis*, with treble Mercury, for the first Month, and afterwards with *Diapalma*, &c. the use of the *Vinum Benedictum* being continued for more than six Months, at the end of which Course, I left the Patient perfectly well. Our Authors *Emeticum Commune*, also cannot go without its Effects, being made with the same Preparation, and for this purpose I commend it as a singular thing, being given as the Physician shall advise.

XXVII. The Stomach and first Passages being thus cleansed, we now come to the remaining part of the Evacuation, which is to be performed by Catharticks. And among the number of these, we commend, 1. *Our Family Pouder*, than which there are not many better Things in the World, which may be taken and repeated twice or thrice a Week, as the Patient is able to bear it, from Grains xv. to half a Dram, or two Scruples, according to Age, *&c.* Our *Pulvis Valens* may be given in like manner, and in the same Dose, and be as often repeated, and is a Medicament of great force for eradicating this stubborn and deplorable Disease.

XXVIII. We commend (for a change of Medicines) *Our Pulvis Catharticus*, in *lib.* 1. *cap.* 1. *sect.* 20. aforegoing, to be given in the Dose, and after the manner, as is there directed. This following is a Potent Antistrumatick. *Take of the best Resinous Scammony in fine Pouder, one ounce, of the Impetus Mercurii Aurique three drams, or half an ounce; mix them.* Dose from a Scruple to half a Dram, or two Scruples, according to Age and Strength, to be repeated twice a Week for some Weeks. *Our Pilulæ Panaræ* are profitable to be given, now and then, and if the Body be hot or feverish, it may be cooled, by sometimes giving the *Sal Panaretum*, which is a thing of singular use in the younger sort of Patients of both Sexes.

XXIX. If it is in the Spring of the Year, or in the Fall of the Leaf, you may regularly purge for six or eight Weeks together, with the *Diet Drink* we have prescribed *in chap.* 15. *sect.* 12. of this Book aforegoing, which works very gently and easily, and admirably carries off the Recrements of the Blood and Humours. This following *Bolus* to be often repeated, has been an approved Remedy; *Take Resinous Scammony in fine Pouder* 10 *grains, choice Coloquintida in fine Pouder* 6 *grains, Aurum Vitæ* 4 *grains: Mix them, and with a sufficient quantity of Mithridate, make it into a Bolus, or with a less quantity of Mithridate make it up into Pills*, for one Dose for a Man or Woman, if the Patient likes Pills better.

XXX. If the Disease is very Rebellious, and is arrived, as it were, to the utmost Contumacy, you must come to more potent Medicines, which are the ultimate Means, and in the use of which, if they prevail not, the Patient may be declared Incurable. This is of great force. *Take Resinous Scammony in fine Pouder* 10 *grains, of our Impetus Mineralis* 8 *grains: Mix, and with Mithridate a sufficient quantity, make it into Pills or a Bolus (as the Patient best likes) for one Dose for a Man, or Woman.* Or this, which exceeds all other Catharticks for this purpose. *Take Resinous Scammony in fine Ponder* 8 *grains, Resin of Jallap* 4 *grains, Impetus Aureus* 10 *grains: Mix them for a Dose for a Man or Woman, to be made up into Pills, or a Bolus, with a sufficient quantity of Mithridate*, to be taken in the Morning fasting, with Observation as in other Purges; and to be repeated as oft as need requires.

XXXI. *The second Intention is to dissolve the Congelation of the Humours, take away the Acrimony, and absorb the Acidity of the Blood and Lympha.* There are many things

things which offer their Assistance to this purpose, as 1. All Alcalies both fixt and Volatile, of which kind are, *Terra Sigillata, Pearl and Coral levigated or dissolved in Ol. Salis, precipitated and edulcorated*, any of which may be given from a Scruple to a Dram or more; *Oister-Shells* levigated, and *Crab's-Eyes*, which are superior to them all, because they not only dissolve the congelated Humours, but also carry off the Morbifick Matter by Urine: *Volatile Sal Armoniack, and Salt of Mans or Beasts Blood, Volatile Salts of Urine, of Horns, Hoofs, and Beasts Flesh*, which being constantly taken in proper Vehicles, wonderfully sweeten the Mass of Blood and Humours, and alter the whole Habit.

XXXII. 2. Preparations of Alcaline Minerals, such are *Flores & Lac Sulphuris, Arcanum Jovis*, which may be given every Day twice, from 7 Grains to 12, in a little *Mithridate*. This is good. *Take Lac and Flores Sulphuris, of each 10 grains, Arcanum Jovis 5 grains; mix for a Dose to be given twice a Day. Native Cinnabar levigated, may be given from 10 grains to 30, Morning and Evening, mixt with a little of the Yolk of an Egg, or made up into Pills with a little Balsam of Peru.* But nothing exceeds our *Angelus Mineralis*, or our *Panacea Aurea*, without which *an old Ulcerated and Inveterate, Malign, or Rebellious Evil*, is not to be cured; for that we have found by a long Series of Experiencies that they prevail when all other things fail. They may be given Morning and Night, from half a Scruple to half a Dram, made up into a *Bolus*, or into *small Pills* with our *Panacea Balsamina*, or with *Balsam of Peru*, or *Tolu*, as the Physician shall advise.

XXXIII. These two last Medicines are certain *Arcana*, against the Malignity or Poison of this Disease, and will not go without their desired Effects, if the Disease is not yet become uncurable: The *Angelus* may be taken as directed, or made up with a little *Mithridate*, or into Pills, as in *our Pilulæ Angelicæ*, which may be taken for three, six, nine Months, or a Year together, they cannot be taken in vain, or so as to go without their Effects. But the greater Remedy of the two, is the *Panacea Aurea*, which Exterminates the *Evil* (if curable) both Root and Branch, leaving not the least relique in the Body, which it does by sweetning all the *Mass of Blood and Lympha*, dissolving the Combinations or Congelation of all the Humours, and restoring the whole humane Frame to a compleat State of perfect Health. It may be given from gr. x. to xxx. or xl. Grains, Morning and Evening, continued as long as need shall require, and be exhibited in thick Water Gruel, that it may not settle to the bottom, or mixt with *Mithridate*, or *Balsam of Peru*, or *Panacea Balsamina*, and made up into either a *Bolus*, or *Pills*, and so swallow'd: It has neither Taste nor Smell, nor any sensible Operation, either by Vomiting, Purging, Spitting, Sweating, or Urine, unless given in something that is Diuretick, and then it seems to operate powerfully that way, and will cure Ulcers in both Reins and Bladder, or its Neck.

XXXIV. If the *Strumæ* be Ulcerated, whether recent or inveterate, benign, or malign; it will much advance the Cure to strew over them at every dressing the *Angelus Mineralis*, or *Panacea Aurea*, for these Medicaments will destroy the Malignity at the Root, and dispose the Ulcers to a speedy healing: And over the same you may apply *Empl. de Ranis cum Mercurio* or *Diapalma*, so made as it may stick well.

XXXV. The *Panacea Aurea* is a Preparation of *Gold and Mercury in equal Quantities*; in which the Body of *Sol* is attenuated and opened almost to the last degree, and made admirably Volatile, and it is so much opened, that it will yield a *Golden Tincture* in a proper Menstruum, which is of almost infinite Virtues, in curing all Putrid and Pestilential Fevers, as also all other Malign, Inveterate and Rebellious Diseases, of what kind soever: As *Phthisis, Lepra, Elephantiasis, Strumæ, Lues*, &c.

XXXVI. *The third Intention is to discuss the Tumour, if possible, or to soften or maturate it.* The Discussion is performed two Ways, first by evacuating of the morbifick Matter, and carrying off what feeds it another Way; and this is done, 1. By continuing and reiterating some of the former Catharticks, as the Nature of the Disease shall require, or by giving our *Aurum Vitæ*, or *impetus Aureus*, from ten to thirty or forty Grains, according to Age, and other Accidents, and in the Intervals of Purging, to melt the Humours, and dissolve their Combination, with either our *Angelus Mineralis*, or *Panacea Aurea*, by giving them a long time.

XXXVII. 2. By Application of Externals, as Emollients and Discutients to discuss them, tho' indeed these *Scrofula* do not easily admit of Resolution: For this purpose, nothing seems better than *Ceratum de Ammoniaco Forresti*, (which see in our *Pharm. Lond. lib. 5. cap. 6. sect. 4.*) *Forrestus* kept this as a Secret, to dissolve *Scirhous Tumours*, and other hard Swellings; we have experienc'd it with good Success in dissolving Scrofulous or Strumous Tumors. Others commend *Empl. ex Ammoniaco Forresti*, which is said to dissolve hard, stoney Concretions upon the Joynts of the Fingers, Hands, Feet, Toes, and other Parts; see it in our *Pharm. Lond lib. 5. chap. 6. sect. 2.* But yet *Empl. e Cicuta cum Ammoniaco (in Phar. Lond. lib. 5. chap. 6. sect. 9.)* is said to be more powerful: Others advise *Diachylon magnum cum Gummi*, which powerfully softens, resolves and discusses, or resolves hard Swellings. Yet *Empl. e Cinnabari*, is much better; and what still exceeds is *Empl. de Gallano Crocatum Mynsichti, mixt with two parts of Empl. de Ranis cum Mercurii quantitate duplici.*

XXXVIII If the Tumour or Tumours will not admit of Discussion or Resolution, you must endeavour to Maturate them, and bring them to Suppuration; which you may do (if they will Suppurate) with this Cataplasm, *Take large Onions, heads of Garlick, which bake soft in an Oven, of each two or three in number: Mucilage of Althea Roots, and of White Lillies, Ana, two ounces: Meal of Fænugreek an ounce and half: Mithridate, Old Leaven, of each two ounces: Pulp of Figs, Hens dung, Pigeons dung, Yolks of Eggs,*

Eggs, Goose-grease, Hogs-grease of each an ounce: Saffron 2 drams: Mix, and with Crums of white Bread, make a Pultise, which apply as hot as it can well be endured to the Part. Or this: *Take Pulp of baked Onions and Garlick, Pulp of Leek Heads, Ana, two ounces: Mucilage of Althea Roots, of white Lilly Roots, Mithridate, Venice Treacle, Pulp of roasted Figs, of each an ounce and half: Hogs dung, Ox gall, Sheeps gall, Goose and Capons grease, Hogs Lard, Ale Yest, of each an ounce: Salt decripitated half an ounce: Mix, and with Bean flower or Crums of Naples Biscake a sufficient quantity, make a Cataplasm*, which apply as aforesaid, and renew the same as oft as need requires. Now to make the Suppuration the more easie, some pinch them very hard, thereby to excite an Inflammation, which very much induces the Maturation.

XXXIX. And this Maturation ought to be perfect, if possible, because if they be opened whilst any part of the Gland is hard, it will encrease in Magnitude, and put you upon a Necessity of extirpation, or else of leaving the Cure imperfect. Being suppurated they are best to be opened by *Incision*, because that makes the least Scar; but if the Tumor is large, the way by Caustick will be better, and with less Pain facilitate the Cure. Then the *Pus* or Matter being discharged, you may absterge or cleanse, with Precipitate alone, or mixt with Basilicon, or the Vitriol Stone, or the Mundificatives of *Paracelsus*, or *Quercetanus*, or *Aquapendens*, or that of our *Prescription*, after which Incarnatives and Epuloticks are to be used, as in the Cure of an Apostem or Abscess.

XL. *Paracelsus* his Absterstive. *Take Honey 8 ounces: Strasburgh or Chio Turpentine 4 ounces: Mix, and over a gentle Fire boil to the consistence of a soft Oyntment: Then take it from the Fire, and add to it, red Precipitate levigated two ounces, (well washt in Rose Water mixt with a little Oil of Tartar:) Yolks of two Eggs: Mix till they are well incorporated.* 2. *Quercetan* his Absterstive. *Take Smallage Plantane, of each a handful: Red Roses 2 Pugils: Red Wine 8 ounces: Boil to 4 ounces: Strain out, and dissolve therein brown Sugar 2 ounces: Turpentine one ounce: Orobus Meal, Pouder of Juniper Berries, of each 6 drams: Aloes, Myrrh, of each a dram: Boil gently, and with Bees Wax a fit quantity, make an Oyntment.* 3. *Aquapenden's* his Absterstive. *Take Juice of Smallage an ounce and half: Syrup of Roses, or Mel Rosarum, half an ounce: Turpentine 2 drams: Flower of Barley and of Lupins, of each so much as may bring it to a Consistency.* 4. Our own Absterstive. *Take Juice of Smallage brought to the thickness of new Honey; Melliginous Extract of Juniper Berries; Honey of Roses, of each 3 ounces: Chio Turpentine, Balsam Copaby, of each one ounce and half: Scammony in fine Pouder 4 ounces: Of the Princes Pouder one ounce; Pouder of Tobacco 6 drams: Mix them.* It is inferior to no other Deterstive. But besides these you have in the Shops, *Unguentum Apostolorum, Unguent. Ægyptiacum*, with other Things of like Nature.

XLI. If the *Scrofulæ* be inveterate and hard, they seldom admit of a compleat Suppuration. But upon the application of subtile Discussives, by raising an Heat in the Skin, it may so af-

fect the *Cystis* and part of the Gland next under it, as to cause an imperfect Maturation; and by the continual use of the Discussives, may so fret its way in small holes, as by their growing larger and larger, may become so many painful Ulcers, spreading one into another, the Substance or Body of the Glands still remaining hard, without the hopes of Suppuration. In this Case *Wiseman* advises to dress them one, two, or three Days with a Pledgit of *Ung. Basilicon* to qualifie the Heat and Pain of the Ulceration, and so by interchangeably applying the Discussive or Lenitive, you may happily waste the whole Gland, the Patient being treated in the mean Season with proper Internals.

XLII. *The fourth and last Intention of Cure is, to take away the* Scrofulæ *either by Incision, Excision, or Escaroticks.* If the Tumor is moveable, and free from great and remarkable Vessels, the best way of Cure is, by cutting the Skin, and taking them out whole, with their *Cystis*: those which grow small near their *Basis*, may be ty'd and so cut off. If they are Ulcerated and thrust forth with a *Fungus* by putting a *Spatula*, or some such like Instrument under them, they have been thrust quite out, and the Ulcer healed in a few Days after. If it is thick in its *Basis*, so that Diligation cannot be made, you may pass a large Needle under the Roots of them, and cut them off under the Needle. If it be an *Atheorema*, *Meliceris*, or *Steatoma*, make an Incision, cutting the Skin the length of the Tumor; but do it with caution, that you cut not into the *Cystis*, and so let the Matter forth, but having separated the Skin round to the *Basis*, make a Ligature upon the Vessels, before you cut them off: If they are of great bulk, the Incision ought to be made cross, or otherwise Oval, taking off so much of the Skin, as may be thought superfluous, and then separate it; do it gently, because sometimes the Skin sticks so close to the *Cystis*, that it will not separate without the help of the Knife: Being separated, turn the *Cystis* out, make a Ligature underneath upon the Vessels, and then cut it off: If you do it without Ligature, it is always attended with a flux of Blood, which is to be avoided. Being cut off, bring the Lips of the Wound together, and with two or three Stitches, or otherwise as the Matter requires, dress it up, as another Wound. Sometimes the Ligature is made without Incision, and the Tumor is taken off by streightening it, so it falls without effusion of Blood; but then there is a hazard (unless great care be taken) of mortifying the sound Parts underneath, or of producing some other ill Symptom which may prolong the Cure.

XLIII. For this reason, where the Cystick Tumor is great, *Wiseman* advises to cut rather into the *Cystis*, and with your Hand, or Instrument to take forth that preternatural Matter, leaving the *Cystis* behind, whereby, you will be secured against a flux of Blood; and the *Cystis* it self will afterwards by digestion be separated and cast off, and the Wound will afterwards heal by Agglutination, if the superfluous Skin be cut off, and the remaining Lips be brought together,

ther, as is uſual in ſuch Operations.

XLIV. But if the *Strumæ* are large, or lye deep, and near great Veſſels, there (if Extirpation is ſafe) the beſt way will be to perform the Work by Cauſticks and Eſcaroticks: This tho' it requires more time, yet it is more ſafe and ſure, and not ſo frightful to the Patient as the Knife is. In order to this Work, the Body ought to be often Purged, and during the Extirpation, our *Angelus Mineralis*, *Panacea Aurea*, or *Pilulæ Angelicæ*, or other proper *Antiſtrumaticks* ought to be exhibited, otherwiſe new Kernels will ariſe, while the old ones are eradicating.

XLV. You are therefore to be furniſhed with ſuch Eſcaroticks as may penetrate deep into the Gland, and do their Work with leaſt Pain: But ſuch is the unhappineſs, that all Medicaments of this kind, are vehemently Painful. *The ſtronger Cauſticks* are the moſt proper to begin withal, provided you can but keep them within their Bounds: Of theſe ſome are made up of *Soap-lees boiled to a Stone*, but this will ſpread in ſpight of all defenſatives. So will thoſe made of Arſenick, Corroſive Sublimate, Vitriol *&c.* That of *Calx Viva*, *boiled up with Soap-lees*, ſpreads the leaſt of all.

XLVI. *The Cathereticks* commonly uſed, are *Turpethum Minerale*, *Arcanum Corallinum*, *Red Precipitate*, alone, or mixt with *Alumen uſtum*, or applyed with the uſe of the *Vitriol Stone*: But the mildeſt of them all, is, the *Red Precipitate*, (which tho' it is ſlow in Operation) is only to be uſed in tender Bodies.

XLVII. This is eſpecially to be obſerved, that all *Eſcaroticks* and *Cathereticks* which have *Sublimate* in them, are ſo exceeding Painful, that they are ſcarcely to be endured in the ſtrongeſt Bodies; for when taken off, the Salts having penetrated the Glands, the vehement Pain will continue many Hours after, and affect the adjacent Parts with great Inflammation and Tumor, ſo that often times new Kernels will ariſe, and many times the Head is affected with extream Pain, benuming of the Side and Parts about, with palpitation of the Heart, faintings away, deprivation of Senſe, and many times a ſtrong Fever, ſo that this Medicament ought eſpecially to be avoided.

XLVIII. In applying the Cauſtick, you muſt defend the ſides with Plaiſters, that it may not ſpread; for the Lips being once divided, they will give way, and accordingly as the Eſcaroticks penetrate into the Body of the Gland, the ſides of it will fall in, and be eradicated, out of the narroweſt Orifice you can make; and the narrower it is, the leſs will be the Blemiſh when it is Cicatrized, and will ſooner be cured.

XLIX. The Eſchar being made, it is to be divided the whole length, and with the Cauſtick Stone, it is to be rubbed, 'till it has penetrated into the Body of the Gland, which it will the ſooner do, if it is touched with a Stick dipt into *Butter of Antimony*: Then dreſs it up with *Baſilicon cum Oleo Lini* pretty hot, embrocating the Parts with Oil of Roſes and Vinegar, applying over all *Em-*

Plastrum e Bolo. This dressing will not be without Pain, but it rarely lasts above half an Hour. The third Day after, dress it again, and if the Eschar in the middle be dryed hard, dress it with Lenitives; if it feels soft rub it again interchangeably with the Caustick Stone, and Butter of Antimony, taking care that the Lips of the Ulcer be not enlarged thereby: By this proceeding a great part of the Swelling or Kernel will be eradicated, before the first Eschar in the circumference will be cast off from the Skin.

L. The *Scrofulæ* being thus nearly eradicated, you may consume the remainder with *Red Precipitate*, and keep it open by Dossels of Lint, letting the Lips of the Ulcer contract themselves narrower the whilst, that it may heal with a Cicatrize like an inciſed Wound. For the remaining patt of thy Chyrurgick Cure, we shall refer you to to our *Ars Chyrurgica*, *Lib.* 3. *Cap.* 27. *Sect.* 60. *ad* 92. where we have handled the matter at large: For now in this Work, we are presenting you with a Practice of Physick, not of Chyrurgery.

CHAP. XVII. *Of Simple Wounds in general.*

This whole Chapter is added by the Commentator W. SALMON.

I. A Wound is called in Greek Τραῦμα, *pl.* τραύμαλα: In Latin, *Vulnus, pl. Vulnera*: It is a solution of Continuity or Unity, made in the fleshy Substance, which is new Bloody, and without Putrifaction, made by some external Force, as Inciſion, Puncture, Biting, Cutting off, Contusion, Distension, Collision, Fracture, Erosion, or opening of a closed Orifice. The kinds or differences of Wounds are manifold as arising from the Place, the Accidents, the Effects, the manner of its Inflicting, the Part, and the form or site of the Wound. All which you may see at large in our *Ars Chyrurgica*, *Lib.* 4. *Cap.* 1. *Sect.* 3. *ad* 8. *inclusive*. The chief differences we shall here take notice of in these our short Notes, are only as the Wound is said to be, *Simple*, or *Complex*.

II. *A Simple Wound* is such, to which no other Disease, or Symtom is joined, and without Contusion, loss of Substance, or Fracture of the Bones, *&c.* *A Complex, or complicated Wound*, is that which is made with some other Disease, as Contusion of the Muscle or Parts adjacent, Fracture of some Bone, Dislocation, loss of Substance, ill conformation of the Part, Heterogeneous Things introduced into the Wound, Inflammation, Flux of Humors, Hypersarcosis, Gangrene, and some other ill Symptoms.

III. *The Sign by which a Wound is known* are so apparent, that it is but lost labour to relate them: but the greatness of the hurt, and particular disaffections of particular Parts, with the discovery of what internal Parts (when

(when wounded) are hurt, are in ſome meaſure diſcovered by the Symptoms occurring, all which we have fully handled in our *Ars Chyrurgica, lib.* 4. *cap.* 1. *ſect.* 10. *ad ſect.* 36. *incluſive*; as alſo in moſt of the Chapters of that IVth *Book*, from *Cap.* X. *ad Cap.* XLVIII. of the ſame, to which we refer you.

IV. *The Prognoſticks ought diligently to be enquired into*, without the true Knowledge of which, the Artiſt cannot well make his Report, when required, nor how to make a ſatisfactory Judgment as to himſelf, ſo as to avoid ingaging or promiſing a Cure, when poſſibly the Wound may be Mortal. But as the Doctrine of the Prognoſtick part is long, ſo we ſhall refer you to our ſaid *Ars Chyrurgica, lib.* 4. *cap.* 1. *ſect.* 41. *ad ſect.* 107. *incluſive.* As alſo in the following proper Chapters of the ſame Book. To which add all thoſe which may be drawn out of the *Doctrine of Reports* delivered in the ſame *Ars Chyrurgica*, *lib.* 1. *cap.* XLVIII. *ad cap.* LI. *incluſive.* Where the whole Matter is handled at large.

V. *The Cure.* A Wound being the ſolution of Unity, the intentions of Curing, require the Uniting of what are ſo divided, which is to be done as well by the aſſiſtance of Nature, as of Art, otherwiſe the Artiſt's labour will be all in vain. We will firſt treat of the Cure of ſimple Wounds, which has the following Intentions, *viz.* 1. To remove all extraneous Matter, as Blood, Hair, Sand, Duſt, pieces of Weapons, Rags, or whatever elſe may be in the way to hinder Agglutination or Conſolidation of the disjoyned Parts. 2. To bring the ſeparated Lips of the Wound evenly together. 3. To keep the Lips ſo brought together, ſo cloſe that they may Unite, and be reſtored to their former State. 4. To conſerve the equal Temperament and natural Heat of the Part, in order to their Uniting, and alſo to prevent a Gangrene. 5. To prevent ill Accidents, and to correct or remove ſuch as are already preſent.

VI. *The firſt Intention is the removal of things Extraneous, in which you are to conſider whether the thing can be done or not*; and if it can, how it may be done with ſafety. If the Weapon ſplinters, or other Matter ſticks ſo faſt, that it cannot at preſent be extracted, it is then to be left to Nature, which many times does that which Art cannot do: For at length the Wound may Apoſtemate, and then the foreign Matter may be thruſt forth. But if the Weapon or other Matter may with ſafety be taken out, and you think the Patient is recoverable, remove it as faſt as you can, for fear of Inflammation. If the Weapon has pierced deep, or thro' great Veſſels or Nervous Places, or if the Parts oppoſite be repleat with Veins, Arteries, and Nerves, or that a Bone lyes in the way, and no great fear of Laceration, take it out the ſame way it went in: But if the point of the Weapon has pierced above half way thro' that part, and no Bones or great Veſſels lye in the way to hinder you, then either thruſt the Weapon thro'; or by Inciſion on the contrary ſide make way for it; but this is only to be done, when the

part

part of the Weapon is small, lest you make two great Wounds for one. If it sticks in a Bone, move it up and down to loosen its point, but if it will not move, cut away the Bone before you extract it.

VII. The Weapon being drawn out, cleanse the Wound from any other extraneous Things which may be in it, and permit it to Bleed a while, (if no great Vessel be hurt) as in reason you may think fit, with respect to the Strength and Habit of the Body: Let the Blood in the small Veins flow out, as well to hinder Inflammation, as to prevent the generation of much *Pus* or Matter: Then the Bleeding being stay'd, shave off the Hair growing about the Wound, if there be any; wipe away the clotted Blood with the Sponge dipt in red Wine, Oxycrate, or Water mixt with Brandy: But if the clotted Blood be deep in the Wound, remove it not, lest you excite the bleeding afresh; for that this concreted Blood, is as a healing Balsam to the Wound, keeps it warm, defends it from the ambient Air, and induces Digestion, by which means Nature will cast it forth.

VIII. *The second Intention is the bringing the Lips of the Wound exactly together*; without this a deformed Scar will remain after healing: This is the work of the Artist not of Nature: A Pledgit is not to be laid, or a Dossil of Lint, crouded, or a Tent thrust into a little Wound, lest the Wound is thereby kept open, Pain be excited, Defluxions be attracted, the native Heat weakned, and the Cure prolonged: If Inflammation and Tumor by any of these means should happen, foment the Wound with warm Milk, and dress it up with a Digestive made of *Venice* or *Chio Turpentine mixed with the Yolk of an Egg*; embrocate the Parts about with Oil of Roses, and apply over all *Emplastrum e Bolo*, or some such like, and bind it up with gentle Compression.

IX. The Lips are to be drawn together gently, by little and little, not hastily at one forcing: If the Parts are equally soft, bring them equally together: But if the one be soft and the other hard, so as it is not to be moved but with difficulty, bring the softer part to the harder. If the Parts are grown stiff with Cold, as when (after a Battel) the Patient has been left in the Field all Night; supple them by fomenting them with warm Milk, or warm Water, or embrocate them with Oil, till the Lips become soft, and then endeavour the bringing them together. Let them be equally posited, so as to answer one another brim to brim, and if possibly underneath, Vessel to Vessel, that Nature by virtue of the Balsam of the Blood, may Reunite, Agglutinate, Consolidate and heal the Wound.

X. *The third Intention which is Deligation or Bandage, that the Parts brought together as aforesaid, may be so retained.* This is done by *Fasciæ* and *Saturæ*, Rowling and Stitching. Now by Bandage, the Parts are not only held together for Union; but also such as would unnaturally grow together, are kept asunder, as the Fingers in Burnings, Scaldings, *&c.* would many times grow together, were they not by this means hindred. By Bandage, defluxions of Humors are averted, and being already lodged are prest out; Fluxes of Blood and large Hemorrhages

ges are stayed; ill shaped Wounds brought into a better Form, and made more apt for Cure; and the Effects of the Application are promoted, by keeping them close to their proper Places, and the true and natural Form and Beauty of the part will be conserved.

XI. There are three sorts of Bandage or Rowling, *viz.* 1. *Incarnatrix*, or *Agglutinatrix*, the Incarnative, or Agglutinating. 2. *Retentrix*, the Retentive. 3. *Expultrix*, the Expulsive. The *Incarnative* is that when the Lips of the Wound are brought together, conserves them in their right Figure. It binds harder than the Retentive, and looser than the Expulsive, and is the most useful in simple, fresh and bleeding Wounds. The Matter or Substance of your Rowlers must be made of good strong even Cloth, white, clean, and gentle, without Hem, Seam, or Thread hanging by. Let their length be such as the Member affected, and the multitude of Circumvolutions require, and longer in Winter than in Summer, to rowl on and on again in Winter for warmth sake; but no oftner than needs must in Summer. Let the breadth be, for the Shoulders about six Inches broad; for the Thighs, five Inches, for the Legs four Inches, for the Arms three Inches, for the Fingers and Toes one Inch broad: But these Proportions you may alter, as your Judgment and Reason shall direct you, and the Conformation, Shape and Posture of the Parts may require. These Rowlers are to be fastned, not by tying of a Knot, nor yet by sowing, where you cannot easily come at it again, without hurting the Patient. This being said, the Rowler is to be rowled up hard at both ends, to the middle, then lay the middle part of the Rowler on that part which is opposite to the Wound, to prevent Pain and Inflammation; make a turn upon the Wound, with both ends of the Rowler, going up with the one, and down with the other, and take so many turns about the Part, as may be requisite for stopping the Flux of Blood; or, as the Season of the Year may be, to defend it from cold, nor yet to keep the Wound too hot, lest you weaken the part; and withal take care that the Bandage is not made too hard, lest you intercept the Spirits. Where note, that the Rowler, binding or running upwards will hinder the Influx of Humours; and its binding or running downwards, will press out the *Pus* or Matter from the Part affected.

XII. The *Fascia Retentrix*, or Retentive Bandage is used to keep your Dressings on, close about the Wound; and this is chiefly in use in Wounds of the Head, and is not to be wound on too hard, but with a mean Pressure. The *Fasci Expulsiva*, or Expulsive Bandage, is performed by a Rowler of but one Head. And the special use of this is to press forth the Matter out of Fistula's or Sinous Ulcers, as also to prevent a Defluxion of Humours; and to force out such as have already repleniſhed the part; and this is done in the manner following. Begin on the sound part, beneath the Seat of the Humours, and rowl upwards; pretty streight

streight at first, and by degrees, gentler and gentler, as you come nearer the Mouth of the Wound. If you will press out the Matter contained in the Cavity of the Wound, you must rowl loosely there a turn or two; then harder, and yet a little straiter, the higher you go, to hinder the falling down of the Humours; yet you must not bind it too hard, for fear of doing Mischief, but of such a hardness, as the Patient can well endure it.

XIII. Sutures or Stiching, is that which falls next under our Consideration, and they are of four kinds, *viz.* 1. *Incarnative*, and this is most in use amongst us, and is by making so many Stitches at a distance. 2. *Restrictive*, or *Restringent*, and this is the Glovers Stitch, it is of use in bringing an Artery, or Vein to its wounded Fellow, to make the Work more secure, and seemly: And is much in use among the *Spaniards*, who stitch almost all sorts of Wounds with it: In the Forehead and Face, they bring the Wounds very close; the third Day they commonly cut the Knots off, and draw the Thread out, then with dry Stitches keep them so brought together, and in two or three Days more they do the Cure. 3. *Conservative*, and this is of use in great Wounds, and those of the *Oesophagus*, &c. to hold them forcibly together, and this is performed with Pins or Needles, as in Hare-Lips. 4. *The dry Stitch*, this is made with little bits of strong Linnen Cloth, Triangular, or Quadrangular, or of such a Figure as may best serve your purpose. This is most proper in the Face, to avoid the other way of Stitching, but may be of use also in other Parts, to preserve the Lips close together, and prevent Scarring. The Cloth, (to make it stick firmly) is commonly spread with this Mixture. *Take fine Dragon's-blood, Frankincense, Aloes, Wheat-flower, Gum Tragacanth, of each equal Parts, which mix with the White of an Egg, and make it of such a Consistence as that it may adhere firmly to the Skin.* This dry Suture must be applied at such a distance, as may best perform the Work: When the Patches are dried on, you must bring the Lips of the Wound close together, and retain them so, taking care they be not wet by the Matter.

XIV. in the use of the *Incarnative Stitch*, consider the length of the Wound: If it is but an Inch long, it needs no Stitching: If two Fingers breadth, make one Stitch in the middle: If three Fingers breadth, make two Stitches: If four Fingers breadth, make three Stitches, and so on, making the Stitches one less than the Wound is in Fingers breadths; and in depending Parts, let them be made at a little more distance. When the Parts are Agglutinated, the Stitches of any of the kinds, are to be taken out, which is sooner or later, according to the Habit of the Body, and Season of the Year: In great Transverse Wounds eight Days are required, in less Wounds not so deep, three or four Days: In the Face do it the next dressing, lest the Stiches make so many Scars (except it be done by the dry Stitch.) But in all this Operation you must make use of your Reason, because some-

ſometimes the Wound may ſeem Agglutinated, whilſt the Lips are held together by the *Suture*, which when the Stitches are cut out, you will find not ſo exactly Cicatriz'd, but that they might have been continued a Day longer.

XV. But in Wounds of the *Peritoneum*, another kind of Stitch (differing from all the former) is uſed, which is thus. Take up the *Peritoneum* on the one ſide, and leave it on the other, and then take it up on the other ſide, and leave it on this. It is thus made that the *Peritoneum* (which is a dry Body) may be united with the Muſculous Fleſh, otherwiſe, the fleſhy Parts only would unite, and the *Peritoneum* lie open; upon which a Rupture would certainly ſucceed, and the Patient be forced to wear a *Truſs* all the Days of his Life. And let the Thread you uſe be a white, round, ſtrong Thread, proportionable to the Needle, and both according as the Wound requires.

XVI. *The fourth Intention is to conſerve the equal Temperament, and natural Heat of the Part, to obtain Agglutination.* As ſoon as the Wound is made, the Blood becomes a Balſam of healing to the Part: The *Blood* with the *Lympha* is the Glew which Nature uſes, in curing by the firſt and ſecond Intention. The firſt Intention being performed *per Symphyſin, viz.* a re-union of the Parts without any *Medium*, as of a *Callus* or *Fleſh*, or *Skin*, or any other Matter interpoſed. The ſecond Intention is performed *per Syſſarcoſin, viz.* with a Medium, or Interpoſition of ſome *Fleſh*, or *Callus*, or *Skin*, to fill up the Space between the Lips of the Wound. For which reaſon great care is to be taken, that the *Blood* may not offend neither in *quantity*, nor *quality*. Too much induces looſe or proud Fleſh, and too little may cauſe an *Atrophia* of the Limb, or Part: And if the *Blood* and *Lympha* be evil, they cannot generate good Fleſh, for ſuch as they are, ſuch will the Fleſh be. The means by which this is performed is, 1. Univerſal, relating to the Diet. 2. Particular, relating to the Part wounded it ſelf.

XVII. Firſt, *As to Univerſals relating to the Diet*, the Patient ought to uſe a ſparing, not a full Diet, becauſe the latter is apt to breed Humours, excite Inflammations, cauſe Fevers, and other Symptoms; and yet again ſometimes when the Body is exhauſted thro' loſs of Blood and Spirits, it is reaſonable that a greater Liberty ſhould be allow'd, as to take ſtrong Broths, Gellies, new-laid Eggs, *&c.* in allowing all which things the Artiſt ought to uſe his Reaſon. Conſideration alſo is to be had to the Patient's uſual manner of living; for ſuch as have been accuſtomed to the drinking of ſtrong Liquors, Punch, Wine, *&c.* cannot well live without a ſmall, or proportionable Allowance of the ſame. As to the Medicinal Part, ſtrong Cathartick's are not to be uſed, leſt the Matter or Humours ſhould be provoked to flow to the weak part, but Lenitives, and Salines may be uſed: As *Sena, Rhubarb, Caſſia, Tamarinds, Manna, Electuarium Lenitivum, Diaprunum, Syrupus, Roſarum, Salutivum, Syrupus de Cichorio cum Rhubarbaro,*

Sal Prunellæ, *Sal Panaretum*, *Sal Mirabile Glauberi*, &c. also Broths in which Bugle, Bugloss, Borage, Cichory, Endive, Lettice, Purslane, Spinach, Sorrel, *&c.* have been boiled. *Wound Drinks* also may be given especially in Wounds of the Thorax, and Abdomen, and in all great Wounds in any other principal part of the Body.

XVIII. *The chief Simples of which our Wound Drinks are made are chiefly*, Adders Tongue, Agrimony, Angelica, Avens, Barley, Bawm, Beets, Betony, Bistort, Bloodwort, Borage, Bugloss, Bugle, Centory, Cichory, Cinkfoil, Comfrey, Daisie, Dandelyon, Dock, Endive, Fluelling, Fumitory, golden Rod, ground Ivy, Harts Tongue, Herb Trinity, Horse Tail, Hypericon, Knot-grass, Ladies Mantle, Lettice, Mouse Ear, Mugwort, Orpine, Parietary, Perwinkle, Plantain, Hartshorn, Poplar Buds, Purslane, Ribwort, Red Roses, Sanders of all sorts, Sanicle, Shepherd's Purse, Scordium, Smallage, Solomon's Seal, Sorrel, Speedwel, Strawberry-leaves, Tormentil, Valerian, Vervain, Vine-leaves, Winter Cherries, Wood-Sorrel, Yarrow, *&c.* of all, or some of which you may make Diet-Drinks at Pleasure, Examples of which you have in great Plenty, in *our Ars Chirurgica lib.* 4. *cap.* 3. *sect.* 29. *ad* 41. *inclusive*. To all which you may add, 1. *Decoctum Traticum*. 2. *Decoctum Vulnerarium*. 3. *Decoctum Cancri*. 4. *Decoctum Sudorificum*. 5. *Decoctum Aperitivum majus*. 6. *Decoctum Aperitivum minus*. 7. *Decoctum Vulnerarium Mynsichti*. 8. *Decoctum Tramuticum nostrum*. 9. *Vinum Hydragogum Barbetti*: All which you may see in our *Pharmacopœia Lordinensis*, *lib.* 4. *cap.* 14. *sect.* 5. 8, 11. 20. 26. 28. 30. and in our *Doron Medicum*, *lib.* 2. *cap.* 4. *sect.* 4. *and cap.* 12. *sect.* 7. And if the Wound heals not quickly, but degenerates into an Ulcer, you may give *Pouders of Crabs-Eyes*, *Coral*, *Pearls*, *or their prepared Salts*, *mixt with Pouder of Nutmegs*, *Cochinele*, *Saffron*, *&c.* of which a Dram may be given at a time, also *Guajacum Wood and Bark*, *and Sarsa*, may be added to the *Diet-Drink*. Or that may sometimes be taken which we have prescribed in *cap.* 15. *sect.* 12. of this second Book aforegoing.

XIX. *Secondly, as to Particulars relating to the Part, for Preservation of the natural Heat and Tone thereof.* Now as a Wound, even the least rub off of the Skin, little Cut, Prick, or Scratch, *&c.* cannot be without Pain; and the greater or deeper the Wound, the greater the Pain; so this Pain excites presently a fermenting Heat, in the Serous or Lymphatick Part of the Blood, which directing its way to the Wound (if not prevented,) distends and raises that part into a Tumor with Inflammation, which is so much the greater if it happens in a Plethorick, Cachochymick, Corpulent, or in Habit of Body; and yet still greater, if it be in a depending Part, as Thighs, Legs, Feet, *&c.* Now the part being weak, and not able to assimilate, or expel them, the natural Heat decays, and either a *Phlegmon* is produced, or a kind of *Oedematous* Tumor, or a *Gangrene*.

XX. *To prevent all this*, if the Wound is slight, or without loss of Substance, close it as soon

ſoon as may be, and after the firſt dreſſing, dreſs it not again till the next Day: But if Flux of Blood be great, open it not till two or three Days be paſt. And if there be the hurt of any of the Veſſels, as of an Artery, or large Vein, the beſt way will be to cut it in two, and cauterize both Ends with a Cauterizing Iron or Button; or elſe to take it up and tie it, and then to cauterize it. Your firſt Application ought to be of ſuch Medicaments, as have an agglutinative Faculty; as, *fine Bole, fine Sanguis Draconis, Aloes, Frankincenſe, Colophony, Chio Turpentine, Gum Elemi*, and the like; over which you are to apply ſuch things as are cooling, and of an aſtringent Faculty, to reſiſt the influx of Humours, as *Cloth dipt in Juices of Plantane, Horſe-Tail, Yarrow, Perwinkle, Elm Leaves, Red Wine, or Oxycrate*, to which you may add ſome of theſe Pouders made of *red Roſe Flowers, Balauſtians, Pomgranate Peels, Galls, Cypreſs Nuts, Barley Flower, Bean Flower*, &c. *mixt with good Oil Olive.* Theſe Simple Things you may mix according to the Habit of the Body, and Condition of the Wound. In ſmall and ſuperficial Wounds, Nature commonly does the Cure, we only bringing the Lips cloſe together, and defending it from Defluxion as afore directed, with proper Bandage to retain the Application: Many times a Pledgit of *Linimentum Arcæi*, with a Plaiſter of *Diapalma* alone will do the Buſineſs.

XXI. *But in greater Wounds, which will not be ſo eaſily cured*, the Lips are firſt to be ſtitcht together. Then you may ſprinkle them with this Powder *Take fine Bole, Catechu, white Roſes, fine Sanguis Draconis, of each equal Parts: mix them.* And over the ſame ſprinkled Pouder, you may apply a Mixture, made of ſome of the ſame Pouder and the White of an Egg, with a Compreſs, ſqueez'd out of *Oxycrate* or *Red Wine*, and convenient Bandage over all. But leſt the too faſt ſticking of this Emplaſtick ſhould hurt or tear the Lips of the Wound in taking the Dreſſing off; you may apply over the ſprinkled Pouders a Pledgit dreſt with this Sarcotick Ointment. *Take Chio Turpentine three ounces, Gum Elemi ſtrained two ounces, Balſam of Peru two drams, Sanguis draconis, Roſin, Maſtich, of each a dram: Mix and make an Ointment.* Or this. *Take Chio Turpentine, Wax, of each two ounces, Frankincenſe, Olibanum, Roſin, of each an ounce and half, Maſtich an ounce, Balſam of Peru half an ounce, Oil of Hypericon a ſufficient quantity to make the whole into the Form of an Ointment:* And then over the Pledgit, you may apply, *Empl. de Bolo, de Lithargyro*, or *Diapalmæ*, &c.

XXII. *The fifth and laſt Intention is the preventing of ill Accidents, and to correct or remove ſuch as are already preſent.* The chief of theſe are Hemorrhage, Pain, Inflammation, Fever and Gangrene. The Hemorrage may be ſtopt by applying ſome Aſtringent Pouder (the Lips of the Wound being firſt cloſed by Suture,) as that of *Galen*, thus made. *Take Frankincenſe two ounces, fine Aloes one ounce: Make them into a Pouder: In the time of uſing it, mix it with ſo much glare of Eggs, as will make it of the thickneſs of Honey; then dip the Wool of a Hare into it, and apply it to the Sore, or Part which bleeds,*

bleeds, binding it on. This is called (in the *London Dispensatory, lib.* 4. *cap.* 21. *sect* 33.) *Pulvis Thuraloes:* It is an exceeding and potent Remedy, and will stick on till the Sore is throughly healed, and then it will fall off of it self; let it be apply'd with Compress and Bandage: But if the Wound is such that you cannot bring its Lips together, then apply the aforesaid Pouder upon Dossils on the bleeding Vessels; and your Astringents next with Compress and Bandage. You may see the Composition of many other admirable Astringents in our *Ars Chirurgica, lib.* 3. *cap.* 11. *sect.* 111. *and* 112. *and lib.* 4. *cap.* 4. *sect.* 29. *ad sect.* 62. *inclusive.* Among all which (setting aside Pouder of roasted Hair, of Catechu, Toads Flesh, and of Man's Blood) *Calcothar*, which is a Styptick, is highly commended, which is only Vitriol calcin'd to redness, or the *Carput Mortuum of Vitriol*; it immediately stops the bleeding of Wounds: And its Salt being extracted, and dissolved in Water, and injected into deep Wounds does the same thing. But none seems to be more excellent than the *Aqua Aluminis Sennerti* (in *lib.* 5. *part.* 4. *cap.* 14.) which is thus made. *Take Roch Alum, what quantity you please, pouder it, and put it into an Ox Bladder, and so put it into a Kettle of hot Water to be dissolved: Distil this Water by an Alembick, and continue it there so long till the Feces are dry. These Fæces dissolve again in an Ox Bladder as before: And distil in like manner again. And this Work repeat, till the whole Substance of the Alum shall come over the Helm, and be converted by Distillation into Water.*

XXIII. *The Pain is also to be eased immediately.* And this is done by Application of Anodyns: You may foment the Part with a *Decoction of Camomil, Angelica, Elder, red Roses, Poppy-Heads and Henbane-leaves, Heads or Roots made in Broth of a Sheep's Head, or in Milk*; or a Cataplasm may be made of the same with the Addition of *Linseed* and *Fenugreek-Seed*: Or a Cataplasm may be applied, made of *Barly and Bean-Flower, Elder-Leaves, and red Roses boiled in red Wine, or Oxycrates*: Or you may bathe with our *Tinctura Anodyna*, or *Spiritus Cosmeticus*, or with them two mixt together, taking inwardly at Bed-time, thirty or forty, or more Drops, of our *Guttæ Vitæ*, in a Glass of Mead, or some other proper Vehicle: But if the Pain arises from any of the Nerves hurt, dress them with *Potestates Succini vel Sabinæ*, or with *Oil of Turpentine*, laying over a Pledgit dipt in the same.

XXIV. *To remove the Inflammation. Take Henbane-Leaves two handfuls, Milk a pint, Oil of Roses* 4 *ounces, Oil of Poppies one ounce, Yolks of* 3 *new-laid Eggs, Mithridate an ounce and half, Saffron* 3 *drams, Crumbs of white Bread, enough to make it into a Cataplasm by boiling. A Decoction of Poppy Leaves or Heads mixs with some of our Spiritus Cosmeticus*, is an excellent thing to bathe withal; so also bathing the Part long with *very warm Water alone, or with a Decoction of Fennel, Dill, and Southernwood*, to be several times repeated; for these things, by opening the Pores, cause a Perspiration of the offending and fiery Particles; after which, the former *Cataplasm* may be applied; or you may anoint with *Oil of*

Hypericon

Hypericon mixt with an equal quantity of Oil of Poppy Heads, or with *Ung. Nutritum*, *Populeon*, *Album Camphoratum*, or *Refrigerans Galeni*.

XXV. *To take off the Fever.* The emulsions of the four greater cold Seeds, are often given in Fevers with Success, yet because sometimes Putrifaction attends, that they may be improper, and possibly do mischief; for which reason we rather advise to such things which not only cool the Heat, and take off the Fever, but also resist Putridity, of which kind are the Oils of Salt, Vitriol, and Sulphur, which may be given in Drops mixt with Water, to a convenient acidity; or they may be given in Water mixt with Wine, and then it may be sweetned with Syrup of Violets, or with double refined Sugar, to make it gratefully pleasant: But if a *Frenzy* or *Delirium* be present with the Fever; tho' they are tokens of great Danger, yet I think it is Prudence to neglect nothing whilst there is the least hope of Life remaining: In this Case instead of fair Spring Water, you ought to use *Water distilled from Garden Poppies, or their Heads, white or black, or both.* Which Mixture, or Julep ought to be repeated and continued so long till the Fever is perfectly removed: And a Clyster also of Posset Drink and brown Sugar may be exhibited to loosen the Bowels and cool the Body.

XXVI. *To cure the Gangrene.* You ought to make Scarifications, and that pretty deep, as you see occasion requires, let them bleed pretty well, and remove the clotted Blood, by washing with *Brine*, or a strong *Lixivium of Wood or Pot Ashes, in which Scordium, Southernwood and Wormwood have been boiled*, or with *Clauder's Spiritus universalis*, or *Tinctura Myrrhæ*, or *Spiritus Vini Camphoratus*; anoint with *Oil of Turpentine*, and fill up the Scarification with Dossils dipt in *Oils of Cloves and Turpentine* made hot, or with *red Precipitate*, over which apply *Ung. Basilicon* very hot: Or dress up the Wound with Dossils dipt into a Solution of *Unguentum Ægyptiacum in Spirit of Wine*, to which add some of the said *Præcipitate*: and over all lay a Cataplasm made of *Crums of white Bread, Honey, Yolks of Eggs, Pouder of Wormwood Tops, or Orobus Meal, and a little Saffron, all made into a consistency with Brandy*: *which being boiled*, apply very hot over all.

XXVII. The usual Fomentation is a *Lixivium of Pot Ashes, or Salt of Tartar in which the Tops of Wormwood, Southernwood, Centory, Carduus, Scordium, Gentian, and Aloes have been boiled*: Or *Aqua Calcis in which Mercurius Sublimatus corosivus, or Lapis Medicamentosus have been dissolved, adding also to the same a little Spirit of Wine*: Or *a strong Camphorated Spirit of Wine, in which Oil of Turpentine has been dissolved.* A Cataplasm also may be made of *Crums of white Bread, Orobus Meal, Pouder of Aloes, and Mithridate, boiled either in Camphorated Spirit of Wine, or in a Lixivium of Pot Ashes, with an addition of Oxymel*, &c.

XXVIII. An Observation. Wounds cured by the first Intention, need not be dress't with Digestives, Absterfives, Incarnatives, or Cicatrizers, for one only Medicament generally does the Work; and many times at

once dressing. Of which kind are, 1. Balsamick Bodies, 2. Such as resist Putrefaction as Tobacco Leaves, 3. Stypticks: And these are purely called by the Name of Vulneraries. Simple Vulneraries are natural Balsams, as of Scio, Strasburgh and Venice Turpentine, and common Turpentine refined, Frankincense, Gum Elemi, Balm of Gilead, Balm of the Cedar Tree, Manna of Frankincense, or the Snow white exsudation out of the Pine Tree, *Balsams Capivii, of Chili, of Peru and Tolu*: and of these simple Vulneraries, Compound Balsams are made at Pleasure.

XXIX. *Franciscus Arceus* says, that with his Balsam or Liniment, forthwith applyed in the beginning, he himself had most happily cured the most grievous Wounds: And *Sennertus* says, that he had likewise very often experienc'd it with very happy Success. Balsamum vel Linimentum Arcei. *Take Sheeps Suet 2 ounces; Hog's Lard, one ounce: Gum Elemi strained, Scio Turpentine, Balsam of Peru, of each two ounces and an half: melt them over a gentle Fire, and make a Balsam.* This is an excellent Balsam. *Take Sheeps Suet 3 ounces; Oil of Hypericon 3 ounces; Gum Elemi, Scio Turpentine, Balsam of Peru, of each 2 ounces and half: mix and over a gentle Fire make a Balsam.*

XXX. This is admirable. *Take of the red Oil of Hypericon, two pounds and half: Juice of Tobacco a pound and half: Juice of Angelica a pound: Boil to the consumption of the watery humidity; then add Gum Elemi, Chio Turpentine, of each 9 ounces, Balsam, Capivii, 7 ounces: Balsams of Peru and Tolu, of each 6 ounces: Frankincense 4 ounces: Mix, melt, and make a Balsam. Balsam de Chili* alone cures simple green Wounds, yea tho' of the Nerves, at the first intention, and commonly at one dressing, if well dreſt up: So also *our Panacea Balsamina*, than which there is scarcely another so excellent a Balsam in the World.

CHAP. XVIII. *Of Wounds Complicate.*

This whole Chapter is added by the Commentator
W. SALMON.

I. IN the former Chapter we have treated of *Simple Wounds*; in this we come to consider *Wounds Complicate*, which are with *Contusion*, or *loss of Substance*, made by Club, Bill, Pole-Ax, Hooks, Sword, *&c.* some cutting twice or thrice in one place, or near one to another, some by bruising, others by cutting off, *&c.* whereby the Wound is bruised, or torn, made large, oblique, or transverse, or all of them at the same time, and the Lips contracted or separated various ways, by which the Cure is made much more difficult.

II. As to the Cure of these Wounds, you are in the first place to cleanse them, from all sorts of heterogene or extraneous Matter accompanying them; then if the Wound is not of too large a size, labour to bring the Lips thereof together, which retain so by the Incarnative Suture, making

making so many Stitches as are requisite: But if you think this Suture not strong enough, you must make use of the Conservative, (commonly used in a Hare-Lip) by passing the Needles thro' the Lips of the Wound, with little Plates of Lead to secure them from tearing.

III. If the Wound is deep, you must leave a declining Orifice for the discharge of the Matter, and if it has lain long undress'd, or was not stitcht at first dressing, whereby the Lips are so contracted, that they will not be brought together, foment them with some warm *Lenient Decoction, as of a Sheep's Head and Pluck, or of Mallow and Althea Leaves and Roots, Linseed*, &c. or *with new Milk made hot over the Embers*; then endeavour to bring them together, and dress them as Wounds so stitcht.

IV. And when you leave a declining Orifice, keep it open by a small Tent, dipt into some digestive Ointment, which is to be continued till the Wound is digested, after which the Tent is to be removed, and then it is to be healed up with proper Vulneraries.

V. But great Wounds which cannot be brought together by Suture, or which are accompanied with torn and lacerated, or contused Flesh; or where there is a loss of Substance, are first of all to be digested with Maturitives; and after that with Absterfives to be cleansed, that by Sarcoticks, or Incarnatives, they may be filled up with Flesh, and so disposed to a perfect Healing.

VI. One of the most usual and easiest Digestives is this. *Take Strasburgh Turpentine one ounce: Yolks of Eggs No 2: Mix them well together.* Or this. *Take Strasburgh Turpentine 2 ounces: Honey 1 ounce: Yolks of Eggs No 2: Mix them well together.* Or this *Take Turpentine 2 ounces, Unguentum Basilicon an ounce and an half: Honey 2 ounces: Yolks of Eggs No 4: Mix them.* Or this. *Take Turpentine 4 ounces: Honey 2 ounces: Yolks of Eggs No 4: Oyl of Hypericon, Basilicon, of each an ounce and half: Mix them.* Or this. *Take Turpentine 3 ounces: Barly Flower one ounce: Frankincense half an ounce: Yolk of one Egg: Mix them.* To this after a Day or two may be added *Mel Rosarum, an ounce and half.*

VII. But, says *Sennertus*, in this case where the Cure is performed by the second Intention, That in regard digestive Medicaments are more moist than others, they are to be used with great Caution: For if they be over long applyed, the Matter will not only be digested, but also putrify, and the Wound will degenerate into a sordid Ulcer. Wherefore (says he) the safest way is, not always to confide in one Medicament alone, but rather to compound them, according to the Nature and Temper of the Part, and to mingle Digestives with Sarcoticks: Since that Experience testifies, that such are used with far better Success, than meer Maturatives alone.

VIII. Wounds cured by the second Intention require more orders of Medicaments (than Simple Wounds cured by the first Intention:) without which the Work cannot be performed: If there is a *Contusion*, there must be Digestives, or Maturatives: if *loss of Substance*, Sarcoticks or Incarnatives, and if *loss of Skin*, Epuloticks or Cicatrizers.

IX. But whilst the Wound is thus digesting, the Humors are to be diverted from the Wound internally by Universals, as proper Cathartick, Diuretick, Clysters, *&c.* and externally by Refrigeratives, with good Compress and Bandage, to press and hold the Lips of the Wound together, that it may sooner be cured.

X. After the Wound is digested by Maturatives; you must come to the use of *Abstersives*, as that of *Paracelsus* described in *Cap.* 16. *Sect.* 40. aforegoing of this Book. Or that of *Quercetan*, which is also a good Sarcotick. *Take Parsly and Angelica Leaves, of each a handful: Red Roses* 3 *Pugils: Red Wine* 8 *ounces: Boil to the Consumption of half the Wine: Strain out, and dissolve therein, Honey clarified* 2 *ounces: Turpentine, Balsam of Peru of each one ounce: Meal of Orobus, and Pouder of Tobacco, of each an ounce: Aloes, Scammony and Myrrh, of each a dram: Boil again, and add Bees Wax, enough to bring it to the form of an Ointment.*

XI. If Worms or Maggots be found (as they often are in these large Wounds) you may first wash the Wound with this Decoction. *Take Coloquintida, Wormwood, Tobacco, Centory, Dittany, of each a handful; Aloes* 2 *ounces: Opium half an ounce; Water or Wine* 2 *quarts: Boil till a Pint is consumed, and add to the Liquor, of clear Bullocks, or Sheeps Gall well settled* 4 *ounces: Mix them, for a Lotion*, with which wash the *Vermiculous Wound*, after which, strew on this Pouder. *Take Tobacco in fine Pouder, fine Aloes in Pouder, of each an ounce; Myrrh, Scammony, of each in fine Pouder* 3 *drams; Colocynthis in fine Pouder, Flowers of Sulphur, of each* 6 *drams; white Precipitate, or Princes Pouder* 2 *drams; Euphorbium* 1 *dram in fine Pouder; fine Verdigrise half a dram: Mix them.*

XII. In these larger Wounds it will be necessary also to use or apply sometimes warm stuphs wrung out of red Wine, in which red Roses, Balaustians, Pomgranate Peels, and Catechu have been infused; and then to proceed after Absterstives in the same method of Cure as before mentioned.

XIII. And as to the time of their dressing, it ought not to be till the third Day (if you have drest it up well) by which time the contused, lacerated or torn Matter or Flesh, will be something digested; and from that time every other Day, till the Digestion is compleated, may, be sufficient. *Galen* speaking of the dressing of Ulcers, says, that he drest them but every third Day, tho' the Matter flowed very much, and but every 4th Day in the Winter. 'Tis certain that too often dressing is hurtful; unless there be occasion or reason for the opening the Wound sooner than he has proposed, as for strengthning the Bandage, or preserving the Stitches, by affixing the dry Suture; or in case of extream Pain, or a vehement flux of Matter or Humors, which may cause the Lips to open again, *&c.*

XIV. If the Wound (made by Fall or Blow, *&c.*) be with great Contusion, you must take care that the bruised Flesh may be digested by Maturatives, so as to be converted into Matter; for which purpose some of the former Digestives (at Sect. VI.) may be used: or in place of them, *Unguentum Basilicon* applyed

ed warm upon Lint, or mixt with *Oleum Lumbricorum*, *Lini*, or such like; anointing the Parts about with Oils of Roses and Myrtles mixed with Whites of Eggs; or with which you may make a Restrictive, adding thereto Catechu, fine Dragon's-blood, which may be applied over all.

XV. But if the Wound has been of some Days continuance, before it was dresst; then foment it with warm Milk, or warm discussive Decoctions; and embrocate the contused Parts with Oils of Camomil, Elder, Rue, *&c.* mixed with a little Oil of Turpentine; and continue the use of Digestives, as aforesaid, till the Maturation is compleated. After the Separation of the contused Flesh, the loss of Substance must be restor'd by *Sarcoticks*: Then the Flesh being restor'd, you must Cicatrize with *Epuloticks*, as *Unguentum desiccativum Rubrum*, *Aq. Calcis*, *white Vitriol or Alum Waters*, &c. and dry with fine Pouder of *Catechu* or with Lint.

XVI. If the Wound is deep, and the Orifice narrow, yet capable of enlarging, it ought to be laid open in proportion to its Depth, that the Matter may not be retained, or the Wound made more hollow: But if the *Sinus* is of any great length, and so depending that the Matter cannot be discharged by the Wound; then you must make a Perforation in the lower part (by Knife, or Caustick, or both; first the Caustick, then the Knife) for a discharge thereof. Or a Seton Needle with a twisted and waxed Silk must be thrust thro' the bottom of the *Sinus*, as is sometimes used in *Sinous Ulcers*.

XVII. Consider well the Condition of the Wound: If it penetrates very deep, and is not capable of being laid open by reason of the thickness of the Flesh; search with the Probe to the bottom, and feel how far it is distant from the Skin. If it lies not far off, nor under any considerable Vessel, then pass in a Director, and cut it open, which done, keep that lower part open, and suffer the upper part to agglutinate. But if you think not fit to open it, yet mark the Place, that if there is a necessity of doing it afterwards you may the better know where to make the Apertion; which being effected, dress this new Orifice with a proportionable short Tent, armed with some of the Digestives (at *Sect.* VI. aforegoing) and embrocate the Parts about, with Oils of Roses and Myrtils mixed with Wine and Vinegar, over which apply Emplastrum Bolo, ex Lithargyro, Diapalmæ, or the like, and proceed in the rest of the Cure, as before directed.

XVIII. If the Wound is not only very large, but has also a great Number of Complications with it, as Contusion, Laceration of the Flesh in some Parts, with loss of it in others, or there be withal a Fracture of the Bones, or it be fill'd with Hair, Splinters, Thorns, Bullets, clotted Blood, *&c.* then encompass the disjoyned Parts, putting them into their right Order and Places, which keep so by Ligature, Suture, or other like convenient Means; then stop the Flux of Blood, (if any be) with the following Pouder, making a Pledgit of Tow, dipt in the White of an Egg well bea-

ten, and strewed over with the Pouder, which lay on the Wound, and then rowl it up. The Pouder is thus made.

XIX. Pulvis Astringens. *Take Aloes, fine Bole, Sanguis Draconis, Frankincense, Myrrh, Ana, one ounce, Old Hat burnt half an ounce, pouder the former five things very small, then mix the Ashes of the Hat, and keep it for use.*

XX. Another. *Take of Aloes, fine Bole, Catechu, Balaustians;* Sanguis Draconis, *each one ounce, Rosin two ounces; make all into a fine Pouder, then add the Ashes of an old Hat half an ounce; mix,* and keep it for use.

XXI. If the Bone be bare or shatter'd, apply not any unctuous or greasy Thing near it, but wash it with Spirit of Wine, and Syrup of the Juices (mentioned in our *Doron Med lib. 2. cap. 16. sect. 4*) very hot, either by Injection or Tents, until Digestion: In the Spirit you may dissolve a little Myrrh and Storax.

XXII. Afterwards use *Balsamum Catholicon* and *Linimentum Arcei*, or our *Balsamum Amicum*, or *Balsamum Polychrestum*, keeping upon it *Emplastrum de Meliloto*, unless it be on a depending Place, where Humours are apt to descend.

XXIII. If the Wound be in the Head, with Fracture of the Skull, next the Skull lay a Pledget of fine Lint, then another dipt in *Linimentum Arcei*, hot; over that another dry Pledget (that the Skull may close before the Wound) and over all these *Emplastrum de Meliloto, ffos Unguentorum*, or *Stibicum Paracelsi*.

XXIV. If it be Gun-shot, and in a fleshy Place, at the second Dressing dip Tents in *Oleo Catullorum & Hyperici ana: mix*, or in this: *Take of Oyl Olive two ounces; Oyl of Amber one dram: mix them*, and apply; But if it be a Nervous Part, or the Bone be splintred; mix *Spirit of Wine, and Syrupus Succorum, ana*, and use it warm till perfect Digestion; (the which also you may do in Wounds of the Head) then use the *Balsam Arcei & Basilicon* mixed, to cleanse, applying them very warm; or rather our *Balsamum Amicum*, or *Balsam Polycrestum*, mixed with a little *Balsam de Chili*.

XXV. Make not your Tents either too long, or too thick, lest the Part be pained, and you stop the Sanies from coming forth. When you pull the Tent forth, if there be bloody Matter at the end, shorten the Tent, till the Wound is filled up, applying over the *Emplaster Diacalciteos*.

XXVI. In stiching a Wound, set not the Stitches too thick; but setting the Stitching Quill to one side, with the Needle filled with Oily Silk, pierce the Skin on both sides the Wound, not taking too much hold, (because of the Pain) nor too little; (lest it break out before Consolidation) then tie the Silk (drawing the Lips pretty close) with a slipping Knot, and cut off the ends; then an Inch from that, make such another Stitch, continuing till all is joined.

XXVII. In dressing the Wound, have all your Implements in a readiness: Let your Instruments, Plaisters, Balsams, Unguents, Tents, Pledgets, Bolsters, Rowlers, and Probe, armed in the Eye with fine Lint, (to cleanse the Wound from its Sanies) be orderly laid on a fair Dish: Warm the Unguents or Balsams in the Uvula Spoon, and

and dip therein the Tents, all ſave the Head.

XXVIII. If the Wound be dreſſed with Pledgets, fill it up, one Pledget upon another, till it is even with the Member; then lay on the Plaiſter, then a a Boulſter of fine Cloth, thrice doubled, and then rowl it up, which you need not open nor dreſs, but once in twenty four Hours, except new Symptoms require it.

XXIX. In Wounds of the Head, ſhave away the Hair, and take away what may offend: If the Skull is depreſſed, raiſe it gently with the *Levatory*; this is the old Method. Yet Experience has demonſtrated, that a derpreſſed Skull, has by the help of good Applications, and the Aſſiſtance of Nature, raiſed its ſelf of its own accord, without any help of an Inſtrument, which when it may be, is much the better and eaſier way; for that by the Inſtrument, puts the Patient to a vaſt deal of Pain, and many times endangers a Fever, which without that Operation, might otherwiſe rarely happen.

XXX. Therefore, if you find it cannot be done eaſily, (with the *Levatory*) let it alone two or three Days, and ſee whether it will riſe; if not, or that Nature has not raiſed it, then try again; next ſtop the Flux of Blood, and rowl it up for two Days, giving (if the Body be Coſtive) this Clyſter in the Afternoon: *Take of Milk boiled with Aniſeeds one pound*; *Honey two ounces*; *Butter one ounce*; *Species Catharticæ two drams*; *Salt one dram*; *Mix them*, and let him eat thin Broth, and drink ordinary Beer.

XXXI. But if there is a Contuſion, without a Wound, cauſing a Tumour, then dilate it, (that the contus'd Blood may come forth) without delay; and in Fractures of the Skull, be ſure to take out all Splinters of Bones, that may lie upon the Membranes, which cover the Brains.

XXXII. And at every Dreſſing, with a little Spunge, take out the Blood or Matter, which may at any time fall upon them; keeping Coals near the Wound all the time of dreſſing, if in Winter-time; giving the Sick, if they be Weak or Feveriſh, at times, Drops ten or fifteen of *Elixir Proprietatis* in our *Aqua Bezoartica*; or inſtead thereof, twenty Drops of the Tinctures of *Coral*, or of *Antimony Compound*, in a Spoonful or two of Sack.

XXXIII. In Burnings and Scaldings, you muſt take out the Fire, by anointing with *Linſeed Oil*, and applying Stuffs moiſtned therein, or *Mel Saponis Balſamum Saturni*, *Oleum Anodyna*, *Unguentum Rubrum*, *vel Populeon*, or other things of like nature, and then healing it as an ordinary Ulcer.

XXXIV. Wounds made by the Bitings of venomous Beaſts, ought firſt to be waſhed and cleanſed with Oxymel, Vinegar, Salt, or Brine, mixt with a little Honey, applying over a ſtrong drawing Emplaſter, mixed with our *Treacle* or *Antidote*, and then to be healed up as other Ulcers; giving in the mean Seaſon *Bezoar Mineral, one ſcruple, or twenty five grains in* Tinctura Diaphoretica Paracelſi, *or three grains of our* Volatile Laudanum, *given with two ſpoonfuls of our* Aqua Bezoartica, making the

sick to sweat well upon it, and often afterwards giving this: *Take of our* Aqua Bezoartica *one ounce*, Guttæ Vitæ nostr *twenty six drops*, Tinctura Coralliorum Composita *thirty drops*: *Mix them.* To be repeated once every Night going to Bed, for seven Days time.

XXXV. If a Wound made by a Knife, Sword, or like Instrument, be healed up, and the Part afterwards swell, tumifie, and grow red, you may conclude the Wound was healed up too soon; you must then dilate or open it again, take out the extravasated Blood or corrupted Matter, and then heal it again as a common Ulcer.

XXXVI. Some natural Balsams are not safely applied to all Wounds at all times, but only to simple Wounds, where there are no Symptoms, as Pain, Fluxion, Putrefaction, *&c.* because it is in the nature of natural Balsam to contract and hasten Consolidation; whereas in fleshy Parts cleansing must be expected, as also in contused Wounds, Digestion, Suppuration, and Cleansing.

XXXVII. In Wounds that are superficiary, strait, and that breed little *Pus*, Tents are not necessary, nor ought the Cure of the Wound to be retarded by putting them in: But if the Wound be deep, oblique, and if much *Pus* be bred, they are altogether necessary, that a Passage may be kept open by them for the *Pus*; and a way made for Medicine to the inside of the Wound, that the Orifice may not close up, before the inward and lowest part of it is healed.

XXXVIII. Tents, tho' useful and necessary, yet are sometimes less necessary in Green Wounds, yea hurtful: The History of *Tulpius, lib.* 4. *Obs.* 22. is remarkable. A young Woman being hurt with six Wounds, by pricking rather than cutting, was according to Custom Tented; but they proved uneasie to her, so that at Night it was necessary to take them out, unless you would have wholly kept her from Sleeping, into which she fell, as soon as they were taken out; and Linnen Cloths dipt in the Spirit of Wine were only applied outwardly; by benefit whereof before the twelfth Day, her Wounds were both happily fill'd up with Flesh, and firmly covered with Skin.

XXXIX. From this Observation *Tulpius* admires at the Folly and Madness of some Men, who that they may not be thought to do nothing, fill Green Wounds up with Tents, thereby hindring them from healing, for that the mutual Contact being prevented, they hinder the Coalition: But I make also another Reflexion, which is upon the mighty healing Power and Virtue of Spirit of Wine, of which I have already spoken in my *Ars Chirurgica*, not long since Printed.

XL. Purging in wounded Persons (especially if they be of gross Bodies) is necessary, no Fever being present; as also where thin, hot, and Bilious Humours abound; for they growing hot with Pain and Watching, they fit the Blood for Motion and Fermentation, and so give rise to a Fever. These Humours ought be purged off, and it should be done at the beginning before a Fluxion of Humours, and the coming of the Fever; Manna,

Manna, Syrup of Roſes, Sena, *Sal Mirabile*, *&c.* are proper in this caſe, not hot Cathartick. But if a Fever is already come, Purging muſt be forborn for you cannot give a Purge without Danger.

XLI. Stitching muſt not be uſed before the Wound be well cleanſed within, that no concreted Blood may be left behind, which may turn to *Pus.* (as *Celſus* has well obſerved, *lib. 5. cap. 26*) for that may cauſe Inflammation, and hinder the healing of the Wound.

XLII. For making a Cicatrize, dry Pouders are uſed without any preceding Humidity, they ſticking well enough to the Parts, for that the Parts that are not covered with Skin, are ever moiſt, and that Moiſture retains the Pouder, which is ſtrewed on, well enough.

XLIII. Such Pouders which are properly Epuloticks, are made of things that adſtringe, cloſe, and condenſate the Fleſh, and harden and dry it like a Callus, ſuch are the Bark of the Frankincenſe-tree, Balauſtins, Pomegranate-peels, Galls, burnt Oiſter-ſhells, Calcin'd Coral, Myrrh, Litharge, Liphriges, Paper burnt, Burnt Alum, Vitriol. and other things which waſte and eat the Fleſh, being made into impalpable Pouders, thinly and gently laid on, with the end of a Probe. Alſo Burnt Braſs, Verdigriſe, *&c* if uſed to cauſe a Cicatrice muſt be well waſht, to abate their ſharp and cauſtick Faculty, but they are uſed in dry Bodies, and Parts not very ſenſible.

XLIV. Our *Laudanum Volatile* or *Guttæ Vitæ*, given (in a proper Doſe) in painful Wounds reſtores Nature, by giving reſpit, and cauſing gentle Reſt, ſtrengthens her in her Faculties, accelerates her Operations of Digeſtion, Suppuration, Deterſion, Incarnating, *&c.* but to ſome Stomachs and in ſome Conſtitutions our *Laud. Specificum* will be found more tranſcendent; and where the Pain lies more intenſe, our *Impetus Martis* given in a due Doſe and proper Vehicle, is to be preferr'd before all other Remedies; and upon Extremity may be given Morning and Night, every Day, till eaſe is procured.

CHAP. XIX. *Of eaſing Pain in any Part.*

This whole Chapter is added by the Commentator
W. SALMON.

I. AN *Ach*, or *Pain*, which is called in Greek Ἄχθ, ἀχὴ πόνθ vel τοινὴ (whence probably came our Engliſh Words:) alſo λύπη, ἄλγθ, and Ὀδύνη; and in Latin *Pœna*, *dolor*, *tormina*, is an uneaſineſs of any Part: And is by no Phyſician accounted *Morbus*, Sickneſs; but *Symptoma*. an effect of ſome kind of Sickneſs or Diſeaſe, affecting grievouſly the ſenſe of Feeling.

II. It is either inward in the *Viſcera* and internal Parts of the Body; or outward, in the Muſculous Parts of the Fleſh, or in the

the Nerves, Tendons, Skin, Joints and Limbs. Now according to the Places of the Body it affects, the Causes from which it arises, the Nature and Quality of it, as it is recent or inveterate, so Remedies are to be prescrib'd, which may effectually remove it, and take it away.

I. *Of Pains Internal.*

III. If it be from sharp Humours in the Stomach, or from Surfeiting, or Drunkenness; you ought immediately to exhibit a Vomiting Dose, as the *Emeticum Commune*, or the *Tartar Emeticum Mynsichti*, which latter may be given from two to four or six Grains, *&c.* according to Age and other Accidents; repeating the same Vomit again on the third Day following; after which this absorbent Pouder may be given a Dram at a time, Morning and Evening, for fourteen or twenty Days together, in pretty thick Watergruel. *Take Terra Sigillata, four ounces; Coral levigated, Pearl levigated, Chalk, of each an ounce and half: all being in fine Pouder mix them.*

IV. *If the Pain is caused by Wind pent up in the Stomach or Bowels, which tears them*, first open the Body by a *Tobacco Clyster*, or for want of that with a *Turpentine Clyster* made thus. *Take Turpentine* half an Ounce; Yolk of one Egg: mix them *perfectly together in a small white Ware Bason, then add Posset Drink, or Mutton Broth a Pint, something more than blood-warm; mix them, and exhibit it*; presently after give *Spiritus Carminativus, Cosmeticus, Potestates Anisi, or Potestates Juniperi*, mixt with a proportional Quantity of *Spiritus Anticolicus*, in a Glass of Canary, or *Angelica Water*. This being done in the Morning, near Night give this Clyster. *Take Milk, or Posset-drink a Pint; Honey two ounces; Salt half a dram; Powers of Caraways two drams: mix them, and give it warm*, and at Night about Bed-time, give this Mixture. *Take Guttæ Vitæ forty or fifty drops; Spiritus Anticolicus thirty drops; Powers of Caraways a dram; Simple Angelica Water six ounces: Mix them for a Dose.*

V. *If with the Pain there be a fainting*, then in the Morning give this. *Take Powers of Angelica, of Cloves, of each half a dram; Spiritus Aperiens fifty drops: mix them*, and give it in simple *Angelica Water* mixt with as much Canary: And at Night, you may exhibit a Dose of *our Tinctura Anodyna, or Volatile Laudanum, or Elixir Opiatum, or Tinctura Opii Sulphurata, in Aqua Papaveris mixt with Wine*: And if it be a little Child or Infant, you may instead of the *Laudanum* give *Diascordium Fracastorei, or Sylvii*, in Lettice Water mixt with Wine, or in some other Cordial Water.

VI. *If it is from any Tumour, or Obstruction of the Spleen, caused by compacted Humours, Wind, Vapours*, &c. first open the Body with one of the former Clysters, then Purge with our *Family Pills*, or with our *Elixir Proprietatis*, after which exhibit this following Mixture. *Take Tinctura Martis Nitrata half an ounce; of our Guttæ Vitæ, one ounce: Mix them:* Dose 60. 80. or 90. Drops every Night at Bed-time in a Glass of Canary. The next Morning exhibit this. *Take Powers of Aniseeds, Caraways and Junipers, Spiritus Anticolicus, of each an ounce: Mix them.* Dose 60 Drops in Angelica Water.

VII. *If*

VII. *If it be from Sand, Gravel, or Tartarous Mucilage lodged in the Reins and Ureters,* things gently Diuretick mixed with Anodyns are to be given: As, *Take Powers of Juniper, two drams, Guttæ Vitæ fifty drops; Spiritus Aperiens forty drops: Mix them;* which give at once, in *Parsly Water.* Or this, *Take Winter Cherries in Pouder, Pulvis Aristos, or in place thereof, of our Specifick Laudanum three grains; Melaginous Extract of Juniper Berries enough to make the former things either into a Bolus, or Pills for one Dose.* Or this, *Take Powers of Fennel Seed, and of Juniper, of each a dram; Spiritus Anticolicus, Guttæ Vitæ; of each forty or fifty drops: Mix for one Dose* to be often renewed; *Impetus Martis* may also be given from thirty to sixty Drops in a Glass of White Port Wine mixed with *Parsly, or Hydropiper Water.*

VIII. *If it be from Obstructions, Convulsions, or other Distempers of the Womb.* The Body ought to be several times purged with our *Elixir Proprietatis Pestilentiale,* or with our *Laudanum Catharticum;* at the time of the Hysterick Paroxysm, Convulsion, or vehement Pain of the Part, this following Dose ought to be given. *Take Tinctura Hysterica twenty or twenty five drops; of our Guttæ Vitæ gut. ten or twelve: Mix them,* and exhibit the Dose in a Glass of fair Water; but by way of Prevention, let the Patient take every Morning this Dose. *Take Powers of Amber two drams; Spiritus cornu Cervi, forty drops; Tinctura Opii, gut.* 12; *Mix them,* and exhibit in a Glass of *White Lisbon,* mixt with an equal Quantity of fair Water; and every Night at Bed-time give this. *Take of our Impetus Martis from thirty to sixty drops; Tinctura Hysterica from* twenty to thirty Drops; mix them for a Dose, to be given in Canary mixed with an equal Quantity of *simple Angelica or Bawm Water.*

IX. *If it is from a Scorbutick Rheumatism affecting the Lungs, and other of the lower Viscera.* First evacuate the Stomach with *Emeticum Commune,* or some other proper Vomit; then Purge the Bowels first with *Purging Spirit of Scurvy-grass* four or five times; afterwards exhibit two or three Doses of *our Impetus Aureus,* mixed with a small Quantity of *Aqueous Extract of Aloes.* to make it up into three or four Pills; which done after five or six Days, give our *Laudanum Catharticum* every Day, or every other Day, for ten or twelve times, which Course being absolved, let the Patient continue to take our *Impetus Martis from thirty drops to sixty, seventy or more,* every Night going to Bed, in a Glass of Canary, with a Continuation of the same, so long till Health is recovered: These kinds of Pains are very Stubborn and Rebellious, admit of no easy Cure, nor that but in a long time, and therefore we have prescrib'd this long Course.

X. *If a Belly-ach comes from drinking hard or sower Beer, Cider, Wine,* &c. *or eating of unripe sower Fruits, or other like inimical Things:* Then let the Body be presently purged with the *Potio communis purgativa,* either of the Authors, or of our Prescription, and at Night exhibit a pacifick Dose such as this. *Take Diacodium, Poppy Water, of each an ounce; Powers of Aniseeds and Juniper Berries, of each a dram; Powers of Cloves half a dram;*

mix

mix them, and exhibit in a Glass of Sack Whey, or *Simple Angelica Water*. The next Day, if Occasion be, repeat the Purge again, and at Night, at Bedtime give forty Drops of our *Impetus Martis* in a Glass of choice Canary. If the Pain is vehement, give upon the Spot, a Spoonful of our *Spiritus Cosmeticus*, in a Glass of Sack, and let the Patient repose upon it; and the next Day purge with the *Potio Gommunis*, as before directed; for it is necessary that the Bowels should be freed from that sharp and acrimonious Matter.

II. *Of Pains external.*

XI. Let them be in what Part of the Body they will, if they be not vehement, they are eased with Anodynes chiefly, as *Oils of Lillies, Earth-worms, Roses, Unguentum Martiatum; a Cataplasm made of Crums of Bread, with Milk and Saffron boiled together, adding Mithridate, Diacodium, and a little Camphir.* To these you may add, *Ung. Nicotianæ, Powers of Rosemary, Oranges, Limons, Lavender, Juniper, Amber, Spiritus Cosmeticus, Balsam de Chili*, any of them mixt with an eighth Part of *Tinctura Opii*, also, *Ointment and Balsam of Amber, and Spirit of Wine in a Fomentation.*

XII. *If the Pain is nocturnal upon the Shin Bones, or proceeds from a Venereal Rheumatism, or Pocky Tophs, Nodes, or Gums*, &c It is alleviated by giving inwardly our *Pilulæ Mirabiles*, after which you may exhibit *Impetus Mineralis* five or six Doses at due Intervals of time; if these things do not wholly prevail, give every Night for three Weeks or a Months time together, a Dose of *Pilulæ Angelicæ*, and every Morning fasting, thirty Drops of *Impetus Martis*, in a Glass of choice Canary; and over the Place pained apply an Emplaster of *Diapalma mixed with a quarter Part or almost a half part of Artificial Cinnabar, and made soft or plyable with Oil of Poppies-Seed by Expression*; or you may Morning and Night bathe the affected Parts with *Oil of Aniseeds*, or rather *Powers of Angelica*, and immediately apply over it *Empl. de Ranis* with a fourfold Porportion of Mercury.

XIII. If the Pains in the extream Parts be vehement, apply Narcoticks and cooling Oils and Ointments, as *Unguentum Populeon, Oil of Poppy-Seeds*, and those cooling Oils and Ointments, mixt with a soft or *Honey like Extract of Opium*, and other Mixtures made up with the same Extract. Bathe also with our *Guttæ Vitæ, Spiritus, vel Tinctura Anodyna, Elixir Opiatum*, or our *Volatile Laudanum*, dissolved in *Spiritus Cosmeticus*, which is of great Force, giving inwardly at the same time, three, four, or six Grains of our *new London Treacle* in any convenient Vehicle, every Night going to Bed, or two or three Grains of our *Volatile* or *Specifick Laudanum.*

XIV. If it comes from Heat and Driness, then the Part is red and burning; and therefore ought to be allayed with cooling Oils, as *Oil of Poppy Seed* by Expression, insolated or decocted *Oils of Henbane, Hemlock, or Housleek, Unguentum Populeon*: Or this, *Take Hog's Lard, expressed Oil of Poppy-Seed, of each two ounces; Saccharum Saturni one ounce, (mixed with a little Vinegar)*

Vinegar) *Camphir half an ounce: Mix them and anoint therewith.*

XV. But if it comes from cold and drineſs, where the Fleſh is cold, and blackiſh, or blew, you muſt then uſe things hot and moiſt; as this. *Take Oyl of Elder, or of Camomil 2 ounces; Oyl of Aniſeeds one dram, Camphir half a dram: Mix them. Baſilicon mixt with Oyl of Aniſeeds* is of good uſe, ſo alſo *Linimentum Arcei, mixt with an eighth part of Oyl of Turpentine.* Or, *Oyntment of Amber* thus made. *Take Hog's-Lard, Oyl of Ben, of each 2 ounces; Oyl of Amber half an ounce, in which Camphir half an ounce is diſſolved: Mix them,* and anoint therewith. To theſe things you may add, *Balſamum Amicum noſtrum, Balſamum Polychreſtum, Balſam. de Chili,* &c. mixt with Oyl of Ben.

XVI. If it comes from ſolution of Unity, either by flux of hot and moiſt Humors which ſtretch; or of ſharp Humors which fret; *Emeticks and Cathartick*s are required, according to the place and ſeat of the Pain. For a Vomit I commend *Emeticum Commune*, or *Tartar Emetick*, or in extream Caſes, *Mercurius Vitæ*, given from 1 to 3 Grains, theſe things recall the Humors from the moſt remote parts: and this following Purge drives them downwards. *Take Alexandrian Sena an ounce; clarified Whey a Pint and half: Spaniſh juice of Liquorice, an ounce; Salt of Tartar half an ounce: Mix, and make an Infuſion cloſe covered in 3 Hours for four Doſes.*

XVII. If Nerves or Tendons are prickt, or wounded, or hurt, whereby vehement Pains are excited, ſometimes even to cauſe Convulſions, you muſt anoint with *Oyl of Aniſeeds and of Turpentine*, or bathe with *Powers of Amber, of Turpentine, of Lavender, of Angelica, or of Savin*; and over the Wound you muſt lay a Pledget dipt in our *Panacea Balſamina*, or *Balſam of Peru*, or a mixture of equal Parts of *Peru and Tolu*; or in *Balſam de Chili*; or in this mixture. *Take Chio Turpentine 2 ounces; Balſam of Tolu one ounce: Balſam of Peru half an ounce; Oils of Juniper Berries, and of Angelica, of each 2 drams: Mix them.* It is a precious Balſam, and cures ſimple Wounds at once dreſſing.

XVIII. If it comes from bruiſings, or over-ſtraining of the Joints, Nerves, Tendons, Ligaments, *&c.* and the Pains be acute; you muſt apply *Anodyns*, mixt with ſomething Spirituous, of the nature of Spirit of Wine, and in which ſome *Camphir* muſt be diſſolved, to prevent a Gangrene or Mortification, and if the Pains be yet inſuperable, you muſt mix with your Spirituous Fomentation, ſome Preparations of *Opium*, as *Spiritus Anodynus, Guttæ Vitæ, our new London Treacle, extract of Opium*, &c. to quiet the diſturbed *Archæus*.

XIX. If the Pain is excited from Pimples breaking out, or a fiery and ſharp Eruption in the Skin, almoſt like a Tettar, with Tumor or Swelling in the Part, and rawneſs withal; it is requiſite to bathe the Part every Day, two, or three times a Day, with warm Water, as hot as it can be well born, and that for half an Hour, or more at a time; for the Water being an Alcaly, and of a ſoftening nature, by its warmth and humidity opens the Pores of the Skin, and parts about, draws forth the hot, ſharp and acrimonious Juices, abſorbs the acidity, and ſo on the ſpot almoſt

most, gives ease to the Part, which being often repeated, wholly draws forth the acrid and malign Humor, and so disposes the Sore to a speedy healing. After bathing, anoint with *Oil of Hypericon*, and apply over all *Empl. Diapalmæ mixt with artificial Cinnabar*, as before directed: If the disaffection is near any principal Nerve or Tendon, after bathing, anoint with this, *Take Oil of Hypericon one ounce; Balsam of Peru 6 drams, Chymical Oil of Savin, one dram: Mix them*, after which, apply the Emplaster before named.

XX. If it is a Megrim, or an universal Pain of the whole Head with Delirium, Frenzy, or Madness; then let the Head be shaved close with a Raisor, and bathed with warm Water for almost half an Hour; after which, the Head being wiped dry, anoint it Morning and Evening with this following mixture. *Take Oil of Hypericon 2 ounces, Balsam of Peru one ounce, Honey like Extract of Opium 6 drams; mix them*, and anoint all over the Parts pained, rubbing it very well in, over which apply a Leather spread with the same; and every Night going to Bed give the Patient a Dose of *our Cathartick Laudanum*: taking care in the mean Season that the Belly be soluble; and if it be not, that it may be made so with this following Clyster, to be repeated as oft as need requires. *Take Mutton Broth a Pint, Infusion of Crocus Metallorum 3 ounces, Honey 2 ounces: Mix them, and exhibit it warm.*

CHAP. XX. *Of Contusions, or Bruises.*

I. BLeed in the Arm of the side which is most affected, and let ten ounces of Blood be taken away. 2. The next Morning exhibit the *Potio communis purgativa*; and thence forward in like manner repeat Bleeding and Purging by turns, till the Sick recovers. 3. In the mean season, if the inward Parts are hurt, let him use the following Medicines during the whole course of the Cure. *Take Pectoral Decoction a Pint; Syrups of Violets and of Maiden Hair, of each two ounces: Mix them*, of which give half a Pint thrice a Day. 4. Give also frequently a Spoonful of Oil of sweet Almonds newly drawn. 5. Anoint with this. *Take Oil of sweet Almonds, Oyntment of Althea, and Pomatum, of each an ounce: Mix them*, with this anoint the place bruised Morning and Night, lay over it a Cabbage Leaf.

SALMON's Comment.

II. *A Contusion or Bruise is* call'd in Greek Ἔκχυμωμα, ἢ ἐκχύμωσις; in Latin, *Contusio*, or *Effusio*, which is a *pouring forth of Blood, Lympha, and Serum into the next adjacent spaces out of the Arteries, Veins and Lymphaducts, thro' an inward Rupture or Bursting of some of these Vessels, by some external Violence or Force, the Skin remaining whole*: And this is either, 1. *Ecchymoma* (which is the general Name) when the Contusion is of a middle colour between Red and Black, *viz.* livid, or of a leaden Colour, which is a kind of Blueness, 2 *Melasma*, which is Blackness; and this is most familiar

miliar unto elder Perſons, when their Veins, *&c.* are bruiſed or broken, and the fleſhy Subſtance much hurt.

III. *It is twofold*, 1. *Of the Internal Parts either of the Thorax, or of the Abdomen*; wherein there is felt Internal Pain, ſoreneſs, and in proceſs of time, an inward ſtraitneſs, as if thoſe Parts were bound with Cords, with ſhortneſs of Breath, difficulty of breathing, a breathing with Pain, and ſometimes a ſpitting or vomiting, or piſſing of Blood. 2. *Of the External Parts*, in which the Muſcular Subſtance of the Fleſh is broken, or lacerated, with a hurt of the Veſſels of the Part aforeſaid, the Skin being whole and diſcoloured, by the ſhedding of the Juices abroad, which is with Tumor if the Contuſion is great; but without, if it is ſlight, or ſmall, the Capillary Veſſels being only broken.

IV. *The Prognoſticks.* A Contuſion is either more or leſs dangerous, according as the place in which it is, is more or leſs Noble, and according as it is greater or leſſer; or as it may tend to Putrifaction, or admit of Diſcuſſion: If the matter will diſcuſs, it is without danger: If it Diſcuſſes not, but Coagulates, and is long detained in the Part, an Apoſtem will ſucceed: But if it neither Diſcuſſes nor yet comes to Suppuration (where the Contuſion is great) but becomes diſtended, hard, painful, and inflamed, a *Gangrene* is at hand, or a *Sphacelation* may be induced, which ſometimes may coſt the Patient his Life.

V. *The Cure.* A ſimple and ſmall Contuſion is generally cured by *Repercuſſives or Diſcuſſives*, they being applyed whilſt it is Recent. In this caſe a Cloth 3 or 4 fold double, being dipt into Juice of Houſleek, and applyed is of good uſe: So alſo dipt into Frog-ſpawn Water, or Wine Vinegar, or the Juice of Fumitory or Plantane, or into a Smith's Forge Water, or for want of theſe into cold Well-water; theſe things have done admirably, having been immediately applyed; for by reaſon of the reſtriction and coldneſs of the Application, the flux of Humors to the part have been hindred, and the Blood and Humors flowing from the Breaches of the Capillary Veſſels have been forthwith coagulated, whereby their evaſation being hindred, no Tumor has ſucceeded, but a preſent Cure of the bruiſed part; and the extravaſated matter has in a ſhort time after vaniſhed through the Pores of the Skin, having been afterwards for ſome few times fomented with warm Water. A Cataplaſm of Houſleek, Purſlane, Fumitory, or Plantane Leaves has cured many.

VI. But where, (for want of an immediate or timely Application) Repercuſſives have been in a manner uſeleſs, there Diſcuſſives take place; theſe cauſe an Evacuation of the extravaſated Humor by inſenſible Tranſpiration; and theſe alſo are to be applyed in due time, *viz.* while the Matter is thin and fluxil, and the Skin thin and porous, otherwiſe they are applyed in vain. Now becauſe all Diſcuſſives are hot in quality, they are not to be applyed in the beginning of the Contuſion, but only Repercuſſives as aforeſaid: But afterwards the Matter which is already evaſated, is by theſe to be attenuated, and by their mode-

rate

rate heat to be resolved and converted into Vapors; now these Medicaments are of two Sorts, *viz.* 1. *Internals*, which are called *Diaphoreticks*, which provoke sweating, and so help forwards the Operation of the Topical. 2. *Externals* which we call *Discussives*, which by their sweat and specifick Virtue, attenuate and thin the contained Matter, convert it into Vapors, and cause a Perspiration of it through the Pores of the Skin.

VII. *The Internals or Diaphoreticks* chiefly used for this purpose are Volatile Sal Armoniack, of Hartshorn, of Urine, and of Blood, Tinctura Diaphoretica Paracelsi, Mixtura Simplex; Mithridate, Venice Treacle, Diascordium, Spirit Saffron; Our Tinctura Anodyna and Guttæ Vitæ; to which you may add Our New London Treacle, Volatile Laudanum, Specifick Laudanum, all the Philonium's, with most other Opiates not mixt with Catharticks.

VIII. The Internals for this use are of two Sorts, *viz.* 1. The Gentle, or Mild, which are to be made use of when the Contusion lies not deep, and happens in a Part which is soft and pliant; and these are chiefly Cammomil, Melilot and Elder flowers; Althæa and White Lilly Roots, Orobus, Lupine, and Bean Flower, Goose Grease, Oils of Cammomil and Dill, Leavened Bread, *&c.*

IX. 2. The stronger, which are to be used, when the Matter lies more deep, and where the Parts in which the Contusion is, are more hard and close: And these are chiefly Angelica, Bawm, Dill, Fennel, Fetherfew, Hyssop, Lavender, Mint, Origanum, Pennyroyal, Rue, Southern wood, Sage: Anise, Caraways, Cumin, and Fennel-seeds: Orice and Elecampane Roots: Gums of Ammoniacum, Galbanum, Opopanax, Sagapenum and Tacamahacca: Hens and Ducks Grease: Oils of Nard and Rue: Ointments of Arragon and Martiatum; Empl. Oxycroceum, Resolutivum Forresti, or de Ammoniaco, de Galbano Crocatum Mynsichti; Cataplasma de Fermento, Pigeons Dung, Hens Dung; Mithridate and Venice Treacle, *&c.* Of these Oils, Ointments, Balsams, Cataplasms, Emplasters, *&c.* may be made answerable to the Intention; but of this you are to be cautioned; that you use them with discretion, lest they should discuss and resolve the thinner Parts leaving the thicker behind, making the Tumor become hard, and difficult of Cure.

X. But this may be prevented, if in compounding them, you make a Mixture of the Gentle and Mild Discussives, with the stronger; Or if with such things as forcibly discuss, you likewise mix such things as moisten and mollifie, of which kind is Palm Oil, which is purely sweet and of an excellent Golden Colour.

XI. But when you find that the Contusion will not be cured by Repercussives, nor yet by Discussives; but that, by the greatness and vehemency thereof it will Apostemate, and tend to Suppuration, then you must endeavour to compleat the Work by applying Digestives or Maturatives, such as Roots of Althæa, White Lillies, Onions, Garlick all roasted or baked; Figs, Raisins, Dates, Currants; Ducks, Geese and Hens Grease; Basilicon, Greater and Lesser; Mithri-

Mithridate, Venice Treacle, Diascordium; Gum Elemi, Opopanax, Sagapenum, Tacamahacca; Turpentine, Balm of Gilead; Balsams of Chili, Capivi, Peru and Tolu, *&c.* Out of all or some of which Cataplasms, Ointments, Balsams, *&c.* may be made at pleasure; *The Apostem* being ripe, if it breaks not of it self, it is to be opened by Incision, and then cured after the manner of other Apostems, of which we have no more to say in this place.

XII. Our Author's Advice is to bleed and repeat bleeding; now I cannot for my Life see the reason thereof; for since the Principles of our Art are all of them built upon Reason, we ought not to act in any single thing, without the force of Reason with us. Now in *External Contusions*, I pray, to what end does letting Blood Answer? It cannot intravasate, nor yet take away the extravasated Blood and Juices; for they either Discuss and Perspire thro' the Skin; or Apostemate, and so come to Suppuration. In both these Cases Externals are chiefly of use; and only such Internals as provoke sweating, and open the Pores; but Bleeding can answer to none of these Ends.

XIII. And in *Internal Contusions*, it does as little for the same Reason; for in those Cases we chiefly give Turpentines, Balsams, Rosins, Opiates, Treacles, Mithridate, Vulnerary Decoctions, and such like Things, which are apt to mix with the Blood, and pass thro' it with the Serum; by which means the Balsamick Particles of the Medicines thus taken, are conveyed to the Parts bruised, which in this Case, do either discuss, or suppurate; and then the suppurated Matter is cast off, or discharged, by the same ways, and in the same manner as the Purulency of a Pleurisie.

XIV. As to Purging, Lenitives are only proper, and such as have a Diuretick Property with them, as *Electuarium Lenitivum*, *Diacassia*, *Syrup of Roses solutive*, &c. but these things are not to be given at first, but after *Opiates*, *Balsamicks* and *Traumaticks*, have been first exhibited; I say *Opiates*, because (whether the Contusion is in the Internal Parts, or in the External) they immediately thicken the Blood and all the Juices, and so by that means stop the Flux of the Humours to the contused Parts, besides their giving a present ease in the Pain, and so preventing Convulsions, Asthma's, Phthisis, Consumptions, Fevers, *&c.* Then Balsamicks are to be used for some time, as the White Potion made either with Turpentine or Balsam Capivii; or Pills made with Chio Turpentine, or Balsam of Peru, or Pills made with Balsam of Tolu. Balsam of Chili may be daily Morning and Night given to 30 Drops in any convenient Vehicle; Balsam of Peru may be given in like manner Morning and Night from one Dram to two Drams; and Lucatella's Balsam has been approved of, to such as have not been able to go to the charge of the other. But above them all we commend our *Panacea Balsamina*, which is a transcendent Remedy in all these disaffections, and may be given to a Dram or two, twice a Day, as we have advised in the others.

XV. Whilst these Balsamicks are in use, Trammatick Decoctions may be drank by the Patient in the Day-time, because by their fluidity, and subtilty of Parts, and entering in like manner into the Substance of the Blood and Juices, and circulating with the Blood thro' the contused Parts, they dispose the same to a speedy healing: These vulnerary Potions may be made use of more especially when you perceive great store of Matter to be from Day to Day generated, either from evil Diet, or super-abounding of vitious Humours in the whole Body, or something amiss in the contused Part; and they may be continued for many Days together, until you see the Matter wholly consumed. Leaves and Roots of Agrimony, Angelica, Avens, Bugle, Burnet, Birthwort, Cinkfoil, Fluellen, Harts-tongue, Herb Trinity, Hypericon, Ladies Mantle, Mouse-ear, Plantane, Perwinkle, Ribwort, Sanicle, Scabious, Scordium, Sage, Selfheal, Solomon's Seal, Speedwel, Tansy, Wild Tansy, Vervain, Yarrow, *&c.* may be made into Decoctions or vulnerary Drinks by boiling in Water, or Water mixt with Wine, according to Art. But a great number of Examples of this kind you may find in our *Pharm. Londinensis*, *lib.* 4. *cap.* 14. *sect.* 5. 8. 11. 26. 28. 30. and in our *Doron Medicum*, *lib.* 2. *cap.* 12. *sect.* 7. and *cap.* 14. *sect.* 4. as also in our *Ars Chyrurgica*, *lib.* 4. *cap* 3. *sect.* 28. *ad* 42. to which for brevity sake I refer you.

XVI In the Interim, or after the use of the former Things, as the Physician shall see most fit, such like Purges as we have before specified, may be good and useful, to carry away the remaining Matter, or other Recrements of the Body, and which Nature may have sent into other Bowels, and they may be continued or repeated so long, or often as need shall require.

XVII. As to the Balsamicks, they may be either swallowed as Balsam in a Bolus; or their Bodies may be opened with a little of the Yolk of an Egg, and so mixt with Milk, or Milk-Water, or Barly-Broth, or with Wine, and so taken in a Draught.

XVIII. If the Skin is externally bruised or hurt withal, first lay on the White of an Egg, beaten with Oil of Roses or Sallet Oil, which will ease the Pain. And then the Pain being somewhat moderated, you may comfort the Part by fomenting it with Red Port Wine: After which you may apply a Cataplasm made of Bean-flower and Oxymel, or Bean-flower and Yellow Palm Oil and Vinegar. But if the Nerves or Tendons be hurt so that the Pain is Vehement, nothing is better than to anoint the bruised Parts with *Balsam de Chili*, or *Balsam de Peru*, or *Panacea Balsamina* applying over the same Lint dipt therein, renewing it twice a Day; Or a Cataplasm made of Bean-flower with Tar, or Balsam de Chili, or Peru and Oxymel, boiling them to a due Consistence, and laying it on as hot as it can be endured.

XIX. If the Ligaments are bruised, you must apply such things as dry, discuss, heal and strengthen: Such are Oils of Angelica, Mastick, Juniper-berries, Limons, Oranges, Penny-

royal, Rosemary, Savin, Turpentine, with which you are to anoint the Parts; over which you may apply this following Cerate. Take Oils of Angelica, Mastick, and Amber, of each an Ounce: Oil of Mace by Expression two Ounces; Opopanax, Tachamahacca, Frankincense, Balsam of Tolu, of each an Ounce; Bees Wax a sufficient Quantity; melt, mix, and make a soft Cerate.

CHAP. XXI. *Of Pricking a Nerve or Tendon.*

I. A certain watery Humour, or thin Gleets does continually flow out of the Orifice of the Vessel which is cut. *Take White Lilly-roots, which boil in Cows Milk, and after bruise in a Mortar, four ounces; Linseed Meal, and Oatmeal, of each three ounces; mix and boil all to the thickness of a Cataplasm in the same Milk, in which the Roots were boiled.* Then apply it to the Part affected Morning and Night.

SALMON's Comment.

II. This many times happens in letting of Blood, as well as by other Accidents, and is known by the sudden and vehement Pain attending it, as also by a Defluxion of Humours, Gleeting, Fainting, and Convulsions; *Galen Artis Medicæ, cap.* 92, says, That the pricking of a Nerve or Tendon (by Reason of the Exquisiteness of their Sense, and because they are continued from the Brain,) is very apt to excite a Convulsion of the Nerves; but then more especially, when nothing breaths forth outwardly, the Wound of the Skin being shut up or closed.

III. This kind of Wound does not terminate presently in Suppuration, but Gleets as our Author says, and therefore we say, will not yield to a simple Anodyne Cataplasm, made of White Bread and Milk, *&c.* but will be attended with a throbbing Pain, Inflammation, Fever, and Convulsions as aforesaid, which Symptoms do never happen where the Nerve is wholly and transversly cut asunder; because then the Nerve or Tendon, no longer continues its Commerce with the Brain, nor can it draw the same into a Consent with it, whence no vehement Pain or Convulsion can be excited; and from hence it is manifest, that a Puncture is the most dangerous of all the Wounds of the Nerves or Tendons; and it is so much the more dangerous, by how much the Body it happens to is impure or ill disposed, *viz.* Cacochymical, Cachectical, Strumatick or Scorbutick.

IV. If a Nerve or Tendon be any way prick'd or hurt, the best way will be immediately to bathe the same with Powers of Amber, of Lavender, of Limons, of Oranges, or of Turpentine; or with the Oil of Turpentine it self, and to apply Pledgets dipt in some of those enumerated things thereupon; renewing the Application every Hour, or two, or three, or four Hours, if the Pain be very great.

V. But nothing seems to me to be more powerful than the Balsam de Chili, with which you may anoint, and lay Lint dipt in the same over the

Wound; or otherwise our *Panacea Balsamina*, which is a Transcendent Remedy, beyond most other things in the World, having anointed the Wound therewith, apply a Pledgit dipt in the same over it; either of these you may renew Morning and Evening, and in about 2 or 3 Days time the Wound will be well.

VI. Or for want of the former things, you may anoint with Oil of Peter, or with Oils of Amber or Turpentine, laying over the Wound this Mixture. *Take Balsam of Peru and Tolu, of each half an ounce*; *Balsam Capivii two drams*; *Chio Turpentine, Oils of Juniper, Anniseeds and Lavender, of each one dram*; *Oils of Amber and Turpentine, of each half a dram*; mix them, spread it upon a Pledgit, and apply it, dressing it twice a Day.

VII. But in this Cure you ought always to take care that the Wound it self does not close, but be kept open enough, which if the Flesh which lies upon the Nerves or Tendon hinders, or the Orifice be not wide enough, it must yet be made wider, by incision of the Skin at right Angles, and of the Flesh, according to the Ductus of the Fibres of the Muscle, that so the Recrements of the Wound, or Matter already made, may not lodge therein, to the Detriment of the Part, but freely pass forth for the greater Ease and more speedy Cure.

VIII. If the Sick is disordered through Pain, or falls into a Fever, you must abate it with our Syrupus Antifebriticus, or Pulvis Antifebriticus, or Spiritus Aperiens, given in due Dosses, and in proper Vehicles; the Body also is to be purged from Vitious Humours, with some Lenitive Cathartick, as Diacatholicon, Electuarium Lenitivum, Diacassia with Manna, or with Pulvis Cornachini; or with our Family Pills, one or two, small Pills being given every Night going to Bed; or rather (because of their cooling Property, and immediate and intimate mixing with the Mass of Blood) which our *Sal Panaretum*, or *Sal Mirabile*, to be repeated as oft as need shall require.

IX. When the Puncture is bare either by the Wound or made so, you need not apply Medicines so very hot, dry, and piercing, as when it is obscure or hid; and in this case Linimentum Arcæi, or some common Artificial Balsam, or some Natural Balsam as of Capivii, Chili, Peru, Tolu, or Chio Turpentine, which being dropt on warm, may serve the turn; for by their Unctuosity they smooth the Part, and ease the Pain; and by keeping the Orifice of the Wound open, discharge it of its Sanies.

X. *Wiseman* says, That the Applications ought to be hot, dry, and of subtil Parts, that it may consume the Ichorous Water which affects the Parts hurt, and causes Putrefaction; for which purpose you may use *Chymical Oils of Savin and Turpentine, mixt in equal Quantities*; Or you may dress with Balsam of Sulphur, or with Oils of Costus, of Rue, of Savin, of Dill or of Scorpions; these are all proper Medicines to dress with; but says *Wiseman*, he used Oil of Roses with a little Salt dissolved in it, and dropt into the Part scalding hot, upon which he applied a Pledgit spread with Basilicon, and dipt in the same Oil, embrocated

cated the Part with Oil of Earthworms, and put over all *Emplastrum e Bolo* as a Defensative

XI. Medicaments of thin and volatile Parts, which may easily be dissipated, as Oils of Turpentine, or Spike, Lavender, Limons, Oranges, Savin, *&c.* may be mixed and embodied with Balsamicks of a thicker Substance, as with Gum Elemi, Chio Turpentine, Capivii, Tacamahacca, Propolis, Balsams of Tolu and Peru dissolved in Oil of Hypericon, or Oil of Ben.

XII. *Galen* also with a great deal of Pains commends this following Emplaster. *Take Wax an ounce and half, Turpentine and Pitch, of each six drams, Euphorbium a dram, mix and make a Cerate.* Now here is to be observed, That if the *Euphorbium* is new, it ought to be mixed with a treble Quantity of Wax; as, *Take Oil Olive an ounce and half; Wax three drams, Eupkorbium one dram; melt, mix, and make a Liniment.* But if the *Euphorbium* is old, it is to be mixed in a greater Proportion, thus: Take *Oil Olive an ounce and half; Wax three drams, Euphorbium from a dram and half to three drams (according to its Age, which is much to be minded) mix and make a Liniment.*

XIII. Lastly, if the Puncture yields not to a Cure by any of the former Means, the Nerve or Tendon is then to be divided, or cut in sunder, to prevent worse Accidents, as Faintings, Swoonings, Convulsions, Gangrene, *&c.* after which, the Cure is to be performed as in other Wounds.

CHAP. XXII. *Of Burnings and Scaldings.*

I. FOment the burnt Part with Clouts dipt into Spirit of Wine, till the Pain is eased: Then dip the Clout again, and apply it to the Part grieved; which Work repeat three or four times in a Day.

SALMON's Comment.

II. This kind of Wound is called in Greek Πυρίκαυσις, in Latin *Ambustio*; and in English, Burning, when it is done with naked Fire, or a red hot Iron, *&c.* and Φλυκταινώδης, in Latin *Pusulatus, vel Pustulatus*, in English, Scalding, when with Water, Oil, Pitch, Tar, *&c.* Now whether the Burning is by naked Fire, red hot Iron, Gunpowder, boiling Water, Oil, Pitch, or any other way, the Cure is much the same, and only differs according to the Magnitude thereof, as it may be inconsiderable, lesser or greater.

III. If the Burning is very light, so as that there is only Heat and Pain, if Remedies be timely apply'd, they prevent Blistering, and so there is no further Mischief: In this case *Salt* or *Ale* or *Beer Yest*, are the first things which are apply'd, as being readiest at hand: And they indeed do the Business, for they presently take out the Fire, and ease the Pain, preventing Blistering. Or the Place burnt may be held near the Fire, or Flame of a Candle, and as it were burnt again, for so the Fire is taken out; then it may be fomented with *Lye*, or *Pot-Ashes*, or washt with a *Lixivium*

of Calcin'd Tartar; and so it may be bound up with Salt ground small, or with *Salt beaten with a raw Onion, or heads of Leeks.*

IV. If the Burning is yet greater, so that the Cuticula or Scarf Skin is scorched, or a Blister is presently raised, you may then apply the former *Cataplasm of Salt and Onions or Garlick*; or *a Cataplasm made of Yest, Salt, and Leven*; or *of Salt and Tobacco*, for these things have great Power to draw out the Fire presently.

V. If the Burning is with Gunpowder, you ought first to pick out the Pouder, for otherwise the blew Marks thereof, whether in the Face, Neck, Breast, Arms or Hands will remain after the healing, and be a great Offence or Deformity: Also if there be a Blister, it ought to be cut, (not taken off) and the Water let out; then to draw out the Fire, this Cataplasm may be apply'd. *Take soft Soap, Lard, of each 2 ounces, Onions cut and bruised, Yest, of each an ounce and half, Turpentine half an ounce, Salt two drams: Mix, and make a Cataplasm.*

VI. If the Skin is burnt, leaving it black, and void of Sense, an Eschar will be be made; or if the Burn is yet deeper in the Flesh, the force of the Fire will make a hard Crust, with a Contraction: In all these the Pain is excessive, and when the Eschar or Crust shall be removed, a deep Ulcer will be left.

VII. The Cure of these kinds of Burnings is two-fold, *viz.* either with Refrigeratives, or with Calefactives. If with Refrigeratives, you are to bathe or anoint the Parts with them till the Fire is taken out, and the Heat removed, after which the Eschar is to be separated, the Ulcer digested, cleansed and then cicatriz'd. The chief Refrigeratives are distilled Waters of Ducks Meat, Henbane, Hemlock, Housleek, Lettice, Plantane, Purslane, Nightshade, Thorn-Apple-Leaves, as also Water distilled from Whites of Eggs, Frog-spawn, Cucumbers, Melons, Pompions, Emulsions of the four greater cold Seeds, Butter-milk, as also the Frog-spawn itself: To these things add all the cooling Juices, Oils and Ointments, as Linseed Oil, Unguentum Album, Nutritium, Populeum Rosatum, Oil and Ointment of Adders-Tongue, Cerusse, White Lead, Saccharum Saturni, *&c.* and all these things must be used warm, till the Fire is taken out, or the Heat and Pain ceases; for otherwise they will rather encrease the Smart and Burning.

VIII. This is an excellent thing. *Take fresh Butter six ounces; new white Hen's Dung three ounces, Plantane, Housleek, Sage cut small, of each 2 handfuls, Henbane one handful, fry them together for a quarter of an hour or more, till the aqueous Humidity is consumed, then press out the Ointment for use.* Anoint the Burn often therewith, and lay over it a fresh Colewort or Plantane-leafe, or a fine, soft, double Linnen Cloth or Rag dipt in the same. *Oil of Roses and Whites of Eggs beat together*, are also of good use to embrocate the Parts about, or adjacent to the Burning, in order to prevent a Fluxion of Humors.

IX. If the Cure is to be done by Calefactives, or hot Medicaments, then it is done by attraction, and so the Fire is drawn out, or taken away by Fire, or by holding a red Fire hot Iron,

or

or the like, to the Part. The common Remedy is to apply Salt and Onions beaten together: But this ſome will not allow of, if the Bliſters be riſen: This is certain, that it cannot be admitted, where the Part is raw; and if the Burning is in tender Parts, you muſt abſtain, not only from Salt and Onions, but alſo from Garlick, Soap, and other like ſharp Medicaments, and that Eſchars may not be left, the uſe of ſtrong drying Medicines muſt be forborn.

X. Where there is an Eſchar or Cruſt, you may apply Mel Saponis; or Mel cum ſucco Ceparum & Pulv. Iridiis mixt together, fomenting the Parts about with a Decoction of Henbane, Night-ſhade, and Fleawort Seeds, mixt with a third part of Butter-milk. You muſt alſo haſten the Fall or Removal of the Cruſt or Eſchar by application of Emollients for the firſt or ſecond Day; but if it ſeparates not, Inciſion muſt be made in the ſound Fleſh: And when the Eſchar, *&c.* is ſeparated, the Sore muſt be cured, as other common Ulcers.

XI. When the Eſchar or Cruſt is thrown off, you may digeſt with the Yolk of an Egg mixt with a little Turpentine, adding a little Barly-flower and Oil of ſweet Almonds or rather Oil of Ben, then apply Abſterſives for cleanſing of the Ulcer, after which Incarnatives (if need be) and Deſiccatives are to be uſed with Epuloticks to the end of the Cure.

XII. In large Burnings, and where many Parts are hurt, variety of Intentions of Cure are required at one and the ſame time. Some Parts require Anodyns, ſome Emollients, others Digeſtives, ſome Incarnatives, and others again Deſiccatives, *&c.* ſome of the Parts require to be dreſt twice a Day, ſome but once, each part, according to the nature thereof, and the Quality of the Burning.

XIII. You ought alſo to take care that no proud Fleſh grow up in theſe Ulcers, leſt the Cicatrize thereby be deformed: In the Face great care is to be had, as alſo in the Neck and Breaſts of Womenkind: You muſt alſo be very careful of the Eyes, that they be not beſmeared with greaſy and ill-temper'd Applications; and that their Lids be not dreſt with ſuch as are over-drying, leſt they ſhould be contracted, and ſo cauſe a Bleareдneſs. Pigeons and Goats Blood, Breaſt Milk, alſo Cows Milk, and diſtilled Waters of Lettice, Night-ſhade, Orpine, Plantane and Purſlane are good, more-eſpecially if a little Spirit of Wine be added to the ſame.

CHAP. XXIII. *Of Ulcers in the Reins and Bladder.*

1. IN Ulcers of the Bladder ſtinking Matter is avoided, or Blood, and ſometimes Scales, or Membranous Skins, and as it were ſcurfy Cruſts like Bran. There is alſo a conſtant Difficulty in making Water, and continual Pain in thoſe Parts. 2. But when the Reins are Ulcerated, Pieces of Fleſh (which ſometimes are very large) come forth with the Urine: There is alſo Difficulty

culty in making Water, and the Pain returns by Fits, there being some Intervals of Ease: The Matter also which is pissed from the Reins is more plentiful, white, thin, and not stinking: The Urine voided is like Milk; but when it has stood long, the Matter separates, and falls to the bottom. 3. *Take of Emplastrum Flos Unguentorum dictum, a dram and half, which form into nine Pills*; of which let the Sick take at the Physical Hours, (*viz.* about 7 or 8 in the Morning, and 4 or 5 in the Afternoon,) drinking six Spoonfuls of the following distilled Water after them. *Take Roots of Comfrey, of Fennel, of Birthwort, and of Avens, of each 3 ounces, Leaves of Agrimony, Bugle, Hypericon, Plantane and Sanicle, of each 6 handfuls: Cut them small, and distil them with White-wine and Milk, of each two quarts; from which draw off two quarts only for use.* 4. *Take Pouder of Comfrey Roots and of Gum Arabick, of each one ounce, Sugar Penides 2 ounces: Make a Pouder*, of which let the Sick take a Spoonful twice a Day.

SALMON's Comment.

II. *An Ulcer of the Reins*, is called in Greek, Ἕλκος τῶν νεφρῶν; and in Latin, *Ulcus Renum*. *An Ulcer of the Bladder*, is called in Greek also, Ἕλκος τῆς κυστεως; and in Latin, *Ulcus Vesicæ*: they are known one from another by the Place where the Pain is felt, and by the Matter or Substance flowing from them, for there is ways a voiding of Matter with the Urine, which lasting long, shews that there is an Ulcer either in the Reins or Bladder; if it be in the first, the Pain is more in the Loins, and it is by Fits, and the Matter is better Concocted, white, and not stinking, is more in Quantity, more mixed with the Urine, voided like Milk, and settles to the bottom only by long standing. If it be in the Bladder, the Matter which comes forth is but little, and not much mixed with the Urine, not so well concocted, but crude, stinking, and of several Colours, for the Part not being fleshy, and without Blood, and not having much Heat, cannot concoct sufficiently: If pure Matter is at any time voided without Urine, it is from the Neck of the Bladder, and then there is a continual Difficulty of making Water, and Pain in the Part, which is not so in an Ulcer of the Reins, but only by Fits, as aforesaid. If the Ulcer of the Bladder is inveterate, or old and callous, a kind of snotty Flegm, or Matter flows from it.

III. *The Causes of Ulcers in these Parts* may be either from sharp Stones lodged in them, which may prick, hurt, bruise, or wound and ulcerate them; or from taking of Cantharides, or otherlike sharp Medicines, or from a Flux of acrid and sharp Humours to the Part; or from an Apostem bleeding there being occasioned from some Blow, Fall, Overstraining, &c. which coming to Suppuration, becomes an Ulcer, yielding corrupted Matter.

IV. *The Prognosticks.* All Ulcers in these Parts are dangerous, at least of very difficult Cure, because of the constant Flux of Humours to them; for tho' the serous Humour has a kind of abstersive Quality with it, yet being mixed with other heterogene Juices, it acts not according to its

its own Nature; for if salt, acid, and sharp or acrimonious Humours be mixt with it, they will continue, and nourish or increase the Ulcer, not hinder it. A recent Ulcer in these Parts, if skilfully and prudently managed, is curable; but if ill handled, may be made incurable: But when they become inveterate, or happen to elderly Persons, they are seldom or never cured, for the Pain and other Symptoms which accompany them, cause Watchings, Anxiety, wasting of the Flesh, and a Consumption of the whole Body, and then terminate in Death. If they proceed from the Stone, they are utterly impossible to be cured, unless the Stone be first removed and taken away.

V. *The Cure.* In the first Place Revulsion is commended: Both *Avicenna* and *Ætius* commend Vomiting, because it cleanses, empties, and draws back the Humour; and *Ætius* says, That by taking strong Vomits, Ulcers of the Reins, or any other Evil arising from them, may happily be cured: You may with good Success, give *Emeticum Commune*, or *Tartar Emeticum Mynsichti*, or some other Antimonial Vomit, because Antimony has a Specifick Virtue to cure Diseases of the Reins. *Riverius* tells us, That some give Oil and warm Water an Hour before Meat, and that with this only Medicine often repeated, this Disease has been cured; but *Rondeletius* gives it after eating, because then Vomiting is more easie.

VI. This being done, or whilst doing, in the Intervals gentle Purging is also necessary to derive or divert the Humour another way, and carry off part of the morbifick Matter by Stool. This is chiefly to be done by our *Sal Panaretum*, or *Sal Mirabile*, which besides their purging Properties, have a cooling Quality withal, as they who have tried them in Wounds and Ulcers, even of long standing have experimentally proved. If other Purges be made use off, they ought to be Lenitives, such as *Electuarium Lenitivum*, *Diacassia with Manna*, *Syrup of Roses solutive*, *Diacatholicon*, &c.

VII. The next thing in order of Cure, is a Traumatick or Vulnerary Diet, which in this Case is indeed very good; this Diet ought always to be made with the Addition of Spirit of Wine, for according to *Valeriolus*, (tho' it does not much, being used simple or by it self, yet) being mixt in due Proportion, with other things, it has admirable Effects, and makes the Medicine to do five times more than it would otherwise do without it. *A strong Decoction of the Roots, Stalks, and Leaves of Angelica, and Parsly*, is a Specifick in this Case; but nothing exceeds the *Decoctum Ulmi*, which has done Wonders in these Ulcers; the Preparation thereof you may see in the 2d or 3d Edition of *Our Pharmacopœia Bateana*, *Lib.* 2. *Cap.* 5. *Sect.* 29. or you may make it more specifick for this purpose, after this manner. *Take the inner Bark of the Elm-tree new gathered, nine ounces; inner Bark of the Oak new gathered, choice Jesuits Bark well bruised, of each three ounces; Fountain Water a Gallon; boil till one half is wasted; and to the strained Decoction add Syrup of Mulberries eight ounces; Spirit of Wine, from a quarter of a pint, to*

half

half a pint (according to the Season of the Year) Mix and keep it for use.

VIII. This following Decoction or Juice is also commended for cleansing, and cooling, and easing Pain. *Take Althæa Roots an ounce; Wild Clary-seeds half an ounce; Leaves of Agrimony, Angelica, Maiden-hair, Mallows, Plantane, of each one handful; Seed of Mallows and Flea-wort bruised, of each half an ounce; Poppy-heads, with their Seeds in them, bruised, three ounces; Winter-cherries bruised, Liquorice scraped, of each an ounce and half; boil all in a sufficient quantity of Water, till it comes to three pints, being strained; add to it Honey, Spirit of Wine, of each four ounces; Sugarcandy two ounces, dissolve and make a Julep;* Dose half a Pint every Morning, for ten or twelve Days.

IX. If the Humour is very Acrimonious, it ought to be absorbed by the Exhibition of *Alcalies*, before any healing can be expected, or before any healing Balsamicks can be given. And this is best done with *fixt Alcalies*, of which the *Testaceous* claim the first Place; and among them, those things which have a Specifick Virtue in Diseases of the Reins and Bladder, of which *Crabs Eyes* are found to be chief. *Take of Crabs-Eyes levigated one ounce; Honey a sufficient Quantity; mix and make an Electuary for 6 or 7 Doses.* Or thus: *Take Crabs-Eyes levigated two ounces; Cortex Peruvianus, Catechu, both in very fine Powder, of each three ounces; Clarified Honey a sufficient Quantity, mix and make an Electuary.* Dose as much as a Chestnut, three times a Day, *viz.* Morning, Noon and Night, drinking after it a little of the *Decoctum Ulmi.*

X. But if the Pain is vehement or extream, and with all continual, or makes often returns, you must give *Opiates* (without which the Cure can never be well accomplished) because they thicken the Humours Universally through the whole Body, and so by that means prevent in a great measure the Fluxion upon the Parts affected. For this purpose we commend *Our Volatile and Specifick Laudanum*, and sometimes for change, *Our Cathartick Laudanum; Our Guttæ Vitæ*, and *Helmonts Liquid Laudanum*, our *Tinctura Anodyna*, also *Diacodium*, or *Syrup of Poppies*, and *Troches of Alkenkengi* made for this purpose with Pouder of *Opium* in them: To which add *Emulsions of the four greater cold Seeds with Poppy-seeds added to them*, which may be sweetned with a little Syrup of Poppies: And these *Opiates* ought to be given through the whole Course of the Cure.

XI. Now we come to the use of *Balsamicks*, which are the Traumatick or healing Medicaments, without which the Cure cannot be easily or compleatly absolved. This following White Potion given for many Days, is a famous thing. *Take Chio Turpentine half an ounce; two Yolks of new laid Eggs, mix them well or perfectly together by rubbing them in a White Ware Bason, till they seem to become one Substance. Then add thereto Milk Water, (or rather Milk if the Stomach of the Patient likes Milk better) two quarts; double refined Sugar six ounces, made into a Syrup, with Poppy Water; mix them well for use.* Dose half a Pint at Nine in the Morning, and as much at Five in the Afternoon, to be continued daily; so long

as

as the Physician shall see fitting.

XII. If the aforegoing Potion agrees not with the Stomach or Body of the Sick, the following Pills may be given. *Take Chio Turpentine an ounce; Mercurius Dulcis levigated, three drams; mix and make all up into a Mass of Pills, with Pouder of Liquorice, for* 14 *Doses*; to be given every Morning fasting: Or this, *Take Chio Turpentine, Balsam de Tolu, of each half an ounce; Balsam de Peru, one ounce; mix them in a gentle Balneo; and with Crabs-Eyes levigated, prepared Coral, and fine Pouder of Liquorice, make a Mass (not too hard) for Pills*; of which you may give a Dram at a time, Morning and Night, so long as the Mass lasts: Or thus, *Take Balsam of Peru, two ounces; Chio Turpentine half an ounce; melt and mix them in a gentle Balneo; then add Catechu in fine Pouder an ounce; Cochinele in fine Pouder half an ounce; Opium in fine Pouder half a scruple; mix and make an Electuary for ten Doses*; to be taken in ten Days at Night going to Bed: drinking after it a Glass of new Milk, if the Stomach will bear it.

XIII. Milk is an incomparable thing to be drank, instead of Ale, Beer, Cyder or Wine, thro' the whole Course of the Cure, if the Stomach will bear it without curdling in it. Such as cannot drink Milk, may drink Whey instead thereof; or in place of that, Milk Water. *Garcias ab Horto*, says, That in *Goa*, they give *Aloes dissolved in Milk*, for Ulcers in the Reins and Bladder, and to such as piss Matter, and it cures presently. And *new Milk given with a dram of fine Bole* every Morning, was the Secret of *Helidæus*, for that it cleanses and heals the Ulcer.

XIV. It is now time that we come to the last Remedies, and which are to be used when all the former will do no good, and these are Preparations out of the Mineral Kingdom. *Mercurius dulcis a scruple, mixed with Chio Turpentine half a dram*, is an excellent thing, and has cured some to admiration. But *Riverius* says, that *Mercurius Diaphoreticus*, if well made, and as it were fixed, is better, for that it cures all internal Ulcers miraculously; you may use it thus: *Take Diaphoretick Mercury an ounce; Chio Turpentine, Balsam of Peru, of each equal quantities, so much as may make the Mercury up into a soft Electuary*, which will serve for 15 or 16 Doses; to be taken Morning and Night at Bed-time. *Paracelsus* his *Præcipitatus cum aqua Ovorum*, may be given from 4 to 8 Grains, made up into a Bolus with *Chio Turpentine and Balsam of Peru*; it facilitates the cure of Ulcers in the Neck of the Bladder, even of such as are accounted uncurable: But it ought also to be injected into the Bladder with a proper Vehicle, by help of a Catheter; for a common Ulcer Syring will not do it.

XV. It is in vain to think of curing Ulcers in the Reins or Bladder, or Neck of the Bladder, without Mercurial Preparations, more-especially if they be inveterate. Some commend *white Præcipitate*, others *Turpethum Minerale*, others again *the Princes Pouder*; and with the use of *Mercurial Precipitates*, I have twice or thrice performed this Cure in my time, being mixed with proper Balsamicks.

XVI. But

XVI. But those Mercurials which we shall now commend, are such as we know their Virtues and Effects in this Cure by many Experiences; and these are of two kinds. 1. Such as have an Emetick and Cathartick Faculty with them, as 1. *Aurum Vitæ*, or *Solar Precipitate*, formerly called *Hues's Pouder*. 2. *Our Impetus Mineralis*, which yet exceeds that. 3. *Our Impetus Aureus*, which is yet much more transcendent; any of these may be given from 3 Grains to 4 or 8 at a time, mixt with half a Dram, or rather a Dram of *Chio Turpentine*, and so made up into Pills with Pouder of Liquorice, and taken at Bed-time; the Dose may be repeated six or seven times, every other Day, and to be given at Night going to Bed, drinking plentifully Posset-drink, Sack Whey, or Mutton Broth after it, as also all the next Day following.

XVII. This Course being run through, the next is Dietetical taking of. 2*dly*. Such Mercurials have no sensible Operation, neither by Vomit, Spittings, Purging nor Sweating, but by their destroying of Acidities, and the Acrimony of the Humours, they insinuate into the Mass of *Blood, Lympha and Serum*, a Balsamick and Healing Property; whereby intimately mixing with them and circulating also with them through all the Parts of the Body, they pass also through the very Ulcer it self, and so not only destroy the *Putridity* thereof, but kill even the *Animalcula*, with which those Ulcers are repleat; and these Preparations are twofold, 1. *Our Angelus Mineralis*, which may be given from half a Dram to a Dram, made up into a Bolus, with either *Balsam of Peru*, or *Our Panacea Balsamina*, and so given Morning and Night going to Bed. 2. *Our Panacea Aurea*, which may be given from a Scruple to half a Dram in like manner as the former. The use of either of these may be continued for 40 Days or more, without any purging between, and till you see the Cure absolved.

XVIII. Sometimes in Ulcers of the Bladder or its Neck, Injections may be useful and necessary. New Milk warm from the Cow is good; but if in every Pint thereof, 2 or 3 Ounces of Honey be dissolved, it will be so much the more cleansing and healing; so also, *Lime-water (not of too great a Strength) in which Mercurius Dulcis levigated, 2 ounces to a Pint of the Water, very well shaked together till all the Globules are broken, and the Mercury becomes a black Pouder.* You may also make it with *Hydromel, or Decoction of Barley and Honey of Roses* to cleanse; and then astringe with our *Aqua Regulata*, or *Aqua Ophthalmica*; or with *Milk in which Troaches of Gordonius have been dissolved*, which ease the Pain, and contribute to the curing the Ulcer. But an Injection made of *the White Potion at Sect.* 11. *aforegoing, a quart, with the Addition of one ounce of White Præcipitate, or three ounces of Mercurius Dulcis*, is beyond them all.

Desinit Liber Secundus.

THE

THE PRACTICE of PHYSICK.

LIBER TERTIUS.

CHAP. I.

Of the Scurvy.

I. 1. IT is accompanied with Heavineſs of Body; Wearineſs which comes of it ſelf, or without any precedent Cauſe; difficulty of breathing, eſpecially after Exerciſe, Rottenneſs or Filthineſs of the Gums and Teeth; ſtinking Breath; often bleeding at Noſe; difficulty and uneaſineſs in Walking. 2. To theſe Signs add, (which is a conſtant Symptom of this Diſeaſe) Spots in the Legs, which are Black and Blew, and Yellow, or of a Leaden or Violet Colour; the Legs in the mean while being ſometimes ſwoln, ſometimes ſunk; and the Face of a Colour between pale and tawney. 3. Bleed in the Arm, taking away 8 Ounces of Blood, if there be no Signs of a Dropſie. 4. The next Morning exhibit the *Potio communis Purgativa*, and repeat it again a ſecond and third time, every third Day.

II. In the Intervals of Purging, let the ſick take the following Medicines, and proceed in the uſe of them for a Month or two afterwards. 1. Electuarium Antiſcorbuticum. *Take Conſerve of Garden-ſcurvy-graſs two ounces; Conſerve of Wood-ſorrel one ounce; compound Pouder of Aron ſix drams; Syrup of Oranges, enough to make it into an Electuary:* Of which let him take as much as a large Nutmeg in the Morning, and as much at Five a Clock in the Afternoon; and the like Quantity at Bed-time, drinking after it ſix Spoonfuls of Radiſh Water compound, or of this which follows: 2. Aqua Antiſcorbutica. *Take Scrapings of Horſe-radiſh Roots twe pounds; of Aron Roots one Pound; Leaves of Garden Scurvy-graſs twelve handfuls; of Mint, Sage, Water-Creſſes, Brooklime, of each ſix handfuls: Seeds of Garden Scurvy-graſs bruiſed, half a pound; Nutmegs half an ounce; White Wine ſix quarts; diſtil them in a common Still, and draw off only three quarts for uſe.* 3. Or diſtil freſh Garden Scurvy-graſs, for the ſame Purpoſe.

III. Likewiſe let the Patient make uſe of the following Beer, for his ordinary Drink. 1. *Take of the freſh Roots of Horſe-radiſh ſcraped or ſliced, two drams; twelve Leaves of*

of Garden Scurvy-grass; six Raisins stoned; and the half of an Orange sliced; put them altogether into a Glass Bottle of a Quart of small Beer, and stop it presently with a Cork. 2. After the way which is here prescribed, make at the same time six Bottles for the same use; and after some Days, six more; before the first be quite spent; and so on, as long as need requires. 3. Or instead of the former compounded Beer; you may add three or four Spoonfuls of the following Composition, to every Draught of your ordinary Drink. 4. Succus Compositus. *Take Roots of Horse-radish, Seeds of Garden Scurvy-grass, of each half an ounce; Leaves of Garden Scurvy-grass, of each two handfuls; the Pulp of one Orange; beat them together in a Marble Mortar, putting in by degrees, half a Pint of White-wine; strain out by gently squeezing or pressing them a little, and keep the Juice or Liquor for use.* 5. The same Medicines are also good in Scorbutick and Hysterick Rheumatisms, only bleeding and purging must be forborn.

SALMON's Comment.

IV. *The Names.* It is called in Greek Στομαχικὴ, i. e. *Morbus Stomachicus*, because its Original, or Foundation and Beginning is in the Stomach; and Σκελοτύρβη, i. e. *Crurum turbatio, vel dissolutio*, a dissolving or weakning of the Limbs, or of the Powers and Forces of the Body; also *Oscedo, Oris Vitium*, the Soreness of the Mouth or Gums, because the Disease manifests it self very early in those Parts; in Latin it is called *Stomocace*, and *Scorbutus*; and in English *the Scurvy*, which is a Contamination of all the Juices of the Body. *Hippocrates* seems to describe it in this manner. *It is a Disease which causes a stinking Mouth or Breath, a looseness of the Teeth, or separation of the Gums from them, a bleeding at Nose; and soreness or breakings out in the Legs, some of which are healing whilst others are yet a breaking out; with a kind of withering and discolouring of the Skin, and as it were turning blackish.*

V. It is without doubt a Dyscrasie, or rather a Contamaination of the *Blood*, *Lympha*, and other Juices, from ill generated Chyle, or a *Succus Nutritius* vitiated, from the Weakness of the concoctive Faculty of the Stomach, and Relaxation of its Tone, whereby a certain Puridity is generated, which with that ill elaborated Chyle, by its Mixtion with the Blood, is universally disseminated over the whole Body. It is sometimes hereditary, sometimes adventitious; sometimes primary, or an original Disease, and sometimes derivative, as proceeding from some prior Disease. It is also either recent, or so easily cured; or inveterate, or of long standing, and so with much difficulty overcome.

VI. *The Parts affected.* From what has been said the Stomach seems to be primary; then the Liver and Spleen, though the Ancients held the Spleen to be affected above all other Parts. But as we take the Root of the Disease to be in the Stomach, and so in the chylous Juice, so it is manifest, that thereby the Mass of Blood and Lympha are corrupted, and defiled, which dispersing the Putridity over the whole Body, make the universal Man the Subject of this Disease.

VII. *The*

VII. *The Signs.* Besides the Signs which our Author has given us, there are many other attending Symptoms, as Headach, Megrim, and sometimes the Vertigo, which many times ends in an Apoplexy, or Palsie of one Side; the Face breaks out with Pimples, Scurff, and sometimes a kind of Anthonies Fire; the Teeth are black or discoloured, affected often with Pain and Uneasiness in eating with them, or with Looseness, so much sometimes that they fall out. The Gums are sore, many times loose from the Teeth, and swell much, so that if they be but touched they will bleed, and are many times eaten away, or wasted by the Sharpness of the scorbutick Humour. A constant Catarrh, much, or little attends the Patient with much Spitting; which is many times salt or ill-tasted, whence proceed a rank or stinking Breath. Sometimes there is a Palsie of the Tongue, or little troublesome Tubercles growing out of it at the Root and Sides thereof, and many times it is affected with manifold Chapings. Sometimes by reason of the Heat and Sharpness of the Humour the Patient is troubled with Contraction of the Limbs, and convulsive Motions, and can hardly get any Sleep; and sometimes because of the Coldness and Sluggishness of the Humours, some Parts become numbed, or paralytick, and the Patient is always in a drousie Condition, or enclined to sleep. The Stomach is weak, the concoctive Faculty very much hurt, the Appetite very much profligated, or the Sick is apt to desire unnatural things, whereby the *Viscera* become obstructed, there is a Shortness of Breath, and many times a Difficulty of Breathing, and sometimes a Palpitation of the Heart, by which many times a Pining is induced, and thereby a Consumption of the whole Human Frame. In weak Habits of Body, there is many times fainting and swooning away, Looseness of the Bowels, or in a hot Constitution, a great Costiveness; and if the Humours are sharp Gripings in the Guts, and Cholick Pains. Spots for the most part appear in many parts of the Body, chiefly in the Face and Limbs; as Arms, Hands, Thighs and Legs, with Humors in the Hands, Fingers, and Feet, which very much swell them; These Spots are sometimes red, livid, blue, black, or purple; and sometimes Wheals and Pushes arise which degenerate into Ulcers, Sores, or Scabs, or else turn into Scurf, Morphew, or Leuce, which is a spotted Leprosie. There are wandering Pains over the whole Body, chiefly in the Shoulders, Arms, and other extream Parts, which the Vulgar call a Rheumatism, which Pain is either sharp or dull according to the Humour causing it, Numbedness and Tingling in the Flesh and Skin, with a general Weakness of the Body, Dulness of the Spirits, and Wasting of the Flesh. The Urine has sometimes a Scum upon it, many times taken for Fat; and it is very thin, or very thick, and as it were purulent, and of a Colour White like Whey or Posset-drink, or Red, as if in a high Fever.

VIII. *The Causes.* The Ancients say it arises from Meancholy, and Tenacious, gross, crude

crude Humours: Or from a pituitous Juice mixt with the Blood, which obstructing the Liver and Spleen, causes a Cachexy, and all the fore-enumerated Symptoms. But we say the Scurvy arises first from a Discrasie and Corruption of the *Blood and Lympha*, through a hurt of the Concoctive Faculty, and depraved Tone of the Stomach; which by Degrees encreasing, the Blood casts forth its Recrements into the fleshy Substance, passing thro' which it makes its Appearance in the Surface of the Skin, and so universally defiles and enervates the whole Man. See more of the Signs and Causes of this Disease in the Third Edition of our *Synopsis Medicinæ*, *Lib.* 6. *Cap.* 3. *Sect.* 3. *ad* 32. where we have handled the whole Matter very largely.

IX. Our Author advises in this Cure to bleeding: Now bleeding being a Revulsive Action, calling from the Circumference to the Center; and Nature having cast forth part of the Corruption into the fleshy Substance: it follows, that to fill up the Veins again, for they will not be wanting in their due Quantity, if Blood is taken away, they will recall that polluted Matter, which the Blood had before cast forth; by which means, the Contamination, or Defilement of the *Blood and Lympha* will be made much greater, and that pretended Remedy will be found to be worse than the Disease.

X. *The Prognosticks.* As it is a Chronical Disease, so it seems to be of long cure; but if it is known, whilst recent, Health is more easily recovered. Where it is Hereditary, it is scarcely ever cured, at least the Patient will at times feel some Reliques of it. In ancient People, and in all such as lead Sedentary Lives, it is cured with much Difficulty; so likewise in such who are of a melancholy Habit of Body. If the Malignity of the Putridity is communicated to the *Viscera*, it is scarcely curable, but is apt to degenerate into a Dropsy, or Asthma, or suffocative Cattarrh, or Dysentery, or a Phthisis, or a pining Consumption, or a Leprous Scab; and sometimes tho' rarely, into a Palsie, or Apoplexy. If the *Viscera* grow Scirrhous, or the Lungs become Ulcerated, the Danger is truly great; so also when the Pains are about the Navel, or become Periodical, and the Ulcerous Pustules or Sores become Livid or Black; and the Shortness of Breath and Difficulty of Breathing, is such that the Patient cannot lie down upon his Back.

XI. *The Patient ought to live in a pure serene or clear Air, not cold or foggy*; eat Change of Diet, and Meats easy of Digestion, and rather little than much, for that this Disease is caused mostly from too much Fullness, Gluttony, Gormandizing or Overeating; salt Things and Pickles are to be avoided; and Water is rather to be chosen for drinking, unless a Dropsie be feared; if Wine is at any time drank, it ought to be fortified with Antiscorbuticks: Moderate Exercise contributes to the Cure, but Sloathfulness fixes the Disease. Early rising is healthful, but too much Sleep overcomes the Spirits; Costiveness is to be avoided, and the Belly kept soluble;

soluble; yet a Flux of the Bowels is dangerous, and so much the more, if a Consumption seems to be induced; and the Mind is to be kept pleasant and chearful, avoiding as much as may be a melancholy Dispositi-on, and Thoughtfulness, which keep the Humours upon a continual Ferment.

XII. *The Indications of Cure.* They are three, *viz.* 1. To evacuate the Morbifick Matter, whether in the Stomach or Bowels, and the Recrements of the Humours. 2. To absorb the Acidity of the Humours, and open the Obstructions of the *Viscera.* 3. To restore the Tone of the Parts hurt. Now in this Cure, you are to consider, whether the Scurvy is in a cold or hot Habit of Body; if in a cold Habit, hot Antiscorbuticks are proper to be made use of, as shall be after directed, which being taken for some time, may heat, warm, and enliven the Blood and Lympha, and alter the Discrasy of the Humours: But if it is in a hot Habit, then those hot Antiscorbuticks will be absolutely naught, and only add Fuel to the Fire; and here cooling Antiscorbuticks are only to be administred, which may allay the Preternatural Heat, destroy the Acrimony of the Humours, and so restore the Body to its pristine State of Health.

XIII. *From what has been said, it appears, That the Cure of the Scurvy in a hot and cold Habit of Body, very much differs,* which not being observed by most Physicians, may possibly be the reason of the many Failures in this Cure; whereas, if what is here prenoted, be observed, there is no doubt, that both Physician and Patient may meet with much better Success. Such as refuse our Instructions, we leave them to their Fate, and to their *Quacking* with *Opium, Cortex, Steel, and Mercury,* till they as happily kill themselves, as they have ignorantly murthered Hundreds of others; being certainly assured, that any meer Mechanick may attain the Knowledge of such a kind of Practice in one Weeks easy Study, without pretending to fetch it from the *University,* whether by *Mandamus, Proxy, Grace, or Caution Money.*

XIV. *The first Intention which is to evacuate the Morbifick Matter, whether in the Stomach or Bowels.* Now to begin the Cure in order, the Patient ought first to Vomit, which is best performed with the *Tartar Emeticum* given from 3 Grains to 6, according to Age and Strength; and it will be so much the better, if it be repeated at due Distances of Time once or twice more. If you have not the Emetick Tartar, you may give two or three Doses of the *Emeticum Commune,* as we have directed in *Lib.* 1. *Cap.* 1. *Sect.* 2. of this Work, by which the Stomach and upper Parts will be sufficiently cleansed.

XV. This being done, you must come to the use of Catharticks, and then you may Purge either with the *Potio Communis, Purgativa,* as our Author advises, or with *Tinctura Purgans,* which may be taken every other Day, or letting two Days be between for some time; The *purging Spirit of Scurvy-grass* is an admirable thing in this case, if the Patient is of a cold Habit of Body; but that which exceeds all is our *Tinctura Aurea*

Nova, in *Lib.* 1. *Cap.* 1. *Sect.* 16. which may be exhibited 4 or 6 times, according to the Directions there given. Or you may in a hot Habit of Body purge with *an Infusion of Sena in Fumitory Water, or Whey clarified with Fumitory*, repeating the same at due Intervals of Time.

XVI. *The second Intention is, to absorb the Acidity of the Humours, and open the Obstructions of the Viscera.* If it is in *a cold Habit of Body*; in the Intervals of purging, as also after purging, you may order this Antiscorbutick Diet-drink, to be drank for three or four Months together, but more especially Spring and Fall. You may make it after this manner. *Take Roman-wormwood one handful, Scurvy-grass two handfuls, Roots of Horse-radish, of sharp pointed Dock, of Rhubarb, of each* 3 *ounces: Sena* 2 *ounces, Inner-Bark of the Elm-tree* 12 *ounces; Barks of the Barbery and Ash, Winter Cinnamon, of each an ounce and half; The yellow of Orange and Limon Peels, of each one ounce; Coriander-seed and Aniseed, of each half an ounce: Put all these into a close knit Net Bag, with a Stone in it, which put into three Gallons of new Ale, and let them work together.* After two Days you may drink of it, taking every Morning, from half a Pint to a Pint, as you find your Constitution can bear it: And when you drink it, squeeze into the Quantity you drink at a time, the Juice of one Civil Orange.

XVII. Our Authors *Elect. Antiscorbuticum*, and *Aqua Antiscorbutica*, are very proper for this purpose, and where Scurvy-grass is used, the same may be done with Rocket, Cresses, Mustard-seed, Horse radish-roots, *&c.* for *a cold Scurvy*; the particular Ways of preparing and using, which you may see in our *Doron Medicum*, *Lib.* 1. *Cap.* 25. *Sect.* 92, 93, 95. to which I refer you. But in a *Cold Scurvy*, where you design the Diet-drink, at *Sect.* 16. above, to be made without purging, you may leave out the purging Ingredients, *viz.* the *Rhubarb* and *Sena*, and so the Patient may in a manner drink it for common Drink, especially if it is made with a smaller kind of Ale.

XVIII. *In a hot Scurvy, or where the Disease is in a hot Habit of Body*, all the former hot Things are to be avoided like Poison, lest you put the whole Body as it were into a Flame. In this Case, the clarified Juices of Cucumbers, or of Fumitory, or Pellitory of the Wall, or Plantane, will be of good Service; or a Syrup made of any one, or of some, or of all their Juices together; of which the Patient may take four Spoonfuls at a time, mixt with four Ounces of Milk Water, in the Morning fasting; as much at ten before Noon; the like Quantity at five in the Afternoon, and the same again at Night going to Bed. Or this Diet-drink may be used as their constant Drink. *Take Burdock-roots thin sliced, Bark of the Elm-tree, bruised, of each* 12 *ounces; Juices of Blood Wort, of Cucumbers, of Fumitory, of Lettice, of Purslane, of Pellitory of the Wall, of Plantane, of Garden Sorrel, and of Wood Sorrel, of each a Pint; put all this into three Gallons of new Ale, letting them work together.* The second Day the Patient may drink of it as his ordinary Drink, squeezing into

to every Draught as he drinks it, the Juice of a Civil-Orange. It abates the Febrifick Heat of the Blood, cools the whole Body, destroys the Scorbutick Ferment, and causes admirable Excretion by Urine, of the whole Scorbutick Taint.

XIX. *Pulvis Antiscorbuticus in Scorbuto calido. Take Crocus Martis Aperitivus, Harts-horn Philosophically calcin'd, Crabs-Eyes levigated, red Coral prepared with Oil of Salt, of each an ounce; Atinmony Diaphoretick half an ounce; Salt of Amber two drams; mix them.* Dose one Dram Morning and Night, in Syrup of Purslane, or some other proper Vehicle, for ten or twelve Days running. Syrup of the Juice of Plantane is an experienced Remedy, and therefore if the Pouder be given in that, it will be so much the more effectual.

XX. It many times happens that an Ague is an Attendant of the Scurvy, and then its Fits are with vehemency, and not easy to be overcome by the *Cortex*, nor yet by many other Medicines; for this purpose, this following Dose will be of singular Use, being 3, 4, or 5 Times used, as the Necessity may require. *Take Species Hieræ Picræ two scruples or a dram; Brandy, or Canary, or White Lisbon, a quarter of a pint, or better; let it infuse 24 hours; then mixing all well together, let the Patient drink it up for a Dose, about three hours before the coming of the Fit*; this Dose repeat so long till the Fit ceases; and once or twice after the Fit has left the Patient; I have often used it, and never found it fail of curing.

XXI. *The Third Intention; which is to restore the Tone of the Parts hurt, and this is the Vital Indication.* The Parts hurt are the Bowels, and the Stomach principally; and these are to be considered as they have Relation, 1. To a hot Constitution, wherein the exuberant or superabounding Heat is to be suprest and taken away. 2. To a cold Constitution, wherein the prevalent Coldness is to be abated, and the natural Heat advanced to its pristine Ssate: And all this is to be done by joining proper Antiscorbuticks to potent Stomachicks.

XXII. In a hot Scurvy, or Body of a hot Habit, these Antiscorbuticks are to be chosen, *viz. Adders-tongue, Agrimony, Arach-garden, Borrage, Bugloss, Beets, Bloodwort, Burdock-roots, Cinkfoil, Coleworts, Citrons Currans, Cucumbers, China, Dandelion, Elder, Endive, Fumitory, Germander, Lettice, Limons, Oranges, Plantane, Polypody, Purslane, Spleenwort, Succory*; of all which, *Fumitory, Plantane*, and *Purslane* bear away the Bell. Of all of these, or some of them, a *liquid Juice* or *Essence* may be made; if the *Juices* be used, they may be tunn'd up with *New Ale*. a Quart of Juice to every Gallon of Ale, which are to work together; and drank a Pint at a time every Morning and Evening, adding to every Pint, as it is drank, 20 Grains, or half a Dram of *Salt of Tartar sulphurated, or vitriolated*, which is one of the greatest Stomachicks in the World, especially for a hot Habit of Body. But if you use the *Essence* of the same Plants, you may take it from a Spoonful, to three or four, mixt either with Ale, or with Wine and Water, in which

you may dissolve the same Quantity of the Salt aforesaid, in every Draught as you drink it.

XXIII. *In a cold Scurvy, or Body of a cold Habit*, these Antiscorbuticks are to be chosen, *viz. Angelica, Bawm, Buckbeans, Brooklime, Cresses-garden and Water, Elecampane-root, Guajacum Raspings, Horse-radish-root, Hydropiper, Juniper Berries, Limon Peels the yellow, Mustard-seed, Rocket Garden and Wild, Scurvygrass Garden and Sea, Zedoary, and all such other like like Medicines which abound with a sharp, Alcalius, Volatile Salt* Of all of these, or of some of them, you may make a liquid Juice, or Essence, or Infusion in Wine, or common Spirit of Wine; if the liquid Juice, you may tun it up with New Ale, a Quart of Juice to every Gallon of Ale, which are to work together, and to be drank a Pint at a time every Morning and Evening, adding thereto 40 Drops of the following Stomachick, in every Draught as you drink it, and squeezing also into it the Juice of a Civil Orange. But if you use the Essence, or strong Infusion, you may take them from a Spoonful to two Spoonfuls in a Glass of Ale, or some choice Wine, dropping into it the 40 Drops of the aforesaid Stomachick, and the Juice of a sower Orange in like manner.

XXIV. *Elixir Stomachicum*, The Stomach Essence or Elixir. *Take Spirit of Wine two quarts; Oil of Salt four ounces; mix them; then add thereto black Pepper in fine Pouder ten ounces; Grains of Paradise, Cubebs, Winters Cinamon, of each in Pouder four ounces; Cochinel in fine Pouder half an ounce; digest all in a large Bolt Head, in a very gentle Sand-heat for a Month, shaking the Glass once or twice a Day; then let it stand to settle in a cold Place till it is perfectly fine; decant the clear into a Glass-Bottle, which keep close stopt for use.*

CHAP. II. *Of the Dropsie Anasarca.*

I. THIS Disease is first discovered by the Pits or Impression remaining in the lower Parts of the Legs, after you have thrust your Finger hard upon them; which appear very plainly at Night, but vanish in the Morning, more-especially if this Sign goes along with it, *viz.* a difficulty of Breathing. 2. Yet Women with Child, and such whose Courses are stopt; and Men, who are suddenly delivered from an inveterate *Asthma*, are often times troubled with Swellings of the like Nature. 3. The Feet and Legs being extreamly swoln, the Water at length rushes into the Cavity of the *Abdomen*, and by degrees filling up its Cavity, stretches it forth to a vast Extension; till at last, falling upon some of the more noble Bowels, the Sick is as it were drowned. 4. As to the Parts affected increase, the rest do proportionably diminish, and grow more and more slender; in the mean Season there is a difficulty of Breathing, and little Urine is voided. 5. This Disease generally

nerally assaults Men, when they grow old, and Women when they cease Child-bearing.

II. *Salmon.* This Disease is called in Greek, Ὕδρωψ, in Latin *Hydrops*: and in English the *Dropsie*, which is the general Name; but as there are several Species thereof, so they have as many various Appellations; now setting aside the Dropsie of particular Parts, there are three special kinds, which offer themselves to our Consideration; *viz.* 1. Σαρκίτης, Ἀνασάρκα, *Sarcites*, *Anasarca*, or *Leucophlegmatia*, which is a Dropsie of the fleshy Parts, or of the whole Habit of the Body, 2. Ἀσκίτης (ab ἀσκὸς, Uter) *Ascites*, *Hydrops Abdominis*, which is a Watery Dropsie of the Belly. 3. Τυμπανίτης, *Tympanites*, *Hydrops Ventosus*, the Tympany or Windy Dropsie of the Belly. The first of these is the Intendment of this Chapter; the two last shall be treated of in the next.

III. *Salmon.* An *Anasarca* then is a fleshy Dropsie, or a Dropsie of the fleshy Parts, wherein the Water falls into the Substance of the Flesh, throughout the whole Body; and in this kind of Dropsie it is, that the Pittings in the Flesh are most conspicuous, and the Fingers, Hands, Arms, Thighs, Legs, Feet, and other Parts generally and equally swell, whereas the *Ascites* and *Tympanites*, ever fill the Cavity of the *Abdomen*; and scarcely do they cause any other Parts to swell till that is first repleat with Water, or Water and Wind together, as in their Places shall be declared.

IV. *Salmon.* As to the Parts affected, some of the Ancients took the *Liver* some the *Spleen*, others the *Mesentery*, and some of the Moderns will have it to be the *Intestinum Jejunum*, and its *Lacteal Veins*; but without doubt the *Genus venosum*, and the *whole Body*, are the Subjects upon which this Disease tyrannises; for there is a Lax or soft Swelling of the whole Body, which is pale, or white (for which reason it is called *Leucophlegmatia*) and the Limbs generally Pit.

V. *Salmon. The Signs.* The swelling of the Fingers, Hands, Arms, Thighs, Legs, and Feet, may be accounted as a foregoing Sign of this Disease, which daily encreases till the extream Parts easily pit; and then they not being able to contain any more Water, it comes at length into the Muscles and fleshy Substance of the *Abdomen*, which by degrees is extended to its utmost Capacity by the *Serum* with which continually it is separated from the Blood; and lastly, if not timely cured, it falls into the Cavity of the *Abdomen* it self, which sometimes has been found to contain many Gallons of Water.

VI. *Salmon.* There are four Symptoms which generally attend such as have a Dropsie. 1. *A difficulty of Breathing*, caused partly by the Obstructions of the Parts of Respiration; and partly by the Water which presses upon the *Diaphragma*, and hinders its Natural Motion. 2. *A making of less Urine than formerly.* And this is by reason the *Serum* which should have been expelled by the Emulgents at the Reins, is by the way lost in the fleshy Substance, and other Parts, and sometimes in the *Abdomen* it self. 3. *An in-*

tense and as it were continual Thirst. And this proceeds from the Precipitation and loss of the *Serum* from its proper Parts, lodging it in Places where it ought not to be; and so making the Throat, Stomach, Salival Glands, and other adjacent Parts dry, whereby the Sick is always craving Drink to moisten them. 4. *An increase of the Bulk of the whole Body in general*: (but of the Belly in particular in an *Ascites* and *Tympanites*, the other Parts growing proportionably leaner, and more slender.

VII. *Salmon. The Causes.* There is a Weakness of the Blood, which not being able to assimilate the Nutriment, which is brought into it, loses it by the ways of its Passage in the fleshy Substance, and extream and depending Parts of the Body; and at length many times lets it fall into the Cavity of the *Abdomen*, where Nature forms little Vesicles to receive it; till increasing to a mighty Quantity, it fills also the Cavity of the Belly. Now the Blood is weakned by manifold Bleedings, which is a mighty cause hereof; for we daily see, such as loose much Blood, and often bleed, to fall into *incurable Dropsies*. Also, by long and tedious Diseases, wherein the Acid so much prevails, as to make a separation of the *Serum*, from the Grumous Parts; whereby it becomes unable to carry it along with it to the Emulgents: To these things add, drinking of overmuch Water, and other small Drinks; as also great drinking of Wine, and other spirituous Liquors, as Ale, Beer and the like, by which the Natural Ferments of the Body are destroyed, and the Spirits of the Blood dissipated.

VIII. *Salmon. Galen* blames the Spleen, and a Scirrhated Liver: *Helmont* also lays the Cause in the Spleen, not in the Liver, because that in many who died of a Dropsie, he had found the Liver sound. *Paracelsus* says, the Cause of a Dropsie is an Aluminous Tartar dissolved, and that a Dropsie is Water spilt, and that it is nothing else but Water. *Sylvius* says, That an *Anasarca* comes from a thin Water, and salt *Serum*, poured out of the Lymphatick and Lacteal Vessels, by reason of Obstructions from a viscous Humour, attended by a Stagnation of the *Lympha* or *Chyle*, or *Drink* in the Vessels; which breaking, there is an Effusion of the contained Juices, into the Parts adjacent, or any other Place which is capable of it. *Willis* says, That the *Serum* too much separated from the Mass of Blood, and poured out of the Mouths of the Arteries into the Skin, as also the Chylous Juice poured out of its proper Vessels, are the Causes of an *Anasarca*. Others say, It is caused from a Rupture of the *Lympha-ducts*, whereby the *Lympha* is poured forth into the fleshy Substance of the whole Body. *The Ancients* say, That the Antecedent Cause is the Frustration of Sanguification, proceeding from the Coldness of the Liver; and the Coldness of the Liver may proceed from over-cold Air, also drinking overmuch cold Water after Bathing, or being in an extream Heat, which cools the Bowels exceedingly: And that the proximate or near Cause is *Chyle* or *Lympha*,

pha, not fit for Nutrition, but generating, pituitous, ſerous or flatulent Humours, which are ſent and diſtributed into the Subſtance of the Fleſh and Skin.

IX. *Salmon.* The External Cauſes are doubtleſs a cold, moiſt, and evil Air; lying alſo in cold and moiſt Places; to which add a laſie Courſe of living, and a loathneſs to ſtir about, or do any Work. The remote or antecedent Cauſe is from Obſtruction, ariſing from the Thickneſs and Viſcidity of the Chylous Juice; and the Compreſſion or Apertion of the Parts ſerving for Chylification, or Sanguification. And the proximate or immediate and near Cauſe is the unnatural Separation and Diviſion of the *Serum* from the Blood, by reaſon of the Weakneſs thereof, ſo as it is not able to carry it along to the Emulgent Veſſels, but in its Paſſage lets it fall into the Subſtance of the Fleſh, as we before hinted.

X. *Salmon. The Prognoſticks.* In an *Anaſarca*, Thirſt is an ill Sign, foreſhewing Danger of the Diſeaſe changing into an *Aſcites*. If it proceeds from a *Scirrhus* of the Liver, or any other Bowel, or from *Oedematous* Tumors of the Meſentery, or Omentum, it is ſcarce curable. Difficulty of breathing ſhews the Diſeaſe to be dangerous, becauſe it ſhews the Humours to be incraſſated; and the Danger is greater, if they be acrimonious, for then they may eaſily corrode the adjacent Parts. A Cough in a Dropſie is bad, for it ſhews the Acrimony comes thro' the Diaphragma to the Lungs.

XI. *Salmon. Hippocrates, ſect. 6. Aph.* 8. ſays, That Sores ariſing in an Hydropical Body, are not eaſily cured. And the Reaſon is, becauſe the *Anaſarca* fills the Veſſels of the Parts; and when the Matter cannot apoſtemate, it makes its way out at the Sore, ſo that it makes the Sick reſtleſs, which hinders the curing of Sores, *ſect. 6. Aph.* 14. If the Water in a Dropſie, runs out of the Veins into the Belly, the Diſeaſe will preſently end. This may have a double Conſtruction; if the Water is poured into the Guts, the Diſeaſe will be cured, or end by means of a *Diarrhea*: but, if it falls into the Cavity of the *Abdomen*, the *Anaſarca*, 'tis true, will preſently end, but an *Aſcites* will forthwith begin, *ſect. 7. Aph.* 5. A Dropſie coming after Madneſs is good; becauſe it diverts the morbifick Matter from the Brain, *ſect. 7. Aph.* 55. If the Liver is full of Water, and it breaks forth into the *Omentum*, the Belly fills with Water, and the Sick dies. Of all the kinds of Dropſies, an *Anaſarca* is the eaſieſt to be cured. There is leſs danger alſo if it happens to one who is not old, and has naturally a ſtrong Habit of Body. There is hopes therefore of a Cure, if the Patient is then in the Prime of his Years and Strength, and no febrile Diſpoſition attending.

XII. *Salmon. As to the Diet of the Sick:* The Food ought to be dry, of good Juice, and eaſie Digeſtion: Roaſt Meats are better than boiled, and Biſcake rather than new Bread, or any other Bread. Broths are to be avoided, unleſs very ſtrong of the Meat, and boil'd with o-

pening Roots. Drink ought to be strong, not small, and well made with good store of Hops, or some Wormwood; or Juniper Berries: Strong and Diuretick Wines may be drank; but Water is to be avoided, or Wine mixt with Water: In all that the Sick drinks also, the Oil of Vitriol or Sulphur, or rectified Spirit of Salt may be dropt to a pleasing Acidity, because by their Diuretick Force, they direct the *Serum* to the Reins. Rest and Laziness is to be avoided, and some Exercise or Work, or Journey ought to be done every Day, almost all the Day long, to induce Sweating, and to put the Blood and Humours into a gentle Fermentation. Sleep ought to be moderate, and in the Night-time only, not in the Day. The Body ought to be kept always soluble, and a Diarrhea is rather to be admitted of, than a Costiveness of Body, because much of the watery Humour is carry'd off that way. Care, Thoughtfulness, Passion of Mind, and Grief, are to be avoided; for Grief alone, as *Helmont* has observed, is able to cause a Dropsie; and therefore the Mind ought to be easie, and the Patient to be kept pleasant and chearful.

XIII. 1. The Principal Intentions of Cure are, first to evacuate the Water. Secondly, And then the restoring and strengthning the Blood, to prevent its new increase. 2 *Take of White Wine four ounces; Jalap in Pouder one dram; Pouder of Ginger half a scruple; Syrup of Buckthorn one ounce; mix them for a Potion,* to be taken early in the Morning, and repeated every Day, or every other Day, according to the Strength of the Sick, till the Swelling is abated. 3. Or, *Take of Tamarinds half an ounce; Sena two drams; Rhubarb a dram and half: boil them in a sufficient Quantity of Water to three ounces; strain out and dissolve therein Manna, and Syrup of Roses solutive of each an ounce; Syrup of Buckthorn half an ounce; Electuary of the Juice of Roses three drams; mix them for a Potion,* to be taken as before directed. 4. Or, *Take of the Pills ex duobus one scruple; Elaterium three grains; Chymical Oil of Cloves two drops; make three Pills,* to be taken early in the Morning, and repeated, as often as need requires. 5 *Take of Chambogia 15 grains; White Wine, and Succory Water, of each an ounce and half; Syrup of Buckthorn half an ounce; mix them for a Potion, to be given as before.* 6. Take three Handfuls of the inward Bark of Elder; boil them in a Quart of Milk and Water equally mixt, to a Pint. Let the Sick take one half of the strained Decoction in the Morning, and the other at Night, every Day, till Health be recovered. 7. But this Medicine is of no force, but only in those Bodies, which are very easily moved by Purging Medicines.

XIV. Concerning the Exhibition of Purges in this Disease, three things are to be observed. 1. In the first Place consider, whether the Sick is apt to be easily or difficultly purged; for one Ounce of the Syrup of Buckthorn, being given by it self, to such as are easily wrought upon, will empty the Water very plentifully; whereas in others, the strongest Purges above prescribed, will operate

operate but very meanly. 2. Such Purgatives as work ſlowly, do more Miſchief than good; and therefore ſuch as work ſtrongly, are always to be preferred before thoſe which are Weaker. 3. The Water ought to be emptied out as ſpeedily as may be, or as the Strength of the Sick can poſſibly bear; leſt by letting too long Intervals be between the ſeveral times of Purging, we ſhould give Opportunity for the Water to gather again.

XV. *Salmon.* Phyſicians generally give (before Purging) ſuch Medicaments as they call *Preparers*, which are *Aperitives* and *Diureticks*; by the firſt they open all the Obſtructions of the Body; by the ſecond they rectifie the Diſtemper of the Reins, and make them fit to receive the *Serum*, being made to flow freely, and directed to them. Of ſimple Medicaments theſe are moſt in repute, *viz.* All the opening Roots, inward Barks and Leaves; both of Elder and Dwarf-Elder; Tamarisk, Agrimony, Camomil, Horehound, Germander, Ground-Pine, Wormwood, Scordium, Parſly, Smallage, Seeds of Fenrel, of Parſly, and Daucus, Hops, Onions, Garlick, Muſtard-ſeed, Waters of Parſly and Hydropiper, Salts of Brooms, of Pot-aſhes, and of Tartar, Pouders of Cochinele, of Hog-lice, and Crabs Eyes; Winter-Cherries, Juniper-Berries, Oils of Vitriol and Sulphur, Oil and Spirit of Salt, *&c.* of all or ſome of which liquid Juices. Eſſences, Decoctions, Infuſions, Drinks, Pouders, or Electuaries, *&c.* may be made, according as the prudent Phyſician ſhall direct.

XVI. *Salmon.* Now we come to Evacuators; and theſe are either Emetick, Cathartick, Sudorifick, or very ſtrong Diureticks. It is good indeed to begin this part of the Cure with *Vomits*, that the firſt Paſſages and Bowels may be immediately emptied; and then to have Recourſe to *Catharticks*; and to uſe in ſome Habits of Body, ſometimes Emeticks and ſometimes Purges. Among *Vomits*, one of the moſt Famous is *Cambogia*, and it is the great and moſt celebrated Remedy in the *Weſt-Indies*, which they give to their Negro's, for that it ſeldom or never fails, if it be timely given. Doſe is from gr. x. ad xv. and in ſtrong Bodies to a Scruple. You may make the Pouder thereof up into Pills, with a Drop or two of Water; and ſo give it. Or you may mix the Pouder with any proper Pulp, and ſo give it in the Morning faſting, continuing the uſe of it for ſeveral Days as you ſee need requires; it works both upwards and downwards.

XVII. *Salmon.* Another which may be called a Specifick, is *Wine or Vinegar of Squills*, a Spoonful or two, or more at a time, given in White or Rheniſh Wine, every Morning faſting for three Weeks, more or leſs, it does Wonders, and Thouſands have been cured by it. But the chief of the Emeticks is thought to be *Vinum Benedictum*, or *Infuſion of Crocus Metallorum*, given to an Ounce and half; and if the Sick is hard to work upon, to two Ounces; it may be given in the Morning faſting, and repeated every

every Day, or every other Day, as the Strength of the Sick can bear it. To these things add Tartar Emeticum, which may be given from gr. iij. to vi. and exhibited every Day, or every other Day, as the former.

XVIII. *Salmon. Paracelsus* above all advises to expel Water by *Mercurialia Arcana*, for which purpose he commends his *Præcipiolum*, or *Mercurius e sua minera mortuus educta*, above other Remedies; because (says he) Mercury is only able to expel the Water, which lies in the Pores of the Skin, to which no other thing can come but Mercury: I have found my *Impetus Mineralis*, to be of wonderful Force in this case, and have done the Cure several times with only three or four Doses thereof.

XIX. *Salmon.* These things, tho' they seem only to empty the Stomach, yet sometimes, at length, they free even the *Abdomen* it self from the Water contained in it; for they work many times as well downwards as upwards. And tho' it is not known by which ways the Water is conveyed out of the Belly into the Guts; yet it is certain, that it is powerfully cast forth by the Vomiting, which is caused by the aforenamed Medicines both downwards by Stool; and upwards, by the Stomach and Mouth; where after Vomiting two or three times, the Water seems not indeed to come forth so much by the force of the Medicament, as to gush forth of it self with a full Stream, many times breaking forth violently, in the very Intervals, between the several Vomitings.

XX. *Salmon.* If you find after some Days, that the Medicine ought to be changed, you may mix *with the Emetick a Cachartick.* As, *Take Infusion of Vitrum Antimonii, from an ounce to an ounce and half; Syrup of Buckthorn; Syrup of the Juice of Roses, of each half an ounce, mix them for one Dose to a strong Person*; which repeat for three or four Days or more, as you see occasion.

XXI. *Salmon.* If the Sick is of such a Constitution, as will not easily be wrought upon by mild Purges, you must have recourse to the stronger. And since few Hydragogues given alone, do answer Expectation, they are made effectual by mixing them with other things. As, *Take choice Sena two ounces; Powder of Jalap and Hermodacts, of each one ounce; Scammony in Powder, Liquorice bruised, Aniseeds, Coriander, dried Wormwood and Centory, of each half an ounce; Elaterium one dram; choice Brandy three pints; digest in a Bolt-head, in a very gentle Sand-heat for a Week, and then let it be strained off as it is used.* Dose three or four Spoonfuls in the Morning increasing, or lessening the Dose, as you see need requires.

XXII. *Salmon.* Elaterium is one of the best Hydragogues in the World, for in small Doses it plentifully expels the watery and Serous Humour, and given a gr. iij. ad vj. (according to Age, Strength and Contumacy of the Disease) will be a Dose large enough for most Persons *Take Colocynthis, Scammony, of each in fine Pouder 6 grains; Cambogia 4 grains, Elaterium three grains; of any Syrup, a few Drops, to make them into*

Mas

a Mass of Pills for one or two Doses.

XXIII. *Salmon.* But now you are to consider, whether the Sick is best purged by a solid, or a liquid Purge. If by a solid, our Family Pills are a singular Remedy, and Inferior to few other Medicines. Or instead of them, you may give the *Pulvis Catharticus*, or *Pilulæ Panartæ, in Lib.* 1. *Cap.* 1. *Sect.* 20. & 22. of this Work; Or our *Pilulæ Catharticæ*, described in our *Pharmacopœia Chirurgica*, from a Scruple to half a Dram, or two Scruples in very strong Bodies; nor do these of our Author want their due Praise.

XXIV. *Salmon.* But if a solid Cathartick works not well with them (as in many it will not) you must then have recourse to one of a liquid Form of which is our *Tinctura Cathartica* in our said *Pharm. Chirurgica*, than which I think there are but few better Medicines for this purpose in the World. And to this we may add *Tinctura Aurea Nova* (in *Lib.* 1. *Cap.* 1. *Sect.* 16. which is a potent Medicament; also *Sal Panaretum* (in *Sect.* 23. of the same Chapter) or *Sal Mirabile*, which from four to six Drams, or an Ounce, works very sweetly and gently, without Griping, or Pain, or making Sick, and evacuates Water wonderfully; and may be taken either every Day, or every other Day, as the Strength of the Sick will permit. This Salt is indeed a Specifick in curing the Dropsie, tho' none of the Quacks, that I know of, have taken any notice of it.

XXV. *Salmon.* Where the elder Potion has an Effect, it cures after the same manner as do Antimonial Emeticks: And therefore, when it works not, neither by Vomit nor Stool, as sometimes it will not, 'tis wholly useless and vain: But if it works powerfully either way, or rather both ways, 'tis a Remedy to be commended indeed; and therefore according to this Admonition, you are either to use it or disuse it.

XXVI. *Salmon.* It is vain also to give Purges to such Constitutions or Habits of Body, which will not purge at all, or with much Difficulty, with any ordinary Dose of Medicine; for these not being able to expel the morbifick Matter, only trouble it, and put the Sick into greater Disorders, whereby the Disease is rendred more stubborn, and less apt to submit to the most exquisite Remedies. And tho' both Emeticks and Catharticks should be so strong, as almost to kill another Person; yet they have no such danger in them, in *Hydropicks*: Because the vast Quantity of Water in the Body, does as it were drown the Violence of the Medicament, and render its Operation less evident.

XXVII. *Salmon.* When therefore the Disease seems to admit of Cure by either Vomiting or Purging, or by both, it is best to be done with those things which are of the quickest and nimblest Operation, and then also, to be often repeated, as the Strength of the Sick will bear; for as Delays breed Danger, so in this Case, more-especially; because it gives the Water a Liberty of encreasing again, and so makes all the former Trouble to be given in vain.

XXVIII. *Salmon.* And when the Water is evacuated, you must

must come to the use of those things which may warm, strengthen, and invigorate the Blood; for which reason, it will be good to abstain from all small Beer, and cold Drink, which chills it; and Wine is to be used for some time, as ordinary Drink, especialy being impregnated with spirituous Aromaticks, as Mustard-seed, Juniper-berries, Hops, Jamaica-pepper, Winter-Cinnamon, Virginia-snakeroot, Zedoary, Garlick-heads, Cochinele, Roots of Horse-radish, *&c*

XXIX. *Salmon.* For after the Passages are opened (whether by *Emeticks*, *Cathartick*s, or *Diuretick*s) and the Water evacuated, 'tis absolutely necessary to the compleating of the Cure, for the Patient to drink medicated Wine, or Ale or Beer, for his ordinary Drink, (this and cooling Liquors, how agreeable soever to the Palate of the Sick, being ever prejudicial to him:) and these Liquors do so far comport with the Cure, that sometimes (in the beginning of the Disease) it is done by them alone, especially if fortified with healing and corroborating Ingredients: And some have been cured by a total Abstinence, from drink alone, without any other means.

XXX. *Salmon.* But as this Disease is commonly attended with a troublesome Thirst, for that reason, it will be convenient to chew and suck the Juice of a bit of a *Limon* or *Citron*; or to wash the Mouth with Water a little acuated with *Spirit of Vitriol*, *Sulphur*, *or Salt*, not swallowing any of the Liquor. But absolutely to quench the Thirst, the Wine, Ale or Beer, may be constantly made grateful with the *Oil or Spirit of Salt*, by the use of which thing alone I have known several have been cured of confirm'd Dropsies.

XXXI. 1. There are some Cases in which all Purges, of what kind soever they be, may, and ought to be wholly omitted. 2. For when the Sick is of a weak Constitution or Habit of Body; or a Woman subject to Vapours; the emptying forth of the Water is to be performed only by Diureticks, or Medicines which provoke Urine; among these the most powerful are those which are composed of Lixival Salts. 3. For Example. *Take Broom-ashes a pound*; *Rhenish Wine two quarts*; *infuse them cold 24 hours*; *then strain the Liquor through a brown Paper*, of which let the Sick take four Ounces in the Morning fasting; as much at Five in the Afternoon; and the like quantity at Bed-time; continuing its use, till the Humour be wholly evacuated. 4. This being done, let such things be given as heat and strengthen the Blood, as for Example. *Take Roots of Horse-radish*, *Garden Scurvy-grass*, *common Wormwood and Sage*, *Tops of the lesser Centory and Broom*, *and infuse them in strong Ale for ordinary Drink*; This alone does sometimes cure a Dropsie in the beginning without the help of Purgers. The Patient may Take *Canary* instead of Ale; or otherwise use the following Prescript. 5. *Take Conserves of Garden Scurvy-grass*, *of Roman Wormwood*, *of each an ounce*: *Extract of Gentian*, *of common Wormwood*, *and of lesser Centory*, *of each three drams*; *with Syrup of Citron-peels a sufficient quantity*, *make an Electuary*. Dose as much as a large Nutmeg in the

the Morning; as much at five in the Afternoon; and the like at Night, drinking a quarter of a Pint of the following Infusion. 6. *Take Gentian Roots an ounce; Broom-tops, and tops of lesser Centory, and of common Wormwood, of each a handful: Seeds of Fennel and Parsly, of each two drams; cut them small, and pour upon them Rhenish Wine two quarts. Digest them together in a cold Infusion, and strain out the Liquor when you use it.*

XXXII. 1. Now this is to be noted, That during the Time of using the Corroboratives, you must by no means purge the Patient; *viz.* for so long time as the Work of strengthening of the Blood is persued. 2. The same ought also to be observed, when the Lixivial Salts are given; during the use of which, it is also requisite to use corroborating strenthening Medicines. 3. *Take Horse-radish Roots three ounces; Garden Scurvy-grass, common Wormwood, Sage, Broom-tops, and Tops of lesser Centory, of each three handfuls; three Oranges sliced; infuse them in six Gallons of strong Ale, whilst it is fermenting; and drink it for ordinary Drink.*

XXXIII. *Salmon.* There are many other Cases besides those which our Author has hinted, in which evacuating whether by Emeticks or Catharticks is to be forborn; as, 1. When the Dropsie follows the long continuance of a Fistula, or other running Ulcers in the fleshy Parts, which have let forth much of the Juice and Nutriment of the Body. 2. When immoderate bleeding has gone before, whereby the Crasis of the Blood is lost or destroyed, and its Substance depauperated, and rendred spiritless, vehemently weakening the Patient. 3. When it happens after long Consumption, or other lingering Weaknesses. 4. When it follows immoderate Evacautions of Humours, or Depression of the Spirits by Salivation, tedious Sweatings, long and vehement Diarrheas, Dysenteries, Lienceries, Hepatick Fluxes, Fluxes of the Whites or Terms; or a thin Diet. 5. When it proceeds from the Corruption or Putrefaction of some of the Viscera, or Intrails. 6. When it proceeds from a Relaxation or Abolition of the Crasis of the Blood, or Dissipation of the Spirits, thro' the too much abounding of the Acid. 7. Lastly, When the Patient is a Woman, and is subject to Fits of the Mother, or other Disorders of the Womb, which forbid Vomiting. In these Cases Vomiting and Purging must be forborn, for they will be so far from doing any good, that on the contrary, they will considerably encrease the Disease, by a farther weakening of the Blood, and encreasing its *Discrasy*; and therefore in these Cases the Cure ought to be performed by proper *Diureticks* and *Comfortatives*, that the *Crasis* of the Blood, and Tone of the Viscera may be restored; to all which things add, change of Air; and constant and hard Labour, either by Working, Running, or Riding, or the like.

XXXIV. *Salmon.* It will be good to add to our Authors Infusion of Broom-ashes, dried Wormwood, Centory and Gentian, of each three Drams; by which the Infusion will be made the more strengthning and comfortable

fortable to the Bowels. I have known many Dropsies cured by the use of this Medicine; and I have restored several Patients with it, who have been accounted desperate, by reason of their exceeding Weakness, who could by no means endure Purgation.

XXXV. *Salmon.* Another Diuretick, which is inferior to none of these, is *Sal Prunellæ*, or *Sal Nitre*, the latter of which in my Opinion is the better. I can say of it in this Case, what I can say of no other Medicine in the World besides, *viz.* That I have several times known it to cure an *Ascites*, (a Disease seldom or never cured, but by Tapping, or Death) the Patients have taken a Dram or two of it in a Day, and some have taken more, dissolved in some proper Vehicle, *viz.* in some *very strong Wine, in which Juniper-berries, Grains of Paradise and Cubebs had been infused.* This they continued the use of, till they found their Bellies fallen flat as it were, and the Water quite gone; and the Cure was consummated by giving every Morning fasting, and at Eleven before Noon, and at Five Afternoon, a Dose of *Tinctura Martis*, in the former Wine, and at Bed-time a Dose of my *Volatile Laudanum*, from gr. ij. ad iiij. more or less, according to the time of the Patients continuance in taking it; and by this very Means, some supposed incurable Patients (now alive) I have restored to their Healths.

XXXVI. *Salmon.* Among the Number of *Liquid Salts*, (besides *Alcali Salts*,) the *Oil or Spirit of Salt* is never enough to be commended, for by that alone, given in all their Ale, Beer, or Wine, to a pleasing Acidity, the most inveterate and stubborn Dropsies have been cured, and that after all the hopes of Life have been past. Another Diuretick, not much inferior to any of the former things is *Garlick*: *Take Garlick a pound, bruise it well; Cochinele in fine Pouder two ounces; Common Spirit of Wine, White Port Wine of each two quarts; mix and infuse cold for a Week:* Of this let the Patient take three Spoonfuls or more, Morning, Noon and Night.

XXXVII. *Salmon.* The three last Medicines of Our Author, save one, are given as Corroboratives or Strengtheners of the *Blood* and *Viscera*; and if to the *Electuary* you add *Cochinele in fine Pouder six drams; Pouders of Aron-roots, of Zedoary, and Winter Cinnamon, Oil of Nutmegs by Expression, of each two drams; Chymical Oil of Angelica one dram;* the Composition will be very much the better, and strengthen the Bowels almost to a Miracle, *Preparations of Steel*, invigorate and warm the Blood: So also *Garlick*, by the use of which thing alone, without any Purgative, several have been cured; and by the constant taking of the *Syrup* and *Conserve* thereof, I cured a Woman of about Thirty Years of Age in six Weeks time.

XXXVIII. *Salmon.* But this is also to be understood, that because *Emeticks* and *Cathartick*s may possibly over-turn and undo, whatever is done by *Corroboratives*, or *Alcalous Salts*; and tho' during the driving out of the Water by *Vomits* and *Purgers*, *Corroboratives* are *Alternatim*, or by turns, sometimes used; yet when the Cure is performed by

*Diuretick*s,

Diureticks, and *Confortatives* of the Blood and *Viscera*, 'tis requisite that they should be wholly forborn.

XXXIX. *Salmon.* This following Mixture is of excellent Use. *Take Elixir Proprietatis Pestilentialis; Potestates Juniperi & Terebinthinæ, of each an ounce; Tincture of Wormwood, Powers of Oranges, of each half an ounce; mixtura ex tribus four ounces; mix them.* Dose a quarter of a Spoonful or more, two or three times a Day, in a Glass of White Port Wine, mixt with an equal Quantity of Parsly or Hydropiper-water. The *Essence of Buck-Bean*, or *Marsh Trefoil*, taken in any proper Vehicle, or the *Decoction* thereof in White-Wine, or an *Infusion* of the same, taken Morning, Noon, and Night, for a Month together, are very much commended. So also, a strong Decoction, or Infusion of *Hops* in Wine, taken in the like manner, and continued for some considerable Time; because those things direct and draw the *Serum* after a plentiful manner to the Reins.

XL. *Saluson.* This is also commended by *Paracelsus* for the curing of all sorts of Dropsies. *Take Red Tartar one pound; Swallow-wort, Vitriol, of each eight ounces; strong Wine, as much as will incorporate them well; then draw off the Spirit in an Alembick.* Dose is from half a Dram to a Dram Morning and Evening, in any *Diuretick Vehicle*; because *Helmont*'s Opinion is, that a Dropsie is regularly cured, if the *Serum* is plentifully drawn, and made to pass through the Kidneys, whether it is done Spontaneously, or by Medicine; and a Relapse will follow, if afterwards any Obstruction be found in the Reins, or Urinary Parts.

CHAP. III. *Of an Ascites, and Tympanites.*

I. MAny People of all Ages and both Sexes, are sometimes troubled with these Diseases; but Women are more obnoxious to them than Men, whom they for the most part afflict, when they are a little stricken in Years; but Women when they cease Child-bearing; tho' they sometimes also affect barren Women whilst they are yet Young. 2. The Dropsie is first discovered by pitting of the Legs, which remain after they are prest upon with ones Finger, especially at Night, but vanish away by the Morning. 3. However, this is not so infallible a Sign of the beginning of a Dropsie in Women, as in Men, because the same Symptom is frequently observed, not only in Women with Child, but in those also who accidentally may have an Obstruction of their Terms. 4. Nor are these Swellings always a Sign of a Dropsie in Men, because an aged Man who is Corpulent, if he be presently freed from an inveterate Asthma of some Years standing, may have a great Tumor presently to seize on the Muscles of his Legs, like as in a Dropsie. 5. And in the same manner it may rise, and come to a greater Magnitude

Magnitude in Winter than in Summer, and in rainy foul Weather, than in fair, and all this without any other or farther Inconveniency, to the old Man, and which he may possibly carry to his Grave. 6. But generally, these Swellings of the Legs, even in Men, may be esteemed as previous Signs of the Dropsie, which continually increasing, the Feet will not be able to contain the Quantity of Water sent to them. 7. The Serum forcing its way then, first into the Legs and Feet; it afterwards irresistibly falls into the Cavity of the *Abdomen*, and gradually extends it to its utmost Capacity, so that sometimes it has been found to have contain'd many Gallons of Water.

II. *Salmon.* These previous Signs are the Tokens of an *Anasarca*, as we told you in the last Chapter; but when once the Water, or Wind and Water, take their Courses so as to fall into the Cavity of the *Abdomen*, it then becomes either an *Ascites*, or a *Tympanites*. Now what the Greeks call Ἀσίτης, the Latines call *Hydrops Abdominis*, which is a watery Swelling of the Belly; but if Wind is mixed with the Water, or is Supereminent, they then call it Τυμπανίτης, *Timpanites*, a Windy Dropsie of the Belly. 1 The *Ascites* is an Extention of the Tunicles of the *Abdomen* or Belly, by reason of the Superabounding of *Serous*, Watery, or Salt Humours, cast forth out of their proper Vessels into the Capacity of the *Abdomen*, and is contained either in the *Hydatides*, or in the *Omentum*, *Peritonæum*, and Muscles of the *Abdomen*, which strangely distends them, causing sometimes also the *Scrotum* or *Pubes*, and sometimes the Thighs and Legs to swell. This Disease is call'd *Ascites*, i. e. *Utricularis*, because the Belly is like a large Vessel fill'd with Water. 2. The *Tympanites* is a distention or stretching of the Muscles and Tunicles of the *Abdomen* from the Collection of much Wind (which is for the most part joined with Water) contained within the Capacity of the Belly, in which the Skin seems stretched out like the Skin of a *Drum*.

III. In the mean time, the Disease is accompanied with three Symptoms *viz.* 1. *A Difficulty of Breathing*, which is caused by the Serum or Water pressing upon the *Diaphragma*, and hindering its natural Motion. 2. *Making a lesser Quantity of Urine than usually*, by reason the *Serum* or watery Parts of the Blood, which should have been expelled by the Urinary Passages, *viz.* by the Reins, Ureters and Bladder, are now lodg'd in the Cavity of the *Abdomen*, and some other Parts. 3. *An Intense and Vehement Thirst*, which proceeds from the Putrefaction of these Serosities, which contracting a Heat and Acrimony by their long abiding in the Body, cause also as a Concomitant therewith, a kind of Fever, or Feverish Heat. To these Symptoms, add, 4. *An encrease of the Bulk of the Parts affected, the other Parts growing leaner and more slender*; and at last the Water encreasing in the *Abdomen*, the nobler Bowels being as it were immersed in the same, the wretched Patient at length yields to his Fate.

IV. *Salmon.*

IV. *Salmon.* As to the Parts Originally affected, some will have them to be the *Liver*, some the *Spleen*, others the *Mesentery*: Others again the *Omentum*, from a Rupture of its Vessels, by which means the Serous Matter falls into the Cavity of the *Abdomen*; and they are of this Opinion, That all Liquids pass through the *Omentum* to the *Reins*, for as much as those Creatures which have no *Omentum*, as Birds, Fish, *&c.* make no Urine. Besides, all *Hydropicks* upon dissection after Death, are found to have their *Omenta*, Rotten or Torn, or full of little Swellings or Bladders. And that which may make it probable, that all Liquids pass not by the Guts into the Lacteal Veins, and by the Thoracik Duct to the Heart, is, because the *Pilorus* of the Stomach is turned upwards, that no Liquid matter may run out. *Liquids* then, for this very reason, must fall to the bottom of the *Stomach*, and parts where it is joined to the *Omentum*, where descending into its Vessels, the *Serum* is carried straight to the *Emulgents*: and therefore if any of those Vessels of the *Omentum* be broken, the Urine is detained by the way, and runs not to the *Reins* as it used to do, but of necessity falls into the Capacity of the *Abdomen*, and causes either an *Ascites* or a *Tympanites*. So that at length the whole of the *Abdomen*, the *Pubes* and *Scrotum*, become the grand Seat of these Diseases.

V. *Salmon.* An *Ascites* or *Tympanites* are so evident that they scarcely need any signs to know them; The wonderful swelling of the Belly, demonstrates them to the view, which daily encreases, especially after eating; The Pubes, Thighs and Legs, at length swell in both Sexes, and the *Scrotum* in Men, which I have sometimes seen as large as the biggest Mans Head in Nature; and one who being opened in that part voided above four Gallons of Water: In an *Ascites* before it is come to the heighth, the Patient finds a Fluctuation of the Water, by turning from one side to another in his Bed; but afterwards, when the Belly is compleatly full, they find no such thing. And in a *Tympanites*, if the Belly is struck upon with ones Hand, it has a hollow sound much like that of a Drum, (whence came the name.) In both these Diseases, there is a difficulty of Breathing, because the *Diaphragma* cannot have its Play, or natural Motion. The Urine is generally little, red, and with a thick Sediment, because it is diverted another way. They are insatiably Thirsty, and the more they drink the Drier they are, because the Humidities are perpetually a drawing away from the Stomach, which many times causes a kind of Slow Fever. Many times the Appetite is lost, and there is Vomiting or a Nauseousness, and sometimes a Looseness withal. There is always a Cough, sometimes dry, sometimes moist, because now and then, the Water gets into the Lungs. Sometimes they have Ulcers in their Legs, and Arms: And their Face looks yellow, as if they had the Jaundice. But in a *Tympanites*, the Face does not recede so far from its natural State as in the other kinds of Dropsies; but the swelling of the *Abdomen* is with Wind and an Extravasated *Serum*; so that a *Tympanites* seldom goes alone, but with an *Ascites* attending it; And yet sometimes a pure *Tympanites* has been seen, in which there has not been a Drop of Water in the Belly, and both the *Ab-*

domen and Guts were distended; But this is very rare.

VI. *The Cause of these Diseases.* 1. *In General there is a Weakness of the Blood*; which not being able to assimulate the Nutriment brought into it, casts it off again presently to the Extream parts of the Body, and then to the *Abdomen*, where Nature forms little Vesicles to receive it; till encreasing to a Prodigious quantity, it is included only in the *Peritonæum*. 2. The Blood is weakned, by immoderate Bleedings; or by that evil Custom of Drinking Spirituous Liquors, by which the Natural Ferments of the Body are destroyed, and the Spirits dissipated: So that tho' the Dropsie is a cold Disease, yet Drunkards are more obnoxious to it than others. 3. The Drinking of Water, by such as have been long accustomed to the Drinking of strong Liquors, which is a very pernicious thing, and equally Detrimental to the Blood. 4. There is also another cause in Women; for one of the Testicles being obstructed, and its Contexture gradually preverted, by the matter included in it; the Coat which surrounds it, is at length wonderfully distended, and when it is just ready to break, Nature prepares certain Vesicles to receive the Humor; one or more of which breaking, and Discharging their Serum or Water into the Cavity of the *Abdomen*, produce the same Symptoms before related.

VII. There are two other kinds of Tumors in the *Abdomen*, commonly happening to Women, and resemble the Dropsie. 1. A Mola, or Prenatural Excrescency of Flesh in the part within the *Abdomen*, which swells the Belly to as great a Bulk, as when it is full of Water. 2. A Production of Wind, which Causes not only a swelling; but also the other signs of a Womans being with Child. Stale Virgins after they are Married, are chiefly affected with this Symptom, who not only in their own, but also in the Midwives Judgment, having felt the Motion of the Child all the usual Time, and being from time to time Sick, as Women with Child are accustomed to be, their Breasts also swelling and Milk dropping out of them, *&c.* believe nothing more than Impregnation, till the gradual flagging of their Bellies convince them of their Vanity: But neither of these Symptoms have any relation to these Diseases which are the subject matter of this Chapter.

VIII. *Salmon.* Besides the Causes assigned by our Author, the remote Cause, as the Frustration of Sanguification; and the near or immediate Cause, as matter not fit for Nutrition, which is Serous, Pituitous or Flatulent, gathered in the Cavity of the *Abdomen*; *Helmont* has given us another Cause, which has its internal Efficient, in the internal Vital Principles of the *Archæus* of the Kidnies, which makes the Reins forget their Office of separating the *Serum*, and so send it back again to the Belly; and in a *Tympany* he says, That the Wind proceeds from a certain Indisposition of the Local *Archæus*, which turns Food, that is no ways Windy, into a *Flatus*. But it is seldom that a simple Stagnation of Urine can cause these Diseases, because several have died of a Stoppage of Urine, without any *Ascites* or *Tympanites* being present; and some I have known who have lain Eight, yea Ten or more Days of such a stoppage, without any such Inundation, and have after that recovered. Authors therefore will have the

the Cause to be *Chyle* or *Lympha*, or too much Drink, or *Serum* separated from the Blood, which either by Stagnation or Acrimony, distends or breaks the Vessels; and that the proximate continent Cause is the Apertion of the Vessels, especially of the *Omentum*, because either the Drink, *Chylus*, *Lympha*, or *Serum*, Superabound, are Crass, or move too violently; Or, that by reason of their Acrimony, they at thro' the Vessels, or continually press upon them till they burst; so that the Serous matter in the Glands and Vessels of the Mesentery and Omentum, run out, and fall into the *Abdomen* as aforesaid. To these Causes may also be added some certain Diseases previous, or going before, which breed a Cacochymical and Cachectical Habit of Body, as the Jaundice, Quartan Ague, Scirrhus of the Liver or some other part, A Phlegmon, An Ulcer or Fistula, Obstructions of the Urinary parts, Consumptions, *&c.*

IX. *Salmon.* The nere Cause of a Tympany is Wind, or Wind and Water encloſed in the Stomach, Guts, or Omentum, which breaking forth into the Cavity of the *Abdomen* distend the *Peritonæum*. The procatartick Causes are such Diet, and all other things which may breed Wind and Phlegm or Slimy and Tartarous Humors, which being multiplyed stir up a Preternatural heat, thro' the Fermentation of Choler, which produce Flatulency. The Antecedent Cause is a great quantity of Flegm, bred in the Ventricle, and Tartarous matter lodged in the Omentum and Glands of the Mesentery, which thro' a Preternatural heat effervessing, create the vast quantity of Wind with which the Belly in a Tympany is distended.

X. *Salmon. The Prognostick. Hippocrates*, Sect. 7. Aph. 55. says, That they whose Liver being full of Water, if it break into the Omentum, the Belly fills with Water, and they die. By which it is manifest they did in his time, suspect the *Omentum* as faulty in this Disease. If a *Schirrhus* in any part, or Oedematous Tumour in the *Mesentery* and *Omentum* precede a Dropsie, it rarely admits of a Cure. It is a bad Sign in an *Ascites*, when no Fluctuation of the Water can be felt, for then the *Peritonæum* is to the utmost distended. Difficulty of Breathing shews the Disease to be very dangerous; because it shews the Crassitude of the Humours, by their long continuance in the *Abdomen*, so the Vapours arising from thence, obstruct, because they pass not freely thro' the Pores of the Diaphragma; and if they be sharp, they easily corrode the adjacent Parts, so that many times after Death in a Dropsie, the *Omentum* has been found all over corroded, which makes the Disease incurable, for then all the Drink runs immediately into the Cavity of the Belly. Vehement and continual Thirst is an Evil Sign; for it shews the continual Course of the *Lympha* and *Serum* into the *Abdomen*, by which the Blood growing Grumous, it cannot allow moisture enough to constitute the Saliva, so as to keep the Throat and Mouth moist.

XI. *Salmon.* Almost all these Presages are the same in a *Tympanites*, with this *Salvo*, that an *Ascites* is said (by Authors) to be more easily cured than a *Tympanites*. An Inflammation of the Navel in a *Tympany*, or an Inflammation of any other Muscle of the Belly, shews Death is at hand, as I saw in one Dr. *Smith*, who died some few Years since in *Chancery-lane* of this Disease. Blisters, or Sores breaking

out in the Legs of their own accord, are said to be mortal; and though sometimes they may give relief, (according to the Skill of the Physician in managing them,) yet for the most part they kill, because they generally induce a Gangreen.

XII. 1. The genuine Indications of Cure are, first to educe the Water or *Serum* contain'd in the Cavity of the Belly, and other Parts. Secondly to prevent a new Inundation of Water by strengthning the Blood. 2. As to the Evacuation of the *Serum*, 'tis an approved Truth, and of great Validity to be observed, that such Purgers or Catharticks, as are either too weak, or too slow in Operation, do more harm than good to Hydropical Persons. For all Purging Medicines being Enemies to Nature, and Purgative merely upon that account, do in some measure hurt the Crasis, and weaken the Blood; and therefore if they pass not speedily through the Body, they encrease the Swelling, by stirring up those Humours which they are not able to expel, and raise a fresh Tumult in the Blood, which is manifest in the Feet of such as are but gently purged. 3. For this reason then you ought to have a great regard to the Constitution of the Sick as to Catharticks, because some Persons have peculiar Dispositions in that respect; and therefore we must always proceed with much Caution in the exhibition of Purges: Some are strong and robust Persons, and yet are easily wrought upon by Purging: Others seem to be weak and of an infirm Constitution, and yet can scarcely be moved by the strongest Catharticks. In the first of these, over Purging has been frequently occasioned even by Lenitive Potions.

XIII. 1. Moreover we ought to pursue with all Expedition, the total Expulsion of the Water or *Serum*; in order to which, you ought to repeat the Purgation every day, unless the extraordinay weakness of the Patient, or the too violent Operation of the preceding Dose, should make you alter your design, and sometimes give the Sick a day or two of Respite. 2. You ought not to give the Disease time to recruit it self, by letting long intervals to be between the Attacks; lest by neglecting your opportunities, when the Distemper gives way to your force, and granting an unseasonable cessation of Purging, you be at last compelled to begin again, or yield to despair. 3. Besides the danger of a new inundation of Water or *Serum*, the Intrails may in time be corrupted and putrified, if they should be suffered long to be immerced in the Water: Nor are you to forget, that the Water having already been put into motion, by the preceding order of Purging, will be more apt to do mischief, than if it had never been disturbed.

XIV. 'Tis also confirm'd by Experience that most of all, *Hydragogues* or Water Purges, have this peculier Property, that they rarely operate effectually, if they be exhibited by themselves, to such as are hard to work upon. 2. And that tho' they be given in the largest Doses, instead of expelling the Humors, they raise new Ferments in the Blood, and by so doing strengthen the Disease, or encrease the Water, which they should have lessened: And therefore in this case, they ought only to be made use of to quicken the Operation of gentler Medicaments. 3. And yet it is observable, that *Hydragogues* work both speedily and effectually on those Bodies, which yield without much difficulty to the force of purga-

purgative Remedies. 4. To such if you give *Syrupus de Spina Cervina*, yea, even alone, it will expel a very great quantity of almost clear Water, without either disturbing the Blood, or heightning the Colour of the Urine; both which are the usual Effects of other Cathartick; only it is attended with this Inconveniency, that it causes a violent Thirst, during the time of its Operation. 5. The largest Dose of this Syrup, if it is given to such as are not easy to be wrought upon by purging Medicines, will give them but few Stools, and those not so watery as they ought to be.

XV. *Salmon.* This *Hydragogue* is scarcely inferior to any that I have met with, and I have seen it do wonders in an *Ascites*. *Take Resinous Jallop in fine Pouder, 2. Ounces; Scammony in fine Pouder, Winter Cinnamon in fine Pouder, of each one Ounce; Cream of Tartar, in Pouder, 2 Ounces; mix them.* Dose from 2 scruples to 4; according to the Age and Strength: I received the Receipt from Mr. *Hugh Rider*, an eminent Chirurgion of this City, living in the *Old-Baily*, who told me he had used it almost an hundred times with very good effects. Nor is this following much inferior to it. *Take Resinous Jallop, Tartar Vitriolate, of each two Ounces: Cambogium, Resinous Scammony, of each an Ounce: Cloves, Zedoary, Winters Cinnamon, of each half an Ounce: make each apart into fine powder and mix them together.* Dose from half a Dram to a Dram and a half, according to Age, Strength and other Circumstances. I have often given it with admirable Success.

XVI. *Salmon.* But it is certain, that in some Constitutions, neither of those compositions will work at all, or but very little; in such a case, a Purge in a Liquid form will do better, such as this. *Take Rheubarb thin sliced or bruised, Bryony Root fresh gathered and sliced thin, scraped or bruised, of each three Drams: Alexandrian Sena, three Ounces: White Lisbon or Port Wine, or mixt with half Water, a pint and half: mix and infuse close covered in a gentle simmering heat in a Pot close covered for four Hours: then strain out and add thereto, or dissolve therein Benedicta Laxativa half an Ounce*; This will serve for two or three, or more, Doses, according to the Age and strength of the Sick.

XVII. 1. I remember that about Twenty Seven Years since, which was the first time that I was engaged in the Cure of this Disease, I was sent for to visit a certain Honest good Woman called *Saltmarsh*, living at *Westminster*, whose Belly was swollen to a wonderful bigness by the Dropsie (*Ascites*) than which I have not seen one greater. 2. I gave her an Ounce of the above-named Syrup of *Buckthorn* before Dinner, according to the custom of those times; and 'tis almost incredible what a vast quantity of Water it expelled by Stool, without either disordering or weakning the Patient in the least: Encouraged by this Success, I ordered the same Dose to be repeated daily, intermitting only a Day or two sometimes, when she seemed to be weaker than ordinary. 3. Thus the Water being gradually evacuated, the swelling of the Belly daily abated, and the Patient recovered her perfect Health: The happy Issue of this Cure flatter'd my early Confidence; and with all the rashness of an unexperienced Man, I thought my self to be Master of a Remedy sufficiently able to Conquer the most stubborn Dropsie; but I was soon convinced of my Error.

XVIII. 1. For soon after having the Cure of another Woman sick of the same Disease, after a long Quartane *Ague*, I gave her the aforesaid Syrup, endeavouring to expel the Water, by repeating and gradually encreasing the Doses, but all in vain. At length the Woman seeing that the swelling of her Belly encreased Daily, dismist me; and if I remember well, she was afterwards Cured by another Physician, who made use of more prevalent Remedies. 2. If then upon consideration you find the Patient to be of such a Habit of Body, as mild Purges will do no good upon, you must make use of such as are stronger; in which case, you are to observe what was intimated before, that few Hydragogues being exhibited alone will answer expectation; yet may be made very effectual by mixing them with gentler Medicines. 3. For example, I have often, and with good Success, to Persons of such a Constitution prescribed the following Potion. *Take Tamarinds half an Ounce: Leaves of Sena two Drams: Rheubarb a Dram and half: Boil in a sufficient quantity of Spring or Fountain Water to three Ounces: strain out, and dissolve therein, Manna, Syrup of Roses Solutive, of each an Ounce: Syrup of Buckthorn half an Ounce: Electuary of the Juice of Roses two Drams, mix and make a Potion.* But this Medicine is only to be exhibited to strong Bodies, whom it will Purge after other Catharticks have been used in vain, as I have found by much experience. 4. Or you may give this, *Take White Wine four Ounces, fine pouder of Jalap one Dram, Syrup of Buckthorn one Ounce, mix and make a Potion,* to be given early in the Morning, and to be repeated every Day, or every other Day, as the strength of the Sick will bear it.

XIX. 1. I shall here add another Remedy by me frequently used, which is fit for such as cannot endure the repeated use of other Purges, because that it warms and strengthens at the same time that it evacuates. *Take Resinous Jallop, Hermodactils, of each half an Ounce, Scammony three Drams, Sena two Ounces, Liquorice, Aniseeds, Caraway-seeds, of each half an Ounce, Tops of Wormwood, Sage Leaves, of each a handful, infuse them cold in three pints of common Aqua Vitæ, to be strain'd off, only when it is used.* Take one spoonful at Bed time, and two more the next Morning, encreasing or diminishing the Doses, as the Body of the Sick is able to bear it. 2. There are two other Remedies which I prefer before the rest, as being the most effectual of all which I have hitherto made Tryal of, in the case of such as are difficultly wrought upon by Catharticks. I mean *Elaterium* and *Vinum Benedictum*, which is the Infusion of *Crocus Metallorum*. 3. *Elaterium* or the *Fæcula Cucumeris Sylvestris*, works very effectually in a small Dose, expelling plentifully the Excrements, with Serous and Watry Humours, insomuch that two Grains of it, generally speaking, may be a convenient Dose for most Persons. I usually order them to be mixt with a Scruple of *Pilulæ ex duobus*, and so to be made up into three Pills, to be taken in the Morning. 4. As for the *Vinum Benedictum*, I give an Ounce and half of it, and sometimes two Ounces, if the Patient is very hard to work upon, in the Morning, and repeat it every Day, according to the Patients strength. This tho' it seems only to evacuate the matter contain'd in the Stomach, yet it will at last free the *Abdomen* or Belly, from the Water contained within it. 5. For be-

sides

sides that after the Vomiting ceases, it usually works downwards; and then it is possibie that so great a Concussion and Agitation of the Stomach and Guts, will cause also an Evacuation of Water, into which those parts are immers'd, tho' the passages thro' which it is expelled do not lye naturally open. For whatsoever the Channels be, thro' which the Water is conveyed out of the Cavity of the *Abdomen* into the Intestines, 'tis certain that the same Water is powerfully expell'd by Vomiting, which is caused by the afore-named Medicaments; it is not only expell'd downward by Stool, but even upwards also, thro' the Stomach and Mouth: for after the Patient has vomited two or three times, the Water appears not to be drawn out so much by force of the Medicine; but rather Voluntarily to flow forth in a full stream. And this is plain, from its breaking forth violently in the very Intervals, between the several Vomitings.

XX. 1. But if I find that the *Vinum Benedictum* does not sufficiently Purge the *Abdomen* or lower Region of the Belly, I then add, (and sometimes, tho' rarely, after the third or fourth Dose of the *Vinum* given alone by it self) *Electuary of Roses*, or *Syrup de Spina Cervina*, or both, according to the following Prescript. 2. *Take Water of Carduus Benedictus three Ounces: Vinum Benedictum one Ounce and half, Syrup of Buckthorn half an Ounce, Electuary of Juice of Roses two Drams, mix and make a Potion.* It is plain then, that there are secret passages thro' which the Water is carried from the Cavity of the *Abdomen* to the Intestines; for it is daily observable, that *Hydragogues* evacuate such a great quantity of Water from the Belly by Stool, as if it was contained in the Intestines themselves. 3. But because we cannot solve how it should be, I shall mention that famous Saying of the wisest and best Physician, as all Ages have thought of him, *viz*, *Hippocrates in Libro de Prisca Medicina.* Some Physicians and Philosophers (says he) say, that it is impossible to know the Art of Physick, unless you know what Man is, and how he is made and compacted; but I think, says he, that those things which are said and written of Nature by such Men, more properly belong to the Art of Painting than to the Art of Physick. 4. But I declare from my ultimate Thoughts about Practice, that is is absolutely necessary for a Physician to understand well the Structure of the Humane Body, that he may be the better able to conceive and form true *Ideas* of the Natures and Causes of some Diseases; for he that is ignorant of the Fabrick of the Reins, and of the Passages tending to the Bladder, cannot imagine whence those Symptoms arise which proceed from the Stone in the Reins, or from its being thrust deep into the Ureters. And *Chirurgeons* ought also to understand the Structure of the Humane Body, that in their Operations they may the better avoid such Vessels and Parts, which if they should be violated, would destroy the Patient.

XXI. *Salmon.* The *Evacuators* and *Hydragogues* instanced by our Author, are very excellent in their kinds; but because of that, we are not to omit the discovering of others, which may be as good; for that in all places, and at all times those named may not be at hand, when others, not inferiour to them in Virtue and Efficacy, may be present, and since, according to the vulgar Proverb, *Store is no Sore*, we shall be willing to communicate

(I will not say Secrets, but) some few practical and experimental Remedies which may not be unacceptable to the young Artist, or vulgar Practicer. Of Simples these are the chief, 1 *Jalap.* 2. *Bryony.* 3. *Squills.* 4. *Cambogium.* 5. *Blew Flower deluce Roots.* 6. *Coloquintida.* 7. *The Princes Pouder.* 8. *Impetus Mercurij Aurique*; of all which in order.

XXII. *Salmon.* The *Resinous Jalap* evacuates Water admirably; it may be given in Pouder from half a Dram to a Dram, according to the Age, Strength and Habit of the Body. and repeated as the Physician shall see fit; it is very rarely given in vain; it works not at all in Pills; and but poorly in an Infusion or Decoction, unless it is made in a Spirituous Menstruum. In a Pouder, or an Electuary it is good, and it may be corrected with Aniseeds and Cloves. The Rosin of it is a harsh Medicine, and works not easily, but tears the Stomach and Bowels, unless mixt with some other Pouders to divide the Particles, that they may not stick to the Tunicles of the Stomach and Guts. It may be given from 3 to 10 Grains. *Take Rosin of Jalap, Tartar Vitriolate, Cremor Tartari, of each* 10 *Grains. Troches Achandal two Grains; Euphorbium one Grain; mix them for one or two Doses according to Age and Strength.* Or thus, *Take Resin of Jalap, Mercurius dulcis, of each* 10 *Grains; Scammony, Trochus Achandal, Cambogium, of each three Grains; Oil of Juniperberries, three or four Drops, mix and make them up into ten Pills for one or two Doses. Take Pouder of Resinous Jalop half a Dram; Cambogium eight Grains; Scammony four Grains; Colocynthis two Grains; Euphorbium one Grain; mix them for one Dose,* to be made into a *Bolus* with Honey.

XXIII. *Salmon. Bryony,* our common white kind. It is given in Pouder, and may be taken every Morning, or every other Morning, from two Scruples to a Dram, or four Scruples; it carries off the Water in an extraordinary manner, and seems to be a Specifick for the cure of Dropsies. It may be given in *Infusion in White Port Wine*, from two Drams to four; which is to be drank every Morning, if the strength of the sick will bear it. The Pouder may be made into a Bolus with Honey, and so taken. Or mixt with Syrup of *Sena*, and taken every Morning or every other, as the Physician shall see fit. Or you may give it thus, ℞ *Briony root in fine Pouder, two Scruples; Scammony, Cambogium, of each six Grains; Colocynthis three Grains; Euphorbium one Grain; each being in fine Pouder, mix them for a Dose,* which make up into a Bolus or Pills, with Extract of *Juniper Berries.*

XXIV. *Salmon. Scillæ* vel *Squillæ,* Squills. They are Hot, Dry Attractive, Diuretick, Emetick and Cathartick, such are to be chosen which are fresh and full of Juice; and they are prepared by baking them in Dough, of which a Vinegar and a Wine are made, as is taught in our *Pharmacopœia Londinensis* Lib. 4. Cap. 12. Sect. 10. & Cap. 13. Sect. 6. which are Specifick against *Asthmas, Dropsies,* &c. Both these Preparations, first Vomit, then Purge: I own that they are sick Medicines, but being constantly used every day, do wonders in the cure of these Diseases. The *Wine of Squils* is better for a cold Stomach, and may be given from one Ounce to two, or three, or more: It is Emetick, and taken in the Morning fasting, it opens the Obstructions of the Stomach and Intrails, and evacuates both ways the *Water* and *Serum,* and other *Morbi-*

fick

fick Humours. *The Vinegar of Squils* is beſt for a hot Stomach, and may be given from two to four or ſix Spoonfuls at a time, mixed with a Glaſs of Wine, or clear Ale every Morning faſting, as the former; it performs the ſame things, and with the ſame Dexterity; but the Exhibition is to be regulated according to the ſtrength of the Sick.

XXV. *Salmon. Cambogium*, or *Gutta Gamba*, This is another Specifick in the cure of thoſe Diſeaſes; and may properly be called *the Indian Cure*; for that throughout all the *Weſt-Indies*, it is the only Remedy, with which they cure all ſorts of Dropſies, and if timely made uſe of, before the Patient becomes incurable, ſcarcely ever fails expectation, but reſtores the Patient, in a few days time, to his Priſtine Health. The Doſe of it is from gr. x. to a Scruple; but about fifteen Grains is the common Doſe; very ſtrong Perſons may take it to twenty five Grains, or half a Dram at moſt; the great quantity of Water in the Body, many times diminiſhing the Violence of its Operation. The uſual way of giving it is to make it into fine Pouder, and to mix that with a little Honey, and ſo ſwallow it, or with cold Gruel, a little thicker than ordinary, and ſo to take it, waſhing it down afterwards with a Glaſs of White-wine. But the beſt way is with a few drops of fair Water to make the Pouder up into four or five Pills, and then to ſwallow them down with a Glaſs of White-wine, or a diſh of Gruel, or Mutton-Broth; for thus taken they will ſtay longer in the Stomach, and work more effectually downwards; 'tis hardly to be imagined what a quantity of Water this Medicament being often repeated, will bring away both upwards and downwards, and that in a ſhort time.

XXVI. *Salmon. Blew Flowerdeluce Roots.* This is another famous Remedy for the Cure of theſe Diſeaſes. Of this Root there is prepared, 1. A Liquid Juice. 2. A Pouder. 3. An Electuary. 1. *The Juice of the Root*, is given from one Spoonful to three or more, according to the ſtrength of the Patient, giving Broth, Gruel, or Poſſet-drink, in the time of the Working: It works both upwards and downwards, and evacuates Water and Serum plentifully, and is to be repeated as oft as need requires. 2. *The Pouder of the Root*, is leſs violent than the Juice, but has the ſame Operation, and is to be given from half a Dram to a Dram, or more, mixt with a little Honey, or the Extract of Juniperberries. 3. The Electuary. *Take Pouder of Blew Flowerdeluce Roots; Juice of the Roots; Clarified Honey; of each three Ounces; mix and make an Electuary*; Doſe from two Drams to five or ſix in the Morning faſting; it works both upwards and downwards, and evacuates Flegm, Choler, melancholly and watery Humours, and ſo prevails againſt the Dropſy in an eſpecial manner.

XXVII. *Salmon. Coloquintida.* This is too violent a Medicine to be given alone without the mixture of other things with it; but it is ſometimes neceſſary to be exhibited, becauſe we have a ſtrong and violent Diſeaſe to overcome. It is given either in Tincture, Pouder, Electuary, or Pills, according to the following preſcriptions. 1. The Tincture is *Tinctura aurea nova* deſcribed in *Lib.* 1. *Cap.* 1. *Sect.* 16. of this Work, and to be ſo given, and in ſuch Doſes as is there directed; but in this Diſeaſe it may be given to a double Doſe, if the Patient is ſtrong. 2. The Pouder is thus made, *Take Coloquintida*

In

in fine Pouder; Cloves in fine Pouder of each nine parts; Resinous Scammony six parts; Cambogium three parts; Euphorbium one part; each being in fine pouder, mix them. Dose from half a Scruple to half a Dram, in a Dish of cold Gruel, made pretty thick, that the Pouder may not settle. 3. The Electuary. *Take Colocynthis, Jalap, of each in fine Pouder two Ounces; Scammony, Cambogium, of each half an Ounce; Cloves, black Pepper, Winters Cinnamon, Zedoary, grains of Paradice, of each two Drams, Tartar Vitriolate, one Ounce, mix them, and with Rob, or Honey of Juniperberries 20 Ounces, make an Electuary according to Art.* Dose from half a Dram to a Dram and half, in any proper Vehicle. 4. The Pills. *Take Coloquintida in fine Pouder, Cambogium in fine Pouder, of each half an Ounce; with Syrup of Citron Peels, a sufficient quantity, make a mass of Pills.* Dose from gr. 15. to half a Dram in a Morning fasting, to be repeated as oft as need requires.

XXVIII. *Salmon. The Princes Pouder.* 'Tis a potent Hydragogue, and may be given from gr. 15. to half a Dram, two Scruples, yea to a Dram, according to the strength of the Person which takes it. It evacuates Water both upwards and downwards, after a singular manner, and in great quantities; and commonly cures in taking three, four, or five Doses: But it ought to be given with small intermissions, that the Water being once diminished, may not have liberty and time to encrease again. Begin first with a smaller Dose, as with half a Dram, or two Scruples, and encrease it gradually to the highest, as the strength of the sick is able to bear it; and if it may be, let it be given every other day, the sick drinking plentifully Mutton Broth almost every half hour, during all the time of its working.

XXIX. *Salmon. Impetus Mercurii, Arique.* This may be given in a larger Dose than the former; and in this Disease from one Scruple to four, with respect to the Age and Strength of the Patient, but in an equal Dose with the former it has not an equal strength; this being something the weaker or gentler in Operation, but yet much the more excellent Medicine of the two. Let it be given in the same manner as the former, the particular method of doing which, you may see more at large in *Lib. 1. Cap. 1. Sect. 21.* where we have fully treated of the same.

XXX. In *August*, a poor Woman of about fifty five Years old, desired my help: She had been long afflicted with an Ague, and afterwards had lain in Prison three Years, where suffering much by Cold, her Belly was swoln to a prodigious bigness, beyond whatever I had before seen. 2. I gave her an Ounce and half of the *Vinum Benedictum* daily, for three Days, and afterwards every other day, according to her strength, till she had taken in all six Doses. 3. When she first began to Vomit, her Urine was totally stopt, which afterwards she sometimes voided, tho' but very rarely; the oftner she repeated the Vomit, the greater quantities of Water she voided; and towards the end, both upwards and downwards. 4. After the third Dose the swelling began to abate, and after a Fortnight, she found (by measuring her Body with a Thread) that she was grown three Foot less in compass, having evacuated both upwards and downwards, by Computation, several Gallons of Water. 5. Thus she who before was forced to sleep sitting up in her Bed, lest she should be suffocated by the plenitude of the Water, could now securely

ſecurely lay her Head down on her Pillow, and turn her Body from one ſide to another at pleaſure. 6. But the violent Operation of the Vomitings, had raiſed the Vapors (as they are called) to ſuch a degree, that I durſt not continue any longer in that method; and yet it but too manifeſtly appeared by the remaining ſwelling of the Belly, and the rowling or motion of the Water, which ſhe felt when ſhe turned her Body, as alſo by the Pittings which remained in her Legs, after being preſt upon with ones Fingers, that there was yet much Water left behind in the Body; and therefore I was forced to have recourſe to finiſh the Cure with *Cathartick*s, or purging Medicines, properly ſo called. 7. I proceed then either with the above mentioned purging Potion, or ſome other *Hydrogogue*, which I repeated with longer or ſhorter Intervals between Doſe and Doſe, as the Patients ſtrength would permit, and the occuring Vapours were more or leſs troubleſome; for even the *Cathartick*s did in ſome meaſure produce thoſe Hyſterick Symptoms or Diſorders, tho' not to ſuch a degree, as the *Emetick*s were wont to do; and I continued in this Method till ſhe ſeemed to be perfectly cured.

XXXI. Mean Seaſon, during the Courſe of this Cure, I made the following Remarks, 1. I obſerved, that in the Intervals of purging, or days in which ſhe did not purge, ſhe ſometimes voided great quantities of Water by Stool, and towards the latter end by Urine alſo, to the quantity of about a Gallon; tho' in the mean time I allowed her to drink not above a Pint and half, or a Quart a day. 2. It was worth obſerving likewiſe, that when the Cure was almoſt compleated, if at any time the Vapors were raiſed by Purgation, her Belly would alſo ſwell, but chiefly upwards, as if it had a new inundation of Water, which I know could not be the cauſe of this Symptom, becauſe the Patient drank ſo ſparingly, and therefore I conclude it muſt proceed from Wind, which might be generated by the operation, or working of the Purge; and my Opinion was confirmed by the Event; for always when a Purge was adminiſtred, even after the avoiding a Gallon of Water, ſhe began immediately to ſwell. Nor yet did the Tumor uſually abate, which roſe up even to her Throat, and was attended with ſhortneſs of Breath, till her Body being freed from the troubleſome Conſequences of the Purge, had recovered its natural State and Tranquility; after which the ſwellings and other Symptoms, would preſently vaniſh, till they were provoked or raiſed again by a ſucceeding Purgation. 3. I farther obſerved, that this Woman's Monthly Courſes, which had ceaſed for ſeveral Years, (ſhe being, as I before intimated, about fifty five Years old) began again to flow abundantly; which Flux of Blood being conſidered with the preceding Evacuations, wonderfully encreaſed the train of Hyſterical Symptoms, namely, a violent pain in the Back, and about the Region of the Spleen, the Headach, and a vehement Catarrh or Cough. 4. Beſides, tho' after the Evacuation of ſo great a quantity of Water by the Mouth, Stool an Urine, it could ſcarcely be imagined, that any great quantity ſhould be left behind in her Body; yet her Belly was ſtill as big, or as much ſwoln, as it uſed to be before the Expulſion of any of the ſaid Water. 5. At length then, to quiet theſe Commotions, which had continued a whole Week, after the exhibition of the laſt Purge, I was conſtrained

constrained to order an Ounce and half of *Diacodium* to be given her four Nights together; and the same Dose was given to be repeated three hours after, if she could not Sleep. Thus the Tumour vanished, and the turbulent Symptoms were appeased.

XXXII. Notwithstanding I would have it observed, that if the Patient is troubled only with a small quantity of Water in his Belly, that it cannot be so easily evacuated by the power of the *Vinum Benedictum*, as when the Tumor or quantity of Water is very great, and a vast quantity of it is heaped up within the Cavity of the *Abdomen*. For the very bulk or heap of the Water, whilst it is agitated or disturbed by the operation of the Vomit, contributes wonderfully to promote its Evacuation. And therefore, unless the *Ascites* or swelling of the Belly be very considerable, it will be altogether reasonable, that the whole business of the Evacuation should be performed by *Cathartick*s, or Medicines which purge downwards.

XXXIII. There is also another common and simple Medicine, *viz. The inner Bark or Rindle of Elder* It is prepared *by boiling three handfuls of it in a Quart of Milk and Water to a Pint.* Of this Decoction one half is to be taken in the Morning, and the other half at Night and the same to be continued every day, till the Patient is recovered. This Medicine works upwards and downwards as *Crocus Metallorum* does, and cures the Dropsie after the same manner, *viz.* not by any Specifick Virtue. And therefore when it does not work by either of these ways, or not sufficiently, 'tis altogether useless; but when it operates effectually any way, and especially both ways, 'tis an admirable Remedy.

XXXIV. *Salmon.* Besides our Author's *Vinum Benedictum* and *Elder Bark*, there are some other things of like Nature, very great in their kind also, if not much exceeding them, *viz.* 1. *Mercurius Vitæ*, which is the Empericks or Mountebanks *Arcanum* for the cure of Dropsies, and is given in substance from gr. ij. to four or five; or in infusion in Canary (as you make the *Vinum Benedictum*) to an Ounce. 2. *Vinum Antimoniate*, which is the infusion of the *Regulus* of *Antimony* in Canary. 3. *Vinum Rubellum*, which is the infusion of *Virum Antimonii* in Canary as aforesaid, and both to be exhibited in the same Dose. 4. *Sulphur Antimonij*, which is given from one Grain to five. 5. And *Sulphur Auratum Antimonij*, which is given to vj. Grains, all which things are to be given with Caution. To the number of these things we may also add, 6. *The inner Bark of the Dwarf Elder*, to be prepared and exhibited as the inner Bark of the common Elder. 7. *A strong Decoction of the Leaves of common Elder, or dwarf of Elder*, all which are excellent things in their kind, tho' for this purpose the *Dwarf Elder*, whether as to its Bark or Leaves, is to be preferred before the common Elder. 8. *Infusion or Decoction of Leaves of Asarum* in Wine: You may steep from five Leaves to ten in half a Pint of Wine, all Night, for a Dose, to be given the next Morning, which may be repeated three times a Week. 9. *An Infusion or Decoction of Buck Bean, or Marsh Trefoil*; the *Liquid Juice*, or *Essence* of which may be given from one Ounce to an Ounce and half. In this Section we have said very much in few words, which ought to be well understood and considered when put into practice, tho', at the same time,

time, I think, there is no more danger in any of these Medicaments, than in the *Infusion of Crocus Metallorum*, or *Decoction of Elder Bark*.

XXXV. 1. But we must call to mind, that there are several cases in which the Aqueous Humour which distends the Legs, and even the Cavity of the *Abdomen*, must be evacuated neither by Vomits nor Purges. 2. As when the Dropsie happens after a long Consumption; or proceeds from the Corruption and Putrification of some of the Intrails; or, from the Relaxation, or Abolition of the Tone of the Blood; or, from a Dissipation of the Spirits; or, is caused by the long continuance of Fistula's in the fleshy parts, by which much of the Nutriment or Substance of the Body has been wasted; or, from immoderate Evacuations of Humours or Spirits by Salivation, Sweating, vehement Purgation, and poor and thin Diet, which has been imposed to excess in the Cure of the foul Disease. 3. In these, and such other like Cases, Purging is not only useless, but even encreases the Disease, by farther weakening the *Tone* of the Blood. 4. Wherefore things being in such a Condition, the Cure must be attempted by strengthening and restoring the Blood and Tone of the *Viscera*; in order to which, besides the Confortatives afterwards to be named, I have found by certain Experience, that change of Air, and convenient Exercise, are very much conducive. 5. By this Method the Spirits will be revived; and the Bowels or Instruments of Excretion inabled to perform their Duties, and discharge their respective Offices.

XXXVI. 1. But these are not the only cases in which the Emeticks and Catharticks are useless or hurtful: for we must refuse them, if the Patient is either of a weak Habit or Constitution of Body: Or, if a Woman, and she be subject to Vapors, Hysterick Passions, or disorderly Motions of the Animal Spirits. 2. In these cases we must commit the Evacuation of the Water to *Diureticks*: among which, the most (not to say, the only) effectual Medicaments are those which are made of *Lixiviate Salts*, which may be prepared indifferently of the Ashes of any kind of Plants. 3. Now since *Broom* is very easie to be had, and besides is commonly reputed to be good against a *Dropsie*; I usually prescribe a pound of its Ashes to be infused cold, in two quarts of *Rhenish Wine*, adding a Pugil or two of the Leaves of common Wormwood; and order the Patient to Drink 4 Ounces of the strained Liquor in the Morning; as much at five in the Afternoon; and the like quantity at Night. 4. This Medicine I order to be repeated in like Doses daily, till the swelling disappears; and by this Remedy alone, I have seen Dropsies Cured, which have been given over for desperate, in such whose weak Habits of Body and Constitutions could not bear with Purgation.

XXXVII. *Salmon.* Among the number of Lixival Salts, that which is most common, and easiest to be advanced into Practice is *Pot-Ashes*; or the Salt educed from them: and the next is *Calcin'd Tartar*, and the Salt educed from it. But besides these there are Salts of another nature, such as *Sal-Nitre*, and that which is educed from it, which is *Sal Prunellæ*; both which do Wonders in their kind, if given by a prudent hand. We have also other *Diuretick Salts* which are *Acid and Liquid*, as *Oil and Spirit of Salt*, with the use of some small quantity of which, I have seen the most

most inveterate and obstinate Dropsies cured, being daily taken to a grateful Acidity, in all that they drank, whether Ale, Beer, or Wine.

XXXVIII. 1. The Water being now expell'd, which is the near or immediate cause of the Disease; you are in the next place to remove the Antecedent or Original Cause, which consists in the Discracy or Weakness of the Blood, which is to be done by a long, and constant use of heating and corroborating Medicaments, which may prevent a new Inundation of Water. 2. For tho' it may often happen, that young Persons may be cured simply by Purgation, their Natural Heat (being free from the pressure and Burthen of the Water) supplying the place of the forementioned Remedies, yet it will be absolutely necessary for Old and infirm People, after the Expulsion of the Water, to have immediate recourse to such Simples which warm and invigorate the Blood. 3. For which intention, it will be necessary to use the same Remedies, and observe the same Rules and Directions, concerning the *Six Non-naturals*, which we have recommended in the Cure of the Gout, only *Wine*, which Gouty Persons ought totally to abstain from, is in this Case, not only harmless and allowable, but also very profitable, yea tho' it be used as ordinary drink. 4. For all thin and cooling Liquors (how pleasant soever they may be to the Palate of the Sick, by reason of the continual Thirst which accompanies this Disease) make them more Flegmatick, and increase the Water, and so are very rarely to be allowed. 5. But strong Liquors (provided they be not Distilled Spirits) do much promote and advance the Cure, so much, that sometimes it is even performed by them alone; especially if in the beginning of the Disease, whilst the *Abdomen* is not very much distended by the Water, and those strong Drinks be withal, impregnated with heating and strengthning Herbs, for which reason, it is absolutely necessary that the Patient, (if his condition will allow of it) drink Wine, all the while he is in Cure, or at least, instead of Wine strong Beer; but they ought not to begin drinking of them, till the Passages are somewhat opened, and a way made for the Water.

XXXIX. 1. Now where the Poverty of the Sick will not allow better Provision, I have often, and with very good Success prescribed *strong Ale*, to be used as their ordinary Drink, in which a sufficient quantity of *Horse Radish Roots*, *Leaves of common Wormwood*, *Garden Scurvy-Grass*, *Sage*, *the lesser Centory*, *and Broom-tops had been infused*. 2. As for the Richer sort, they may make use of *Canary* in like manner, impregnated with the same bitter Herbs; a small draught of which may be taken twice or thrice a day, during the use of the abovementioned Remedies. 3. Or if the sick dislike that, Wormwood Wine may be substituted in its place, of which they may drink nine Spoonfuls at a time, after taking two Drams of the following Digestive Electuary, which is to be taken at the Physical Hours, *viz.* in the Morning fasting, at four after Noon, and at Night. 4. Electuarium Digestivum. *Take Roots of Angelica*, *Calamus Aromaticus*, *Masterwort*, *and of Elecampane*; *Leaves of common Woormwood*, *lesser Centory*, *white Horehound*, *Germander*, *Ground Pine*, *Scordum*, *common Calamint*, *Fetherfew*, *Meadow Saxifrage*, *Hypericon*, *Golden Rod*, *Wild Thyme*, *Mint*, *Sage*, *Rue*, *Carduus benedictus*, *Pennyroyal*, *Southernwood*;

Flowers

Flowers of Camomile, Tansie, Lilly Convally, English Saffron; seeds of Thlapsi, Garden Scurvygrass, Caraways, and Juniperberries. Gather the Roots, Herbs and Flowers when they are in their vigor; dry them, and keep them in Paper Bags, till they may be made into a fine Powder; then take six Ounces of each, mix them well, and with a sufficient quantity of depurated Honey and Canary Wine, make an Electuary of due consistency according to Art. This Electuary exceeds all other Corroborating Medicines whatsoever. 5. Or he may use this that follows. *Take of Conserve of Garden Scurvy-grass, an Ounce an half; Conserve of Roman Wormwood, and of the yellow of Orange Peels, of each an Ounce; Angelica and Nutmeg Candied, of each half an Ounce; Venice Treacle three Drams; compound Powder of Aron Root, two Drams; with Syrup of Oranges a sufficient quantity, make an Electuary.* 6. But the best Remedy is the *Peruvian Cortex* or *Bark*, which strengthens and invigorates the Blood, a small quantity of it being taken Morning and Evening. 7. Now this is also to be noted, that all digestive Remedies whatsoever, whether they consist of Medicines, Diet, or Exercise, must not be used by fits, or for a while only, but constantly, and with all possible diligence; for seeing in this Disease, and several other Chronick Distempers, the Cause grows in length of time, to be Habitual; you must not think, that the Cure can be done by a slight and momentary alteration of the Blood and Humours, but rather, that the Constitution must be changed, and so the whole Man renewed.

XL. 1. However, if the Sick must be allowed to Drink weaker Liquors, he must use them very sparingly, because it has been observed, that some have been cured only by a total abstinence from Drink. 2. But because this Disease is, for the most part, attended with a very troublesome Thirst, the Patient may be allowed now and then to wash his Mouth and Throat with cold Water, a little acuated with *Spirit of Vitriol*, and sometimes to hold in his Mouth *Tamarina's*; or to chew and suck a *Limon*, by taking care withal, that he swallows none of them. 3. In an incipient Dropsy, or when it is in beginning, *Steel* has been found to be none of the least effectual Remedies, because it warms and invigorates the Blood. 4. And for the same Reason *Garlick* has been found profitable, by the use of which alone, yea, without Purgation, the Dropsy has (to my knowledge) been cur'd, tho' not by my Advice.

XLI. Moreover, when the Legs and Feet are only swoln, or the Belly but moderately distended, it is not always necessary, immediately to use *Emeticks* and *Cathartick*s; for that without them the Cure is very often performed by the aforementioned heating and corroborating Liquors. 2. But above all it is to be observed, that when the Cure is attempted only with *Corroboratives* and *Lixiviates*, the Patient is never to be Purged with any Medicament, whether strong or gentle, whilst the Blood is invigorating with those things; because *Cathartick*s certainly overthrow or destroy whatever has been done by the *Corroborants*, the truth of which Assertion, Experience has too often confirmed. 3. Yet notwithstanding in the other way by *Emeticks* and *Cathartick*s, *Coroboratives* are sometimes to be interposed for strengthening the Body, as the reason

ſon of the Cure may inform and require.

XLII. *Salmon.* If to the Diet-Drink at Sect. 39. aforegoing, a proportional part of *Hops* and *Water Trefoil* or *Buck-Bean* be added, it will make it ſo much the more potent; becauſe I have obſerved a ſtrong Decoction or Infuſion of *Hops* alone, or of *Marſh Trefoil* alone, and ſometimes of them both together in equal quantities, made in ſtrong Ale or Beer, or in good ſtrong white *Lisbon* Wine, or choice Canary, has ſometimes cured an incipient Dropſie, yea, ſometimes when it had been a conſiderable time confirmed; for thoſe two Ingredients or Simples, are not only extraordinary Corroboratives, but alſo potent Diureticks, by which means they do two things at once, *viz.* evacuate the Water, and ſtrengthen the Blood together.

XLIII. *Salmon.* As for *Garlick*, I have known ſeveral Dropſies cured with it; for that alſo, beſides its heating property, and invigorating the Blood, is a moſt admirable Diuretick: And not much inferiour to it is *Muſtard Seed*, being throughly bruiſed, a *Pound to a Gallon of Rheniſh Wine, or White Port, or Lisbon, and infuſed therein cold*, which, after forty eight Hours, may be drank as ordinary Drink. A Belly which ſome thought to have almoſt a Kilderkin of Water in it, I ſaw brought down in about ſix Weeks time. To theſe things we may add, *Pellitory of the Wall*; a Syrup being made of the Juice thereof with Honey or Sugar, and given two, three, or four Spoonfuls at a time in the Morning faſting, at four in the Afternoon, and as much at Bed-time, has cured Dropſies, (to my knowlede) after all other things have failed.

XLIV. 1. 'Tis alſo to be obſerved, that ſometimes the Cure remains imperfect, when all has been done that can be both by *Evacuatives* and *Corroboratives*, and after an exact performance of the Courſe which has been here preſcribed. 2. For in a long and tedious *Aſcites* it often comes to paſs, that by a long continuance of the Water in the Belly, that the Intrails are vitiated or corrupted, and, as it were parboiled; and both they and the adjacent Parts, are wholly putrified; preternatural Glands and Bladders full of corrupt or bloody Matter generated, and all within the Cavity of the *Abdomen* deſtroyed; as it evidently appears in the Diſſection of the Bodies of ſuch who died of an *Aſcites*. 3. When things are come to this paſs, as far as I can ſee, all the Aſſiſtance of Art is uſeleſs; yet it is the Duty of a Phyſician, ſince he can't certainly know in what degree the Bowels are Corrupted, to endeavour with all his might to reſiſt the prevailing Diſtemper, both by *Evacuatives* and *Conjortatives*, and neither to be diſheartned himſelf, nor to diſcourage his Patient. 4. For in many Diſeaſes, after the Morbifick Matter is wholly removed, we ſee that provident Nature works wonders, and by unacountable Methods protects the Patient from the fatal Conſequences of the Diſtemper. 5. For which Reaſon, even in the moſt inveterate and deſperate *Aſcites*, you ought to proceed exactly after the ſame manner, as if the Diſeaſe was but juſt in its beginning.

XLV. 1. As for Topicks or Externals; all the Remarks which I have made cannot furniſh me with one Inſtance of any conſiderable advantage, that accrued from the uſe of them; the leaſt hurtful are ſuch as are applied to the *Abdomen*, by

by way of *Liniment* or *Cataplasm*, to Discuss; tho', after all, I do not apprehend how that can be done. 2. 'Tis true, there are things which are propos'd by some for Remedies, which are so far from doing good, that they do a great deal of hurt; such as the *Ointments* which are made of *strong Cathartick*s, which they apply to the *Abdomen*; also the *Vesicatories*, which some apply to attract the Water out of the Legs, which are very much distended. 3. Both these Methods are dangerous; for by the first, the purging force of the Ingredients does sometimes pierce so deep into the Muscles and Membranes, that an *Hypercatharsis*, or over Purging is caused, so great, as can never be stopt by any Remedies. 4. And the Vesicatories which are applyed to the Legs by Empiricks, quite extinguish the natural heat, which before was almost overcome by the Water; whence it comes to pass (the Animal Spirits being also deficient) that a *Gangrene* many times follows, which is too frequent in this case. 5. For the least Wound or Sore, in the Flesh of Hydropicks, more especially if it is made in a depending part, is very difficult to be cured; because the very substance of the Flesh in those parts, does so abound with Water, that if the smallest hole be opened, the Humour flows continually, whereby the healing is hindred. 6. And as to the *Paracenthesis*, or Tapping of the Belly (as they call it) or *making a Puncture with a Needle*, they are attended with no less danger, and are equally apt to produce the same fatal Consequences; nor tho' commended by some, are they to be used with greater success and less hazard than Blistering.

XLVI. 1. To conclude; altho a confirmed *Ascites* has been always accounted a desperate Disease; yet it is manifest by the success of Cures, that it may as certainly be Cured by the Method described, or here laid down in this Discourse, as many other Diseases, which are commonly not thought to be so fatal. 2. But if any one will yet blame these Remedies for being so simple and really inartificial; I should rather think him wicked for being displeased, that others should be cured with such plain Remedies, whilst he would be glad, that himself, his Wife, or Children, when at any time sick, might recover their Healths by the most easie and least chargeable means. 3. Such Coxcombs only expose themselves; for the Regalia's and Dignity of the Medical Art, are more discovered by curing of Diseases, than by the Artificial Forms of Compositions.

XLVII. *Salmon.* It is my Opinion, that there is no danger in the *Paracenthesis*, no more than in the opening of a Vein; for the Patient never does ill by the use thereof, if the *Viscera* be sound and not Vitiated, and that it is much the easier, better, and safer way to extract the Water that way, than by the tedious, violent, yea, and dangerous way of *Emeticks* and *Cathartick*s, which is always so to the Poor Patient, if he is of a weak or consumptive, or ill habit of Body. And therefore if it appears once to be an *Ascites* confirmed, the sooner you come to the business of Tapping,

ping, the better it is; lest, if you should delay it too long, the Bowels should be corrupted, and then whether you Tap, or Tap not, the Patient must certainly die. I have Tapped several, and all of them with good success, many of them being alive several Years after, giving them immediately upon Tapping Corroboratives to strengthen the Blood, and restore it to its due *Crasis*.

XLVIII. *Salmon.* When therefore it appears to be a confirmed *Ascites*, and the quantity of Water to be very great, Authors order the *Paracenthesis* to be made in the side, some distance from the *Linea alba*, according to the *Ductus* of the *Fibres*. And as it is very safe, which I know by manifold Experience, so the sooner it is done, so much the better, for the reason before given. But our Physicians and Chirurgians in the *West Indies*, and many other parts of the World, now perform the Operation by the *Navel*, more especially, if Nature indicates that Place or Part, by thrusting it forth. Otherwise they raise it with Cupping Glasses; and so they Tap their *Negros* in *Barbadoes*, *Jamaica*, &c. which indeed is much easier to be done, and safer too, than that which is done with a Steel Pipe on the side. I have seen Dr *Tho. Gardiner*, the late King's and now one of the Queens chief Chirurgians, do several of this Kind, with a great deal of Exquisiteness and Facility, the Patient scarcely so much as feeling the Operation. See more of the *Cure of a Dropsie* in the third Edition of our *Synopsis Medicinæ*, Lib. VI. Cap. IV. where the Matter is handled at large.

CHAP. IV. *Of the* GOUT.

§. 1. THis invades the Sick, about the latter end of *January*, or beginning of *February*, and nere the Morning Watch, with a pain possessing the great Toe in many; but sometimes the Heel, the Ancles, or the Leg. 2. Presently after there follows a great coldness, with quaking or shaking of the whole Body, and some little Fever; the pain grows greater and greater by degrees (the Rigor and shaking gradually going off) and this every hour, till Day approaches; sometimes with a strong Tension or Swelling; sometimes the pain is as if Dogs were gnawing the part; and sometimes as it were with a great pressing and squeezing. 3. Hence by reason of the Exquisite Pain, the Patient is scarcely able to endure, either the weight of the Bed-cloths, or the shaking of the Bed, by strong or hard walking in the Room. 4. The pain scarcely remits before two or three in the Morning, or till neerly half the Night is over past, from the first appulse of the Fit, and then a gentle Sweat coming on, the Sick falls into a Sleep; from which awaking, and the pain much abated, the part affected is immediately found to swell,

5. The

5. The following day, and it may be for two or three Days, the Pain is excited in the place affected, more vehemently towards Night; and then in the Morning about Cock Crowing, the Sick has ease again: and in a few days after the other Foot may possibly be affected in the same manner, and with the same kind of Pain. 6. Afterwards the pain afflicts both Feet, and the following Fits become irregular, as well in respect of their times of beginning, as of their length and continuance; and from a Series of these little Fits or Exasperations, the principal *Paroxysm* or Fit is made up, which is said to be either longer or shorter, according to the Age of the Sick.

II. 1. In such who are more young and strong, and very seldom have the *Gout*, the *Paroxysm* may last about fourteen Days; but in elderly People and such as are often afflicted therewith, it scarcely goes off in two Months time; and in such as are broken, or much weakened, either by their Years or long continuance of the Disease, it commonly continues till the heat of Summer. 2. For the first fourteen days, the Urine is of a higher Colour, with a red Sediment, and abounding with small Sand, and the Belly almost bound up; the Appetite also is much dejected, and a coldness seizes the whole Body about Evening, which lasts out the whole Fit. 3. And in the going off of the Fit, an itching (so great as scarcely to be born) comes between the Toes of the affected Foot, from whence falls a kind of Leprous Scurff, so that the Feet, seem to be scaled. 4. Neither does the pain seem only to infest the Feet; but when from an unskilful application of Medicines, the Gout shall be enraged; or from the length and obstinacy of the Disease is perverted, as it were, by the vehemency and fury thereof; it then afflicts other Parts, as the Hands, Wrists, Elbows, Knees and other places. 5. And sometimes one or more of the Fingers are distorted or made crooked, and the Disease makes them like a bunch of Parsneps, hurting them by little and little in their motion. 6. And at length generating Tophs, and chalky Concretions about the Ligaments of the Joynts, sometimes like Crabs-Eyes; and sometimes in the Elbows a white hard Matter, nearly as large as an Egg, which gradually is inflamed with a kind of redness.

III. 1. Sometimes it afflicts the Thigh, making it uneasie, as if there was a heavy Weight hung there, but without any notable Pain, which being derived to the Knee, is there made more acid, and the Sick have their Joints almost every where contracted and weakened. 2. The colour of the Urine looks almost like that in a *Diabetes*; the Back and other parts extreamly itch, chiefly about Bed-time. 3. After many and cruel Torments, the following Paroxysms or Fits (Nature being oppressed, partly by the weight of the peccant Matter, and partly with Age) make the Patient weak, tho the pain be more gentle. 4. And in the place of the usual pain, there overtakes the Patient a certain sickness at Stomach, with a Pain of the Belly, a spontaneous Lassi-

tude, or Feebleness, and sometimes a propension to a *Diarrhea*, or Flux of the Belly, which Symptoms vanish, as oft as the pain returns into the Joynts. 5. And thus sometimes, by the pain being in the Joynts, and sometimes by being in the Stomach, taking its Course, as it were, by turns, the Patient becomes so weakned, that the *Paroxysm* upon its return, makes a much longer stay. 6. In many People, this Disease does breed the Stone in the Reins, as proceeding from the same tartarous and viscous Matter. 7. Women are more rarely troubled therewith, scarcely till they are grown old, unless they be Virago's; nor does it scarcely ever seize Children, or the younger sort of People.

IV. *Salmon.* This Disease is called in Greek Ἀρθρῖτις; in Latin, *Arthritis*, also, *Morbus Articularis*, *Morbus Arthriticus*; by *Celsus*, *Morbus Articulorum*; and by *Paracelsus*, *Morbus Tartareus*; by barbarous Authors, *Gutta, ex defluxu guttatim facto*, whence properly might come our English Name the *Gout*.

V. *Salmon. The Kinds.* There are severally species of it, as 1. *Rheumatism*, *Arthritis vaga*, the Running *Gout*, of which we have treated already. 2. *Arthritis fixata*, the fixed *Gout*, which is manifold according to the Joynts it afflicts; as 1. Ὀνάγρα, *Onagra*, the Shoulder *Gout*. 2 Χειράγρα, *Chiragra*, the Hand-*Gout*. 3. Ἰσχιὰς ἢ σχιατικὴ, *Ischias vel Sciatica*, the Hip *Gout*. 4. Γονάγρα, *Gonagra*, the Knee-*Gout*. 5. Ποδάγρα *Podagra*, The Foot-*Gout*. It may also be 1. *Hereditary*, from the Parents, as oftentimes the *Gout* is. 2. *Adventitious*, which comes imediately to the Patient from several adventitious Causes in himself.

VI. *Salmon. The Parts affected* are the Joynts, and Nervous and Tendinous Parts, and sometimes the *Stomach* and *Bowels*, but when it comes into the *Stomach*, it many times kills the Patient, especially if he be of a weak or worn-out Body; but the Parts from whence the original Cause springs, are the *Stomach* and *Mesentery*. It is a vehement pain of the Joynts, which arises from some Tartarous, Acid or Sharp Humours thrust forth into those parts, which irritates and hurts the Fibres of the Nerves and Tendons, encompassing the Joynt.

VII. *Salmon. The Signs.* Our Author has given you some of the Signs and Symptoms of the *Gout*, but it does not happen to all People whom it afflicts alike: Nor does it begin at any set Hour of Night or Day; nor first in the *great Toe* in many Patients; for some who have been vehemently troubled with it for many Years, never had it in that part, nor yet in the Feet; but in some Patients it begins first in one part; in another, it begins in another part; and in a third, in a part different from both them, *&c.* but I do not say but that in the progress of the Disease it may be diverted, or carried to several other parts according as the predominant Cause may lead it.

VIII. *Salmon.* It is known in its first approaches by the pain of the Part or Joynt; after some little time it swells, either little or much, according to the quantity of the Humour protruded; and then after that, if the Morbifick Matter

Matter is much, it grows red, and becomes very much inflamed. If it comes in the Hands, or they are the principal parts affected, it commonly begins in the Thumbs of the left or right Hands, or in the little Fingers of the same; if both Hands are affected, it comes first in both the Thumbs; if the Arms are affected, it then begins in the VVrists; but if it begins in the Feet, usually the great Toe of the left Foot is first affected; but if at the beginning both Feet are equally affected, then it first seizes both the great Toes, first the left for the most part, then the right. If it seizes the Legs, then it begins in the Ancle; and according to the place where the Morbifick Matter tends, to that part it translates the pain; and where the pain is, it either causes a numbness in the part, or else a more exquisite sensibleness of the same, by which it becomes affected with the least touch; and sometimes the pain is so vehement as to cause a small Fever.

IX. *Salmon.* Sometimes when it begins in the great Toe and Foot, it creeps up to the Ancle, and very much swells the whole Foot; and in others it misses the Ancle, and gets up to the Knee, which gives to the parts it affects besides the Pain, an impotency of Motion: In some the Swelling is with Redness an Inflamation; and yet in many others there is no Inflamation nor Redness, but the Tumour has the natural colour of the Skin. Some affected with this Disease have a light Fever, with Headach, loss of Appetite, Thirst, and great faintness, and in the Urine there is red Gravel, which sticks to the bottom and sides of the Pot. In the *Sciatica* there is a pain on that side; it begins with a coldness, is dull or heavy, and gradually encreases for three, four, or five, or six days, till it comes as it were to the height, so that the Patient cannot stir that Leg.

X. *Salmon.* Moreover, when the Disease becomes inveterate, the Tartar, or Morbifick Humour many times coagulates and hardens, so that sometimes all the Joints of the Fingers, sometimes the Elbows, and many times the Heels of the Feet become Stoney, or Chalky; so that I have seen some mark with their Knuckles as if they had Chalk-Stones in their Hands. These Chalk-Stones in time break the Skin so much as to fall out, and new Chalk comes in their places; insomuch, that out of the Heels of some Arthriticks, several Pounds of *Chalk*, or *Coagulated Tartar* has been taken. Again, in others who recover of this Disease, after all the pain and swelling is gone, the Parts are so debilitated, and such an Impotency or Weakness remains in them, so as to become in a manner totally useless, not having so much strength as to hold up a Straw, or break a Hair in pieces, which imbecility continues after the Disease is wholly gone, sometimes for several Weeks or Months, and then at length the pristine Strength returns.

XI. *Salmon. The Causes.* The Antients tell us, that the conjoined or nere Cause, is a Flux of Humors into a Part or Joint, which is made weak, either naturally, or by accident. And this infirm Disposition they sup-

pose, or else it would not receive the Humour. *Paracelsus* says, that it proceeds from, or is caused of *Tartar*, and therefore calls it a Tartarous Disease; and that it is a mixtion of an acid Liquor or Salt with the *Synovia*, which curdles it like Cheese, and makes it Opake. Now this *Synovia*, is a pellucid Mucilage like the Whites of Eggs, or such as runs out of Calves Feet when they are cut off; and this *Synovia* being hardned is the Chalky Matter, so very common to Gouty Persons. *Helmont* says, its Original is in the Stomach, which breeds an Acid which infects the *Archæus*; this Acid insinuating itself into the *Synovia*, coagulates it, and at length by a preternatural heat, it is hardned into *Chalk*, and that the intensenes or remissnes of the pain is according to the difference of the Salts whence the acidity proceeds. But *Sylvius* makes this acidity, to proceed from the Pancreatick-Juice, and some Salt in the Bile and Salival Humour mixing themselves together in the Guts.

XII. *Salmon.* In Wine-bibers, the procatartick Cause is Wine, whose *Tartar*, creates an acid *Lympha*: In other Persons intemperance creates *Tartar*, as also, want of cleansing the Stomach, Guts, Reins, and Bladder by Emeticks, Cathartick and Diureticks, where the acid Fæculencies remaining, become an Acid and Vitious *Tartar*, which corrupting the *Lympha*, and other Juices create the antecedent Cause; which Nature in her own defence, to save the Principal and Noble Parts from Hurt and Contamination, protrudes to the more extream parts, as the Joynts of the Hands, Arms, Legs and Feet; where continuing to flow, Pain, Tumour, Redness, and Inflamation are excited, by the sharp Particles of the Morbifick Matter pricking the sensible Fibres of the Nerves and Tendons; and by the exuberant quantity thereof also extending the same. This Matter remaining long in the parts affected (not being discust or recalled, and carried off by Vomit, Urine, or Stool) by degrees, not only coagulates, but also hardens and becomes Chalk or Stone; or if it be diverted to the Reins, and not carryed off by Diureticks, creates the *Calculus* there.

XIII. *Salmon. The Prognosticks.* If it happens to be in a Cachectick or evil Habit of Body, or in a Scorbutick Constitution, or in one subject to strumous Tumours, or where a *Calculus* attends, it is of very difficult Cure, and so much the more, if it is become inveterate or habitual, or the Fits continue long at a time, as many Months together. It is seldom cured in old People, nor where the Joynts come to be Knotted. It is said to be uncurable when the Morbifick Matter is changed into Chalk or Stones. And it is for the most part mortal when it is translated from the extream parts, especially from the inferior and descending into the Stomach or Guts, unless it can be immediately removed, or the Patient is youthful and very strong. Even at the first approaches to any Patient, the event is very uncertain in respect both

both to the Fit and the whole course of the Disease, for sometimes the Fit continues a long time, and sometimes it goes off quickly. An hereditary *Gout* is accounted among the incurables. *Hippocrates* says, that Men before the use of *Venus*, nor Women before their *Menses*, have not the *Gout*. It is of evil Consequence if it happens to a Person who has been long weakned by a preceding Disease; and in old Men it often induces a Palsy. If it settles in the Nape of the Neck, at the beginning of the Spinal Marrow, it is mortal. But if it happens to young Persons, not much given to Wine nor *Venus*, nor of a Scorbutick, Cachectick, Strumous or Tabifick habit of Body, and who will be subject to follow Rules, it will admit of Cure by proper Remedies.

XIV. *Salmon. As to the Diet and way of Living*, he ought to dwell in a clear, pure and serene Air, not too hot, nor too cold. His Meat ought to be easie of Digestion, and of which he ought to eat sparingly; for cramming the Stomach and Belly feeds and nourishes the Disease: All salt and pickled Meats, and food of vast Nourishment is to be avoided. His Drink ought to be Medical, or Water impregnated with Arthriticks, but all Wines are to be avoided as Poison. Milk and Water in Arthriticks sometimes does well, but in other People it palls the Stomach, and is apt to destroy the Appetite and Digestion, and cause Fluxes. *Venus* ought to be avoided; Sleeping and Watching ought to be moderate; Exercise, as Riding in a Coach or Horse-Back, if the Patient can bear it, is good; so also other moderate Exercises; but he ought not to confine himself to his Chair, or his Chamber, if he can avoid it. The Body ought to be kept soluble, not bound, and the Urine to pass freely and plentifully, because, sometimes the Morbifick Cause or Matter is pist away. Lastly, the Mind is to be kept pleasant, easie and chearful, and he ought to have pleasant and good Company, for Grief alone I have known sometimes to cause the *Gout*.

XV. The Indications of Cure have respect, 1. To the Stomach, that the Concoction may be strengthened, and the indigestion removed by Medicines, or Diet, or Exercise. 2. Or to the use of some of the six Non-naturals. 3. Bleeding, Purging, nor Sweating, will simply answer the end; but such as have, together with the *Gout*, the Stone in the Reins (from whence comes pissing of Blood) may purge once a Week with *Manna*, giving every Night after the purgation is over, some *Anodyn*, or easer of pain. 4. Such Medicines which are thought to quadrate with the aforementioned Indication, are such as moderately heat, and are either bitter, or gently smite the Tongue; of which kind are *Roots of Angelica, of Elecampane*; *leaves of Wormwood, of lesser Centory, of Camomil, of ground Pine*, &c. To which may be added Antiscorbuticks, as *Roots of Horse Radish*; *leaves of Garden Scurvy grass, Water-Cresses*, &c. 5. But these hot things are more sparingly to be used, (because they are apt to excite the Morbifick Mat-

ter) than those other, which more gently warm, and by their bitterness strengthen the Stomach. 6. The *Electuarium Digestivum*, or that following it, both of which are described in the aforegoing *Chap.* III. *Sect.* XXXIX. may be of good use here, of which the Sick may take a quarter of an Ounce twice a day, *viz.* Morning and Night, drinking after it five or six Spoonfuls of this following distilled Water. 7. *Take Horse Radish Roots sliced thin, three Ounces; Garden Scurvygrass, twelve handfuls; Brooklime, Water-Cresses, Sage, Mint, of each six handfuls; yellow of Orange Peels,* N°. vj. *Nutmegs bruised,* N°. ij. *Brumstik Beer, or Mum, six Quarts; mix them, and distil off in a common Still, three Quarts of Water, which keep for use.*

XVI. 1. Now these digestive Remedies are constantly, assiduously, and with all diligence to be taken; but more especially to be brought into use in the intervals of the *Paroxysms.* 2. A mean is also to be observed in Diet, that more Food may not be taken in than the Stomach is able to concoct; nor on the contrary, too little; nor is Abstinence or Fasting good, because thereby the Parts are robbed of their proportion of Nutriment, which should preserve and keep their Strength and Vigour. 3. But as to the quality of Food, the Palate of the Sick is in some measure to be consulted; he may eat of one kind of Food every meal (Flesh excepted,) he may eat of other things at pleasure, but let them not be sharp things, nor things pickled with Salt or Spices. 4. It is good for him who is troubled with the Concretion of the Stone, to eat a Dinner, but not a Supper; in place of which he may drink a draught of some sort of small Beer. 5. Those are said to be the best sort of Liquors, which are neither strong like Wine, nor yet weak like Water, nor by their coldness hurt the Stomach; of which kind is our *London* small Beer; or Water mixt with a little Wine; but simple and crude Water is dangerous. 6. And when the whole substance almost of the Body degenerates into the *Gout*, or a Gouty state and Habit, he must abstain from fermented Liquors, of what kind soever. and use as his constant Drink the *Decoctum Dieteticum* (in *Lib.* 1. *Cap.* 1. *Sect.* 5. of this Work,) as soon as he shall be freed from the *Paroxysm*, and during the whole Course of his Life.

XVII. 1. But if the Sick from a long and too liberal use of inebriating Liquors, or from a more advanced Age, as being something in Years, or from an exceeding debility or weakness of Body, cannot digest his Food without drinking Wine; then a draught of Spanish Wine, as Canary, Sherry, Madera, *&c.* must be allowed him at Meals, rejecting the *Decoctum Dieteticum.* 2. In Winter time let the Sick go to Bed at seasonable Hours, and rise early in the Morning; let him be quiet and easie in his Mind, not intent too much in Studies, nor too serious, but cheerful and pleasant. 3. And with all other things, let him daily use Exercise of Body (which he may easily accustom

cuſtom himſelf to) which let be moderate and conſtant, never exceeding a due meaſure. 4. As to the kind of Exerciſe, when neither the greatneſs of Age, nor the being afflicted with the Stone do forbid it, Riding on Horſeback is to be done before all others, and to be conſtantly and daily uſed in a healthful Air; or at leaſt riding out in a Coach. 5. Let him not indulge himſelf to Laſcivious and Venereal Pleaſure; nor let any External Medicines be applied. 6. And altho' nothing of moment is to be attempted in the *Paroxyſm*, yet perhaps it may conduce to the Cure, when chiefly by the Diſeaſe it is forbidden, to abſtain for ſome days from Fleſh, and to uſe Gruel, or ſome other like Food. 7. But if the Animal Spirits are apt to run into Confuſion and Diſorder, the Abſtinence from Fleſh muſt not be longer than the Stomach may be averſe to the uſe thereof, nor ought you to err in the quantity or quality of the Meat or Drink received in. 8. If thoſe Symptoms ſhall happen in a Fit, whereby the Sick is, or ſhall be in danger of his Life, the chief of which are Pain and Sickneſs at the Stomach, gripings and torment in the Bowels, as it were from Wind: there is nothing better in this Caſe, than forthwith to drink a little Glaſs of Canary, and to exerciſe upon it.

XVIII. 1. But if the Symptoms by reaſon of their violence, will not admit of a Truce, or give any reſpite to the Sick, Death is vehemently threatned. 2. In this caſe, (the Diſeaſe not having yet ſeized the Head) you muſt immediately fly to your *Laudanum*, giving of the *Liquid Laudanum*, twenty Drops in a draught of *Aqua Epidemica*, the Patient being in Bed and repoſing himſelf to Reſt. 3. By this very method, the Author delivered himſelf from imminent Death, which he fell into the danger of, through an error in the uſe of ſome of the ſix Non-naturals, whereby he was taken with a wonderful ſickneſs at Stomach, with Vomiting, and ſome kind of griping or pain in the Belly; his Joints in the mean time (by the retroceſſion of the Gouty Matter) being void of pain, and more apt and eaſie to move than formerly. 4. He drank a Gallon of Poſſet Drink, or ſmall Beer, and preſently after vomited it all up again; he then took a little draught of Canary, into which he put eighteen drops of *Liquid Laudanum*. 5. If the Symptoms give not place to this means, Sweating is to be provoked, with ſuch a Method, and with Medicines as are proper for this purpoſe, for two or three Days, Morning and Evening, and for two or three Hours together. 6. But if there ſhall be a Tranſlation of the offending Matter into the Lobes of the Lungs, the Joints being freed from their Pain and Swelling, you muſt then manage this Symptom in the ſame manner, as if it was an abſolute *Peripneumonia*, or Inflamation of the Lungs, *viz.* by repeated Bleedings, by Diet, and by Medicines cooling and thickning the Humors. 7. It is alſo to be noted, that in the intervals of Bleeding, the ſick is to be

be purged with Lenitive Potions, but to refrain Sweating.

SALMON's *Comment.*

XIX. We will consider this Disease. 1. As Preventive, when out of the Fit. 2. As Curative, when in the Fit. The preventive Course is to take such Medicaments as prevent or hinder the Breeding of a *Tartarous Mucilage*, and absorb the Acid, which are all such things as our Author has hinted at, *Sect.* 14. aforegoing; but we are to make choice of our *Arthriticks* and *Antiscorbuticks*, according to the habit of the Body; for in a hot habit of Body, we must choose such as are cooling, as *Borage*, *Bugloss*, *Bloodwort*, *sharp pointed Dock*, *Turneps*, &c. and in a cold habit of Body, such as are heating, as *Scurvy-grass*, *Cresses*, *Rocket*, *Mustard-seed*, *Hops*, &c. To these things add our Authors *Electuarum Digestivum*, or that following it: But that which is instead of all is *Buck-bean* or *Marsh Trefoil*, which may be constantly taken Morning, Noon and Night, either in *Decoction or Infusion* in Wine and Water, or rather a *Tincture* thereof made with Spirit of Wine. I have known several *Arthriticks* preserved many Years from the *Gout*, by the constant use of this alone Medicament; taken also Spring and Fall one or two Doses of an *Emetick*, and as many of a *Cathartick*, to cleanse the Stomach and Bowels from *Tartarous Slime*, which might any ways hang or stick to their Tunicles or Coats. Their Drink being all along small Beer, or rather Water, in which *Marsh Trefoil* and *Hops* in equal quantities had been infused.

XX. By these means an alteration will be made in the *Blood* and other Juices of the Body, *viz. Lympha* and *Serum*; but these following are more powerful, *viz.* our *Theriaca Chymica*, the preparation of which you may see in our *Pharmacopœia Chirurgica*, which may be given in the Morning fasting, taking every Night at Bed-time a Dose of our *Specifick Laudanum*, or in place thereof our *Volatile Laundanum*, which prevent the Flux of Humours to the weakned part. *Helmont's Sulphur of Vitriol* is commended as an extraordinary thing; so also our *Impetus Martis*, the *Elixir Metallorum*, and *Tinctura Antimonii Composita*, which are things beyond compare.

XXI. In the time of the Year *Whey* is a good Liquor to drink; also *Whey Clarified with Fumitory, Endive, Succory, Sage, and Buckbean, or with Buckbean alone. Milk and Water mixed together* is a good thing for a constant Drink, and to be made the only Drink upon all occasions. I have known it to cure, as well as prevent the coming or return of the *Gout*, and that without any other Remedy, and the Patient has continued well for more than twenty Years together, without the return of one Fit, tho' when troubled with his Disease, the *Paroxysms* would be long and vehement, and apt to approach him upon every little occasion, of either intemperance or taking cold, and afflict him beyond Expression, and had formerly deprived him of the use of both his Hands

Hands and Legs, so that he could no ways help himself.

XXII. The *Prophylactick* part we have done with; we now come to the *Curative.* In the time of the *Paroxysm* no kind of Evacuation is to be used, neither Vomiting, Purging, nor Bleeding; but the first intention is to ease the pain, which is to be done with Anodyns: In the height therefore of the Gouty Fit, *Opiates* must necessarily be given, of which kind are our *Author's Liquid Laudadum*, also our *Liquid Laudanum*, our *Guttæ Vitæ*, *New London Treacle*, *Eclegma Sudorificum*; our *Laudanum Volatile*, and *Laudanum Specificum*, to be given in a fit Dose, every Night at Bed time, for some Days, and afterwards Morning and Evening. Among Mineral Anodyns we commend *Helmont's Sulphur of Vitriol*, not inferior to *Opium*; also our *Impetus Martis* prepared from the same *Narcotick Sulphur*, and may be given Morning and Night from twenty five to fifty Drops, in a Glass of Canary.

XXIII. If it is gotten into the Stomach, you must immediately give this, *Take of our Guttæ Vitæ, or else of Liquid Laudanum from twenty to thirty Drops; Powers of Juniper, and of Angelica, of each one Dram; Canary two or three Ounces; mix for a Dose*, which repeat as often as need requires. But if there is a Translation of the matter to the Lungs, you must give this, *Take Spirit of Sal Armoniack, of our Guttæ Vitæ, of each thirty or forty Drops; simple Angelica and Poppy Water, of each two Ounces; choice Canary three Ounces; mix them for a Dose.* After three or four Doses thereof, you may give this, *Take Spiritus Nitratus, one Dram, Powers of Angelica two Drams; compound Tincture of Antimony, three Drams; Angelica and Mint Waters, Canary, of each two Ounces; mix them for two Doses to be often repeated.*

XXIV. If the Body is very much bound, whilst the Fit is upon the Patient, then the aforegoing *Laudana* are to be neglected; and you are wholly to apply your self to our *Laudanum Cathartícum*, which will not only ease the pain, but also open the Bowels, and keep the Belly soluble. And as the alleviating of the pain is the first thing to be done, so it can never be so well done as with *Narcoticks*, or *Opiates*, both inwardly given, and outwardly applied, being mixed in their outward application with *Camphir.*

XXV. The second intention is the carrying off the Morbifick Cause, which is to be done with 1. *Emeticks.* 2. *Cathartícks.* 3. *Diuretícks.* As to *Emeticks*, *I commend my Emeticon*, which may be given from *ij.* to *vi.* Grains, according to Age and Strength, and repeated two, three, or four times, with fitting Intervals: An equivalent to it is our Author's *Emeticum Commune*, or the *Vinum Benedictum*, or *Vinum Antimoniale*, which clear the Stomach of any *Tartarous Mucilage* sticking to the same; and indeed 'tis necessary that the Stomach should be cleared from those Tartarous Juices, because they are the very Ground and Foundation of the Disease, from whence

it

it is disseminated into the Bowels, and from thence into the grieved parts of the Body.

XXVI. The Stomach being thus very well cleansed, the next thing to be done is cleansing the Bowels; and in easy Bodies, and weak Constitutions, this may be effected by repeated Doses of our *Sal Catharticum*, or *Sal Mirabile Glauberi*, or *Sal Panaretum*, given dissolved in fair warm Water, or warm thin Water-Gruel, or in a weak Infusion *Sena* in white Port Wine: In stronger habits of Body you may purge either with our *Family Pouder*, or *Family Pills*, which powerfully evacuate the Morbifick Matter; or with *Tinctura aurea nova*, *Pulvis Catharticus*, or *Pilulæ Panareæ*, the preparations and way of giving of which you may see in *Lib.* 1. *Cap.* 1. *Sect.* 16. 20. & 22 of this Work.

XXVII. If the Disease is become inveterate, and so obstinate as to resist the ordinary Medicines before prescribed, we must come to the greater Remedies, such are our *Pulvis Valens*, the *Princes Pouder*, *Impetus Mineralis*, *Impetus aureus*, and other mineral Preparations, any of which named may be given from ten Grains to thirty, or forty, more or less, according as the Age, Strength and other Circumstances of the Patient will admit, which may be given twice a Weeek, till eight, ten, or twelve Doses are exhibited, according as the prudent Physician shall direct; by which the Bowels will be cleansed, and the Tartarous Matter taken away by the Roots.

XXVIII. But as Nature has made other passages and ways by which the Diseasy Matter may be carried off, besides those of Vomit and Stool, *viz.* those of the *Urinary Parts* also; so we should be very defective in our Method and Prescriptions, if we should be wanting in those discoveries. Therefore in the intervals of Vomiting and Purging, and after the times when Vomiting and Purging are all over, *Diureticks* are to be exhibited, such as these following, 1. *A strong Decoction or Infusion of Hops in boiling Water*, which at time of drinking may be mixed with an equal quantity of choice *White Port*, or *White Lisbon Wine*. 2. *A strong Decoction or Infusion of Marsh Trefoil*, made and used in like manner. 3. *Hydropiper Water, in every Quart of which a Dram of Salt of Tartar is dissolved*, and mixed in drinking with White Wine. 4. *Parsly Water* used in like manner. 5. *Pouder of Winter Cherries* given daily half a Dram at a time. 6. *Infusion of Lignum Nephriticum.*

XXIX. To the former things we may add these following, 1. *Potestates Juniperi*, *Powers of Juniperberries*. 2. *Pilulæ Hydropicæ Bontii*. 3. *Pilulæ Diureticæ nostræ*; thus made, *Take Chio Turpentine an Ounce*; *Balsam of Peru, half an Ounce, with Pouder of Daucus Seed, make a Mass for Pills.* Dose from half a Dram to a Dram Morning and Night, drinking after it a Glass of *White Lisbon Wine*, in which Raspings of *Lignum Nephriticum* have been infused, and this to be taken for fifty days together.

XXX. As

XXX. As to the Application of Topicks, we clearly dissent from our Author, for they may be, and ought to be applied; and I have oftentimes profitably applied them: But you ought to beware of Repercussives, least by driving the Humour back you should send it up to the Stomach, and so kill the Patient. But things discussive or attractive, *viz.* such things as open the Pores of the Skin, or draw forth, are of mighty use. For this Reason it is that *Moxa* is also used with success, which by the atractive force of its Fire or Flame, raises a Blister, and so draws out the Morbifick Matter. This does not seem to be a new thing, for something to the like effect *Hippocrates* did of old; for tho' he never heard of *Moxa* nor never knew what it was, yet he burnt *Hurds of Flax* upon the grieved place, which performed the same work, and did it full as well; and I have cured many of the *Gout* by applying a *Vesicatory* upon the Gouty Joynt. I have done wonders with *Epispasticks*, for they draw forth the Humour admirably; and when after their use the *Paroxysm* goes off, it many times returns no more, or if it does, it is not till a long time after.

XXXI. I have known a *Gout* perfectly cured with a *Cataplasm of raw Comfrey Roots*, so as it never returned any more, tho' the Patient had been before troubled with it for eight or ten Years. This has cured many, *Take Frankincense, Ship Pitch, of each six Ounces, Turpentine, Oil Olive, of each one Ounce and half, mix and make an Emplaster.* I cured the Mistress of the *Castle Inn by Smithfield Barrs*, some Years since, by this very means, (after others had given her over as uncurable, and she had wholly lost the use of her right Arm,) she was perfectly cured, and the use of her Hand and Arm returned again.

XXXII. And in a cold *Gout*, or a *Gout* in a cold habit of Body, Discussives, and healing *Anodyns*, and *Anodyns* mixed with *Opium*, are to be used. You may bathe the Part with our *Guttæ Vitæ*, or with our *Tinctura Anodyna*, Morning and Evening. Or with the Powers of *Amber*, or *Turpentine*, or with them both mixt together in an equal quantity; or with a strong Camphorated Tincture of *Opium*, or *Spirit of Wine.*

XXXIII. But that which above all things answers the end, as to outward Application, is, bathing or anointing gently with the *Spiritus Mirabilis*, or *Balsamum Mirabile*, which ease the pain in a few Minutes, draw forth the Morbifick Gass or Steem, which afflicts the Part, and many times give ease in an hour, and sometimes in less. See their Compositions, Preparations, Virtues and Uses in our *Pharmacopæia Chirurgica.* See the cure of these Diseases more at large in the Third Edition of our *Synopsis Medicinæ*, Lib. VI. Cap. IV. where you may find abundant satisfaction.

CHAP.

CHAP. V. *Of the* JAUNDICE.

I. 1. IT is known by the following Signs; a yellowness over the whole Body, and all Objects appear so coloured to the Sick. 2. This yellowness is chiefly manifest in the White of the Eyes; there is also Itching, Laziness, Weariness and bitterness of the Tongue. 3. Sometimes there is Cholerick Vomitings, Hiccough, whitish Excrements. 4. The Urine is of a Saffron colour, and dies Cloths, which are dipt in it, of the same colour.

II. 1. Exhibit the *Potio communis Purgativa*, and then give the Medicaments which are here subjoyned; and during the use of which, let the *Potio Purgativa* be repeated every fourth day. 2. *Take Conserve of Roman Wormwood, Conserve of the yellow part of Orange Peels, of each an Ounce; Candied Angelica, Candied Nutmeg, Compound Powder of Aron, Steel prepared with Vinegar, of half an Ounce; Extract of the lesser Centory, Extract of Gentian, Cream of Tartar, of each two Drams; English Saffron powdered, half a Dram, with a sufficient quantity of Syrup of the 5 opening Roots, make an Electuary*, of which let the Sick take as much as a Nutmeg every Morning, and at five a Clock in the Afternoon. 3. Or instead of the Electuary, you may give *Chalybeat*, or *Steel Pills*, taking after the Morning Dose, two Quarts of Mineral purging Waters, and half a Pint of the *Apozem* prescrib'd by me in *Cap.* XII. *Sect.* following. 4. But if any signs of a Dropsie appear, let the Sick use the Decoction both Morning and Night. 5. And if by reason of its stubbornness, the Disease will not yield to the long continued use of these Medicines, let the Sick have recourse to the Spaw or Iron Waters, which ought to be drank at the Fountain Head.

SALMON's *Comment.*

III. It is called in Greek Ἴκτερος, in Latin also *Ictterus*, supposed to be so called from ἰκτὶν *vel* ἰκτῖνος, *Milvus* a Kite; *vel a Mustela, quæ* ἰκτὶς *dicitur, quod ea oculos aurei coloris habet. Celsus, Apuleius* and *Scribonius* call it *Aurigo*, and *Auriginosa Suffusio*, from its Gold-like Colour; it is called also *Morbus Regius*, and *Arquatus*, or *Arcuatus*, from its approximation to the Colour of the *Rain-bow*.

IV. *The Kinds.* Authors make but two Kinds of this Disease, *viz.* the *yellow* and the *black Jaundice*; but I have seen a third Species, *viz.* a *Green Jaundice*, all which may be promoted or may arise from differing Salts diffused through the habit of the Body. The *Yellow* is called ἴκτερος, *Ictterus*; the *Black* may be called ἴκτερος μέλας, *Ictteritia Nigra*; and the *Green* may be called Χλώειον, *Galgulus*, or *Galbula*, from the colour of the Whitewall or Green-finch.

V. *The Parts affected.* These are generally the whole Skin, whose *Cuticula*, the finer and thinner it is, (as in white Skinned

ned Persons) of a clearer and more pure a yellow, will the *Jaundice* appear, but the thicker the Skin, the darker the yellow; also the *Adnata Tunica*, which makes up the White of the Eye; to these add the *Nails of the Feet and Toes*. *Zacchias* observed *the Lungs* in this Disease to be tinged of a Citron colour, and sometimes some other of the *Viscera*.

VI. *The Signs.* Our Author has given you the most remarkable Signs of this Malady, to which we may add, that the Urine (besides its yellowness) is generally thick, turbid, and little in quantity. The Ordure is many times whitish and hard; and the Belly is generally Costive, through a defect of the Anima Salt, diffused to the superficies of the Skin. There is a decay of Appetite, and oppression at Heart, and in the right Hypocondre, the Sleep is troublesome, the Hair falls, and the breath is short. The *Black Jaundice* is known by all the same Signs, saving that the colour of the Skin is a black, or brown, or livid Colour; and there is a heavy Pain or Swelling, after much walking, more especially in the left Hypocondre, Sadness, Fainting, *&c.* The *Green Jaundice* has also all the Symptoms with the former, saving that the Colour of the Skin is Green, or of a yellowish Green.

VII. *The Causes.* In this matter we cannot but dissent from all Authors both Ancient and Modern, who have wrote before us. There is but one, which is *Paracelsus*, who has seemed to glance at the Truth; he has rightfully endeavoured to overthow the Galenick Pathology of this Diseose, which ascribes its Cause to Choler, for that neither Sickness nor Colour come from that; for he denies that the Gall gives the yellow Tincture; but that the Colours arise from the mixture of the Salts according to their Kinds; how this is done he has not told us, which we shall endeavour to explicate in some of the following Sections. These Causes we have explicated at large in the Third Edition of our *Synopsis Medicinæ*, Lib. 2. Cap. 12. Sect. 2. where we have fully and evidently proved it to be the Diminution, loss or decay of the Animal Salt in Mans Body; and that no doubt is the reason, that Saline Medicines used by *Sylvius* and others, are of such a mighty force in the curing of this Disease. But because that Book is not in every Man's Hand, and that it may be necessary to understand, this Doctrine, in order to the better encountering with this Disease, we will take the pains to transcribe that short Discourse into this present Book.

VIII. *Sylvius* thinks that the colour in the *Jaundice* proceeds from Choler too plenteously confused with the Blood, which, says he, is evident from the natural Colour of Choler, and pale colour of the Stools; he says also, that Choler in the *Jaundice* seems not to be increas'd in sharpness, because neither pain nor pricking is felt in any part of the Body, unless when it begins to be cured; but rather that it is most intirely mixed with the Humours it meets with, both in the small Gut and in the Blood, or right ventricle of the Heart, and that so as

as it is impossible to be separated from them again; which is performed by an Effervescency with an acid Humour in both places, meeting with an Alcalious or Lixivious Humor; and that Choler helps on this Effervescency by virtue of its Lixivious Salt, but very much allayed to make the Effervescency milde and friendly to Nature, and not vehement in the Body; which Allay comes from the oilinesse and fatnesse of Choler; by reason of which, as making its saltnesse dull, a fierce Effervescency in one in Health cannot be observed; as also by means of its volatile Spirit, which also tempers it, and makes it mix with other Humours.

IX. And although he does not think that the stoppage of Choler from passing into the small Gut, is of necessity requisite to cause a *Jaundice*, yet that it may oftentimes occasion the *Jaundice*; for that by stopping Choler in its natural motion to the Gut, Choler grows more Spirituous, by the greater access of Spirituous Parts thither, and by the farther heightning of the Parts, of which Choler is made; and so he thinks that the *Jaundice* may also be bred, without a stoppage of the passage of Choler into the small Gut, by Cholers being made too Spirituous or Volatiliz'd, and therefore unfit to make an Effervescency, being not embodied, but confused with the Blood.

X. But we are not of *Sylvius*'s Opinion in this point; and we shall now plainly prove by good Arguments, that there is no separation of Choler from the Blood in the Liver, but that it is perpetually degenerated in the Gall Bladder itself, only of a Lymphatick Juice, or viscuous sweet Water, separated from the Blood in the Liver, and sent into the Gall-Bladder through its proper Strainers.

XI. This, I say, being undeniably proved, we come now to shew the Rise of the *Jaundice*, and how that the Affection or Disaffection of the Cholerick Humour is not the cause thereof. It was the Opinion of *Galen*, and others of the Antients, that it was caused from the Regurgitating of Choler, by reason of some Obstruction in the *Cystick Passage*, or *Meatus Hepaticus*, or in both; or in the *Ductus Communis*, by Stones, Flegm, or some viscous and glutinous matter.

XII. To which we answer, That by reason of the Valves, looking from without inwards, to hinder this recourse of the Choler to the Liver, this Regurgitation is impossible; and tho' the *Meatus Hepaticus* is without Valves, yet seldom in a *Jaundice* is either that Passage, or the *Ductus Communis* stopped, but for the most part they are found rather the wider.

XIII. Besides, if such an Obstruction should be suppos'd; neither could the *Chylus* be duly fermented, nor would the Peristaltick motion of the Guts be excited; nor lastly, would the Blood be kept from Congelation.

XIV. If with *Willis* you suppose that it is caused from the separation of Choler from the Blood in the Liver, nor sufficiently, or enough conveyed to the Gall, by reason of certain Obstructions in that *Viscous*, whereby the whole Mass of Blood should be contaminated. We answer,

anſwer, that there is no ſuch ſeparation of Choler from the Blood; and that Choler is generated of the ſanguinous Seroſities of the Blood in the very Gall-Bladder itſelf; the which we demonſtrate after this manner.

XV. How the Gall or Choler is degenerated, or how (as Authors ſay) it is ſeparated from the Blood, I have met with none who have declared, but all conclude (with *Willis*) that it is ſeparated from the Blood in the Liver, through the Strainers leading from the Liver to the Gall-Bladder. Now here we think one Query neceſſary to be anſwered, why theſe Strainers ſhould let through into the Gall-Bladder only *Gall*, and not equally *Lympha* and *Serum*? And why thoſe Strainers which ſeparate the *Lympha* and *Serum*, ſhould not alſo promiſcuouſly let through all the three Juices?

XVI. This queſtion no mortal has ſatisfactorily anſwered that we know of; and the moſt ingenious *Pacquet*, a late Writer of Anatomy, has declared his Ignorance thereof in theſe words, *How the Tranſcolation of the Bile from the Blood into the Gall-Bladder is performed, and the cauſe of ſo great a wonder, I confeſs are hid from me, unleſs that we ſhould admit for a ſufficient Reaſon, the diverſity of Figures which is in the ſtraining Bodies, and in the Bodies to be ſtrained.* And of this Opinion was *Regnerus de Graaf in libro de ſucco Pancreatico*, where he undertook to give a reaſon for the ſeparation of the Lymphatick Juice from the Blood.

XVII. But into how great an error theſe Men have run themſelves, eſpecially *de Graaf*, we will leave to be ſhown by the moſt famous *Franciſcus Sylvius*; and the Errors of *Graaf* were ſo much the greater, becauſe he had beforehand the unanſwerable refutation of *Sylvius* his Quondam Maſter, the which we will here deliver *verbatim*, Tranſlation only excepted, as you may find it in his *new Practical Idea of Phyſick*, Lib. 1. Cap. 49. Sect. 25.

XVIII. The Figures of Pores (ſays he) undetermined, and yet very pleaſing to its Author, does not ſatisfy my Mind deſirous of Truth, becauſe it is not proved by forceable Reaſon, nor ſo much as ever made probable by any Man from manifeſt Experience; for that which is ſaid of ſeveral dry or ſolid Bodies ſent through a Sieve having holes of a differing ſhape, does nothing urge, as to liquid and moiſt things; nor is it true as to Corpuſcles, which are carried equally through round holes, Spherical, Cylindrical, or of any other Eliptical or Oval Form; yea, any Corpuſcles, of whatſoever Figure they be, may paſs through the holes of any Figure, if the ſaid Corpuſcles are leſs than them. But take it for granted according to pleaſure, I know not, through what Figures of Pores, likewiſe feigned, becauſe not determined, by any, in the Parts or Bowels of our Body, that ſome Particles of the Blood ſhould paſs, and not others; ſince all the parts and Particles thereof are fluid, and continually flowing through inſenſible little Arteries and Veins. Whether this be not to obtrude new Chimæra's (in

ſtead of finding things out) to be believed by credulous Men, let ſuch as are judicious and ingenious judge. Thus *Sylvius*.

XIX. The Figures of Pores being thus demonſtrably refuted, and no other Cauſe, Reaſon, or way declared or known, it follows, that as to the performance of this ſeparation, the Sons of Art are yet in Ignorance. However being deſirous of the Truth, we have applied our Thoughts to the ſearching out of this Myſtery; and doubt not, but in what follows, to inveſtigate the ſolution of the *Problem*, to the ſatisfaction of all the lovers of Learning.

XX. In order then to the clearing of this thing, we ſhall firſt do our endeavour to prove that there is no ſuch thing in Nature, as the ſeparation of Bile from the Blood, and then we ſhall ſhew what that Humour is, which is ſeparated from the Blood; and how therefrom the Gall, and other Juices of the Body, are generated.

XXI. That there is no ſuch thing as the ſeparation of Bile from the Blood, appears from the following Reaſons; *Firſt*, From the unanſwerable Refutation of the Figures of Pores above declared by the moſt excellent *Sylvius*. *Secondly*, From the ingreſs of the Gall into the *Jejunium*, and its mixture with the Chylous Juice, in order to its better fermentation; from whence we conclude, that as Nature does none of her acts in vain, ſo ſhe does nothing upon deſign to undo it again, as ſhe muſt do here, if any Gall be ſeparated from the Blood, altho' in the leaſt meaſure. *Thirdly*, Becauſe that a meaſurable and fit quantity of Bile being mixt with the Blood, is in order to keep it from Congelation. *Fourthly*, That no more than is neceſſary for that purpoſe, is received in by the Blood, becauſe, that tho' the *Chylus* may be made yellow as Saffron by the Flux of Choler from the *Ductus Communis* into the *Jejunum*, yet nothing of that yellow colour is drawn in by the Lacteal Veins, not ſo much as to make the Lacteal Juice bitter. This Lacteal Juice (out of a deſire of knowing the truth) we have ſeveral times both ſeen and taſted; but never ſaw it of any other colour than white almoſt like Milk, nor ever found it to have any other taſte than a milkiſh ſweetneſs. From whence we conclude, that if Nature ſhould make any ſeparation of Gall from the Blood, ſhe would deprive it of that, which was intended for its preſervation; whereby, being undone in its *Craſis*, a congelation, and total ſeparation of its *Serum* would immediately follow, and from thence Death.

XXII. From hence we conclude, that Nature is ſo far from making a ſeparation of Gall from the Blood, that ſhe acts rather quite contrary, and has formed a perpetual generation of Bile to mix therewith, whereby it may be kept continually fluid, and in its due *Craſis*, as alſo for other Ends and Intentions of Nature before declared. Theſe Reaſons we think ſufficient enough at preſent, in oppoſition to the vulgar Error, not only of the

the Ancients, but of all our Modern Physicians

XXIII. It may then be demanded what Juice that is which is separated from the Blood in the Liver, and how Nature performs the generation of the Gall? To which in short, we thus answer, That that Juice which is separated from the Blood, is only the serous and watery part thereof; and this we have proved by ocular demonstration. For if you bind any of those small Veins or Strainers going from the Liver to the Cystis of the Gall, you shall in a little time see them swell towards the Liver, and beyond the Ligature towards the Gall to be empty; which shews the Flux of the Humor from the Liver to the Gall. Now (if after the said Veins or Strainers are sufficiently filled) you make a prick and let out the Juice, you will find it to be clear as Crystal, and (in a manner) as insipid as Water, but with a little kind of viscosity. From whence we conclude, that no Gall is separated from the Blood, but only a Lymphatick Juice, or Viscous Water for the generation of Choler; this thing we have seen in six or seven several Examples.

XXIV. And being desirous to investigate Truth, we have made several Trials in the Lymphatick Vessels, both at their greatest distance from, and when they have approached near to their respective Glandules; wherein we have not only discovered the motion of the *Lympha*, but also the Qualities of its Substance, which (by thebest of our Senses and Discernings) differed nothing from the afore-mentioned viscous Juice sent into the Gall-Bladder. The like we proved in the Renal Strainers, whereby we evidently saw, that the Juice separated in all those several Parts, was but one and the same. Hence the matter of the Generation, not only of the Gall, but also of the Lymphatick Juice and Urine, yea and the Milk in Womens Breasts (which is the Sanguinous Serosities) are apparent; but how that Generation is made, we now come to shew.

XXV. First, We affirm, that the *Fermentum* of any thing changes another proper and fit Body, into the nature of the Ferment. This is proved by Leven; about the bigness of an Egg, of which, being dissolved in a sufficient quantity of warm Water, and all that mixt with about sixty Pounds weight of Meal, it will in about twelve or sixteen Hours time leven the whole Mass, and make it sowerish: This very whole Mass, if it be kept in a warm place, will in about two days time, not only become very sower, but full as sower as the little Leaven with which it was mixt. Such is the mighty power of a proper *Fermentum*. Again, if you take strong and new Ale, or new Ale Yest, to the quantity of a Quart (which may be about a Pound weight) and mix it with eighty Quarts, or an hundred and sixty Pounds weight of warm Wort, made of Maulc; it will in sixteen or twenty four Hours time, change the Wort all into Ale; such a great power has a little quantity of a fit Ferment, in the Transmutation of a fit Matter. And the same thing comes to pass in the same

manner with other *Ferments* if mixed with proper Fluids.

XXVI. This being undeniably proved to the Senses, it is clear that those remaining Portions of Gall, Lympha, Spittle, Milk, and Urine contained in their proper Receptacles, act each of them the part of a Ferment, and by their own proper power, convert the Sanguinous Serosities, each into their own Natures. So the said Aqueous Juice of the Blood being strained into salival Glands, it becomes Spittle; into the Mammary Glands, it becomes Milk; into the Conglobated Glandules, it becomes Lympha; into the Pancreas, it becomes acid Flegm; into the Reins, it becomes Urine; and into the Gall-Bladder, it becomes Bile or Choler; all which various Fluids, it is transmuted into by the proper *Ferment* (as aforesaid) of each part. Thus the *Problem* is solved, and that *Great Mystery* hid from the Eyes of *Pecquet*, and all other great Anatomists, is fully brought to light and revealed.

XXVII. If with the renowned *Sylvius de la Boe*, you suppose it to be from the volatilizing of Choler, by a Spirit too volatile, being plentifully mixt with it, which he affirms by two instances, *viz.* the Biting of a Viper, and the too much drinking of Wine and strong Waters, which many times causes the *Jaundice*. To this we answer. That the Biting of a Viper is no demonstration of any such matter; for so much as a Person bit by a Viper on the Hand, Leg or Foot, shall in half an Hours time, or thereabouts, be affected with the *Jaundice*; of which I once saw a pregnant Example, in one bitten by a *Rattle-snake*, and yet the Gall Juice was not at all concerned in the least measure.

XXVIII. Nor can it be supposed that the Venom or Poison of the Viper should be so particularly directed to the Gall, to work such an Effect, in so short a time, as to distribute that heavy Juice so universally over the whole Body; much less do we think, that either the drinking of strong Liquors, or any violent Exercise, should at all so operate upon the Bilious Humour, as to volatise it in such a manner, as so immediately to disperse it universally over the whole humane Frame.

XXIX. If it should be supposed to arise from the too liberal dispensation of Choler by the *Meatus Communis* into the *Jejunum*, whereby it might over power the *Chylus*. We answer, that this could not be in the least measure any cause of a *Jaundice*, but rather of a Choleric Flux; for as much as the Lacteal Veins receive in, only the pure *Chyle*, mixed only with so much Bile, as may serve the intentions of Nature, of which we have before spoken; because the *Chylus* is neither coloured yellow in the *Lacteal Veins*, nor found to be bitter in Taste, altho' it be extreamly yellow and very bitter in the *Jejunum*.

XXX. It may then be demanded of us, what that is, which we will assign to be the cause thereof? Truly we suppose it may arise from the volatilizing

latilizing, or (as it were) from the subliming of part of the Armoniack, or Animal Salt of Man's Body; which may be done by the enraged Spirit of venomous Beasts; or by the power of Poison: or from the excessive heating of the whole Body, either by long and immeasurable Drinking of hot or strong Liquors, or by violent Exercise; or by the vehement and intense heat of Fevers.

XXXI. By means whereof the universal Habit comes to be inflamed, the Spirits vehemently agitated, and thereby the volatile Saline Principle to be moved out of its place. This Salt by the extream heat of the Parts, and violent motion of the Spirits, is forced out of its Domicil, into all the exterior Parts, and from them would fly away; but meeting with the cool viscous Juice of the *Cutis*, it is there stopt; and being dissolved, and mixt with the Cutaneous Humidities, it excites that yellow colour.

XXXII. And this is so much the more probable, for as much as this Armoniack or Animal Salt, is distributed with the Blood, through the whole Body of Man; so that in performing so sudden and great a change, it seems not difficult, by reason of the Proximity of the said Saline Principle to the *Cutis*, or exterior Parts.

XXXIII. And this is so much the more easy to be believed, because the Disease does oftentimes so suddenly seize upon a Man, who (to all appearance) is in perfect health as in the space of an Hour, or half an Hour, which we have sometimes beheld. And one special Example, I remember of a Man, who (being in appearance in good health) ran a Race of about three quartets of an Hour long, who, at the end of the Race, was all over as yellow as it he had been dipt in Saffron, not so much as the Nails of his Fingers or Toes excepted.

XXXIV. I hope none can imagine, that this colour came from the distribution of Choler over the Superficies of the Skin. But in these Cases, 'tis possible, there may be a prediſposition of the Constitution of the Body, to so notable a Mutation or Change. And the same thing may come to pass, from the biting of a Viper, or the immoderate Drinking of hot or strong Liquors, Spirits, and the like; or from the vehement heat of burning Fevers, tho' not to all Persons alike, for want of such a prediſposition.

XXXV. Now that we may make this Opinion seem more than probable, we will shew you some of those Reasons inducing us thereunto. *First*, The almost impossibility that the thick, clammy, and glutinous Substance of Choler, should be dispersed from its Receptacle in so short a time, to all the superficial Parts of the Body, yea, presupposing *Sylvius* his volatilizing thereof.

XXXVI. *Secondly*, The Proximity of the Volatile Animal Salt to the *Cutis*, the whole superficial Part of the Body, as well as the internal Parts, being repleniſhed therewith, as *Sylvius* seems to affirm; from which nearness of the Skin, not only the probability, but also the

possibility of the Argument seems to be confirmed.

XXXVII. *Thirdly*, The Nature of all Armoniac or Animal Salts, is of themselves too Sublime, and fly away, and that without any heat, if they be dissolved, and freed from a thick compacted Matter. This you may prove, if you dissolve *Sal Armoniac* or *Salt of Urine* in fair Water, and put it into a glazed Earthen Vessel; the Salt, near its upper Superficies, shall vanish into Air; and that by the sides of the Vessel shall pierce through the substance of the Pot (altho' it be glazed, and an Inch or two thick) in pure fine and white Flowers, and this without any heat; which Sublimation (as it were) shall never cease, till the whole quantity of the Salt is wasted out of the Water. And this kind of Evanishing, if it meets with any thing of heat, will be so much the sooner absolved.

XXXIX. *Fourthly*, Because it is the Nature of most Salts, upon their mixtion with other fit Bodies, to excite or stir up new appearances of Colours, according to the Nature of the Salt: So a clear and limpid solution of Vitriol, mixed with an Infusion of Galls, excites in a moment an Opacous black. A blood-red Tincture of *Cochinele*, mixt with *Saccharum Saturni*, or *Lime-water*, gives a glorious Purple. A glorious red Tincture of red *Roses* mixed with Oil or Salt of *Tartar*, gives immediately a Green. *Alum* dissolved in a decoction of *Brasil*, *Ebony*, or *Madder*, makes a most glorious Red. A solution of *Salt of Tartar* in fair Water, mixt with a solution of *Corrosive Sublimate* in fair Water, gives (tho' both the solutions are clear as Crystal) in a moment a reddish Yellow, or Orange Tawney colour, and Spirit of *Nitre* changes the whole substance of the Cork which stops the Bottle into a perfect yellow colour.

XXXIX. And with *Armoniack* Salts in proper Liquors, we have made many Colours to appear, as Yellow, Black, Green, Tawny, Purple, *&c.* From whence the possibility is apparent, that a fit Salt seizing upon, and being dissolved with the Cutaneous Juice, should excite the *Jaundice*, whether Yellow, Black, or Green (of which last Colour we have had six several Patients,) and be the cause of Purple Spots in the Spotted Fever, and of Livid Spots in the Plague or Pestilence; as also be the cause of many other sudden and great Mutations or Changes in the Bodies of human Kind.

XL. *The Prognosticks.* If the Disease is Critical, it goes away of its own accord; and so does that which comes by the biting of a Viper, Rattle-snake, or any other venomous Beast. *Hippocrates.* Sect. 4. Sect. 62. says, a *Jaundice* coming in a Fever before the Critical Day, is Evil. And *Sect.* 64. But if it comes on the Critical Day, *viz.* the seventh or fourteenth, or on the ninth or eleventh, if the right Hypochondre is not hard, it is good; but if it is hard, Evil, *Sect. 6. Aph.* 42. he says, If the Liver is hard in a *Jaundice*, it is bad, because the Disease is great and fixt. If

the

the *Jaundice* happens to one that is troubled with the Stone, or with a Diarrhea, or if it has grievous Symptoms attending it, or is become inveterate, or of long continuance, or if it proceed from an Inflamation, or Scirrhus of the Liver, it is of evil Conſequence, and threatens the Cachexy, Conſumption, Dropſie, or the like. It is dangerous to Women with Child, and old Perſons: And mortal if it proceeds from a cold Cauſe, and Obſtructions of the Meſentery, for then the Patient dies of a lingring Conſumption.

XLI. *The Diet, and way of Living.* Let the Patient live in a temperate Air, for too much heat may ſtill make the volatile Salt more flexible, and ſo encreaſe the Diſeaſe: And too much cold may ſhut up the external Pores, and ſo render the Humours viſcous, being deprived of their volatile Salts. The Diet ought to be ſparing and eaſy of Digeſtion, made of the opening Roots, and proper Inciders; Brandy, ſtrong Wines, and ſtrong Waters are to be forborn, becauſe they volatilize, and ſtill looſen the remains of the volatile Salts. Moderate Exerciſe ought to be uſed, becauſe it opens the Pores of the Skin, and ſo cauſes the perſpiration of the Morbifick Matter lodged in it. When they ſleep let it be only in the Night in Bed, and not in the Day time. Let the Body be kept ſoluble; if it be not ſo naturally, let it be made ſo by Art. Let Anger and Grief, and all violent Paſſions be avoided, becauſe they provoke and ſtill volatilize thoſe Principles which ought to be quiet and kept at reſt, and by which the Diſeaſe is made to encreaſe.

XLII. *The Cure.* 1. Revulſion is to be made by Evacuators, either *Emeticks* or *Cathar-ticks.* 2. Specificks are to be given, which may reſtore and and fix the Animal Salt. 3. Coroboratives are to be adminiſtred, which may ſtrengthen the Blood and Juices, and all the parts which are weakned.

XLIII. *Vomits* are the prime evacuators, but they are to be uſed while the ſtrength is yet remaining, and the Tone of the *Viſcera* are not much depraved; and in this caſe you may uſe *Vinum Antimoniale*, *Vinum Benedictum*, alſo *Crocus Metallorum* in ſubſtance, and *Pulvis Antimonii*, *Wine and Oxymel of Squills*, *Pouder of Aſarum*, half a Dram, with *Fœcula Ari*, and *Tartarum Vitriolatom*; alſo *Cambogium* given to fifteen or twenty Grains, or gr. 8. or 10. mixt with gr. vj. or vij. of *Tartar Vitriolate*, &c.

XLIV. *Catharticks* are next to be uſed, for which purpoſe our *Family Pills* are of ſingular uſe. *Rheubarb* given from half a Dram to a Dram, is approved; or half a Dram of it mixt with twelve Grains of *Tartar Vitriolate*. *Rheubarb* may be given half a Dram or two Scruples, with *Salt of Wormwood* and *Cream of Tartar*, of each gr. x. or this, Pouder of *Willis*'s ℞ *of the beſt Rheubarb, from half a Dram to a Dram; Salt of Wormwood, a Scruple, mix them for a Doſe.* The *Elixir proprietatis Peſtilentialis*, given from a Dram to two or three Drams, is an excellent thing; but *Willis* prefers

before all other *Electuary of Juice of Roses*, given to half an Ounce. *Sylvius* has this, *Take Broom Flowers, half a handful; Roots of Madder, greater Celandine, and of Parsly, of each half an Ounce; Seeds of Anise, Columbine, Parsly, of each two Drams; Crude Tartar, a Dram and half; boil in white Wine and fair Water, of each what is sufficient; strain and dissolve therein Sprup of Diacnicum and of Cichory with Rheubarb, of each an Ounce and half, mixing them together.* Of this *Apozem* the Patient is to take twice or thrice a Day, as much as will give him two or three Stools a Day. Others prescribe this, *Take Dandelion, Celandine, ana, one Ounce; Leaves of Cichory and Strawberries, ana, an Ounce and half; Horehound half a handful; Sena, white Tartar, ana, three Drams; infuse in equal parts of Wine and Water, boil to a Quart, and strain out.* Or this, *Take Horehound, Dodder, Celandine, Southern Wood, Goosegrass, Flowers of Hypericon, Columbines, ana, half a handful; Turmerick, Cream of Tartar, ana, three Drams; Sena, Celandine Root, ana, one Ounce, Monks Rheubarb, two Ounces; make a Bag for a purging Diet Drink.*

XLV. To these things we may add, *Elect. Diacarthamum*, to be repeated thrice a Week; or the *Infusion or Syrup of Saff-Flower*, or *Flowers of Carthamus*, which Purge excellently. Or, a *Tincture of Rheubarb, made with Endive and Cithory Water, with Salt of Tartar*, which may be given from half an Ounce to an Ounce. Or this, *Take Extract of Aloes, fifteen Grains; Mercurius Dulcis, ten Grains; Rosin of Scammony, four Grains; Oil of Cloves, one Drop; mix them for Pills, or for a Powder, for one Dose.* Or this, *Take Rheubarb in fine Pouder, a Scruple; Sena in Pouder, Cream of Tartar, of each gr. x. Resin of Jallap, Scammony, of each three Grains; mix for a dose.* Or this, *Take Saff-flower in Pouder, gr. 10. Antimony Diaphoretick gr. vj. Tartar Emetick, gr. iij. Salt of Wormwood, iiij. mix for a Dose.*

XLVI. *We come now to the use of Specificks, which Authors have recommended for the cure of the Jaundice, and these things are such as restore or increase the diminished Animal Volatile Salt.* *Paracelsus* commends all Excrements or Dungs (because they are full of Animal Salt;) *The juice of Horse Dung squeezed out with White Wine*, and given to drink, cures a *Jaundice.* So also *Sal Gem, and Sal Armoniack mixt and sublimed from filings of Tin. Ens Veneris* is an excellent thing; *Juniperberries, and black Cherry-water* are good. Chymists say that *Spirits of Vitriol, Salt, Sulphur, and Tartar with Saffron* are prevalent. *Crollius* commends *Oil of Amber* given in *Endive* and *Succory* Waters, or Waters of *Celandine* and *Dodder.*

XLVII. These simple Medicaments are also accounted Specificks, as *Celandine*, Roots of *Rheubarb, Turmerick, Anchusa* and *Madder*, the yellow *Stone* found in the *Gall* of an Ox, the Skins of Hens *Gizzards* and *Feet*; Juice and Pouder of *Earth-worms*; the Patients *Urine* drunk with Juice of *Horehound*; *Dogs Dung, Goose Dung, Goats* and *Horse Dung*; the Ashes of *Sparrows Feathers*; *Brain of Patridges, Lice, Hog-Lice, Galls* of Hogs, Sheep, Oxen, and Deer; Pouder of *Vipers Flesh*, and *Volatile Salt* of the same; the *Volatile Salt of Urine*, which is approved

proved of by *Helmont* as a most excellent thing. *Mixtura Simplex* and *Salt of Tartar* are proper. *Willis* advises to *Tinctura Antimonii* and *Elixir Proprietatis*, which may be given twice a Day from twenty to fifty Drops at a time. *Millepedes* may be given either in form of a Pouder; or their Juice may be expressed or squeez'd out with *Celandine-water*, to be drank twice a Day for a Week together. *Lice* are also commended (tho' a nasty Medicine) to be given alive, nine at a time, because they are full of *Volatile Animal Salt*; and for the same reason *Flowers of Sal Armoniack, and its Volatile Salt*; as also, *Volatile Salts of Amber, Harts-horn, Hoof and Horns of other Beasts, Spirits of Harts-horn*, and of *Hogs, Sheep and Bullocks Blood, Spirits of Urine and Soot*, especially Tinctured with *Saffron*, may be given from twenty to thirty Drops at a time, in any proper Vehicle.

XLVIII. *Chalybeats and Spaw Waters* may do good; and tho' *Chalybeats* may do in Pouder, yet because many nauseate them, and they commonly lie heavy in the Stomach, without great Exercise after them; we chuse rather to make use of the Tincture, because we think in many, the Stomach is not strong enough to open the Body of the *Mars*, and besides the terrene parts are of no use in this Cure.

XLIX. And where the Patient cannnot take our Author's *Elect. of Conserve of Roman Wormwood at Sect.* 2. aforegoing, I advise to the use of the Tincture of Steel in our *Pharmacopœia Chirurgica*; or a *Syrup of Steel, made by boiling the Filings with their double weight of White Tartar, in fair Water, till the Water comes to a good blackness and thickness.* Of this the Sick may take a Spoonful, or two, or three (according to Age and Strength) in a Glass of Ale or Wine every Evening. And if the disease be very vehement, a Spoonful in the Morning, and another at four or five in the Afternoon in like manner. This will, I assure you, do more in ten days time, than a thousand other Medicines will do in a Month. But withal it will be necessary, in all the Drink the Sick takes, to give *Volatile Salt of Harts-horn a gr. v. ad viij. or x.* This will restore the lost Animal Salt, and the *Tincture of Steel* will remove the *Discrasy* of the Blood and Humours, strengthen them, and the *Viscera*, but in a more especial manner the *Stomach.*

L. Many times upon taking these and other Specificks, the Body will be bound, which ought to be kept open, because it is contrary to the Nature of the Cure. Purges with *Sena*, I own may do good, yet no Purge is so excellent in this case as *Sal Mirabile*, because that Salt, not only clears the Body of the Recrements of Humours, but intimately mixing with the Blood, and entering into all the other Juices, it will in part generate the Animal Salt, and restore its due quantity; and this Salt is, to my knowledge, the one half of the Cure. It much exceeds the *Spaw Waters*, and therefore ought rather to be used in their stead.

LI. And if any signs of a *Dropsy* should appear, you must then the more earnestly apply to the *Sal Mirabile*, as an excellent Purger of Water; and it is so much the better a Purge in this case,

case, because it dissolves the *Coagulum* of the Blood, and makes it of an equal thickness, carrying off the superfluous Serosities the natural and right ways, which are by Urine and Stool. And then at due Intervals the *Tinctura Martis* is to be used to restore the Blood to its due *Crasis*, and make it also to carry along with it, its *Serum*, till it comes to the *Emulgents*, where it is to be delivered up to the Reins, as also to coroborate and strengthen the Stomach, and the rest of the *Viscera*.

LII. If the Disease has its rise from Poison of Vipers, Rattle-snakes, *&c. Sylvius* advises to Sudorificks abounding with a Volatile Salt, such as *Mithridate*, *Venice Treacle*, made with rich Troches of Vipers, also *Antimonium Diaphoreticum*, *Bezoarticum*, *Minerale*, &c. And for taking away the yellowness of the Skin, he commends this mixture. *Take Waters of Grass and Wormwood, of each 2 Ounces: Tincture of Saffron, Spirit of Sal Armoniack, of each half a Dram: Bezoarticum Minerale one Scruple: Laudanum Opiatum 3 Grains: Syrup of Fennel one Ounce.* Give a Spoonful of it often. If Sweating succeeds the use of these things, the Cure may be so much the sooner expected; but if much red Matter is voided by Urine, which after a while settles, 'twill be so much the longer.

LIII. The same *Sylvius* has other Medicaments which he calls *Specificks*, as 1. *Hempseed boiled in Cows Milk till it burst, and the Decoction strained from it:* Of this the Patient may drink five Ounces at a time, three or four times a day. 2. *Venice Soap a Dram at a time, dissolved in warm Milk, and sweetned with a little Sugar*, given twice a day. 3. *Tincture of Saffron made with a Volatile Spirit, as of Urine*, which he praises as an admirable thing.

LIV. He also commends *Opium* it self, as a powerful Conqueror of this Disease; as also the *fixt and Anodyn Sulphurs of Metals and Minerals*, because of their appeasing qualities. I have cured an Inveterate Jaundice, (thought by all other Physicians to be incurable, and of which I despaired my self, who was all over from the Crown of the Head to the Sole of the Foot, as yellow as if dipt in Saffron) by the only use of my *Volatile Laudanum* given every night at Bed time, beginning with three Grains, and gradually increasing it half a Grain every other night till the Dose came to six Grains: This the Sick continuing thirty days together, (but unknown to me till afterwards) became perfectly well, to my great admiration.

LV. Authors have also these following Specificks, as Sheeps, Asses, Goats, Dogs, and Horses Dung, infused or boiled in Wine, they being all filled with a Volatile Animal Salt, by Digestion in the Bowels of these Creatures. So also Volatile Salts of Earth-worms, Hogs-lice, Serpents and Toads: *Salt of the Caput Mortuum of our Common Vitriol or Coperas, exalted by reiterated Cohobations with Spirits and Salts of Urine and Sal Armoniack*: Volatile Salt or Spirit of Tartar, *Tinctura Salis Tartari Antimoniata*, *Spiritus Aperiens*,

riens, Spirits of Salt, Sulphur, and Vitriol, *Crocus Martis aperitivus*, *Antimonium Diaphoreticum Martiale*, given to a Scruple at a time; *Arcanum Tartari*, *Native Cinnabar* given from a Scruple to two Scruples, with a few Grains of Volatile Sal Armoniack; *Cinnabris Solaris*, with Salt of Vipers, *Spiritus Cornu*, *Cervi Succinatus*, Galls of Animals, as of Goats, Hogs, Sheep, given to ten or twenty Drops in Celandine Water or in Wine: Ponders of a Jay, of a Wren, and of a Parrot, given to a Dram; And it is remarkable, that the Flesh of the *green Tortoise* eaten, or its Liver bruised and dissolved in Celandine Water and drank, cure a Jaundice, when many other things fail.

LVI. *An Infusion of Celandine in Wine*, drank every Morning is commended. Or, *a Decoction of three handfuls of Strawberry leaves with the Roots*, in a sufficient quantity of fair Water. Or ℞ *Goose-dung gathered in the Spring time and dryed in the Sun, Chickens Dung, of each one Dram: Salt of Wormwood, or of Carduus, two Scruples: Salts of Amber, and of Hartshorn, of each ten Grains, Cloves in Pouder twenty Grains, Sugar two Drams: Make a Pouder for four Doses*, to be taken every morning fasting. Or this, *Take Salt of Urine, or of Harts-horn half a Dram: Volatile Salt of Amber fifteen Grains, Crabs-Eyes levigated a Dram and half: Saffron, Cochinele, of each in Pouder a Scruple: Mix and make a Pouder for three Doses.* Or this, ℞ *Skins of Hens Gizzards, and of their Feet, Skins of Geese Feet, of each in Pouder a Dram: Volatile Salts of Urine, of Earthworms, and of Milipedes, of each a Scruple: Sarffon and Cochinele of each in Pouder gr.* 15. *mix them for four Doses*, to be given in Extract of Juniper-berries every morning fasting. Or this, *Take Filings of Steel a Dram and half: Columbine-seed, Saffron, in Pouder, of each a Scruple: Pouder of Earth-worms, and of Hog-lice, of each half a Dram: Cochinele gr.* 10. *mix and make a Pouder for three Doses.*

LVII. *Some Authors pretend to Topical Remedies and magnetick Cures, but I confess I have had no experience of them:* As, 1. *A live Tench* applyed to the right Hypochonder, or to the Soles of the Feet. 2. *A Pike or Jack* applied alive to the Stomach. 3. *A Lizard* sowed in a Bag and hung about the Neck. 4. *Live Spiders* used in the same manner. 5. Take the Patients new-made Urine, (all that is made at one time) Ashes of the Wood of Ash-tree sifted, a sufficient quantity. Mix and make them up in a mass, which make up into three Balls of equal bigness, which set in a warm place, or in a Stow; as these Balls grow hard, the Jaundice (as it is said) will waste away. 6. According to *Paracelsus*, if the Patients Urine is put into a Bladder, and hung nine days in the Smoak, the Disease will be cured. 7. This is said scarcely ever to fail; put the Patients Urine into a Pot, cover it with a Tile, boil it half away, and then hide it in Horse-dung. 8. Among the Magnetick Cures, this has been several times experienced. Let the Patient piss in some brass Vessel,

Vessel, save the Urine three days, then boil it over the Fire, and when it is boiled, pour it into a running Stream of Water, not that which is stagnating.

LVIII. *The last Intention is to corroborate the Blood and Juices and the Parts weakned.* This is performed by these following Medicaments. 1. *Potestates Viperarum*, which may be given Morning and Night, to put 20 or 25 drops into a Glass of Generous Wine, as Canary, Madera, *&c.* will strengthen and restore to a Miracle. 2. *Take Tincturæ Antimonii, & Corallorum Compositæ, of each an Ounce; Tincture of Kermes-berries half an Ounce, mix them.* Dose 30 Drops in Wine or other fit Vehicle twice or thrice a day. 3. *Vinum Ictericum*, thus made, *Take Cortex peruvianus, or Jesuites Bark in Pouder twelve Ounces; Virginia Snake-root seven Ounces bruised; Cortex Winteranus in Pouder four Ounces, Camphir, made into subtil Pouder with a few drops of Spirit of Wine, one Ounce; Choice Saffron, Cochinele in fine Pouder, of each half an Ounce; Put all these Ingredients into a Gallon of choice Canary, which digest in a cold place for 14 days, shaking the Bottle twice a day,* after which let the Patient take a small Sack-glass full of the fine clear Wine (containing about three or four Ounces) every day Morning and Night, till the whole quantity is spent, letting the Wine stand all the while it is taking, upon the feces. This invigorates the Blood and Spirits to the last degree.

CHAP. V. *Of Hysterick Dseases.*

I. THere are no kinds of Chronical Diseases so frequent as the *Hysterical Passion*; and if any belief may be given to my Observations, I am of Opinion that as Fevers with their attendants, make two thirds of the Diseases which afflict Mankind; so Hysterical Distempers come up to half the other third part of those which we call Chronical; and as there are but few Women which enjoy a perfect freedom from Hysterical Diseases (except such only as are accustomed to hard Labour) so it is as manifest, that several Men are obnoxious to these perturbations, especially such who lead a sedentary Course of Life.

Salmon. Taking Hysterical Maladies in so large a Latitude as our Author does, I think he may be in the right to esteem them, as one sixth part of all those Diseases which afflict humane Kind. But I cannot be brought to such a belief, that all Hypochondriack Distempers in Men, which much resemble Hystericks in Women, are of the same Speices or Kind, or proceed from the same Causes, for Reasons hereafter to be given, except they arise in both Sexes from the *Ardor Seminis*, or suprabundantly and turgency of the Spermatick Humor.

II. The Antients, 'tis true, unanimously judge the whole train of Hysterical Symptoms to arise from the Womb; yet if they be compared with those commonly called *Hypochondriaca*

Disaffections

Diſaffections, which are ſaid to proceed from Obſtructions of the Spleen, and I know not what other *Viſcera*, we may eaſily ſee, that one Egg does not more reſemble another, than the Symptoms of theſe Diſeaſes do each other. But we muſt acknowledge that Women are more commonly affected with theſe Diſtempers than Men, but there is no reaſon to blame the Womb for that unhappineſs which proceeds from other Cauſes, as ſhall be hereafter declared.

Salmon. Every like is not the ſame, and there is a great deal of difference between Hyſterick Diſeaſes in Women ariſing from the Womb, and Hypocondriack Diſeaſes in Men, ariſing from Obſtructions of the Spleen, or of the Meſentery, or both; but if there be an *Ardor Seminis* joyned to the other Cauſes, it may then have a great reſemblance to the *Hyſterick in Women*, otherwiſe they very much differ according to the Parts affected, and the original Cauſes.

III. Hyſterick Diſeaſes being ſo very common, it is not more remarkable than the great variety of the Symptoms which give theſe Deſtempers a reſemblance to almoſt all other Diſeaſes, with which humane Kind is affected. For what part of the Body ſoever is affected with the *Hyſterick Paſſion*, the Symptoms which are peculiar to that part are preſently manifeſt. And if the Phyſician is not well furniſhed with a great proportion of Wiſdom and Prudence, as well as to be skilful in his Art, he may eaſily be deceived, by ſuppoſing that ſign to be the Symptom of ſome eſſential Diſeaſe in the affected part, which is only an effect of the Hyſterick Paſſion.

Salmon. And for this reaſon it is that the Phyſician ought to be known in Anatomy, and well to underſtand the Conſtitution of the Humane Frame, that he may thereby be the better enabled to judge truly of the Symptoms when they do appear, and he ought leiſurely to conſider every thing, and not haſtily deliver his Oracle, that he may ſpeak truth, according to the ſtate of the Caſe, and not build upon a Fallacy, to the prejudice of his Patient.

IV. As ſuppoſing the Diſeaſe to exert its force into the Head, it may induce an *Apoplexy*, which may end in a *Hemiplegia*, or Palſie of the one half of the Body, which perfectly reſembles that ſort of *Apoplexy* which infects Aged and Corpulent Perſons, tho' it ſeems to proceed from a different Cauſe. For whereas in other Perſons it is cauſed by pituitous Humours or Flegm, ſtagnating in the Cortex of the Brain, and intercepting the Paſſage of the Animal Spirits; In Hyſterick Women, whom it frequently aſſaults, preſently after the Birth of a Child, and the avoiding of a great quantity of Blood, it is excited either by hard Labour, or ſome vehement Commotion of the Mind.

V. At other times it produces dreadful Convulſions, reſembling the Epilepſy, or falling Sickneſs; the Belly and Entrails ſwelling upwards towards the Throat, and accompanied with ſuch vehement Perturbations or Strugglings, that even Women of a mean Strength can ſcarcely be maſtered,

ed, or held within Compass by the utmost strength of the Bystanders; the Patient in the mean season crying and shrecking out, tearing and bearing of her Breasts. Such as are subject to this kind of Hysterick Passion, commonly called *Suffocatio Uteri*, or Fits of the Mother, are generally of a Sanguine Complexion and Masculine Constitution of Body.

VI. Sometimes the Disease seizes on the external Parts of the Head, between the Pericranium and the Scull, causing an almost intolerable pain, which continues fixt in one place, not much exceeding the bigness of a mill'd Shilling or half Crown, and is accompanied with Vehement Vomitings. And this is that which I call the *Hysterical Clavus*; and it mostly afflicts such as have got the Green Sickness.

Salmon. In some this Headach is by fits and Girds, and the vehemency thereof is such, that at every blow or twitch, it goes to the Patients Heart, and makes the Eyes almost strike Fire; I can compare it to nothing so much as the striking of a Nail with a Hammer into the Head through the Scull.

VII. Sometimes the vehemency of this Disease assaults the vital Parts, and then it makes such a violent Palpitation of the Heart, that the sick really thinks that the noise which the Heart makes by knocking against her Ribs, must be heard by all who are about her. This *Species* of *Hysterick Passion* generally affects Women of a weak and infirm Constitution, and thin habit of Body, also Virgins who are troubled with the *White Fever* or *Green Sickness*.

Salmon. I speak it from my own Knowledge and Observation, that I have sometimes found this Palpitation so strong and loud, that laying my Ear upon the Stomach I could hear it beat every Pulsation distinctly; and sometimes it has been so loud, that I could easily hear it with my Ear at a pretty distance from the Stomach, which upon any accidental Passion of the Patient, would yet be stronger and louder, and so more easily heard.

VIII. Sometimes it possesses the Lungs, in which case the Patient coughs almost without ceasing, and expectorates nothing; and if the Cough is Convulsive withal, it is yet more violent, and the Explosions are much more frequent. This Hysterick Cough is very rare, and chiefly affects Flegmatick Women.

Salmon. In this Cough the Patient is generally afflicted with much Wind, and by reason the pituitous Matter is not brought upwards, it is generally carryed downwards, and many times causes Gripings, pain at Stomach, and shortness of Breath.

IX. Sometimes the Tragedy is acted in the *Gut Colon*, and in the parts under the *hollow of the Breast*. The Sick is then taken with an intolerable pain, not much unlike to the *Iliack Passion* which is accosted with immoderate Vomiting: The Matter cast up is greenish, resembling

ling the Leek coloured Choler, or else it is of some other unusual colour. And it often happens, that after the to be deplored Patient has for several Days endured such vehement Torments, enough to bring the most resolute Courage to Despair, besides the continued provocation to Vomit; the *Paroxysm* at length terminates in a profound *Jaundice*, the whole Skin of the Body being tinged of a *Saffron colour*. In the mean season the wretched Patient admits not of the least hopes of Recovery; and this despondency of Mind, or rather Despair, I have observed to be a constant attendent of this kind of *Hysterick Passion*. And this happens chiefly to such as have a loose and crude Habit of Body; or to such as have brought forth Children of a very large size, to the hurt and imparing of the natural Principles of Life.

Salmon. It is doubtless in the *Hysterick Passion*, as it is in the *Gout*, that as there may be a Translation of that from the Limbs to the Stomach; so in this there may be a Translation of this from the Womb to the Mesentery and Guts, where tho' it seems to be the Cholick, yet is only a Translation of that Disease from the Womb to those parts, where being rarified by the Intense heat from the sharpness of the Humors, and joyning also with Wind contained, or already in those parts, it excites those intolerable *Paroxysms* our Author has been here speaking of.

X. Sometimes this Disease seizes one of their Kidnies, inducing a most sharp and vehement pain, very much resembling a Fit of the Stone: not only in the quality and place of the pain, but also in its being attended with strong and continual Vomitings; the pain also sometimes extending itself to the Passages of the Ureters. So that it is very difficult to distinguish, whether these Symptoms arise from a Stone contained in the Reins, or are only the effects of the Hysterick Disease, unless we learn it to be the latter by the Patients relation, as that they had been disordered by some sore Accident going before; or, by its being accompanied by vomiting of green Matter.

Salmon. It is an easie matter to distinguish between the Stone or Gravel in the Reins, and the Translation of the Hysterick Disease from the Womb thither; for in the first case, if the Symptoms arise from the Stone, Gravel, Sand, or Tartarous Matter contained in the Reins or Ureters, besides the common Symptoms of a dull and heavy pain, but vehement in the Part, sickness at Stomach, provocation to Vomiting, there will always be a certain Obstruction or stoppage of Urine and *Paroxysms* of the Strangury present, which if they proceed originally from the Womb, will always be wanting: Besides, if the Patient be *Calculous*, there must have been some considerable time allowed before-hand for the breeding of the said Stone or Tartarous Matter, with many previous fits of the same.

XI. Nor is the *Bladder* exempted from the Excursions of this *Passion*, which causes not only

only a pain in that part, but even a ſuppreſſion of Urine, when the paſſages of it are not in the leaſt obſtructed by a Stone. This ſort of Hyſterick Diſaffection is indeed very rare, but that which affects the Reins is much more common, both ſorts are wont to affect thoſe Women, whoſe ſtrength has been already much waſted by repeated Hyſterical *Paroxyſms*, and the health of their Bodies violated and decayed.

Salmon. I am hardly of our Authors Opinion here; for it is ſcarcely poſſible for a pain and ſuppreſſion of Urine to be in thoſe parts, without there be a ſtone or Tartarous Matter, or ſome Tumour, Ulcer, or Apoſtem there, or in thoſe Paſſages, and therefore he did well to ſay that indeed it is very rare.

XII. When the Diſeaſe ſeizes upon the Stomach or Inteſtines, the Patient is troubled with continual Vomiting, or with a Diarrhea; either of which Symptoms is attended with pain; but they are both very often accompanied with Vomiting of green Matter, before mentioned, affecting thoſe chiefly who have been weakned by frequent *Paroxyſms*.

XIII. Sometimes alſo the Limbs or external Parts of the Body and Muſculous Fleſh are affected, and the Diſtemper affecting the Jaws, Shoulders, Hands or Legs, produces ſometimes Pain, and ſometimes Tumors. The ſwelling of the Legs is very obſervable, and may eaſily be diſtinguiſhed from a Dropſie, by the abſence of theſe two ſigns, which are always preſent in Hydropical Patients, *viz.* the encreaſe of the Tumor at Night, and the laſting impreſſion, or pitting in, which it made by thruſting one Finger hard in upon the tumified part. Beſides, if the ſwelling is from an Hyſterick Cauſe, it commonly poſſeſſes but one of the Legs; in all other reſpects this Symptom does exactly reſemble the Dropſie.

XIV. Sometimes the very Teeth can't eſcape (which is ſcarcely credible) the fury of this Diſtemper, and even when there is not the leaſt hollowneſs in them, nor defluction of any Humour; yet the pain is as violent and obſtinate, as that which proceeds from an evident Cauſe. Theſe Pains and Swellings are commonly found to affect thoſe wretched ſort of Women, who can be hardly ſaid to enjoy that ſmall portion of Life and Vigor, which the Diſeaſe has left them, by reaſon of the frequency and violence of the *Paroxyſms*.

Salmon. How all this can proceed from an Hyſterick Cauſe, I know not; I think our Author ſtretches Hyſterick Symptoms and Cauſes too far. If I may freely deliver my Opinion, I judge all this in the Teeth, to be only one of the Symptoms of a confirmed *Scurvy*.

XV. Sometimes this Diſeaſe is attended with a pain in the Back, which is one of its inſeparable Companions; and among all its tormenting Symptoms, there is none which attends it more conſtantly. And one

one common Effect of all those aforementioned pains is, that they leave such a tenderness in whatever part of the Body they affect, as if they had been beaten with a Rod, insomuch that the Patient cannot endure to be touched; but the soreness insensibly vanishes afterwards.

XVI. And it is very worthy of our Observation, that all these Symptoms are oftentimes introduced by a remarkable coldness of the Extremities of the Body, which for the most part last as long as the *Paroxysm:* And I have several times found this Coldness to be little less intense than that of a dead Carcase, tho' the Pulse in the mean season continued to beat regularly. I have also observed in almost all the Hysterick Women, who have been committed to my care, that they have complained of a certain *Failing*, or to use their own Phrase, *A sinking of their Spirits*, which they felt in their Stomachs, or about the Region of the Lungs.

XVII. It is also a vulgar Topick concerning those Women who are subject to this Disease, that they are wont to burst out into immoderate Laughter or Tears, without any manifest cause. But the most peculiar and almost inseparable Symptom of this Disease, is the clearness of the Urine, which from time to time the Patient voids in great abundance. And by searching out of the matter, I have found, that this is the distinguishing sign of the like Distempers which we call Hypochondriack in Men. I have also observed some instances of Men, who having made Urine of a Citron Colour, and their Minds chancing to be troubled by some violent Commotions; they did presently, and almost the very same moment piss a great quantity, not inferiour to Christal in clearness, continuing indisposed, till their Urine resumed its former colour, at the end of the *Paroxysm.*

XVIII. Also, when these Diseases are of long standing, both Hysterical and Hypochondriacal Persons are troubled with a stinking sort of Wind arising from the Stomach after Meals, tho' they have fed but moderately, and in proportion to their Appetites; and now and then they bring up something like Vinegar.

Salmon. This stinking sort of Wind is properly Belching, and the savor of the Food corrupted, rising again in the Stomach, which is offensive to most People who are troubled with it: 'Tis caused partly through Obstructions of the *Viscera*, the hurt of the Tone or rectitude of the Stomach, and a depraved Ferment contained therein; for if these things were not the cause; those things which rise again in one Stomach, would rise again in all Stomachs, which we see do not, so that the fault is not so much in the things eaten, as in the eater, and the Stomach digesting. That other which they bring up sower and like Vinegar, is what we

call *Heart-burning*, and proceeds from the superabounding of a depraved Acid; and this is manifest, because if the Patient takes now and then a few Doses of some fixt Alkaly, as of *Coral*, *Pearls prepared*, *Crabs Eyes*, *Terra Sigillata*, *fine Bole*, *Tobaccopipe Clay*, *Chalk*, &c. they are cured thereof; but without doubt this Symptom is made so much the worse being joined to the Morbifick Matter translated from the Womb.

XIX. Nor does their unhappiness consist only in the decayed and ruinous condition of their Bodies; but *Despair* also, that incurable Disease of their Minds, possesses them so absolutely, that they will not suffer themselves to be affected with the least probability of their recovery. They fancy themselves to be obnoxious to all the unhappinesses incident to human Nature, and torment themselves with terrible presages of the most adverse futurities. They give themselves up a Prey to the most insulting Passions, as of Anger, Jealousie, Suspicion, &c. and indulge those cruel Enemies of their Tranquility, within their troubled Breasts. They are Strangers, and even Enemies to Joy, Hope, Gladness, very rarely admitting those chearful Guests, nor ever long entertaining them within the compass of their review; and they disturb their Minds no less with the thought of them, than with the most dismal train of Passions. They observe not a mean in any thing, and are constant only in inconstancy or irresolution. Now they love a Person to excess, and presently hate the same as vehemently. They resolve now to perform some Design, and immediately they unresolve, and purpose another thing, it may be the quite contrary. So that, That which the *Roman Orator* said of superstitious Persons, may be fitly applied to these disturbed Souls; *Sleep seems to be the refuge of the Anxious and Distressed, but it fills these with Cares and Fears.* Nor do they dream of any thing but of Sepulchers, Graves, and the Fantoms or Ghosts of their dead Acquaintance.

XX. Thus they torment themselves both in Body and Mind, and make their whole Life to be a kind of Purgatory for the expiation of some execrable Crime committed in a former state. Nor does this happen only to mad and furious Persons, but even to such who in all other respects are prudent and judicious; and in profoundness of Contemplation, Wisdom of the Mind, or Eloquence of Speech, far exceed those whose Minds or Souls have not been accustomed to Thinking. So that *Aristotle* had reason to affirm, *That the Wiser Men were most subject to Melancholy.* But this description of so deplorable a state, agrees only to those who after being long afflicted with this Disease, are at last overcome by it; more especially when a series of unhappy Accidents, and like Vinegar, is what we

as

as Grief, Care, Thoughtfulneſs, earneſtneſs in Studying, *&c.* continue to caſt freſh Coals upon the Fire.

Salmon. I do not ſay but that ſome of theſe Symptoms in theſe two laſts Sections, do ſometimes happen to *Hyſtericks*; and all of them, ſome one or two of them at a time, at one time or another; but they are more truly and properly (take them altogether) a full deſcription of a Perſon under a *Profound Melancholy*; ſo that I am afraid our Author extends his Hyſterick Theory or Hypotheſis, to too great a compaſs, and includes thoſe things within his Pale, which ought to be conſidered without. *A radicated Scurvy, and deep Melancholy*, will take off a great deal of what he ſays in this Chapter. But this I ſpeak only that young Artiſts and Students might not be involved in a *Maze* before they are aware, and ſo loſe themſelves, as never to get out again.

XXI. *The External Cauſes of this Diſeaſe.* Theſe are either violent motions of the Body, or more frequently vehement Conturbations of the Mind by the aſſaults of Anger, Fears, Grief, and ſuch like Paſſions. When therefore my Advice is deſired concerning a Diſeaſe whoſe Nature and Qualities I cannot underſtand through the aſſiſtance of the vulgar Precepts of Phyſicians; I then carefully enquire whether her Diſeaſe is not exaſperated, or put into a kind of Ferment, as often as her Mind is diſturbed by any Paſſion; if the anſwer is Affirmative, I am then fully ſatisfied, that her Diſtemper adheres to the Hyſterick kind, eſpecially if withal it be confirmed by that other ſign (before-mentioned at *Sect.* 17.) *viz.* the avoiding of large quantities of Urine at certain times. To theſe Commotions or Perturbations of Mind, which are the moſt uſual Antecedent Cauſe of this Diſeaſe, I add alſo, an emptineſs of the Stomach after a long faſting, immoderate evacuations of Humors or Blood, and the violent operations of too ſtrong Medicaments.

XXII. *The Internal Efficient Cauſe of theſe Diſeaſes.* After a ſtrict Examination of all the various Symptoms and Accidents with which they are attended. I am apt to believe that they proceed from the irregular motions of the Animal Spirits, which ruſhing violently, and as it were in Troops upon the parts which are endowed with a quick ſenſe, produce Convulſions and Pain; and at the ſame time, the Organical Functions of the Body are preverted, as well thoſe which are over run by the tumultuary or perturbed Spirits, as thoſe which are deprived of their Influence and innate Power; ſo that by this unequal diſtribution of the Spirits, the whole Oeconomy of Nature is put into diſorder.

XXIII. *The Antecedent Cauſes.* Theſe irregular Motions of the Spirits, conſiſt either in a

Native or Adventitious Weakness of their Contexture, on the Score of which, they are apt to be dissipated by every Accident, and their Frame entirely broken. For as the *outward and visible Man* is composed of sensible parts; so there is *an Internal Man*, which consists in the orderly Constitution of the Spirits, and can only be discerned by the Light of Reason. Now this being intimately joyned and united to the Temperament of the Body, or Corporeal Man, is more or less easily disturbed and overturned, according to the strength of those Principles which Nature has endued us with: and this is the Reason that Women are more subject to these Diseases than Men, as being framed with a finer and more delicate Constitution of Body than Men are, who are fitted by Nature for a more Laborious and Active Life. And that this is the true cause of these Diseases, I could easily prove by running over the various Symptoms and *Phænomena* which have already been described; and at the same time evidently prove that they do not proceed either from the Corruption of the Seed, or Menstrual Blood, or the Sublimation of Malign Vapours from thence to the effected parts; or from I know not what Depravation of the Juices; Or heaping up of sharp Humours.

Salmon. What that great Apostle *Paul* in *Eph.* 3. 16. means by the *Inner Man* in a Spiritual Sense, I think may easily be understood: But what our Author's *Inner-Man* is, I confess my Ignorance of; his, consisting in *an Orderly Constitution of the Spirits*; unless he will have besides his *outward visible Man*, some *Phantom*, which he might as well have called *an Animal Man*; and yet all this goes to the making up of the *External Appearance*, and is no more than the *Brutish Life*, joyn'd to the *Corporeal Substance*, and is truly but the purer and finer parts of the same. The latter part of his Proposition, in which he will not allow these Diseases to proceed either from *the Corruption of the Seed*, *Menstrual Blood*, *Vapors from the Womb*, *Depravation of the Juices*, *or heaping up of sharp Humors*, I think is diametically opposite both to daily Experience, long and continued Observation, and the very Reason of the thing it self: Why should he exclude *the Corruption of the Seed*, when the *Profluence thereof*, will act the whole Tragedy, as is manifest in the *Fury of the Womb*: So also a preternatural *Obstruction of the Terms*, which will afflict a Woman sometimes, as if she had all the Diseases in Nature upon her at the same time; the like Reasons I could give as to the other Symptoms he is pleased to except against, but that I must use brevity.

The Cure.

XXIV. Now it is manifest from what has been said, that the Physician should make it his chief Aim, to strengthen and

and fortifie the Blood, which is the Spring or Fountain of the Spirits; that so the Spirits may also be invigorated, and thereby be preserv'd in such a State or Condition, as may be most agreeable to the Oeconomy of the whole Body, and the Conformity of its particular parts. And since the Humours or Juices are vitiated by the long continuance of these Preturbations of the Spirits, it will be convenient to lessen that vitiated Matter by Bleeding and Purging, before we attempt rectifying the Discrasy of the Blood, if so be that the Patient is able to suffer these Evacuations; for it is almost impossible to perform the main design of invigorating the Blood, so long as the putrid Mass of Humours which frustrate our Attempts of that kind, remain in being.

Salmon. Bleeding is for the most part Inimical in this case, more especially if there be present a great pining, or wasting, or thinness of Body, Feebleness, Dejection of Mind or Spirit, vehement Fatness, or any gleeting Issue, Ulcer, or Fistula: And where Purging is needful, it may be done with *Pulvis Cornachini*; *Our Family Pills*, *Tinctura Aurea Nova*; and in the more weaker habits of Body, with *Our Sal Panaretum*, or with *Sal Mirabile*, oftentimes repeated. If the Stomach is very foul, or much loaded, give some proper Emetick, as *Vinum Benedictum*, or our Author's *Emeticum Commune*, which will not go without the desired Effects: But in the administration of all these things, you are before-hand to consider the Constitution and Strength of the Body, that you may act safely, and not in vain.

XXV. But since that the Patient is many times cruelly tormented with Pains, Vomiting or Looseness, and not able to endure till the principal Intention of the Cure is regularly gone through; it will be fitting in such cases, to begin the Course by alleviating the Symptoms by *Anodyns*, or composing Medicaments, neglecting the Cause till some more convenient time; and then in the next place, to prevent the return of the Symptoms, by invigorating the Spirits, the Weakness of whose Constitution is the Cause of the Disease: And since we experimentally find there are variety of Remedies, which by an experimental or fœtid Smell repress the Vapors or repel the perturbed Spirits, (which Physicians call Hystericks,) we must in this Exigency have recourse to their Assistance, during the whole progress of the Cure.

XXVI. In order to pursue these Indications. I cause a Vein to be opened in the Arm, and then prescribe a Purging Medicine, to be taken every Morning for three or four days; During which time the Patient may possibly be so far from receiving any Benefit by those Evacuations, that fresh or new Perturbations are excited, and so make the Sick

seem to be in a worse Condition than before: I therefore take care to prepossess them, that they may not be discouraged at these Effects, which are usual in this Disease. And it is certain that these corrupt Humours must be in some measure taken away, before you can successfully go on and prosecute the main design of the Cure.

Salmon. As to Bleeding, Purging or Vomiting, we have already spoken. But if the Body is so weak, that they cannot be admitted; alleviating Medicaments or Anodyns are to be made use of, for the composing of the Spirits; among the Number of which you may use *Laudanum Liquidum Authoris*; or that of *Our Composition*; also *Our Guttæ Vitæ*, or *Laudanum Specificum*; or the *Eclegma Sudorificum*, which is of excellent use: But in weak Constitutions and such who cannot bear with the stronger Opiates, I commend *Diacodium*, giving it every night at bed-time from six Drams to an Ounce and half mixt with some Cordial Water or in Sack Whey. This being done at bed-time, the next Morning, and likewise twice or thrice, or oftner in the day-time, as you see need require, you may give 20 or 25 drops of our *Hysterick Tincture*; or the like Dose of the *Potestates Hystericæ*, in a Glass of fair Water, or rather Water mixt with Wine; or thirty drops of *Spiritus Cornu Cervi* in a Glass of *Angelica-water*, which thing will have very good Effects. However, because a Cure cannot be effected without a removal of the Cause, after the Body has been a little composed, and the Spirits refreshed, quieted and invigorated by these methods here delivered, you must then come to the use of Catharticks or Evacuatives, such as we have enumerated at Sect. 24. aforegoing: And if the Patient is very much troubled with Vapours, or apt to fall into Fits, some Hysterick Gums, such as *Assafœteda*, *Ammoniacum*, *Galbanum*, &c. are to be added to the Pills; as also *Salt of Amber*.

XXVII. After these Evacuations, I go on to restore the Blood to its due Crasis, to comfort, strengthen and invigorate it, and consequently the Spirits also, which are generated of it: In order to which, I prescribe the use of Steel, to be continued for thirty days together; than which there is not a better or more sure Remedy for this Disease in the World; for it enlivens the Mass of Blood, which before was languid, and quickens it, with a certain Volatile Ferment, by which the drooping Spirits are roused up, so that they shake off that kind of Stupidness with which they were oppress'd. It is to be noted also, that it is not always necessary to premise Bleeding and Purging, before the use of this Remedy, for if the Patient is very weak, these Operations ought to be omitted.

XXVIII. The best way of giving of *Steel* is, in my Judgment, to exhibit it in Substance,

ſtance; and as I never heard or obſerv'd, that it produced any ill Effect, being given after that manner; ſo I am fully ſatisfied by Experience, that the bare *Subſtance of Steel* performs the Cure of this Diſtemper more certainly and ſpeedily, than any of thoſe Preparations made by Art, which are commonly uſed. And I have heard, that even the Crude Ore, as it is dug out of the Earth, does cure Diſeaſes more effectually, than after it has been purified by the Fire. Next to *Steel in Subſtance*, I prefer the *Syrup of Steel*, before all other Preparations of it, which is made by our infuſing the Filings of Iron or Steel in cold Rheniſh Wine, till the Wine is ſufficiently impregnated; after which the ſtrained Liquor muſt be boiled with a convenient quantity of Sugar to the conſiſtency of a Syrup.

Salmon. I am of opinion that *Steel* is a moſt admirable Remedy for all *Hyſterick Diſeaſes*, and that given Crude in Pouder, it may in ſome caſes and to ſome Perſons exceed all the Preparations of it: And yet to ſome Patients, and in ſome habits of Body, it is not to be given, as being very diſagreeable to their Natures. This Mixture of *Crude Steel* has been approved of. *Take Filings of Steel a Pound, double refined Sugar two Pounds, Cream of Tartar two Ounces; Winters Cinnamon, Cloves, Nutmegs, of each an Ounce; All being in fine Pouder, mix them and keep them in a Glaſs Bottle cloſe ſtopt for uſe.* Give a Dram of it Morning and Night, in *Syrup of Clove Gilliflowers*, or *Syrup of Violets*, or in Water-Gruel made pretty thick, that it may not ſettle, drinking after it a good Glaſs of White Port, or White Lisbon Wine, or a Glaſs of pure Ale or Beer, letting the Patient (after taking it in the Morning) walk or ſtir pretty much up and down, ſo as almoſt to make them ſweat. Or thus, *Take Filings of Steel converted into Ruſt, only by often wetting them with Rain-water, and drying them again, reduced into ſubtil Pouder, a Pound; double refined Sugar two Pounds; Cloves, Nutmegs in fine Pouder, of each two Ounces; mix them;* Doſe, a Dram Morning and Evening as afore directed. Our Author's Syrup of Steel, you may make thus. *Take of his aforementioned ſteeled Wine, a Quart; double refined Sugar a Pound; mix and exhale with a gentle Fire, to the Conſiſtency of a Syrup.* Doſe from an Ounce and half to three Ounces, (according to the Age of the Sick, and Strength of the Diſeaſe) in a Glaſs of Wine, Morning and Night, but the beſt Syrup of Steel is thus made. *Take Tincture of Steel (made as we have directed in our* Pharmacopœia Bateana, *lib. 1. cap. 7. Sect. 26. § 1. 3. & 8.) a Quart; White Sugar a Pound; Mix and boil to a Conſiſtency.* Doſe three or four Spoonfuls Morning and Evening in a Glaſs of Wine. Or you may make it according to the Method in our *Doron Medicum, lib. 2. cap. 7. Sect* 19. which is a Preparation inferior to none of them. If the Patient cannot take Crude

Steel, or Syrup of Steel, then you must have recourse to the *Tinctura Martis Nitrata*, which may be given in Ale, Beer, or Wine, Morning and Night, from twenty to thirty Drops, more or less, according to Age, *&c.*

XXIX. It is my Judgment, that in this Disease Cathartick Medicaments obstruct the Operation of *Steel*; and therefore I like not of the usual way of giving Purgatives, to be repeated at certain Intervals, during the use of that Remedy; for seeing that it is my chief business to bring the Spirits into order, and to re-establish, restore and strengthen their Contexture, the most gentle Purgation would in *one Day* undo all that I could possibly do in *eight Days* by the use of *Steel*. And the same Custom having also prevailed in the use of Mineral Waters, which are impregnated with Iron, I am satisfied that it makes their Operation the less effectual. I am not ignorant that some have been cured by this Method; but that is rather an Argument of the great Efficacy and mighty Power of Steel or Iron, than of the Prudence of the Physician; seeing the Cure might have been performed more speedily without these repeated Purgations.

XXX. If any one shall object, That the *Filings of Steel* may stick to the Guts, and produce ill Effects, unless they be prevented by administring Cathaticks from time to time, I answer, That I never found or perceived these ill Consequences in any of my Patients: And I farther affirm, that it is much more probable, that the *Steel* being entangled in the Slime, and excrementitious Humors of those Parts, should be voided at last together with these; than when it is agitated by Cathartick, which cause many times Contractions or Convulsions and Gripings of the Guts; for thus the *Particles of the Steel* may be driven into the Coats of the Intestines.

XXXI. In the mean time, during the use of the *Steel*, you ought not to neglect *Hysterick*s, which are to be prescribed so, as they may be most agreeable to the Nature of the Patient. It is to be observed, that such Medicaments, which are of a solid Consistency, are much more effectual, and do more powerfully curb the Excursions of the disorderly Spirits, than such as are Liquid, whether in Decoction or Infusion.

Salmon. And therefore *Ropy Soot*, *Assa-Fœtida*, *Amoniacum*, *Galbanum*, *Sagapenum*, *and Salt of Amber*, are preferable being made into Pills, rather than in *Tincture*; and yet the Tincture in Spirit of Wine is much beyond the Decoction or Infusion. This is approved. *Take Ropy Wood Soot*, *Assa-Fœtida*, *of each two Drams*; *Ammoniacum*, *Galbanum*, *of each a Dram*; *Sagapenum*, *Volatile Salt of Amber*, *of each two Scruples*; *Volatile Salt of Mans Blood a Scruple*; *mix and make*

may

a Mass of Pills, with Syrup of stinking Arach. Dose from half a Dram to a Dram, every Night at Bed-time,

XXXII. In sum', to answer all the before enumerated Indications, I generally prescribe these few and simple Remedies, which though they are far from being Pompous and Magnificent, yet are usually effectual, and rarely fail to answer my Expectations. Let eight ounces of Blood be taken from the right Arm. Then, *Take Galbanum dissolved in Tincture of Castore and strained, three Drams; Tacamahacca, two Drams; mix and make a Plaister to be applied to the Navel.* The next Morning let her enter upon the use of the following Pills. *Take Pil. Cochiæ majoris, two scruples; Castor in Pouder, two grains; Balsam of Peru, four drops; make four Pills*, to be taken at five in the Morning, sleeping after them, which repeat twice or thrice every, or every other, Morning, according to their Operation, and Strength of the Patient. ℞. *Waters of Rue and Black Cherries, Briony water Compound, of each three Ounces; Castore tyed up in a Rag, and hung in the Glass, half a Dram; Fine Sugar a sufficient quantity; make a Julep.* Dose four or five Spoonfuls when faint, dropping into the first Dose, if the fit is violent, twenty drops of Spirit of Harts-horn. After Purging, let her use the following. *Take Filings of Steel eight Grains; with Extract of Wormwood make two Pills*; which let her take early in the Morning, and at five in the Afternoon, for 30 days, drinking after them a Glass of Wormwood Wine. Or for daily use, *Take Filings of Steel, Extract of Wormwood, of each four Ounces; mix and keep them for use*; of which let her take at once fifteen Grains, or a Scruple made into three Pills. If she likes a Bolus better, *Take Conserve of Roman Wormwood, Conserve of the yellow of Orange Peels, Ana, one Ounce; of Candied Angelica, Candied Nutmegs, Venice Treacle, Ana, one Ounce; Candied Ginger two Drams; with Syrup of Oranges make an Electuary. Take of this Electuary one Dram and half; Filings of Steel well rubbed, eight Grains, make a Bolus with Syrup of Oranges*; to be taken in the Morning, and at Five in the Evening, drinking upon it a Draught of Wormwood Wine. *Take choice Myrrh, Galbanum, Ana, a Dram and half; Castor fifteen Grains; with Balsam of Peru, make twelve Pills of every Dram.* Dose three every Night, drinking after them three or four Spoonfuls of Compound Bryony water thro' the the whole Course of the Cure. Now if these Pills should move the Belly, as it sometimes happens in Bodies which are very easily Purged, the following are to be instituted, *Take Castor a Dram; Volatile Salt of Amber half a Dram; Extract of Rue, so much as will make them up into a Mass for Pills, which make into* 24. Dose three every Night.

Salmon. The Prescripts of this Section are much the same with

with those in lib. 1. cap. 2. Sect. 10. ad 19. of this Work aforegoing, where we have delivered our farther Thoughts concerning the same, so that we need say no more thereof in this place.

XXXIII. Sometimes the use of Chalybeat or Steel Medicines may cause great disturbances in some Constitutions, as well in the Mind as in the Body, not only at the Beginning, but even through the whole Course of the Cure. However, the *Remedy* is not presently to be thrown aside; but that the Patient may the better endure it and with the less trouble, it will be necessary for her to take a Dose of *Laudanum*, mix'd with some Hysterical Water, and to repeat the same every Night for some time.

Salmon. Our Author's *Liquid Laudanum* may be good here, or that made with *Juice of Limons*; if a *Solid Laudanum* be chosen, then none of all the Preparations extant, come up to *our Specifick Laudanum*, of which she may take from two Grains to four at Bed-time. But our Mineral Preparation called *Impetus Martis*, made of the *Sulphur of the Vitriol of Mars*, exceeds them all, and may be given from 25 to 40 or 50 drops every Night at Bed-time in a Glass of Canary, or other Wine the Physician shall think fit to exhibit it in.

XXXIV. When the Symptoms are not so vehement as to enjoyn the taking of Steel, I for the most part use this Method; after the Sick has been once let Blood, and purg'd three or four times, I exhibit the Hysterick Pills last described in Sect. XXXII. aforegoing, to be taken Morning and Evening for ten days together. Thus I seldom fail of curing the Patient; and many times even these Hysterick Pills alone, without Bleeding or Purging, have been found very effectual in this Case.

Salmon. I commend the following Composition, having proved its Efficacy, I believe, some Hundreds of times, *Take Assa-fœtida, Ammoniacum, Galbanum, Ana, two Drams; Myrrh, Opopanax, Volatile Salt of Amber, Ana, one Dram; Castor in fine Pouder two scruples; Extract of Ox-Gall half a Dram; with Balsam of Peru a sufficient quantity make a Mass of Pills.* Dose one Scruple every Night, or every Night and Morning, if the Symptoms be very vehement.

XXXV. Some Women have such an Idiosyncrasie or peculiar Disposition of Nature, and such a particular Aversion to Hystericks, that they not only receive no good by them, but are oftentimes very much hurt by them: In such as these, Nature is to be submitted to, nor is she to be disturbed, by exhibiting things which she has such a Reluctancy to. These secret Antipathies occur indeed frequently, and are many times so prevalent against these and many other Remedies, that if we should not have a regard thereto, the Lives of the Sick may

may be endangered; for *Hippocrates* says, It in vain to do any thing contrary to Natures Inclination.

XXXVI. I shall alledge one Instance to confirm what I have said. There are some Women, who when they are Sick of the Small Pox, cannot bear the use of *Syrup of Meconium*, or *Diacodium*, without being seiz'd with Giddiness, Vomiting, and such other Hysterical Symptoms; and yet at the same time can take *Liquid Laudanum*, both safely and with advantage. And this thing I very lately observed (even whilst I was writing of this) in a young Woman, a Person of Quality, who was sick of the Small Pox, to whom I exhibited the *Syrup of Meconium*, or *Diacodium* on the sixth and seventh Nights of her Illness, who after each Dose was invaded with the aforenamed Symptoms, the Protrusion of the Pustles being also hindered: Afterwards *Laudanum* was exhibited to her, and by the use thereof, all those Symptoms vanished, and the Pustules were daily increased in their magnitude; and the Anxiety and Restlessness both of Body and Mind (which may be called the Paroxysm of the Small Pox) was perfectly removed, and by the repeated Doses of this Anodyn the Patient was reviv'd and strengthned: But this by the way.

XXXVII. After this manner not only the *Hysterick Passion*, or *Fits of the Mother*, but almost all other *Obstructions of Women*, as they are commonly termed, may be cured; more especially the *Green-sickness*, and *Suppression of the Terms*. But if at any time *Chalybeats* should prove unsuccessful, the Patient ought to have recourse to the Mineral Waters, which are impregnated with the Virtues of Iron, such as those at *Tunbridge*, and others lately found out. The Chalybeat Virtue of those Waters, both because of the large quantities of them that are drank, and there agreeableness to Nature, is more easily and intimately mix'd with the Blood, and more certainly eradicates the Disease than all the most exalted Preparations of Steel.

Salmon. Those who have not the Conveniency or Purse to go to *Tunbridge*, or other Wells of like nature, may make at home an Artificial Mineral or Iron Water after this manner. *Take fair Spring Water six Quarts; Salt, Crystals, or Vitriol of Mars, a Dram and half; mix, dissolve, and filter through brown Paper, so have you a Water in Virtues and Effects like to that of* Tunbridge. This may be taken from one Pint to two, three, or four, taking it by degrees, and also a little warm, or the Cold taken off it, or made into Posset, using moderate Exercise after taking it, and fasting till all the Water is gone out of the Body, which will be in about five or six hours. This Water opens all Obstructions, purges by Urine, cleanses the Reins and Bladder, is good against the Stoppage of Urine, and difficulty of making Water, and cures the Pissing of Blood. It allays all Sharpness of Humours, cures

cures inward Ulcers and Apostems, cleanses and strengthens the Stomach, Liver, Spleen, and Mesentery, and is prevalent against the Cachexia, Green-sickness, Scurvy, Dropsy, Jaundice, and Obstructions of the Terms, &c. You may also make another Mineral or Iron Water, of the *Sal Vitrioli Catharticum*, as we have taught in our *Pharmacopœia Bateana*, Lib. 1. cap. 10. Sect. 61. §. 1. ad 12. to which we refer you for farther satisfaction.

XXXVIII. But above all, this Caution is to de observed, during the Drinking of the Waters; that if the Patient is seiz'd with any Sickness, that may be thought to proceed from an *Hysterick Cause*, she must abstain from drinking of the Water for a day or two, till that Symptom goes away, which otherwise would hinder the passage of the Waters. 'Tis really true, that these Waters are less apt to agitate and disturb the Humours and Spirits, than even the most gentle Cathartick; yet they do in some measure produce the same effect, by their Diuretick quality; and besides they do sometimes purge or produce Stools. If then the Waters themselves, by disturbing the Humours and Spirits, do sometimes obstruct their passing away, how unreasonable must they be supposed to act, who order their Patients to be purged twice or thrice every Week during the use of the Waters: Or, which is still more foolish, to prescribe purging Medicines to be mix'd with the Waters?

XXXIX. I doubt not but these Simple Waters are impregnated with the Iron Mine through which they pass: This will be manifest to any one thus. *Take some Gallons of fair Water, and affuse it on a good quantity of rusty Nails; this by Digestion will be impregnated with the Virtues of the Iron.* And this you may prove thus: Put into it Pouder of Galls, or Leaves of Tea, or the like, and it will plainly appear of the same colour with the Waters of a Mineral Fountain, when such things are cast into them: Nor indeed have these Artificial, or inartificial Waters, (which you please to call them) when they are taken, any different Effects, if they are used in the Summer-time, and in a good Air.

XL. But if the Disease is so obstinate and rebellious, that it will not yield to the power and force of these *Iron Waters*, the Patient must then have the next recourse to *hot sulphureous Waters or Springs*, such as those are at *Bath*; which the Sick must drink for three Mornings together, and the next day following go into them and bathe, and the day following drink them again, so continuing in this manner to do by turns for two whole Months. And the Sick must continue in this and the other Courses not only till all the Symptoms are abated, but till the danger of Relapse is over, and Health be perfectly restored.

XLI. *Venice Treacle* alone, if it is used often, and for a long time, is a great Remedy in this Disease; and not only in this, but in many other Distempers, which proceed from want of Heat and Concoction, or Digestion. It may

may possibly be one of the best Remedies that ever was invented, however contemptible it may seem to many, because it is common and of ancient Extraction.

Salmon. Our Author may possibly commend this *Treacle of Andromachus* deservedly enough; but what he can say of that, I think I can say as much of *Mithridate*; and after all I think it to be the greater, and the nobler Medicine of the two.

XLII. If the Patient be not of a thin and cholerick Habit of Body, it will be very proper for her to take thrice a day some few Spoonfuls of a medicated Canary: *It is made by Infusion of Angelica, Centory, Gentian, Wormwood, the yellow of Orange-peel, and other Corroboratives in Spanish Wine.* This in a short time she will find do her much good. And indeed a large Draught of Spanish Wine taken alone by it self at Bed-time, for some Nights, by my advice, has done much good to some Hysterick Woman; for by it the habit of the whole Body was altered, and made stronger, and the Cachectick became brisk, lively, and fresh coloured.

Salmon. I know by manifold Experiences, that a good quantity of rusty Nails, having been for some time before infused in Canary, and then a good Draught of it drank at Bed-time, as our Author signifies, for some Nights, has done wonders.

XLIII. We find also, that sometimes the Jesuits Bark has been used with wonderful Success, for that it admirably comforts and invigorates the Blood and Spirits, a Scruple of the Pouder being taken Morning and Evening for some Weeks together. And I have observ'd, that several Hypochondriacal Men, as well as Hysterick Women, who have been for a long time dangerously affected, and were much weakned and disordered by the Disease, to have been restored thereby to a sound, firm, healthy and vigorous Constitution of Body. But this Remedy seems best to succeed in such Hysterick Diseases which are complicated with Convulsions, where they struggle violently, vehemently beating their Breasts.

XLIV. But we must indeed own, that it does not so infallibly, and so often and certainly cure these Diseases, as it does Agues. And now I cannot forbear on this occasion to declare, that though this Pouder does Wonders in that Cure, by which it is rendred a most noble, and almost miraculous Remedy, and that we give it in our Families to our Wives and Children, as often as occasion calls for it; yet such an undeserved Fate it has, to be much hated and opposed; only I think, for that it is attended with so good Success, as certainly and speedily to cure Diseases, beyond most other Medicines, and withal because it is a Novelty, or has not been long known. But the most excellent Men, as well as Medicines, do rarely meet with better Treatment from the ungrateful Stock of Mankind.

Salmon. I think all Diseases which are accompanied with Paroxysms

Paroxysms, or whose original Cause lodges in the Stomach and Blood, the *Cortex* is an admirable Remedy for, whether taken in *Powder*, *Infusion*, *Decoction*, *or Tincture*; and so noble a Stomatick it is, that it has not its equal in the whole Republick of Medicine: It not only rectifies the Discrasy of the Blood, and quells the Turbulency of Humors, but quiets all the Disorders of the Spirits, restoring the whole Humane Frame by some few Weeks taking of it, to a firm state of Health.

XLV. If the above mentioned Medicaments are not found to agree with the Constitutions of the Sick, as it often happens to lean and cholerick Women; then a Milk Diet may be prescribed; for several Women who have been long afflicted with Hysterick Fits (after all the successless Processes of Physicians through the Obstinacy of the Disease) have been restored to Health, by using a strict Milk Diet for some time. Those chiefly who have been affected with that Species of the Disease which I call an *Hysterick Colick*; who had long used themselves to Doses of Narcotick Medicines, and repeating the same, upon the Pain's returning, after the force of the former Dose was spent. But that which is most admirable in this Method is, that the Spirits should be corroborated and invigorated by the use of Milk, which yet yields but a crude and cold Nourishment. However it is the more easie to be believed to be so, if we consider how much more easily Nature, is able to digest such simple Nutriment, than that which is made and compounded of several sorts of Meats and Drinks; and that an Equality of Temperament in the Blood and Spirits is a real Consequence of so excellent a Digestion. It is not the bare Languidness of the Spirits absolutely considered, but with relation to the State or Discrasy of the Blood, which induces all these Disorders and Symptoms into the Body; the Spirits of an Infant may be indued with Strength and Firmness enough, in proportion to its Blood; but cannot be compared to the Spirits and Blood of an Adult Person.

XLVI. It is acknowledged that Milk is a mean and weak Food; yet by the constant use of it, the Blood is made more soft and tender; and if suitable Spirits are generated out of it, the Body will be brought to a better State. Yet notwithstanding all the Advantages of such a Diet, there are some persons who are not able to encounter with the Inconveniencies which it brings to them, when they first begin to drink it; because of its Coagulating or Curdling in the Stomach, whereby it is rendred insufficient to give to the Body a due measure of Strength and Vigour.

Salmon. I have overcome this Difficulty in several Persons who have met with it in pursuance of the Milk Diet, either by sweetening it with double refined Sugar, or by mixing it with a quarter part of Water, and then sweetning of it; or by boyling it with Water and sweetning it; or by boiling it with the fine Flower of Oatmeal, which has

has a notable Sweetneſs in it, and makes it become like Cream, and more nouriſhing, and then ſeaſoning it with Sugar or Salt, as the Patient beſt likes: by this means I have many hundreds of times prevented its curdling in the Stomach. After all, ſuch as cannot purſue the Milk Diet, may enter into a *Turnep Diet*, if the Seaſon of the Year in which they are choice and good is preſent, and poſſibly ſhe may find more in that than in the Milk Diet, ſince *Turneps* are always eaten without any Inconveniency to the Sick; they ſweeten the Blood admirably, nouriſh much, invigorate the Spirits by their ſweet and vinous Juice, and perform wonders in this Cure, which has been confirmed from a multitude of Experiences. See what we have ſaid of them in *Lib.* 1. *Cap.* 10. *Sect.* 15. of this Work aforegoing.

XLVII. But after all, I know nothing which does ſo abſolutely corroborate and ſtrenghen the Blood and Spirits, as long, frequent, and almoſt daily riding on Horſe-back; for by this kind of Motion or Exerciſe, the main force of the Agitation falls on the Abdomen, and Viſcera therein contained; in which the Veſſels which Nature deſign'd for the Expulſion of the excrementitious parts of the Blood are ſeated. What Depravation therefore of the Functions or Defects of the Organs, can there be imagin'd which will not yield to many thouſands of daily repeated Shocks? And what preternatural Subſtance, or depraved Juice can ſtick ſo faſt, or be fixed ſo deep in any part of the humane Frame, which may not be made agreeable to Nature, or diſcuſs'd and expell'd by the frequent uſe of this Exerciſe. This is indeed leſs proper for Women who are accuſtomed to a lazy and ſedentary Life; but it is of mighty uſe for Men, and tranſcends all our Remedies or Expedients whatſoever.

XLVIII. I ſhall confirm this thing by Example, in a Relation of a very extraordinary Cure, which I performed by this Method, on the Perſon of a Reverend Biſhop of this Land, famous for Prudence and Learning: Who by an imoderate Application of his Mind to Study, and ſerious Contemplations, fell into an Hypochondriacal Diſtemper, by which all the Ferments or Juices of his Body were depraved. He in vain paſt thro' ſeveral tedious Courſes of Chalybeat Remedies and repeated Purgations without any relief; and with the ſame ill Succeſs having tryed almoſt all ſorts of Mineral Waters, Antiſcorbutick Medicaments, and Teſtaceous Pouders, he was at length ſeiz'd with a Colliquative or melting Diarrhea; and in this deſperate Condition he came to me to have my Advice; I exhorted him to prove the ſingular Excellency of this Exerciſe of Riding on Horſe-back, doing it by degrees, and increaſing every day the number of Miles, as his Body was able to bear it: In this he perſiſted for ſeveral Months, till he had (by his own relation) rode ſeveral Thouſands of Miles; by which, he not only recover'd his former Health, but alſo acquired a ſound, firm

firm, and vigorous Habit of Body.

XLIX. This is the geneneral Method of curing of *Hysterick*s, which is applied to the original Cause, viz. *The weak Constitution of the Blood*, and therefore is only to be used in the Intervals between the Paroxysms or Fits. But if the Fit is attended with such violent Symptoms, as may threaten present danger if not speedily prevented; We must then forthwith have recourse to the use of *Hysterick*s, which by their emitting of a strong or rather Fœtid Smell, do generally repel the noxious Vapours, or reduce the disorderly and tumultuous Spirits, being either inwardly taken, or outwardly applied, by holding them to the Nose and smelling to them, of which kind are Assa-fœtida, Castor, Galbanum, Spirit of Sal Armoniack, and whatever else has a very ungrateful and offensive Smell.

Salmon. Those Hysterick*s*, which are most fill'd with Volatile Particles are chiefly to be chosen, because they have an immmediate Effect upon the Patient, and such are Volatile Salt and Spirit of Sal Armoniack, Volatile Salts and Spirits of Harts-horns, of Ox-horns, Goats, Rams and Elks Horns, of Ox, Horse, Goats, and Sheeps Hoofs, of Hair of all sorts, and of Feathers; Volatile Salts and Spirits of Man's Blood and Man's Flesh; of Ox, Goats, Sheeps, Hogs, and Horses Blood and Flesh; Volatile Salt of Amber; Fœtid Oils of Amber, of Harts-horn and Ox-flesh; Spirit of Ox-Galls; *&c.* This Composition is of good use: *Take Balsam of Peru an Ounce; Volatile Sal Armoniack and of Harts-horn, of each a Dram; Volatile Salt of Amber, rectified Oil of Amber, of each two scruples; Pouder of Castor, Galbanum, of eachhalf a Dram; Pouder of roasted Feathers, and of roasted Ox or Horse Hoofs, of each a scruple*; mix them for to smell to, and to be given a Scruple every Night at Bed-time, drinking a little Canary after it to wash it down.

L. If the *Paroxysm* or Fit is attended with a very great Pain in any part of the Body, or with a violent Vomiting, or wasting Diarrhea, you must administer, besides the afore enumerated *Hysterick*s, some Preparation of *Laudanum*, which is only able to master and overcome those Symptoms; but unless the Pain which causes the Vomiting, be very vehement, neither *Laudanum* nor any other *Hypnotick*, or Composing Medicine, must be exhibited, without premising convenient Evacuations; for there is oftentimes a vast quantity of Blood and Humours heaped up together in the Body, which will certainly hinder the Operation of the *most exalted Laudanum* or *Hypnotick*.

LI. Be-

LI. Besides I know from great and long Experience, that such who accustom themselves gradually to the taking of *Laudanum*, without premising necessary Evacuations, are forced to repeat the use of the same Remedy, to prevent the return of the Pain, as soon as the force and power of the former Dose is gone off; and to continue after the same manner the use thereof for several Years, augmenting the Doses gradually; and this they are forced to do, though it depraves all the Concoctions, and weakens the natural Functions: Yet truly I do not think that the use of *Laudanum* is immediately hurtful to the Brain, Nerves, or Animal Faculties.

Salmon. In gross Bodies where there is a great Confluence of putrid Humors under a pernicious Ferment, it is absolutely necessary to evacuate the Body by Hysterick Catharticks, before any *Laudanum* or *Hypnotick* is given, for otherwise they will not have the desired Effect: Which done, our *Laudanum Specificum* is the most proper of all the *Opiate Preparations*, because it is as great an *Hysterick*, as it is an *Hypnotick*: But that which surpasses all these Vegetable Compositions, is our Mineral or *Sulphur Vitrioli Martis*, of which our *Impetus Martis* is prepared, (a Medicine never enough to be commended) of which the Sick may take thirty drops, or more, Morning and Evening, in a Glass of Canary.

LII. I speak and believe what I have found by Experience, that *Catharticks* ought to precede *Paregoricks* in Virago's, and Women who abound with Blood; in whom a Vein ought to be opened, after which Catharticks ought to be exhibited, especially if she has been lately seiz'd with a Fit. But if weak Women and such as are of a quite contrary Constitution, are attack'd with such a Fit, and Pain, and have been not long since afflicted with it, it will be enough that you cleanse her Stomach with a Gallon of Posset-drink, more or less, to be drank and vomited up again, and then to give her a large Dose of *Venice Treacle*, or *Orvietan*, and to drink after it a Draught of some Spirituous Liquor, not unpleasant in taste, in which you may put a few drops of *Laudanum*.

LIII. But if the Sick has been already troubled with Vomiting, some considerable time, before the Physician is called; he ought to fear, that if an Emetick should be exhibited, it might irritate and enrage the Spirits, and extreamly weaken the Patient; and therefore he ought to give *Laudanum* without delay; and so to proportion the Number and Quantity of the Doses, according to the Continuance and Violence of the Symptom, that the Remedy may be equal or rather superior to the Disease.

LIV. After what has been said concerning this Case, I shall add two considerable Observations, 1. That when after necessary Evacuations, you proceed to the use of *Laudanum*, you must continue to repeat the Doses till the Symptom does disappear, with convenient Intervals between each Dose, that you may perceive the Effects of the former Dose, before you give another. 2. That during the use of this Remedy, she must abstain from all manner of Evacuations; for even the gentlest Clyster of Milk and Sugar, may destroy all that the *Laudanum* had done, and call back again both Pain and Vomiting.

Salmon. When you come to the Use of the *Laudanum*, you must not only continue it at due Intervals of time, but you must also gradually increase the Dose, as the Strength, Circumstances or Accidents of the Sick will bear or require, otherwise you will not find the relief by it which you expect; for as it is constantly taken, so it will become habitual, and its Effects will seem to diminish without this requisite Augmentation.

LV. The Use of *Hypnoticks* or Composing Medicines is not indicated from Pain only; but also by reason of vehement and incessant Vomitings, which requires large and often repeated Doses of them; for the Peristaltick Motion of the Stomach, which should convey what is contained in it downwards over the Pylorus, being inverted the Medicine is cast forth through the *Oesophagus* or Gullet, before it can exert its force, or produce any Effect, unless a new Dose be given after every Vomiting, and especially in a solid Form. Or if it is administred in a liquid Form, the Vehicle ought to be so little in quantity, that it may only moisten the Stomach, that its being cast up again may be prevented. *Ex. gratia. A few drops of Laudanum may be given in a Spoonful of strong Cinnamon-water.*

LVI. The Patient must also be advised to be quiet and rest her self after the reception of the *Laudanum*, more especially to keep her Head unmoved, for the least motion of the Head, is apt to bring or cause a new fit of Vomiting: and to prevent a Relapse, 'twill be convenient to exhibit Paregoricks or a Dose of a composing Medicine Morning and Evening for some time after the Inclination to Vomiting ceases; which thing is also to be observed after a *Diarrhœa* or *Hysterick Pains*, taken off by an Anodyn. By this means we may readily cure the *Symptomatick Pain and Vomiting*, by which (for their likeness to other Diseases) Physicians are more easily Imposed upon, than by any other Symptoms whatsoever.

LVII. There is a great Error, which I have sometimes taken notice of in this Disease; so great, that it requires all the Thoughts and Skill of the most accurate Physician to apprehend it, by mistaking such Diseases as have some resemblance to the Hysterick, for the same, which are the *Colick* and *Stone*, both which proceed from different Causes which produce that Disease, though their grand Symptoms are much the same, and therefore require a different Method of Cure. I am certainly perswaded, that there is no other case, in which the Mistakes of a Physician are more fatal and destructive to the Patient.

LVIII. There is another dangerous Failure generally attending on Women in Child-bed, which they are obnoxious to; and are thereupon seiz'd with this Disease, at a time, in which, though it may not be absolutely Mortal as to itself, yet often proves fatal upon the account of its dreadful Consequences; for according as the Hysterick Disease increases, the *Lochia* are first lessen'd, then quite stop'd, whose untimely Suppression is attended by a long train of dangerous Symptoms, which soon destroy the Sick, unless the great Diligence and Skillfulness of the Physician prevents it: Sometimes a Phrensy takes her on this Score, which growing daily worse and worse, causes Convulsions first, and then Death: But if she escapes she becomes

comes Maddish, and sometimes continues so during the whole Course of her Life,

LIX. I have been long since of an Opinion, that of all those Women who die in Child-bed, not One in Ten (to speak within compass) dies, because she has not Strength enough for the Delivery or from the Pains which accompany the Labour: But the Fatal Cause of so many Deaths is this; The Sick Woman's leaving her Bed too soon, upon which, by reason of the Motion of her Body, she is seiz'd with Hysterical Fits, which presently or by degrees, stop the *Lochia*, upon which a numerous Series of dreadful Symptoms follows.

LX. Wherefore let such as are willing to follow my Advice, be confined to their Beds for the first Ten Days, more especially if she is a Woman of a weakly Constitution, and has been of a long time troubled with Vapours; for besides, that the Rest which she enjoys in her Bed, she is preserved from the afore enumerated Symptoms; the warmth of the Bed not interrupted, likewise cherishes and refreshes the Spirits, which have been weakened and exhausted by the Pangs of Labour, and the usual Evacuations of the Birth; and withal recruits Nature it self, and digests and removes all those Crudities, heap'd up, during the whole time of her going with Child.

LXI. But if by reason of this error committed, any one of the said Symptoms should be induced, the Curative Indications are to be directed so, that the Spirits perturbed or disquieted by this motion may be appeased, and that the *Lochia* should be provoked to flow again, for as much as the stoppage of them is the immediate Cause of these Symptoms; but we are not obstinately to insist upon this Method; but having given a while those Medicines, which are wont to be used successfully in this case, if they do not answer according to our Expectations, we must then leave them off; for as strong things must not be used, so neither ought we to continue in the use of gentler, by reason Women in Child-bed, so affected, are much weakned, and their strength in a great measure worn out. As soon therefore as the *Loches* appear to be stop'd, the Woman is presently to be put to Bed, and an Hysterick Emplaister is to be applied to her Navel, and the Electuary and Julep for that purpose is presently to be given, as is at large declared in Chap. 12. following of this Book.

LXII. This also is to be noted, that it is the duty of every prudent Physician, after that the proper Remedies have been cautiously administred, to wait and see what time will effect, since the Danger grows less and less every day; and if the Patient passes the twentieth day, she is in a manner secure from danger. Also, after she has recover'd a little Strength, she will be the better able to endure the direct Method of Cure; whereas by overloading Nature with a heap of Medicines at the beginning, the Cure is not only delay'd, or put off as it were, but even the Disease and its Cause, to wit, the Perturbation of the Spirits may chance to be increased. This Note is a Matter of Importance, which I constantly observe not only in this Disease, but in all Acute Diseases; which I cannot promise to Cure by any certain Method. Besides the original Cause of this Disease, which is the *Native Imbecility* or Weakness of the Spirits; there are

other Causes arising frequently by *Adventitious Profligation of them*, proceeding from 1. An immoderate Overflowing of the *Lochia*. 2. An Overflowing of the Courses at other times; the Cure of both which see in Chap. 9 & 11. following. 3. From the Falling-down of the Womb, concerning the Cure whereof, see Chap. 14. of this Book.

CHAP. VII. *Of the* GREEN-SICKNESS.

1. THE Signs of this Disease are these; Ill colour of the Face, and of the whole Body, Swellings in the Face, Eye-lids, and Ankles; Lumpishness of the whole Body, a stretching Weariness of the Legs and Feet, difficult Breathing, Feverish Pulse, Sleepings, *Pica* or Longing for things not fit to be eaten, with an Obstruction of the Courses. 2. Let the Sick take the Chalybeat Pills or Powder prescribed in lib. 1. Cap. 2. Sect. 12 & 16. afore going, more or less, according to her Age; drinking after them a Draught of any sort of Wine that she likes, or of the strengthning Infusion of Angelica Roots described in Sect. 15. of the place aforecited. 3. If she is of an indifferent strength, purge her once or twice, before she enters into this Course.

SALMON's Comment.

II. *The Names.* It is called Χλωρόσις *Chlorosis a* Χλωρὸς (from a whitish green colour,) also, *Morbus Virgineus*, *Morbus albus*, *Color pallidus*, *Virginium*, and *Morus albus*; in English, *the Green-sickness*, and *the Virgins Disease*. It is a Disease arising from Obstructions of the Vessels, not only of the Womb, but also of the Stomach, Liver, Lungs, Spleen and Mesentery, which causes a Weakness in the Limbs, Palpitation of Heart, Shortness of Breath, Dulness of the Animal Spirits, together with an Apperite to filthy and unnatural things, and a mighty Paleness of the Countenance.

III. *The Parts affected* are principally the Stomach and Womb; and after them some other Bowels, as the Lungs, Liver, Spleen, Mesentery and Guts.

IV. *The Signs.* Our Author has given you the principal diagnosticks; but the Colour of the Face is not only pale and whitish, but sometimes of a livid, or leaden and greenish Colour; and seems to be much of the Nature of a *Leucophlegmatia* or *Cachexy*: They are generally Cold, unless when they have a Flushing, which is very common to them. They are so stop'd up that they can scarcely walk about the House, or go up a pair of Stairs, but they are out of breath, and as if they would presently fall down dead. There is many times a Palpitation of the Heart, and vehement Beating of the Temporal Arteries, and the Pulse is sometimes so quick, that they seem to be in a Fever, from which Symptom some Authors have called it *Febris alba*, there is sometimes a *Flatus* or Wind from the *Hypochondria*, and a spontaneous Lassitude of the whole Body, with Weakness, and either a Swelling or Flabbiness of the Legs and Ancles, and even of the whole humane Frame.

They

They have sometimes a tedious Headach, and are very sleepy and dull about every thing they do. The Belly swells after eating, and they are sometimes troubled with Belching and rumbling of Wind in the Guts. And tho' they are many times Costive, yet all their Excretions are generally Crude and Pituitous. Their Courses are almost always stop'd, and by reason of the depraved Acid in the Stomach, they either loath their Food, or else long for hurtful, filthy, or unnatural things, and that to a strange degree of Longing, so as not to be satisfied without eating the same.

V. *The Causes.* It is caused in general from a vitious Acid of pituitous Matter, by nature Viscous or Glutinous, bred originally in the Stomach, and degenerating in the Womb and other *Viscera*, which disturbing the Oeconomy of Nature, and causing a Discrasy in the Blood and Lympha, hindering their proper Motions, and Fermentation, induces Obstructions in the Stomach and Womb, which oppressing the formative Spirit, causes that Symptom, which makes them look as pale as Death. The Pain of the Stomach, and depraved Appetite, proceed from a preternatural viscous Acid, caused by gross, viscid, and crude Humours, bred usually from bad Diet, Surfeiting, *&c.* as also from the evil Nature and Qualities of the bad and unwholsome things which are eaten. Belching and rumbling Wind in the Guts is caused sometimes by reason of a great Costiveness of the Bowels, and sometimes by too hard lacing, by which violent Compression Wind and Humours are shut and pent up in the Body.

VI. Swelling of the Stomach, and Pain and Inflation of the *Hypochondria*, arise from Wind obstructed, distending the Cavities of the *Abdomen*; which by forcing the *Diaphragma* upwards, causes a Shortness of Breath, and sometimes a difficulty of Breathing, which by much Motion, or Exercise more than ordinary, is increased; for by those means the Humours growing hot, are rarified and dilated, for which reason the straightness is made the greater. The Weakness and Lassitude also of the whole Body, arises from the Obstructions of the Animal Spirits in the Channels of the Nerves in all the Muscles of the Body, by which the Limbs are made unable to move, or stir with ease; as also from the defect of Animal Spirits, and their being clog'd with the Viscidity of the Nervous Juice, by which they are hindred from exerting their natural Power and Force.

VII. To the former add the usual External Causes, as taking of Colds, eating and drinking to Excess, Lazyness, too much Sleeping, Costiveness, Stoppage of the usual Excretions, Suppression of the Terms, eating immeasurably of Pickles, Sugar, and of Sweat-meats, which breed viscid Humors, also eating of Heterogene things, as vast quantities of Pepper, Ginger, Nutmegs, Chalk, Brick-dust, Cinders, Ashes, Sand, Dirt, Salt, Vinegar, Limons, burnt Crusts of Bread, old Rags, brown Paper, Ockam, Rice, raw Wheat, Oatmeal, Cocaoa-Nuts, Coffee-berries; with many other things alike unnatural.

VIII. *The Prognosticks.* This Disease rarely kills any, and so not dangerous; nor very difficult to be cured, if it has not been of any long continuance. But if it once becomes inveterate, the Cure is more hard; or it may degenerate into some other worse Distemper, as a *Consumption*, *Cachexia*,

Leucophlegmatia, *Dropsy*, *Jaundice*, *Uterine*, *Rage*, &c. and at length be the cause of *Barrenness*. If in Virgins, it proceeds from Obstructions of the Vessels of the Womb, it may then be cured by Marriage, as well as by Medicines. If the *Menses* can be easily provok'd, the Cure will come speedily on; but if there is a difficulty in producing them, the Cure will be prolonged beyond Expectation.

IX. *The Cure.* 1. *Cleanse the first Passages and Bowels by gentle Emeticks and Cathartick, if the Body of the Sick will bear them.* If there is an Acid Load clogging the Stomach, you may safely Vomit with Infusion of *Crocus Metallorum*, or *Vinum Antimoniale*; or *Tartar Emetick*, or with our Author's *Emeticum Commune*, according as the Body of the Patient can bear it.

X. Then it may be good to purge the Sick, either with our *Family Pills*, or with our *Pilulæ Cathartice* (described in our *Pharm. Chirurgica.*) If the Sick cannot take Pills, you may give *Pulvis Cornachini* from a Scruple to half a Dram: Or our *Cathartick Tincture*; any of which Purges are to be taken, two, three, or four several times, at due Intervals, and also so long time before the expected time, that the last Purging may be over; for by this means not only much of the Morbifick Matter is carried off, but the Viscid and Heterogene Humours of the Body are so much shaken and loosen'd, that Nature with much ease breaks the Chains, and casts off the offending Cause. Or you may purge with this, *Take Savin, Pennyroyal, of each a handful; roots of Angelica, Birth-wort round, Bryony, Elecampane, Black Helleborroot prepared, Cassia Lignea, of each two Drams; Grains of Paradice, Cardamoms, of each a Dram; White Agaric, half an Ounce; Sena, an Ounce; Filings of Steel tyed up in a Rag, an Ounce; bruise and break them, and put them into a Bag, for two Quarts or five Pints of Rhenish Wine.* Dose three Ounces in a day upon occasion.

XI. 2. After due Evacuation and cleansing the first Passages, you must give powerful Aperients, which may incide, attenuate and open all the Viscera and Vessels obstructed by the viscous and glutinous Juices generated by means of a preternatural Acid. For this purpose Steel Preparations are for the most part given, such as this, *Take double refined Sugar, two Pounds; Filings of Steel, a Pound; Fœcula of Aron-roots, three Ounces; Cloves, Nutmegs, Winters Cinnamon, of each an Ounce; mix them.* Dose from half a Dram to a Dram or more Morning and Evening, drinking after the same a Glass of Rhenish, or White Port, or Lisbon Wine.

XII. But though Steel given in substance, often-times does feats, yet it will not agree with all Constitutions, nor will all Stomachs digest it. For this cause I many times prescribe either the *Tartariz'd Tincture of Steel*, or *the Tincture made with Nitre*, to be exhibited, the first from two Drams to four; the latter from thirty to sixty drops or more, to be given in the Intervals of Purging, every Night going to Bed, and to be continued also for a Month after.

XIII. Or you may give this, *Take Extract of Mars, an Ounce; Winters Cinnamon two Drams; Black Pepper, a Dram and half; Cloves, Grains of Paradice, of each a Dram; Rhenish Wine or Canary, a Quart; digest warm for two or three days; then strain through Hypocrates his sleeve;*

and

and give an Ounce of it Morning and Evening. Or this of *Crato's*, *Take Honey and Sugar, of each a Pound; Filings of Steel prepared with Vinegar, half a Pound; Candied Nutmegs half an Ounce; Rhubarb in fine Pouder, Aromaticum Rosatum, of each two Drams; mix and make an Electuary.* Dose half an Ounce Morning and Evening, with a Glass of White-wine. Also with *Pulvis Cachecticus Riverius* cured several of the Green-sickness after a singular manner.

XIV. 3. Lastly, to confirm the restored Health (the acid and mucilaginous Humours being thus evacuated and corrected) the *Viscera*, the Stomach, Mesentery and Womb, more especially, are to be strengthened by proper Intervals. *Varandæus* commends these Pills, *Take Juice of Herb Mercury, clarified Honey, of each four Ounces; boil them to a sufficient Consistency; then add Pouder of Roman Nigella Seed, one Ounce; Mix and make a Mass of Pills.* Dose from a Scruple to two Scruples going to Bed for some Nights. *Juice* or *Essence of Nep* is commended by *Faber*; all bitter things also are good, as *Tinctures of Wormwood, of the Lesser Centory, of Gentian, and of Winters Cinnamon*; Scurvy grass, Brooklime, Water-cresses, Horse-radish-roots, Agrimony, and in an especiall manner the *Elixir Proprietatis*; and all other things which destroy or absorb the preternatural Acid in the Stomach and other Bowels.

XV. Or *Take Acidum Tartari Mynsichti, Crabs-Eyes, Crocus Martis aperitive, of each a Dram; Oil of Cloves gut.* 12. *mix them for six Doses*, one to be given Morning and Evening every day. Or this mixture, *Take Angelica or Parsley-water, four Ounces; Tincture of Orange-peels, an Ounce; Tincture of Saffron, half an Ounce; Bezoarticum Minerale, a Dram; Spirit of Sal Armoniack, half a Dram; Oil of Angelica, seven drops; Syrup of Mint, two Ounces; mix them by shaking*; Give of it a Spoonful at a time now and then.

XVI. Or the Patient may take in the Morning fasting, at Ten in the Forenoon, at four Afternoon, and at Bed time, for fourteen or sixteen days, this follwing *Tincture of Antimony: Take of Antimony, Nitre and White Tartar, all in Pouder, of each one Pound; mix and detonate in a large Crucible; putting in the Pouder by Spoonfuls into the Crucible, made first red-hot; melt them together for a while, then pour it forth into a hot Iron Mortar, and pouder it with what hast you can; which done hastily, put it into a Glass, and affuse there on Alcohal, or Tartariz'd Spirit of Wine, so much as may overtop it five, six or seven Inches. Digest cold, close stop'd, and extract a red Tincture which decant and keep for use.* Dose from twenty to thirty Drops, in a Glass of White Lisbon Wine.

CHAP. VIII. *Of Stoppage of the Terms.*

I. 1. THEY loath their Food, the Face is discolour'd, the whole Body is heavy; the fore-part of the Head, Loins, Legs, and Belly, are full of Pain, and the Feet swell. 2. Prescribe the same Medicines which are commended in Lib. I. Cap. II. afore-

going; but if they do nothing, then proceed thus. 3. Every Morning, and at four Afternoon, exhibit five Spoonfuls of the *Hysterick Julep*, without *Castoreum*; adding to it 12 drops of *Spirit of Harts-horn*. 4. And every Night at her going to Bed, let her take a Scruple of *Troches of Myrrh*, made into a *Bolus* or Pills, with *Syrup of Mugwort*.

SALMON's Comment.

II. This Distemper or Disease is called in Greek Ἐπισχέσις τῶν ἐμμηνίων, and in Latin, *Mensium suppressio*, a Stoppage of the Courses; but there is also Μείωσις τῶν ἐμμηνίων, *Imminutio vel Diminutio Mensium*, a diminishing of them, wherein they are not fully stop'd, yet flow not so well, not so much in quantity, nor yet so well coloured as they ought to do, but dodge as it were, and many times flow with much pain; if therefore they do not *stop*, but *abate*, it makes the Body pale, and shows the evil Constitution of the whole Body: The Womans Health depends very much upon the Motion and Measure of the Blood voided by the Womb; so that when this Evacuation is preternaturally suppressed, the whole Body is out of order; whereas, if they be right, all things are generally well. They commonly begin to come about twelve, thirteen or fourteen Years of Age, but oftentimes later, and sometimes are not produced till seventeen, eighteen, nineteen or twenty, and sometimes later; but when the Maiden comes to those Years, if they flow not of their own accord, they ought to be forc'd down by Art. They cease in some Women at 40 or 45, and some have them till 50 or more, and then they naturally cease of their own accord; so that to try to bring them down then, it is but to labour in vain, because it is altering the course of Nature.

III. This Flux when it first comes upon young Women, does not exactly observe every Month, for at first sometimes they flow but once in two or three Months; but afterwards in process of time, the Blood increases in quantity, and grows more plentiful, and then they observe the Course of Nature, and keep to the just and due times.

IV. *The part affected is the Womb*, but primarily the Stomach, where an evil glutinous Chylus is produced, which generates a tenacious, thick, cold, viscous Blood; which because its substance is such, that it cannot pass, or run smoothly in its proper Vessels, causes the *Menses* to stop, and so finding no passage by the way it ought to run forth, seeks some other places to be disposed of or retained in, and so causes this Suppression. There is also a proximate cause, which is an Obstruction in the Vessels of the Womb, viz. the *Vagina*, or neck of the Womb; in those branches of the *Hypogastrick Artery* more especially; as also in the Veins thereof: And this is very clear, for that late Dissections have proved, that the Hypogastrick Vessels are not carried to the Womb it self, but to its neck on each side: And this is so much the more manifest, because the Courses have flow'd in several Women, for some Months, after they had been with Child.

V. *The Signs.* If it proceeds from some fault in the Blood, then the Patient at the expected time, finds no Sense or Propension, or Pulsation about their Genitals and Loins; the Blood is thick and

and viscid, made so by a cooling, moist and glutinous Diet preceding: there is a weak and slow Pulse, Lazineſs, want of Perspiration thro' the Pores, Paleneſs and Chilneſs through the whole Body; a Frigidity in the Genital parts, with an Excretion of pituitous and viscid Humours by them, Sleepineſs, Wearineſs all over the Body, racking Pains about the Loins, Face livid or white, Breath short, more especially when going up a pair of Stairs; sometimes their Eyes swell, they grow pensive, Voice is altered, with a decay of Appetite, and many times Nauseouſneſs or loathing of Food, or Vomiting; but the last and most infallible Testimony, is the simple Confession of the Patient.

VI. If it proceeds from faults in the Vessels of the Womb, there are Symptoms which shew the Tendency of the Blood to the Uterine Vessels, as Pain in the Loins, dullneſs in the whole Body, Swelling in the Belly, loſs of Appetite, Loathing, Flushes of Heat and Cold, difficulty of Breathing, a Propension about the Genitals and Pubes, Throbbing in divers parts of the Body, in the Hypochondria and Limbs, and a tendency of the Blood another way, as to the Noſe, Lungs, Mouth, *&c.* In a Diminution of the Courſes, many of these Signs are present, but more remiſs, and fewer in number.

VII. *The Prime or remote Causes* of this Diſeaſe are, a Weakneſs of the Stomach, the Tone thereof being much hurt, by the Non-naturals being irregularly uſed; Air too cold and dry, going into cold Water, or cooling the Hands and Feet by dipping them in cold Water, ſitting upon cold places, lying cold; and eating Food hard of Digeſtion, or which is Cold, Acid, Auſtere, Styptick, or Binding, Groſs, Terrene, Watery, Phlegmatick, or Viſcous; taking, by unskilful Advice, Medicines which are incraſſating, cooling, or Aſtringent; too much Sleep, with an idle kind of Life, Excretions, either increaſed, diminiſhed, or fruſtrated, vehement Paſſions of the Mind, with other things of like nature.

VIII. *The conjunct Proximate or near Cauſes* are, The want of *Lympha* or *Serum* in the Blood, by which it is made too thick, or groſs and viſcid, which hinder its Fluidity and Fermentation; rendering it unfit for Motion, and generating of Spirits: And the Conſtitution of the Veſſels about the Womb, being either not open enough, or totally obſtructed; or when they are naturally ſo ſtrait, that though the Blood would flow that way, yet by reaſon of their ſmallneſs, it cannot eaſily paſs, for which reaſon it ſeeks a paſſage by ſome other unuſual ways, as by the Hemorrhoidal Veins, Noſe, Lungs, Mouth, Teeth, *&c.* as we before hinted. In length of time the Veſſels of the Womb may be obſtructed alſo by a mucilaginous or viſcid Matter, which by degrees may be ſo glewed up, as totally to hinder this Flux.

IX. *The Prognoſticks.* It is not dangerous when recent, or in its beginning, or in Summer or Spring time, ariſing from External Cauſes; but if it continues for any time, it is apt to become Chronical; and tho' at firſt it may not be dangerous, yet in length of time, it may prove the Cauſe of many vehement and afflicting Diſeaſes, as of a Peripneumonia, Pluriſie, Leucophlegmatia, Dropſie, Cachexy, Inflamations, Ulcers, Conſumptions, Vapours, Hyſterick Fits, *&c.*

And

And in unmarried Persons it may produce the Green-sickness, Palpitation of the Heart, Pica, Barrenness, Frenzy of the Womb, *&c.*

X. *The Cure.* Though you may safely and profitably take the same course, which we have prescribed in the last Chapter of the Green-sickness, (for the cause of this Disease is much one and the same with that,) yet we ought to direct the *Emeticks* or *Cathartick*s more peculiarly, and chuse such, as are more particularly Specifick for opening the Vessels of the Womb. If from the Signs it is manifest that a Load lyes at the Stomach, and that the Patient is easie to Vomit, an *Emetick* is to be given; among which are *Salt of Vitriol*, which not only cleanses the Stomach, but also has a peculiar Power to open the Vessels of the Womb, which may be once or twice repeated, that the Depravity of the Stomach may be removed; those who like not that may use *Antimonials*, of which kind they think most convenient.

XI. After the use of Emeticks, *Cathartick*s are to be exhibited. that all the *Viscera* may be cleansed, and by their potency, the Matter obstructing may be loosen'd; in this case Hysterick Purges are to be chosen; such are our *Family Pills*, which may be several times repeated, *Extract of Aloes, made up into Pills with Pouder of Troches Alhandal, Pepper in fine pouder, and Vitriol of Mars, of each equal parts:* Of which from a Scruple to two Scruples may be given at a time. Or thus, *Take Pilulæ de hiera cum Agarico a Dram; Crocus Martis aperitivus, Extract of Saffron, of each half a Dram; Troches Alhandal, Mercurius dulcis, ana, one Scruple; Resin of Jalap ten Grains; Oil of Pennyroyal, eight Drops, mix and make a Mass of Pills.* Dose from twelve Grains to a Scruple, and in strong Persons to half a Dram. Or this Pouder, *Take Jalap in pouder, Crocus Martis aperitive, of each a Dram; Mercurius dulcis, two Scruples; Diagredium, half a Dram; Oil of Cloves, ten Drops; mix them for six Doses.*

XII. But if the Patient cannot take Pills or Pouders, you must have recourse to liquid Cathartick*s* or Potions, which you may make after this manner, *Take leaves of Pennyroyal, Savin, of each a handful; Sena, Saff-flower, of each one Ounce; Roots of Asarum, Masterwort, Bryony, Rheubarb, Costus, of each half an Ounce; Winters Cinnamon, Aniseeds, Caraways, Fennel, Nigella, Bay-berries, of each two Drams; Zedoary, Calamus Aromaticus, Saffron, of each one Dram; Filings of Steel, two Ounces; Cut and bruise what are to be cut and bruised, and put them all into a Bag, which put into old Rhenish-Wine a Gallon, which let infuse for a Week or more.* Of this the Patient may take three or four Ounces twice a day. Or the Sick may be purged with *Elixir Proprietatis simplex*, or *Pestilentiale*, taking it a Spoonful at a time in a Morning fasting, in a Glass of White Lisbon Wine or Canary, which may be taken eight or ten days (every day) before the expected time. This is not only an excellent Purge in this case, but a Specifick also for the Production of the Terms.

XIII. *The next thing to be done after Purging or Cleansing as aforesaid, is to give proper Emmenagogicks, which may open the obstructed Passages* (already loosned by the former Medicaments) *absorb the preternatural Acid* (which creates a glutinous and obstructive Mucilage) *and dissolve the Coagulum or Crassitude of the Blood and Lympha,* (making

ing them to remove freely and eaſily.) *Sylvius* commends *Aromaticks* in a very high manner, whether bitter or not bitter; as Roots of Angelica, round Birthwort, Fennel, Madder, Lovage, Orrice Florentine and Blew, Parſly, Smallage, Spicknard, *&c.* Leaves of Calamint, Dittany, Pennyroyal, Rue, Savine, *&c.* Flowers of Cammomil, Lavender, Roſemary, Saffron, *&c.* Bay and Juniper-berries, and the Carminative Seeds. And of Gums, Galbanum, Sagapenum and Myrrh. He mightily commends both Acids and Aromaticks abounding with a lixival Salt, as well fix'd as Volatile, and fix'd and Volatile Salts themſelves; but particularly all Volatile and Oily Salts, becauſe they do their work kindly, and ſucceſsfully, and that they may be taken at any time, namely thro' the whole compaſs of the Month.

XIV. The ſame *Sylvius* adviſes to this following medicated Wine, *Take Roots of Elecampane, two Drams; of Galangal and Turmerick, of each one Dram; Leaves of Pennyroyal, Marjoram, red Mugwort, Savin, of each half a handful; Bayberries, Seeds of Daucus, Lovage, of each two Drams; Mace one Dram; ſharp Cinnamon, half an Ounce; Cut, bruiſe, and put them into a Bag, upon which put a Quart of Wine*; of which let the Patient drink a Glaſs at Dinner and Supper. Or theſe following Pills, *Take Sagapenum prepared with Vinegar, half a Dram; White Amber, Venice Borax, Steel prepared, of each a Scruple; Myrrh, Caſtoreum, ana, gr. xv. Choice Saffron gr. x. Oil of Cloves, ſix drops; mix them and make forty Pills*; of which let the Patient take five every Night at Bed-time. And above all things he commends the *Spirit of Sal Armoniack*, to be taken five drops or more at a time; for this perfectly diſſolves the *Coagulum* or Craſſitude of the *Blood* and *Lympha*, and makes them run thin and eaſily.

XV. I commend upon my own daily Experience *Sylvius*'s *Volatile Oily Salt*, as a moſt admirable thing which may be given from 20 to 30 drops twice or thrice a day in a Glaſs of White Lisbon, Madera, or Canary: Or this, *Take Powers of Amber, and of Pennyroyal, of Each four Ounces, mix them.* Doſe half a Spoonful in a Glaſs of Wine twice or thrice a day. Or this, *Take Powers of Amber, of Pennyroyal, Tincture of Coral compound, Elixir Proprietatis Peſtilentiale, of each equal parts, mix them.* Doſe half a Spoonful two or three times a day, in a Glaſs of Wine. And *Spiritus Vitrioli Martis* is ſaid to be a ſingular Specifick in this caſe; ſo alſo the *Infuſion of old Iron Nails in Rheniſh-Wine, White Lisbon, or Canary*; or the *Tinctura Martis Nitrata*, which may be given to thirty drops or more in a Glaſs of Wine two or three times a day.

XVI. Spirit of Sal Armoniack aromatiz'd with ſome drops of Chymical Oil of Cinnamon, Nutmegs, Orange-peels, Pennyroyal or Savin, is a moſt admirable thing; ſo alſo Eſſence or Tincture of Myrrh made with the Vinous Spirit of Sal Armoniack, or with Spirit of Hartshorn, than which few Medicaments are found to exceed it. Or, *Take Powers of Orange-peels, of Pennyroyal and of Savin, of each an Ounce; Spirit of Sal Armoniack, or of Harts-Horn, half an Ounce; Tartariz'd Tincture of Steel an Ounce and half; mix them.* Doſe 80 drops or more Morning, Noon and Night, in a Glaſs of Rheniſh Wine. *Take a ſtrong Tincture of Aloes, Tincture of Saffron, Tartariz'd Spirit of Sal Armoniack, Spirit of Harts-horn,*

of

of each an Ounce; mix them. Dose 50 or 60 drops thrice a Day as aforesaid.

XVII. This Pouder is approved, *Take Troches of Myrrh, Crocus Martis aperitivus, Black Pepper in fine Pouder, of each half a Dram: Venice Borax, Castoreum, Saffron. of each in fine Pouder gr. xv. Nutmegs, Cloves, of each in fine Pouder 10 Grains; Oil of Savin gut. xii. mix them.* Dose half a Dram Morning and Evening. Or, *Take Filings of Steel, Fœcula of Aron-roots, Pouder of Cloves, Nutmegs, Winters Cinnamon and Saffron, of each a Dram; Oils of Carraways and of Orange-peels, of each gut. 20. mix them.* Dose from a Scruple to half a Dram twice a Day. The following Pills are also of good use, *Take fine Aloes, an Ounce; Choice Myrrh in fine Pouder Fœcula of Aron-roots, Black Pepper in Pouder, round Birth-wort roots, Dittany, Saffron, of each in Pouder half an Ounce; Extract of Gentian, Crocus Martis Aperitivus, of each six Drams; Oils of Oranges, Pennyroyal and Savin, of each 25 drops; mix, and with Angelica or Pennyroyal Water make a Mass for Pills.* Dose from a Scruple to half a Dram Morning and Night.

XVIII. Such things as absorb Acidities are very proper, for then the mucilaginous Matter being dissolved, is afterwards evacuated by Urine. *Take Crabs Eyes levigated, half a Dram; Black Pepper in fine Pouder, Myrrh in fine Pouder, of each seven Grains; Crocus Martis Aperitivus, a Scruple; mix for a Dose,* to be given Morning and Evening. Or this, *Take Sal Volatile Oleosum, an Ounce; Powers of Pennyroyal, of Savin, and of Amber, of each half an Ounce; Spirit of Harts-horn, two Drams; mix them.* Dose 40 or 50 drops in a Glass of White Port or Rhenish Wine, or Canary, three times a day.

XIX. I commend *Spiritus Cornu Cervi succinatus, Tinctura Castorei, Tinctura Myrrhæ* with *Coloquintida*, Tincture of Salt of Tartar with *Potestates Pulegii*; Tincture of Iron Oar; Juice, Essence, and Decoction of Rue, Camomil, Motherwort, Mugwort, Tansie, Bawm and Gentian, which may be given with an equal quantity of *Elixir Proprietatis Pestilentiale*; her daily Drink may be Elecampane and Juniper Ale, Beer, or Wine. Or this, *Take Leaves of Calamint, Dittany, Mint, Nep, Pennyroyal, Rue, Savin, Tansie, of each half a handful; Roots of Angelica, Orice, Galangal, round Birthwort, Madder, Spicknard, Bay and Juniper-berries, of each an Ounce; Orange-peels, Cardamoms, of each half an Ounce; Nutmegs sliced, Cloves bruised, of each two Drams; Winters Cinnamon, Myrrh in pouder, of each a Dram; Old Iron Nails, a Pound; Put all into four Gallons of Ale or Wine,* and after two or three days let the Patient drink of it three times a day.

XX. But if after the Use of all these things, the Obstruction is so great that they will do nothing, the Patient must daily sit in a Bath of fair warm Water, for as long time as she can bare it at a sitting, which is to be continued for six or eight days together, or in a Decoction of the Uterine Herbs. Also Fumes from Volatile Salts, may be conveyed up the Womb by a Funnel twice a day; and the following Pessary may be applied, *Take Pouders of Myrrh, Bay-berries, Leaves of Savin, of Elecampane, round Birthwort, Bryony and Sowbread roots, Pouder of Coloquintida, and Aloes, of each equal parts; with Extract of Gentian, or Wormwood, and a little Cotton, make a Pessary according to Art.*

XXI.

XXI. The third and last Intention (after the Courses have been effectually produced) is to strengthen all the Viscera, that they may perform their duties in due order; and this is done by the daily taking the *Tinctura Antimonii* (mentioned in the latter end of the former Chapter) twice a day, as Morning and Evening, the Use of which may be continued for some time, till the Health is sufficiently confirmed: Or you may take it being mixed with an epual quantity of Sal Volatile Oleosum, or Spirit of Harts horn, or a double quantity of *Tinctura Castorei.* Or this, *Take Tincture of Salt of Tartar four Ounces: Tincture of Myrrh, and of Wormwood, ana, two Onnces; Tincture of Coral compound, one Ounce; mix them.* Dose 50 drops Morning and Night in a Glass of Wine.

XXII. Lastly, *Where the Terms are not perfectly stop'd, but only diminished,* the same Course and Medicaments will do the desired work; but they may be given in a lesser Dose, and for a shorter time. See more at large of this Cure, in the third Edition of my *Synopsis Medicinæ,* lib 5. cap 70. where you may have abundant Satisfaction.

CHAP. IX. *Of Overflowing of the Terms.*

I. THE Terms in a Woman flowing naturally may fill the Capacity of the shell of a Goose-Egg. 2. The Overflowing of them is known by the Parties being ill at ease at that time, by the failing of her Strength, want of Apperite, ill habit of Body, ill colour of the Face, like that of a Dead Carcass, and swelling of the Feet. 3. Bleed in the Arm, taking away about 8 Ounces of Blood. 4. The next Morning let her take the *Potio communis Purgativa,* and repeat it every other day to two Doses more, taking at Night after every Purgation, a resting Draught of *Diacodium* or Syrup of Poppies. 5. In the Intervals of Purging, let her take this which follows, *Take Conserve of Dry Roses, two Ounces; Troches of Lemnian Earth, one Dram and half; Pomgranate-peels, red Coral prepared, Bole Armoniack, of each two Scruples; Blood-stone, Dragons-Blood, of each one Scruple; with a sufficient quantity of Syrup of Quinces make an Electuary,* of which let her take as much as a large Nutmeg in the Morning, and as much at five in the Afternoon, taking after it six Spoonfuls of the following Julep. 6. *Take Waters of Oak-buds and of Plantane, of each three Ounces; Barly, Cinnamon-water, Syrup of dryed Roses, of each one Ounce; Spirit of Vitriol a sufficient quantity to give it a grateful sharpness.* 7. Take Plantane and Nettles, of each a fit quantity; beat them together, and press out the Juice, of which being clarified, let her take four or five Spoonfuls now and then at pleasure. 8. After the first Purging, let the following Plaister be made, and applied to the Reins of the Back. *Take Emplaster de Minio & Empl. ad Herniam, of each equal parts; mix them well,* and spread them on Leather, and apply it to the Region of the Loins.

SALMON's Comment.

II. 1. Bleeding is indeed the usual Remedy in this Distemper, but

but is certainly not the best. 2. A Purge made of the Infusion of Rheubarb is an excellent thing in this case, but there is no better Preparation than a Tincture of Rheubarb made with an Alcali, to be given from one to two Spoonfuls at a time in a Glass of warm Ale. After which at Night going to Bed you may give of our *Tinctura Mirabilis* from a Spoonful to two Spoonfuls, in Styptick red Wine; the Use of which is to be continued for four, five or six days, as you see need requires. 3. Or you may give the *Tinctura Mirabilis* in the Morning fasting, and our *Volatile Laudanum a gr. ij. ad iiij.* at Night going to Bed, which are Medicines that scarcely ever fail. 4 Instead of the Juices of Plantane and Nettles, I like this mixture much better, *Take Tinctura Mirabilis, eight Ounces; Guttæ Vitæ, six Drams; mix them.* Dose from a Spoonful to two Spoonfuls every Night going to Bed. It has sometimes cured in three or four days time, tho' the Weakness had been of some Months or Years standing. 5. Instead of our Author's Plaister, you had better anoint the Back with this, *Take Saccharum Saturni, three Drams, dissolve it in three Spoonfuls of Spirit of Vinegar, and then mix it with Oil of Ben, one Ounce and half*; with which anoint the Back Morning and Evening. It is much better than an Emplaister, especially in the Summer time; because in some Patients, a Plaister is very apt to heat the Back, which by the Use of this Oil is prevented. This is in short, Observations upon our Author's Text, but in what follows we shall consider the Disease more expliitely or at large.

III. *The Names.* It is called in Greek Πεόχυτις ἢ ἐμμηνίων, in Latin *Mensium profusio, Mensium Profluvium, Fluxus Uteri ruber*; and in English, the Overflowing of the Terms. It is an Excretion of too much Blood by the Womb, flowing through the Vessels thereof; and is considered 1. when the Courses flow in an excessive quantity, and too long, or are almost always flowing upon the Patient. 2. When they go off, and shall return again sooner than the due time which Nature requires.

IV. *The Signs.* It is chiefly known by the great quantity of Blood which flows; and its continuing too long a time, or irregular returns in flowing, which is attended sometimes with Pain, and sometimes without Pain, a Pain and Heat about the Neck of the Womb, alteration in the colour of the Blood, languishing and weariness all over the whole Body, Coldness, loss of Appetite, Thirst, Pain in the Loins, Swelling in the Feet, Paleness of the Face, and where it has been of long continuance, a thin pining and consumptive Habit of the Body.

V. *The Causes.* It arises in part from the Thinness, acrimony and exorbitant Motion of the Blood, Excess of Venery, Miscarriage, hard Travail, Suppression of the Menses, Excoriation or Inflamation of the parts, by which the Blood passes; and this is made, as Physicians say, either by *Anastomosis, Diapedesis, Diæresis* or *Diabrosis*, through the excessive quantity of the Blood, its Heat, Thinness or Acrimony, by a Blow, Fall, Wound or Ulcer. The remote Causes may be an over-hot and thin Air, Food for Medicines inciding and attenuating, Emmenagogicks, or things which provoke the Terms by opening the Mouths of the Vessels, excessive Watching, over-much Exercise of

of the Body or the Parts, Riding, Running, Dancing, ſudden Paſſions of the Mind, Fever, Anger, external Violence by Blows, Falls, Venery, *&c.*

VI. *The Prognoſticks.* This Diſeaſe is more eaſily cured in young Women than in thoſe which are elder, becauſe in theſe the Fibres of the Arteries and Veins are moſt ſtiff and ſolid, and ſo not capable of ſo eaſie an Adſtriction, and in ſuch the Diſeaſe is many times incurable. And though this immoderate Flux is not of it ſelf dangerous, yet by accident it may be of very evil conſequence in the more elderly Women. And if it continues long, ſo that the Blood is very much diminiſhed, and the Strength waſted, it may induce ſeveral other worſe Diſeaſes, as a Cachexia, Leucophlegmatia, Anaſarca, or Dropſie of the whole Body, Dropſie of the Womb, Inflamation, Exulceration, Atrophy or a pining Conſumption of the whole Body, there not being left enough behind for the Nouriſhment thereof in all its parts, nor Life enough in it to protrude itſelf into the ſame for their continual ſupport. *Hippocrates*, Sect. 5. Aph. 57. ſays, when the Menſes ſuperabound, they cauſe Diſeaſes from Weakneſs; and when they ſtop, they induce Diſeaſes from the Womb.

VII. *The Dietetick Cure.* If the Blood is ſharp and thin, the Patient is to abſtain from all Non-naturals which corrupt it, or ſeparate its Particles, eſpecially when the approaching time is near, as alſo from all heating, ſpirituous and aromatick Meats and Drinks, as Generous Wine, Brandy, hot and ſtrong Waters, Spices, Carminatives; from Anger, Grief, Vehement Paſſions, violent and long Motions of the Body, and from all other things, as in other Excretions of the Blood.

VIII. *The Pharmaceutick Cure.* 1. If the Body abounds with a thin and ſharp Lympha or Serum, you muſt gently evacuate with Hydragogues. 2. Abſorbents are to be given, which may correct the Sharpneſs and Acrimony of the Juices 3. Things which incraſſate the Blood and Lympha by their own Virtue and Power. 4. And laſtly, Corroboratives, which may ſtrengthen the Womb, and cloſe the Apertions of the Veſſels.

IX. *The firſt Indication which is to evacuate the over-thin Lympha or Serum of the Blood.* This is performed, as *Sylvius* adviſes, by *Hydragogues*, which may be given a few days before the time of the Flowing, if the Strength will bear it. And for this purpoſe ten or twelve Grains of *Cambogium* made up into three Pills with two or three drops of fair Water, is moſt excellent, which may be twice or thrice repeated as neceſſity may require. And this may be the more requiſite, if that by the long courſe of this Flux, a Dropſie ſhould be induced; or if it ſhould (by any Symptoms preſent) be feared.

X. *The ſecond Indication is by Abſorbents to correct the Sharpneſs and Acrimony of the Humours.* This is good, ℞ *Pearl and red Coral prepared, fine Bole, Terra Sigillata, of each half an Ounce; Plantane Seeds, Amber prepared, of each three Drams; Ivory and Harts-horn prepared by a Philoſophical Calcination, Crabs eyes levigated, of each two Drams; Crude Gold in Leaves, one Dram, (if the Patient is rich) mix them.* Doſe from half a Dram to a Dram Morning and Night in Syrup of Juice of Plantane. Or this, *Take Pouder of red Roſes half an Ounce; Harts-horn Philoſophically calcin'd, three Drams; Crocus Martis*

Martis astringens, sine Sanguis Draconis, of each two Drams; Amber prepared, Henbane-seed, of each one Dram; Catechu, half a Dram; make all into a fine Pouder. Dose from a Scruple to a Dram twice a day, in Syrup of dried red Roses. Or this, *Take pure white Chalk in fine Pouder, four Drams; Beef Marrow-bones Philosophically calcin'd, three Drams; Crocus Martis Astringens, two Drams; Terra Japanica, 1 Dram; Blood-stone prepared, half a Dram; make a fine Pouder.* Dose from a Scruple to a Dram or more, in Syrup of Myrtles or of Plantane, or dried red Roses.

XI. *The third Indication is to Incrassate the Blood and Lympha*; for by this means an immediate stop is put to the most violent course of the Flux. And this is done principally by *Opiates*, all other Medicaments are in a manner vain and trifling. Our Author's *Eclegma incrassans* (in *Lib.* 1. *Cap* 1. *Sect.* 7.) is good; and his *Eclegma fortis incrassans* next following it, as also the *Eclegma in Defluxione tenui*, also *Diacodium*, which may be given to weak People, and such as cannot away with taking *Opium* it self. But where that can be born, our Author's *Laudanum Liquidum* exceeds them all; or that prepared our way with *Juice of Limons*. The *Eclegma Sudorificum* (at *Sect.* 28. of the same Chapter) is a thing of admirable Effects this way, being given once a day from gr. x. to half a Dram, as Age and other Accidents require, and to be continued so long till the Flux is perfectly stop'd.

XII. We have had wonderful Success in this Case by the use of our *Guttæ Vitæ*, which has been given from 30 drops to 60 or 80 or more (being gradually increased) every Night at Bed-time in a Glass of Styptick Red Wine, such as your *Barabar* or *Barcelona Wine*, Red *Florence*, and the like. To others, who rather chuse a *Bolus*, we have given a Scruple or more of our *New London Treacle*, to be repeated once a day as long as need might require.

XIII. But if the Patient had rather take Pills, then we commend our *Laudanum Volatile* or *Cordial Pill*, which we have a thousand times experienced in this case with admirable Effects; and in such Constitutions as could not bear it, by reason it might subject them to manifold explosions of the Nerves (some such there are, though not many, who cannot bear any of the common *Opiates*) we commend our *Laudanum Specificum*, which being artfully exhibited, I never found go without the desired Success. And this difference there is in Opiates according to the variety of their Preparations, that the same Persons who cannot take one sort of its Preparations without great disturbances of the Stomach and Animal Spirits; can yet take other Preparations of the same with all the pleasure and delight imaginable; and this proceeds from the various ways of correcting and preparing of the *Opium*.

XIV. Among mineral Preparations, *Helmont's Narcotick Sulphur of Vitriol* is commended, and we have used it with great applause. But that which much exceeds it, is our *Impetus Martis*, which always succeeded to expectation; it may be given every Night from 30 drops to 60 in a Glass of *Alicant*, *Barabar*, or *Barcelona*, or other *Styptick red Wine*; and for want of any of them, in choice *Canary*. And if the *Impetus* of the Flux be very extream, you may venture to give 20 or 30 drops of it also in the Morning

Morning fasting. And since these things are very rarely given without answering expectation, it would be almost labour in vain to multiply Prescripts less potent, for less Purposes and Effects.

XV. *The fourth Intention is to Corroborate or Strengthen the Womb, or close the Apertions of the Vessels.* And this is done by Medicaments Strengthning and Styptick. This Pouder is of good use, *Take Catechu in fine Pouder an Ounce; Pomgranate-peels in fine Pouder three Drams; Roch Alum two Drams; fine Sanguis Draconis one Dram; mix and make a Pouder.* Dose half 1 Dram or two Scruples in a Glass of Styptick red Wine. But if the Patient cannot take a Pouder, you may give our *Tinctura Mirabilis*, which may be given to one or two Spoonfuls, more or less, Morning and Evening, continuing its use for ten or twelve days together. The Composition, Preparation, Virtues and Uses of this Remedy, you may see in our *Ars Chirurgica*, lib. 1. cap. 58, Sect, 2. But where that cannot be had, *a Simple Tincture of Catechu in common Brandy* may serve the turn, which may be made after this manner, *Take choice Brandy, or Sugar Spirits of equal strength, two Quarts: Catechu in fine Pouder twelve Ounces; mix and shake them well together; digest cold for ten or twelve days, shaking the Bottle twice every day; then let it stand and settle; and decant it off of the Fœces as it is used.* Dose one Spoonful or more Morning and Night in a Glass of Wine

XVI. Authors have also prescribed Externals where Internals have not had a sufficient Efficacy. A Pessary soaked in a Decoction of Swines-dung, and besmeared with the same, is of good use. An Injection made of Alum dissolved in red Styptick Wine has been approved. *Boyle* cured a Gentle-woman who had an *Uterine Hæmorrhage* for four Months, only with the *Sympathetick Pouder made* of *Hungarian Vitriol*, and she was afterwards so obstructed, that she was very ill for want of that natural Flux of Blood, so that he was forced to provoke them again with *Tinctura Succini.*

XVII. *Grulingius* commends the Fume of dryed Oak-leaves, which may be received under the Womans Cloaths; so also the Fumes of Leather shreds, of Hair, Feathers, and of Amber, conveyed up to the Womb by a Funnel. An Injection made of Alum and white Vitriol dissolved in fair Water, is beyond compare; so also the Fumes of the Horns and Hoofs of Beasts, as also the Fumes of the Cuticle of Geese-feet dry'd; more especially if the same Cuticle in fine Pouder be given a Dram at a time in red Wine. Some commend the Patients sitting in cold Water (but not in Winter-time) taking inwardly *Sal prunellæ* half a Dram dissolved in half a Pint of Styptick red Wine. The Juice of Yarrow mixed with an equal quantity of *Barabar* Wine, in a Quart of which three Drams of Roch Alum is dissolved, may be used as an Injection warm twice or thrice a day; it strengthens admirably, and contracts the mouths of the Vessels: And this it does so much the more effectually, if three Spoonfuls or more of it be taken Morning and Evening inwardly. See the Third Edition of my *Synopsis Medicinæ*, lib. 5. cap. 69.

CHAP. X. *Of the* WHITES.

I. THE Humour which flows forth is sometimes White, sometimes Pale, Yellow, Green, or of a Livid colour; it is sometimes also sharp and Corrosive, and sometimes Stinking, or of a strong Smell. 2. The Flux is attended with various Symptoms, as Wanness of Face, a Pain in the Backbone, want of Appetite, Swelling of the Hands and Feet. 3. If that which comes forth be taken upon a Clout, it will indicate the Humour which causes the Flux, after it has been dryed. 4. Bleed in the Arm, and let eight Ounces of Blood be taken away.

II. *Take Pill Cochiæ the greater two Scruples; Castoreum two Grains; Balsam of Peru three drops; mix and make four Pills*; which give at four a Clock in the Morning, reposing after them, and repeat them twice every second or third day, according to the Strength of the Sick. 2. *Take Rue Water four Ounces; compounded Bryony Water two Ounces; Sugar-candy, as much as is sufficient; mix, dissolve and make a Julep*; of which let her take a Spoonful every fainting Fit. 3. Afterwards let her use these Medicines here subjoyn'd.

III. *Take Venice Treacle an Ounce and half; Conserve of the yellow part of Oranges two Ounces; Diascordium half an Ounce; Candied Ginger, and Candied Nutmeg, of each three Drams; Compound Pouder of Crabs-claws a Dram and half; outward rind of Pomgranates, roots of Spanish Angelica, red Coral prepared, Troches of Terra Lemnia, of each one Dram; fine Bole two Scruples; Gum-Arabick half a Dram; with a sufficient quantity of Syrup of dryed Roses make an Electuary.* Of this let her take as much as a large Nutmeg in the Morning, as much at five in the Afternoon, and the same quantity at Night, every day for one whole Month, taking six Spoonfuls of the following Infusion at every Dose. 2. *Take Roots of Elecampane, of Master-wort, of Angelica, Calamus Aromaticus, of each half an Ounce; Roman Wormwood, white Horehound, lesser Centory, common Calamint, Sage dryed, of each an Handful; Juniper-berries one Ounce; Let them be chop'd small and infused in four pints of Canary standing in a cold infusion. Then decant and strain it off only when you have occasion to use it.* 3. Let her eat Food easie of Digestion, and abstain from all sorts of Pot-herbs and Fruits: And at every Meal drink Sherry, Tent, or Canary.

SALMON's Comment.

IV. This Disease is called in Greek Ῥεῦμα λευκὸν τῆς ὑστέρας, in Latin, *Fluor albus Uteri, Fluor Muliebris, Fluxus albus, Coryza Uteri, Menstrua alba*; but this latter Name I think to be something improper, 1. Because it comes not every Month at set times as the *Menses* do. 2. Because that the *Whites* many times last the whole time, from their first coming till they quite cease. 3. The *Whites* are observed to come both before and after the time of the *Menses*. All which being considered, it is manifest that the *Whites* have nothing at all to do with, nor are any thing akin to the *Menses*; though just before the flowing of the *Menses* they

they abound most, for that much of that Matter is at that time gathered about the Cervical Glands of the Womb. Some Authors call it also *Gonorrhœa non Virulenta*, for that a *Gonorrhœa* does not differ much from the *Whites*, and sometimes they are complicated. It is a plentiful, frequent and continual (for the time) Flux, of a Lympha-tick, thick Humour, sometimes very white, and sometimes of other colours, flowing without Pain, by the Vaginal Glands of the Womb.

V. *The Whites differ according to the Variety and Violence of the Symptoms:* Sometimes they are perfectly White, and then indicate only great Weakness: Sometimes Yellow and very much discoloured, which is from the Defilement of the Lympha and other Juices: Sometimes they are of short continuance, as of a Week, Fortnight, or a Month, without any great harm or grievous Symptoms: And sometimes they continue Months, yea Years, to the great Prejudice and Incommodity of the Sick, inducing at last a deep Consumption, Rheumatism, or some other worse and Chronick Disease.

VI. *The Signs.* This Distemper is best known by the relation of the Patient, or other Eye-witnesses; for that when they are moderate, they are very rarely attended with any grievous Symptom. But when they are Immoderate or Excessive, the Urine has a Sediment sometimes like Matter, sometimes thicker and whiter only, almost like carded Wool, and without smell, and sometimes with a sort of coagulated or curdled white Streaks: There is also Pain in the Back, and about the Belly, Palpitation of the Heart, Dullness of the whole Body, Loss of Colour in the Face, and an Atrophy if Excessive and of long continuance; or a wonderful loss of Strength, or a Rheumatism, or Cachexy, or a Paralytick Disposition of Hands and Feet, and at length Barrenness. Moreover the flowing Humour is sometimes white, sometimes yellowish, or like Whey, sometimes Pale, Green, blewish, according to the Contamination of the Lympha and serous Humour.

VII. *The Causes.* This Disease may have its rise from Excrementious Humours bred in the Stomach, Liver, Spleen, and other parts, which may be sent to the Womb, as well as from such Humours bred in the Womb it self, through the Weakness of its retentive and concoctive Faculties, or from an Acid austere Ferment produced in the Womb. *Sylvius* says the Cause is in the Blood, and the more Serous or Viscous the Blood is, the more Serous or Viscous are the Whites, and according to the degree of Discrasy, such is the diversity of the Colour of the *Excreta*; and he derives it from an acid Acrimony, which alters the Blood so, as to produce this Flux. Without doubt it arises from the *Lympha*, or *Serum of the Blood*, corrupted either in the Mass (as the first or remote Cause) or in the Vaginal Glands, and then flowing out of the Glands of the Womb, such as we see it to be. This *Sylvius* says, proceeds neither from the Seed, nor from Spirts, and this is true. But it proceeds from those Glands dilated, being as it were a continual Abscess, repleat with the aforesaid Recrements of the *Blood* and *Viscera*, brought to their last degree of Depravity in the Vessels and Vaginal Glands aforenamed.

VIII. *The Antecedent Causes* may

be excessive and long continued Grief of Mind, (which is a great breeder of a Morbifick Acid,) unexpected Frights, taking Cold, and that oftentimes repeated, extravagant use of Pickles and other Acid things; a profuse use of Venery, which weakens those parts, and draws a Flux of Humours down upon them; and all such things which hurt the Stomach and vitiate the Blood, as Surfeiting, Drunkenness, and an idle and debauch'd way of living, violent Exercise and Motions *&c.* But this depraved Juice or Matter thus flowing to the Womb, varies much in its colour, smell and quantity, according to the various Faults of the Womb, or as the Uterine Ferment is more or less acid, austere, or sharp, or any other way Vitious.

IX. *The Prognosticks.* There is little danger in this Disease, unless it is excessive, and is of long continuance, or proceeds from some inveterate and vehement Cause. The younger and stronger the Woman, the more easie will be the Cure, and so much the easier as it is recent. But in old or elderly Women, especially such as are Cachectick, it is of difficult Cure. more especially if it be inveterate. because in them the Cervical Glands may be hardned, or some other way hurt, the Fibres are more immovable, and the Pores of the Glands distorted as it were, constantly remaining so, or not easily to be reduced to their pristine State. The Cure is also difficult in such as have had their Courses long stop'd, or in such as they have quite left them; as also in Maids or Widows who are troubled with the Green-sickness; or in such as have had some inveterate and grievous Disease of the Womb or Vagina, whereby the Site, Figure, State, and natural Temperament of those parts are very much hurt or altered.

X. *The Cure.* 1. The first Passages are to be emptied and cleansed of Defilements, that thereby in some measure the vitious quality of the Blood may be amended. 2. The Acidity and Acrimony of the Blood and Lympha, are to be destroyed. 3. The unnatual Ferment of the Womb is to be corrected. 4. The Tone of the Parts are to be restored and strengthened.

XI. The first Intention is performed by Evacuaters, both Emetick and Cathartick, because they cause as well a Revulsion, as give a remove to the morbifick Matter. But our Author here is for Bleeding. The Flux of the Whites generaly weakens the Patient very much, especially if it has been of any long continuance; and therefore to weaken the Patient more, by taking away that precious Balsam of Life, the Blood, when already so much weakened by the Distemper, must be intirely against the *Vital Indication of Cure*, and will instead of remedying it, rather bring the Patient into a hazardous, if not incurable Consumption. The best Purge in this case is the *Sal Mirabile*, or our *Sal Panaretum*, the first of which may be given from three Drams to six; but the latter of them from one Dram to three, in a Glass of warm Spring water, or thin Water-gruel, or clear Posset-drink, according to the strength of the Patient, letting one day be between each Dose. If the Patient is often Sick at Stomach, the Stomach being foul, let it be cleansed with a Dose or two of *Sal Vitrioli*, given in Water-gruel.

XII. Some Authors are for gentle Purges made with Rheubard and Tamarinds, if Serous and Cholerick

rick Humours abound: And they may be so ordered, as to be taken in common Drink; or by way of Diet-drink; by the use of which, the Blood will be restored to its due consistency. Or this, *Take Rob of Dwarf Elder two Drams; Mercurius Dulcis half a Scruple; Resine of Jalap seven Grains; mix and make a Bolus.* Or this, *Take Leaves of Hypericon three handfuls; Carthamus Seed 6 Drams; Roots of Bryony, and of Black Hellebore, of each half an Ounce; Cloves bruised, Angelica Seeds, Salt of Tartar, of each two Drams; mix and make a Bag*, to be put into Wine, or Ale. *A Bolus made of Rheubarb and Turpentine* is good, because that besides its Cathartick quality, it both moderately Astringes and Consolidates. *Aromatick Balsams and Resins* are good, more especially *Balsam Capivii, and Turpentine*, chiefly that of *Chio*, for that it purges both the Reins and Womb; and *Turpentine* is of admirable use, for that as well as in a *Gonorrhœa*, so also in this Disease, it exerts its Virtue, because it is a Disease of the Vaginal Glands.

XIII. The second Intention is, to destroy the preternatural Acidity and Acrimony of the Blood and Lympha. And therefore, after cleansing as afore directed with the former Purges, *&c.* Let the Patient take every Morning a good Dish of *Gelly of Ising-glass*, made with Milk, or a Dish of *Sago* mix'd with a little Styptick Red Wine and Sugar. At Eleven in the Morning let her take this, *Take Milk-Water four Ounces; Tinctura Mirabilis a Spoonful; double refined Sugar three Drams; Red Barabar Wine two Ounces; mix them for a Dose.* At Dinner-time let her eat good nourishing Meat, at Five in the Afternoon let her take the former Dose again; and at Supper-time let her eat again another Dish of *Sago*, or the *Gelly*, as before directed.

XIV. This has been approved of, *Take old Conserve of red Roses two Ounces; Comfrey-root an Ounce (boiled to a Mucilage;) Marmalade of Quinces six Drams; Harts-horn prepared, white Chalk, ana, four Drams; Terra Sigillata, Amber prepared, of each two Drams; Crocus Martis astringens, Sanguis Draconis, of each one Dram; Pouder of Opium half a Dram; with Syrup of Myrtles make an Electuary.* Dose as much as a large Nutmeg, Morning, Noon and Night. Author's commend *Tinctures of Coral, Bloodstone, Martis Astringens, Vitriol*, &c. which may be given in Barly-broth, Gruel, Whey, *&c.* which dilute and sweeten the Accrimony.

XV. *Native Cinnabar* is a most incomparable thing, being given from a Scruple to two Scruples or more mixed with *Syrup of dried red Roses*, and so given Morning and Night. Authors commend the *Cinnabar of Antimony* for this purpose; it is indeed a very good Medicine, but no ways comparable to the *Native Cinnabar*, which is truly superior to all other Absorbents, and a thing of admirable use in all Uterine Cases; and may be given with a *Continuando* for thirty days or more. *Take Native Cinnabar, an Ounce; Cinnabar of Antimony, and artificial Cinnabar, of each half an Ounce; Amber prepared, Magistery of Saturn, of each four Drams; Harts-horn prepared, Crocus Martis Astringens, ana, 2 Drams and half; Opium in fine Ponder 30 Grains; Levigate what is to be levigated, and all being in subtil Powder, mix them.* Dose from half a Dram to a Dram Morning and Night, in a Spoonful or two of Syrup of dried red Roses.

XVI. *The third Intention is, to correct the unnatural Ferment of the Womb.* This is solely to be done with Opiates; and without an Opiate, it is not easily to be performed. *Dolæus* says, that he often used to cure this Disease with one only slight Remedy, and he would engage that that Medicament should perform it, unless there was something else to hinder the Cure: It is this following Pouder, *Take Egg-shels calcin'd two Drams; Vitriol of Mars from* 24 *to* 40 *Grains; Saccharum Saturni a Scruple; Camphir gr. xii. Laudanum Opiatum four Grains; mix them,* for four Doses, to be given at Night going to Bed.

XVII. Or instead thereof, let her take at Bed-time this following Dose, *Take of red Rose-water four Ounces; Tinctura Mirabilis, Syrupus simplex (or Syrup made with fair Water and Sugar) of each one Ounce; Liquid Laudanum* 24 *drops, mix for a Dose,* to be given just at going to Bed. If she dislikes this Dose, you may give her from two to four Grains or more, of our *Laudanum Specificum,* and continue the use of these various Medicines, till such time as the Sick is perfectly well; see them all in our *Pharmacopœia Chirurgica,* in our *Chirurgery* lately published. If the Disease is recent, the Woman will soon be cured; but if it is inveterate and stubborn, you will be forced to continue them possibly for some Weeks, before you meet with the Effects desired.

XVIII. All A'uminous, Nitrous, and Saturnian Medicines are proper for this Cure. This following is of admirable use. *Take of Egg-shells calcin'd white, Crabs-eyes levigated, white Chalk, Osteocolla, Amber prepared, Roch Alum, of each an Ounce; Sal Prunellæ, Saccharum Saturni, of each two Drams; Opium in fine Pouder a Dram and half, or five Scruples; mix and make a Pouder,* Dose half a Dram every Night at Bed-time in a little Syrup of Water-Lillies, or of dried red Roses.

XIX. Specificks are prescribed also by some Authors; as The Pouder of the inner Parts of the Shells of the *Cuttle-fish,* which may be given a Dram at a time Morning and Night in some proper Syrup; this, besides its power in correcting of Acidities, has a singular Virtue in curing of a *Gonorrhœa Virulenta* and the *Whites,* as *Hartman* affirms. *Bartholine* commends Emulsions made with Chalybeate Water. An Emulsion may be made of the four greater cold Seeds, with Smiths Forge-water, first filtred through brown Paper. *Spiritus Aluminis* is of extraordinary Effects. *Frambesarius* commends a *Decoction of Guajacum,* to be drank in the Morning, above several other things; but it ought not to be given to such as are emaciated, or in a Consumptive habit of Body. *Hieronymus Mercurialis* says, he has cured many of this Disease, by giving *a Dram of Hares Rennet, in a Decoction of Oak-leaves,* for eight or ten days together. Others have cured it with a *Decoction of dryed red Roses, inner Oak-bark, Pine and Misletoe.* And *Solenander* advises to the taking of *new Milk, boiled with Gold quenched in it to the consumption of a fourth or third part.*

XX. *The fourth and last Intention is,* to restore and strengthen the Tone of the *Parts hurt*; and this is done, 1. by the use of Internals; 2. by the help of Externals.

XXI. The Internals for this purpose are, 1. Our Author's Wine made of Elecampane-roots, *&c.* before prescribed, of which she may take a small Sack glass full now and then,

then, when she finds her Spirits low and fainting, or the Stomach and Bowels ill, grip'd, or oppress'd with Wind, Vapours, or acid and sharp Humours, as also to sharpen the Appetite if decay'd. 2. Our *Tinctura Mirabilis*, which may be given to half a Spoonful, or more, Morning and Evening, in a Glass of Barabar Wine. 3. *A Simple Tincture of Antimony* given in the same Wine. 4. Our Author's Electuary made of Venice Treacle afore going; some of which things may be given and continued till Health is perfectly confirmed.

XXII. The Externals are, 1. A Salt Bath, which *Ludovicus Septallus* says, is a very present Remedy; also Baths made of Sulphur and Alum, Vitriol, Pomgranate-peels, Oak-bark, and other Astringents. 2. Fumes of Amber, Horns, Hoofs, and Feathers to be received up the Womb. 3. An Injection made of Decoction of Guajacum, which is an excellent thing. Or this, *Take a Decoction made of inner Oak-bark two Quarts; white Vitriol, Roch Alum in pouder, of each half an Ounce; mix and dissolve; digest three or four days, then decant the clear, and dissolve therein three Ounces of Honey.* This must be injected into the *Vagina*, with a Womb Syringe, two, three, or four times a day, or oftener, if need requires, to cleanse the Womb and parts adjacent of its Filthiness, and corroborate or strengthen the parts.

CHAP. XI. *Of Overflowing of the* LOCHES.

I. THere are three things required to produce a natural flowing of the *Loches*. 1. Pure Blood, flowing plentifully for the first three days. 2. A watery thin Blood, like that wherein Flesh has been washed, continually flowing for about four days. 3. A tough and clammy Matter, issuing forth, during the five or six days next following, and so onwards to the end of the Month.

II. Now the Overflowing of the Loches, is thought to be caused from the decay of Strength, accompanied with Swooning, issuing forth of clotted Blood, Loathing of Meat, Pain in the Hypochondria, or under the Ribs, Distention of the Belly, a weak and swift Pulse, Dimness of Sight, Noise in the Ears, and Convulsions.

III. Let a thickning or strengthning Diet be prescribed, and the following Potion administred. 2. *Take of Plantane water and red Wine, of each a Pint; boil them together till a third Part is consumed; then sweeten the Liquor with a convenient quantity of fine white Sugar.* 3. In the interim, let some pleasing *Hysterical Julep* be now and then given, and the following Bag held to her Nose. 4. *Take of Galbanum and Assa-fœtida, of each two Drams; Castoreum, a Dram and half; Volatile Salt of Amber, half a Dram; mix them*, and tye them up in a Bag. 5. Or, *Take Spirit of Sal Armoniack, two Drams*, and put it frequently to her Nose to smell to.

SALMON's Comment.

IV. It is called in Greek Ὑπερκαθάρσις τῶν Λοχίων, in Latin *Profluvio Lochiorum, Nimia Sanguinis defluxio post partium*; in English

The overflowing of the Loches, or *Immoderate Child-bed Purgations.* Upon a Womans being brought to Bed, the *Placenta Uterina* is separated from the Womb by the Hands of the Midwife, whence after Delivery proceeds a Flux of Blood, which Blood being lodged in the Cavernous Substance of the Womb, and evasated, is called the *Lochia*, or Child-bed Purgations. These *Lochia*, some have for two, three or four days or more; some have them for eight or ten days, and sometimes more.

V. This Overflowing of the *Lochia*, or Flooding, as we call it, is known by the relation of the Patient, having a large Efflux of Blood, attended with Faintness, Swooning, Paleness, Leanness, and other like ill Symptoms, which put the Woman into manifold Disorders, not to be remedied, without stopping the Hemorrhage.

VI. *The Cause* is from a *Plethora*, as some Authors will have it, but chiefly from the Thinness, Acrimony, and violent Motion of the Blood, joyn'd with a Perturbation of the Animal Spirits; but it proceeds also from the *Anastomosis* or Rupture of the Arterius Vessels after Delivery, being violently rent or torn, because of the close sticking of the After-birth to the Womb, which without great force cannot be separated from the same, whereby the Womb becomes excoriated, and many times some of its greater Vessels are broken, which is the cause of so great a Profusion of Blood.

VII. *There are also External Causes* of this Disease, as too hot an Air, Food and Medicines too sharp, Exhibition of Emmenagogicks, long Watchings, violent Motions of the Body before Strength is recovered, Excretions suppressed, together with sudden and vehement Passions of the Mind, which confuse and disturb the Animal Spirits, and put the Blood into a Fermentation.

VIII. *The Prognosticks.* If it is not timely stop'd, it wonderfully weakens the Patient, and is many times the cause of other Diseases, as Convulsions, Cardialgia, Pining, Consumption, Cachexia, Leucophlegmatia, Dropsie, Melancholy, Rheumatism, *&c.* but if it is so potent, as to resist all Remedies and cannot be stop'd, till there is a Defect of Blood, Paleness, Fainting and Swooning ensues, and at length Death.

IX. *The Cure.* Authors advise that the Food should be Incrassating, and their Drink, Water in which Iron, Steel or Gold has been often quenched, as Smiths Forge-water filter'd through brown Paper. For a thickner, there are not many better Medicines than *Tinctura Terræ Japanicæ*, and *Tinctura Mirabilis*, which are famous things in this case, and many times do the work upon the Spot, and that when all other Remedies have failed; They may be given from half a Spoonful to a whole Spoonful, Morning Noon and Night, (according as the Exigency may require) in Ale, Tent, Alicant, Barabar or Malaga Wines. Our Author prescribes an Hysterical Julep, but that is chiefly of use in such as are troubled with Hysterical Passions: In those cases smelling to *Powers of Harts-horn* is of great Service, and an excellent thing, even for curing Fits of the Mother, which it has several times done (being taken also inwardly) when all other things have failed.

X. *Gentle Astringents and Vulneraries are first prescribed*, such as these, roots of Bistort, Cinkfoil, Tormentil

Tormentil, Alkanet, Rheubarb, *&c.* of Herbs, Avens, Bawm, all the Consolidæ, Hypericon, Lettice, Myrtle, Plantane, Purslane, *&c.* of Seeds, Plantane, Poppy, Henbane, *&c.* Dragons Blood, Catechu, fine Bole, Terra Sigillata, Blood stone and Coral prepared, *&c.* some of which may be made into Decoctions with Water, or Water and red Wine; others into Pouders, or Electuaries, or Tinctures, as the nature of the Ingredients require, and as the Physician shall direct; all which may be made pleasant, or swallowed down with Syrup of Juice of Quinces.

XI. Yolks of Eggs given in red Styptick Wine, and several times repeated, has been found of good use; so also *Troches of Amber made with Opium, Flowers of Looſtrife* given to a Dram, in pouder or an Electuary, is said to stop all Fluxes of Blood. Or this, *Take old Conserve of Roses an Ounce; Catechu in fine pouder half an Ounce; Crocus Martis Astringens a Dram; burnt Harts-horn half a Dram; with Syrup of Quinces a sufficient quantity; make an Electuary,* to be given a Dram and half or more at a time Morning and Evening. Or this, *Take Catechu in fine pouder an Ounce; Sanguis Draconis in fine pouder, two Drams; Blood-stone prepared, red Coral prepared, Harts-horn calcin'd, of each a Dram; Terra Sigillata, fine Bole, Poppy-seed, of each half a Dram; make of all a fine Pouder.* Dose a Dram Morning and Night in Syrup of Quinces.

XII. But when all these things have been tryed, and that without success, necessity then will enforce us to the greater Remedies, which are always *Laudana*, or Opiates, and without which it will be impossible to save Life. *Valeriola* gives *Philonium Persicum*, a Dram at a time in Juice of Plantane, and he says he never found a better Medicine. Or this, *Take burnt Harts-horn, Ivory Philosophically calcin'd, of each a Dram; Blood-stone, Coral, both prepared, Roch Alum, of each half a Dram; Laudanum Volatile four Grains; make a Pouder for three or four Doses,* to be given every Night at Bed-time.

XIII. Such as cannot take Pouders, may apply themselves to our *Guttæ Vitæ*, which may be given every Night from 30 to 60 or 80 drops, according to the Exigency, in a Glass of Styptick red Wine, and continued as long as occasion requires. Our Author's *Laudanum Liquidum* is of approved use; so also that of our Preparation following it. To these things you may add our *Laudanum Volatile, Laudanum Specificum*, and other Preparations of like kind, which cannot go without their Effect, if the Patient is not become past recovery.

XIV. Externals are also sometimes necessary. *Riverius* makes a Cataplasm of Soot with Vinegar, and applies it to the Reins. A Cloth dip'd into Frog-Spawn-water may be applied to the *Pubes*. Also an Astringent Injection may be twice or thrice a day put up into the Womb with a Womb-Syringe. *Take fair Water a Gallon; Oak-bark six Ounces; Catechu in fine Pouder two Ounces; Pomgranate-peels an Ounce and half; Roch-Alum an Ounce; White Vitriol two Drams; mix, boil for almost an hour, strain out and keep it for use.* But in a word, the same Method, and almost all the same things prescribed in the Overflowings of the *Menses*, may be made use of here.

CHAP.

CHAP. XII. *Of Suppression of the* LOCHES.

I. THE Signs are these; A Swelling in the Belly, a heavy Pain in the lower Parts of the Belly, the Loyns and Groins, Redness of the Face, Difficulty of Breathing, Disaffections of the Eyes, Shiverings, acute Fevers, Swoonings, cold Sweats, a Sense of Bearing, with a burning Heat in the Womb, a Palsie in the lower parts; and sometimes an Epilepsie invades the Sick.

II. 1. Let her be forthwith confined to her Bed, and the Hysterick Plaister applied to her Navel, then exhibit this following Electuary. 2. *Take Conserve of Roman Wormwood, and of Rue, of each one Ounce; Troches of Myrrh two Drams; Castoreum, English Saffron, Volatile Salt of Amber, Sal Armoniack, and Assa-fœtida, of each a Dram; Syrup of the five opening Roots, enough to make an Electuary*: Of which let her take as much as a Nutmeg every four hours, drinking four or five Spoonfuls of the following Julep after it. 3. *Take of Rue Water four Ounces; compound Bryony Water two Ounces; Sugar-candy, as much as is requisite, mix and make a Julep.* 4. Or let her take a Scruple of *Troches of Myrrh* every four hours.

III. If after the prescribed quantities of these Medicines is consumed, the Loches are still stop'd, exhibit one Dose of *Laudanum*; as fourteen drops of *Laudanum Liquidum in compound Bryony water*; or one Grain and half of *Solid Laudanum* made into two Pills, with half a Scruple of *Assa-fœtida*. 2. If this be not enough, let a Clyster of Sugar'd Milk be once injected.

SALMON's Comment.

IV. It is called in Greek Ἐποχὴ τῶν Λοχίων in Latin, *Suppressio Lochiorum, Cessatio Purgationis Uterinæ a partu*; in English, a Stoppage or Suppression of the Loches, or Child-bed Purgations. And this happens generally to such Women who have but a small quantity of the *Menses*; for those Women who have abundance of them, have more of the *Loches*.

V. *The Signs of this Supression*, besides what our Author has given us, are either voiding no Blood at all, or very little, which is Serous or Pituitous, a dull Pain in the *Hypogastrium*, and sometimes a pricking Pain in the Womb it self, with either a small Obstruction of Urine, or making it in smaller quantity than is usual, also the relation of the Lying-in Woman, which puts the Matter out of all doubt.

VI. *The Causes may be*, from a small quantity of Blood being in the Body, or from its being beforehand lost by reason of some accident or occasion, or from its being thicker than it should be, for want of a proportional part of *Lympha* or *Serum*, so that it appears Grumous upon delivery; or from its Viscidity, by which it closes or stops up the Vessels, and so the fault may be from Diseases of the Womb and its Vessels; yet rarely from Diseases of the *Vagina*, and other adjacent parts; it may also be caused from a Tumour of the Womb or other parts, which may compress or obstruct the said Vessels, and likewise from After-pains being frequent and extream.

VII.

VII. *External Causes* may be, the receiving up into the Body the cold and ambient Air, eating cold, thickning and astringent Food, drinking Styptick or Astringent Wines, and other like Liquors; taking over-cooling, incrassating and astringent Medicines. Opiates, and the like; over-much watching or sleeping, lying cold, putting the Hands or Feet into cold Water, to which add sudden and grievous Passions of the Mind, as Grief, Anger, Fears, sudden Frights, *&c.* which cause the Blood to recur or retire.

VIII. *The Prognosticks.* If there is present a Stupor, or Unsensibleness, Paleness of the Face, and Convulsions, the hope of recovery is but small. And indeed the Suppression of the Loches is of dangerous Consequence, for that it may be the cause of many other Diseases, not only such as are particular to a part, as inflamation of the Womb, Pain and inflamation of the Breasts, Plurisies, Peripneumonies, *&c.* but also universal ones, affecting the whole Body, as Melancholy, Phrensies, Mania's, Acute Fevers, Convulsions, *&c.* The Disease is sometimes cured by a potent and plentiful Sweating, by which the Pores of the Body and of the Womb, are relaxed and opened, and sometimes by a long Hemorrhage in some other parts, as by the Nose, Mouth, Hemorrhoids, *&c.*

IX. *The Cure. First the Causes of the Obstruction of the Viscera are to be removed, chiefly those of the Womb, which is done first by Purging with Uterine Cathartick.* The greatest Specifick for this purpose is, *an infusion or Decoction of Colycinthis in Water or Wine*, which is to be repeated. But this by reason of its Violence and Griping, being not so eligible, you may give the Patient the *Tincture* thereof made with Spirit of Wine, to wit, *Rulandus's Tinctura aurea*, or Golden Tincture, which may be given to half an Ounce or more; it gripes but very little, nor has it any ill Effects, and therefore has no cause to be refused, but only for its bitterness.

X. Or in place thereof you may give the *Elixir Proprietatis*, made with an *Alcali*, to a full large Spoonful, and to be repeated for some days, in the Morning only, as need requires, because it is a Specifick in this case.

XI. If the Patient can take none of these things, you must purge with our *Sal Panaretum*, or with *Sal Mirabile*, which being repeated two or three times, will admirably open all the Obstructions of the *Viscera*, and not go without its effects. The Powers of Salts in loosening and resolving coagulated Humours, and penetrating into the Mass of *Blood* and *Lympha*, thereby to make them more limpid or fluid, were scarcely known; yet this is certain, that they will do more in the matter of Obstructions, than most other things in nature.

XII. *Secondly, by proper Emmenagogicks to induce or promote the Efflux.* And for this purpose you may give *Sperma Ceti mix'd with a quarter part of Salt of Tartar*, of which two Scruples or a Dram may be given at a time. *Troches of Myrrh* may be given a Dram at a time in White-wine. You may also give *Tinctura Martis*, or the *Syrup of Steel*, (which we have before described in Cap. 6. Sect. 28.) This given in a due Dose for some time, singularly opens the obstructed Vessels of the Womb, and produces the *Loches*, according to desire: But this is certain, that it is not to be

be given 'till after Purging with some of the former things (the condition of the Patient being considered) but chiefly with the *Sal Panaretum*, or *Sal Mirabile*, which answer with all the Success desirable.

XIII. Or you may give this Tincture, *Take White Port Wine, a Quart; Pure Nitre, Saffron, Myrrh, Cochinele in pouder, of each two Drams; Volatile Salt of Amber a Dram; mix and make a Tincture by a warm Infusion for 24 hours; strain out the clear, and add to it Tincture of Castor, half an Ounce; mix for six Doses*; to be given Morning and Night. *A simple Tincture of Myrrh made with Tartariz'd Spirit of Wine*, or rather with Tincture of Salt of Tartar, is of good use.

XIV. Our Author has here a Prescript of *Laudanum*; (I suppose it is, where, with the Stoppage, there is an Extremity of Pain:) But most kinds of *Laudanum* are Narcotick, Styptick or Astringent and Obstructive, and so are apt rather to make the Obstruction greater. But if the Sick must take a *Laudanum*, I should advise rather to take our *Cathartick Laudanum*, because it keeps the Body open and soluble, and so is much better than any of the other kinds. It may be given every Night *a* gr.viii. *ad* xii. it gives present ease, and a Stool or two the next day in the Afternoon. The next Morning after taking of the Dose, *Tinctura Martis*, or *Syrup of Steel*, ought to be given in a Glass of Rhenish Wine and Sugar.

XV. 'Tis much if the former Method be pursued, that the Body should remain bound; but if it should so happen, the Clyster, made of half an Ounce of *Strasburgh Turpentine*, ground with the Yolk of an Egg, and mix'd with a Pint of Mutton-broth, and exhibited blood-warm, will not fail of giving some Stools.

XVI. *Take Fœcula of Aron-roots a Dram; Crabs-eyes two Scruples; Antimonium Diaphoreticum half a Dram; Pouder of Cloves a Scruple; Oil of Nutmegs three drops; mix for two Doses*, to be given Morning and Evening, and repeated if need be; it singularly dissolves congelated Blood and Humours, and makes them thin. Or, *Take Sperma Ceti a Dram; Crabs-eyes half a Dram; White Amber prepared, Castoreum, Saffron, Native Cinnabar, of each a Scruple; mix and make a Pouder for two Doses.* Or, *Take Cloves in pouder, Fœcula of Aron-roots, Saffron, Native Cinnabar levigated, make a subtil Pouder for three Doses.*

XVII. Among the Deobstructives scarcely any thing exceeds *Sal Volatile Oleosum*, which may be given to thirty drops or more, two or three times a day, in a Glass of White Port, or Lisbon Wine, or Rhenish Wine sweetned with Sugar. Or this, *Take Powers of Angelica and of Pennyroyal, of each an Ounce; Powers of Amber, and Sal Volatile Oleosum, of each six Drams; mix them.* Dose sixty drops, or more, two or three times a day, in a Glass of White-wine.

XVIII. Outwardly, the Region of the *Hypogastrium* may be very well bathed with the Powers of Amber, Caraways, and Juniper, either single or mix'd together; and over the same *Emplastrum de Baccis Lauri*, or *Diapalma*, may be applied. In a word, most of those Prescriptions which we have given to be used in the Stoppage of the Terms, may be successfully used here.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIII. *Of Abortion or Miscarriage.*

I. YOU may use the same Medicines which are prescribed in the Chapter of the Overflowing of the Courses, omitting only Purgation and the Juices.

SALMON's Comment.

II. It is called in Greek Ἀμβλωσις; in Latin, *Abortio, & Abortus*; in English, *Miscarriage in Child-bearing*: It is a Birth before the full length of the time, whether the Child is born living or dead. It is always accompanied with great Affliction and Pain, and is much more vehement and grievous than a natural Birth, because like to unripe Fruit, it cannot be brought forth without Violence; and Women who suffer Miscarriage say, that they had rather bear Ten Children, than Miscarry Once.

III. *The Causes.* It arises either from an Excess of Blood, and too great an Aflux of it, than to the Womb, whereby making its usual assage by the Womb, the *Fœtus* omes to be loosen'd and expell'd. Or it may proceed from a defect f Blood and Nourishment in the Mother, whereby the Child is also deprived of its due Nourishment, and therefore violent Fluxes of the Bowels, vehement Purges, Hemagogues, Emmenagogicks, and plenteful Venesection, especially in the Foot, as they draw away the Blood nd Nutriment first from the Mother, very much depressing her, nd then from the Child, so they re contributary to this Defection. A *Mola*, or dead Child together with the living being in the Womb, he *Mola* or dead Child, by pressing upon the living one, may cause the Miscarriage thereof.

IV. *Among External Causes*, The Air contributes much to it, if it is too violently hot; also over-great Heat, whether of the Sun, Fire, Stove, or Baths, may so disturb the Womb, and stimulate it as to cause an Excretion of the *Fœtus*. The excessive use of Spices, and spirituous Liquors, as of strong Wines, Punch, Brandy, strong Waters, *&c.* and such Drinks and Food as have the nature of Emmenagogicks, as Horse-radish, Mustard, Cresses, Tarragon, *&c.* are very prejudicial, for that they disturb the Animal Spirits, dissolve the whole Mass of Blood, put it into fusion, and so faciliate the Flux of it by the Womb, thereby causing Abortion. Sneezing vehemently, Coughing violently, Vomiting extreamly, too violent Motions of the Body, as Dancing, Running, Leaping, Riding on Horse-back, jolting in a Coach, straining out of the Arms, lifting of heavy Burthens, and beyond the Strength, overmuch Straining, also Falls, Blows, and Bruises of the Belly, are all causes sometimes of this Accident, for that thereby the *Placenta* sticking to the Womb is loosened, and parting from the Womb, the Child and Secundine are forced away. A violent continued Looseness, Bloody Flux, or any notorious loss of Blood, loss of Strength by any Disease previous or present, as an Erysipelas, Stitches, Pleurisie, Fever, Dropsie, Asthma, Inflamation, Cancer, frequent Faintings, Convulsions, Consumption, *&c.* may be causes also of Abortion

V. It is many times caused also from Womens strait Cloths, or lacing themselves too strait, to keep their

their Bodies slender and in shape; and from their Longing after things, which they shall sometimes accidentally see, and either not obtain, or not have so soon as they desire. And sometimes it is caused from the ill Conformation of the Abdomen, or Womb, not well constituted; where, by reason of hardness or stiffness, or some other cause, they cannot endure a sufficient Distention; or the carnous Substance of the Womb, is too thick or callous, or its Capacity is too small, whereby, not being able to be sufficiently extended, the *Fœtus* comes to be excluded; so also if there be too great a Laxity, so that it easily falls forth of its own accord.

VI. Too frequent Coition and Flux of the Cervical Humour, which may lax the Neck of the Womb, its Vessels and other parts, as they are Antipathetical to the Conception it self, so also they induce Abortion. To these Causes add moreover, great Frights, Fears, Anger, Grief, Sadness, and much carefulness of Mind, by which the very Soul, and all the natural Powers and Faculties of the Body, are strangely disturbed, to the hurt of the Actions, Natural, Vital and Animal, by which vehement and far greater Perturbations and Disorders affect and seize upon the *Fœtus* or Child in the Womb.

VII. *The Prognostick.* It is not so dangerous, as grievous and terrible with Pain, more especially if it happens when the *Fœtus* or Child is big, for then it is with much difficulty and extremity excluded from the Womb, more especially the Secundine or Afterbirth, which sticking fast to the sides of the Womb, by a vast number of Vessels, is, like unripe Fruit, not easily pluck'd from it, but with Violence and much Pain; which occasions many times great Hæmorrhages or Flooding, which are often attended whth Faintings, Swoonings, Delirium, and Convulsions, which last if they are present, the Woman scarce ever recovers. Abortion is more dangerous in the first Child than afterwards, especially when the Woman has been accustomed or used to it. It is also more dangerous in weak Women, and such as are of a tender Constitution, than in such as are strong, lusty, and fat. If a Fever, Palpitation, Heart-burning, Fainting or other ill Symptoms be present, it is so much the worse. And if it is accompanied with continual and extream Pains, it may be the cause of Inflamation, Erysipelas, Ulcer of the Womb, Barrenness, and other ill Distempers of that part.

VIII. *The Cure.* The Blood ought to be thickned; and the parts through which it flows to be strengthned, both by Internals and Externals; and the Vital and Animal Spirits ought to be supported by proper Narcoticks and Cordials, whose use is to be continued for some considerable time.

IX. To prevent Miscarriage, the Italian Women use Tincture of dryed red Roses; *Cappivaccius* uses Pouder of *Coccus infectorius*, with Pouder of Mastich, in a Beer Egg; and the *Tinctura Granorum Chermes Zwelferi*, is accounted an Herculean Remedy. If there is a Flux of Blood this may be given, *Take Catechu, Dragons-blood, Mastich, Rosin, of each a Dram; White Chalk, Terra, Sigillata, fine Bole, of each half a Dram; make a fine Pouder.* Dose a Dram Morning and Night in *Barabar Wine*. *Hartman* commends the Drinking *the Juice of a Crey-fish*, once or twice every

every Month. Or this of *Sennertus*, *Take Magistery of Coral one Dram; Pearl prepared half a Dram; Shavings of Ivory a Dram; Mastich half a Dram; Grains of Chermes one Dram; Saccharum Tabulatum perlatum, two Drams; mix and make a Pouder.* Dose one Dram Morning and Night. To these things you may add the *Magisteries of Coral, Crbs-claws and Eyes, Pearl, Spodium, Harts-horn, and Ivory Philosophically prepared, Roots of Avens, Bistort, Cinkfoil, Tormentil,* and other things of like nature.

X. You may also give *Tincture of Terra Japanica, Tinctura Mirabilis,* (which see in our *Ars Chirurgica,*) to be given from half a Spoonful to a Spoonful at a time, Morning, Noon and Night, in a Glass of choice Alicant, Barabar, or Tent; or at Night going to Bed you may exhibit *Laudanum Liquidum a gut. xv. ad xxv.* in Wine as aforesaid.

XI. But if the Sick had rather take solid Medicines, I commend this, *Take Pouder of the Cortex half a Dram; Catechu, Crocus Martis Astringens, of each a Scruple; Mithridate q. s. mix and make a Mass for a Bolus, or for Pills,* for one Dose, to be given every Morning fasting, and to be repeated at four in the Afternoon.

XII. Then at Night going to Bed, let her take of our *Landanum Specificum gr. ji. ad iv.* or more (as the Physician shall advise) by a gradual increase of the Dose, which is to be continued every Night, till the Flux ceases, drinking after it a little Glass of mull'd Sack, either alone, or mix'd with a Spoonful of strong *Cinnamon-water.*

XIII. *Outwardly* also an Injection may be made, to be cast in Blood-warm, with a Womb-Syringe, two, three, or four times a day; *Take fair Water a Quart; Red Port or Barabar Wine a Pint; mix them; to which add White Vitriol, Roch Alum, both in pouder, of each three Drams; Catechu in pouder, four Drams or something more; digest 24 hours warm, then decant the clear for an Injection,* to be used as aforesaid.

XIV. Also a Cataplasm of *White Bread and Canary, sprinkled with Pouders of Cloves, Nutmegs, Winters Cinnamon, and Catechu* may be applied to the Belly; and an *Eagle-stone* may be worn (by *Sennertus* his advice) bound to her Arm, or under her Arm pit. See the third Edition of our *Synopsis Medicinæ,* lib. 5. Cap. 81.

CHAP. XIV. *Of Falling down of the* WOMB.

I. *TAke of Oak-bark 2 Ounces; boil it in a Gallon of Spring water, till half is consumed; adding (towards the end) Pomgranate-peels beaten an Ounce; red Roses and Pomgranate-flowers, ana, two handfuls; and at last red Wine half a Pint.* 2. Let the part grieved be fomented with Flannel dip'd in the strained Liquor, two hours before the Sick rises every Morning, and every Night when she is in her Bed, till the Symptoms disappear.

SALMON's Comment.

II. It is called in Greek Πρόπτωσις ἡ Μήτρας; in Latin, *Procidentia*

dentia Uteri; and in English, *The Falling out, or down of the Womb. Barbet* is of the Opinion that it is not the Womb which falls down, but rather the *Vagina*, or Sheath: And of this Opinion am I also. For when I consider, by what strong Ligaments or Stays the Womb is held in its place, I think it next almost to impossible for such a Prolapsion. *Dolæus* says, the Falling down of the Womb is falsely so called, since it is rather the Extension of the inner and rugous *Vagina*, beyond its seat and place, within which according to Nature it should be contained.

III. And the reason why the Womb cannot fall down, is not only because of the strong Ligaments (as hinted just now) by which it is so fastned to the adjoyning parts, that it cannot be separated from them by the greatest Violence; but also because of the shortness of those Ligaments, which are not of length enough to suffer the Womb to turn out at its inner Neck; and therefore the Falling down of the Womb commonly so called, is only a Prolapsion or falling down of the *Vagina*.

IV. *The Signs are manifest* by sight, as also by the relation of the Patient. The Diagnosticks or Signs of the Causes are easily also known; for in some there is an Afflux of Blood, in others an Afflux of a serous or pituitous Matter, and sometimes a Stoppage of the Menses, *&c.*

V. *The Causes External and remote*, may be from living in an Air too cold and moist, often Bathings, too much drinking of Water, and eating other cooling and slippery things; taking strong Diureticks, and Emmenagogicks, excessive Sleeping, especially in cold and moist places, too violent Exercise of the Body in Travelling, Running, Dancing, Riding, Leaping, Coughing, Sneezng, Vomiting, vehement Passions of the Mind, Excretions either suppressed or immoderate, as of the Menses Lochia, Whites, Looseness, Dysentery, Tennasmus, Excessive Venery, Blows, Falls, Contusion, Ulcer, *&c.*

VI. *The Cause Internal or near*, may be from the Relaxation or Emollition of the rugous coat in the *Vagina Uteri* by an Afflux of Blood, Serum, Lympha, or other sharp Humours; or from a Corrosion by the Accrimony of the Humours flowing thither; or from being dilated or torn by an Ulcer, difficult Travail, an unskilful Midwife's drawing forth the Child, violently forcing away the After-birth, dead Child, Mola, *&c.*

VII. *The Prognosticks.* It is not of it self dangerous, but only accidentally, as it may be affected with Inflamation, Ulcer, Gangrene, Mortification, or Convulsions, *&c.* It is usually Chronical or of a long continuance, and very difficult to be cured, especially if the *Procidentia* be great and inveterate, in a Body Cachectick, Weak, or Consumptive.

VIII. *The Cure.* As to this, Astringent Medicines are commonly prescribed, and may be good in their kind, yet they ought to be used with great Caution, lest they do the Body other great Damages; for it is certain, that by all the Artifices in the World they can never cure this Distemper, yea, scarcely contribute towards it.

IX. In order to this Cure, you ought to remove all things which may impede its Reduction, or the replacing of the *Vagina Uteri*, such as inflamation, Tumour, Gangrene, Ulcer, Excoriation, Costiveness, Suppression of Urine, Menses sup-

suppressed or too fluid, &c. This Clyster may be good, *Take Mutton-broth a Pint, Sal Mitabile, or Sal Panaretum, half an Ounce or six Drams; mix, dissolve, and exhibit it warm.*

X. *Then let the Part which is extended or fallen down, be reduced or put into its place again*: Washing it with some absterstive and astringent Decoction; it may be wash'd and fomented with *Decoctum Ulmi*, and afterwards with *Decoctum Querci made with Smiths Water, in which a little Roch Alum is dissolved; add also to the Decoction when it is done, a quarter part of a Styptick red Wine.* After the Washing and Fomentation is over, let it be anointed with *Oil of Myrtles*, or *Oil of Quinces*, and then strew over it *Catechu* made into subtil Pouder.

XI. *To reduce it*, let the Woman be laid or placed on a Table or Bed, so that her Head may be low, and with your Hand put it gently up into its former place; or by the help of warm Cloths, and the whilst cause the Patient to breath out strongly; when it is reduced, care must be taken to prevent its falling out again; and this is done either with a *Truss* proper for this occasion, or with Pessaries made of Astringents, such as *Hypocistis, Acacia, fine Bole, Terra Lemnia, Catechu, Cows or Hogs-dung dry'd, Alum*, &c. Or with *Balls, or flat Cakes made of Cork*, and then dip'd into Wax, Rosin, and Gums, &c.

XII. *Inwardly let her take Decoctum Ulmi* sweetned with *Syrupus de Symphyto*; or this, *Take Guajacum rasped six Ounces; Ladies Mantle, Sanicle, Speedwell, Plantane, of each a handful; Catechu in pouder four Ounces; Spring water six Quarts; boil to a Gallon, then being cold strain out.* Dose four Ounces at a time Morning and Evening sweetned with *Syrupus de Symphyto*, or *Syrupus Cydoniorum*, which let be taken for 50 or 60 days together.

XIII. *But the External help* which we apply, and have often caused to be made use of, is *a wooden Ring made of Box or Cocus, Lignum Vitæ, or Elder-wood*, of such a magnitude as may not with much difficulty be put up into the *Vagina*; you may have them of different sizes, as an Inch and quarter, Inch and half, Inch and three quarters, and two Inches, or two Inches and quarter in Diameter from outside to outside, which is much more convenient than the former round flat Pessary or Cake made of Cork, &c.

XIV. This Ring is to be put up into the Cavity of the *Vagina*, and has been worn by some Women for many years together; I knew one who wore it for near twenty Years without any the least Inconveniency. It will always keep the Womb or Sheath in its place, hinder the Inclination to its prolapsion; nor need it ever to be taken out, unless now and then to cleanse it. And notwithstanding its Position there, Women may do their usual work, have Coition, Conceive, carry their great Bellies, and bring forth, &c. See the third Edition of our *Synopsis Medicinæ*, lib. 5. cap. 72.

CHAP. XV. *Of Pain of the* HÆMORRHOIDS.

I. THE Sick is afflicted with a moſt intenſe Pain, when he goes to Stool, the outſide of the Excrement being always ſtreaked with Blood: Sometimes little Swellings like Warts lye inwardly in the Muſcle called the *Sphincter*, or appear in the External parts of the Fundament. 2. Bleed in the right Arm ten Ounces. 3. *Take Seeds of Melons and Pompions, ana, half an Ounce; White Poppy-ſeeds two Drams; Jordan Almonds blanch'd* N°. *v. beat them all in a Marble Mortar, putting in gradually Barly water about a Pint; Roſe water two Drams; fine white Sugar a ſufficient quantity; make an Emulſion according to Art*; of which let the Sick take three Ounces often. 4. *Take flowers of Sulphur, Powder of Liquorice and Sage, of each a Dram; with a ſufficient quantity of Lucatella's Balſam, make a Maſs for Pills, ſix Pills to every Dram*; of which let him take thrice a day, taking ſix Spoonfuls of the Emulſion after them. 5. *Take Frog-ſpawn water four Ounces; boil in it Litharge in fine Powder two Drams; Opium one Scruple.* Dip a linnen Cloth in it, and apply it to the part affected. Or if the Swelling be inward, inject three Spoonfuls of the ſame mixture by way of Clyſter. 6. Let the Sick uſe Water boil'd with Milk, or Barly-water for ordinary Drink, and abſtain from Fleſh; and every Night let him take *Diacodium.*

SALMON's Comment.

II. This Diſeaſe is called in Greek Αἱμορῤῥοὶς τυφλαὶ; in Latin *Hæmorrhois cæca*, and in Engliſh, *The Piles, or Blind Hæmorrhoids.* And this is when the Hæmorrhoidal Veſſels or Arteries ſwell only with much Blood, and great Pain, but break or bleed not. Theſe Veſſels proceed from the lower Meſenterick and Iliacal Hypogaſtrick Atrery to the *Anus*, and terminate there.

III. This Diſeaſe is known by the Tumour and great Pain in the Anus, eſpecially in going to Stool; which is ſometimes ſo extream almoſt to Diſtraction, and to induce a Fever.

IV. Theſe *blind Piles* are many times cauſed from the Debility of the expulſive Faculty, through the Obſtruction of the Hæmorrhoidal Veſſels, either by Cold, as ſitting on a cold Seat in a cold Room or place; or, becauſe of the perpendicular aſcending of the Veins, whereby the Hæmorrhoidal Arteries may the more eaſily be compreſſed, for that the Blood cannot be ſtrongly enough forced upwards. And the great Pain which they cauſe, is both from the Acrimony of the Blood, and the Tumour preſent in ſuch ſtrait parts.

V. *Prognoſticks.* If they are very painful and return often, more eſpecially if the Patient has been a licentious Liver, they may degenerate, and be the cauſe of many other Diſeaſes, as of a Fever, Conſumption, Induration, Inflamation, Gangrene, Ulcer or Fiſtula, which many times prove incurable, by reaſon either of Age, or ill habit of Body, or the continual Afflux of Excrements, and other like cauſes.

VI. *The Cure.* Our Author preſcribes Bleeding, but that is not to be

be done, unless the Sick is lean and very full of Blood; but if they be over-fat, or worn or wasted away with a Pining, or Consumption, or be Hydropical; or if it is a Woman, and she with Child; or if some vehement Hæmorrhage has gone beore, either by the Nose or Mouth, *&c.* in all these cases it ought to be forborn.

VII. If the Body is Costive, there will be no hope of Ease, till it be made soluble, which ought to be with some *Lenitive Cathartick*, as *Electuarium Lenitivum*, *Diacassia*, *simple and with Manna*, &c. but not with Aloetick Medicaments, because they are known to cause, or force down the Piles.

VIII. But that Purge which most effectually does it, is the *Sal Mirabile*, which may be given (in a Pint of warm Water, or warm Watergruel) from half an Ounce to an Ounce, according to Age, Strength, and Habit of Body; for this not only loosens the Belly, but cools also the body to boot; and though it purges, yet it never provokes the Piles or *Hemorrhoids*. Or you may use our *Sal Panaretum* in the same manner, but in a lesser Dose, which has all the same Effects, if not the more excellent Medicine of the two.

IX. These Medicaments may also be given in clarified Whey, or in Mutton-broth; and the Dose is so often to be repeated, and at due distances of times, till the whole hot and costive habit of the Bowels is altered.

X. Outwardly the Patient may often sit over the Fumes of Amber, on a Close-stool, they ascending up to the *Anus* or Fundament, by casting pieces or bits of Amber upon live Charcole; the same thing may be done, (tho' it is not so powerful) with Frankincense Olibanum or Mastick used in like manner.

XI. Authors commend *Tapsivalentia*, as a Specifick to anoint the Piles withal, being used two or three times a day; so also simple *Tapsimel*, made without the *Vitriol*. But I think very few outward Medicaments exceed an *Ointment* made of *Pilewort Roots*, which cures the Piles to a wonder. It may be made of the Roots and Leaves together (though that made with the Roots alone is best.) It speedily cures the *Piles* and *Hæmorrhoids*, as also the *Kings-evil*, by barely anointing therewith two or three times a day. The same things do also the Oil and Decoction thereof, the parts affected being anointed or fomented therewith. It grows for the most part in low and moist Grounds, and such as are apt to be overflow'd with Water; and in the borders and corners of moist Fields near Water-sides; it flowers in *March* and *April*, and is quite gone in *May*, so that if it be not timely look'd after and gathered, it cannot be had again till the next Spring.

XII. Whether the Piles be ulcerated or not ulcerated, all the former Medicines may very safely be used; but if they be not broken there is no application like to that of *Oil of Amber*, with which they may be anointed two or three times, by which they will certainly be eased and go away. But if they be broken, that must be forborn, because of the Pain which it is apt to excite, by reason of its Heat and Subtilty.

XIII. In this case you must apply other things of less Heat and Acrimony; among the rest this is approved of, *Take Oil of Poppy-seeds by Expression, or Oil of Ben, two Ounces; Sperma Ceti, Saccharum-Saturni, ana, half an Ounce, dissol-*

ved in a little boiling Water; *Pouder of Tobacco two Drams*; *Opium in fine pouder a Dram*; *mix them*. First foment with hot red Wine for half an hour; then anoint with the afore described Oil, which work so often repear, till they are well.

XIV. If they are exceedingly swell'd, but not broken, and the Pain outragious, even so great as to excite a Fever, and that by reason of the greatness of the Tumour, the *Oil of Amber* will do nothing but rather increase the Inflamation and Pain, you must then come to the last Remedy, which is Bleeding with Leeches, without which no Remedy will easily succeed: You may apply four, six, ten or twelve, according to the Magnitude of the Tumour and Inflamation. I once had a Patient, in whom the swelling was of such a magnitude, that I was forced to apply no less than a dozen large Leeches at one time; they drew well and abated the Tumour, and the Sick was afterwards well cured.

XV. After the Leeches have been applied, and have done drawing, you must foment the part for an hour together with hot Styptick Port Wine, and then anoint with the former Oil two or three times a day; then when the Disease seems to be cured, to prevent a Relapse, you must strengthen the part, by sitting sometimes over the Fumes of Amber.

CHAP. XVI. *Of Flux of the* HÆMORRHOIDS.

I. THE Signs are Decay of Strength, a long and plentiful Flux of Blood ill colour of the Body, tending to a Citron colour, as in the Yellow Jaundice. It rings a Cachexia, or an evil habit of Body, and afterwards the Dropsie. 2. The same things are good in this case, which are prescribed in the Chapter *Of the Overflowing of the Courses*, omitting only Purgation.

SALMON's Comment.

II. It is called in Greek, Αἱμορροΐς καὶ Ῥεῦσις τῶν Αἱμορροΐδων; in Latin, *Hæmorrhois, & profluvium Hemorrhoidis* and in English, *The Hæmorrhoids*; *or Bleeding Piles*. And this is when Blood in large quantities runs out of the Hæmorrhoidal Arteries; it is called the broken or open Piles, and flows at certain times of the Month, not much unlike the *Menses* in Women. It is known from the Hepatick Flux, because in this the Excrements for the most part follow the Blood, in the Hepatick Flux the contrary; except in a Body much abounding with Blood; for such being troubled with the Hæmorrhoids, the Blood follows the Exerements also very often.

III. The Ancients thought the Blood to proceed from the Hæmorrhoidal *Veins*, but modern Anatomists say, that it comes from the Vessels of the *Anus* and *Arteries* rather than from the *Veins*; and that it proceeds from the Ramifications of the lower Mesenterick, and the Iliacal Hypogasterick Artery to the *Anus*.

IV. It is known not only by the Swelling of the part affected, and great uneasiness of the Patient, but particularly by the great Flux of Blood which attends the same.

V. It

V. It is caused from the Discrasy of the Blood, being too acrimonious or sharp, and so affected with too great an Effervescence, by which means flowing violently to the Mesenterick and Hemorhoidal Arteries, they either burst, or their mouths are opened; that they may sometimes burst is very probable, because as *Sylvius* observes, those Capillary Arteries consist but of a single Coat.

VI. This Disease is not lightly to be respected, especially if it continues long, because it may induce Cachexies, Dropsies, and Consumptions. It gives relief to a Woman whose Courses are stop'd, and sometimes to such as are with Child, if it be not extream; and is profitable for such as have Varices, the Gout, Hardness of the Spleen, or are troubled with Mania, Hypochondriacal Melancholy, or are Nephritick, as *Hyppocrates*, *Sect. 6.* Aph. 11. has observed. If their Bleeding is periodical and moderate, it is good for such as are troubled with melancholy or Madness; nor is a moderate Flux to be suddenly stop'd, lest it occasions some other more grievous Disease. *Hyppocrates*, Sect. 6. Aph. 12. says, If you desire to stop the Hæmorrhoids, which have been of long continuance, one of the Vessels ought to be left running, lest a Dropsie or Consumption should be caused through their total Stopping. In *Sect. 6. Aph.* 21. he also says, when such as are Mad have the Varices and Hæmorrhoids, the Madness will go away, or be cured.

VII. *The Cure.* If it is critical and gives relief, *Sylvius* is of opinion, that it ought not to be stop'd; but when it exceeds and is Symptomatick, it ought to be stop'd with some proper Astringent, or with this, *Take Plantane-water two Ounces and a half; Cinnamon water half an Ounce; Syrup of Myrtle an Ounce; Diascordium a Dram and half; Confectio Hyacinthorum a Dram; mix them.* Dose a Spoonful at times near the Evening.

VIII. If it proceeds from a thinness of Blood, Vulneraries and things Incrassating must be used; if from Acrimony, it must be corrected with Volatile Alcalies or with Opiates. If from a Salt or Acid Humour, or from Worms, with *Mercurius Dulcis*, and Native Cinnabar; the first of them to be given from ten Grains to a Scruple; the other from a Scruple to two Scruples in any proper Vehicle.

IX. Since therefore this Flux, though immoderate, is not forthwith to be totally stop'd by Astringents; it is at first to be gently dealt with, and the Morbifick Cause which resides in the Blood is first to be removed, and to be restored to its due Crasis, after which the use of Stypticks may be profitable. The Sharpness and Melancholy Quality of the Blood must be altered, which is to be performed with fix'd Alcalies, such as *Testaceous Pouders*, *Terra Sigillata*, *Bezoar Mineral*, *Antimonium Diaphoreticum*, *Salt of Tartar*, and other like things.

X. The Tone of the Blood is to be restored with some fit Doses of the Cortex *Peruvianus* given from one Scruple to a Dram, and repeated for six or eight days or more. Or, you may give the Infusion thereof in Red Wine, as we have in many places taught.

XI. But little inferior to any other Medicaments is the *Terra Japanica*, given either in a subtil Pouder from half a Dram to a Dram; or in

Tincture, which is of admirable Effects. Or you may give our *Tinctura Mirabilis* (in our *Pharmacopœia Chirurgica*) which stops the Flux of Blood to the part, almost to a Miracle: this you may repeat so long as need requires. Or, you may for Change-sake (because Nature loves variety) give alternately first the *Tinctura Mirabilis*, then the *Tinctura Corticis*, to be continued as you see cause.

XII. But if the Flux is so Impetuous, as that none of these things will do any good, you must come to the use of *Opiates*, as the *Ultimum Asylum*, which will never fail you, unless the Disease be incurable. For this purpose you may give our Author's *Laudanum Liquidum*, or that of our *Prescription*, or our *Guttæ Vitæ*, if you use Liquids; but if the Patient had rather take Solids, some Doses of *Philonium Romanum*, or *Philonium Persicum* may be administred, or rather our *Laudanum Volatile*, which answers to all the Intentions of this Cure.

XIII. Outwardly you may foment the Part with some Styptick Liquor, the Cold being taken off, or with our *Aqua Regulata*, or a Dissolution of equal parts of *White Vitriol and Alum*, adding to it a little *Opium*, in a convenient quantity of Well-water, or rather of *Smiths Forge-water*, making it as strong of the Ingredients as the Patient can well bear it.

XIV. The Flux being stop'd, and the Patient seeming to be well, you must comfort and strengthen both the Blood, and also the parts weakned. And this first by Intervals, giving Morning and Night, *Tincture of Salt of Tartar, or Tincture of Antimony thirty drops mixed with twenty-four drops of our Author's Liquid Laudanum, or of our Guttæ Vitæ.* Or the Mixture may be given in the Morning mix'd with *Syrup of Myrtles*; and at Night *an Ounce of Diacodium, mixt with an Ounce of Syrup of dried red Roses, and three Ounces of Styptick red Wine*, such as *Barabar* Wine, *Barcelona* Wines, *Red Florence*, &c.

XV. And outwardly the Fundament is often to be fomented with Red Stiptick Wine, in which Opium has been dissolved; or the Patient may sit often over the Fumes of *Catechu* in a Close-stool, they ascending from Bits thereof cast upon live Charcole: After which the *Anus* and parts affected may be anointed with *Unguentum Diapompholigos*, which is to be continued till the Tone of the parts are perfectly restored.

CHAP. XVII. *Of the Disease* CHOLERA.

I. IT happens mostly within the Month of *August* and seldom makes any Excursions into the first Weeks of *September*. 2. There is a Distemper like unto it, arising from Surfeiting and Gluttony, which though it is cured after the same manner, is yet of another kind. 3. *The Signs* are violent Vomiting, and the evacuating of corrupt Humours by Stool, with much trouble and difficulty; strong Pains, swelling up and distending the Belly and Guts; knawing at he Heart or Stomach, Thirst, Pulse quick, frequent, small and unequal; Heat and Anxiety; a very troublesome Loathing, Swearing; Spasms or Contractions of the Legs and Arms; Swoonings, Coldness

neſs of the Extream Parts, and ſuch-like Symptoms, which kill the Sick in 24 hours.

II. Let a young Chicken be boiled in about three Gallons of Spring-water, that there be very little taſte of Fleſh perceivable in the Decoction or Broth: And let the Sick drink ſeveral large Draughts of this Broth luke-warm: Or, (for want of that) of warm Poſſet drink. 2. In the mean time, exhibit Clyſters of the ſame Liquor at due diſtances of time. 3. And let an Ounce of Syrup of Lettice, Violets, Purſlane, and Water-Lillies, or any of them, be ſometimes mixed, both with the Draughts and Clyſters. 4. The Work of waſhing the Bowels being over, which requires the ſpace of three or four hours, a reſting Medicine compleats the Cure.

III. When the Phyſician is not called till after the Sick is quite ſpent, and weakned by the Evacuations, and the Extream Parts are already cold, recourſe muſt immediately be had to *Liquid Laudanum*, and that in a large Doſe, *viz.* 25 Drops of it in an Ounce of Cinnamon-water. 2. And this even after the ceaſing of the Symptoms, ought ſtill to be reiterated, but in a ſmaller Doſe, till the Sick is reſtored to his priſtine Health.

IV. There is another ſort of *Cholera*, which frequently troubles Children, and is many times fatal to them, which ariſes from the breeding of Teeth, or Surfeiting. 2. Their tender Age will not bear the former kind of waſhing of their Stomachs and Bowels with large Draughts of Broth, much leſs the making a greater Tumult in the Humours by Catharticks; and therefore the whole Cure is to be expected from the uſe of *Laudanum*. 3. Let two, three, four, or more Drops of it (according to the Age of the Child,) be given in a Spoonful of Small-Beer, or ſome convenient Water, and repeated as you ſhall find need require.

SALMON's Comment.

V. It is called in Greek Χολέρα, *à* Χολὴ, *bilis*, *& ῥέω*, *fluo*, to flow; in Latin, *Cholera & Paſſio Cholerica*; and in Engliſh, *The Cholerick Flux, or Diſeaſe Cholera*. It is a depraved Saline, and Convulſive Rejection of the Stomach, Guts and other Viſcera, ariſing from a Spaſmodick Motion of their Fibres, by means of which, a great quantity of evil and corrupt Humours are violently voided both by Vomit and Stool.

VI. *The Parts affected* are, according to *Galen* and moſt other Phyſicians, both Orifices of the Stomach, *viz.* the *Oeſophagus* and *Pylorus*; but *Celſus* thinks the Diſeaſe to lie both in the Stomach and Guts: *Helmont* ſays, the *Pylorus* of the Stomach is the principal part affected: Others, the Stomach, Guts, Pancreas and Cyſtis of the Gall, but chiefly the Fibres and Glands of the ſame parts, in which the Periſtaltick Motion; may be as well inverted as directed; ſo that Choler and the Acid Pancreatick Juice meeting in the *Duodenum*, may probably give riſe to this Diſeaſe.

VII. *The Diagnoſticks. Theſe Signs ſhew the Diſeaſe to be approaching*, viz. A violent Pain in ſome part of the Body, eſpecially in the Loins, Rumbling and Noiſe in the Guts, ſowre Belching, having withal a burnt-like or ſtrong or ſtinking Smell and Taſte, Headach, plentiful Eating of Food or Fruits eaſily corruptable, having a cold and

crude Quality; Fears, Vexation, Anger, and Grief of Mind.

VIII. *The Signs of the Disease being present.* The Sick Vomits what is bilious or bitter, sowre, and stinking or very strong; the Stools are also sharp, strong or stinking, and these are often repeated both ways for several hours together; yea, and sometimes days, so that the Patient seems as if he had taken Poison: there is vehement Pain, Sickness and Pricking in the Stomach and Belly, and the Excrements are at first liquid or thin, afterwards thicker and better coloured, sometimes of a Greenish or Leek-green, sometimes of a Citrine colour, someimes blewish, blackish, or of a bloody colour, and sometimes whitish or Pale, and are voided with Wind and Gripes; and sometimes they are of an Ash-colour for a long time, which Authors say, shews Malignity. There is also present a great Thirst, with little or no Urine, because the thinner parts of what is received in, is voided other ways, *viz.* upwards and downwards. The Pulse is frequent and little, ending sometimes intermitting; the Body is all over in a cold Sweat, with coldness in the extream parts, Hiccough, Convulsions and Swooning; the Muscles of the Hands are many times drawn together, more especially the Muscles of the Calves of the Legs, which is a peculiar Symptom of this Disease.

IX. *The Causes.* The antient Physicians say, that the Effusion of Choler out of the Gall-bladder into the Stomach and Guts in too great a quantity, is the cause of this Disease. Others say, it arises from Food, Meats, or Fruit, received into the Stomach and there for want of a proper or digestive Ferment, Putrifying, presently by its Taint, hurts the Tone of the Stomach and Guts, and so excite these vehement Rejections and Dejections. It is sometimes caused also from a vitious Chyle, or the degeneration of the fermentative Juice of the Stomach; or an acrid Humour poured out of the Arteries into the Stomach and Guts, or from Choler and Pancreatick Juice; sometimes from them severally, and sometimes from them all together, converting into an acid, austere, bitter, and pungent Humour, which effervescing in those *Viscera*, and thereby pricking and vellicating the Fibres of the Stomach and Guts, put them into such disorders and convulsive Motions, as to cause those violent and strong Ejections both upwatds and downwards, just as if the Patient had taken Poison. The procatartick Cause arises from the Meats and Drinks heterogeneous to the Ferment of the Stomach, a Barbel's Row, violent Medicaments, Poisons, *&c.* according to which the Excrements are voided of several different Consistencies, Colours Smells, *&c.*

X. *The Prognosticks.* If with the great Weakness caused by the Disease there be cold Sweats, Palpitation of the Heart, loss of Speech, Swooning and Convulsions, the Sick is in a very dangerous Condition, more especially if the Ejections do not cease. When it is accompanied with evil Accidents, it commonly kills the Sick in a few days, and sometimes in a days time or less. If the Urine is livid or black and the extream parts are cold, Death is at hand; more especially if a weak Pulse, Palpitation, Fainting away, Hiccough or Convulsions be present. If it proceeds from Poison, and that not in some little time rejected, Life is scarcely to be

expected.

expected. If it happens to old Men, (which is rarely to be seen) it is of dangerous consequence; but many times it turns to heat of Urine or the Stranguary.

XI. *The Diet.* Let the Air be cool, not very hot, because it irritates the Humours, and therefore this Disease is worse in Summer-time than in the Spring or Autumn. Let the Food be little, and easie of Digestion; and when he comes to eat Broth for Nourishment, let it be made savory with Juice of Sevil Oranges, Limons, *&c.* Let his Bread be white, and rather Biscake than other; let him forbear Milk Meats, all fat, sweet and hot or acrid things, as Mustard, Pepper, Ginger, and other Spices, forbearing also all sorts of violent Purgers. Let his Drink be Wines of Currants, Red Cherries, or of Quinces, or something which is Tart and Astringent, as Chalybeat-water, sweetned with Syrup of Quinces, or of Juice of Citrons; all new generous Wines, as also new Ale, and Beer are to be forborn; long Watching is hurtful, but rest and Sleep are good: Also all Passions of the Mind, as Anger, Fear, Grief, Sadness, Vexation of Spirit, *&c.* are to be restrained, because they increase and heighten Choler, and perturb the Spirits and Motion of the Blood, *&c.*

XII. *The Cure.* Our Author's Advice of Washing the Stomach and Guts in the beginning is excellent good, for thereby the Acrimonious Bile and sharp Humours are at once both absorbed and plentifully evacuated; which being done, the Humours ought to be drawn down by proper Clysters, such as this, *Take Veal Broth a Pint; Infusion of Crocus Metallorum three Ounces; Infusion of Colocynthis two Drams; mix them to be exhibited warm.* Afterwards you may cleanse the Bowels thoroughly by giving *Sal Panaretum* or *Sal Mirabile* in a fit Dose; then you may comfort the Bowels by giving strong Mutton or Veal Broth; and so come to the use of Opiates; Examples of all kinds of which you may see in our *Doron Medicum*, lib. 1. cap. 22. Sect. 44 ad 170.

XIII. If it proceeds from Poison taken inwardly, or any deleterious Medicine, Oil ought to be given to a Quart or two, or more, by the Mouth; also Clysters of Oil may be given, till the Oil given by the Mouth come away by Stool. Or you may give this Clyster, *Take Veal Broth ten Ounces; Oil Olive six Ounces; Infusion of Crocus Metallorum four Ounces; mix for a Clyster.* Or this, *Take Veal Broth ten Ounces; brown Sugar four Ounces; Infusion of Crocus Metallorum two Ounces; mix for a Clyster.* After it has done working, or that it is come away, give a Clyster only of Oil Olive a Pint, something more than Blood warm. And if the Poison, *&c.* be vehement, you must not cease giving Oil by the Mouth till two or three Quarts has been by degrees taken down, more especially if the Malignity is potent, and will not in a little time yield to Remedies.

XIV. If the Disease arises from corrupt Food in the Stomach, or from Surfeiting, an Emetick may be given, more especially if there be any suspicion of Poison; for thereby not only the Precant Mattor which smites or hurts the Nervous Fibres or the Stomach and Guts will be rejected, but the Animal Spirits possessing those Fibres and parts will be pacified, and so the pain will cease; *Take Emeticum commune from one and half*

to two Ounces; *Laudanum Specificum a Grain and a half or two Grains*; *Salt of Wormwood five Grains*; *mix for a Dose.* Or, *Take Tartar Emetick two Grains*; *Salt of Wormwood four Grains*; *Angelica water four Ounces*; *mix for a Dose.*

XV. Afterwards when the Body has been thoroughly cleansed both upwards and downwards, this vitious aud violent Effervescence of acrid and sharp Humours must be tempered aud allayed, or quieted by *Opiates*, as before hinted. *Sylvius* commends this, *Take Syrup of White Poppies one Ounce*; *Diascordium two Drams*; *Confectio de Hyacintho one Dram*; *Plantane water two Ounces*; *Fennel water one Ounce*; *mix them for a Dose.* If the Acrimony of Choler will not yet abate, this following mixture may be given, *Take Plantane and Purslane waters, Syrup of Purslane, of each an Ounce*; *Diascordium a Dram and half*; *Sweet Spirit of Salt half a Dram*; *mix them for a Dose.*

XVI. If it arises from eating of Fruits, or from a too large Dose of Vomiting Medicines, or from Poison; *Sylvius* is of Opinion that *Laudanum Opiatum* is the last refuge; and therefore he commends the two last described Mixtures, adding to them a Grain or two of *Laudanum Opiatum*; for that *Opiates* do as well temper all kinds of Acrimony, and quiet the present or consequent Effervescence, as lay asleep the external Senses.

XVII. But if the Disease proceeds from Corrosive Sublimate, then *Oil of Tartar diluted or mix'd with a good quantity of fair water* is the only Remedy, because it is a present one, and is efficacious upon the spot. If it proceeds from other Mineral Poisons, as Arsenick, Orpiment, Cobaltum, *&c.* then Oily things, as fat Broths, Emulsions, *&c.* must be given, and be continued so long as Pain, Loathing, Nauseousness or Vomiting remain.

XVIII. Though the use of *Laudanum* is to be continued to the end of the Cure, yet in the Intervals, Lenitive Catharticks ought sometimes to be given; and sometimes, instead of both, you may give every Night a Dose of our *Laudanum Catharticum*, the Composition, Preparation, and Use of which, you may see in our *Pharmacopœia Chirurgica*, where you may receive abundant satisfaction.

XIX. That which proceeds from breeding of Teeth, might easily be prevented, if Nurses, and such as attend upon Children when they are young, would be but diligent to rub their Gums continually with the hard Coral (this use being the true reason of wearing it:) For by reason of the sharpness of the Tooth within the Gum, and the hardness of the Coral pressing upon it without, through the often rubbing of the Gums therewith, they would not only be deaded, and so the Teeth made to cut the more easily, but they would never have any Pain at all whilst that work is doing.

XX. If the Vomiting is more prevalent than the Dejections, then Laxitives are proper: In this case, *Whey of Sheeps Milk with a little Pulp of Cassia* is good, because it both takes away the Heat and Pain, and gently carries off the Peccant Matter downwards. So also *Whey with Honey or Syrup of Roses Solutive*, or rather with *Syrup of Peach flowers*, which is beyond them all, and a Remedy without comparison. After Purging with these things give this, *Take of our Volatile or Specifick Laudanum, from*

one

one Grain to three; *Oil of Nutmegs by Expression from half a Scruple to a Scruple*; *mix for a Dose*, to be given at Bed-time. The next Morning give the Patient this, *Take Angelica or Mint water three Ounces*; *Syrup of Quinces an Ounce and half*; *Powers*, or *Spirit of Mint a Dram*; *mix for a Dose*.

XXI. If the Acid seems to be most prevalent, as may easily be found out by the Patient's sower Rejections or Vomitings, then give this, *Take Oriental Bezoar, Harts-horn philosophically prepared, Crabs-eyes all levigated, of each a Scruple*; *of our Volatile Laudanum gr. ij. or iij. Syrup of Mint an Ounce and half*; *mix for a Dose* at Bed-time.

XXII. If Faintings or Swoonings, or an Oppression at Heart be present, let this Mixture be given by Spoonsuls, and continued as long as need requires; *Take Simple Angelica and Mint waters of each four Ounces*; *Syrups of Mint, of Juice of Citrons, and of Quinces, of each one Ounce and half*; *Spirit of Angelica the greater Composition, Powers of Mint, of each an Ounce and half*; *of our Tinctures of Antimony and Coral compound, of each two Drams*; *mix them.*

XXIII. But at length if the Patient cannot bear *Opiates* of any kind, neither *Solid* nor *Liquid*, by reason of an Antipathy in their Constitution to the same, you will then be obliged to the use of *Diacodium* only, which I have not yet found any habit of Body to refuse: And this may be given *from half an Ounce to an Ounce, Ounce and half, or two Ounces* at a time, according to Age and Strength, in some proper Vehicle, as *Syrup of Mint, or Quinces, mix'd with Angelica or Mint water*, every day once, at the time of going to Bed, *&c.*

CHAP. XVIII. *Of the* BILIOUS COLICK.

I. IT is a very vehement Pain in the Guts, which begins with a Fever that lasts a few Hours; either it wrings them, as if they were girt with Bands or Chords; or, being gathered into a point, bores them as if it was with an Augur. 2. Sometimes it gives a Truce, but momentarily returns to the Assault. 3. At first it is not so certainly fix'd in any one Point, there is not so often a desire to Vomit, nor does the Belly so firmly resist the force of Cathartick. 4. But by degrees, as the Pain is increased, it is also the more stubborn, and as it were fix'd in a Point, the Inclination to Vomit grows more strong and frequent, and the Belly is more bound, till at last the Disease degenerates into the Iliack Passion.

II. It is thus differenced from the Stone in the Reins; 1. The Pain of the Stone, is as it were fixed in one of the Kidnies, and from thence extends it self to the Testicle, according to the length of the Ureter, or Urinary Passage from the Reins. 2. But these Pains of the Colick are more unconstant and moveable, compassing about the middle of the Belly as with a Girdle. 3. These Pains of the Colick are also increased after eating; but the Nephritical Pains of the Stone are rather

rather diminished. 4. In the Colick, the voiding of Excrements gives greater Ease than in the Stone. 5. The Urine of those who are troubled with the Stone, is, at the beginning of the Fit clear and thin, then there appears some Sediment, and at length Sand or little Stones are voided. 6. But in the Colick, the Urine is muddy and thick from the very beginning.

III. Bleed considerably in one of the Arms; and three or four hours after exhibit an Anodyn; the next day give a lenitive Medicine, to be repeated every other day, to two Doses more. 2. But if the Distemper arises from Gourmandising, or from eating over-ripe Fruits, then first of all the Stomach must be washed with large and often to be repeated Draughts of Posset-drink. 3. After that is done, an Opiate is to be given: the next day Bleed, and then proceed according to the Orders before directed.

IV. When the Disease having been unskilfully treated, has continued very long, and the Sick has been reduced to extream Weakness by it; the plentiful drinking of either *Aqua Epidemica*, *Aqua Mirabilis*, or such other like, with which they were most pleased whilst in Health, has helped them beyond Expectation.

SALMON's Comment.

V. This Disease is called in Greek Κολικὴ νόσος; in Latin, *Colice & Colica*, & Κολικὴ ὀδύνη, *Colicus dolor*, *Coliacus Morbus*, *à* Κόλον, *Intestinum Magnum*; in English, *the Colick*: And it is a Disease, as *Celsus* says, of the Gut Colon, in which there is a very great Pain, proceeding either from the Acrimony of Choler, or other Humours, which prick and velicate the Tunicles and Fibres of the Guts: Or Spasmodick, from Wind distending the Intestins, by which the Animal Spirits are tumultuously excited, and violently protruded upon the said Membranous parts, whence come Convulsive Motions, rumbling of the Wind, and vehement Pain.

VI. *The Parts affected are* doubtless, 1. The Gut Colon, in which it is thought to have its Original or beginning; for being large, thick, long, and winding, sharp Humours and Wind may be easily lodged there, both in the substance of its Coats, and by reason of its numerous Valves. 2. The Mesentery in which there are many large Nerves, and plexures of the same, by which it becomes very sensible, and subject to an Afflux of Humours, and this *Willis* will have to be the Seat of the Colick; without doubt the Disease is for the most part contain'd in the Cavities of the Guts, and among their Nervous Membranes; in which, when either Humours or Spirits, Acrimonious, Malign, or Arsenical (as they may be called) are enclosed, they by their Collision, velicate the Fibres of the Nerves, and by breaking or hurting them, excite the Colick Pains, which are more or less vehement, according to the Magnitude of the Causes.

VII. *The Signs are* a very violent Pain, and most excruciating Torment of the Belly in the very Guts themselves, sometimes fix'd in one place like as if pierced with an Auger, and sometimes moveable, now in this part of the Belly, then in another part thereof; and sometimes the whole *Abdomen* seems to be tormented at once, according

according to the ſite and motions of the Acrimonious Humours, or Inundation of the Animal Spirits, or Undulation of the Wind poſſeſſing thoſe parts. The Patient makes but little Urine, for the Inteſtines being diſtended by Wind take up more room, ſo that the adjacent Veſſels, as the *Omentum* and *Ureters* being compreſſed thereby the *Serum* cannot ſo eaſily get to the Kidnies. All the Muſcles of the *Abdomen* ſeem to be ſore as it were, and pained, and there is a Convulſive Contraction of all the Bowels, ſo that ſometimes you can ſcarcely ſee any Belly at all. Sometimes the Guts are ſo contracted that there is preſent a wonderful Coſtiveneſs; or if any Stools be made either by Medicines or Nature, they are generally flatulent. And ſometimes the Ureters and Bladder are ſo contracted, that there is a total Obſtruction of Urine. The Patient is many times affected with great Thirſt, Loathing of Food, or at leaſt want of Appetite, bitterneſs of the Mouth and Throat, a Fever, and ſometimes a Diſtention of the Belly like a Drum: A very acute or ſharp Pain attends it, and ſometimes Vomiting, becauſe the circular Fibres of the *Pylorus* (which *Helmont* thinks to be affected) cloſing it, the Stomach coming thereby to be ſtraitned, the Food or Matter contained in it, not being able to paſs over, the *Pylorus* being now ſhut, it follows that of neceſſity it muſt be evacuated by the Mouth; when, if yellow or green Choler is rejected, it is manifeſt that the *Duodenum* and *Cyſtis of the Gall* are both affected. If the Colick is of long continuance, the cauſe is very much to be ſuſpected to lye in the *Omentum* and *Meſentery*. But if it terminates in a little time, upon taking proper Medicines, it is poſſible that it is then involved in the *Colon* only.

VIII. *The Cauſes.* The Antients thought the Colick to ariſe from groſs, vitious, pituitous Humours, infolded in the Coats of the Colon, or a Flatus diſtending, or tearing the Guts; or acrimonious bilious Humours, preternatural Acidities, grumous Blood, hardned Excrements, Worms, Stones, Poiſons, and ſtrong Cathaticks, vellicating and fretting the ſame. *Paracelſus* ſays, that the Colick is cauſed from Salts or Tartar in the Guts too much diſſolved, or too much coagulated, infecting, vellicating and ſtraitning the Inteſtines, and that the kinds of the Colick muſt be taken from the ſeveral kinds of the Salts predominant, whether Vitriolate, Aluminous, or Tartarous, according as they are Styptick, Auſtere, Pontick, or Acrid, whereby they vellicate and corrugate the ſenſible Membraneous Fibres. *Helmont* will have it to be cauſed from a preternatural Acidity in Food or Drink, and that it often comes from an Acid Salt; and the more Acid it is, the more violent and vehement are the Pains; and this is ſo much the more ſtrong and potent if Choler be joined therewith, which produces a Slime, in which this Acrimony is included; if then this vitiated or morbid Matter does ſtick to the Guts, it cauſes an exquiſite Pain; the Guts then, that they may free themſelves therefrom, compreſs, corrugate, and contract themſelves together, together with the Muſcles of the *Abdomen*, whereby the *Archæus* of the Guts is inraged, ſo as to excite the violent Pains of this Diſeaſe. Or, the Peccant Matter being gathered about the Meſenterick *Plexus* of the

Nerves,

Nerves, or other Nerves, and fermenting with a fix'd saline Humour, discharged out of the Blood thither, afflicts the Nervous Fibres with painfuller Corrugations, which by an impetuous Influx of the Animal Spirits, is so promoted as to come to Convulsive Motions of those parts.

IX. Or it may proceed from a vitious pituitous Mucilage fermenting with an over Acid Pancreatick Juice; or, from a vicious Chyle, degenerating into, or mixed with Choler, and then fermenting with a very sharp or acid Pancreatick Juice as aforesaid, which being rarified into Wind, distend, not only the Gut, but sometimes also the *Abdomen* it self. Or, from the too great Efflux of Choler, which fermenting with an acrid saline Humour, not only in the Cavity of the Guts, but also between their Membranes, where being rarified, and protruded into the Pores of the parts, which being straitned by the Extension made by this Rarefaction, and so not able to pass out or through, immediately cause this most exquisite Pain, which from the Extremity thereof afflicts also the Stomach, Bladder, and other Bowels by consent, whence comes Vomiting, Stranguary, difficulty of making water, *&c.* The Pancreatick Juice, when it is much depraved, has much the nature of Spirit of Nitre: Now as Spirit of Nitre mixing with or dissolving a fat mucilaginous Body, such as the dryed Flesh of Vipers, Goats, Sheeps or Bullocks Flesh, *&c.* repleat with volatile Salt, makes a mighty Ferment, whereby the Particles are rarified and vastly expanded, which being again mixed with some Volatile Spirit, as of Wine, Sugar, Honey, *&c.* is again rarified into subtil Vapors or Wind, which very much extend the Capacities of the Bodies in which they are enclosed, or otherwise burst them: So is it with this Microcosmick depraved Nitrous or Acid Pancreatick Spirit, which meeting with the fat volatile Substance of Bile, mixes with it, causes a wonderful acrid Ferment, which distending the Capillary Nervous Fibres, excites the Animal Spirits to come in to their relief, which flowing in by an *Impetus* as it were, and by contesting, stirring up a new Fermentation, so rarifies all the morbifick matter, as to turn the greatest part of it into Air, or Wind, which being inclosed in the strait Cavities and Meanders of those Capillary Fibres, must either vastly extend them, or break them, whence comes that exquisite Torment, and Sense of Pain in Paroxysms of the Colick. So that I think, *Paracelsus* was not much distant from Truth, when he made the Spirits of dissolved microcosmical Salts, to be the Original and also true Cause of this Disease.

X. *The Prognosticks.* Whilst recent, and in a strong and healthy Habit of Body, it is easily to be cured: But if the Patient is weak, and it becomes inveterate, it is more difficult, and very hazardous withal. If when inveterate, and in a consumptive Habit, it is attended with Convulsions, or a *Cardialgia* or Heart-sickness, it is many times mortal. If it is hereditary, or habitual, it is very dangerous, because it will not easily yield to Remedies; or at best it may last for Months or Years, with some Intermissions, and may at length turn to the Palsie, Gout, Stone or some other Disease; yet sometimes in this very case, if the Patient

tient is young and strong, it has been overcome by potent Medicines. If it is Convulsive, it many times degenerates into a Paralysis, Epilepsie, Lethargy, Carus, Gout, Consumption, or Iliack Passion, or an inflamation of the Guts, which induces sometimes a Gangrene, or Sphacelus, and so at length ends in Death. If it is accidental and proceeds from a singular and manifest cause, it is without danger. It is very dangerous if it happens to a Woman with Child or in Childbed, to old People, to such as are Consumptive, or wasted away with long, tedious and vehement Diseases. If it is attended with a Hiccough, Watching, cold Swears, coldness of the extream parts, Sickness at Heart, Fainting, Swoonings, Delirium, or Convulsions, *&c.* Death is at hand.

XI *The Diet.* Let the Air be pure, serene, and temperate, not over-hot, lest it should too much rarifie the Blood and other Juices; nor yet too cold, lest it should penetrate through the Pores into the Bowels, and so excite new Paroxysms. As to Food it ought to be of good Juice and easie of Digestion, not Windy, as Pulse, Fruits, Fish, *&c.* nor sharp acid Salt, or viscous. Their Drink ought to be free from Acidities, rather of an Alcaious Property: A Decoction of China-root, or Sarsaparilla, or Burdock-root, with Raisons stoned, is commended to be drank as common Drink. I had my self a Quotidian intermitting Colick for above twenty Weeks together running, coming mostly at an hour in the Morning, and continuing with me eight, nine or ten hours sometimes together, and it was also always immediately excited upon the Drinking a Draught of pure fine clear Ale of our own Brewing, (which made me think the Ale contributed as one of the Causes to my illness;) the last Fit I had was so violent, that I almost despaired of Life, being then accompanied with a vehement and sick Vomiting and Looseness for sixteen hours together, during which time it seemed as if I had a Fire within me. I called for a Draught of cold Water to allay that heat; they brought me a Pint of pure Spring-water, which I presently drank off; it cooled that vehement Heat, and eased the Pain so momentarily, as if relief had been sent me from Heaven; after which I drank a second Pint of the same Water, which so absolutely cooled, eased and refreshed me, that I became perfectly well, and from that time to the time of writing this Relation, which is about 24 Months or two whole Years space, I have drank only Water (forbearing all maulted Liquors,) and have not had the return of so much as one Fit, nor any grumbling of the Pain, or any thing like it: I continue still that course of drinking Water, and do believe I shall hold the same to the end of my Life, being now and all this time in perfect Health with it. I confess I drink a little Wine now and then, but am very confident it does not amount to much more than half a Pint a Week. By this Example 'tis manifest how great an *Alcali* Water is, and how wonderful a Sweetner of the *Blood*, *Lympha* and *Serum*; and what great Alterations it can make in a short time through the whole humane Frame. Now it is to be noted, that I took during that whole twenty Weeks and more, I was so afflicted with this Colick, once every day, a large Dose, either of my *Gutta Vitæ*, or of my *Volatile Laudanum*, and also

also at about twelve hours distance, a Dose of the *Infusion of the Cortex in Wine*, which always gave me ease, so as to rub on, through so great and constant Affliction of this excruciating Disease; but now and then it would so prevail against those Remedies, and so overtop them, as to excite through the most vehement, intense and convulsive Pains, strange and violent Paroxysms of Vomitings and Looseness, so as to bring me even to the brink of the Grave, from which I was at last freed, by drinking of Water as aforesaid. *But to proceed*; All small and Acid Wines are to be forborn, and such Liquors as are apt to breed either Stone or Gout; strong Wines and spirituous things are to be taken sparingly, because they much disorder the Spirits. Let a mean be observed in respect to motion and rest, because Excess in either stirs up new Ferments, and are apt to make the Animal Spirits tumultuous; Let the Body be kept in a due Decorum, but the Belly always rather loose than otherwise; and forbear Emetick and violent Cathartick Medicaments, for that they often do much hurt, by translating or attracting the morbifick Matter to the Stomach, Intestines and Mesentery. Lastly, Let vehement Passions of the Mind, as Anger, Desparation, Envy, Fear, Grief, Hatred, Malice, Revenge, Sadness, Thoughtfulness, and other like Perturbations of the Soul be avoided, for that they contribute in some way or other to the overthrow of the Natural Oeconomy, and to the Production of this Distemper.

XII. *The Cure.* Our Author advises to Bleeding; but I see not how that can contribute any thing to the Cure of this Disease, because it answers to none of the Indications of Cure, but is only matter of Form, because some body must be doing; you ought rather to give Medicaments to allay and cool the Heat of Choler, to cease the Violence of the Fermentation, quiet the tumultuous Animal Spirits, and carry off the material cause. This Clyster may be first given, *Take Broth made of Sheeps-head and Pluck a Pint; brown Sugar, Infusion of Crocus Metallorum of each two Ounces; Oil of Ben, or of bitter Almonds, one Ounce; Oil of Aniseeds ten drops; mix and make a Clyster:* This will move the Body, and by repeating it, (as the Physician shall see cause) empty the Bowels of the matter impacted in them. *Take Angelica-water simple, Black-Cherry water, Milk-water, of each three Ounces; Syrup of Violets, or of Clove-Gilli-flowers, two Ounces; Tartar Vitriolate a Dram; Liquid Laudanum, or our Guttæ Vitæ 60 drops; mix them for two Draughts.* This will in some measure allay the present Ferment, quiet the Spirits, and gives ease in the Pain.

XIII. If the Disease proceeds from Surfeiting, continues and seems to be rebellious, it will then be absolutely necessary to cleanse the Stomach by a gentle Vomit; as of *Tartar Emetick given from gr. ij. ad vj.* according to Age and Strength; and then the next day to purge with *Sal Panaretum*, or with *Sal Mirabile* from three Drams to six, dissolved in warm Broth, Gruel, Milk-water, or some other like Vehicle: and at Night to give an Anodyn or Opiatick Dose; repeating this course of the *Salines* and the Opiate so long till you find the Stomach and Bowels well cleansed, and the Symptoms in some measure to cease.

XIV.

XIV. But if by reason of the Costiveness of the Body, the former things take little or no Effect, and that the prescribed Clyster does not empty the Bowels according to expectation, then you may exhibit this, *Take Strasburgh Turpentine an Ounce; the yolk of one Egg; mix them well together, then add Mutton-broth or Posset-drink a Pint; mix and exhibit it warm.* And about six hours after, give one of the *Salines* aforenamed dissolved in a Pint of Sheeps-head Broth; and then at Night give this following Dose, *Take simple Angelica water, Milk-water, or Barly-broth, three Ounces; Syrup of Violets, or of Clovegilliflowers, or of Juice of Angelica, one Ounce; Liquid Laudanum gut. 30. or of our Guttæ Vitæ, gut. 50. mix them for an Anodyn and resting Dose.*

XV. If the Sick is extreamly weak, or by any wrong course has been reduced to extream Weakness, you can restore them with no better thing than with our *Aqua Bezoartica*, or *Spiritus Cordialis* (which see in our *Pharmacopœia Chirurgica,*) or *strong Cinnamon-water*, or *Spiritus Angelicæ magis compositus*; thus given, *Take of one of the said Cordial-waters or Spirits an Ounce; Syrup of Citron-peels, Juice of Alkermes, of each half an Ounce; mix for two Doses*, to be given one half in the Morning fasting, the other half two hours after, and to be repeated as reason requires. And then to give the same again at Night, with the addition of *Liquid Laudanum from gut. xv. ad xxx. or more*, according as the Exigency requires, and to be repeated every Night for some time.

XVI. *Helmont* says, he has often cured a Colick with *Laudanum verum*, without *Opium*; I suppose it was that made with his *Narcotick Sulphur of Vitriol*; and truly I have many times cured it with my *Mineral Laudanum*, or *Impetus Martis*, (made with the same *Narcotick Sulphur*) given from 30 drops to 60, in a *strong Aniseed-water*. *Grembs* says, he cured one of the Colick by giving him an *Emollient Clyster*, with three Drams of *Philonium Romanum* dissolved in it; and giving by the Mouth *Laudanum Opiatum*, and Chicken-broth with *China-root* and *Daucus seed* boyled in it; concluding the Cure with *Aloetick Pills*, or the *Pilulæ Angelicæ.*

XVII. *Paracelsus* says, That as the Disease is Saline, so it must be cured with Salts; and I am truly of that opinion. The dissolved Tartar therefore must be *coagulated*, precipitated, and afterwards carried off. The microcosmical Salt which is the Internal principle, being degenerated, must be corrected, strengthned and restored by Elementary Salts. And because the Body is in this case thirsty and out of order, he commends *Spirits of Nitre, Vitriol, Tartar, Salt*, &c. and so without doubt the *Spiritus Anticolicus*, or *Spiritus Nitre dulcis*, is a Specifick in a Colick, and therewith I have cured an Inveterate Colick of seven or eight Years standing. The microcosmical Salt is also corrected with *Spiritus Tartari, Salis Armoniaci, Cornu Cervi, Succini*; also corroborated or restored with *Tinctura Salis Tartari, Tinctura Antimonii, Chymical Oils of Amber, Anise, Cloves, Nutmegs, Savin, Turpentine*, &c. To these things may be added, *Extracts or Tinctures of Calamus Aromaticus, Virginia Snake-root, Winters Cinnamon, Elecampane root, black Pepper, Cubebs, Cardamoms, Grains of Paradice, and the yellow of Orange-peels in Wine*, with a due

Dose of *Laudanum Opiatum*, which he commends above all things.

XVIII. When the Body is extreamly bound, we have before advised to Emollient and Laxative Clysters. That made with *Turpentine* is a good thing, for the balsamick Particles of that Resin, comfort the Bowels, ease the Pain, and quiet the enraged Animal Spirits which extend the Nervous Fibres: After which *Opiates* may be given in the order we have prescribed. Outwardly, *Willis* says, the Inwards of Beasts, as of Sheep, Lambs, *&c.* being applied to the *Abdomen* as soon they are taken hot out of the Body, do wonderfully ease the Pain.

XIX. To correct the Bile, or hot Pains arising from oleaginous Choler, *Sylvius* gives this, *Take Succory and Sorrel waters of each two Ounces*; *Diacodium, or Syrup of White Poppies, one Ounce*; *Spirit of Nitre eight drops*; *make a mixture* to be taken by Spoonfuls. And this *Emulsion* may be given by turns, *Take of the four greater cold Seeds a Dram*; *Sweet Almonds blanched three Drams*; *White Poppy seed one Dram*; *with Camomile and Mallow waters make an Emulsion.* Afterwards he carries off the corrected Choler with this, *Take Pulp of Tamarinds two Ounces*; *Conserve of Damask Roses ten Drams*; *Electuary of the Juice of Roses one Ounce*; *Salt of Tartar Vitriolate one Dram*; *mix them.* Dose the quantity of a Nutmeg or something more Morning and Night. And when the Pain is vehement he gives this, *Take Fumitory water an Ounce*; *Fennel or Cinnamon water half an Ounce*; *distilled Vinegar six Drams*; *Spirit of Nitre gut. 6. Laudanum Opiatum gr. iij. Syrup of Violets an Ounce and half*; *mix them.* Give it by Spoonfuls, or little and little at a time till the Heat is abated, the Pain eased, and Rest and sleep comes on: Or mix it with *Decoction of Tamarinds* (which is accounted a Specifick) and so give it.

XX. If the Pancreatick Juice is very sharp or austere, or it be in a Woman who is apt to be troubled with Vapours or Hysterick Fits withal, that acid Acrimony is to be corrected with Alcalous Salines and Hystericks, as, *Take simple Angelica water two Ounces*; *Salt of Wormwood a Scruple*; *Crabs Eyes levigated gr. x. Sal Volatile Oleosum gut. x. Syrup of Citron-peels an Ounce*; *Laudanum Liquidum, or our Guttæ Vitæ gut. 25. mix for a Dose.* If the Pain in this case is exquisite and vehement, give *Tartariz'd Spirit of Sal Armoniack gut.* 30. in a Glass of Canary; Or this, *Take Tinctures of Castor and of Myrrh, of each a Dram and half*; *Spirit of Harts-horn gut.* 30. *Sal Volatile Oleosum gut. x. Guttæ Vitæ gut.* 40. *Pennyroyal water four Ounces*; *Syrup of Citron-peels two Ounces*; *mix for a Dose*, to be given at Bed-time.

XXI. If it is a distending Pain caused through Wind, wherein the Belly seems as if it would burst, give this, *Take Powers of Aniseed, and Juniper, of each an Ounce*; *Spiritus Cosmeticus, Spiritus Anticolicus noster, Guttæ Vitæ, of each six Drams*; *mix them.* Dose gut. 60. in this following mixture, *Take simple Angelica water three Ounces*; *Diacodium an Ounce or ten Drams*; *mix them as a Vehicle for the former Medicine.* This also is good, *Take Bezoar Mineral gr.* 20. *Volatile Salt of Harts-horn, English Saffron in fine Powder, ana, gr. viij. Camphir in Pouder gr. iv. of our Volatile Laudanum, a. gr. i. ad iij. dissolve the Laudanum*

Laudanum in white Poppy water an Ounce, then add all the other Ingredients, and dulcifie it with Diacodicum or Syrup of Corn Poppies an Ounce; mix them for a Dose. Or this, *Take Purslain, Lettice, Cucumber and Poppy waters, of each an Ounce; Syrup of Citron peels an Ounce; Laudanum Liquidum gut 25. or 30. Spirit of Nitre gut. xij. mix for a Dose,* to be given at Bed-time.

XXII. All *Oily Volatile Salts* are good to precipitate and correct the dissolved preternatural acrimonious Acid Salts; and therefore *Sal Volatile Oleosum,* is a most excellent thing to be given in 30 or 40 drops in Canary; also *Castoreum* and pure *Sperma Ceti,* which are endued with such a Volatile Oily Salt, are of excellent good use, and may either of them be given to a Dram with good success in a glass of generous Wine. *Balsam of Peru given from a Dram to two Drams mix'd with an Ounce of Diacodium,* or *Syrup of white Poppies,* is an approved thing, which in an inveterate Colick ought to be continued for forty days together, Purging now and then when the *Paroxysm* is off, with *Sal Panaretum* or *Sal Mirabile,* and sometimes with our *Laudanum Cathartic.* This following I have had large Experience of, *Take Sperma Cæti a Dram; Balsam of Peru a Dram and half; of our Laudanum Volatile gr. ij. ad iv. mix for a Dose,* to be given in Extremity or out of the *Paroxysm,* every Night at Bed-time.

XXIII. *Fix'd Alcalies* also are very very good to absorb the acrimonious Acidity of the dissolved Salts, more especially if given with an *Opiate.* As, *Antimonium Diaphoreticum, Bezoar Minerale, Crabs-eyes, Crabs-claws, Pearl, Oyster-shells, Coral, Terra Sigillata, White Chalk,* any of which being levigated or reduced into a subtil Powder, may be given to a Dram or Dram and half at a time, Morning and Night, mix'd with *an Ounce of Diacodium;* or with gr. ij. iij. or iv. of our *Volatile Laudanum,* and so given once a day at Bed-time, mix'd with *an Ounce of Syrup of Orange-peels.* This is admirable, *Take Balsam of Peru two Drams; Camphir in fine Pouder, from three to six Grains; of our Volatile Laudanum gr. ij. or iij. mix for a Dose.*

XXIV This following Mixture is a Specifick, *Take choice Canary, or Madera Wine, three Ounces; Poppy-water an Ounce; Spirit of Angelica the greater Composition six Drams; Sperma Cæti a Dram; Camphir gr. iv. dissolved in the Spirit; Saffron gr. vj of our Volatile Laudanum gr. iij. Salt of Wormwood a Scruple; Tartarised Spirit of Sal Armoniack gut. xv. mix for one or two Doses,* to be taken upon Extremity.

XXV. And for as much as the Cause of this Disease does for the most part lye in the Nervous Fibres of the Membranes of the Guts, and Nervous Folds of the Mesentery, proper Clysters are almost of as much use as Medicaments given in by the Mouth, for that they discuss the acrimonious Vapours, ease the Pain, quiet the Anomalus or tumultuous Motions of the Animal Spirits, and heal the Solution of Continuity, if any of those Nervous Fibres are either over-extended or broken. And as proper Clysters have a notable power of Pacification in all these cases, so they as singularly contribute to a perfect Cure: What Fomentations to the Belly can possibly do outwardly, Clysters will do much more, being cast into the Guts for that they in some measure enter into the Pores of the affected Fibres and

Membranes, where they discuss, alter, absorb, or temper the Morbifick Matter, and so give the Patient relief.

XXVI. For this purpose we commended the former prescribed Clyster made of Strasburg Turpentine at Sect. 14. aforegoing; or this following, *Take the Broth of a Sheeps-head, or a strong Decoction of Juniper-berries and Camomile-flowers, a Pint; Spirit of Angelica one Ounce; Balsam of Peru half an Ounce, dissolved with the yolk of an Egg; Camphir half a Scruple, dissolved with a little Oil of Sweet-Almonds; Laudanum Liquid gut. 40. mix them,* and exhibit warm. Or this, *Take a strong Decoction of Bay and Juniper-berries made with Sheeps-head broth, a Pint; Tincture of Virginia Snake-root and Winters Cinnamon, two Ounces; Tinctura Castorei two Drams; Balsam of Peru two Drams, dissolved as aforesaid; Guttæ Vitæ nostræ gut. 60. Spirit of Harts-horn half a Dram; Camphir gr. v. dissolved as aforesaid; mix and make a Clyster,* which exhibit warm, and repeat it as oft as need may require, or the Physician shall advise.

XXVII. After the giving of some of those Clysters, the following may be given from twenty to thirty drops in any fit Vehicle twice a day, *Take Laudanum Liquidum, Powers of Lavender, Oranges, Rosemary, Savin, and Vipers Balsam of Peru, of each half an Ounce; Spirit of Harts-horn, Volatile Salt of Amber, Tincture of Castor, Tincture of Antimony, of each two Drams; mix them*

XXVIII. If the Colick happens to one of a Scorbutick habit of Body, *Antiscorbuticks* and *Diureticks* are to be made use of, which may be mix'd with *Anticolicks* and *Opiates*, as the Prudence of the Physician shall direct; as *Aqua Antiscorbutica, Spiritus Salis Armoniaci, Mixtura de Tribus, Potestates Terebinthinæ, Sal Volatile Oleosum, Tinctura Antimonii, Balsamum de Peru, Camphora, Spiritus de Cornu Cervi, Liquor Cornu Cervi Succinatus, Spiritus Cochleariæ*, any or some of which may be mix'd with *Opiates*, because they put the morbifick matter into Fusion, and so carry it off by the Urinary Passages.

XXIX. Among Mineral Anticolicks, the *Narcotick Sulphur of Vitriol* is commended, and our *Impetus Martis*, which has done Wonders in this Disease: But if all these things fail, you must come to the use of *Cinnabarines*, which are accounted as the last Remedies; they do admirably being given alone by themselves, but mix'd with an *Opiate* they are without compare. *Cinnabar of Antimony* is extoll'ed to the Skies; and some mightily affect the *Artificial Cinnabar*, which without doubt is a very good thing; but among them all it is the *Native Cinnabar* which does excell, which may be given Morning and Night from a Scruple or half a Dram to two Scruples, and if it be mix'd with j. ij. or iij. Grains of our *Volatile Laudanum* at Bed-time only, the Colick is so strangely eased by it, as if it was done by Inchantment.

XXX. *Lastly, It is sometimes requisite that Topicks be used*: Double Cloths three or four times double may be applied over the whole *Abdomen* as hot as they can be well endured, and to be repeated for half an hour or an hour together; or wooden Plates or Trenchers heat very hot, and wrap'd up in a Napkin; or Leather Bags filled with very hot Salt; or the warming-stone in like manner applied:

These oftentimes give present Ease, more especially when it comes from a cold cause, or that there is a Chilness of the Intestines proceeding from taking inwardly very cold things.

CHAP. XIX. *Of the Colick of* Poicters, *or Dry Belly-ach.*

I. THis is a kind of Colick which usually degenerates into a Palsie, and a total loss of Motion in the Hands and Feet. 2. Under this Name it is mentioned by *Riverius* in his Chapter of the *Palsie*; and is very well known in the *Caribbee-Islands*, where multitudes of People are plagued with it. 3. This most cruel Pain is cured by *Balsam of Peru* frequently given, and in great Doses, thus, Put 20, 30, or 40 drops of it into a Spoonful of the finest white Sugar, and give it twice or thrice in the day. 4. This Medicine, though it cures this Belly-ach, yet it has little or no Power in removing the Effects thereof, for the *Palsie*, which it causes, scarcely ever yields to this Remedy.

SALMON's Comment.

II. *This is that Disease which in the West-Indies is called the Dry Belly-ach*, it is a Species of the Colick, and is indeed a vehement Distemper, which if not speedily cured, in a short time brings the Patient into a most deplorable Condition, taking away the use of all their Limbs from them, and at length (if not yet overcome by forcible Medicines) miserably kills them.

III. *The Cause of this Disease*, is, an evil and crude Diet, which producing an ill digested and fermented Chyle, breeds abundance of sharp and viscous Humours, which are gradually heaped up in the Tunicles of the Stomach and Guts, and Infoldings and Vessels of the Mesentery. These viscous Humours produce a viscid Lympha, and a general Discrasy affects the Blood, the Virulency of which insinuating it self into the Nervous Fibres of the Stomach and Guts, excites this intolerable Pain, which not being presently removed, but continuing, does at length affect the whole Nervous System, whence comes that concomitant or Symptomatick Paralysis, or loss of the use of all their Limbs, very difficult afterwards to be perfectly restored.

IV. *The Prognosticks.* Whilst recent and in strong Bodies, if proper Remedies be used, it may be quickly cured; but if it continues till the adjacent parts are vitiated with the evil Ferment, it will be very difficultly performed. If the Patient has been Sickly, or is of a weakly habit of Body, it commonly terminates in Death. But if it continues long, and at length goes off, yet it leaves commonly behind it a Symptomatick Palsie, or loss of the use of all the Limbs, scarcely ever to be recover'd.

V. *The Cure.* The first thing to be done, is to remove the Costiveness of the Bowels, for without that be perform'd, all is done in vain. An Opiatick Cathartick is best in this Case, such as our *Laudanum Catharticum*; but this following has been approved of for its admirable success in this Cure,

Take Extract of Aloes two Drams, Pouder of Virginia Snake-root two Scruples; Thebaian Opium in pouder gr. xij. impalpable Pouder of Crocus Metallorum half a Scruple; mix and make a Mass of Pills for four Doses. Or this, *take pouder of Thebaian Opium three Grains; Ponder of Virginia Snake-root gr. x. Crocus Metallorum in fine Pouder gr. vj. mix them*, and give it in a quarter of a Pint, or less, of *White Port*, or *Lisbon Wine* at Night, an hour and half before Bed time, which let be repeated (if the strength of the Sick will bear it) for four Nights running. During the whole time of taking these things, and for an Week following, let this be the Diet, *viz.* boil'd Milk made as thick as Cream with fine Wheat-flower, and made very soft and mellow with a good quantity of new fresh Butter.

VI. But the Medicine which the Caro'inians and Virginians use for this Distemper, is the *Syrup of Peach-flowers*, which being given to two, three or four Ounces (according to Age, Strength, and other Accidents) goes through their Bodies, and purges them after an extraordinary manner. This if it is continued, (being used in the beginning of the Sickness) it commonly cures them in a very little time.

VII. But where that cannot be had, other strong Catharticks must be exhibited, as Tincture of Colocynthis, given from half an Ounce to an Ounce and half (according to Age and Strength) mix'd with an Ounce or more of Syrup of Roses Solutive, or other proper Vehicle, which must be repeated, and again reiterated (if need be) till there is a thorough passage; but if neither this, nor yet other strong Catharticks prevail, you must come to the use of Clysters, which must be often repeated.

VIII. *Take Mutton-broth a Pint; brown Sugar three Ounces; Infusion of Crocus Metallorum two Ounces; Tincture of Colocynthis half an Ounce; mix and give it for a Clyster warm*; which repeat as need requires. If all this does nothing, you must then apply *a Cataplasm made of Green Tobacco-leaves, by beating in a Mortar, and brought to a Consistency with Meal of Orobus.* This may lye for two or three hours more or less, as the Patient is able to bear; it will make sick, and in a short time work both upwards and downwards. If it be in a Place or Season that *Green Tobacco* is not to be had, the *Cataplasm* must be made of *Dry Tobacco*, first soaked in a little White-wine, *&c.*

IX. Whereas at Sect. VII. above, we have spoken of a Tincture of *Colocynthis*, you may (where *Colocynthis* is not to be had) take instead thereof the Pulp of the *Bitter Gourd* (which is plentifully enough to be had all over the *West-Indies*) of which you may make either *Tincture or Decoction* at pleasure, which being given in a fit Dose, will fully answer the same end.

X. Some have been cured by giving Oil by the Mouth, often repeating it, till by degrees three Quarts or a Gallon has been taken in; giving it in plentiful or large Doses, and so long till it has been seen to come away by the Fundament; and though the Sick Vomits it up, they give it again and again, because that by this means the Bowels are lubricated or made smooth and slippery, whereby the Ordure is made to come easily away.

XI. Also

XI. Also in the mean time, to facillitate the passing of it through the Body, the afore-described Clyster at Sect. VIII. above may be given; or a Clyster of simple Oil, or compounded after this manner, *Take Oil Olive half a Pint; Tincture of Crocus Metallorum four Ounces; Yolks of two Eggs; mix and beat all well together*, and exhibit it warm. Giving Oil by the Mouth, and exhibiting these Clysters which are so long to be continued till there is an easie passage through the Body.

XII. But if the Sick cannot drink Oil, then you must mix it with some proper Syrup, as Syrup of Clovegilliflowers, or of Violets, or of Roses solutive, or with a simple Syrup made only of fair Water and Sugar. *Take pure Oil Olive six Ounces; any of the former Syrups three Ounces; mix them together in a Glass by shaking for one Dose*, which repeat several times a day as you see need.

XIII. The passage through the Body being made clear by some of the former means; if there be any Pain yet remaining, the Body ought to be Purged twice a Week with either *Sal Panaretum* or *Sal Mirabile*; and if any Pain yet remains, let the Cure be continued and compleated by giving every Night a Dose of our *Cathartick Laudanum*; and every Morning fasting, as also at Four in the Afternoon, a Dose of *Spiritus Anticolicus* in an Infusion of *Winters Cinnamon and Virginia Snake-root*.

CHAP. XX. *Of an* HYSTERICK COLICK.

I. IT is a certain kind, or rather a very notable and usual Symptom of Fits of the Mother, which is accompanied with a very sharp Pain about the Pit of the Stomach, with Vomiting of green Matter. 2. First, that the quantity of the corrupt Matter loading the Stomach, may not hinder the Efficacy of the resting Medicine; let a large quantity of Posset-drink (as for example about six Quarts) be drank, and cast forth again by Vomiting. 3. Secondly, after that washing of the Stomach, give 25 drops of *Liquid Laudanum* in an Ounce of strong Cinnamon-water. 4. But as to the use of resting Medicines, it is to be noted, that they ought to be still repeated, till the Symptoms wholly vanish, interposing a due space between the Doses, that so the Effect of one may be seen, before another be exhibited.

II. If the Sick be of a sanguine habit of Body, nor has been subject to this Symptom, or weakned by it, then bleed before the use of the prescribed Vomit. 2. The Distemper call'd *the Hysterick Pricking or Stitch*, is also cured by the same Directions. 3. But if the Hysterick Colick continues for a long time, and comes by fits, then let the following Medicine be given in the times between the Paroxysms. 4. *Take Zedoary a Dram in fine Pouder, with Syrup of Citron-peels a sufficient quantity; make a Bolus.* Let it be taken Morning and Night for thirty days together, drinking the following Infusion after it. 5. *Take Zedoary very thin sliced half an Ounce; choice Canary four Ounces; infuse cold for twelve*

hours, and then strain it out for use. 6. Or, take Balsam of *Peru* (to 20, 30 or 40 drops) as is prescribed in the former Chapter XIX. *Of the Dry Belly-ach.*

III. What is here spoken of the Hysterical Colick may be applied to the Hypochondriacal Colick; which thing is to be heedfully observed. 2. The Nature of both these Diseases seem in a special manner, That we should prove or try several Medicines, till that thing at last is found out, to which the Disease will yield; though for the most part Steel is in this case most powerful and Effectual. 2. This kind of Colick as well in Hypochondriacal as in Hysterical Persons, does often degenerate in the *Jaundice*, which by degrees goes away of its own accord; but if it continues long, let the following Decoction be exhibited. 4. *Take of Madder roots (such as Dyers use) Turmerick, ana, one Ounce; of the greater Celandine (the whole Plant) top of the lesser Centory, ana, a handful; boil them in equal parts of Rhenish Wine and Spring Water, to a Quart; then strain out, and dissolve therein Syrup of the five Opening Roots two Ounces.* Dose half a Pint warm every Morning and Night, till Health be recovered.

SALMON's Comment.

IV. It is called in Greek, Κωλικὴ διάθεσις ὑστερικὰ, ὑστεραλγία κωλικὰ, ἢ Κωλικὴ ὑστεραλγικὰ; in Latin, *Colica Hysterica*; and in English, *The Hysterick Colick*; but is indeed no more than one of the Symptoms of the Hysterick Disease, when it is exerted with great Extremity, as it oftentimes is in such Women, who are apt to be afflicted with Wind, or sharp Humours in the Stomach and Guts.

V. *It is a Disease which only can afflict Women*, for that its original Cause is from the Womb, and therefore the Womb, Stomach and Guts, are the parts chiefly affected, or in which the Seat of the Distemper lies; which if it continues long without Cure, it at length affects the whole Nervous System, so that other parts are afflicted by consent, from whence several complicate Diseases many times arise.

VI. *The Signs by which this Distemper is known*, besides the present vehement Pain afflicting the Stomach and Bowels, are Hysterick Perturbations, which rising up from the bottom of the Belly, as it were, ascend by the Stomach up to the Throat, and there almost choak the Patient, so that she will many times cry out, that her Breath will be stop'd, or that something has got up into her Throat so as to hinder her from breathing.

VII. *The Causes* The Proegumenine, first or remote cause is from the Womb; and the evil Ferment thereof, which sending acrimonious Vapours from thence into the Intestines, and up into the Stomach, excite another fermentation in those parts, and there stir up some dorment or latent acid Salts, with an arsenical kind of *Flatus*, which pricking and vellicating the Nervous Fibres of the Stomach and Bowels, induce these extravagant, vehement and Convulsive Pains, so very determintal to the Sick, as sometimes in a single Fit, to put a period to Life.

VIII. *The Prognostieks.* Whilst recent, it is easily curable, more especially if it happens in a strong Body, and one of no very ill habit. But if it is inveterate, also in a weak Person, and of a debauched habit, as to Eating and Drinking and Idleness;

Idleness; or where Grief, Anxiety and Thoughtfulness have long prevailed, it is scarcely ever cured, but at length if Convulsions frequently attend, terminates in Death.

IX. *The Cure.* As the Causes of this Disease are complicate, so must the Cure be complicate also which must always have respect to the Hysterick Original, so that strong Hystericks must ever be mixed with Anticolicks. Our Author Advises to cleanse the Stomach by Vomiting, with Posset-drink; if with the first Draught thereof two or three Grains of Tartar Emetick be added, it will do it so much the more powerfully and effectually, and besides, that will cleanse the Guts also another way, by giving some Stools downwards.

X. But if the Patient is so weak, that you dare not venture upon an *Emetick*, the Posset-drink ought to be accuated with four or six Drams of *Sal Panaretum* or *Sal Mirabile*, which may be mixed with the first Pints of it; it will make the Posset-drink the more effectual to the Purpose intended, and possibly may take away the Root of the Cause, which scarcely any other Medicine in Nature will do besides; and therefore I recommend it as a thing from my own Experience.

XI. As to the resting Medicines or *Opiates*, they are not to be given till the Morbifick Cause is taken away by the *Sal Panaretum* or *Sal Mirabile* before named, and then you may come to the use of *Opiates*, which are always to be mixed with Hystericks; among which our *Laudanum Catharticum* is one of the most admirable things. The Preparation thereof you may see in our *Pharmacopœia Chirurgica*. It not only gives present Ease, but also by Virtue of its purgative Property, carries off the remainder (if any be) of the Morbifick Matter, and so does two works at once, *viz.* gives ease and evacuates.

XII. In short, The Method of this Cure is almost exactly the same as in the Cure of the Colick in Chap XVIII. aforegoing, saving that in this you must always add to the Anticolicks there prescribed, Hystericks, and therefore when our Author prescribes 25 drops of *Liquid Laudanum*, I generally add 30 drops of *Tinctura Myrrhæ*, or 40 *drops of the Tincture of Balsam of Peru*; or 30 *drops of the Balsam it self*, which I commonly give in Pennyroyal-water; or, *Take of our Guttæ Vitæ gut.* 40. *Potestates Pulegii, gut.* 50. *Pennyroyal or Angelica-water* 4 *Ounces*; *Syrup of Citron-peels an Ounce and half*; *mix them for a Dose.*

XIII. In some cases our Author advises to Bleeding; but if the course of the *Sal Panaretum* or *Sal Mirabile* be pursued as directed, there will be no occasion for that Operation; because these Medicines do not only evacuate the Cause, but also cool the Blood and whole Body, and so quiet any present Fermentation of the Humours. And then after you have done cleansing with the *Salts* afore named, you may either give the afore prescribed *Opiates*; or this, *Take Liquid Laudanum gut.* 30. *or our Guttæ Vitæ gut. à* 30 *ad* 50. *Spiritus Anticolicus gut.* 50 *or* 60. *mix them*, and exhibit in a Glass of Canary. After the *Paroxysm* is over, you may continue the use of the *Spiritus Anticolicus* only, taking it Morning, Noon and Night, for 30 or 40 days together, giving it to 50 or 60 drops at a time, in a Glass of choice *Canary* or *White Madera Wine*.

XIV. If

XIV. If the Disease should return by Fits, after all that has been done, you must repeat the Doses of the Salts once or twice more, or it may be oftner, after which you may safely give the Infusion of the *Cortex Peruanus*, eight, ten or twelve times, and also exhibit it by Clyster, to appease the violent Motion of the Ferment, and stop the return of the Pain and Fit, which you will see it will effectually do. And this advice is so much the more earnestly to be followed, if the *Paroxysms* are attended with Convulsions, Faintings, or Swoonings, for it will not be in the power of any other Medicament whatsoever to save Life.

XV. If the Convulsive Motions of the Bowels are great, you must presently exhibit this Clyster, *Take a strong Infusion of two Drams of the Pouder of the Cortex, in four Ounces of Red Wine, mix'd with two Ounces of Angelica-water; Liquid Laudanum, or our Guttæ Vitæ gut.* 40 *or* 50. *Posset-drink a Pint; mix them.* It is of singular Use and Efficacy, and I commend it from my own constant Use thereof, before a thousand other things.

XVI. Then after the Clyster you give inwardly by the Mouth, either the *Spiritus Anticolicus*, or *Tinctura Cordialis*, or *Spiritus Cordialis*, (which are something above or beyond our Author's Prescriptions) in any proper Vehicle, as simple Angelica-water, which you may sweeten with Syrup of Citron-peels; which things I am sure will be very pleasing and grateful to the Sick. See them in our *Pharmacopœia Chirurgica*.

XVII. In an Hypochondriacal Colick, after Purging with the *Sal Mirabile*, or *Sal Panaretum*, whatever other Specificks are given, they are always to be mix'd with a proportional quantity of *Tinctura Martis*, or some other opening Preparation of the *Chalybs*, otherwise you will never perfectly accomplish the End you seek after: But in some Constitutions, the *common Rust of Mars* is beyond all the other Preparations thereof, which Experience has many times confirmed.

XVIII. Our Author's proving or trying several Medicines, till such time as we can find out those that will do, is so like the Practice of *Ignorant Quacks*, that nothing can more resemble it; but the *knowing and true Physician*, seldom or never makes use of the *Quacking way of making Tryals upon Patients Bodies*; at best it is both a dangerous and uncertain way, seldom made use of but by young Physicians, and to the Peril at least of the Patients Health and Welfare, if not of their Lives. I am sure if the Physician pursues the Method here laid down, this kind of *Quacking Practice* will be wholly laid aside.

XIX. If the original Cause springs from the *Hypochonders*, *Preparations of Steel* will be found among the Number of the best Remedies, but they ought to be used in consort with the *Cortex*, because they admirably assist each other; and sometimes they are both to be used either *Conjunctim* or *Separatim* with *Opiates*. And so one opens, another stops the Fluxion or Career of the Disease, and the third eases the Pain, whether in the Stomach or Intestines, or into what part of the Body soever it may be translated. Now in all these cases, if the Disease is inveterate, a *Tincture of Steel*, a *Tincture of Olium*, made with the *Spiritus Anticolicus*, and prudent-

ly given in a fit Dose, and in a proper Vehicle, will be found to have admirable Effects.

XX. If the Sick be purged with the *Sal Mirabile* or *Sal Panaretum*, the Jaundice never succeeds; nor does that Disease ever attack the Sick in this case, but only for want of carrying off the Morbifick Cause, and restoring the lost or decay'd Salts, which these aforenamed *Salines* most effectually perform.

XXI. But if by ill Practise, the *Jaundice* should invade the Sick, no Medicines are like those of Volatile Animal Salts, given often and in due proportion; *Volatile Salt of Toads* (from dried Toads) given to gr. vj. has been approved of; so also *Volatile Salt of Vipers*; *Salt of Harts-horn* given in this case is a Specifick; so also *Volatile Salt* drawn from *Oxes, Goats, and Rams-horns and Hoofs*, and from the *dried Blood of Oxen and Sheep*, do wonders; any of these Salts may be given in the *Bitter Draught*, and sometimes in a Glass of *Rhenish Wine and Sugar*.

XXII. To these things we may add a strong *Tincture of Madder-roots*, which may be given in strong Mutton or Beef-broth; also a *strong Tincture of Saffron and Cochinele*, in the *Broth of Vipers*. And I have known the *most profound Jaundice* caused by a most vehement Hysterick Colick, wherein the whole Body look'd as if it had been dip'd in Saffron, when it had been of a long standing, and the Patient, in my Judgment, to have been past Cure, to have been perfectly restored from this Complication of Diseases by taking of one only Remedy, which was my *Volatile Laudanum* (repleat with Volatile Salts) every Night at Bed-time, for a Month together, gradually increasing the Dose, till it came to seven or eight Grains. It gave ease to all her Pains, resocilated the Spirits and weakned parts, opened the external Pores, caused a gentle *Diaphoresis*, and so perfectly cleansed the Skin from that yellow Taint or Tincture, that by thirty days end, there was no appearance left, to shew that ever the poor Creature had been affected with such a Disease.

CHAP. XXI. *Of the* ILIACK PASSION.

I. THE Peristaltick Motion of the Guts is inverted; purging Medicines and Clysters do always become Vomits, and the Excrements of the Belly are expelled by the Mouth. 2. Bleed in the right Arm nine or ten Ounces. 3. After some hours give the following Pouder, *Take Rosin of Scammony, or (if that cannot be had) Rosin of Jalap* 12 *Grains*; *Mayhern's Mercurius Dulcis a Scruple, mix and make a Pouder.* 4. Give it in a Spoonful of Cows Milk, taking after it one or two Spoonfuls more of the same Milk. 5. Or if Pills be more acceptable to the Sick, *Take Pilulæ ex duobus half a Dram*; *Mercurius Dulcis a Scruple, with a sufficient quantity of Balsam of Peru, make four Pills*, to be taken in a Spoonful of Syrup of Violets.

II. But if the Sick refuses to take these Pills by his Mouth, you may immediately give this, *Take strong Cinnamon-water half an Ounce*; *Liquid Laudanum* 25 *drops*; *mix them.* 2. Now if by the use of these

these things the Vomiting and Pain of the Bowels shall remit, the said Cathartick is to be given again. 3. But if the Anodyn in its Virtue and Power be now wholly spent, and the Vomiting and Pain should return again, the Cathartick in the mean while being still or not working in the Body, you must come again to the use of the above described Paregorick, or Opiate, and the same (for that cause) it is to be repeated, even every fourth or sixth hour, till the Bowels are perfectly at ease. 4. And in this time the the Purge will certainly exert its Force or Power and work it self off by Stool.

III. And indeed it will be to the purpose, an hour or two after Bleeding, to inject a Clyster, made of those Things which operate more powerful; among which are the Fumes of Tobacco, which may be forcibly blown in, by Inversion of the Pipe, through a great Bladder (or otherwise by a proper Clyster-pipe, for this purpose made and sold; by which the Patient may give himself the Clyster, if necessity requires;) which Tobacco Clyster ought to be repeated again after some hours, if the Bowels be not soon opened, so as the Sick may have a Stool or two.

IV. After the Purge has done working, let the Sick take the following Draught, *Take of strong Cinnamon-water an Ounce; Liquid Laudanum gut. 15. mix them for a Draught.* 2. This afterwards reiterate twice, thrice or oftner, every day, till the Vomiting and Pain ceases. 3. And even after the Symptoms shall disappear, for the Confirmation of the Cure, let the Patient continue the use of the same *resting Draught* for some time, when he goes to Bed, but in a lesser Dose.

SALMON's Comment.

V. This Disease is called in Greek, Ἐιλεὸς (ab ἕλϛω, *Misericordia, quod dolor sit miserandus, à quo nomen, miserere mei,*) also Χορδαπὸς (a Χορδὴ, *Intestinum*) & Πάθω τῶ εἰλεῶ; in Latin, *Passio Iliaca, (ab Ileo, quod Intestinum est ordine à Ventriculo tertium, & incipit ubi Jejunum definit, à qua parte obstructà morbus Iliacus, peracutus nomen desumpsit,)* also *Volvulus*, a twisting of the Guts, which is impossible, as we shall shew anon; in English, *The Iliack Passion*, or *Vomiting of Excrements.*

VI. *The Seat of the Disease* is in the *Ileon*, or *Ilia*, the small Guts, wherein it excites a most exquisite Pain, with a most obdurate Obstruction of the Belly, whence comes a very sick and tormenting Ejection of Excrements by the Mouth, for that, by the Costiveness of the Bowels for the most part, or some other cause, the *Peristaltick* Motion of the Intestines is inverted. The *Iliack* is distinguished from the *Colick*, for that in *This* the *Ileon*, or small Guts, are chiefly affected; whereas in the *Colick* the *Colon*, or great Gut seems to be mostly the Seat of the Distemper. Now as the Ileon is the last of the small Guts, so it is the longest and the smallest, being about 18 or 20 Feet in length, and an Inch or Inch and quarter in Diameter, seated under the Navel, and filling both the *Ilia*; and being narrower than the two former, *viz.* the *Duodenum* and *Jejunum*, so for that reason it is the more apt to be obstructed or inflamed.

VII *The chief Signs by which this Disease in known*, are a Costiveness of the Belly, so that though the Patient strains never so much, they cannot

cannot yet go to Stool, or force out any Excrements, agreeable with the Sentiments of *Hippocrates* who says, *In the Iliack the Belly grows hard, and the Excrements pass not downwards.* As also of *Galen*, who says, *In the Iliack Passion, nothing goes downwards.* Insomuch that as *Solenander* and *Sennertus* testifie, that instances have been given, in which Clysters and even Suppositories have ascended through the Guts, and been vomited up; upon which most dreadful Symptoms have succeeded, as tossing and tumbling, want of rest, Sickness at Heart, Fever, Thirst, Fainting, Coldness of the extream parts, and many times Convulsions and the Hiccough, which two last are Symptoms of the most pernicious Consequence, for that they are generally attended with a miserable Death. There are for the most part great Belchings, much Wind, and rumbling and noise in the Guts; in the beginning of this Illness, there is a Pain at Stomach, reaching to Vomit and Loathing, with a sharpness of Humours and Heart-burning. Wind much extends the Guts, by which means the Pain is made the more acute, which still becomes more exquisite, and almost intolerable, as the Disease increases, and sometimes a Swelling is found in that place which may be felt with ones hand. At length as the Disease goes on there is vehement Vomitings, rejecting not only Meat, drink and Humours, but also Chyle, and the very Excrements themselves, upon which Swoonings many times ensues, and presently after that Death.

VIII. *The Causes.* Some Authors will have this Disease to be from the twisting of the small Guts, or from their being entangled, as if they were tyed in a knot; but these things not only *Helmont* but *Sylvius*, and almost all our Neotericks positively deny: For *Helmont* says, it is contrary to Anatomical Demonstration, which shews that that Gut is annexed all along to or cloathed with the *Mesentery*, and by the *Mesentery* is fixed to the Loyns; for (says he) if the Guts were twisted, how should that action be performed? and therefore thinks that the *Ileum* can only be obstructed by the internal Excrements, because that nothing else can do it, and that in this Disease, the Gut *Ileon* (in which the Excrements are not usually hardned) is stop'd up by constipated Excrements; and therefore he constantly maintains that this Gut can never be twisted nor loosened from its Director the *Mesentery*; but he owns that Wind may be the cause of this Obstruction, because of all that died of the *Iliack*, he ever observed the Gut *Ileum* to be full of Wind. He gives us also an Instance of a Man of *Antwerp*, who proffer'd the Physicians Eighty thousand Flemish Pounds (which is more than Eight thousand Pounds Sterling) to be cured of this Disease, in which they said the Guts were twisted, or tyed as in a knot and so held him as incurable; so the Man died. His Body was opened, and they found only a little hard Dung in the small Gut, sixteen Inches above the *Intestinum Cæcum*, and a great quantity of liquid Excrements in the *Ileon* above it.

IX. *Sylvius*, among other causes of this Disease, assigns another cause, which he says is the slipping of the lower part of the Gut into the upper, or of the upper part of the Gut into the lower, and that by Wind, forcing the Gut into such a Position; but as the twisting or tying of the Guts are absolutely impossible in nature, as is before declared,

declared, so neither is it easie to imagin how it can be, that one part of the Gut should slip into another part, because the whole Gut is so firmly and absolutely conjoyned to the *Mesentery*, which by their Position render the thing impossible to be done. These supposed causes being thus obviated, we now come to consider those which are supposed to be the true Causes thereof.

X. *Paracelsus* says, it is caused from a sharp, acid, or austere Styptick Salt dissolved in the Guts, which sowers the Excrements, coagulates or binds them up, converts the liquid Excrements into Viscidity and Wind, and at length contracts the Guts, even so, as almost to close them up; all which we think borders very much upon Truth. The *Procatartick* cause certainly arises from the evil use of the six Non-naturals: The *Antecedent* Causes are all such as can produce this Disease, as Austere Juices and Salts dissolved in the Body, Caruncles growing in the Guts; The Presture of the Guts in Ruptures, whether of the Navel, Groin, or Scrotum, sharp Humours residing in the Membranes of the Guts, or a continual Crudity and Corruption of the Juices, from Foods and Drinks Heterogene to the Habit of the Body, *&c.*

XI. *The Proximate, near, or adjoyning Cause*, is from the Constitution of the *Ileon*, through Obstruction, Distention of Wind, Compression in a Rupture, or hardned Excrements, which totally stop up the passage of the Guts, and invert the Peristaltick Motion, so that the Matter contained in them, not being able to pass downwards, is rejected or cast upwards; and this comes to pass not only from the straitning, but from the contracting of the *Ileon*. And though we think the conjoyn d cause to be hard Excrements, or other things making the Obstruction, yet they cannot be the only and sole cause of this Disease, because the Guts are made of a substance easie to be extended, but that the violent Pain, and other vehement Symptoms of the *Iliack*, as Vomiting of the Food and Excrements, Sickness at Heart, Convulsions, *&c.* are caused from the Afflux of the Animal Spirits out of the Mesentery into the carnous anulary Fibres of the outwardmost Tunicle of the *Ileon*, and thence into the carnous longitudinal Fibres, both which they so swell up and tumifie, as that they become shortned and contracted, whereby those Membranes being very sensible and tender, an Inflamation of the Gut is excited, and such Convulsions, and painful Corrugations are raised, as to invert the Peristaltick motion of the Gut affected as aforesaid; which being continued, or meeting with no Remedy, a Gangreen is at length induced, and presently after Death. And this seems to be true, because both *Sylvius* and *Willis* affirm, that in several who had perished under the Cruelty of this Disease, which they had caused to be opened, they always observed an Inflamation or Gangrene to be present, and to be the Cause of the Disease and Death.

XII. If the Cause of the Disease is from an Inflamation in the Gut, there is an acute Fever; but if from Wind, hardned Excrements, or any other Obstruction, then no Fever attends it. If the Cause is from Wind, then it is not so fix'd in any particular part, but by the use of Carminatives, Aperitives, and other proper means, it is easily and quickly discus'd or dissipated. If the Juices of the Intestinal

nal Glands becomes Acid, Styptick or Austere, then the Guts are affected with a great Constriction, which seems to settle in some particular place: And this has been seen in some who have been open'd who have died of this Disease, in whom the Gut in several parts of it has been so contracted together, as if it had been the mouth of a Purse, with some small quantities of hardned Excrements in the Interspaces.

XIII. *The Prognosticks.* As this is a dreadful Disease, so it is always accompanied with danger. *Hyppocrates* says, If an *Iliaca* is accompanied with a Stranguary, the Sick will dye within seven days, unless on the coming of a Fever there be a great evacution of Urine. *Sect.* 3. *Aph.* 2. and *Sect.* 6. *Aph.* 24. In *Sect.* 6. *Aph.* 44. he says, If there is a Flux of Urine, it presages Recovery. And in *Sect.* 7. *Aph* 10. An *Iliaca* is evil, if it is accompanied with Vomiting, Convulsions, or Delirium. *In coac.* 72. he says, If in an *Iliaca* with Vomiting, the Patient becomes Deaf and Dumb, it is a sign that the Spirits or native Heat is almost extinguish'd. The same *Hyppocrates* also farther says, That if a Fever or Diarrhæa supervene in an *Iliaca*, it terminates in Death; the Breath stinking vehemently, or Worms coming up by the Mouth, also cold Sweats, are fatal Signs; so also Vomiting Excrements according to *Galen*; Farting, if it stinks greatly, also vomiting Chyle, Choler, and ill-scented, parti-coloured or black Matter, and an Inflamation of the Gut, are of evil Consequence, and shew that the case is desperate. But if the Disease proceeds only from Obstructions by Wind, and Excrements, there may be hopes of Recovery, more especially if it is attended with a Flux of Urine.

XIV. *The Diet.* The Air ought to be cold, or cooling, if the Disease arises from Inflamation, and the Patient ought to sleep in a cool place. If it be caused by Obstruction of hardned Excrements, the Air ought to be moist, not drying nor too hot. The Diet as to Food and Drink ought to be thin and sparing, because the Cure mightily depends upon Abstinence; and if the Bowels be inflamed, the Food ought to be cooling, and Emollient or Laxative, as Veal and Chicken broth, but all cold, crude, windy, salt, sowre, and fat things are to be avoided, because they are apt to increase the Inflamation. For Drink, some commend Emulsions of the cold Seeds, Almond-Milk, *&c.* but the Decoction of burnt Harts-horn, or a thin Chicken-broth, may do better. If the Disease proceeds from hardned Excrements without Inflamation, some commend a Decoction of Horse-dung, because they say Excrements expel Excrements. Some commend an Infusion or Decoction of Goose-dung, but rather an Infusion of Cows dung, because it is an admirable Neurotick, and these withal many times move the Belly. Sleep and Rest, if there be any Inflamation of the Guts is adviseable, otherwise they ought to be in a mean: In an Inflamation and Rupture much motion is to be avoided, and Rest is to be chosen. And the Mind ought to be kept free from all sorts of Passions, because they have a mighty Influence upon the Animal Spirits, whose disturbance is for the most part a principal cause of this Disease, for which reason the Patient ought to be as chearful as may be, the Pain being considered.

XV.

XV. *The Cure.* Our Author commends Bleeding in this Disease, but that Operation answers none of the Indications of Cure; and then I am sure, it must do hurt, for it will extreamly weaken the Sick, which in this Distemper they have no need of, the Disease it self weakning the Patient with a Vengeance. The Ancients gave inwardly Oil of Sweet Almonds either alone or mix'd with Broth, or with White-Wine; and if the Disease proceeded from hardned Excrements, or viscid Flegm, then also Emollient and Laxative Clysters, and then a Purging Dose, some such like as this, *Take Sena two Drams; Mechoacan four Drams; Seeds of Anis, Caraways, Coriander, Juniper-berries, all bruised, of each a Dram; Broth of a Sheeps-head and Gathers a sufficient quantity; boil to a Pint, strain out and sweeten with Syrup of Roses Solutive, which give for two Doses.* If this does not do, then stronger Catharticks must be used, some such as our Author prescribes.

XVI. But I am very confident that Purging at first in this Disease is very dangerous. The only true method of Cure is what in part we prescribe in the Cure of the *Dry Belly-ach* in Chap. XIX. aforegoing. For if the Guts be not made slippery and loosned with Oil, by exhibiting it in large quantities, both by Mouth and by Clyster, you will find the Cure of the Disease to be very difficult, and rather to be exasperated, by taking Purges first, before the Bowels are prepared for the same.

XVII. The Bowels being made slippery with much Oil, you may come then to Purging, either with what our Author has prescribed, or some other Catharticks which are stronger: It may be done very elegantly with *Sal Panaretum*, or *Sal Mirabile*, which latter may be given from half an Ounce to an Ounce; but if you give Pills, there is no better Medicament than our *Family Pills*, given to half a Dram, or six or seven in number in the Morning fasting.

XVIII. After purging with the former things, you may continue and end the Cure by giving every Night going to Bed, a Dose of our *Cathartick Laudanum*, and every third and fourth day, this mixture by the Mouth, *Take Oil of Sweet Almonds new drawn four Ounces; Syrup of Violets two Ounces; Syrup of Roses solutive an Ounce; mix them by shaking in a Glass, and so give it.*

XIX. *Paracelsus* judging the Disease to be caused by a Styptick Salt or Tartar dissolved, which causes those extream Pains and Convulsions, corrects the dissolved Salt; for which purpose he advises to use Oils and fat things, which obtunds both the Styptick and Corrosive Malignity; he commends *Oil of Bays* in Clysters, and the *Fats of a Badger, Cat, Dog, Fox,* &c. as some of the most effectual things, and some of his Followers highly commend *Spirits of Salt, and of Nitre*, which being given by a skilful hand will do wonders.

XX. But since the Animal Spirits are so much affected in this Disease, such things ought to be mixed with the other Ingredients which should refocillate and restore them; and therefore some Authors have advised to mix a little of the *Essence, Spirit, or Tincture of Castor, or of Goats Blood*, in an Emollient Clyster, which are used with good success; so also *Powers of Amber or of Rosemary, Sassafras, or Savine.* If the Constipation

stipation be extream, you may boil in the Clyster about *a Dram of the Pulp of Coloquintida* tied up in a Rag. If Cholerick Matter is vomited up, Oils are then not so proper, but after the Exhibition of Clysters, *Venice or Genoua Soap* may be given from half an Ounce to an Ounce and a half, dissolved in Chicken or Veal Broth, and so drank up, with which only Remedy several have been cured.

XXI. This of *Riverius* to quiet the enraged Animal Spirits is good, *Take Salt of Wormwood a Scruple; Juice of Limons a Spoonful; mix and exhibit it.* Or this of *Willis*, *Take prepared Coral two Drams; Salt of Wormwood a Dram and half; Juice of Limons four Ounces; mix them in a large Glass, and let them stand till the Fermentation is over, then add Cinnamon-water two Ounces*; Dose a Spoonful or two twice or thrice a day; for want of *Salt of Wormwood*, I have sometimes used *pure Salt of Tartar* in the case, and with as good success.

XXII. *Sylvius* commends this Anodyn or Narcotick, *Take Hull'd Barly boil'd till it burst, an Ounce and half; then take of this Water sixteen Ounces; White Poppy-seeds, sweet Almonds, of each three Drams, make an Emulsion; to which add of Fennel-water two Ounces; Diacodium half an Ounce; mix them*; to be taken at two or three times, at short distances of time. Or this of the same Authors, *Take Plantane-water two Ounces; Fennel-water one Ounce; Confectio de Hyacintho, Alkermes, ana, half a Dram; Laudanum Opiatum gr. iij. Syrup of White Poppies an Ounce; mix them*; of which the Sick may take a few Spoonfuls at short Intervals of time.

XXIII. But doubtless Preparations of *Castor*, as *Pouder, Essence, Spirit, and Tinctures of Castor mix'd with Opiates* are of admirable use in extremity, to alleviate the most excruciating Pains, because they quiet and restore the Animal Spirits to their pristine State again, which being done, and the Acrimony of the Humours absorbed or corrected, then Laxatives may be used for the loosening the costive Belly; as *a Decoction or Infusion of Sena and Mechoacan with Paragoricks; Goats Whey or Chicken-broth with Manna and Oil of Sweet-Almonds.* Or this, *Take Cassia new drawn six Drams; Electuarium Diaphœnicon, Diacatholicum, ana, two Drams; Barly-water 8 Ounces; mix for a Dose.*

XXIV. If it proceeds from hardned Excrements, and that you find the former things will not do, you must make use of stronger, even such as our Author has prescribed; or the Diet-drink in *Lib. 2. Cap. 15. Sect. 12.* aforegoing, which may be put into half the quantity of *White Port* or *Lisbon Wine*, instead of the *Ale* there advised, by the use of which, I have had very good success. *Horstius* says, that he has cured the *Iliack* with only the use of *Elixir Propretatis Paracelsi*, and I have sometimes done it with *Elixir Proprietatis Pestilentialis* to great satisfaction.

XXV. If Convulsions attend, the case is very dangerous; but then *Sal Volatile Oleosum Sylvii* is to be exhibited; or *Tartariz'd Spirit of Sal Armoniack*, from 20 to 30 drops in a Glass of Canary, or White Lisbon Wine: After which presently exhibit this following Dose, *Take Salt of Wormwood, or of Scordium a Scruple or gr. xxiv. Oil of Nutmegs by Expression half a Scruple; Pouder of Castoreum, Saffron, of each six Grains; Camphir three Grains; of our Volatile Laudanum a Grain or Grain and half; mix them.*

XXVI. If it be not from hardned Excrements (becauſe ſometimes after Death the Guts have been found quite empty) but from a violent Influx of the Animal Spirits, provoked by acrimonious or ſharp Humours, then give this, *Take Native Cinnabar levigated a ſcruple; of our London Treacle, Pouder of Caſtoreum, ana, half a ſcruple; of our Volatile Laudanum a Grain and half; mix for a Doſe*; which is as often to be repeated as need requires.

XXVII. Laſtly, If the Diſeaſe proceeds from a Rupture, in which the Ileon is fallen down into the Scrotum, External helps are to be uſed, as Emollient Fomentations, and warm Baths, that the Fibres of the Guts and parts adjacent may be ſoftned, relaxed, and made pliable; after which the Guts are by the hands to be reduced, and then kept up with a Truſs; which done, the reſt of the Cure is to be perfected by the Rules, Directions and Preſcripts before laid down.

CHAP. XXII. *Of a* DIARRHÆA, *and* TENASMUS.

I. IN a *Diarrhæa* or ſimple Flux of the Belly or Looſeneſs, excrementitious Humours are voided without Blood, or any Ulceration of the Bowels.

II. In a *Tenaſmus*, or continual deſire to go to Stool, there is a perpetual Inclination to Dejection, yet nothing is ſent forth but a little bloody or purulent Slime.

III. When this Flux of the Belly is no more than a *Diarrhæa*, neither Bleed nor Purge, but give this following *Bolus* to be taken every Morning. 2. *Take Rheubarb in Pouder half a Dram, (more or leſs according to the Patients ſtrength,) and with a ſufficient quantity of Diaſcordium make a Bolus, to which add two drops of Oil of Cinnamon.* 3. Let a reſting Draught of *an Ounce of Barly Cinnamon-water, and fourteen drops of Liquid Laudanum* be given every Night. 4. If the Sick is vex'd with Dry Gripings, voiding nothing, they are cured by waſhing the Bowels with Whey (being drank cold, and injected warm) as in the Diſeaſe *Cholera*; which may alſo be done with Chicken-broth or Poſſet-drink.

IV. If this Diſtemper laſts long, ſo that all the force falls upon the *Inteſtinum Rectum* (or Arſe Gut) with a *Tenaſmus*, or a continual deſire of going to Stool, let a reſtoring Diet be ordered, and ſome Cordial Liquor, to be taken at pleaſure, that the ſtrength of the Sick may be re-eſtabliſhed; which being done, the *Tenaſmus* immediately goes away.

SALMON's Comment.

V. It is called in Greek Διάῤῥοια, in Latin *Diarrhæa, Profluvium, Fluxus*, ſpecialiter, *Alvi purgatio, Ventris fluxio*, which is Flux of the Belly, occaſioning an often and plentiful going to Stool, by reaſon of ſharp Humours exciting the expulſive Faculty of the Inteſtines; or a certain Acrimony irritating the Fibres of the Guts, and Coarctation or preſſing of their Diminutive Glands, without Inflamation, Exulceration, Teneſmus, Lienteria, or any ſtrong ſenſe of Pain. Authors make three Branches of this Diſeaſe, *viz.* 1. *Diarrhæa*, a Looſeneſs, the Diſeaſe now

now described. 2 *Cœliaca passio*, The Belly-ach, or Griping of the Guts. 3. *Lienteria*, a Flux of the Nutriment almost in the Form it was received into the Stomach, of all which we have discoursed at large in the third Edition of our *Synopsis Medicinæ*, lib. 5. cap. 3, 5 & 7.

VI. Κοιλιακὴ (a κοιλία, *Venter*, the Belly) *Cœliaca passio*, the Belly-ach, is the sudden passing away of the Food out of the Stomach into the Guts, before it is perfectly concocted, and which is cast forth out of the Guts, before it has stayed long enough in them to give a due Nourishment to the Body, the Matter expulsed not being much unlike to Chyle, or a milky substance.

VII. Λειεντερία, *Lienteria*, a Flux of the Belly, is that in which the Food or Nutriment, from a fault of the digestive and retentive Faculties of the Stomach, and of the expulsive Faculty of the Guts, passes through the Body, without any, or very little alteration of its substance, colour, or smell; so that there is almost a continual going to Stool, with crude pale Excrements, without any commixture of Choler or Blood.

VIII. Τενασμὸς, Τενεσμὸς, *Tenasmus* vel *Teneſmus*, is a painful Inclination almost continually to go to Stool, without being able to do any thing, except some small quantity of filthy slimy Matter like Snivel, through an almost continual Stimulation of the expulsive Faculty: Of which see more at large in the third Edition of our *Synopsis Medicinæ*, lib. 5. cap. 9.

IX. *The Signs.* In a *Diarrhœa* there is pain in the Loins, loathing of Food, Thirst, risings in the Stomach, Gripings sometimes, and often going to Stool; the Excrements are yellow, or black, Ash-coloured, or white, having several Appearances, being stinking, thin, or in a mean Consistency. In a *Cœliaca*, the Excrements are usually white, or whitish, not much unlike Chyle, with Belchings, Wind and Distentions of the Belly, with a wasting of the Body for want of Nutrition. In a *Lienteria*, there 'tis frequent Stools, with Excrements little or almost nothing different from the Consistency, colour, and smell of what is taken in, so that the Food looks almost as it did presently after it was chewed; except in the cases of eating *Lentils*, and other Foods hard of Digestion, *&c.*

X. The Parts chiefly affected are doubtless the Stomach and Guts; the motive Fibres of the Stomach are irritated and hurt, and the diminutive Glandules of the Guts are contracted, and as it were squeezed together, and disordered, so that the Animal Spirits thereby being moved and made tumultuous, the hurt of the Fibres is increased, and the Compression of the said Glandules made more extream, so that there is a plentiful Effusion of acrid Juices, which contaminating the digested Food and chylous Juice, a *Diarrhœa* is forthwith induced: And *Hyppocrates de Dieta*, lib. 2. cap. 19. says, that corrupted Chyle heats and disturbs the Body; for which reason *Ægineta* says, a *Diarrhœa* is a Corruption of the Food, which in some is caused by a bilious Matter, in others by a melancholick, pituitous or serous Humour, for the most part Crude, or not sufficiently concocted, proceeding from the Intemperature of the Stomach, which stimulates and irritates the expulsive Faculty.

XI. The Cause of a *Diarrhœa*, *Paracelsus* and his Followers will have to be an acrimonious Salt dissolved, which stimulates and irritates the Stomach and Guts, their Fibres and Glands, and to which it

sticks; *which doubtless is a truth beyond any question. Helmont* says the same thing in other words, *viz.* That it is from a morbid Acidity of the Ferment, which makes a failure in the Digestion of the Stomach, whence proceeds an acid corrupt Chyle, and other mucous Filth, which sticking to the Guts, puts the *Pylorus* into a rage; and this he will have to be the only cause of a *Diarrhœa* or Looseness; because, (says he) the *Pylorous* is the Ruler or Director of the whole Oeconomy of the Stomach from thence to the *Intestinum Rectum*.

XII. So that any acrid, acid, or sharp Humour gathered into the Stomach, shed out of the mouths of the Arteries or Lymphatick Vessels, whether critically or symptomatically so affecting the Nervous Fibres of the Bowels, as to cause an arduous Constriction of them, moves the Animal Spirits, and by their tumultuous Affluence, troubles the Peristaltick Motion of the Guts, and excites their expulsive Faculty to such a degree as to make a *Diarrhœa*; which is more or less Vehement, according to the more or less acrid or acid Serosities of the Blood, or its more or less lixivial bilious Acrimony, which sometimes by their corrugating the sensible nervous Fibres induces horrible Gripings.

XIII. *A Cœliack Flux* is caused through a bad Ferment of the Stomach, whereby the Chyle is vitiated, which through the Weakness of the Tone of the Bowels or Guts is mixed together with the Excrements, and so voided by Stool, which *Sylvius* thinks is caused from an Obstruction of the Lacteal Veins, and of the rough or crusty coat; for which reason he advises in this Cure, to give such things as may open the mouths of these Veins.

XIV. *A Lientery* is caused through as well a Weakness of the Stomach, as through a bad Ferment of the same, because the Meat or Food is not sufficiently dissolved therein, for which reason it must of necessity be voided Crude. And this weakness of the Stomach, may arise from the almost abolished or mean Influx of the Animal Spirits, as its evil Ferment may from the daily eating and continued use of such Foods, and other matters, as may vitiate and weaken the said fermentative Juice.

XV. A *Tenasmus* is caused for the most part from a Defluxion of sharp Humours into the *Intestinum Rectum*, which continuing long, vitiate the Fibres of that Bowel, and at length seize upon and affect the Sphincter Muscle it self; whereby the expulsive Faculty being continually stimulated, and the Nervous Fibres of the Gut, and the Sphincter being weakned, it causes a continual desire to go to Stool, though there is little or nothing to be evacuated.

XVI. *The Prognosticks.* A simple *Diarrhœa* is not dangerous in it self, especially if it is recent, or critical; for *Celsus* lib. 4. cap. 19. accounts it healthful to be loose one day, if there is a Fever, and it goes off in seven days. It is good if it succeeds an Inflamation or Distemper of the Eyes, according to *Hippocrates*, lib. 6. Aph. 17. So also if it follows a Palpitation, Dropsie, Stoppage of the Loches, or a Deafness. A *Diarrhœa* is the least dangerous Flux of the Belly, but it is apt to degenerate into a *Dysentery* by long continuance. If it is with black and ill coloured Excrements, in Splenetick and Hypochondriack Persons, or in such as have taken Steel Medicaments, it is good. So also if it comes from over-eating, or drinking of absterstive Liquors.

The

The same also if it happens to a Woman with Child, towards the end of her time, because it facilitates the Delivery; or if it follows breeding of Teeth, or in a very humid Body, and in the Spring time. The Excrements in a *Diarrhœa* growing better, or thicker, and approaching to their natural condition, Health is at Hand. On the contrary, If a *Diarrhœa* comes through fault of the natural Oeconomy or habit, *viz.* from the Activity of the Ferments being abolished, it is mortal, as *Helmont* says, and therefore is ever fatal to Consumptive, Hectick, and Phthisical Persons. If it is Symptomatical, it is dangerous. If the Excrements are very white, frothy, fretting, crude, viscous, watery, purulent, like Meal or Chaff, eruginous, black, stinking, large in quantity, the Sick is in danger. So also if it follows a Plurisie, or Malign or Pestilential Fevers, with other bad Signs, it is mortal. A *Diarrhœa* in a Dropsie is many times fatal, though sometimes the Sick escapes. So also when the Excrements alter to the worse, and turn fat, bloody, white, ash-coloured, green, black, and very stinking, with Hiccough and other bad Signs, Death is then at the Door.

XVII. A *Tenasmus* is easily cured, unless it has been of long continuance, or comes of a melancholy and sharp Humour, for then it is apt to cause a Consumption, or a Dropsie, or to degenerate into a sordid Ulcer, and sometimes into a Fistula: But *Celsus*, lib. 4. cap. 19. says, that a *Tenasmus* is easily cured, and that of it self it never kills any. *Hyppocrates*, Sect. 7. Aph. 27. says, if a Woman with Child have a *Tenasmus* she will miscarry, because her continual straining to go to Stool disturbs the Womb; and the same Muscles which serve to exclude the Excrements, are assisting to the Exclusion of the Child.

XVIII. *The Diet.* The Air ought not to be cold and moist, but temperate, serene, and drying. The Food ought to be of good Juice, easie of Digestion, but not fluid, roast for the most part, and dress'd with Spices, because Spices comfort the Stomach and Bowels. Fruits and crude Meats are to be avoided; as also all sweet and fat things which irritate the Fibres of the Stomach and Guts; Purgatives are to be forborn, because an over-purging induces an incurable *Diarrhœa*, which terminates in a Consumption and Death. Drinks ought to be strong not small, as Wine of Pomgranates or of Quinces, and several of your red Styptick Spanish Wines, as Alicant, Barabar, Barcelona, Tent, Canary, and red Madera Wines, moderately taken; also a Decoction of dryed Quinces, Hips, Cinnamon, *&c.* much Exercise, as Walking, Running, Dancing, Riding, Wrestling. *&c.* are evil; but moderate Rest is good: Sleeping is good, because it hinders all Evacuations but Sweating, and a notable Diaphoresis is very profitable to the Cure. Urine ought to be promoted, for Diuretick drive the Humidities from the Belly, and carry them another way. Grief, Anger, and all other Passions of the Mind are to be avoided, because they make a violent Commotion in the Bile, and bilious *Diarrhœa's* have often been observed. *Platerus* found a Looseness to follow upon extream Grief. And *Wallæus* has observed *Diarrhœa's* to follow upon Fright and Fears. I also once found a *Diarrhœa* to follow upon Grief for the Death of a Child.

XIX. *The Cure.* If the Patient cannot take our Authors *Bolus of Rheubarb*, you may give these following

lowing Pills. *Take Catechu in fine Pouder gr. x. Nutmegs in Pouder gr. v. Thebcian Opium in Pouder gr. 1. with Balsam of Peru, make Pills for one Dose.* If the Patient cannot swallow Pills, you may give of our Authors *Laudanum from gut. 15. ad 25. in a Glass of Red Barabar or Port Wine*, putting them to rest after it.

XX. But if the Flux is violent, with vehement Gripings in the Bowels, the next day you may give the following Clyster, *Take of the Cortex of Pomgranate-peels, of each in Pouder one Ounce, infuse them in a Styptick Red Wine a Pint and half, cold for twelve hours, stirring them now and then; then boil them close covered for almost a quarter of an hour, strain out through a cloth, and divide it into four parts for four Clysters. Take Decoction of the inner Bark of Oak, with a little Winters Cinnamon, made with Posset-drink, three quarters of a Pint; one of the parts of the former Decoction of the Cortex, and of our Guttæ Vitæ two Drams; mix them for a Clyster* to be given blood-warm, and to be repeated four times if need be.

XXI. If our Authors *Bolus of Rheubarb* be given in the Morning, you will do well to give at four in the Afternoon this following Dose, *Take of a strong Tincture of the Cortex made with Cinnamon-water, 3 Drams; Tincture of Catechu one Dram; Guttæ Vitæ, gut. 15. mix for a Dose* to be given in a Glass of Canary, which may be repeated again at Night, and again at Midnight. Or if you please you may give *The Tinctures of the Cortex and of the Catechu* (without our *Guttæ Vitæ*) in our Authors aforementioned *resting Draught*, which is then to be given only once a day at Bed-time

XXII. I approve not of our Authors washing of the Bowels with cold Liquors; it is more likely to cause the Gripes than to take them away. Outwardly you may put to the Belly Linnen Napkins often doubled, and heat very hot, and apply them as hot as they can be indured, it many times gives present relief. But if you would wash the Bowels effectually, it will be best to do it with warm Whey, or Water, in which *Sal Mirabile* from three Drams to six is dissolved; for this will indeed cleanse them, and carry off the Morbifick Matter with ease and pleasure, to a vast advantage of the sick, after which the former Dose of the *Cortex*, &c. in Sect. XXI. may be profitably given.

XXIII. After the cleansing of the Bowels with the *Sal Mirabile*, this following Restorative Drink may be given, *Take of Barabar Wine, Canary, and Madera Wines, of each a Quart and half a Pint; of the Cortex in fine Pouder, Virginia Snake-root, of each four Ounces; Rheubarb one Ounce; Winters Cinnamon one Ounce; mix and infuse cold for four or five days, shaking them three or four times a day; then let it settle*, and every Morning fasting give the Patient a small Glass full of the clear, and the same quantity at Four in the Afternoon.

XXIV. In a Bilious Diarrhœa, *Take of the best Rheubarb a Dram; which make into Pills with Mithridate for one Dose*, to cleanse the Bowels of the Recrements of the Bilious Humour. If the Patient cannot swallow Pills, then give this Potion, *Take choice Rheubarb not toasted a Dram and half; Pompranate-peels, Zedoary, Cinnamon, Salt of Tartar, ana, a Scruple; Smiths Forge-water five Ounces; digest all night warm, then boil and strain out, to which add Syrup of Steel, and of*

Red

Red Roses, ana, half an Ounce; mix them for one Dose. Or, *Take Rheubarb two Drams; Nutmeg, Cinnamon, ana, half a Dram; Salts of Tartar, and of Wormwood, ana, a Scruple; infuse all night in Smiths Forge-water filtered through brown Paper warm, simmer it a little over a gentle Fire, then add to it Syrup of Steel and of Myrtles, of each half an Ounce; mix them for a Dose.*

XXV. Authors commend, and that from good Experience, *Venice Treacle, Philonium Romanum & Persicum, Requies Nicolai, Diascordium, Mithridate, Laudanum Londinense & Paracelsi, Laudanum Liquidum,* &c. *Willis* gives this, ℞. *Rheubarb in Pouder two Drams; Salt of Tartar gr. vi. Cichory water five Ounces; infuse warm a Night, and give it next Morning.* And then he gives *a Dram of Venice Treacle* in some convenient Vehicle, and applies hot to the Stomach, *a slice of Bread toasted, and spread with Venice Treacle, dip'd in hot Red Wine*; but if these things do not, he advises to *Laudanum Liquidum Cydoniatum, gut. xx.* which he gives in some fit Vehicle, as an undoubted Remedy.

XXVI. If the Pains and Convulsions of the Bowels are vehement, through the sharpness and malignity of the Morbifick Matter, you must give this, *Take Terra Sigillata, Catechu, Native Cinnabar levigated, Cinnabar of Antimony, of each a Dram; Laudanum Volatile nostrum, gr. x. Oil of Cinnamon four drops; mix and make a Pouder for three Doses,* to be given at Bed-time. Or this, *Take Castoreum in fine Pouder, Nutmeg Poudered, Amber prepared, Crocus Martis Astringens, of each a Dram; Native Cinnabar levigated three Drams; our Volatile Laudanum gr. 15. ad 20. mix and make a Pouder for seven Doses,* which may be given in some proper Vehicle; or else made into a Bolus with *Balsam of Peru,* and so taken.

XXVII. In a *Cœliaca* and *Lienteria,* Balsamicks ought to be mix'd with Stypticks, Opiates, and Cinnabarines. As, *Take Crabs-Eyes levigated, Native Cinnabar levigated, of each a Dram; Catechu two Scruples; Laudanum Volatile gr. viij. ad xij. mix and make a Pouder, which make into a Bolus with Balsam of Peru, three Drams, for four Doses.* Or this, *Take Crabs Eyes, Native Cinnabar, of each levigated a Dram; Catechu, Anodyn Sulphur of Vitriol, ana, half a Dram; Thebian Opium in fine Pouder à gr. iij. ad vi. vel ix. mix them, then add Oil of Cinnamon gut. ix. Oils of Cloves and of Savin, of each five drops; Balsam of Peru, half an Ounce; make an Opiate for three or four Doses.*

XXVIII. This following Mixture is of singular use, *Take Balsam of Peru three Ounces; strong Tincture of Myrrh one Ounce and half; choice Oil of Cinnamon thirty drops; Oil of Nutmegs by Expression, an Ounce; of our Volatile Laudanum two Scruples; mix them well and make a soft Balsam.* Dose, from one Dram to two Drams or more according to Age and other Accidents, every night at Bed-time.

XXIX. Whether in a *Diarrhœa, Cœliaca, Lientery* or *Tenasmus,* if the Extremity is great, and the Weakness almost insupportable, besides the former Internals given by the Mouth, this following Clyster is often to be exhibited, *Take Mutton-broth, Styptick Red Wine, of each a Pint; Tincture of Myrrh one Ounce; Guttæ Vitæ, or Liquid Laudanum, 80 or 100 drops; mix for a Clyster,*

to be given ſomething more than blood-warm, which give either once or twice a day as the Phyſician ſhall adviſe: In a *Tenaſmus*, add to it *two Drams of Balſam of Peru.*

CHAP. XXIII. *Of a* DYSENTERY, *or* BLOODY-FLUX.

I. THere is firſt a Chilneſs and Shivering, then an univerſal Heat all over the Body, which is preſently after followed by Gripings of the Guts, and theſe by a conſtant voiding of ſlimy Matter (only ſometimes in ſome Stools, the natural Excrements are mixed) with vehement Pain, and as it were a deſcending of all the Bowels, with which the Sick is dreadfully tormented as often as he goes to Stool. 2. In the mean time the Matter which is expelled is mixed with ſtreaks of Blood; though ſometimes the greater quantity of Blood appears during the whole courſe of this Diſtemper. 3. In a vehement Dyſentery, ſometimes pure Blood is voided, and the Bowels affected with an incurable Gangrene. 4. When the Sick is in the prime of his Age, or heated by the uſe of Cordials, he is ſeized with a high Fever, his Tongue is ſomewhat white, covered all over with a certain thick ſlime, and ſometimes it is black and dry. 5. The Strength of the Body is proſtrated, the Spirits are dejected, and the inward parts of the Mouth and Throat ulcerated, but more eſpecially when the Evacuation of the Morbifick Matter is unſeaſonably ſtop'd by Aſtringent Medicines, before the Cauſe which nouriſhes the Diſeaſe is overcome or maſter'd by purging. 6. Sometimes the Bloody-Flux comes without a Fever, and the Griping of the Guts leading the Courſe, the reſt of the Symptoms follow.

II. Bleed in the Arm as ſoon as may be; the ſame Night exhibit a reſting Draught, and the next Morning the *Potio Communis Purgativa*, which muſt be repeated to two other Doſes every ſecond day, as alſo the reſting Draught, after the Operation of the Purging Medicine is over; but in the intermediate days, let it be given Morning and Evening. 2. After the Sick has been let blood, and once purged, through the whole courſe of the Diſtemper, let the following Cordial be given. 3. *Take Black-Cherry-water, Strawberry-water; ana, three Ounces; Aqua Epidemeca, Scordium water compound, Barly-Cinnamon-water ana, one Ounce; levigated Pearl one Dram and half; Sugar-candy a ſufficient quantity; Damask Roſe-water half an Ounce; mix them for a Julep*, which will have a grateful Reliſh: Let the Sick take four or five Spoonfuls of it at pleaſure, or in caſe of fainting: 4. Let his ordinary Drink be *Milk boiled with a threefold quantity of Water*, or the *White Decoction* thus made, *Take burnt Harts-horn and Crumbs of White Bread, of each two Ounces; Spring-water three Pints, which boil to a Quart, and ſweeten with a ſufficient quantity of white Sugar.* 5. Or if the Weakneſs of the Sick requires it, *boil a Quart of Spring water with half a Pint of Canary-Wine*, for their

their ordinary Drink; to be drank cold.

III. After he has been thrice purged, the whole Cure depends upon the use of *Laudanum*, reiterated twice or thrice every day. 2. Only let a Clyster of *half a Pint of Cows Milk, and an Ounce and half of Venice Treacle*, be sometimes injected, which is of good use, where Evacuations are frequent or often. 3. Sometimes it falls out, that after a Bloody-flux has been ill cured, the Sick is for some Years afflicted with vehement Pains; but by repeated Bleeding he may be restored to his pristine Health. 4. Note that in such Temperatures or Constitutions which are less favourable to this Disease, omitting all Evacuations, it is cured by the simple use of *Laudanum*, reiterared every Morning and Evening till the Symptoms wholly vanish, or if necessity requires it, thrice in twenty four hours.

SALMON's Comment.

IV. It is called in Greek, Δυσεντερία; in Latin, *Dysenteria*, also, and in English, *The Bloody-flux*. It is a vehement Flux of the Belly, either with much Blood and some Excrements, or with pure Blood it self, accompanied with vehement Pain, Gnawing, and Griping of the Bowels, whereby the Fibres of the Guts are corrugated and vellicated; or from an Exulceration of the Guts, from an Influx of sharp Particles and much corroding Matter, with violent Pain and Gripings, which cause frequent Dejections of Blood or bloody Stools as aforesaid, and sometimes of purulent Matter.

V. It is said to be threefold, 1. When Slime with a little Blood and *Pus* come away together. 2. When pure Blood comes away with the Mucus of the Guts. 3. When the very Substance of the Guts comes away, with Sanies; which sometimes is not with very much Pain, and indicates a filthy Ulcer of the Bowels.

VI. *The Parts affected* by all Authors are said to be the Guts, and that of both kinds, *viz.* the great and the small, when it comes to Extremity, by reason of the decidence of the sharp and corrosive Matter, which creeps up and down in the windings and turnings of the Guts; which first erodes the exterior Coat; then the Acrimony increasing farther, it eats so as to open the Mouths of the Intestinal Glands, by which the Guts are cleared of their *Mucus*. And lastly, It proceeds to the eating of holes here and there up and down in the fleshy Coat, whence comes much Blood, mix'd sometimes with pituitous Matter, or Sanies, and sometimes with a mixture of Choler, which then make the Excrements look yellow. The Vehemency of this Disease is such sometimes, that even the Stomach it self (because of its Proximity) is affected by consent.

VII. *The Signs*. There is a preceding Chilness, with a feverish Heat following it from sharp and acrid Particles pre-existent in the Blood, which not only disturb the Mass of Blood and Lympha, but put the Animal Spirits upon violent Motions, whereby the Fibres of the Guts are irritated, so as to excite frequent Dejections of pituitous Excrements with Pain and Gripings; and sometimes the Excrements are mix'd with extravasated Blood; and by reason a dissolved corrosive Salt, or sharp dissolved Tartar, is fixed in the Fibres of the Guts, there are violent Gripes and pricking of the Bowels, with Spasmodick or Convulsive Motions of the Intestines from the disturbance of the Animal Spirits, at certain times, and continued

ed through the whole course of the Disease. which sends forth purulent and Bloody Matter, sometimes pure flowing Blood, and sometimes clotted Blood; and there is first an almost total Evacuation of the *Serum* by frequent Stools (caused by a dissolved Tartar or Salt as aforesaid) which makes the Throat dry and rough, causing great Thirst, whereby the Nervous Fibres of the Mouth of the Stomach are often vellicated, with Heart-burnings and the like, which Uneasinesses makes the Patient watchful and restless a Nights. Sometimes Blood, sometimes Choler, sometimes *Lympha*, or coagulated *Serum* (as they call it) tinges the Matter excreeted, which is sometimes more or less, according to the quantity of the Humour in Flux.

VIII. Sometimes the Patient feels an acute Pain about the Navel, which passes like lightning through the Guts, more especially the small Guts, which are most Nervous. Sometimes the Pain is on both sides, and above the Navel, and then it shews that the larger Guts are affected. The Noise, Croaking and Rumbling of the Guts shews that Wind afflicts, with great Acidities of the Humours. If the small Guts are ulcerated, the Pains are more acute than if the Ulcer is in the large Guts, so that from the acuteness and pricking Anguish, great Restlesness is caused. If the Guts become gangrened, the Pain ceases, and then Death is at hand. Sometimes the *Intestinum Rectum* falls down, and sometimes from the pricking of the sharp Particles of the morbid Matter, the Fibres of the Guts are so much excited to Excretions as to cause a *Tenesmus*, which often afflicts in this Disease. For the Intestines being continually prick'd and vellicated, are contracted by virtue of their Peristaltick Motion, from whence, Motions, frequent Dejections, *Tenesmus*, and many other Inconveniences arise.

IX. *The Causes.* According to *Paracelsus* and his Followers, they are from a dissolved acid Salt, which growing acrimonious in the Guts, heats, burns, and corrodes them; or from a fæculent and immature Tartar dissolved, which being scattered up and down the Bowels, excite the *Dysenterick Phænomena*. *Helmont* says it is caused from a Morbifick Acidity of the Stomach, which provoking the *Archæus*, makes it to contest against this inmated Enemy, and endeavour its Expulsion. And indeed *Helmont* lays the whole cause of this Disease upon the *Pylorus*, because it expels Matter out of the Stomach, and draws the cause of this Disease thither; for the *Pylorus* being in a Fury, the inraged *Archæus* of the *Pylorus* brings presently a Perturbation upon the whole Tone and Habit of the Bowels, and so excites a fluxile *Impetus*, attended with *Lympha*, or coagulated *Serum*, mucous Matter, Blood, or bloody Excrements, fibrous and sanious. The prime or remote cause may be from sharp, acrid, and putrid Humours bred in the Stomach and Guts (from evil and acrid Meats, Fruits, violent Purgers, Poisons, *&c.*) evasated out of the larger Vessels of the Liver, Spleen, and Mesentery, which excite the Preistaltick Motion and expulsive Faculty, to frequent Stools; but the proximate, near or immediate cause, is an Excoriation or Ulceration of the Bowels, and opening of the Mouths of the Arteries, and Glandules of the Guts, by the said sharp and acrid Recrements of the Blood and Lympha, which according to the degrees of the Acritude and Putridity, makes the Disease either Simple, or Malign and Contagious.

X.

X. *Sylvius* says, the cause of this Disease is 1. From sharp Choler, and an acid Pancreatick Juice, by which the Guts are excoriated and ulcerated, whence proceeds a large Excretion of Blood, and many times of *Pus*. 2. From an acid Humour alone, for he says, an over-sharp lixivious Salt of Bile, may indeed cause a *Gangrene*, but never an Ulcer; for that an Ulcer is always produced by a corrosive Acid, not from a Lixivial; wherefore a Lixivial or Cholerick Humour will never alone cause a Dysentery, unless mixed with an acid sharp Humour; but acid sharp Humours alone will cause it, when carried to the Guts, the Influx being continued, for that they offend, vellicate, and break their Fibres, and at length corrode the Coat it self. And so the Arteries and Veins being in their Extremities, broken, corroded, or dilated, by the Pain, the *Blood* and *Lympha* are put into a violent Motion, by which means they are poured forth into the Guts. And there is no doubt but, as *Paracelsus* says, a dissolved acid corrosive Salt in the Intestines, corroding their Glandules and Membranes, may induce the sordid Ulcer, so much afflicting in this Disease; and penetrating into the inner substance of the Guts, not only educe great quantities of Blood, but by pricking and dilacerating their nervous orbicular Fibres, may excite intolerable Pains, so great, that sometimes a *Gangrene* is produced, and at length Death.

XI. *The Prognosticks.* A Dysentry is an acute and dangerous Disease; and *Hippocrates* says, a Dysentery from black Choler is mortal; because it presages a Gangrene. A Malign Dysentery (which is that which is accompanied with a Fever) is worse than a Benign one. According to *Hyppocrates*, Sect. 4. Aph. 26. loathing of Food in long Dysenteries is bad; and if it is with a Fever, it is worse: and if little lumps of Flesh, as it were, be voided, it is mortal; so also if the Excrements are raggy. If the Dejections are pure Blood, and continual with Sickness at Heart, cold Sweats, watching and vehement Thirst, the case is dangerous. Often Fainting, Hiccough, Worms comming up at Mouth, Vomiting, Convulsions, Heart-burning, loss of Appetite, Spots in the Skin, Fevers and Convulsions, are all dangerous Signs. Long Wathings are very evil, for they shew that the Acrimony and Malignity have reach'd to the Membranes of the Brain. The danger is greater when the smallGuts are exulcerated than when the large are, because the small are more sensible, and full of Nervous Fibres, fuller of Vessels, and pour out a greater abundance of Blood, so that not being so easily consolidated, they are the more difficult to be cured. It is also more dangerous in old Persons and Children, than in such as are middle-aged, and of a strong or healthful Habit of Body. It many times ends upon the second Crisis; sometimes it lasts to the third or fourth Crisis; if it goes beyond that, it becomes Chronick, and brings the Sick into a Consumption, so that at last it ends in Death.

XII. *The Diet.* The Air ought to be temperate, pure and serene; if it *be too hot*, it acuates Choler, (which according to *Sylvius* consists of much Lixivial Salt, some Water, and a little Oil and Spirit) whereby the Blood is filled with those Saline Particles, and so makes its way into the Sanguiferous Vessels of the Guts, besides its way by the *Ductus Communis*, or common passage at the lower end of the *Duodenum*, or beginning

ginning of the *Jejunum*. It ought also to be pure and serene, free from Malignity, or any epidemical Contagion, from which the Disease often rises; for which reason it is said, that an *Epidemical Dysentery* is Infectious or Contagious. *A cold Air* is also to be avoided, because it contracts the Pores of the Skin, or mouths of the *Cutaneous Papillæ*, arising from the *Miliary Glandules* lying either under the Skin, or contained within its substance, whereby not only sensible Sweating, but also insensible Transpiration are hindered; so that they being hindered or obstructed, the *Lympha* and *Serum* of the Body are daily increased and made sharp, and then are diverted to the Intestines, to the inducing or continuing of the Disease; and therefore the Body ought continually to be disposed to a gentle *Diaphoresis*, by which thing alone, *Dysenteries* and other Fluxes of the Belly have been cured.

XIII. *As to Food*, Meats Salt, Pickled, Candied, Raw, or Smoak-dry'd, and things made of Sugar, and Sweet-meats, also Apples, Pears, Plums, Grapes, Cucumbers, Melons, *&c.* are to be avoided; but Meats of good Juice, and easie Digestion, are to be chosen, as Ptisan, Panada, Eggs, hull'd Barley, Rice, Oatmeal, Gruel and Broths of Mutton, Veal, Lamb, Chickens boiled with Endive, Lettice and Purslane, *&c.* for Drink, Water, Milk, and Milk-water in which Steel has been often quenched; Smiths Forge water filtred, and mix'd with Water, Milk, or Milk-water. Also Barly-broth made with shavings of Harts-horn, dryed Quinces, and Cinkfoil or Tormentil-roots, or in which Catechu has been all night infus'd. Canary, strong Wines, Brandies and Strong-waters are to be avoided, at least their excessive use, because they excite new Acidities, Disturbances, and Fermentations in the *Blood*, *Lympha* and *Serum*, making their Influx greater into the Guts. *Rest* is required, and all violent *Motions* to be avoided. *Watching* is hurtful, because it irritates the Blood and Juices: But *Sleep* is to be induced, because thereby the Exasperations of the Disease are many times lulled or laid asleep with it, Strength recruited, and the violent Carere of the Flux stop'd. All violent Passions of the Mind are to be prevented, because thereby the Animal Spirits are made tumultuous, and by consequence the *Blood*, *Lympha* and *Serum* are acuated; chiefly, Envy, Rage, Fury, and Anger, are to be avoided, because they put the whole Mass of Blood, *&c.* into a Flame. But the Mind is to be kept as cheerful as may be, for that by Cheerfulness the Animal Spirits are recreated, which keep the Mass of Blood and Juices in a good and pleasing Decorum. Sadness and Fear are evil, because they increase the Disease, and sometimes hasten Death.

XIV. *The Cure*. Our Author advises first to Bleeding, which I can by no means approve of. Go to a Farrier about a Sick Horse, and ask him what you must do? His ready Answer is (let the Disease be what it will) Bleed and Drench, Sir. If it be the Yellows, you must Bleed and Drench him, Sir. If the Bots or Farcy, Bleed and Drench. If an old Ulcer or Fistula, Bleed and Drench. If Broken-winded, Bleed and Drench. If too Fat, Bleed and Drench. If too Lean, or does not thrive, Bleed and Drench. Nor is there scarcely any Disease belonging to a Horse, but the universal Remedies are Bleeding and Drenching. And truly I think our Physicians have stole the Farriers Trade away. For whatever

whatever Diſeaſe it is that a Man or Woman, yea, even a Child of a Month or two old ails, the preſent, firſt, and only Remedies are Bleeding and Drenching. And without Bleeding and Drenching, I think they attempt the Cure of no Diſeaſe. A Patient in the Small-Pox cannot eſcape them without Bleeding and Drenching, tho' thoſe Courſes are againſt all the Indications of the Cure of that Diſeaſe. So in a *Dyſentery* or *Bloody-Flux*, here is alſo Bleeding and Drenching; only the *Drench* of our Author in this place, is better than ordinary, and indeed very appoſite to the Diſeaſe: But as to his *Bleeding*, I am confident it is oppoſite to the *Fourth* or *Vital Indication*; the Sick is weakened enough by the Diſeaſe, there is no farther need of weakening, unleſs there be a deſign of haſtily ſending the poor Miſerable Patient out of the World.

XV. Our Authors Cordial is proper enough, but if the Patient likes it not, you may give this, *Take Black-Cherry water, Milk-water, Aquæ Bezoarticæ, ana, four Ounces Oiſter-ſhells levigated two Drams or half an Ounce; Damask Roſe-water two Ounces; White Sugar-candy enough to make it pleaſant; mix them for a Pearl Cordial*, though there be no Pearl in it. As to the *White Decoction*, I am of opinion that the *hardeſt Cruſt of White Bread, firſt toaſted very brown*, are beſt; becauſe Crumbs of White Bread, are apt by boiling to thicken the Liquor, and for want of *White Bread*, you may uſe *Brown, Wheaten*, or *Houſhold Bread* toaſted brown, or almoſt burnt, which will do the Jobb as well. If you uſe Milk for ordinary Drink, you ought to ſweeten it a little with white Sugar (though with but a little) to prevent its curdling in the Stomach. Or, if the Sick is very weak, you may give *Sack-Whey*.

XVI. Our Author in the next place adviſes to the reiterated uſe of *Laudanum* every day; but you ought to make the Doſe leſs in proportion, leſt you ſtupifie the Patient, or hurt the Stomach. In this caſe, where it is ſo often repeated, it ought to be the *Laudanum Cidoniatum*, becauſe that not only anſwers the end, but alſo gratifies the Stomach. Then as to the Clyſter, though that is good, and that it will do as well being done with *Mithridate*, or a proportional quantity of *Philonium Romanum*, or *Perſicum*; yet this following much exceeds it: *Take Milk or Poſſet-drink from half to three quarters of a Pint; Brandy from one to three Ounces; of our Guttæ Vitæ two Drams; mix for a Clyſter to be given Blood-warm.* It may be repeated once every day, or twice, if great need requires, till the Flux ceaſes, or is become more Moderate; it gives relief, as if it was immediately from Heaven.

XVII. Our Author ſays, that in ſome Temperatures, omitting all Evacuations, it is cured by the ſimple uſe of *Laudanum reiterated*, Morning and Evening till the Symptoms vaniſh, *&c.* But withal in our opinion *proper Clyſters* ought not to be omitted; and when all is done, ſome *Specifick Cathartick* ought to be given, and then *Laudanum*, to be repeated after that; or *Laudanum Catharticum*, which will not go without its ſingular Effects: After which *ſimple Laudanum* may be given according to Diſcretion, becauſe you will then find it of admirable uſe for ſtrengthening the whole Body.

XVIII. Our Author alſo adviſes, that

that if any one, having been ill cured of a Dysentery, should be afflicted with vehement Pains, to restore him to his pristine Health by a repeated course of Bleeding. But this I am sure is an ill way of Cure. I know some who have follow'd it, and know such at the writing hereof, who have by this Method brought upon themselves an *Incurable Rheumatism*, and others a *Dropsy*, which has proved mortal to them. That which performs this effectually, is the constant use of our *Laudanum Cathariticum:* Or if the Patient is young and strong, (after a sufficient time of recovery from the Bloody-Flux,) to take our *Pulvis Rheumaticus* twice a Week, which does the Cure commonly in six or seven Doses, and sometimes in four.

XIX. In order to the methodick Cure, consider, 1. Whether the Patient is strong, and the Disease recent; or that they are very weak, and emaciated, and the Disease stubborn and inveterate. 2. Whether pure Blood comes away; or a purulent Matter bloody, or mix'd with Blood. 3. Whether it is Simple or Malignant; for from these Considerations the rational Method of Cure ought to result.

XX. Where there is strength of Body, and the Disease is recent, our Authors Method of Purging beforehand is commendable, yea necessary, especially if the Disease is Malign, Contagious, or Epidemick. This of *Willis* is a good Purge, *Take choice Rheubarb two Drams; Citron Myrobalans a Dram and half; Red Sanders Cinnamon, ana, a Scruple; infuse all night in equal quantities of Barly-Cinnamon-water and Plantane water; press out strongly, and add to it Cinnamon-water two Drams and a half; mix for a Potion. Sylvius* advises to take *half a Dram, or a Dram, of toasted Rheubarb, adding a little Mechoacan or Jalap if need be, to be made into a Bolus with a little Diascordium:* Or otherwise to make *an Infusion of them in Plantane-water, which may be mix'd with a sufficient quantity of Syrup of Roses solutive.* Others advise to give *raw Rheubarb in Pouder or Bolus from half a Dram to a Dram,* because after it has gently purged, it binds the Bowels again; adding *a little Mechoacan or Jallap* if *Serum* much abounds. Or you may give *Syrup of Roses with Rheubarb, adding to it a Scruple or half a Dram of Rheubarb in Pouder.* Or this Pouder, *Take Rheubarb well dry'd by the Fire eight Drams; Chebul Myrobalans dry'd or toasted five Drams; Mechoacan four Drams; Nutmegs in Pouder two Drams; Mace, Red Rose-leaves in Pouder, ana, a Dram; make all into a Pouder* for twenty Doses to be used as occasion requires. Whence note, that all *Aloetick, Colocynthiack,* and *Scammoniate* Purges are to be avoided in this Disease, because they provoke Bleeding, and corrupt the affected parts.

XXI. After due Purging, absterssive Clysters may be exhibited, more especially if the Pain is great, and much purulent Matter be dejected; because (as they may be composed) they as well heal as absterge, as *Sylvius* has observed. And therefore he makes his Clyster after this manner, *Take Venice Turpentine from half an Ounce to six Drams; Yolk of one large Egg, stir them together till they are perfectly mix'd; then add to it new Cows Milk, somewhat more than blood-warm, from half a Pint to a Pint, and sweeten it with Honey of Roses.* And this he advises to be often given. Or this, *Take Balaustians, Flowers of Hypericon, Leaves of Columbines, Comfrey, Plantane, Sanicle,*

cle, of each a handful; Bistort-root an Ounce; Chalybeat Milk a sufficient quantity; mix and make a Decoction, which reserve. Take Venice Turpentine, Balsam of Peru, ana, three drams; Yolk of one large Hens or Ducks or Turkies Egg; stir them together till they are well mixed, then add thereto of the before reserved Decoction, or for want of it, Broth of a Sheeps-head and Pluck, from three quarters of a Pint to a Pint, which sweeten with Honey or Honey of Roses, and exhibit it something more than blood-warm. If the Pain is extream, dissolve from two to four or six Grains of our *Volatile Laudanum*, and mix with it; or add to it 60 drops of our *Guttæ Vitæ.*

XXII. There are Clysters also of another kind, which may now and then be given in the Course of the Cure, as in the middle and towards the end thereof (as the Physician shall advise) which have power to stop the Flux of the Blood, and strengthen the parts affected, restoring them to their healthful Tone. As that of our Authors, made of *half a Pint of Cows Milk, and an Ounce and half of Venice Treacle.* But this exceeds it, *Take Mutton or Chicken-broth from half a Pint to three quarters of a Pint; choice Brandy from one Ounce to two or three Ounces; Mithridate two or three Drams; Liquid Laudanum from fifteen to thirty drops; mix for a Clyster,* to be repeated as oft as the Physician shall advise. Or this, *Take Sack-Whey from half to three quarters of a Pint; choice Brandy, Honey of Roses, of each two Ounces; Mithridate half an Ounce or six drams; Balsam of Sulphur anisated gut. 20. mix for a Clyster.* Or this, *Take Balsam of Peru three drams; mix it well with the Yolk of an Egg, and add to it Decoctum Ulmi, from half to three quarters of a Pint; Tincture of Catechu made with choice Brandy, from an Ounce to an Ounce and half; Liquid Laudanum from twenty to forty drops;* mix them. All these Clysters, but chiefly the last, are of extraordinary use when the Flux is with pure Blood, and with Pain, and the flowing quantity is great.

XXIII. The Method of Purging; if the Patient is strong and the Disease recent, being declared; it is fit that we now come to teach the young Physician what is to be done, where Purging (by reason of weakness) cannot be admitted. And then Absorbents, to abate the Acrimony of the morbid Matter, first take place. Among things which temper and correct an Acid and Saline Acrimony, *Sylvius* commends *Volatile Oily Salts*, which dull (by reason of their oleaginous Property) the Acrimony and boiling of Choler: So also he advises to *Emulsions made of the four greater cold Seeds, and Poppy-seed, with some proper distilled water, as of Cucumbers, Lettice, Purslane,* &c. Then he give Absorbents made of *Crabs-eys, Crabs-claws, Oister-shells, Pearl, Coral, Chalk, Terra Sigillata,* &c. Which being levigated may be given to a Dram Morning and Evening, in *a Dram or two of Mithridate or Venice Treacle*; or made into *a Bolus with Balsam of Peru*; which thing being given for a day or two, they may then be given only in the Morning, and at Night this *Bolus. Take Venice Treacle or Mithridate a Dram; Laudanum Liquidum Cydoniatum gut. 15 ad 25. mix and make a Bolus* to be given at Bed-time.

XXIV. Strength being a little recover'd by these means, let the Patient (if the Physician sees fit) be purged, with some of the afore prescribed Catharticks, that some,

or

or the chief part of the morbifick Matter may be carried off beforehand; for so the *Specifick Panacæa's* hereafter to be given, will have the more excellent effect. The Purging being over, these Pills may be given, *Take Chio Turpentine two Scruples; Native Cinnabar levigated half a Dram; of our Volatile Laudanum two or three Grains; mix for one Dose*, to be given every Night at Bed-time. Or this Bolus, *Take Balsam of Peru from one to two drams; Native Cinnabar levigated, Catechu in fine Pouder, of each half a dram; our Volatile Laudanum two or three Grains; mix for a Dose*, to be given as aforesaid.

XXV. *If pure Blood* comes away by the Stools, *Laudanum Paracelsi*, or *our Laudanum Volatile* may be given every Night from gr. ij to iv, vj, or viij. by a gradual increase, and that without any hurt or damage; for the power of the Opiate is master'd as it were by the Acidities of the Stomach and Guts; and the Particles of the *Opiate* which are transmitted into the Blood, are cast off again with the Bloody Stools, without any way affecting the Head or Brain. The *Laudanum* being given over Night, this following Clyster may be given the next Morning, *Take Decoctum Hyperici, or Decoctum Ulmi, ten or twelve Ounces; Venice Treacle from half an Ounce to an Ounce; choice Brandy one or two Ounces; mix them.*

XXVI. *If the Stools are more purulent than bloody*, The Intestines ought to be cleansed, 1. with some of the former mentioned Cathartick; then with one of the Clysters at Sect. XXI. aforegoing. After which this Opiate is to be given every Night at Bed-time, *Take Venice Treacle or Mithridate, Balsam of Peru, Native Cinnabar, ana, one Ounce; Thebian Opium in fine Pouder, from a Scruple to half a dram or two Scruples; Camphir in fine Pouder a dram; mix them:* Dose a Dram and half alone or in any proper Vehicle. Or this, *Take Balsam of Peru two drams; Cochenel gr. x. Saffron gr. vj. of our Volatile Laudanum gr. ij ad iv. or more; mix for a Dose.* Or this, *Take Decoctum Ulmi four Ounces; Cinnamon water an Ounce; Tincture of Catechu six drams; of Liquid Laudanum, or our Guttæ Vitæ gut. 25 ad 40. mix for a Dose.*

XXVII. In a simple Dysentery, (after a little cleansing by Cathartick and Absterfive Clysters) Astringents many times times do the work alone. As, *Take Rheubarb toasted, Catechu, fine Sanguis draconis, Pomgranate peels in fine Pouder, ana, one Ounce; Conserve of Red Roses four Ounces; with Syrup of Red Roses make an Electuary;* Dose a Knives pointful morning, noon and night. Or this, *Take Sanguis draconis, Crocus Martis Astringens, Caput Mort of Vitriol washed, Lapis Hæmatitis levigated, Terra Sigillata, Nutmeg in fine Pouder, of each one Ounce; Venice Treacle, Mithridate, ana, four Ounces, with Syrup of Myrtils mix and make an Electuary.* Dose two Drams morning, noon and night, in a Glass of Red Styptick Wine, mix'd with an equal quantity of Smiths Forge-water filtred through brown Paper.

XXVIII. If these things do not, they ought to be given with some Sudorifick, or Vehicle; and a Dose of *Laudanum*, as of our *Guttæ Vitæ* from 30 to 60 drops, or *our Volatile Laudanum a gr. ij ad iv.* or more, ought to be given every night at Bed-time, in some convenient Vehicle, for by this means the Serosities or Humidities of the Blood, are

are diverted and carried another way from the Bowels, which contributes very much to the speedy Cure.

XXIX. *If the Dysentery is Malign or Epidemick*; Sudorificks, Bezoarticks and camphorated Medicaments ought to be administred, as *Tinctura Bezoartica, Tinctura Simplex Camphorata, Electuarium de Ovo, Mithridate or Venice Treacle, mix'd with a quarter part of Pouder of Virginia Snake-root or Contra Yerva, an eighth part of Cochenel, and a twelfth part of Saffron*; which things may be given in the Morning fasting, and at three or four in the Afternoon; then at Bed-time *Laudanum Opiatum Cydoniatum, Laudanum Liquidum* of our Author, or our *Guttæ Vitæ* or *Volatile Laudanum*, or some other proper *Opiate*, ought to be given constantly every day, till the Malignity and Virulency of the Disease is overcome.

XXX. *Dolæus* commends *Oil of Sweet Almonds drawn without fire, with Juice of Citrons*, to be taken often in a day, and continued several days, but first giving toasted Rheubarb; by this one thing he says, he cured above an hundred, when the Disease was Epidemick. This following Electuary he had often used with good success, *Take old Conserve of Red Roses two Ounces; Venice Treacle, Dyacidonium simplex, ana, an Ounce and half; Species Diarrhodon Abbatis half a dram; with Syrup of Citron-peels make an Electuary.* Dose as much as a Chesnut two or three times a day.

XXXI Let the Patient always go to Stool, if possible over the *Caput Mort of the Vitriol of Mars*, because it is said to have an admirable magnetick Virtue, in curing a Dysentery, as Dr. *Michael* in *Miscellanea Curiosa* relates; and withal let a little of *Digby's Sympathetick Pouder* be strewed over the Excrements. See more of this Disease in the third Edition of our *Synopsis Medicinæ*, lib. 5. cap. 6. where we have treated of it more largely.

CHAP. XXIV *Of* VOMITING *and* SPITTING BLOOD

I. SPitting of Blood is accompanied with a Pain and Heat in the Breast, and a certain Feebleness of the whole Body. 2. Bleed to ten Ounces in the right Arm. 3. The next Morning let the Sick take the *Potio Communis Purgativa*, and the same Night a resting Draught *of three Ounces of Black-Cherry-water, and one Ounce of Syrup of Poppies.* 4. Then let him use the following, *Take fine Bole one Ounce: Pouder of Comfrey-roots two drams; Terra Sigillata, Blood-stone, Sanguis Draconis, ana, a Dram, fine white Sugar an Ounce and half; mix and make a Pouder*, Dose one Dram in a Morning, another at five in the Afternoon, and a Dram at Night, drinking four Ounces of the following Decoction after it. 5. *Take Bramble, and Plantane-leaves, Yarrow, ana, a handful; boil them in a fit quantity of Water to a Pint and half; strain, and dissolve therein two Ounces of Syrup of Comfrey; mix for an Apozem or Decoction.* 6. Or let him take six Spoonfuls of the following Tincture, *Take Red Rose leaves six drams; inner Bark of*

half an Ounce; *Plantane-seeds a little bruised three drams*; *Spring water a Quart*; *Spirit of Vitriol a sufficient quantity to give the whole a pleasant sharpness*; *infuse them four hours in a close Vessel with a gentle heat*; *strain, and add thereto Barly Cinnamon water three Ounces*; *and white Sugar a sufficient quantity to make it pleasant to the Taste.* 7. If the Sick has an Aversion against Pouders, let him use the Electuary spoken of in the Chapter *Of the Flux of the Terms*, Chap. IX. Sect. I. §. 5. aforegoing. 8. Let a Clyster be injected every day; and *Diacodium* be taken at Night. 9. Moreover the Sick must bleed again, once, twice, or thrice, according as need repuires, some days being interposed. 10. Also if need be, let him once again repeat *Potio Communis Purgativa*, and observe a cooling and thickning Diet.

SALMON's Comment.

II. It is called in Greek Αιμοπτωσις; in Latin, *Hæmoptysis* and *Hæmoptosis*, *Cruenta spuitio*, *Sputum sanguinis*; in English, *Spitting of Blood*; and is that kind which is called by *Hyppocrates*, Sect. 3. Aph. 29. Αιμαλω πλυσις, and by *Galen*, de Compt. Med. Αιμαλω αναγωγη, a Spitting of Blood from the Breast and Lungs; but chiefly out of the Lungs; from the Vessels and Branches of the *Aspera Arteria*, which go into the Lungs; which Blood being evasated, is voided sometimes by Vomiting, and sometimes by gentle Coughing, and sometimes without, by spitting or hawking only, of which we have discoursed in the third Edition of our *Synopsis Medicinæ*, lib. 4. cap. 23.

III. Consider whether the Patient has been apt afore-time to bleed at Nose, for then it may sometimes by accident, as by lying on the Back in sleeping, run down the Throat into the Stomach, and sometimes, though rarely, into the Lungs, but then it is brought up thick and clodded. If therefore any one spits Blood, who is not used to bleed at Nose, it must come from some parts below, which is to be known by particular Signs: Now if it be from the Lungs, or other parts of the Breast, then the Blood is voided mostly by Coughing, and is frothy: If out of the *Plexus* of the Vessels, it is only at certain times, and it is less in quantity, and mix'd with Lympha. If out of the Stomach or Pancreas, there is a Nauseousness, and it is voided as it were by Vomiting without Coughing.

IV. *The Signs.* The Blood in this Disease is generally sharp, and therefore there always goes before it, or accompanies it, a kind of tickling in the Throat, Heat, and Thirst; If it comes from the *Aspera Arteria*, it comes up by Hawking, with a little Coughing. If it comes from the Head, Pain and Heaviness has gone before, with a tingling of the Ears, and the Blood seems to be at present in an Effervescence or Commotion. If it comes from the Lungs, the Blood is florid and frothy, and it always comes forth with Coughing, but without Pain, and that at certain Intervals. If it is from the breaking of a great Vein or Artery, it flows forth in great quantity, without any observed preceding Cause, and is forc'd up as it were by Vomit, so that whole Basons are filled with it. If it comes from Erosion of any of the smaller Veins or Vessels of the Lungs, caused by a sharp Humour dilacerating them, then it comes by degrees at certain

Intervals,

Intervals, and not in such great abundance, unless (as was said before) some great Vein or Artery be eroded, for then the Flux of Blood is so large, that many times it kills the Patient. If it comes from the *Aspera Arteria*, it comes up with a little Pain and Cough, and is hot and red, and but little in quantity. If it comes from the Stomach, it comes without Coughing, and rather by Vomiting, and is not altogether in so great a quantity as from the Lungs, because it is brought thither from other parts, where by reason of its continuance a while before it is voided, it becomes grumous. If it comes from the Liver, or Spleen, a dull Pain afflicts those parts, and it is brought up by Vomiting; but when it comes from those lower parts, the true place is scarcely to be known by any certain Signs. If it comes into the Stomach from the Pancreas, or the Spleen through the *Vasa Brevia*, it is grumous and inclining to blackness. If it comes from the Rupture of some little Vessel near the Throat, as it sometimes happens upon straining to Hawk, Cough, or Vomit, or in a hot Season of the Year, or from drinking hot Liquors, it is then voided in small quantity at the beginning, and is always thin and red. But if it comes up stinking, mix'd with *Pus* or purulent Matter, with a violent and frequent Cough, it presages a *Phthisis* or Consumption, of which we have already treated, lib. 2. cap. 14. aforegoing.

V. *The Causes.* *Helmont* says the Cause is from the *Archæus* of the Lungs being enraged by the Blood, in respect to its Quantity and Quality, which is indeed the same thing which the *Ancients* have said, though in other words, *viz.* that it is caused by the too great Quantity and Acrimony of the Blood, whereby the mouths of the Vessels are necessarily opened; for that it is plentifully bred, and then made sharp by the immoderate use of Wine, Spices, and hot Meats, Suppression of the Menses, Hæmorrhoids, *&c.* So that from its Acrimony, Discrasy, and too great Effervescence, the Pneumatick Vessels, and Tracheal Arteries are opened, and so the Blood is evasated either by *Anastomosis*, *Diæresis*, *Diabrosis*, or *Diapedesis*, though by this last way I think it is seldom evacuated. An *Anastomosis* may be caused by all things which kindle, heat, or inflame and make it subtil and thin, as violent Exercise and Motion, Running, Leaping, Dancing; also violent Coughing, Vomiting, Crying, Anger, *&c.* the Blood being thereby heated and attenuated, it rushes upon, penetrates, and so opens the Orifices of the Vessels, whereby it is evasated. A *Diæresis* is when the Vessels are perforated, cut, or broken by some puncture, cut, or blow with some Weapon. A *Diabrosis* is when the Vessels and Lungs are eroded or eaten through by any sharp Humour or Matter whether corrosive Salts dissolved, sharp Meats, Medicines, Poisons, acid Drinks, or an acid and Salt Catarrh, falling upon them.

VI. This Acrimony and Sharpness of the Blood seems to arise from acid or sharp Salts dissolved in its Mass, which raises a violent Fermentation or Effervescence in the Blood, putting the Animal Spirits into such Disorders, as to cause an Evacuation of the Blood; and this some Authors will have to be from a duplicate Volatile Salt, *viz.* a Volatile Acid and Alcali, which acting one upon another, violently move the Animals Spirits, and

with them all the various Particles of the Blood, which is made either too sharp, or too fluid, according to the predominant Salt; so that it is certain that an *Hæmoptysis* for the most part proceeds from the too great abundance of *Serum*, which makes the Blood too fluid, or from an Effervescence of a sharp and Volatile Salt which put the Blood into Fusion, and withal by its sharp Particles makes it pierce or eat through its containing Vessels, either by opening the mouths, or by corroding or breaking the small Fibres of the Arteries and Veins, till it makes a sufficient Solution of Continuity, whereby there is a Flux of Blood either greater or lesser, according to the magnitude of the Vessels whose mouths are opened, or whose Fibres are eroded or burst, through the *Impetus*, or violent Motion of the Blood; which now being evasated about the Pneumonick Vessels, it enters into the Cavities of the Lungs, and there irritating their Fibres, stimulates them to Expulsion.

VII. *The Prognosticks.* It is not of so evil a consequence, if upon the Rupture of an Artery or Vein in the Lungs, the Blood be presently voided, as it is, if it falls upon, or into the substance of the Lungs, and be kept there; for so it may cause a *Peripneumonia*, or Inflamation of the Lungs, and by continuance putrify, and at last corrupt and exulcerate the substance of the Lungs, and so cause a Consumption, which is very dangerous, by reason the Lungs being in continual motion, are very difficult to heal. If a breach is in a great Artery of the Lungs, the danger is great, because of an immediate Suffocation, through the great abundance of the evasated Blood, which is sometimes to the filling of whole Basons, so that the Patient dyes in the time of the Effusion. Spitting of Blood, following the Spitting of *Pus*, shews also danger, for it shews an Ulcer of the Lungs. If it is from the Suppression of the Menses in Women, or out of the Stomach in such as have Strength, Youth, and a good Constitution withal, it is most dangerous. If it continues long, and will not yield to proper Medicines, and there be also a Cough, it presages a Consumption, and it is so much the worse Scorbutick, Cachectick, or of an ill habit of Body. Wounds of the great Vessels of the Lungs are usually mortal; and if of the small Vessels they are dangerous. If it is critical, or without a Fever, it is safe; but with an Hiccough, or accompanied with Convulsions, Faintings, or Swoonings, the danger is not small.

VIII. *The Diet.* The Air ought to be temperate, pure and clear, rather inclining to cold, for an hot Air acuates the subtil particles of the Salts which are injurious to the Lungs and their Vessels; and a too intense and cold Air, excites Coughing, and puts the Lungs into great Perturbations. The Food ought to be cooling, and withal glutinous, not acid or salt, such as Milk, Milk and Water, boil'd Barly, Barly-cream, Rice, Sheep, Calves and Kids-feet, Pigs Feet, Rice-Milk, Oatmeal-gruel, with Grey-fish boil'd in it, small Birds, Pigeons, Partridge, young Rabbits, Veal, Lamb, *&c.* but Meats sharp, salt, spiced, Pickles, and such as are hard of Digestion, are to be avoided; Fruits, as Pippins, Pearmains, Pears, Medlars, Quinces, baked or preserv'd Damsons may be eaten; so also Endive, Succory, Lettice, Purslane, Cucumbers, Melons, *&c.* Let the Drink be Water, or Small-Beer, Milk-water, Milk and Water (if the Stomach will bear it) Barly-water

water or Broth, Mead, Almond-Milk; but all strong stale Beer, strong and rich Wines, Rhenish and Spanish are to be avoided, unless now and then a Glass of Styptick red Wine, or the same Wine, mix'd with Water. *Rest* and *moderate Sleeping* are good; Shouting, Crying aloud, Laughing, and Singing are to be avoided, for sometimes an incurable Rupture of the Vessels of the Lungs may be caused thereby: So also Leaping, Jumping, Running violently, Riding whether on Horse-back or in a jolting Coach, all which are very prejudicial. The Belly ought to be kept soluble; and all violent Passions of the Mind, as Anger, Fear, sudden Joy, Scolding, Fretting, *&c.* are to be laid aside.

IX. *The Cure* Our Author advises first to Bleeding; but that certainly weakens the Body intolerably, especially if the Spitting of Blood has been of long continuance, or the Patient is in a Consumption. And Purging is wholly opposite to the Intention, because it too much troubles the *Viscera*, and puts them into motions pernicious to the Cure. His Styptick, also, does not always answer the desired End, because it enters not into the Mass of Blood, which in this case is for the most part in fault: This following Pouder is much more effectual, *Take Catechu a Scruple; Jesuits Bark sixteen Grains; Henbane-seed, Poppy-seed, ana, eight Grains; Opium in fine Pouder one Grain; mix for a Dose*, to be repeated once or twice a day, according as the Urgency and Necessity may require. It may be given in this Decoction, *Take Red Port Wine a Quart; Spring-water a Pint; of the Cortex in gross Pouder two Ounces; Pomgranate-peels in gross Pouder, Cinnamon, ana, an Ounce; Balaustians half an Ounce; infuse close covered for an hour and half in Balneo or Sand, or some other gentle heat; then boil for a quarter of an hour, and strain out for eight Doses* There is nothing more rectifies the *Discrasy* of the *Blood* and *Lympha*, then the *Cortex* and *Opium*; and till that is done, the prime cause of an *Hæmoptysis* will not be taken away.

X. But after all, the greatest Specifick yet known (setting *Opiates* aside) is our *Tinctura Mirabilis* (the Preparation of which see in our *Pharmacopœia Chirurgica*) given from half a Spoonful to two Spoonfuls at a time, according to the Age and other Accidents of the Patient. It admirably stops the greatest Flux of Blood by the Mouth, that ever I met withal, and that almost upon the Spot; which I question whether any other Medicine in the World can do besides. I speak what I have found true experimentally, I believe above an hundred times.

XI. If the Patient cannot take a Pouder, and the former Tincture should not do, (which I scarcely ever found fail) you must then come to the use of *Opiates*, as of our *Landanum Volatile*, *Specifick Laudanum*, our *Guttæ Vitæ*, or our *Tinctura Opii*, the Preparation of which see in our *Pharmacopœia Chirurgica*. The *first and second* of which may be given *a gr. ij ad iij, iv, or vj.* The *Guttæ Vitæ a gut.* 30 *ad* 40, 50 *or* 60. and the *Tinctura Opii, a gut. xv ad xxv or xxx.* in the Decoction of the *Cortex*, afore described.

XII. Our Author advises a Clyster to be injected every day, ; but this is needless, unless there be a great Costiveness of Body: And then when it is required, you may give *a Pint of Posset-drink with two Ounces of brown Sugar, and an Ounce of Lenitive Electuary dissolved in it.*

After which at Bed-time, you may give a Dose of *Laudanum* either *Liquid* or *Solid*, or in place thereof, a Dose of our Author's *Diacodium*, from an Ounce to an Ounce and half, or more, in *Decoctium Ulmi*, as the Physician shall advise.

XIII. If the Patient has continually spit Blood, and that for a long time, our Authors Secondary Course of Bleeding must positively be forborn (unless you will bring the Patient into *an incurable Consumption*, or a *Dropsie*, both which I have known to follow upon such unaccountable Bleeding) for the Course I have directed, if pursued, will I doubt not effect the Cure desired. And as to the Purging part, it ought also to be done with Caution; instead of the *Potio Purgativa*, I should advise rather to our *Sal Panaretum*, or *Sal Mirabile*, because they cool the Lungs and whole Body, as well as carry off the Acid Serosities, and answer the very Intention it self, of stopping the Blood.

XIV. If the Blood flows very fast, apply strong Ligatures to the Hands and Feet to stop it, and presently give a Spoonful of *Tincture of Catechu* in a Glass of *Barabar Wine mix'd with an equal quantity of Smiths Forge-water filtred through brown Paper*; or, *Syrup of Coral an Ounce, mix'd with Crocus Martis a Dram*, in the same Vehicle. *Willis* commends this, *Take Waters of Water-Lilly, Plantane, Purslane, Oak-buds, ana, three Ounces; Blood-stone levigated, fine Dragons blood, ana, half a Dram; Sugar-Candy enough to sweeten it.* Then he commends a Solution of common Vitriol of Mars in fair Water, taken inwardly to give an immediate stop to it; if these things do not, he uses gentle Narcoticks, especially *Diacodiates*, because they immediately thicken, and stop the Fermentation of the Blood. *Sylvius* commends cooling Juleps and Opiates, as, *Take Barly-water twenty Ounces; Syrup of Violets two Ounces; Oil of Sulphur, enough to give it a pleasing Acidity; mix them. Take Melon Seeds, White Poppy Seeds, ana; with Plantane-water make an Emulsion, which sweeten with Sugar-Candy.*

XV. If the former things will do nothing, you must come to *stronger Opiates*, as, *Take Juice of Purslane an Ounce; Lettice-water three Ounces; Poppy-water an Ounce and half; Syrup of Coral and Red Roses, ana, an Ounce; Laudanum Liquidum gut. 25. mix for a Dose.* Or this, *Take Roch Alum, Vitriol of Mars, Saccharum Saturni, ana, two Ounces; pure Wine Vinegar, Spirit of Vitriol, Smiths Forge-water, ana, four Ounces; mix, digest, and extract a Tincture.* Dose *à gut. 25 ad 40. in Smiths Forge-water*, mix'd with an equal quantity of *Barabar Wine.* Or you may give our *New London Treacle à gr. vj ad x, or xx*, according to Age and other Accidents. *Our Volatile Laudanum*; or, *our Specifick Laudanum, à gr. j ad iij, iv, vj*, or more, as the Discretion of the Physician shall advise. Or you may give our *Guttæ Vitæ à gut. xx ad lx*, or more, in any proper Liquor; and afterwards, the Flux being stop'd, to prevent its return, these *Opiates* (which of them you shall think most proper) are to be given every Night at Bed-time, till the Patients Health is sufficiently established.

XVI. In some Constitutions *Mineral Narcoticks* do much better, as *Helmont* his *Narcotick Sulphur of the Vitriol of Mars*, which is indeed one of the most excellent things. Or our *Impetus Martis*, which we think is inferiour to no other Medicament in the World. It may be given à *gut. ad* 30, 40, *even to* 60. upon great Occasions or urgent Necessity;

sity; and after some time of using it, it may be given Morning and Night in a *Tincture of Catechu* made with Water, or in a Glass of *Smiths Forge-water* filtred through brown Paper: Or in a Glass of *Barabar* or *Barcelona* Wine, or any other Red Styptick Wine, mix'd with an equal quantity of the said *Forge-water*.

XVII. *The second Intention of this Cure is, to heal the Solution of Unity, or to conglutinate the ruptur'd Vessels, or close the open Mouths of the Veins and Arteries*; and this is done by proper Vulneraries and Balsamicks. *Take Fluelin, Speedwell, Sanicle, Plantane, ana, a handful; Comfrey, Red Roses, ana, half a handful; Hull'd Barley, Figs, Raisons of the Sun, ana, an Ounce; Smiths Forge-water two Quarts or five Pints; boil and strain out; to which add Vitriol of Mars half a Dram; which sweeten with Syrup of Myrtle, or of dryed Roses; mix them*; and let the Sick often take thereof.

XVIII. Or this, *Take Catechu, Crocus Martis Astringens, Sanguis Draconis, Crabs-eyes levigated, ana, a Dram; Lapis Hæmatitis levigated, Red Coral levigated, Roch Alum, ana, half a Dram; Pouder of Thebian Opium 21 Grains; white Poppy-seed half an Ounce; Sugar Penids an Ounce and half; make a Pouder.* Dose one Dram at Bed-time in Decoction of Comfrey-roots. Or this, *Take Crabs-eyes levigated four Drams; Pouder of Comfrey-roots, Native Cinnabar levigated, ana, two Drams; Roch Alum in fine Pouder, Sal Prunellæ in Pouder, ana, one Dram; with Chio Turpentine a sufficient quantity make a Mass for Pills:* Dose one Dram Morning and Night. Or this, *Take Poppy and Purslane-waters, ana, two Ounces; best White wine Vinegar one Ounce; Cinnamon half an Ounce; Catechu, Roch Alum, ana, a Dram; Sanguis Draconis, Narcotick Sulphur of Vitriol, ana, half a Dram; Laudanum Specificum gr. iv. Syrup of Red Roses two or three Ounces; mix them*; of which let the Sick take a Spoonful now and then.

XIX. This is excellent, *Take Minera Martis in fine Pouder three Ounces; Catechu, Blood-stone levigated, ana, one Ounce; mix, and with dulcified Spirit of Nitre or Vitriol, make a Tincture.* Dose from twenty to sixty drops or more in some proper Vehicle. Or this following Decoction, *Take roots of Cink-foil, of Tormentil, of Comfrey, of Madder, of each an Ounce; leaves of Angelica, Avens, Agrimony, Bawm, Ladies Mantle, Speedwell, Sanicle, Yarrow, ana, half a handful; Balaustians, Red Roses, Pomgranate-peels, ana, two Pugills; Cetechu, Coffee-pouder, ana, half an Ounce; boil them in three Quarts or something more of water, to the consumption of a Pint or something more, strain out and dulcifie with Syrup of Myrtle, or of Red Roses,* to be used for the purpose aforesaid; and for the Patient to drink of also, now and then, at other times.

XX. This is of good use, *Take Mithridate six Ounces; Catechu in fine Pouder, Pouder of Comfrey-roots, of Madder-roots, Crabs-eyes levigated, Native Cinnabar levigated, ana, one Ounce; Roch Alum in fine Pouder, white Poppy-seeds, ana, half an Ounce; with Diacodium a sufficient quantity, mix and make an Electuary.* Or this, *Take Native Cinnabar levigated, Crocus Martis Astringens, Lapis Hæmatitis levigated, Catechu, ana, one Ounce; Terra Sigillata, fine Bole, Sanguis Draconis, ana, two Drams; Roch Alum, one Dram; Narcotick Sulphur of Vitriol of Mars, fine Pouder of Thebian Opium, ana, half a Dram; make a Pouder:* Dose one Dram Morning and Night in a little of the following Mixture, *Take Syrup of Comfry, Syrup of Red Poppies, Diacodium, ana, two Ounces; Syrup of*

Red Roses one Ounce; *Damask Rose-water half a Pint*; *mix them.*

XXI. A Vulnerary, or Agglutinating Balsam, *Take Balsam of Peru four Ounces*; *Chio Turpentine, Native Cinnabar levigated, ana, one Ounce*; *Olibanum, Mastich, of each in fine Pouder three Drams*; *Myrrh in fine Pouder a Dram and half*; *Nutmeg in fine Pouder one Dram*; *fine Pouder of Thebian Opium half a Dram, mix them.* Dose a Dram to a Dram and half Morning and Night, washing it down in a little of the afore described Decoction at Sect. XIX.

CHAP. XXV. *Of a* DIABETES.

I. THE Juices which are brought into the Blood, being crude and undigested, seek away forth through the Urinary Ducts, by which means the Strength gradually decays, the Body is melted or dissolved, and the Substance in a manner drained out, by reason of this Weakness. 2. This Distemper is accompanied with Thirst, burning Heat of the Bowels, Swelling of the Loins and Haunches, and often Spitting of frothy Spittle. We advise to the same things which 3. are prescribed in the Discourse *Of the Whites in Women*, Chap. X. aforegoing, Bleeding and Purging being only omitted.

SALMON's Comment.

II. It is called in Greek, Διαβήτης; in Latin, *Diabetes*, and *Hydrops ad Matulam*; and in English also, *Diabetes*, or *Continual Pissing*; which is when one cannot hold his Water, but it runs from him without stay, or, almost as fast as the Sick drinks, without changing colour: It is indeed a frequent and plentiful making of Water with the Consumption of the whole Body, arising from a dissolved Salt, which precipitates the Grumous parts of the Blood from the Serum. There is also *Incontinency of Urine*, which I take to be a Species of this Disease.

III. *The Signs.* It is known by sight, from the almost continual desire of Pissing, and from the great quantity of Water which is piss'd forth, being sometimes four, six, eight, ten, yea and sometimes twelve times as much in a day as is drank; but when the Disease comes to those Extremities it is very dangerous, and commonly kills in two or three days time. The Urine also grows sweet in taste, being divested of its Saline parts: Some Authors say it has a Sugar or Honey-like Sweetness, but this I never found, though I have had more than an Hundred Patients in cure of this Disease, all whose Urines I have sometimes caused the Nurse or Servant, and sometimes the Patients own self to taste, who have always told me, that the Urine has had no taste, or that it tasted sweet like Milk: But the Urine when it drys upon the Shirt, or some Linnen Cloth, when it has been thorough dry, has been stiff, as if it had been dip'd in sugar'd or honied Water, which thing may have given occasion to that report; yet I do not deny the thing impossible for the Urine to be of a Honey-like Sweetness, but it has been my mishap never to see it, notwithstanding my so careful observation of the Water. In this Disease there is not a continual Pissing, but a very often desire to do it, which is very troublesome; however I have heard now and

and then of a Patient who has had a continual dripping, so that they have been forc'd to have an Urinal-Glass tyed or hung up to the Yard, for the Urine to drop into. When the Disease gathers strength, and has almost overcome Nature, that the Danger is manifest, the Pulses grow low, and cannot hardly be felt to beat; there is a confusion of the Brain, so that the Man is as if he was always in Drink, or out of order in his Head, upon which a Stagnation of the Blood and Lympha comes on, and with it Death, the whole Body being first very much consumed, or wasted and fallen away.

IV. *The Causes.* It is caused through the Tone of the Blood being lost, wherein the strict joynting of the *Grumous parts with the Serum*, is in a manner dissolved, either from Weakness of the concoctive Faculty of the Stomach and other Bowels, or from Medicines taken inwardly, which too much dilute the Blood; or from a drinking too great quantities of Thea, and such other Aqueous Diuretick Liquors; or from a too much and a long continuance of drinking cold Water, by which not only the Blood is too much loosened, but the passages too much dilated and chil'd, wherewithal, there comes upon the Patient a Weakness of the Sphincter Muscle of the Bladder, being a kind of *Paralysis* of that part.

V. *Galen* says it is caused by a hot Intemperature of the Reins, which makes them draw much *Serum* from the Emulgents. *Aretæus* and some others, say it is from a cold Intemperature of the Reins, which weakens the retentive Faculty. Some say it is caused from the Tone of the Kidneys being hurt. *Aetius* says, that besides Heat, there is an Afflux of sharp Humours, or of bilious and Salt Humours, which continually stimulate the Reins to Expulsion. But *Paracelsus* says, it is caused through the Dissolution of a dry Salt, through the mixture of another acute or sharp Salt, whereby it becomes permanent and fixed in the middle or center of the principal part or Reins: Or, it may proceed from the Stupefaction of the parts by a Narcotick Sulphur. *Helmont* says, that Incontinency of Urine is caused from a Paralysis of the Muscle of the Bladder. *Willis* says, it is caused from the Dissolution and over-lax Frame of the Blood, whereby it loses its *Serum* before it has done its office. This Laxity proceeds from the want of Salt, by reason of which (through the mixture of some sulphureous Particles from the Colliquation of the solid parts) the Urine comes to have a sweet taste. And *Sylvius* says, the Disease arises from a sharp Volatile Salt, either received from without or inbred in the parts. Without doubt it may be caused from a peculiar acid Salt separating the Grumous parts of the Blood from the Serum, as also in part from the too much inlarged passages or Pores, at the bottom of the Stomach leading to the *Omentum*, through which all the Humidities are thought immediately to pass to the Reins.

VI. *The Prognosticks. Incontinency of Urine* and the *Diabetes*, are very difficult to be cured. If *an Incontinency of Urine* be inveterate, and it happens to old People, or comes from a Palsie, it is incurable: But if it happens to Children or People in full strength, from deep Sleep, or from an External Cause, or change of Diet, it may in length of time admit of Cure.

A *Diabates* is easiest to be cured in Children and young People; but if it happens in old Age, or be inveterate, it is very rarely cured. If the Pulse begins to grow languid, it is dangerous; but if it ceases, and the Blood begins to stagnate, and there be a Confusion of the Brain, tho' I will not say the Patient is absolutely incurable, yet the danger is very great, and the hopes of Cure but small. I have some few years since, perform'd this Cure in a very antient Gentleman Sir *W. W.* of about Fourscore Years of Age, with some particular Specificks.

VII. *The Diet.* In a Diabetes and Incontinency of Urine, the Air ought to be dry and pure; the Food and Drink Thickning, Astringent and Nutritive; Wine may be allowed, provided it is of a Red Styptick Wine, such as *Barabar*, *Barcelona*, and the like: Water and thin and cold Drinks are to be avoided. Sleep is to be moderate, but not lying on the Back. Rest and Quietness are to be indulged; and all the vehement Passions of the Mind to be avoided.

VIII. *The Cure.* In a *Diabetes*, the Tone of the Reins and other Bowels are to be restored: The Fluidity of the Juices is to be abated by Anodyns or Opiates, as both *Paracelsus* and *Helmont* rightly affirm. The sharp Volatile Salts are to be contemperated, by Milks, Emulsions Absorbents and things Mucilaginous. *In Incontinency of Urine*, Antiparalyticks and Astringents are to be administred, and after them Opiates and Specificks.

IX. In a *Diabates* therefore, things Astringent are not only to be given, but such also which may restore the Tone of the Parts, which have a Power of heating, warming, comforting and invigorating the Blood and Lympha, as also the Stomach, Liver, Reins, and other *Viscera*; for which reason a sort of strong and generous Wine, as are all your red Styptick Wines, is always to be drank at Meals, chiefly your Spanish Red Wines which are Astringent; forbearing all thin and Diuretick Wines, and Liquors, and all such as are cold and small, as small Beer, Thea, Mead, Cyder, fair Water, *&c.* as deadly Poyson.

X. Let the Sick take every Morning fasting this, *Take Tinctura Mirabilis a Spoonful or Spoonful and half; choice Tent or new Canary four Ounces; mix for a Dose.* An hour or something better after, let the Sick take a Dish of Ising-glass Gelly made with half *Barabar Wine*, or half *Canary* and half *Oak-Bud-water*, and sweetned with double refined Sugar for Breakfast; or which is yet better, *a Dish of strong Sago*, made with *Tent and Oak-bud Water* as before directed, and sweetned with *Syrup of Comfrey.* At five in the Afternoon, repeat the former Dose of the *Tinctura Mirabilis*; and Sup again with a Dish of the *Ising-glass Gelly*, or with *a Dish of Sago.*

XI. At Night going to Bed, let the Sick take of our *Specifick Laudanum*, or of our *Volatile Laudanum*, from two to four Grains, drinking after it in a little Glass of *Alicant*, *Barabar*, *Barcelona*, *Tent*, or *new Canary*, this following Pouder, *Take Cathecu a Scruple; White Henbane-seed, Pomgranate peels, Jesuits Bark, ana, gr. x. each being in fine Pouder; mix them together for a Dose*, the use of which continue during the whole course of the Cure.

XII. I know some commend the use of the *Bristol-water* in this case, which possibly may have perform'd in many, I have known it fail in some,

some, even to the loss of the Patients lives. *Slip-Curds* of new Milk, such as the best new Milk Cheese is made of, is a singular Food in this Disease; so also *Stroakings of Cows Milk*, and *Sheeps and Goats Milk*; and all these, more especially if *thickned with Eggs*, being daily and constantly eaten for some time, have cured the Disease alone, without any other Remedies, but this whilst the Distemper has been recent, and the Patient has had a strength of Body withal. *Milk thickned also with Sago*, is of extraordinary force: These things can scarely fail of performing, if proper *Opiates* be given with them, because they absolutely stop the Fluxion, by thickning all the Juices, and frustrating the Separation of the differing Particles of the Blood. *New Cheese made of new Milk*, and *Cream Cheese*, being eaten with *White Ship-Biscake* are astringent, and admirable Food, contributing much to the Cure.

XIII. *Incontinency of Urine*, if it proceeds from a *Paralysis*, Neuroticks with Astringents are to be exhibited; if from a Laxity of the *Sphincter Muscle*, and over Extension of the Fibres, heating, drying and astringent Antiparaliticks will be proper; *Blood-stone* levigated may be given with a few drops of *Oil of Mastick wood*, or *Oil of Sassafras* and *Cinnamon*. Pouders of *Xylo Aloes*, *Mastick wood*, *and the Sanders*, are accounted among the Specificks: So also the *Pouder of a burnt Toad*, *the Ashes of a Hedghog*, *Hens Gizards*, *and Goats Bladders*, *dryed in an Oven and reduced to a Pouder*; the *Flowers of Pomgranates*, *Pomgranate-peels*, *Cathecu*, and *Sanguis Draconis*, in fine Pouder; any of these things may be given from half a Dram to a Dram Morning and Night in a *Bolus* made of the *Pulp of Briar Heps*, or mix'd with *Mithridate* or *Venice Treacle* and so swallowed, and then wash'd down with a Glass of *Alicant Barabar Wine*, *Tent* or *new Canary*, which last has a peculiar Property in stopping a Flux of Urine. See more of a *Diabetes* in the third Edition of our *Synopsis Medicinæ*, lib. 5. cap. 53.

CHAP. XXVI. *Of the* STONE *in the* REINS.

I. THE Signs are these; 1. A fixed Pain in the Region of the Loins, bloody Urine, voiding of Sand or Stones, Numbedness of the Leg on the side of the afflicted Kidney. 2. There is a drawing up of the Testicle of the same side in which the Pain is felt, a loathing at Stomach, and Vomiting. 3. There is a near resemblance between this Disease and the Colick, but they differ in some particular Symptoms, the which you may read in Chap. XVIII. aforegoing, *Of the Bilious Colick*.

II. If the Sick is of a Sanguine Constitution or Habit of Body, bleed ten Ounces in the Arm, answering to the affected Kidney. 2. Then let a Gallon of Posset-drink be made, in which let be boiled two Ounces of Marshmallow-roots, which let the Patient presently drink. 3. And let the following Clyster be injected, *Take Roots of Marsh-mallows*, *and Lillies*, *of each one Ounce*; *Leaves of Mallows*, *of Pellitory of the Wall*, *Bears-Breech*, *and Camomil-flowers*, *of each one handful*; *Linseed and Fænugreek-seed*, *of each half an Ounce*; *make a Decoction in a fit quantity of Water*, *which boil to a Pint and half for a Clyster*.

III.

III. After the coming away of the Vomit and Clyster, let a large Dose of *Liquid Laudanum*, viz. ad gut. xxv. or *Matthew*'s Pill to gr. xv or xvj be given. 2. If the Sick be ancient, or one who is much weakned by the length of the Distemper, or an old Woman subject to Vapours, (especially if at the beginning of the Fit, she void black and gravelly Urine) then forbear Bleeding; but in all other things proceed according to the Rules before delivered.

SALMON's Comment.

IV. This Disease is called in Greek Διάβασις τῆς νεφρῶν; in Latin, *Calculus Renum, & Dolor Nephriticus*; in English, *The Stone in the Reins*. It is a sense of Pain or Compression in the Kidnies, occasioned by Sand, Gravel, or a Stone sticking or growing in those parts, which hurting the Fibres by their Hardness, Irregularity, Angulosity, or Magnitude, at length vellicate the Parts, and so cause a Sensation of vehement Pain.

V. *The Parts affected* are the Reins chiefly; but by consent, the Ureters, Vesica or its Neck, Urethra, and Glans, or Nut of the Yard. This Disease many times is very much like the *Colick*, but it is distinguish'd from it, because the Pain continues fix'd in one place: Moreover in the *Colick*, the Urine at first is turbid; whereas in the Stone it is clear; but in length of time gives a thick and troubled Sediment, with Slime, Sand, Gravel, and a small Stone or Stones.

VI. *The Signs*. The Stone in the Reins is known by a fix'd, and at first dull Pain in the lower part of the Back; and at beginning of the Fit, the Urine is thin and watery, and sometimes of a bloody colour, and in process of time there is voiding of Sand, Gravel, and small Stones, with an acute Pain in the Ureters, as also in the Neck of the Bladder, Urethra and Glans, by consent from the Branches of Nerves replenishing those parts; there is also a Nauseousness of the Stomach, and Vomiting for the most part attending the same, with a Numbness in the Thigh, and sometimes a pricking Pain in the Inside, which is almost continual from a like consent of the Nervous parts. And when that Gravel or Stone is removed out of the Reins, and falls into the Ureters or other Urinary parts, more especially if it is large, rough and angulous, whereby it is made apt to prick and hurt the Membranes in its passage, it causes an increase of the Pain, with very acute Paroxysms, Sickness at Heart, and Vomiting, and sometimes the voiding of a viscous or mucilaginous or slimy Matter, as well as Sand or Gravel.

VII. *It is known from the Stone in the Bladder*, because that in the Bladder is not attended with that fix'd Pain in the Reins, but the Pain lies towards the Pubes, with an Itching sometimes, and a Pain in the Neck of the Bladder and Urethra which is continued to the Glans or Nut of the Yard, with a certain Stoppage of Urine which is common to the Stone in both parts. This is very painful also, the Urine is often troubled and as white as Milk; and if the Stone is loose and not wrap'd up in a mucilaginous Slime, the Patient oftentimes feels the Stone remove from one part or side of the Bladder to another, which if the Patient is searched with a Catheter, may easily be felt. The greatness of the Pain is according to the magnitude of the Stone, which is always worse after much Walking or Riding, or much exercise of the Body, still daily growing worse and worse, there is a Difficulty and Pain in making

ing Water both in the *Urethra* and *Glans*, and generally a white glutinous Slime is voided with the Urine, which is also sometimes of a bloody colour; and if the Patient is not Costive in Body, but rather Loose, at making Water, there is an aptness to go to Stool. See the third Edition of our *Synopsis Medicinæ*, lib. 5. cap. 40.

VIII. *Particular Symptoms.* There are many times attendent upon these Diseases the five following Symptoms. *viz.* 1. *A Disury.* 2. *a Stranguary.* 3. *An Ischury.* 4. *An Inflamation of the Reins.* 5. *An Inflamation of the Bladder.* These are all peculiar Diseases of themselves when alone; but when attended upon the Stone, are then only Symptoms of a Disease, and so they are taken here.

IX. 1. Δυσυρία, *Dysuria, Urina Fervens, a Scalding of the Urine*, is evident from the Inflamation, Heat, and Burning of the Urine in making of Water, whether little or much, it is always with Pain, but without any Stoppage; it is caused from a hurt of the Tone of the Reins and other Urinary parts, by reason of the Stone or some other cause. See our *Synopsis Medicinæ* lib. 5. cap. 47. the third Edition.

X. 2. Στραγγυρία, *Stranguria, Urinæ Stillicidium, a Pissing by drops:* It is for the most part with Heat and Pain (but it may be also without Pain, which is rare) and is a continual Irritation of the Expulsive Faculty of the Bladder to make Water, which comes away only by drops, or little and little, and is caused either by the Stone or from a vitious acid Humour, or a Disaffection of the Sphincter Muscle, or a Weakness of the Retentive Faculty. See the third Edition of our *Synopsis Medicinæ*, lib. 5. cap. 48.

XI. 3. Ἰσχυρία, *Ischuria, Urinæ Suppressio, A total Stoppage of Urine.* It differs only in degree from the Stranguary, this being a total Suppression of making Water, sometimes with great Pain and Anguish, and many times a Fever, caused by a stopping up the Passages by a Stone filling them, or some other Matter which is Viscous, or for want of Serum, or the hurt of the Ferment of the Kidneys, or Depravation of of their Tone. You may know whether it proceeds from the Stone in the Reins or Stone in the Bladder, by the Swelling or not Swelling of the Bladder in the Stoppage of Urine. If it comes not from the Stone, it must be from the Abolition of the attractive Faculty of the Reins and Ureters, or from a cold Intemperature, or Obstruction of the parts, by viscid Humours, or Obstruction or Paralysis of the Nerve which communicates Sense to those parts; or the Disorder and Diversion of the Spirits, whereby the Bladder becomes insensible of the Provocation to Urine, and so endeavours not to void it, as it falls out in a Lethargy and other sleepy Diseases, a Frenzy, Delirium, *&c.* See the third Edition of our *Synopsis Medicinæ*, lib. 5. cap. 94.

XII. 4. Φλεγμονὴ τῶν Νεφρῶν, *Inflamatio Renum, an Inflamation of the Reins.* It is a kind of dull, heavy throbbing Pain, in the lower parts of the Back, attended with Heat, a continual Fever, Headach, Sickness at Stomach, Nauseousness, vehement Thirst and Restlesness. The Urine is hot and painful, and it is troublesome to lye either on one side, or on the Back; nor can the Patient turn or raise himself without Pain. It is caused either from the Stone, or Gravel, or Tar-

tarous

Matter hurting some of the Vessels; or from Extravasation, Stagnation, or Coruption of the Blood therein; or from Acrimony and Thinness of the Blood. See the third Edition of our *Synopsis Medicinæ*, lib. 5. cap. 36.

XIII. 5. Φλεγμονὴ τ κυστεῶς, *Inflamatio Vesicæ*, *Inflamation of the Bladder.* It is a Tumour in the Neck of the Bladder, caused by sharp and vehement Pains; the Heat and Pain is felt above the *Pubes*, as also in the *Perinæum*, with Redness and Heat, a Fever, and the other Symptoms in the former Section; there is also some Suppession of Urine, with a great desire of Pissing: The Urine is high coloured, little in quantity, and made with Heat and Pain; the Belly is Costive, and there is also a *Tenesmus* with a Redness in the parts adjacent. This Inflamation is either in the *Sphincter Muscle*, or in the space beyond it. It is caused either by a Fluxion of Blood into the part, or by an Atraction of it thither by irritating the part by a Stone sticking therein, or sharp Humours flowing thither, or a long Retention of the Urine. See the third Edition of our *Synopsis Medicinæ*, lib. 5. cap. 41.

XIV. *The Causes of the Stone.* *Paracelsus*, That Oracle of Medicinal Learning, says, that the Stone is bred of a Tartar, or Tartarous Matter in the Blood and Urine; that is, of a Mucilage or Slime, which in its Original, is the Essence of a Stone, or of a stony Concretion: How great a Truth this is, daily Experience does witness: If this was not so, how is it possible that Children two or three Years old, which have been cut of the Stone, have had Stones taken out of them weighing two or three Ounces, which I have seen; and one who was but four Years old, being cut, had a Stone taken out as large as a small Hens Egg. And *Helmont* says, that it is caused by a tartarous fæculent slimy Matter which is coagulated, and that the Coagulator is present in the Urine; and is either sent into the Bladder, or bred there. *Sylvius* says, that a red calculous Urine is caused by an acid, acrimonious Humour; and that though the Urine be made clear, yet when it is cold, that Sand, Gravel or Tartar, will settle to the bottom and sides of the Pot, generally red or yellow, but seldom white, and that it daily grows larger in the Reins or Bladder, gradually increasing, till it grows to a great Stone, unless it be constantly voided: He thinks not that Heat is the cause of this Concretion of the Stone, but rather hinders it, because Gravel never settles in the Pot, till the Urine is cold. Others say, that a Volatile Acid Spirit is the Cause of the Concretion of the Stone; for *Tachenius* says, abstract the Volatile Acid Spirit from the Stone, and it becomes a soft Pouder, or Mucilage; and pour the said volatile acid Spirit upon it again, and it will reassume its pristine Hardness. See more of this matter in our *Medicina Practica*, lib. 1. cap. 19. Sect. 4. ad 11. where you may have abundant satisfaction.

XV. *The Prognosticks.* Children, Youth, and young Men, are most subject to the Stone in the Bladder, which if it is large, there is no other Cure for it but Cutting: And old Men and Women are mostly troubled with the Stone in the Reins, which is indeed a dreadful Disease, and if hereditary and in old Persons, incurable. *Hyppocrates*, Sect. 6. Aph. 6. According to the magnitude and roughness of the Stone, such is the Pain, which if it is very great, it will cause an Inflamation of

of the part, or a Fever, or both. If it wounds the Kidney, it creates an Ulcer, with pissing of Blood, which is very dangerous, and will scarcely yield to any Remedy. If the Stone removes out of the Reins, and sticks in the Ureter, it causes a most exquisite Pain, and for the most part Death. If the Face is pale, and the Sick in a cold Sweat, with a weak or no Pulse, Faintings and Convulsions, Death is at hand. When the Urine is first clear, and afterwards grows thick, or there comes away plenty of Sand, Gravel, small Stones, or much tartarous Mucilage, or the Urine leaves Gravel or calculous Matter sticking to the Pot, the Patient having some Relaxtion of Pain withal, there may be some hopes of Cure.

XVI. *The Diet.* The Air ought to be Temperate and Serene; the Food easie of Digestion, slippery, and free from Acerbity and Stypticity. The Drink ought to be thin, clear, and a little absterstive, as White Port and Lisbon Wines, Mead, Metheglin, a fine white Water-gruel, Barly-broth, sometimes simple of themselves, and sometimes mix'd with White-wine, also an Infusion of *Lignum Nephriticum*, *Winter-Cherries*, *Daucus-seeds*, *Parsly*, *Hydropiper*, &c. made with half Wine half Water. Exercise and Motion ought also to be in a mean, for too violent striving of the Body induces Pain. And all vehement Passions of the Mind are to be forborn, because they make the Animal Spirits tumultuous, and so add considerably to the Affliction.

XVII. *The Cure.* Our Author advises to Bleeding, but that weakens the Patient mightily in this Disease, in which it is most highly necessary to conserve the Strength: And since it diminishes or removes nothing of the Morbifick Matter, or Cause, I must ingenuously confess, that I understand not for what purpose it is used. Moreover, if there is a real hard Stone in the part affected, I see not how it can be dissolved by any Medicine whatsoever, whatever Authors may pretend; so that only Palliatives and Easers of Pain ought to be given. Yet *Sylvius* says, that *ten or twelve drops of Spirits of Nitre, given in a Decoction of Grass-roots*, dissolves the Stone in the Bladder: And this possibly may be, if it is made of a fryable or gritty substance; and then Diureticks are also of good use.

XVIII. If there is no Stone, but only large Gravel, or Sand, or tartarous Matter, then an Infusion of Winter Cherries in Whitewine is an excellent thing; so also this Mixture, *Take Syrupus Nephriticus or Antifebriticus, an Ounce*; *Liquid Laudanum 25 or 30 drops*; *mix for a Dose*, to be given in *Arsmart* or *Parsly-water*; the former of which is very much commended by Mr *Boyle*, as a Non-such Remedy. Or this, *Take of our Gutt. Vit., Powers of Juniperberries, Powers of Aniseeds, of each an Ounce*; *mix them.* Dose one whole Spoonful in *Arsmart*, *Onion*, or *Parsly water.* I have known it to give ease in half an hour in the greatest Extremity.

XIX. After the Paroxysm seems to be over, at Night going to Bed let the Sick take a small Pill of our *Laudanum Volatile*, or *Laudanum Specificum*, from ij to gr. iv. which let be continued every Night.

XX. Now because in this Disease the Stomach is apt to be out of order, the Sick ought to take now and then two Spoonfuls at a time either of our *Aqua Bezoartica*, or of our *Spiritus Cordialis*, the Preparation of the last of which, you may see in our *Pharmacopœia Chirurgica*; or in place thereof an Ounce of *strong Cinnamon water*, which repeat as oft as the Physician shall see fit.

XXI.

XXI. These two following are said to be Specificks, *Take Native Cinnabar three Ounces; Crabs-eyes levigated an Ounce and half; Chio Turpentine ten Drams; mix them well into a Mass.* Dose one Dram Morning and Night made into small Pills, which may be wash'd down with a Draught of the *Infusion of Lignum Nephriticum made in White Port or Lisbon Wine.* Again, *Take Crabs-eyes levigated three Ounces; Winter-Cherries in fine Pouder, from one Ounce to an Ounce and half; mix them.* Dose one Dram Morning and Evening, mix'd with Honey, or in any proper Vehicle. This being daily taken by an ancient Man, afflicted with the Stone in the Reins, kept him easie all the days of his life after.

XXII. Also to alleviate the Pain, this Clyster may be exhibited, *Take Strasburgh Turpentine half an Ounce, Yolk of one large Egg, mix them well together till the Turpentine is dissolved, then mix it with a Pint of new Milk something more than blood-warm,* and so give it. Some use instead of the Milk, the Broth of a Sheeps-head and Gathers, which is very Emollient and Anodyn.

XXIII. And by turns, for change of Medicine sake (because Nature delights in variety) you may give the following at Bed-time, *Take Native Cinnabar, finely levigated, Crabs-eyes in subtil Pouder, Winter-Cherries in fine Pouder, fine Sperma Cæti, ana, four Ounces; Salt of Amber, Thebian Opium in fine Pouder, of each two Ounces; Balsam of Peru five Ounces, or enough to make it into a Mass of Pills.* Dose from a Scruple to half a Dram or two Scruples, according to Age and Strength every Night at Bed-time. See more at large of the Cure of the Stone in the Reins in the third Edition of our *Synopsis Medicinæ*, lib. 5. cap. 39. and in our *Medicinæ Practicæ*, lib. 1. cap. 19. Sect. 12 ad 71.

XXIV. Or this, which may be used for a continuance. *Take Garden-Bean-shell-water half a Pint; Syrupus de Althæa an Ounce and half or more; mix them for a Dose.* With this a certain Gentleman who had been for a long time vehemently afflicted with the Stone in the Reins, almost to Desparation, has been continually kept easie for many Years, even to the day of the writing hereof.

XXV. *Spar Saturni* (which is the clear or Crystal-like Stone or Concretion, found upon the crust or upper part of the Leaden Mines) is another Specifick; I have found excellent Effects by the use thereof: Let it be levigated with Water upon a grinding stone, till it is as soft as Wheat-flower; *Take of this levigated Spar three Ounces; fine Pouder of Winter-Cherries one Ounce; mix them.* Dose one Dram, Morning and Night, in a Glass of Mild Beer, or in Gruel, or in White Port, or White Lisbon Wine, or in half Wine half Water, or in *Arsmart, Parsly,* or *Bean-shell-waters,* &c.

XXVI. And of the same nature is *Irish Slate,* which is commended from a long Series of Experience in this Disease, which being *levigated,* may be given in the same Dose and manner, and at the same times as is *Spar Saturni:* I knew an ancient Gentleman who took it every Night at Bed-time, two Scruples of it mix'd with *half a Dram of Chio Turpentine,* or with *a Dram of Balsam of Peru,* who told me, that it always kept him easie, and made him piss easily and freely: The same thing another Person affirm'd to me, from the *levigated Pouder of Egg-shells,* used in the same method and order, drinking after it an Infusion, Decoction, or *Tincture* of *Lignum*

num Nephriticum made with Spring-water, or White Lisbon Wine, or with half Wine half Water.

CHAP. XXVII. *Of a* CLAP *or* VIRULENT RUNNING.

I. IT begins with an unusual Pain of the Members or Genitals, and a rolling of the Testicles. If the Glans or head of the Yard is covered with the Prepuce or Fore-skin, a Wheal or Pimple, like a Measle, appears on the top of it, and presently after liquid Matter, resembling Sperm, begins to flow forth; which daily receding from the Colour and Consistence of Seed, at length grows yellowish, and of a more dilute colour than the Yolk of an Egg. In the French Pox it is come to a higher degree of Virulency or Malignity; the same is green and mix'd with a watery Humour tinged with Blood. The forementioned Wheal or Pimple, at length degenerates into an Ulcer, not unlike the Exulcerations of Childrens Mouths, which continually eats deeper and wider, the Orifice being surrounded with a Callus.

II. Such as are Circumcised, or have the Glans or Nut of the Yard strip'd bare, are not troubled with an Ulcer in that part; but only with a Gonorrhœa, or virulent Running of the Yard. Presently a great Pain is felt in the *Urethra*, as oft as the Yard is erected, chiefly in the Night when the Sick is hot in Bed, as if it was wrung hard with ones hand. The Yard is bowed by the Contraction of the part, called the *Frænum* or Bridle. To these Signs may be added, Scalding of the Urine, which is very little while the Urine is coming forth; but after it is voided, there is a sense of Heat and Scalding through the whole *Uretha* or passage, chiefly where it ends, *viz.* in the Glans or Nut of the Yard. Sometimes little Caruncles or Excrescences of Flesh hinder the passage of the Urine, and now, and then there is felt Heat, Pain and Inflamation of the *Scrotum* or Cod.

III. *Take Pill Cochiæ the greater three Drams; Extractum Rudii one Dram; Rosin of Jalap, Diagredium, ana, half a Dram; with Opobalsamum a sufficient quantity, make Pills;* six in a Dram. Of which let the Sick take four every Morning, till the Heat and Scalding of the Urine is abated, and the yellow colour of the Seed, like Matter, is much altered. Afterwards let him take them every day for a Fortnight together; and at last twice a Week, till the Humour seems wholly to be stopp'd 2. If the Sick is not easily purged, you may now and then interpose with the *Potio Communis Purgativa*, (between the Doses of Pills,) adding to it, *Syrup of Buckthorn, and Electuary of the Juice of Roses, of each two Drams.* 3. And if after all, the Cure does not come forward according to Expectation, you may give *Turpethum Minerale gr. viij.* for a Dose, twice or thrice at the distance of four days. 4. Or in place of the *Turbith*; Take *Pilulæ ex duobus half a Dram; Mercurius Dulcis a scruple; with Opobalsamum a sufficient quantity make four Pills*, to be taken early in the Morning.

IV. If the Sick cannot away with this method of Purging, after he has taken the Pills which are first prescribed, for three days together, let the following Clyster be injected

twice a day, *viz.* in the Morning, and at five in the Afternoon; but once or twice in a Week, the said Clyster is to be omitted, and a Cathartick Medicament prescribed. 2. The Clyster, *Take Electuary of Juice of Roses six Drams; Venice Turpentine dissolved with the Yolk of an Egg half an Ounce; dissolve them in a Pint of Barly-water, and strain:* To which add, *Syrup of Violets two Ounces; mix them for a Clyster.* 3. Every Night at Bed-time let him take 25 drops of *Opobalsamum*, or *Balsam of Mecha*, drop'd into Sugar and mix'd with it. But in default of this, you may substitute *Cyprus Turpentine*, to the quantity of a Hasle-nut, or Filbert.

V. Let him take Milk and Water for his ordinary Drink, and Small-Beer at Meals. 2. Or you may pursue this Method, *Take Pill ex duobus half a Dram; Opobalsamum three drops; make three Pills*; which let be taken at four in the Morning, resting after them; and repeat it every second or third day. 3. In the intermediate days, let the Clyster before prescribed, be injected in the Morning, and at five a Clock in the Evening. 4. And what Course soever you pursue, the Sick must bleed once or twice about the middle of the Cure. 5. Order also a cooling and incrassating Diet, and Medicines having the same Virtues, as Milk and Water, Emulsions of the four Cold Seeds, *&c.*

VI. If the Yard is swoln; *Take Roots of Althæa and White Lillies, ana, an Ounce and half; Leaves of Mallows and Petty Mullein, Elder, Henbane, Camomil flowers, Melilot flowers, ana, one Handful; Linseed, Fœnugreek seed, ana, one Ounce; boil them in Spring water for a Fomentation*; which must be applied to the part affected one whole hour at a time, twice or thrice a day. 2. After Fomenting, anoint the par affected with Linseed Oil new drawn; then spread *Emplastrum de Mucilaginibus* upon Lambs-Skin, and wrap it about the swoln lips of the Prepuce, or covering of the Glans, or Nut of the Yard.

VII. But if there is an Ulcer in the lips of the *Preputium* or Fore-skin, or in the *Glans*, which lyes under it, the following Liniment is to be used, *Take Unguentum Basilicon six Drams; Unguentum Nicotianæ two Drams; Red Præcipitate washed in Rose-water and well levigated half a Dram; mix, and make a Liniment.* Let it be applied to the Sore upon Lint, always after Fomentation. 2. If the *Scrotum* or Cod be swoln, bleed presently in the Arm, and apply the prescribed Fomentation to the part affected twice every day, adding to each Fomentation a Spoonful or two of *good Brandy*; or instead of it, apply *a Pultise made of Vinegar, Water, and Bean-flower or Meal.* 3. In the interim Cathartick and cooling Medicines, before described, must be inwardly given.

SALMON's Comment.

VIII. This Disease, if it is Simple, is called in Greek, Γονόῤῥοια; in Latin, *Gonorrhæa*; and in English, *The Running of the Reins*, or *Flux of the Seed.* But if it is Virulent, then it is called Γονόῤῥοια ἰώδης; in Latin, *Gonorrhæa Virulenta*; and in English, *A Clap*, or *Virulent Running of the Reins.* *A Simple Gonorrhæa* is when the thin Seminal Matter, not much unlike the Whites of Eggs, continually drops or falls away, without either Pain or Lust: This is called a Gleeting; and though there be no great matter either of Danger or Trouble in it, yet by its continuance, it may in time impair

pair the Seminal parts, cause Impotency or Barrenness, and at length, waste the Body and bring it into a Consumption. It is caused by a too frequent Reiteration of Venereal Acts, and excessive Straining to evacuate the Seed in sound Persons, and sometimes also through a Weakness of the Body, and of the Seminal Glands. It may also be the Relicks of a *Virulent Gonorrhœa*, after its being cured, a Gleet remaining through the hurt of the Tone of the parts, and their being greatly weakened by the long continuance of the preceding Disease

IX. *A Virulent Gonorrhœa* is gotten by contact, by a Man's lying with an impure Woman, and may begin sometimes, as our Author says; but for the most part, the contaminated Matter seizes upon the fine thin *Cuticula*, at the Extremity of the *Glans* leading down the *Urethra* to the *Prostatæ*: This fine Skin being ulcerated by the poisonous or putrid Matter, the Ulcer gradually creeps down the *Urethra* or passage of the Yard, and so causes a seeming Heat and Scalding of the Urine, which is not from the Heat of the Urine, but from the saline Particles thereof pricking and hurting the raw or ulcerated part of the *Urethra*: This Putrid or Pocky Matter, may sometimes also, as our Author says, at the same time exulcerate the External part of the *Glans*, and, sometimes the *Præputium*, the *Glans* and *Urethra*, being yet safe and sound; and sometimes they may be all exulcerated or inflamed together: And this is *the first Stage of the Disease.*

X. *The Second Stage is*, when the Ulcer creeping down the *Urethra* seizes upon the *Prostatæ*, and there not only creates an Ulcer, but also contaminates the Seed it self, by the Virulent Matter being mix'd with it; and this, by reason of the Ulcer, is continually discharged by the Yard, which Running is accompanied with Heat, Scalding of the Water, Pain and stinking Matter; of a whitish, greyish, yellowish, or greenish Colour, commonly with an inflamation of the *Prostatæ*, with an erection of the Yard in Men; or of the Neck of the Womb, with Heat, Itching, Pimples or *Pustulæ*, or hardish Tumours of the *Labiæ*, in Women.

XI. *The Third Stage of this Disease is*, when either by a Conflux of Humours through Inflamation, the parts affected are so swoln, that the Virulent Matter cannot flow forth through the *Penis* or *Urethra* as it ought to do; or by an imprudent Method of Cure, the Flux or Running has been stop'd by Exhibition of Styptick or Astringents, before due cleansing of the Ulcer; it then penetrates deeper into the Seminal Vessels, and comes to affect the *Parastatæ* annexed to the Testicles, whereby the Seed comes to be contaminated, as it were, in its Fountains, *The Cods* swelling at the same time, with much Pain and Heaviness; which if not speedily remedied, brings on

XII. *The Fourth Stage of this Disease*, wherein the contaminated Matter, for want of its being continually discharged as it ought to be through the *Urethra*, penetrates the capillary ends of the Veins, and so makes its way into the *Blood* and *Lympha*, and by a gradual Course contaminates their whole Mass, to the hurt of the universal habit of the Body, manifest by various external Symptoms (hereafter to be declared,) and then it no longer retains its old name of a *Clap*, or *Virulent Running*, but by its Degeneration becomes the *Lues* it self, or in more plain words, the *French Pox*

(so called) of which we have nothing to say in this place, but refer you to the next Chapter, where we shall treat of that *Foul Disease* at large and prosecute the rational Method of its Cure.

XIII. *The Parts affected in a Clap*, are the *Preputium*, the *Glans*, *Urethra*, *Prostatæ*, and at length the *Parastatæ*, or Vesicles wherein the Seed is prepared in part, and kept for Ejaculation, which being corroded by the Virulent Matter, the Seed it self becomes also contaminated, and so is evasated in a Putrid Gleet.

XIV. *The Signs of this Disease* are manifest, by what we have already said in the Description thereof, *viz.* Heat and Pain in making Water, the Urine whitish, with Strings as it were, or Matter in it, some Pustules or ulcerous Breakings-out in the Privities, a malign or putrid Running of stinking and various or ill-coloured Matter by the Yard or Womb; with a desire to *Venus*, through the Irritation of the acuated or sharp and virulent Particles of the putrid Seed, as also a manifold Titilation and Erection of the Yard in Men.

XV. *The Cause of this Disease* in a Man, is from Coition with a Pocky Woman, the virulent Humour or Seed in the *Vagina* falling upon or besmearing the *Preputium* and *Glans* of the *Penis*; for that consisting or being repleated with acrid, acid, or sharp particles, has also a Volatile Poison joyn'd with it, (manifest from its Fœtid Smell,) which penetrating and corroding the *Cuticula* of the parts, causes them to corrupt and ulcerate; and by their subtilty causing a Fermentation of the proximate Juices, makes way into the membranous, musculous and fleshy Substance, which causes a vehement Pain, better understood by such as feel it, than it can be express'd here in words.

XVI. This *Venereal Ferment* in the *Vagina* of the Woman, being heated and volatiliz'd by Action and besmearing the Extremity of the *Urethra*, at the upper part of the *Glans*, penetrates their Pores, and that Ferment being put into motion, enters the passage or Orifice of the *Urethra*, and by creeping gradually down the same goes to the small *Caruncle* which hinders the involuntary Immission of Seed; and from thence the Excoriation or Ulcer proceeds to the *Prostatæ*, when if the Malady is not speedily cured, but the Flux of the Virulency is never so little stop'd, it proceeds to the *Parastatæ*, which (as was said before) are the Repositories of the Sperm; where, by the Acrimony of the Venom, the Seed is also corrupted and made acrimonious, or virulent, and in a little time after, the Ulcer or Ulcers are so increased, that by continual Irritations, the said corrupted Seed is involuntarily emitted or sent forth.

XVII. There are other secret ways also by which this Virulent or Pocky Ferment is convey'd down into the *Prostatæ*, not easily to be discovered, because there are not known particular Vessels which can serve for this purpose; but doubtless when the *Pocky Miasmata* do corrode and enter into the Flesh, they make their way, and commix themselves with the *Blood* and *Lympha* of the parts, where, by inflaming them, the Swelling and Tumour does in some Measure put a stop to their career; the Poison then corrupting the *Blood* and *Lympha* in the places affected, does gradually affect the adjacent parts, as first the upper part of the *Urethra*, then the *Caruncle*, and afterwards the *Prostatæ*, and if it yet runs farther, the *Parastatæ*, &c. for that the

the Blood by reason of its thickness, cannot so presently enter into the small ends of the Veins, as it does pass out of the Capillary ends of the Arteries into the Substance of the Yard, it must follow that some part of it must remain behind, and be corrupted with the Venereal Ferment, whereby the part becomes also tumined.

XVIII. The Disease, or rather its Fermentative Poison, making thus its gradual Progress to the *Prostatæ*, they become gently pressed, by the Profluence of the thickned Humours, and so the Running is by little and little first, as it were by drops, the Blood and Humours being separated from the Pores of the Glans; this pressure is caused from the passing of the Matter through certain Vessels, and discharging it into the Blood, which being impossible by reason of the Tumour of the parts, their Obstruction and Compression, it is discharged gradually by a continual Flux or Issue into the *Urethra*, or passage of the Yard.

XIX. *The Prognosticks.* Tho' Virulent, yet whilst recent, it is without danger, and may be easily cured; if it continues long, it many times much weakens the parts, and may cause a troublesome Gleet: But if by being under ill hands, it is stop'd before due cleansing, it is diverted into the Mass of Blood and Lympha, and so lays the Foundation of the *French Pox*. If it happens in a Scorbutick, Cachectick, or foul Body, it is more difficult to be cured, it being accompanied in such with more vehement Symptoms. That which is attended with a great and painful Tumour of the Cods, and a very stinking Running, is more difficult than that without Swelling, and where the Matter is almost Smell-less. That which is produced with Caruncles in the *Urethra*, is very hard to cure, and many times proves a troublesome piece of work to the Physician, as well as painful to the Patient. And in some Constitutions, where it has been of very long continuance, it so weakens the parts as to leave a simple Gonorrhæa, or continual Gleet, which does not easily admit of Remedy, without a very great Regularity in the Patient.

XX. *The Diet.* The Air ought to be serene, clear and temperate: The Food ought to be sweet, or of an alcalious Nature, Simple, easie of Digestion, not Salt, Sowre, Spiced or Pickled. Sweet Sallets may be eaten, as Lettice, Purslane, Cucumbers; also Food made of whole Wheat, as Frumety, also Hull'd Barly, Rice, Oatmeal, and Milks, Emulsions, or Broths made of them. Spring-water, Barly-water, Parsly and Purslane-waters, are also good to be drank, and Whey of Cows or Goats Milk, clarified with Purslane; also Emulsions of the Greater Cold Seeds made with the same. But all strong Wines, Brandies, and Strong-waters, also strong Ale, and strong stale Beer, are absolutely to be forborn, because they increase the Acidity, which is pernicious in this Cure. All violent Motions and long Watchings are to be forborn, because they disturb the Animal Spirits, and excite the Venereal Ferment to greater Disorders; but Rest, Ease, and moderate Sleeping are good, for they quiet the perturbed Spirits. The passages of the Urine ought to be kept open, and that by the help of Diureticks rather then fail; and the Belly to be kept soluble, because a greater quantity of Humours is diverted and carried another way, which otherwise might take their course to the Genitals. Lastly, The Mind

is to be kept absolutely free from all sorts of Exorbitant Passions, because they inflame the Virulent Ferment, more especially those which proceed from Love, Jealousie, Lust, *&c.* which certainly add Fuel to the Fire, and increase the Rage to the last Degree.

XXI. *The Cure. Whilst the Disease is recent, and in its first Stage,* there is no need of Purging, unless the Body be Cacochymical: If therefore the Person is of a good Habit, potent Diureticks and Balsamicks are the things chiefly to be given, such as this, *Take Balsamum Copaybæ, Balsam of Peru, ana, one Ounce; Oil of Juniper-berries two Drams; mix them: Dose twenty or thirty drops Morning and Night*: It may be drop'd into Sugar first, and well ming'led with it, then mix'd with a Pint of new Milk warm from the Cow, and so drank. Or this, *Take Chio Turpentine half a Dram; Crabs-eyes levigated, Pouder of Daucus seeds, Pouder of Winter-Cherries, Liquorice in Pouder, of each equal parts: with which make the Turpentine into Pills for one Dose.* This take Morning and Night so long as need requires. Or *take Balsam of Peru a Dram or Dram and half, for a Dose,* in the same manner.

XXII. If the Patient cannot swallow the former Doses, or Pills, you must give him this follwing *White Potion. Take fine Turpentine half an Ounce; Yolk of one Egg; stir them well together till the Turpentine is perfectly dissolved, then mix it with new Milk, or Barly water, two Quarts, and sweeten it with our Syrupus Nephriticus, or Syrupus de Althæa:* Dose a Pint Morning and Night, to be repeated so long till the Cure is performed. If the Patient cannot be prevailed with to take a Pint at a time, you must make it with but half the quantity of *Milk*, or *Barly-water*, and so give him but half a Pint at a time, giving after the Draught half a Pint of pure Milk, or as much Barly-water sweetned with white Sugar-candy. These things will take off the Heat and Pain, potently cleanse the Ulcer, and in due time heal the parts affected.

XXIII. If there are any external Sores or Ulcers upon the *Præputium* or *Glans*, they may be first wash'd with Milk, or Barly-water, or Damask Rose-water, in which Honey has been dissolved, and then with the *white Potion*, dipping Rags or Lint in the same, and laying them upon the Sore, dressing it two or three times a day, or as oft as need requires. If these things do not, use this, *Take Venice Turpentine, or rather Balsam Copaybæ, Balsam of Peru, ana, two Drams; mix them perfectly with Honey of Roses, or with the Yolk of an Egg,* and apply this Mixture upon Lint; If there is a great virulency with the Ulcer, add to the former Mixture, *Mercurius dulcis levigated*, or *White Præcipitate two Drams*; and then it will not go without its desired effect.

XXIV. The constant Drink ought to be Spring-water, or Barly water, acuated with our *Spiritus Antivenereus*, taken in all the Patient drinks, so much at a time as may give it a grateful Acidity. This Spirit is thus made, *Take Damask Rose-water, or Poppy or Purslane-water, a Quart; rectified Spirit of Wine four Ounces; Oils of Sulphur and Vitriol, ana, two Ounces and half; Spirit of Salt one Ounce; mix altogether by shaking, and keep it for use.* I have cured many *recent Gonorrhœa's* by the use of this Spirit alone without the help of any other Medicaments. It is cooling, an easer

of

of Pain, very abstersive, exceedingly Diuretick, and at last a true Styptick and Vulnerary, doing of it self all the Intentions of Curing.

XXV. If the Patient, through neglect of himself, or falling into ill hands, lets the Disease come to its *Second Stage*, then Purging will be absolutely necessary; and with the Catharticks which are given, some Mercurial Preparations are always to be mixed; the chief of those which Physicians prescribe in this case, are either *Mercurius dulcis*, or *White Precipitate*, as thinking no higher, greater, or better Preparation of that Mineral to be necessary. In this Stage of the Disease these two Preparations of Mercury are accounted Specifick Remedies by most of our Physicians, and sufficient for the curing thereof, being given with convenient Catharticks, as *Cassia*, *Diacatholicon*, *Electuarium Lenitivum*, *Confectio Hamech*, *Pilulæ Rudii* new made, *Pilulæ ex duobus*, &c. and repeated from time to time as necessity shall require; for hereby the Body will be freed from the Virulent Ferment, without which recovery is not to be expected; and being thus duly purged, the *Gonorrhœa* will quickly cease.

XXVI. And it is certainly known by experience, that Catharticks do carry off a great quantity of the Acid, or Morbid Matter into the Belly, and from thence (by Diversion as it were) it passes off by Stool, as may easily be perceived by the stinking of the excrementitious Matter, which would not be so disagreeable to the Smell, but from the *Acid* and *Alcali* so strongly operating one upon another. But though Purging in this *Second Stage* is necessary, yet the Patient ought not to be purged too much, lest it should weaken him, and so cause other Disorders in the Body.

XXVII. Some Examples of Purges in this case we shall give you; 1. *Take Extract of Cassia new made an Ounce; Extract of Rheubard, Mercurius dulcis levigated, of each a scruple; Chio Turpentine half a dram; mix and make a Bolus for a Dose.* 2. Or this, *Take Mercurius Dulcis a scruple; Diagredium twelve Grains; Antimony Diaphoretick, Crabs eyes, of each eight Grains; mix for a Dose.* 3. Or this, *Take Extract of Cassia, or Electuarium Lenitivum, six drams; Chio Turpentine one dram; White Præcipitate gr. 10. mix for a Dose.* 4. Or this, *Take Extract of Rheubarb, Diagredium, White Præcipitate, of each half a scruple; Oil of Juniper-berries two or three drops; mix and make Pills for one Dose.* 5. Or this, *Take Diacatholicon a dram; White Precipitate eight grains; Oil of Juniper three drops; mix for a Dose.* 6. Or this, *Take Resin of Jallap, Diagredium, of each eight Grains; Mercurius dulcis a scruple; mix them for a Dose.* By the use of these or such like, the Morbifick Matter will be overcome and carried off, and then the cure is to be prosecuted with Diureticks for the perfect cleansing and healing of the Ulcer.

XXVIII. The chief simple Diureticks useful in this case are, 1. Sal Prunellæ. 2. Winter-Cherries. 3. Pouder of Hog-lice. 4. Camphir. 5. Myrrh. 6. Chio Turpentine. 7. Venice or Strasburgh Turpentine. 8. Balsam Copaybæ. 9. Balsam of Peru. 10. Sperma Ceti. 11. Crabs-eyes. 12. Venice or Genoua Soap. 13. White Rosin. 14. Oil of Amber. 15. Oil of Juniper. 16. Oil of Savin. 17. Oil of Turpentine. 18. Volatile Salt of Amber

ber. 19. Salt of Pot-Ashes. 20. Salt of Tartar. 21. Oil and Spirit of Salt. 22. Oil and Spirit of Sulphur. 23. Oil and Spirit of Vitriol. 24. And our *Spiritus Antivenereus*. before described.

XXIX. Out of these the learned Physician may make a thousand Compositions proper for the purpose intended, in the Form of Infusions, Decoctions, Tinctures, Powders, Electuaries and Pills, according to what may be most agreeable to the Condition and good liking of the Patient; and among them all, the *Potio alba* or White Potion, and *Spiritus Antivenereus*, are superior to most Prescriptions in use, and what seldom or never fail, unless the Malignity is very great.

XXX. 1. *Take Crabs-eyes levigated four drams; Chio Turpentine, Camphir, ana, three drams; Sperma Cœti, Balsam of Peru, ana, one dram; mix and make a Mass of Pills:* Dose a Scruple every day; it tempers the Acid, and cleanses the Ulcer by Urine. 2. Again, *Take Crabs-eyes eight drams; Chio Turpentine three drams; Balsam Copaybæ, Balsam of Peru, ana, one dram; Camphir one dram; Olibanum, Mastich, each in Powder three drams; Salt of Amber half a dram; mix them, and with Powder of Liquorice make Pills.* 3. Or this, *Take Crabs eyes in Powder one Ounce; Sal Prunellæ four drams; Camphir, Vitriolated Salt of Tartar, of each one Dram; Oil of Savin ten drops; with Chio Turpentine or Balsam of Peru make Pills:* Dose from half a Dram to a Dram. 4. Or this, *Take White Rosin in fine powder four drams, Crabs-eyes three drams; Camphir, Powder of Hog lice, of each one dram; Oil of Savine twenty drops; with Chio Turpentine or Balsam of Peru make a Mass of Pills:* Dose from a Scruple to half a Dram or more. 5 Or this, *Take Crabs-eyes levigated four drams; White Rosin two drams; Gum Elemni, Camphir, ana, one dram; rectified Oil of Amber twelve drops; with Balsam Copaybæ or Peru make Pills;* Dose from a Scruple to half a Dram. 6. Or this, *Take Chio Turpentine two Drams; Balsam of Peru, Extract of Rheubarb, ana, one Dram; Camphir half a Dram; mix and make a Bolus for two or three Doses.*

XXXI. I would not have Injections used in this Case, if in any reasonable time any or some of the former things will do; but if they prevail not, we are sometimes at last forced to comply with their use; such as are proper and safe for this purpose are these following. 1. The *Potio alba*, with which the Patient may inject three, four or five times a day. 2 Our *Aqua Regulata*, which is an incomparable Injection, and may be used in like manner. 3. *Take Whitewine a pint; Camphir a dram, dissolved in an Ounce of Spirit of Wine; Tutty levigated three drams; mix them for an Injection.* 4. *Take Rose-water a pint; White Troches of Rhasis two drams; mix for an Injection.* 5. *Take Plantane-water a pint; Saccharum Saturni three drams; Camphir a dram and half or two drams, dissolved in an Ounce of Spirit of Wine, mix them.* 6. *Take choice Brandy sixteen Ounces; White Vitriol, Camphir, of each a dram; mix them.* This is only to be used where the Ulcer is stubborn; otherwise it is to be allayed with a *pint of Smiths Forge-water.* 7. *Take Claret-wine three pints; Catechu in powder an Ounce; Red Rose Leaves, Pomgranate-peels in powder, of each three drams; Balaustians two drams; infuse three hours warm;*

then

then boil a little, as for half an hour; strain out, and use the Liquor as an Injection. 8. *Take Rose or Plantane-water a Quart; White Vitriol, Roch Alum, of each in fine pouder two drams; Camphir three drams dissolved in three ounces of Brandy; mix them for an Injection* to be used two, three or four times a day or oftner. 9. *Take Corrosive Sublimate a dram; Rose or Plantane or Purslane-water, twenty Ounces; Camphir a dram and half, dissolved in a little Spirit of Wine; mix them.* This may serve also to wash the external Ulcers (if any) withal.

XXXII. In the beginning when the Heat of the Urine is extravagant, the Patient may drink Coffee mix'd with Milk, or Thea, very freely, and Thea mix'd with Milk, also Barly-broth mix'd with Milk; or a Ptisan made with Barly Liquorice-root bruised, China or Sarsa; or a Decoction of Burdock-roots in fair Water, either Simple or mix'd with Milk or Almond Milk; or an Emulsion made of the four Greater Cold Seeds; or Purslane-water, or Juice of Purslane mix'd with Milk; or Whey of Cows Milk, clarified with Purslane by boiling the Herb therein. Also Spring-Water sweetned with Honey, in every Pint of which, a Scruple or half a Dram of *Sal Prunellæ* has been dissolved.

XXXIII. *If the Disease, before it is cured, arises to its third Stage, wherein the Parastatæ are affected, and the Mass of Seed corrupted;* In this case Bleediug is to be forborn, as you value the Patients Health and Happiness, for there is nothing can be more pernicious than that; because it infallibly draws the Malignity and Venom of the Disease into the Mass of Blood and Lympha (as we have in some other places sufficiently proved,) whereby the Patient is made ten times harder to Cure than ever he was before. I know this Advice will be by many rejected, those Ignorant Blockheads following the course of Bleeding, to the great hurt and detriment of their Patients: And then oftentimes when they have done all they can, and cannot cure them, they give them over; with this hard Sentence, *That they are Incurable*; when the fault lies not in the Incurability of the Disease, but in their ill managing of it, by drawing the Morbifick Matter into the Blood and Juices, through their evil practice of Bleeding, and their other ill courses of Administration, as, Exhibition of Astringents before their time, *&c.*

XXXIV. Sometimes the Heat of Urine and extream Pain in making Water, is so great that it is necessary that this Symptom should be taken off, before we do any thing in order to the Cure, for that this alone would, in a great measure, hinder and take off the Benefit of those Medicaments which must be applied for the exterminating of the Disease. There is nothing better for the cooling and allaying the preternatural Heat, and taking off the Acrimony of the Virulent Ferment, than *Sal Prunellæ*; it may be given half a Dram at a time, once or twice a day, for some few days, dissolved in fair Water, or Whey, very well sweetned with White Sugar. I know many refuse to give it to their Patients, because it is apt to make the Stomach sick; and that is the Reason those Ignorants disclaim any Right or Property in it, but this proceeds only from their Ignorance.

XXXV. For *Sal Prunellæ*, or *Sal Nitre*, are some of the most generous Qualifiers and Purifiers of the

the Blood yet found in the whole *Materia Medica.* Now the Method of giving them, so that they may not (by their mighty cooling Property) hurt the Stomach, is by extreamly well sweetning the Vehicle, in which they are given, with Sugar or Honey, or some proper Syrup, as Syrup of Violets, Clove-gilleflowers, or of Citron-peels; for that the Spirituous and Oil Particles of those Sweets, do as it were sheath the Sharpness and Coldness of these Salts; and if they be given in a Spirituous Vehicle, as some proper Wine or Water mix'd with Spirit of Wine, they may be given with the same Freedom and Innocency, and with an Expectation of as great, and good Effects.

XXXVI. The next thing to be considered, is the Method of Purging, and what proper Purges are fit to be given in this third Stage of the Disease. It is certain, that they ought to be mixed with some peculiar Mercurial, without which the Disease will not be easily or safely and securely cured. The vulgar Practitioner uses *Mercurius Dulcis, White Præcipitate, Arcanum Coralinum, and Turpethum Minerale:* The first and second of these, as they are weak, so they must be often given, if you would succeed according to desire, which yet, many times by reason of the Ignorance of the Physician, they perform no Cure, and so tire and weary out the Patient with doing nothing. The two latter are indeed Herculean Medicaments, and are only to be given to Rusticks, or such as are of very robust Habits of Body; and yet even in them, if not given with Care and Discretion, and by a prudent Hand, may perform nothing at all, but ruin the Patient. All these though we have in former Years made much use of them, and that with very great Success,) we now decline, because by a long Search into Nature, and a continued Series of Experience, we have found out other Remedies more homogene to the Humane Frame; more easie in their Operations, more safe in unforeseen Accidents, and more certain in performing the Cure.

XXXVII. However, because Purging, is apt many times to accend the Heat and Pain in making Water, you ought both before (as was hinted at Sect. XXXIV. aforegoing) and in the Intervals of Purging, to take off or alleviate the same, which is to be done with the Salt there mentioned; but because some Patients will not be conformable in taking that Medicine, you must cause them to drink constantly our *Spiritus Antinephriticus*, which may be given in this manner; *Take of pure Spring water a Quart; of the said Spirit an Ounce or Ounce and half; mix them, and with double refined Sugar, make it pleasant to be drank as ordinary Drink:* This cools and eases the Pain, and withal strikes at the Root of the Malignity, carrying off the greater part of it by Urine.

XXXVIII. There are other things used also to attemperate the Heat and Scalding of Urine; as *Barly-broth (made of Hull'd Barly) boil'd till the Barly is broken, then strain'd out, and mixed with Milk, (more or less as the Patient likes it,)* of which they may drink all day long at pleasure; and *the Barly it self* may be eaten for Food with a little fresh Butter and Sugar, or the addition of a little Cream or Milk and Sugar. Some make the *Barly-broth with Liquorice-root bruised, China sliced, and Sarsapa-*

rilla

rilla bruised, all being boil'd in it, of which let the Sick drink liberally in the day time, as also at Meals. Others prescribe a Drink made of Milk, boil'd with an equal quantity, or with two third parts of Water, which is constantly to be used. Others prescribe *an Infusion of Thea* to be taken warm, because it dilutes the Acid, tempers the Heat and Scalding in making Water, and potently provokes Urine, as *Thea* Drinkers have great Experience of by their often going to Piss with much ease and freedom. Others advise to a Mixture of *Thea* and Milk together; observing withal a good, regular, and cooling Diet.

XXXIX. These things being said, we now come to the proper Cathartick to be used in this Cure. And avoiding or refusing the aforenamed Mercurial Preparations, I rely absolutely upon *Aurum Vitæ*, which is truly the best of all the common Preparations of Mercury, *being prepared and fixed with Gold*, as we have taught in our *Pharmacopœia Londinensis*, lib. 3. cap. 7. Sect. 37, 38, & 39. as also in our *Pharmacopœia Bateanea*, lib. 1. cap. 9. Sect. 20. page 320. in all which places you have the Preparations treated of at large, and where you may receive abundant satisfaction. I own I sometimes use my *Impetus Mineralis* (a much higher Preparation) but that being determined rather for the Cure of the *fourth Stage* of this Disease, or of *the Grand Pox it self*, I shall say no more of it here, but rather refer you to the following Chapter.

XL. This Cathartick I know experimentally to be good; *Take Pill Cochiæ minor three drams; Aurum Vitæ two Scruples or a dram; Oil of Savin or of Juniper-berries, ten drops; mix, and make a Mass of Pills for nine or ten Doses.* Or this, *Take Pill ex duobus three drams; Aurum Vitæ a dram; Oil of Juniper berries, or of Turpentine, ten or twelve drops; mix and make a Mass of Pills for nine or ten Doses.* With one of these Prescripts the Patient may purge eight, nine or ten times, at due Intervals, as every third or fourth day, according as Strength, Age and other Accidents will admit; than these (among the usual Prescriptions) there are none better, for they answer all the Intentions of Cure for which they are given.

XLI. Now therefore as it is absolutely necessary for the Patient to be well cleansed, before Astringents or other Preparations are given to put a stop to the Running, lest the poisonous or malign Matter being kept in, should contaminate the whole Mass of Blood anid Lympha, and so cause the Disease to degenerate into the Grand Pox, making the end, or rather the middle thereof, worse than the beginning; I think it necessary for the Patient to purge (at due Intervals of time as aforesaid) at least eight or ten times; and if he be of a Cachectick, or Cachochymick habit of Body, at least twelve or fifteen times, for the greater Security of Health, and of a compleat Cure: All which may very well and easily be done, without impairing the Patients Strength, if the Physician is a Man of any tolerable Skill or Judgment.

XLII. These Prescripts which I have here given you, do many times themselves all the Intentions of Curing, without any other Medicament; more especially if it be a *Recent Gonorrhœa*, not being *Clap upon Clap*; taking away the Heat and Scalding of the Urine, and the Running together. But in Persons who have often been attack'd with it,

it, or where it has been of long ſtanding, you muſt not imagine to do the Cure by Purging alone; for in ſuch, ſhould you purge till the Running ceaſes, 'tis poſſible you might Purge the Patient out of his Life; or at leaſt do him that miſchief, as to cauſe an almoſt incurable Gleet, and bring him into a deep Conſumption: Several of which Examples I have ſeen in my time, and only occaſioned through indiſcreet, vehement and long Purging; which is a Caution worth every young Phyſician's taking notice of.

XLIII. Another thing I am to remind you of is, that *Coloquintida* and *Diagredium* are Specifick Cathartick, to be made uſe of in all Venereal Caſes. And as you are to purge moderately in the beginning, and ſometimes in the middle of this Diſeaſe, ſo it is neceſſary that the two aforenamed Ingredients be always part of the Cathartick Compoſition, more eſpecially *Coloquintida*, becauſe as it contains alkalious Particles, ſo it more eaſily vanquiſhes the Morbid Acid, and Venereal Virulency, and being joyned with ſome choice Mercurial Preparation, is the better able to expel the Venereal Venom. If the Cathartick has not *Pouder of Colocynthis* in it, or *Troches Alhandal*, it will never ſo well anſwer your Intention, but the Humour (in ſpight of all you can do) will be apt to break out again; for this Ingredient, I have found by long Experience, to be a Specifick againſt Venereal Malignity. It is alſo to be obſerved, that all Mercurial Preparations not liquid, are to be made up either into a *Bolus*, or into *Pills*, for Mercurial Pouders being mixed with Drinks, Gruel, &c. and ſo given, the *Acid Saliva* in the Mouth will be apt to mix therewith, and ſo do hurt to ſome of the parts adjacent.

XLIV. In the Intervals of Purging you may give the former preſcribed *Sal Prunellæ*, Barly broths, Ptiſans, or Milk and Water; or this following *Pearl Cordial*. *Take Milk-water or Purſlane or Poppy-water, ten or twelve Ounces, Syrupus Antifebriticus (in our Pharmacopœia Chirurgica) three or four Ounces; Aqua Cordialis an Ounce and half or two Ounces; Crabs-eyes levigated, Orient of Oiſter-ſhells levigated, ana, half an Ounce; mix them for a Pearl Julep or Cordial.* Of which the Sick may take four Ounces or better every Night going to Bed, and if not the Purging dayes, as much in the Morning: by taking this for ſome time the inflamation of the parts, Heat and ſcalding of the Urine, will be, even upon the Spot, abated Or the inflamation and Heat may be cooled by ſome cooling Emultion, or cooling Ptiſan, *made of the four greater Cold Seeds, White Poppy-ſeed, with Barly-water in large quantity, in which roots of Althæa, of Liquorice, and of Water-Lillies, as alſo Sorrel and Purſlane have been boiled, adding afterwards Juice of Limons, or Lime Juice, and a proportional quantity of Sal Prunellæ*, which may be the Patients common Drink, and of which he may drink to quench his Thirſt, or as much as his Stomach can bear.

XLV. If the Conſtitution of the Sick be ſuch, that Medicines in a ſolid form (as *Bolus* or *Pills*) will not work, then there will be a neceſſity to give ſuch as are in a liquid form; as our *Tinctura Purgans* (in our *Pharmacopœia Chirurgica*) our Authors *Potio Communis Purgativa*, in each Doſe of which *you may mix from four to eight grains of Antum Vitæ, mix'd*

first with an Ounce of Syrup of Violers; or instead of the *Aurum Vitæ*, a Spoonful of the following Liquor; *Take Corrosive Sublimate a Dram*; *Purslane-water, or Spring-water, twenty Ounces*; *mix and dissolve*. A Spoonful of this being mix'd with either of the said Cathartick, may be given in the Morning, and repeated as often as Purging is thought to be convenient, *viz.* for eight or ten times.

XLVI. In such Constitutions as cannot indure so much Purging as is necessary, you may after thrice Purging with what is directed, evacuate the Belly with some proper Clyster; as with that which our Author has prescribed: Or with this following, *Take Cassia newly extracted, Syrup of Buckthorn, of each half an Ounce*; *Infusion of Crocus Metallorum, or Vinum Benedictum, two, three or four Ounces*; *Posset-drink or Mutton-broth a pint*; *mix them* and exhibit warm; which may be repeated every day, as the prudent Physician shall advise.

XLVII. After due Purging and Cleansing of the Body, the next thing to be done, is the Exhibition of *Balsamick Diureticks*, which by their abstersive and traumatick Qualities, may cleanse and heal the Ulcer. The first thing adviseable is the *Potio Alba*, which is to be made and used as is before directed, and ought to be repeated so long till the Running is stop'd. It is advisable to be made with *Milk*, but if you be at Sea, or in a Camp, where *Milk* cannot be had, you must content your self to make it with *fair Water*.

XLVIII. If the Patient cannot be obliged to take this White Potion, (by reason of its unpleasantness) he may take *White Rosin in fine Powder, a dram at a time*, made up into a *Bolus* with *Hony*, or *Conserve of Barberries*, or *Marmalade of Quinces*; which may be taken Morning and Evening for ten or twelve days together. Or he may take *Chio Turpentine two scruples, made up into Pills, with Crab-eyes levigated for one Dose*, to be repeated Morning and Evening every day so long as need shall require. Or the Patient may take from *half a dram to two scruples, or a dram of Balsam of Tolu, made up into Pills*, every Morning and Night, drinking after them this following, *Take Smiths Forge water filtered four Ounces*; *Powers of Turpentine two drams*; *Syrup of Limons an Ounce and half, mix them.*

XLIX. If none of the former things do, we commend as a Specifick (from great Experience) the Pills prescribed in Chap. XXVI. Sect. XXIII aforegoing, which may be given from half a Dram to a Dram, according to Age and other Accidents, every Night at Bed-time; they ease Pain, cleanse the parts, thicken the Humours, stop the Fluxion to the part, astring, dry and heal, and indeed are of excellent use to all the intentions of this Cure. This is also good, *Take Balsam of Peru nine drams*; *Chymical Oil of Juniper-berries, or of Turpentine, three drams, mix them.* Dose thirty drops Morning and Night in a Glass of half Wine half Water; or in an Ounce of Syrup of Violets or Diacodium, mix'd with a Glass of Smiths Forge-water filtred through brown Paper.

L. These Pills have cured many Virulent Gonorrhœa's, *Take Chio Turpentine an Ounce*; *Native Cinnabar of Antimony, of each levigated, an Ounce and half*; *Antimonium Diaphoreticum half an Ounce*; *Aurum Vitæ two drams and a half*; *Thebian*

bian Opium in fine Pouder two scruples; Balsam of Peru a dram and half: mix and make a Mass of Pills. Dose from two scruples to a Dram, every Night at Bed-time.

LI. *Take choice Antimony in Pouder, Harts-horn calcin'd to Whiteness in Pouder, of each a like quantity; mix them well; put the Mixture into an open earthen Vessel, and in a Wind Furnace calcine them, by stirring the Matter continually with an Iron Spatula, till it ceases smoking: Then put the whole into a Crucible with a large bottom, and calcine over a great Fire for two hours, so will you have a Pouder white as Snow,* and much exceeding, in Virtue, Diaphoretick Antimony. Dose half a Dram in Conserve of Red Roses, or in Smiths Forge-water, and Syrup of Red Roses, every Morning and Night. Or thus, *Take of this Pouder, of Native Cinnabar levigated, ana, one Ounce; Chio Turpentine half an Ounce; mix and make a Mass of Pills.* Dose from two Scruples to a Dram, Morning and Night. Or, *Take of this Antimonial Pouder one Ounce; Native Cinnabar two Ounces; Camphir in Pouder two Drams; Balsam of Peru an Ounce; mix and make an Electuary.* Dose from half a Dram to a Dram Morning and Night.

LII. If by the use of these things the Cure be not yet compleated, you must then come to the use of *Laudanum*, which very rarely goes without the desired Effects; and so you may give either of our *Laudanum Volatile*, or of our *Specifick Laudanum*, from gr. j *ss.* ad vj. increasing it to the highest Dose gradually, according to Age and other Accidents; for this thickens the Humours through the whole Body, and puts a stop to the Flux presently; and has a Balsamick healing Property withal: If the Patient cannot swallow Pills, you must give instead thereof 25 or 30 drops of our Authors *Liquid Laudanum*; or a Dose of our *Guttæ Vitæ*, every Night going to Bed, in a Glass of *Red Barabar Wine*, or the Wine mix'd with Water, or in some other proper Vehicle.

LIII. If notwithstanding the use of all these things, by reason that the Patient cannot take *Opiates*, or because of the Inveteracy or Malignity of the Disease, or Weakness of the Parts, their Tone being so extreamly hurt, that the Running will not yet stop, we must be obliged at last to come to the use of *Injections*, which may be used with a proper Yard, or Womb-Spring, three or four times a day, and sometimes oftner: Examples of which we have already given you variety in Sect. XXXI. aforegoing. Or you may use this. 1. *Take Balsam Copayhæ half an Ounce; Yolk of one Egg; stir them well together, then add Camphir made into fine Pouder, with a few drops of Spirit of Wine two drams; put to all this Smiths Forge-water three Pints; mix them for an Injection.* 2. Or this, *Take Trochisci abbi Rhasis three Drams; Smiths Forge-water a Quart or three Pints; mix for an Injection.* 3. Or this, *Take White Vitriol half an Ounce; Roch Alum two Drams; Saccharum Saturni, Camphir in fine Pouder, ana, one dram; Opium in fine Pouder half a dram; Smiths Forge-water two Quarts; Spirit of Wine or good Brandy four Ounces; mix them for an Injection;* to be used as before directed.

LIV. The Cure by these Operations being thus absolv'd, there has been in some, by reason of the Inveteracy of the Disease, and great Weakness of the parts, a remaining Innocent Gleet, not easily to be taken off by all these means; which though

though the Patient might not be immediately hurt by it, yet is no pleasant Companion to a clean neat Man, and may also in length of time induce a Consumption. To remedy this Trouble and Inconveniency, and restore the Tone of the hurt parts, we commend the following Medicament; *Take Native Cinnabar levigated an Ounce; Aurum Vitæ, Camphir in fine Pouder, of each two scruples; Opium in fine Pouder one scruple; Balsam of Peru two drams, or enough to make it into a Mass of Pills, for sixteen or twenty Doses*; to be given a Dose every Night at Bed-time.

LV. But the ultimate Remedy, when all other things for stopping this Gleet have proved ineffectual, is our *Panacea Aurea*, which may be taken from a Scruple to half a Dram, made up into Pills, with a drop or two of *Balsam of Peru*, or a little *Mithridate*, and so taken Morning and Evening for a Month or forty Days together. It neither Purges, Vomits, Sweats, nor makes Sick, or nauseates the Stomach, but is of a Balsamick, strengthening, healing Property, by which I have cured Ulcers both in the Reins, and Neck of the Bladder; and done such other unaccountable things with it, which I should scarcely believe, had they not been done by my self. *It is a Preparation of Gold, the Body of which is well opened, and in some measure Volatilis'd by the help of Mercury*; and is such a noble Preparation, that no ill Accident can ensue by the use thereof, though no Cathartick or Purging Medicine be taken after it. It may be given to Old and Young, and Women with Child, the Weak and Consumptive, with all the Safety imaginable: It dissolves and enters into the Mass of Blood, and makes it Balsamick and Healing: And by the use thereof, I have several times cured the Kings Evil, also a *Phthisis*, or Ulceration of the Lungs, *&c.* when the Patient has been given over as Uncurable.

LVI. *In some Patients, by the ill Management of the Physician, or Virulency of the Disease, the Yard becomes inflamed, and swoln, or contracted, which they call a Cordee, and so made crooked*; to remedy which, our Author has *a Fomentation, an Unction, and an Emplaster*, which sometimes may do well enough: But *a Cataplasm made of a roasted or baked Turnep, with a little Camphir in pouder mix'd with it*, applied as hot as it can be well endured, will do as much, the part being first *fomented with a Decoction of Turnep, with a little Camphir in it*, for some considerable while; This course I have often used with very good success. Or this, which is of approved use, *Take fine Bole an Ounce; Camphir a dram and half in fine pouder; Brandy enough to make them into the form of an Ointment.* Let the Yard lye for some time in *Warm new Milk mix'd with a little pouder of Camphir*; which done, apply the former Ointment upon Cloth, round the same and all the parts affected, renewing it when it is dry, as often as need requires. In this mixture, there is first the Bole or Turnep which are Alcali's. 2. The Camphir, with a Volatile, Oleaginous, Alcalious Sulphur. 3. Spirit of Wine or Brandy, which is a Volatile Alcalious Spirit. Each of these things singly are active Anodyns and Discussives; but in conjunction are very potent and penetrative things, so that they go to the Root of the Cause; and by means of their energetick Quality, open the Pores and Passages, and render the obstructing Matter more fluid and moveable, to cause a Transpiration or Discussion thereof.

thereof. Also you may inject with this, *Take Purslane-water, or Decoction of Burdock-root, or new Milk, four Ounces; Camphir a scruple, made into fine pouder, with a few drops of Brandy, mix them.*

LVII. *If there is an Ulcer in the Lips of the Preputium, or in the Glans lying under it, or in the* Sinus Muliebris, our Authors Prescript may be of good use. But if the Ulcer wants Digestion, your best way will be to dress it twice a day with this Digestive, *Take Venice or Strasburgh Turpentine half an Ounce; Yolk of one Egg; grind them together well in a little Mortar, then add Oil of Ben a dram; Honey two drams; mix them for a Liniment.* When the Ulcer has been sufficiently digested by the use of this, then it will be best to come to the Application of our Authors Liniment with Precipitate, which will facilitate the Cure. Or you may apply this, *Take Unguentum Diaplompholigos, or Rosatum, an Ounce, Mercurius dulcis half an Ounce; Saccharum Saturni a dram; mix them.* Or this, *Take Unguentum de Minio an Ounce; Amalgama of Saturn and Mercury in fine pouder two or three drams; mix them,* and apply it. See it in our *Pharmacopœia Chirurgica.*

LVIII. The Ulcer, if very foul, may be washed and cleansed with this, *Take White Lisbon Sherry, or other strong Wine, six or eight Ounces; Camphir in fine pouder two scruples or a dram; fine cleansed Verdigrise, Corrosive Sublimate, of each half a scruple; mix and make a Wash.* Or this, *Take* Fallopius *his Mercurial Water,* or Fernelius *his Aqua Divina (see it in our* Pharmacopœia Chirurgica,) *Spirit of Wine or Brandy, of each four Ounces; Aloes, Camphir, Frankincense, of each (in fine pouder) two drams; mix all for a Wash.* Here is Mercury, one of the greatest Enemies to an Acid, sublim'd with Salt, whereby it is the more easily dissolved in Wine or in Water; also Camphir, a Volatile, Oily, Alcalious Sulphur; and other Gums, mix'd with Wine, Brandy, *&c.* that they may as well penetrate the Ulcer, as cleanse it; besides they open the Pores of the adjacent parts, that the Mercury meeting with the Acid, may overcome it. *Aqua Calcis,* by reason it is an admirable Alcali, is much commended in this case, for it as well absorbs the Acid as cleanses the Ulcer, and so induces the Healing.

LIX. To these things may be added, *the Water of the Gryphin,* the Preparation of which you may see in our *London Dispensatory,* lib. 3. cap. 7 sect. 31. Also this following, *Take Corrosive Sublimate in fine pouder an Ounce; Sal Armoniack two Ounces; Rain-water a Gallon; mix them together in a large Glass-bottle, shaking them now and then till they are dissolved; then add thereto pure Salt of Tartar four Ounces; so will the Mercury, for the most part, precipitate to the bottom; then decant the clear Water for the use here proposed.* (The Orange Tawney Pouder you may wash with fair Water, dry, and keep for other uses.) This Water is impregnated with some of the Particles of the Salt of Vitriol with which the Mercury was sublimed; as also with some Volatile Particles of the Sal Armoniack, and some of the fix'd Salt of Tartar, which by the Volatile are put into motion. The Virulent Ulcer therefore, being wash'd with this Water, it absorbs the Acid thereof, softens its callous Lips, and by its detersive quality, so cleanses it, as to cause its speedy healing.

LX. Also *Emplastrum Griseum* may be applied over all, because by its alcalious Ingredients it does

in

in like manner obtund the Acid: Or *Diapompholix* mix'd with some Mercurial, as the former *Orange Tawney precipitated pouder*, &c. which will restrain the too great increase or growing of the Flesh, which otherwise might prove so Luxuriant, as to be troublesome to be taken away by Corrosives. The Ulcer being digested and cleansed, the following Compositions are singularly good for healing. 1. *Take Ceruse, Litharge, ana, half an Ounce; Frankincence in pouder two drams; fine Aloes a dram; Red Precipitate, or the Princes Pouder, twelve Grains; Brandy, enough to make it into a soft Ointment*; which if at any time it is too dry, is to be softned with the same Spirit again. 2. Or this, *Take Tutty prepared, Olibanum in fine pouder, ana, two drams; Mastick, Myrrh, Camphir, of each in fine pouder half a dram; Brandy, enough to make it into the Consistency of an Ointment.* 4. Or this, *Take Terra Sigillata, Minium, ana, two drams; Benjamin, Olibanum, ana, a dram; Camphir in fine pouder half a dram; Alicant, Barabar, Canary, or Tent, a sufficient quantity; mix and make a soft Ointment.* 4. Or this, *Take fine Bole, burnt Harts-horn, Ceruse, ana, two drams; Camphir half a dram; mix them; and with Aqua Calcis, a sufficient quantity, make a soft Ointment.*

LXI. If upon these Venereal Ulcers when they Scab, there should grow high, hard, ugly, deformed Warts, (as many times there does) Corrosives are to be applyed to take them away, as *Red Precipitate, White Precipitate, the Princes pouder, Burnt Alum*, and the like, which may be put on in Pouder, or mix'd with some proper Balsam. If the Ulcerations are hard or callous, the Callosity is to be removed by application of the former *Orange Tawney Precipitate or Pouder*; also with *Emplastrum de Ranis* with double or trebble Mercury; Or this, *Take Unguentum Rosatum one Ounce; Amalgama of Saturn and Mercury three drams; or of the Orange Tawney Precipitate a dram and half; mix them, and apply it.*

LXII. However, during all this work, it would be necessary for the Patient to purge now and then with some of *the former Purges, with Aurum Vitæ*; and continually to take *Balsam Copaybæ*, either alone or mix'd with *Balsam of Peru, and made into a Bolus or Pills, with levigated Pouder of Crabs-eys*; also to drink for ordinary drink some of the former prescribed Liquors, or *a Decoction of China and Sarsa, or of Burdock-roots*, which will obtund the Acid; and obliterate the Virulent Humours, how inveterate soever.

LXIII. If the *Scrotum* or Cod be swoln, our Authors Prescription is well, abating his Bleeding. But if both to the Fomentation and Cataplasm, Camphir is added, they will be so much the better. You may foment also with a Decoction, or with the Juice of Turneps with Camphir; and after Fomentation you may apply a Cataplasm of baked or roasted Turneps, mix'd with a proportional quantity of Camphir in Pouder. Or this, *Take Leven'd Bread hot out of the Oven, or otherwise, three Ounces; Hemlock, or Hen-bane leaves, two handfuls; Barly-flower an Ounce and half; Camphir in pouder half an Ounce; with Wine Vinegar make a Cataplasm*, which apply as hot as the Patient can conveniently bear it.

LXIV. 'Tis certain that the Morbifick Matter in the Tumour ought to be made fluid, as much as possible it can be, by things which

have a Power of dissolving not only outwardly applied, but also inwardly given. *An Infusion of Thea, or of China, or Decoction of Sarsa or Burdock-roots*, ought daily to be drank, with 25 or 30 drops of *Spirit of Harts-horn*, or *of Urine*, or *of Man's Blood*, or *of Sal Armoniack made with Salt of Tartar*; or with eight or ten Grains *of Salt of Vipers*; or some drops of *Sal Volatile Oleosum nostrum*; for that all these Volatile Alcalious Salts are not only Antidotes against Venereal Virulency, but also dissolve all Congelations of Humours in what part of the Body soever, and so make them fluid. And Morning and Night, he ought daily to take a *Bolus* or *Pills* made either of *Chio Turpentine, or of Balsam Copaybæ, or Balsam of Peru*, either of them singly, or mix'd together, and brought into a Body *with levigated Pouder of Crabs-eyes and Native Cinnabar*. But if the Tumour comes to a great heighth, so as that it cannot be discussed and carried off, it must (after Maturation) be opened by Incision or otherwise; and being brought to a perfect Digestion, be cleansed, and then healed after the manner of other Ulcers.

LXV. This Cataplasm is good, 1. *Take Leven'd Bread, Cow-dung, ana, four Ounces; Henbane leaves Hemlock, Rue leaves, ana, a handful; boil them in Cream or Milk to a good Consistency; then add Wheat Meal, Honey, ana, three Ounces; Mirthridate two Ounces; Camphir in fine pouder half an Ounce; mix them*; first foment the Tumour well with some of the former Fomentations mix'd with Camphir, then apply the now prescribed Cataplasm very warm. 2. Or this, *Take Water-Hemlock, Garden Cresses, ana, two handfuls; Henbane-leaves one handful; Tobacco half a handful; boil all in half Water half Wine-Vinegar, to softness, then add thereto Crumbs of Leven'd Bread, enough to bring it to a Consistency; Mithridate three Ounces; Camphir half an Ounce; mix and make a Cataplasm.* 3. Or this, *Take Garden-Cresses, or Water-Cresses, four Ounces, chap and bruise them; add Hogs-Lard or Oil of Ben one Ounce and half; boil to the Consumption of the Humidity (but not to crispness) then add thereto Mithridate an Ounce and half; Camphir in fine pouder three drams; mix for a Cataplasm.*

LXVI. *If there be a Caruncle accompanying the Gonorrhœa, which is a small fleshy Substance growing in the Urethra or passage of the Yard*, it must be taken away with all the speed and dexterity that may be, for till that is done, no Cure can be compleated, nor yet can the Patient be easie, because it stops up the passage of the Urine, and if any of it passes, it is as it were by drops, and with much Difficulty, Heat and Pain.

LXVII. To do this work, you ought to be prepared, *first*, with proper *Catharetica, (Medicamenta quæ excrescentem, carnem absumunt)* corrosive eating Medicines, in form of *Pouders* or *Ointments*, which may eat and consume the Excrescence. *Secondly, A proper Instrument* to convey the said Preparations to the place affected, so as it may lye upon the excreted fleshy Substance.

LXVIII. We shall give you some Examples of these Compositions, 1. *Take Red Precipitate, White Precipitate, ana, equal quantities; grind them well together, and keep the Pouder for use.* 2. *Take Red Precipitate, Mercurius dulcis, of each equal quantities; mix and grind them together to a subtil Pouder.* 3. *Take the Princes Pouder two parts, Mercurius dulcis one part; mix them, and*

and keep it for use. 4. *Take burnt Alum a dram; fine Verdigrise twelve grains; mix them and make a Pouder.* 5. *Take Red Precipitate a dram; Amalgama of Saturn and Mercury half a dram; mix them, and keep it for use.* 6. *Take Red Precipitate finely ground a dram; fine Verdigrise gr.* 10. *Pouder of Savin a dram and half; mix them.* 7. *Take Red Precipitate a dram; Mercurius dulcis half a dram; Verdigrise half a scruple; mix and grind them together to a soft Pouder.* 8. *Take of the Princes Pouder a dram; Flowers of Sulphur half a dram; Verdigrise half a scruple; mix them, and keep it for use.* 9. *Take Burnt Honey two drams; Burnt Alum three drams; mix them for a Pouder.*

LXIX. Sometimes the *Catheretick* is made in the form of an Ointment; as, 1. *Unguentum Ægyptiacum*, which may be applied upon a little Lint, tyed to the end of a Thread to pull it out again. 2. *Unguentum Apostolorum*, which may be used in the same manner. 3. This mixture; *Take Ointment of Tobacco an Ounce; yellow Wax two drams; Turpentine three drams; Red Precipitate half a dram; fine Verdigrise a scruple; mix, and make an Ointment.* 4. *Take Ointment of Tobacco an Ounce; Princes Pouder two drams; fine Verdigrise a scruple; mix them.* 5. *Take Basilicon an Ounce; Red Precipitate two drams; Burnt Alum a scruple; fine Verdigrise gr. xij. mix them.* 6. *Take Basilicon, Ointment of Tobacco, ana, half an Ounce; Red Precipitate two drams; burnt Honey a dram; burnt Alum half a dram; mix them.* 7. *Take Ointment of Tobacco an Ounce; Red Precipitate two drams ground fine, with Mercurius dulcis one dram; mix them.* These Pouders and Ointments, may be made either stronger or weaker as the Physician pleases, by adding a greater or lesser quantity of the Corrosives, and they are to be used till the Carnosity is consumed.

LXX. Sometimes the *Catheretick* is made as an Injection, thus; 1. *Take Quick Lime two Pounds; fair Water a Gallon; mix, dissolve, digest, for* 24 *hours, then decant and filter, to which add Mercurius dulcis levigated three Ounces; mix by shaking till the little Globules of the Mercury fall into the Pouder.* 2. *Take of the former Lime-water a Gallon; Red Precipitate ground fine and washed two Ounces; Honey of Roses four Ounces; mix them.* 3. *Take Lime-water two Quarts; of the Princes Pouder, Mercurius dulcis, of each three drams; Honey of Roses an Ounce; mix them.* 4. *Take fair Water two Quarts; Honey of Roses three Ounces; mix and dissolve; then add burnt Alum, Red Precipitate, or Arcanum Coralinum, three drams; Mercurius dulcis two drams; fine Verdigrise one dram; mix them.* These are to be injected with a Yard-Syringe two or three times a day, or oftner, as need requires.

LXXI. *The Instrument* through which the Pouders or Ointments are to be conveyed down to the part affected, must be a small Pipe, which ought to be made of Silver, very smooth and even, wider at the one end, into which the Pouder, *&c.* is put, and smaller at the other end which enters into the Yard; which Pipe is to be put into the *Urethra* so low, as almost to touch the *Carnosity*; and then the Pouder being put in at the upper end of the Pipe, is to be blown down upon the *Carnosity*, or else press'd down with a little Lint tyed to the end of a Silver Probe, till it compleatly lyes upon the *Caruncle*. If it is an Ointment which is used, it ought to be put upon a bit of Lint tyed to the end of a Thread, which, with a Probe, is to

have a Power of dissolving not only outwardly applied, but also inwardly given. *An Infusion of Thea, or of China, or Decoction of Sarsa or Burdock-roots*, ought daily to be drank, with 25 or 30 drops of *Spirit of Harts-horn*, or *of Urine*, or *of Man's Blood*, or *of Sal Armoniack made with Salt of Tartar*; or with eight or ten Grains *of Salt of Vipers*; or some drops of *Sal Volatile Oleosum nostrum*; for that all these Volatile Alcalious Salts are not only Antidotes against Venereal Virulency, but also dissolve all Congelations of Humours in what part of the Body soever, and so make them fluid. And Morning and Night, he ought daily to take a *Bolus* or *Pills* made either of *Chio Turpentine, or of Balsam Copaybæ, or Balsam of Peru*, either of them singly, or mix'd together, and brought into a Body *with levigated Pouder of Crabs-eyes and Native Cinnabar.* But if the Tumour comes to a great heighth, so as that it cannot be discussed and carried off, it must (after Maturation) be opened by Incision or otherwise; and being brought to a perfect Digestion, be cleansed, and then healed after the manner of other Ulcers.

LXV. This Cataplasm is good, 1. *Take Leven'd Bread, Cow-dung, ana, four Ounces; Henbane leaves Hemlock, Rue leaves, ana, a handful; boil them in Cream or Milk to a good Consistency; then add Wheat Meal, Honey, ana, three Ounces; Mirthridate two Ounces; Camphir in fine pouder half an Ounce; mix them*; first foment the Tumour well with some of the former Fomentations mix'd with Camphir, then apply the now prescribed Cataplasm very warm. 2. Or this, *Take Water-Hemlock, Garden Cresses, ana, two handfuls; Henbane-leaves one handful; Tobacco half a handful; boil all in half Water half Wine-Vinegar, to softness, then add thereto Crumbs of Leven'd Bread, enough to bring it to a Consistency; Mithridate three Ounces; Camphir half an Ounce; mix and make a Cataplasm.* 3. Or this, *Take Garden-Cresses, or Water-Cresses, four Ounces, chap and bruise them; add Hogs-Lard or Oil of Ben one Ounce and half; boil to the Consumption of the Humidity (but not to crispness) then add thereto Mithridate an Ounce and half; Camphir in fine pouder three drams; mix for a Cataplasm.*

LXVI. *If there be a Caruncle accompanying the Gonorrhœa, which is a small fleshy Substance growing in the Urethra or passage of the Yard*, it must be taken away with all the speed and dexterity that may be, for till that is done, no Cure can be compleated, nor yet can the Patient be easie, because it stops up the passage of the Urine, and if any of it passes, it is as it were by drops, and with much Difficulty, Heat and Pain.

LXVII. To do this work, you ought to be prepared, *first*, with proper *Catharetica, (Medicamenta quæ excrescentem, carnem absumunt)* corrosive eating Medicines, in form of *Pouders* or *Ointments*, which may eat and consume the Excrescence. *Secondly, A proper Instrument* to convey the said Preparations to the place affected, so as it may lye upon the excreted fleshy Substance.

LXVIII. We shall give you some Examples of these Compositions, 1. *Take Red Precipitate, White Precipitate, ana, equal quantities; grind them well together, and keep the Pouder for use.* 2. *Take Red Precipitate, Mercurius dulcis, of each equal quantities; mix and grind them together to a subtil Pouder.* 3. *Take the Princes Pouder two parts, Mercurius dulcis one part; mix them*

and

and keep it for use. 4. *Take burnt Alum a dram; fine Verdigrise twelve grains; mix them and make a Pouder.* 5. *Take Red Precipitate a dram; Amalgama of Saturn and Mercury half a dram; mix them, and keep it for use.* 6. *Take Red Precipitate finely ground a dram; fine Verdigrise gr.* 10. *Pouder of Savin a dram and half; mix them.* 7. *Take Red Precipitate a dram; Mercurius dulcis half a dram; Verdigrise half a scruple; mix and grind them together to a soft Pouder.* 8. *Take of the Princes Pouder a dram; Flowers of Sulphur half a dram; Verdigrise half a scruple; mix them, and keep it for use.* 9. *Take Burnt Honey two drams; Burnt Alum three drams; mix them for a Pouder.*

LXIX. Sometimes the *Catheretick* is made in the form of an Ointment; as, 1. *Unguentum Ægyptiacum*, which may be applied upon a little Lint, tyed to the end of a Thread to pull it out again. 2. *Unguentum Apostolorum*, which may be used in the same manner. 3. This mixture; *Take Ointment of Tobacco an Ounce; yellow Wax two drams; Turpentine three drams; Red Precipitate half a dram; fine Verdigrise a scruple; mix, and make an Ointment.* 4. *Take Ointment of Tobacco an Ounce; Princes Pouder two drams; fine Verdigrise a scruple; mix them.* 5. *Take Basilicon an Ounce; Red Precipitate two drams; Burnt Alum a scruple; fine Verdigrise gr. xij. mix them.* 6. *Take Basilicon, Ointment of Tobacco, ana, half an Ounce; Red Precipitate two drams; burnt Honey a dram; burnt Alum half a dram; mix them.* 7. *Take Ointment of Tobacco an Ounce; Red Precipitate two drams ground fine, with Mercurius dulcis one dram; mix them.* These Pouders and Ointments, may be made either stronger or weaker as the Physician pleases, by adding a greater or lesser quantity of the Corrosives, and they are to be used till the Carnosity is consumed.

LXX. Sometimes the *Catheretick* is made as an Injection, thus; 1. *Take Quick Lime two Pounds; fair Water a Gallon; mix, dissolve, digest, for 24 hours, then decant and filter, to which add Mercurius dulcis levigated three Ounces; mix by shaking till the little Globules of the Mercury fall into the Pouder.* 2. *Take of the former Lime-water a Gallon; Red Precipitate ground fine and washed two Ounces; Honey of Roses four Ounces; mix them.* 3. *Take Lime-water two Quarts; of the Princes Pouder, Mercurius dulcis, of each three drams; Honey of Roses an Ounce; mix them.* 4. *Take fair Water two Quarts; Honey of Roses three Ounces; mix and dissolve; then add burnt Alum, Red Precipitate, or Arcanum Coralinum, three drams; Mercurius dulcis two drams; fine Verdigrise one dram; mix them.* These are to be injected with a Yard-Syringe two or three times a day, or oftner, as need requires.

LXXI. *The Instrument* through which the Pouders or Ointments are to be conveyed down to the part affected, must be a small Pipe, which ought to be made of Silver, very smooth and even, wider at the one end, into which the Pouder, *&c.* is put, and smaller at the other end which enters into the Yard; which Pipe is to be put into the *Urethra* so low, as almost to touch the *Carnosity*; and then the Pouder being put in at the upper end of the Pipe, is to be blown down upon the *Carnosity*, or else press'd down with a little Lint tyed to the end of a Silver Probe, till it compleatly lyes upon the *Caruncle*. If it is an Ointment which is used, it ought to be put upon a bit of Lint tyed to the end of a Thread, which, with a Probe, is to

be thrust down through the Pipe, till it comes to the *Caruncle*. The Pipe may be either kept in, in the passage, or else drawn out after every Dressing, as the reason of the thing may require; but it is certain that it is always to be drawn out when the Patient has occasion to make water; And one thing more is always to be observed, that the Man be caused to Piss every time before Dressing, lest by doing it some little time after, the Dressing should be wash'd away.

LXXII. After the *Caruncle* is corroded and eaten away, the Ulcer is to be healed by some of the following Medicaments; 1. *Take Burnt Lead, Tutty, ana, two parts; Catechu one part; Flowers of Sulphur half a part; mix them.* 3. *Take Litharge of Gold, fine Bole, Olibanum in fine Pouder, of each equal parts; mix them.* 4. *Take Litharge, Ceruse, fine Bole, of each two parts; Camphir one part; mix them.* 5. *Take Frankincense in Pouder three drams; Mastick, Olibanum in Pouder, of each two Drams; Litharge, Ceruse, Terra Sigillata, ana, one dram; mix them.* 6. *Take Caput Mort. of Vitriol washed and levigated, Terra Sigillata, ana, two drams; Yellow Rosin, Camphir, ana, one dram; mix them.* 7. *Take Crude Antimony levigated, fine Bole, Terra Sigillata, Ceruse, Camphir, of each a dram; mix them.* 8. *Take Litharge, Lapis Calaminaris levigated, Frankincense in Pouder, Mastich in Pouder, Camphir in Pouder, of each equal parts; mix them.* Some one of these Pouders may be either blown in through the Pipe upon the Ulcer, or else made into an Ointment, with a little *Wax, Turpentine and Oil*, and conveyed down as before directed.

LXXIII. Or this Injection may be used; 1. *Take moderate Lime water a Quart; Honey of Roses three Ounces, Catechu in fine Pouder an Ounce and half*; mix for an Injection. 2. *Take Spring-water a Quart; White Vitriol two drams; Saccharum Saturni a dram, Alum half a dram; Opium two Scruples dissolved in water; mix, dissolve, digest 24 hours; then being settled, decant the clear, and add Camphir in Pouder two drams, and keep it for use.* 3. *Take fair Water a Quart; White Virriol, Alum, Catechu, Camphir, ana, a dram; Opium half a dram; mix and dissolve, decant the clear, and add to it Spirit of Wine three Ounces; and keep it for use.*

LXXIV. Lastly, whilst these healing Pouders, Ointments or Injections are using outwardly, Let the Patient take every Night going to Bed of our *Laudanum Volatile or Specificum, à gr. ij ad iv.* as need requires, for a Fortnight or more together, to fortifie Nature, thicken the Juices, prevent future Defluxions, strengthen the weakned parts, and so to compleat an absolute Cure. See more of the Cure of this Disease in the third Edition of our *Synopsis Medicinæ*, lib. 5. cap. 43. and in our *Ars Chirurgica*, lib. 2. cap. 38. some few Years ago emitted into the World.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXVIII. *Of the* FRENCH POX.

I. WHen by the long Continuance of a Virulent Gonorrhæa, or the unskilful Use of Astringents, the Blood shall be contaminated; that Disease is produced which is called the *French Pox*. 2. Bubo's or malignant Botches appear in the Groin, the Sick Person is afflicted with a Pain in the Head; and in the Spaces between the Joints, mostly when he grows hot in Bed. 3. And several Parts of the Body are covered with a Scurf, or cuticular Defilement, which is of a yellow colour like a Scab; and the more the Scab spreads it self, so much the less will he be tormented with the Pain. 4. In the Scull, Legs, and Arms, there are Exostoses, Nodes, Tophs, or Boney Excrescencies, Inflamations and Rottenness of the Bones; and in divers parts eating Ulcers, which for the most part appear first in the Jaws, from whence creeping gradually through the Palate to the Cartilaginous parts of the Nose, they in a little time consume it. 5. The Ulcers, Rottenness and Pain daily increasing, the Members are gradually destroyed, till at last the worn-out and consum'd Carcass, already grown burthensome to the Living, is buried out of sight.

II. *Take Hogs-lard two Ounces; Crude Quick-silver one Ounce; mix them for a Liniment, to be divided into three equal parts*; with one of which let the Sick anoint his Arms and Legs with his own hands; this do for three Nights together. 2. If within three days after the last Anointing, the Salivation or Spitting does not begin; let *Turbith Mineral gr. viij. be exhibited in Conserve of Red Roses*. But to such as are less strong, give *Mercurius Dulcis one scruple in the same Conserve*. 3. Also, if the Salivation already begun, grows weak or decays, before the total vanishing of the Symptoms, it must be quickened now and then with a like Dose of *Mercurius Dulcis*. 4. The Salivation or Spitting ought to be moderated, that the Sick may spit about four Pints in twenty four hours. 5. But if it should rise too high, and be attended with too great an Inflamation, and other evil Symptoms of that Nature, it ought to be repress'd with Cathartick's, and kept in a due degree of Moderation.

III. Presently after the vanishing of the Symptoms, let the Sick Person shift, and the Sheets of the Bed be changed, and clean ones put in their room, which yet ought to be such as have been already used. 2. If the Sick be afflicted with a *Diarrhæa*, or Looseness, (which mostly happens before the Salivation, or before it is much advanced) it ought to be stop'd by the Exhibition of *Liquid Laudanum*, still increasing and repeating the Dose, till it has answer'd the desired end. 3. If the Mouth be ulcerated, or very sore, let it be wash'd with *Damask-Rose-water*, or *Milk and Water mix'd together*, or with the following Decoction. 4. *Take of Althæa roots, hull'd Barley, ana, an Ounce; Quinee-seeds half an Ounce; boil them in a convenient quantity of Water to a Quart*; make a Wash or Gargle, which ought to be often used.

IV. Let the Diet and Regulation of the Sick be the same which is usually prescribed when purging Medicines are given; but whilst a few

days are pass'd in the beginning, let their Drink be *Posset-drink, Barley and Oat-broths or Gruel*, and *small Beer warmed*. 2. All these things being rightly done (though there be not the least of any Symptoms left, and the Sick seems to be perfectly well,) yet to secure from danger of a Relapse, once a Week exhibit *a scruple of Mercurius Dulcis*, reiterating it four or six times; yea though the Patient should be well enough to walk abroad, and seems to be perfectly cured.

SALMON's Comment.

V. It is called in Greek, Σιφυλὶς; Φθορὰ Ἀφροδίσια; Λοιμὸς καὶ λοιγὸς ἀφροδίσιος; in Latin, *Lues*, and *Lues Venerea*, also *Morbus Gallicus*, *Morbus Neopolitanus* and *Siphylis*; in English, *The French Disease*, *The French Pox*, also the *Foul Disease*, and *the Pox*, simply by way of Eminence. And this is when a *Virulent Gonorrhœa*, arrives at its *Fourth Stage*, in which the Venereal Virulency, by its continuation and progress (the Running being stop'd too soon by Astringents, and other Accidents, before due cleansing) finds its way, and by the ends of the Capillary Veins, makes its passage into the Blood and Lympha, thereby contaminating the Blood and all the Sanguinous Serosities.

VI. This Venereal Virulency is a peculiar Acid, differing from all other Acids; and as there are several kinds of Acids, such as are opposite and even destructive one of another; as for example, *Leven, Vinegar, Verjuice, Juice of Limons, Juice of Citrons, Spirit of Alum, Spirit and Oils of Vitriol and Sulphur, Spirit of Nitre, Aqua-fortis, Aqua Regis*, &c, all which consist of Acid Particles differing one from another, in form, quantity, quality, and manner of Operation; so in this Disease the Acid does as much differ from all others, being impregnated with a peculiar Poison, with which it infects by degrees all the Juices of the Humane Body, yet some Juices or Humours more easily and peculiarly than others, and afterwards the others in order; for that like Leven, being once mix'd with them, it causes such a Ferment which at length infects and poysons their whole Mass, not much unlike to the Foam, or Ferment and Poyson of a Mad Dog, which gradually insinuates it self into the Blood and Lympha, so much, till it effects the same thing and disorder in a Man, which was actually in the diseased Dog.

VII. But this Venereal and Virulent Acid has something else in it, which other Acids have not, to wit, that in contains and is repleat with a vast number of poisonous minute *Animalcula*, which as well gnaw and eat, as poison by their Venom, and so corrupt first the external parts of the Genitals, then going farther, seize greedily upon the first Juices, and still increasing in number and magnitude, gather strength so much, that if not timely overcome by some proper Medicines which may inervate and kill them, they prey upon the next adjacent parts, and so make an universal and forcible inroad into the *Blood* and *Lympha*, causing a wonderful Discrasy, and poisoning or corrupting their whole Mass. *Jesus* the Son of *Sirach* in *Ecclesiasticus*, Chap 19. 2, 3. seems to say the same thing; *He that cleaves to Harlots will become impudent, Moths and Worms shall have him for their Inheritance*: Where, by *Moths and Worms* preying upon the vital Juices and fleshy Substance,

Substance, those aforenamed *Animalcula* may easily be understood.

VIII. *The parts affected* are first the Genital parts (when gotten by *Coition*,) then it infects the parts adjacent; after which it corrupts the Seed and Seminal Vessels; and making its farther progress, it contaminates the Blood and Lympha, which, by Circulation, infect the Muscalious Flesh in all parts of the Body, especially those parts which are most Brawny, then those places which are Nervous, and lastly the Boney parts, accordingly as it makes its way; It corrupts the Thighs, Back and Reins, and creeping upwards, affects the Arms, Neck and Face, with Breakings-out, and the Head it self, either with most vehement and intollerable Pains, or else with Tumour and Exulcerations, to that degree, as either to cause Deafness, or the loss of Sight, or a Rottenness of the *Cranium*, and Bones of the Nose, so that in some Patients, large pieces of the Scull have been taken away.

IX. *The Causes of this Disease.* Before we come to the Signs and Symptoms, we will speak of the Causes. The remote or prime Cause is *Coition* with an impure Person, which Experience and Reason do evince. For as the *POX* proceeds originally from the Adulteration or mixing of various Seeds in the same Womb, which by continued and repeated Acts of Uncleanness inflames the parts, and causes a Corruption of the same Seeds; it follows that this Putridity, like a Ferment, works and infects the Woman, creates Ulcers and a virulent Running, which by degrees entring into the Mass of Blood and Humours, is conveyed all over the whole Body, and as a poisonous Ferment Levens the whole Substance not only of the Genital parts, but of the Flesh it self, so that the Woman becomes affected with a Confirmed Pox.

X. This Virulent Matter in the Woman becomes Contagious, so that a sound Man lying with her, presently becomes infected with this Venereal and Poisonous Matter, which seizing upon the parts of the *Penis*, as *Preputium*, *Glans*, *Urethra*, *Prostatæ*, *Parastatæ*, *Semen*, &c. by length of time and ill management, insinuates its self into his Blood, where fermenting it, it corrupts and putrifies the same, and if not quickly cured, causes the Signs and Symptoms of the Disease to appear, and manifest themselves in many parts of the Body, and sometimes through the whole Body, in several degrees, and in various forms and manners, according to the State and Virulency of the Disease, and as the Pox is more or less inveterate and malign.

XI. Again, such an infected and Pocky Man, having *Coition* with a sound Woman by Contact, infects her in like manner with the same Disease; for the Virulent Particles of the *Virus* and *contaminated Sperm* being ejaculated into the Womb, seizes upon it, and the parts contiguous, and taints her with this Disease in the same manner, as a Pocky Woman infects a Man; in whom (without good Remedies be immediately and speedily applyed) the Venereal Malignity insinuating it self into the Blood and Lympha, it over-turns the healthy Habit, and profligates the vital Congruity; so that in no long time after, all the Symptoms of the Distemper manifest themselves in their usual forms of Appearances.

XII. This Disease may be gotten more ways than by *Coition*; for as

it is a contagious Distemper, so it is natural to propagate it self by Contact, seeing the true cause of it is a Virulent Ferment; and it is the Nature of the Ferment to increase it self indefinitely after the manner of Leven, or Yest, which reduces all the Paste or Wort it is put into, into its own nature; so that the Disease is either, 1. *Hereditary*, originally from the Womb, or 2. by *Coition*, or 3. by *External Contact*, as lying and touching the Pocky Sores of such as have them Running upon them, drinking after such as have Pocky Ulcers in their Mouths, also Sucking a Pocky Woman, or giving Suck to a Pocky Child, *&c.*

XIII. This Venereal Ferment operates in Mans Body, just as *Leven* or *Yest* do when they are put into proper matter to work upon, as has been already hinted; and this *Virus* is of such a Nature, and consists of such Principles, which being resolved, exalted and put into motion, by Application to other Matter fit for it to act upon, that it can penetrate, resolve, move, change, and convert it into its own nature: which is done by Rarefaction of the Particles of the Matter it seizes on, where joyning it self with the inherent Spirits, they increase the Motion, and force the Acrid Particles of the *Virus* yet farther into those parts, which thereupon are more divided and infected, and this gives enterance into other parts farther off, and not yet attack'd, where joyning with the Spirits of those other parts, it increases the Motion, Progress and Fermentation more and more, and ceases not, but continues the same till all the parts of the whole humane Frame receive the Taint, and are infected with the Principles of the first Ferment.

XIV. And as the Pox is a Contagious Disease, communicated from one to another indefinitely by Contact, and that it is the same in all Persons, and always arises from one and the same cause, which cause is a particular Ferment, as is before specified: This Ferment if it be made Active, must be by applying it to a Matter or Subject homogene to its original Principle, otherwise it is dormant, and lies as a thing dead. Thus it is in *Leven*, made of Paste, from Flower and Water: This dissolved and mix'd with other Paste, will Leven it all, and exalt it to its own determined Nature and Qualities. So, *Yest* made of Ale from Wort, being dissolved and mix'd with Wort again, will transmute all the Wort into the same property. And *Vinegar* made of Wine, being mixed with the best Wine, will transmute the whole quantity, and that into the like Vinegar and of the same strength. So this *Venereal Ferment*, being made of the Seed of Humane Bodies, and being commixed with Humane Seeds, or other Juices of the said Humane Bodies, works the like Change in them, whence it appears that this *Virus* is a true Ferment, because nothing else can perform these Mutations or Changes.

XV. Now the Seed of Mankind is the Principal or first Matter of which the Humane Species is composed, and it has relation to all the Parts of the Body; 1. To the Solid parts, as it is the Basis and Foundation thereof. 2. To the Blood, Lympha, and Serum, because it proceeds from them. 3. To the Spirits, whether Natural, Vital, or Animal, because they fill it, enliven it, and make it Active. So that when this Seed is altered or corrupted, by any Accident, of Heat, Mo-

Motion, or heterogene Matter mixed with it, it is very apt to degenerate into such a Ferment as we have been speaking of, for that it does contain and partake of Saline, Motive and Vital Principles, very fit to be exalted to the highest Acrimony and Virulence.

XVI. *But what should make the Seed degenerate into this Virus, is next to be enquired into.* The Conjunction of the Seed of one Man and one Woman can never be transmuted into such a Virulent and Contagious Ferment, because they act only according to the Law of Nature, either in order to Generation, or Decidence, never producing any thing which is evil, or any kind of Disease, while Moderation is observed. But this Deprivation is made without doubt first in the Womb of a Woman who is common, and entertains many Men, whose Seeds, as they are various, may be of as different and many times of *opposite* qualities which mixing in that Center, by their singular and proper active Potency, contend one with another, and through the Heat or Inflamation of the Matrix, being made over-hot by a Continuation of Venereous Acts presently one after another, by their great Agitation, and Rarefaction of their Particles, and by virtue of their Saline Principle, are presently put into a pernicious Ferment, so that this Adulteration, Mixture or Compound of those various Seeds forthwith is corrupted and degenerates into this exorbitant Putridity or *Virus*, so wonderful detrimental to the healthful State of Nature. This virulent Ferment is called *Venereal*, because by its corrupting the Seeds and Substances or Bodies of sound Persons, by a peculiar Determination, lays the Foundation, and gives rise to this *Venereal* or *Foul Disease*.

XVII. The Acrimony of this *Virus*, its Acidity, corrosive Property and malign Quality, proceeds from its Saline Principle exalted to its Summity; nor can they proceed from any thing else; for by the Exaltation of the innate Salts of those Seeds, an Acidity is presently raised, and a putrid Fermentation, whereby the adulterated Seed is presently corrupted, which in a short time after produces all the various Symptoms of this Disease, as shall be hereafter declared. Now that all Acrimony, or Sharpness and Acidity, proceed from Salt, is manifest, if we do but consider the Principles of which mix'd Bodies are composed, as 1. *Spirit*, which is very Volatile, Subtil and in a manner incorporeal. 2. *Sulphur*, or *Oil*, which is exceeding Sweet and Unctuous, and such is the Sulphur of Gold, and therefore a very apt and fit Medicament to encounter with the Virulence of this Disease. 3. *Water*, which is very soft, and without any hard and acrimonious Particles in it. 4. *Caput Mortum*, or *Earth*, which as it is an insipid or dead thing, without Life, so it is without Action. 5. *Salt*, which consists of subtil sharp pointed Particles, which by their *Acumen*, are able to pierce and disturb all things, and by their *Acidity* to corrode or eat them, as is manifest in common Salt, which yields such an acid corrosive Spirit, as will dissolve Gold.

XVIII. This Virulent Ferment being Acid, does more easily mix with other Substances which are Acid, and therefore since Flegm has a natural Acid in it, it readily mixes it self therewith, first with the pituitous Humour in the part primarily seized, and then as it gets ground, with the pituitous Juice through the whole Body, for which

which reason it is, that Salivation as it gradually draws away all the Phlegm in the whole Body, so it is the best and most natural Method of Cure, when the whole is infected, for that the *Venereal Virus* is more essentially contained in, and united with that Humour or Juice, than with any other.

XIX. A Man then which has the *POX*, lying with a sound Woman, infects her by emitting his Seed full of that Virulent Ferment into her Womb, which insinuates its self into those parts that are naturally disposed to receive it; which being soft, spungy, and very full of small Glands, easily imbibe it, where remaining it corrupts, becomes more acuated, coagulating their inherent Juices by its virulent Acidity, and so causes small Tumours, accompanied with Heat and Pain; which still fermenting, and becoming more sharp, corrodes the Substance, and so creates a small Ulcer, the Boundaries about it being as yet hard; which Ulcer by little and little increasing, is called a *Chancre*, or *Canker*, or *Cancrous Ulcer*. This *Virus* still increasing, does corrupt the adjacent parts to the Ulcer, *viz.* their Juices or Lympha, with which the *Blood* is made limpid or fluid; whence it is that the *Blood* proceeding out of the Mouths or end of the *Capillary Arteries*, (which is for the nourishment of the parts) mixing it self with that *Vitiated Lympha*, and returning again by the *Veins*, according to the Laws of its *Circulation*, communicates that *Virus* to the whole *Mass* of *Blood*, which by degrees becoming throughly infected and corrupted, lays the Foundation of a confirmed and *Universal POX*.

XX. *The Signs and Symptoms of this Disease.* They are manifold, and for the most part very apparent, though not all at once to one and the same Person, but some of them to one Person, and other-some of them to another; and also to one and the same Person, some of them at one time, and others of them at another, according to the strength of the *Virus*, and progress which it makes in the Body, and as the Disease is recent or inveterate. The chief of these Symptoms are the following; 1. *A Virulent Running of the Reins*, or in the secret parts. 2. *Dysuria, or a Heat and Scalding of Urine.* 3. *A horrible and vehement Pain of the Head*, continuing not only some Days and Weeks; but sometimes many Months, in such an extream manner, as almost to occasion Distraction. 4. *Serpigines* or *Ringworms*, as it were, in the Neck, Back, Loins, Arms, Thighs, and and other brawny parts. 5. *Impetigo, Efflorescencies*, or *Breakings-out in the Palms of the Hands*, and sometimes also in the Soles of the Feet. 6. *Pustulæ*, or a *Scabies, which is a Breaking-out in the Face, Neck, Arms, Back, Belly, Thighs*, and other fleshy parts. 7. *Gums in the Legs, Thighs, Arms*, and other parts. 8. *Ulcers in Pudendis*, or *in the private parts of Man or Woman.* 9. *Ulcers callous and Phagedenick* in the Head, Legs, Thighs, Arms, Back, and many other parts. 10. *Hard Wart-like Pustles*, coming out upon the Forehead, Eye-brows, Chin, Neck, and many other places of the Body. 11. *Ulcers in the Mouth and Throat*, not easie to be healed. 12. *Swelling in the Glandules of the Neck and Jaws*, something resembling those of the Kings Evil. 13. *A Hoarseness of the Voice.* 14. *Bubo's* or *Swellings in the Groins*, and sometimes in the *Arm-pits.* 15. *Wandering Pains all over the whole Body*, almost like a Rheumatism. 16. *Nocturnal Pains*

in

in the Shins, Arms, and other parts. 17. *A wonderful Pain and Wealness in the Reins and Back.* 18. *A Scurf, Morphew, or Leprosie* (as it were) up and down in many places of the Body. 19. *Nodes* in the fleshy parts. 20. *Tophs* or *Exostoses, which are Protuberances of the Bones,* only to be cured by opening the Flesh and Scaling them. 21. *Ozæne, Ulcers in the Nose.* 22. *Condyloma (quod nascitur circa coronam Ani)* or small Tumour in the Fundament. 23. *Ficus in Ano,* a larger Tumour, almost like a Fig in the Fundament. 24. *Falling of the Hair* 25. *An abominable Stinking Breath.* 26. *An Atrophy, Consumption,* or Wasting of the whole Body. 27. *Rottenness of the Bones.* 28. *Cancrous or Phagedenick Ulcers in the Womb.*

XXI. 1. *A Virulent Running* is the first Symptom of a *Clap* (when got by *Coition*) which by continuance, or by being ill cured, and returning again, becomes a Symptom of the *Grand POX,* and must then be treated as that, for the Cure thereof.

XXII. 2. *Dysuria, or a Heat and Scalding of the Urine:* This is another Symptom of a *Clap,* when accompanied with a *Running,* of which we have already spoken in the former Chapter; (otherwise it may be only a Symptom of the *Stranguary, Stone, Gravel,* or *Tartarous Matter,* lodged in the Reins and Bladder.) When it is *Venereal* it continues in some a longer time, in others a shorter, without producing the *Grand* or *Universal POX,* whilst the Virulent Ferment has its free passage through the *Urethra* in Men, or *Privities* in Women; but if it continues after Stoppage of that *Running,* it then becomes a *Symptom* of the *Grand Disease,* and then it is for the most part accompanied with Inflamation, and an Ulcer in some other part, which is manifest by the Acrimony. But of this see more in the former Chapter at Sect. 34.

XXIII. 3. *A horrible and vehement Pain of the Head.* This comes always after some other of the *Venereal* or *Pocky Symptoms* has gone before, as Stoppage of the Virulent Running before due cleansing, cankerous Ulcers in the secret parts, Pustulous Breakings-out, and repetition of Venerous Acts with infected Persons, after being infected; whereby the virulent Ferment being volatiz'd by heat, and also mix'd with the Mass of Blood, by Circulation is carried to the *Head,* where infecting the *Blood* and *Lympha* of that part, by reason of its Proximity to the Original of the Nerves, and great Sensibility of those Nervous parts, creates that intolerable Pain, and is then a Symptom of the *Grand Pox.* This Pain is of difficult cure, unless apply'd to by some of the grand Medicines proper to this Disease, for it will yield to no common Remedies; but if the Head breaks out into Botches, Boils, Scabs and Running Sores, it then (by the running away of the *Virus*) goes away many times of its own accord.

XXIV. 4. *Serpigines or Ringworms in the Neck, Back, Arms, Thighs,* &c. These, though they may be a singular Disease of themselves, yet when they are accompanied with other *Pocky Symptoms,* are always a Sign of the *POX,* and are only to be removed and cured by the general Cure; for those Medicaments which will cure it, when it is a singular Disease by it self, will not touch it when it manifests it self as a *Symptom* of this Disease.

XXV. 5. *Impetigo, Efflorescencies, or Breakings-out in the Palms of the Hands, and sometimes also in the Soles of the Feet.* This Symptom very rarely

rarely appears but in this grand Diſeaſe; and ſhews a very great Contamination of the Blood and Juices, and that the *Virus* has made a very great progreſs to an univerſal Infection; and therefore this you may be confident of, that when it is accompanied with *other Venereal Symptoms*, as *Virulent Running*, Ulcers *in Pudendis*, *Scabies* or *Puſtule* in ſeveral parts of the Body, *Gums* upon the Legs, Arms, *&c. Vehement Pain of the Head*, &c. it is then always a Symptom of this *Foul Diſeaſe*.

XXVI. 6. *Puſtulæ or Scabies, which is a Breaking-out of the Face, Neck, and ſeveral other parts of the Body.* This ſhews that the *Blood* and *Lympha* are univerſally infected with this Venereal or Pocky *Virus*; and that they by ſome accident being put into an Ebulition or Ferment, do diſcharge part of the Malign Matter through the *Skin*; This may be where there is no *POX*, but when it is accompanied with other Pocky Symptoms, it is always a Sign of this Diſeaſe, and muſt be removed by the univerſal Cure. And this may be the more poſitively concluded, when the whole Body in a manner is covered with *Tettars*, and large and thick *Cruſts* or *Scabs*, after having had converſation with a Pocky Perſon; more eſpecially when they turn into Cankers or round running Ulcers, the ſides of which are hard, and their middle ſomewhat white.

XXVII. 7. *Gums or Gumoſities in the Legs, Thighs, Arms, and other parts.* Theſe are one of the *Pathognomick* Signs or Symptoms of this Diſeaſe, and attends it only as proceeding from its *Eſſential Virus*, and are ſeldom cured, though by the courſe of the grand Cure, or Salivation, unleſs in their very beginning; and therefore they muſt be applied to with a particular Cure, by Maturation, Opening, Digeſting, Cleanſing, Incarnating and Healing, as another Ulcer, with this only difference, that the Applications muſt be Antivenereal.

XXVIII. 8. *Ulcers in Pudendis, or in the private parts of Man or Woman.* Theſe are what the French call *Chancres*, and we in Engliſh *Cankers*, or *Puſtulous Ulcers*. And at their firſt coming, after lying with a Pocky Perſon, are only Symptoms of a *Clap*. They are only at firſt ſometimes hard Knobs, which in a little time ulcerate, grow ſofter, run, and grow hollow, and becomes Chancres, Cankers, or Scabs and little running Sores, which in time eat and grow bigger and bigger, but are cured (if in a skilful Hand) by curing the *Clap*. This Symptom proceeds from the *Venereal Virus*; nor can it proceed from any thing elſe, becauſe its Acidity is biting, and coagulating, cauſing firſt the hardneſs of the Puſtule, which denotes the Coagulation of the Lympha of the part, and then this by the Acrimony being corroded, becomes a *Canker* or *Ulcer*. This *Canker* or *Ulcer*, if dryed up and healed either by it ſelf, or Medicines in the order of Cure, if, after a conſiderable time, it comes again in the ſame place, or near thereto, without any manifeſt Cauſe, there is then reaſon to believe, that the *Pocky Virus* has infected the Maſs of *Blood* and *Lympha*, and becomes then a Symptom of the *Grand Pox*.

XXIX. 9. *Ulcers Callous, Cancrous or Phagedenick, and Running in the Head, Legs, Thighs, Arms, Back, and many other parts.* Theſe proceeding after a *Clap* not well cured, and in conſort with other grand Symptoms, always denote the *POX* it ſelf. They may, 'tis true, ariſe from other cauſes than the

the Foul Diſeaſe, as from Scurvy, Scrofula, *&c.* but then they are never accompanied with other Venereal Symptoms.

XXX. 10. *Hard Wart-like Puſtules coming out upon the Fore-head, Eye-brows, Chin, Neck, Belly, and ſeveral other parts of the Body.* Theſe are always *Pathognomick* Symptoms of the *POX*, as being peculiar to no other Diſeaſe, and for the moſt part are cured under the Influence of the grand Cure; though ſometimes to haſten the falling of the Warts or high protuberant Scabs, Antivenereal Topicks are applied.

XXXI. 11. *Ulcers in the Mouth and Throat not eaſily to be cured.* Theſe it is true may be cauſed from Colds, Catarrhs, ſharp Defluxions of Rheum, Scurvy, Scrofula, *&c.* and may be cured by ordinary Topicks, uſed in thoſe caſes; but if they happen after a *Clap*, or after a *Clap* not throughly cured, or in conſort with other Pocky Symptoms, they are always Signs of the *Foul Diſeaſe*, and in their Cure muſt be treated accordingly, for none of the commonly uſed Medicines will touch them.

XXXII. 12. *Swelling in the Glandules of the Neck and Jaws, ſomething reſembling thoſe of the Kings Evil.* When the *Blood* and *Lympha* are throughly infected by the *Venereal Virus*, (being irritated through the Irregularities of the Patient) it frequently affects the *Glandules of the Neck and Jaws*, which ſwell, and in ſome Patients are multiplied in great Numbers. When theſe appear in this manner, it is a ſtrong ground to believe that the *Lymphatick Veſſels*, as well as the *Lympha*, are tainted, and contribute to this *Phœnomenon*, for that *Diſſections in Anatomy* prove that the *Lympha* cannot paſs from the Arteries in the *Lymphatick Veſſels*, otherwiſe than by the Glands through which it is filtred. A *French Author* tells us, he ſaw a Sea-man who had a Venereal Canker for three Years, of which he was not throughly cured, who afterwards became full of thoſe Glands or Tumours in his Neck and Breaſt, juſt like thoſe of the *Kings-Evil*, which he was pleaſed to call the *Pocky Evil.* They were without doubt one of the Symptoms of the *POX* it ſelf, they proceeding from a *Pocky Root* or *Original.*

XXXIII. 13. *A Hoarſneſs of the Voice.* This may proceed from many cauſes which are not Venereal; but when it comes accompanied with ſeveral other grand Symptoms of the *POX*, it is then one of the Symptoms of that Diſeaſe; for the *Venereal Virus*, being a coagulating Acid, and being once throughly imbibed in the *Blood* and *Lympha*, theſe by Circulation through the Lungs, coagulate the Pituitous Matter of that *Viſcus*, which being thickned and made viſcid, not only tenaciouſly adheres to the ſides of the *Bronchia* and *Aſpera Arteria*, beſmearing the ſame, but ſometimes quite fill up the holes thereof, and ſtick alſo to the ſides and upper parts of the *Throat* or *Larynx*, thereby hindring the free paſſage of the Breath.

XXXIV. 14. *Bubo's, or Swellings in the Groins, and ſometimes in the Arm-pits.* A *Bubo* is not purely a Sign of the *FRENCH POX*, unleſs accompanied with other Venereal Symptoms, for ſometimes it is a Sign or Symptom of the *Plague* or *Peſtilence*, and ſometimes it is no Symptom of any Diſtemper, but a Diſeaſe it ſelf. In a Venereal Caſe it ariſes when the *Virus* fermenting in the *Blood* and *Lympha*, through Heat or Inflamation is protruded to the Glands of the Emunctories,

Emunctories, as to the *Groin* chiefly, as rather going downwards, and being also more aproximated to the Fountain, or beginning of the Infection, then upwards to the *Glands* of the *Axille* or *Arm-pits*: and yet being produced in either place, it is rather *Critical* than otherwise, because Nature separates the Morbifick Matter for her own relief, and protrudes it to those parts till the *Blood* and *Lympha* are perfectly cleansed by the running Ulcer, after Maturation and Apperion, by the help and direction of the skilful Physician.

XXXV. 15. *Wandering Pains all over the whole Body.* These of themselves are no Sign of a *POX*, but may be as well Symptoms of the Running Gout, Rheumatism, and Scurvy; but when they concur with other *Grand Venereal Symptoms*, then they shew the universal Infection of the *Blood* and *Lympha* with the Pocky *Virus*, and the distribution of it between the Muscles, and indeed into the very Substance of the Flesh it self, causes that pricking and disturbing Pain so much resembling those which are Rheumatick: They are for the most part profligated by Sudorificks, or Sweating Medicines.

XXXVI. 16. *Nocturnal Pains in the Shins, Arms, and other parts.* They are *Pathognomick* Signs of a *POX*, as being properly appropriated to no other Disease: These are fix'd Pains, *viz.* fix'd to the parts they affect, and are caused by the *Virus*, being extravasated (as it were) or otherwise smighting upon and pricking the Membranes of the parts affected, or some particular Nerve, or the *Periostion*, which is a sensible Membrane immediately covering or investing the Bone; and all such who are troubled with them, are miserably afflicted therewith in the Night-time, when they are warm in their Beds.

XXXVII. 17. *A great Pain and Weakness in the Reins and Back.* And this is caused, first from the perpetual draining of the Spermatick Juices, from the *Vasa Preparantia* and *Vasa Spermatica*, which much weakens and profligates them. Secondly, from the Sanguinous Serosities before-hand impregnated with the *Pocky Virus* separated from the Blood and strained into the *Renal Pelvis*, where, by its Acrimony, Pricking and Vellicating as it were the Membranes and parts through which it passes, which because its Motion is constant and continual, causes a continual Pain and Weakness in the same.

XXXVIII. 18. *A Scurf, Morphew, or Leprosie, (as it were,) up and down in many places of the Body.* When these happen with a Congeries of other Pocky Symptoms, it shews an universal Defedation of all the Juices of the Body, with the *Venereal Virus*, which by some Accident or other being potently fermented, Nature for her own relief protrudes into the Skin, where mixing with the viscid or clammy cutaneous Juices, it is stop'd, and in some measure fixes, and lays the Seminary or Foundation of an almost perpetual Defilement; and sometimes so Pertinacious and Stubborn, that neither Topicks nor Salivation it self, though never so exquisitely performed, by any of the common Forms of Medicines, will do any thing at all towards its Removement, or Cure.

XXXIX. 19. *Nodes in the fleshy parts.* These are caused from the Acidity of the *Virus*, which coagulating or thickning some of those

those Juices in the musculous and glandulous Parts of the Flesh, (in any part of the Body) creates a little Kind of Knot, which is but small at first, but by Continuation and Accretion of new Matter, grows gradually bigger and increases in Substance and Hardness, according to the Strength of the Acid, and farther Progress of the Venereal Ferment, and quantity of the Matter it has to work upon.

XL. 20. *Exostoses or Tophs, which are Protuberances of the Bones.* These are also produced from the preternatural Acid of the *Virus*, which meeting in some particular parts or places with the *Succus Osscularis*, or Bone making Juice, seizes upon it, and coagulating or thickning it, causes it, by its viscid or glutinous Quality, to stick upon the Bone, where, by the daily addition of new Matter, and Acidity of the *Virus*, it grows bigger and bigger, till it comes to so considerable Magnitude to be externally discerned: These can never be cured by the General Method, nor will they be dissolved by *Mercurial Topicks*, but the Tumour must be opened by a Caustick, and after the *Eschar* is removed, the Bone must be made bare by *Cathereticks*, and scaled, and then incarnated and healed as another Ulcer.

XLI. 21. *Ozænæ, Ulcers in the Nose.* These never come in a *POX*, but when it is confirmed and inveterate: And though the Nose is a part which the Disease seems to have a spite to, yet it is one of the last places which it attacks or seizes. There are *Ulcers of the Nose* which may proceed from many Causes, as the *Scurvy*, *Kings-Evil*, *Catarrhs*, &c. but when these Ulcers are accompanied with many previous or concurring *Pathognomick* Symptoms of the *POX*, the Physician may very safely determine them to be Venereal.

XLII. 22. *Condylomata*, or *Small Tumours about the Verge of the Fundament.* These in time Ulcerate and become Cankers, and then they are called *Cankerous Hæmorrhoids*, and *Warts*; and sometimes they chap and become *Fissures*. These are protruded upon this Sink of the Body from the over-abounding Acidity of the *Virus*, which in concurrence with other manifest Symptoms of this Disease, give a full Assurance that it is the *POX*. They are removed and cured by the General Method, with the Application of some few Mercurial Topicks.

XLIII. 23. *Ficus in Ano*; *Another large and flat Tumour in the Fundament, almost like a Fig.* This proceeds from the same Cause, but as the Tumour is larger, and much more painful, so it shews the Virulent Humour to be more malign and rebellious. It is either with a small Root, or very broad; if small, it is taken away by Excision, the general Cure being also prosecuted. But if its Root is Broad, it then exulcerates and becomes a Canker, and is cured many times by *Cathereticks*, and other proper Mercurial Applications.

XLIV. 24. *Alopecia, vel Defluvium Pilorum*; *Shedding, or falling of the Hair.* And this is done, when the *Virus* is disseminated through all the Body; and all the Juices, more especially the *Lympha* or *Succus Pilaris* which nourishes the Roots of the Hair, are so contaminated with the corrosive Acidity, as that it corrodes, eats, and destroys the Roots thereof, thereby causing it to fall off; which shews indeed a great degree of Venereal Malignity. It is true the Hair may fall off from other Causes, as Excia-

cation

cation in Fevers, want of Nourishment in Consumptions, a vitious Nutriment in the Scurvy, &c. But when the *Defluvium* is accompanied with a heap of other Venereal Symptoms, it demonstrates a *Grand POX.*

XLV. 25. *An Atrophy, Consumption, Pining or Wasting of the whole Body.* This proceeds either from *Obstruction*, or an *Ulceration of the Lungs.* 1. By *Obstruction* it is, when the nourishing Juices, *viz. the Blood, Lympha*, and *Serum*, are so coagulated, or thickned by the *Virus*, that they cannot flow or pass through the smaller and capilary Vessels, spread every where throughout the whole Body, whereby, the whole being universally deprived of their due Nutriment, an Atrophy, or Pining, forthwith succeeds. 2. By *An Ulcer of the Lungs*, created by the corroding Malignity of the *Virus* as it passes through the Lungs being mix'd with the *Blood* and *Lympha*, where coagulating or thickning the Pituitous Substance of that *Viscus*, it is made to stagnate, where the morbid Acidity increases to that degree, as to be highly Corrosive, and so to ulcerate the part.

XLVI. 26. *An Abominable Stinking Breath.* This results from the running Ulcers created by the *POX*, which are sometimes manifold, as in the Head, Jaws, Gums, Mouth, Palate, Nose, Throat, Lungs, &c. The *Pus* or Matter continually running, and deriving its Smell from the Efferveſcence of the Acid of the *Virus*, daily mixing with the Alcalious Juices of the parts affected, as may be mechanically observed by mixing several Acids and Alcalies together; and this is never to be taken away, but by the general Method of curing the Disease, and healing the Ulcers.

XLVII. 27. *Cankerous Ulcers of the Womb.* This may come upon the first time of being *Pox'd*, but then they are more easily cured by the general Method and application of Topicks, as proper Injections, Pessaries, &c. which may digest, cleanse, and destroy the Virulency, by absorbing the Acid Humour adhering to the Part. But when they follow *POX* upon *POX*, and grow contumacious, they become at last *Phagedenick*, and acquire such a Malignity, as will admit of no Cure, but bringing the Patient into a deep Consumption, end in Death.

XLVIII. 28. *Caries, or Rottenness of the Bones.* This happens most commonly to the Bones of the *Nose* and *Palate*, and sometimes to the *Jaw-bones*, where there has been for a long time a Canker, or stinking running Ulcer, caused by the Maglignity and Virulence of the Disease; which falling into unskilful Hands, become stubborn and contumacious; so that by their long continuance they penetrate, and the *Virus* corrupts the Bone, and by degrees rots it; which causes the eating away the *Roof of the Mouth*, the falling and eating away of the *Nose*; the rotting and breaking away of the *Jaw-bones*; and many times it affects the *Cranium*, so that I have seen rotten pieces of the *Scull* taken out, much bigger than a Crown-piece, and sometimes almost as large as the Palm of an Hand. These Patients, though they may with much difficulty be cured, yet the Bones can never be restored, nor will a *Callus* breed in their places. Yet I once knew a *Callus* to grow in the place of a *Jaw-bone*, in a Man who had lost it by the Malignity of the *POX*. Other Bones will also (in a very malign and inveterate *POX*) grow Carious, as those

those of the Arms, Thighs and Legs (as *Sennertus* gives us a Relation of.) Here the *Virus* pierces the Periostion, corrodes the Bones, sinks into its Substance, and penetrates even to the Marrow, which causes almost unexpressible Pains, and scarcely ever admits of a perfect Cure.

XLIX. According as the *Virus* is more or less Active, or Acid, so the Disease makes a more speedy or slow Progress, doing some Patients more damage in three Months, than it does others in a Year. And according to its Acidity, and the Constitution it meets with, so it coagulates or thickens the Juices of the Body, which is the cause of ill Digestion, decay of Appetite, failure of the Spirits, Weariness Faintness Wasting of the Body, Weakness, Tiredness, Hurt of the Expulsive Faculty, Suppression of the Terms, and Hæmorrhoids, Paleness of Face, Vapours, Watchings, Inquietudes, and Inequality of Temper.

L. Sometimes the *POX* seizes upon one part more than upon another, and so fixes upon those particular places, that the general Cure will not touch them: And though the Patient is made Well, as to the danger of the Disease, and all the rest of the Body cleansed, yet the Morbifick Matter, protruded by the *Virus* to those parts, will remain; nor will any power of the *Mercury* restore or reduce them to their pristine Health, as in several Gums and Tophs, and in a putridity and Caries of the Bones, all which require particular and Topical Remedies.

LI. And though this last Symptom seems to be the worst degree of the *POX*, yet there is another which is worse than it, or any of the former, which is when the Virus or Virulent Ferment discharges it self on some Noble part, and corrupts it; as for Example, the Brain, Lungs, Mesentery, Testicles, *Spinæ Medulla*, Marrow of the Bones, *&c.* For besides the lost Substance, which can never be repaired, the evil Symptoms concomitant, and the Noble part which is affected, admit of no Specifick Remedy; so the Disease becomes incurable, and the poor Patient is unavoidably lost.

LII. 'Tis evident then, that there are many *Stages*, by which this Disease does climb up, and take hold of the humane Frame, till it fixes so fast, and takes so deep root, as to become incurable. 1. From the Surface of the *Cutis* or Skin, it passes on to infect the Blood and Lympha. 2. From thence it advances till it takes possession of the Musculous Flesh. 3. From the Flesh it goes forwards, to seize upon the Membranes and Periostion. 4. From thence it proceeds into the Substance of the Bones, to corrupt and rot them. 5. And lastly, it flies as to its ultimate *Stage*, and insinuates its self into the Noble parts aforenamed; where profligating the Vital Congruity, it renders the Patient Remedileſs, and so brings on the Fatal Catastrophe.

LIII. But it is to be observ'd, that the Disease does not always advance orderly to all these *Stages* or Degrees, but does sometimes pass from a more primary *Stage* to a more remote, without passing through the intermediate *Stages* in the order we have ranked them. And this is caused either from some particular Disposition of the *Virus*, or Weakness of the Habit of the Body, or Position of the Parts affected, or Stubbornness of some Symptoms. And therefore the Physician ought to make his Judg-

ment of the State of the Patient, from his Reason and Experience in other like cases. But generally the Disease makes its Course gradually, and the *Virus* acts by degrees, beginning at that place which it first seizes, then insinuating it self insensibly into the adjacent parts; which corrupting, it proceeds on, corrupting the next, and then the next to them, till the whole Body is contaminated and involved.

LIV. These things being said; If then a Patient has a virulent Running, a Dysuria, or Heat of Urine, a vehement and almost intollerable Pain of the Head, *Pustulæ* or Breakings-out in the Face, as Eye-brows, Cheeks, Chin, in the Arms, Thighs, *&c.* *Serpigines* in the Neck, Back, Arms, or other Brawny parts; *Impetigo* in the Palms of the Hands; and *Shancres* or Sores in *Pudendis*, or Secret parts; Gums in the Legs or other parts; you may conclude the Disease to be the *POX*. So also, if there be with the former Symptoms, Cankerous Ulcers in the brawny parts, as Back, Loyns, Arms, Thighs, Legs; Scabs, or Scabbiness in many places; Tettars in several parts; hard Wart-like Scabs, not easily to be removed; Bubo in the Groin; Nodes in the Musculous Flesh; Tophs upon the Bones, and Nocturnal Pains: I say, with all or most of these Symptoms, it may be accounted a *Confirm'd* and *Radicated POX*. For it is certain that all or most of these Symptoms can never be present, unless the Mass of *Blood* and *Lympha* be generally infected, whereby the *Virus* may be disseminated into all parts of the Body.

LV. If neither Virulent Running, Disury, Ulcers *in Pudendis*, nor Bubo appear, but that the Patient having been under Cure, seems to be well; yet if any of the forme Symptoms shall supervene, as Breakings-out in the Face, or all over the Head, great Breakings-out, or Scabbiness, not like ordinary Scabs; Virulent Ulcers or Phagedenick, in the Musculous parts, which will not submit to vulgar Methods of Cure, Cankers, Breaking-out in the Mouth, or Throat, or in the old places, or near them; Glandulous Tumours in the Neck; Nocturnal Pains in the Legs, Arms, *&c.* an *Impetigo* in the Palms of the Hands; or *Serpigines* in the fleshy parts of the Body; I say, if all or any of these revive, without any new or manifest Cause, the Physician may positively conclude it to be not only a *POX*, but an *OLD POX*, and that the former Physician had not gone fully through with the Cure.

LVI. *The Prognosticks.* That *POX* which is *Hereditary* is scarcely ever to be cured; because the Disease being implanted in the Parental Seed, the Spermatick parts are all of them originally infected, and they admit of no Renovation, or Depuration. That which is gotten by *Coition*, the more recent, the more easie it is to be cured; the more inveterate and stubborn, the more difficult. Again, that which has the milder Symptoms, and which has also the fewer, is easier to be cured, than that which has the more Violent, and more in number. A simple *POX*, or that of the first Production, is easier to be cured, than that which is *POX* upon *POX*, or where the Disease has been repeated many times. A *POX* in Youth, or middle Age, or in a strong or healthy Constitution, is more easily cured, than that in old Age, or in a Cachectick or Scorbutick, Rheumatick or Scrofulous Habit of Body; and it is so much the more difficult to cure, as it is more radicated in

in the Spermatick parts of the Body.

LVII. This Disease is not often Mortal, for some have had it many Years, and when they died, it was rather from some other Disease or Disorder than from that; but when by ill Management, or by the Wilfulness of the Patient, or Ignorance of the Pretender, it shall arrive to its *fifth and last Stage*, it is never to be cured, but Death only puts an end to that miserable Life. Nor does it easily admit of Cure when it comes to its *fourth Stage*, wherein there is a *Caries* or Rottenness of the Bones; more especially when the *Caries* is in the *Nose* or *Scull*, for the Proximity thereof to the *Brain* (which is a noble part) bespeaks much danger. There is also great danger when an *Atrophy* or *Pining* is induced, for the Patient very rarely overcomes it; for then it may be doubtful, whether or no the *Virus* may not invade or pour it self forthwith upon the *Lungs*, and so corrode and corrupt them, which hurt, as it is irreparable, can only terminate in Death.

LVIII. The length of time in which this Cure may be performed, is very difficult to be determined, there are so many unforeseen accidental things which may happen in the way. As 1. The resolute and ill Temper of some Patients, that they will not take so much as is fitting for the Cure, nor in the order and time it ought to be taken in. 2. Want of Money to pay for a Thorough Cure, and therefore are content with being only patch'd up. 3. When their Business, or Imployment, or some other necessary Circumstances, will not conveinently admit of an orderly Course, but it is done as it were by stealth, which is a great hardship upon the Physician. 4. When the Disease happens in a Cachectick, highly Scorbutick, Scrophulous, Rheumatick, or Consumptive and Weak Patient, who cannot admit of a substantial and regular Course. 5. When it has been *POX* upon *POX*, and several times very ill cured, or rather patch'd up, by abating some of the principal Symptoms, and not taking the Disease away by the roots. 6. When it is Inveterate, and very Malign and Stubborn, and accompanied with some of the worst Symptoms. 7. When the Patients Misfortune is such, as to fall into a base, unskilful and ignorant Persons Hands, whose business is only to make a Penny of him: I say, in all these cases, it is very difficult for the most learned and skilful Physician, to determine the length of the Cure, he can only make probable Conjectures or Guesses at the same.

LIX. In some Bodies and Cases, the Disease it self is never to be cured, but the Symptoms to be only taken away or abated; as in Infants, also in very ancient People, and such as have wonderful Weaknesses attending them, or have been followed for some Years with some other Stubborn, Malign, or radicated Distemper: In such there are some remains of the *Virus*, which in process of time recovering it self, and mixing with the Lympha and Glandulous Humours, excites the Appearances of new Diseases, not resembling the *POX*, though they come from that Original or Fountain.

LX. If in the Course of the Cure, when it is performed by *Salivation*, there should arise a sudden Flux of the Bowels, with almost insuperable Gripings, or a Flux of Blood, which through their Violence may induce a Fever, with an Inflamation of the Intestines, Stomach, Throat, and Mouth, with a difficulty of Swallowing and Breathing; the danger to the Sick will not be small, more es-

pecially if it be in a dry, thin, and lean Body; for Deafness, Blindness, and Palsie often succeed, and many times Deliriums, Swoonings, or Apoplexies, and sometimes Death it self.

The CURE.

LXI. *The Diet of the Diseased.* It ought to consist of Foods and Drinks of an Alcalious Quality, or which may absorb the Acid of the *Virus*; for all other Diets will increase the Virulence, and add Fuel to the Fire. The Air ought to be pure and serene, warm rather than cold, and dry rather than moist; and if not so, to be made so by Art, with proper Fires made of Charcoal, Juniper Wood, and small pieces of Amber. The Food ought to be Biscake white and well dryed; fresh Meat, but little in quantity, moderately roasted, Poached Eggs, and Broth made of *Vipers Flesh*, (of which the Patient need know nothing at all.) The Drink let be a *Decoction of Burdock-Roots, China, and Sarsa*, in fair Water; or *Barly or Oatmeal Gruel* made thin, with Lettice, Purslane, Sorrel or Succory; or *Posset-drink* made thin or white with White Lisbon, a little sweetned with double refined Sugar; or *Whey clarified with Purslane, and Burdock-roots:* Also *Mead, in which Coffee-berries has been for some days infused:* To which things add, *Thea made with Water or Whey*; and *Coffee* made with pure Water and very strong of the Berries, not too much roasted, but only of a bright Brown, *about an Ounce or Ounce and quarter, to a Pint of Water*; Of these Liquors the Patient may drink *ad libitum*, sometimes one of them, sometimes another, changing them as often as he pleases. *Coffee* thus prepared, is a great obtunder of Acids, and a Sweetner of the Blood, it may be, not inferior to *Sarsa*; but they ought to abstain from all Liquors in which there is a latent Acid, as strong Ale, strong and stale Beer, also all sorts of Wines, Brandies, Strong-waters and Punch.

LXII. All violent Motions which Inflame are to be forborn, and long Watchings, because they irritate the Animal Spirits, and put the *Virus* in motion; on the contrary, Rest, Ease, and moderate Sleep are good. The Belly ought to be kept open, and the passages of the Urine to be kept free, because much of the *Virus* is carried off those ways. *Venus* ought to be avoided; and yet sometimes there may be a necessity of the Excretion of the Virulent Seed, as much as of Urine, or other Excrements; for though by giving of the proper Remedies, the Rectification of the Juices is design'd, yet they Influence not the Seed after it is made, any more then they do the Urine, when in the Piss-bladder. *Lastly*, As the Mind ought to be kept free from all manner of Passions, because they provoke the Animal Spirits; so more especially from the Passion, Desires, and Thoughts of Lust, or Amorous Embracements, because thereby the *Virus* is inflamed, and its Activity stir'd up, and so increased to a much greater degree of Virulency.

LXIII. I know in this Cure, some Authors, and most of the *Quack-Doctors*, are immediately for *Bleeding*; but that vulgar Practise ought absolutely to be forborn, because of the Mischiefs which may possibly succeed it. But let us hear what the famous *Blegny*, Chirurgion in Ordinary to the French Queen, says in this case, in his *Observation on the French Disease*, Sect. 2. Cap. 2. *Some Practisers* (says he) *whose Course we must by no means follow,*

ever begin this Cure with Bleeding in the Arm, by which means the Venereal Matter will be attracted, or driven more inwardly into the Body; and therefore we must by consequence suspect it as pernicious or dangerous. Others (says he) *bleed boldly in the Foot, which also has the same effect; or else it precipitates the Matter, by Defluxion, into the Testicles; for which reasons you ought to abstain from Bleeding in either part; and rather use this Decoction. Take Roots of white Lillies, of Althæa, ana, a Pound; Sorrel half a handful; Liquorice bruised eight Ounces; Water twelve Quarts; boil and make a Decoction, and strain out by pressing, the better to draw forth the Mucilage; and to every Quart of this, put Oyl of Vitriol or of Sulphur twelve drops. Of this the Patient may drink as much as his Stomach will bear, and this at any hour of the Day or Night. It cools the Inflamation, abates the Acrimony, and forces the Matter outwards.* Thus *Blegny.*

LXIV. *We come now to the Medicinal Cure of this Disease*, which, that we may orderly treat of, we shall consider it under these *thirteen Heads* following, *viz.* 1. An Enumeration of the commonly used Antivenereals. 2. Of the more admirable and exalted Antivenereals or Antidotes, not vulgarly known or made use of by the ordinary Practisers of our Art. 3. The Method of Cure, as it has relation to the several *Stages* of this Disease. 4. The Cure of the first and second *Stages* without Salivation. 5. The Cure of the third and fourth *Stages* by Salivation. 6. The Method of Salivation by *Unction.* 7. The way of Salivation by *Fumigation.* 8. The Order of Salivation by *Intervals.* 9. Observations upon the several ways of Salivation. 10. Of *Topical* or *External* Antivenereals. 11. Considerations upon the Cure of the most dangerous and rebellious *Symptoms.* 12. Observations upon the fifth *Stage* of this Disease. 13. Of *Diet-drinks*, or Medicaments suppletory to the same. Of all which we shall here discourse in order.

I. *Of Antivenereals commonly used.*

LXV. To say nothing of *Pilulæ Cæruleæ*, *Pilulæ Chalmetei*, and *Pilulæ Turpini*, and several other like Medicaments made of *Crude Mercury* (which have their Excellencies, if given by a wise Hand, and have done Wonders in the Cure of this Disease) yet because they have been exploded by the more learned Physicians, and several dangerous Accidents have happen'd by their use, when given to some Cachectick Habits of Body, and such who have abounded with the Morbib Acid, we shall say nothing of them here; and so much the more (though we have applied them with all the desired success imaginable) because we have long since given over their use, for the sake of many more excellent Preparations which have succeeded them, and taken up their places.

LXVI. The most usual Antivenereal Mercurial Preparations, which the vulgar practitioners apply in this Cure, are these seven following, *viz.* 1. *Mercurius Dulcis*, whose Preparation you may see in our *Pharmacopœia Londinensis*, Lib. 3. Cap. 7. Sect. 46. and in our *Ars Chirurgica*, Lib. 1. Cap. 65. Sect. 4. It is commended by all Authors, as a most safe and excellent Medicine, and a thing which will do great Feats, it is true, it is safe and gentle, and may be of use in a Recent *POX*; but in any inveterate

and confirm'd one, it will do next to nothing at all.

LXVII. 2. *Præcipitatum Album*, White Precipitate; which see in our *Pharm. Lond.* Lib. 3. Cap. 7. Sect. 21. And in our *Pharm. Bateana*, Lib. 1. Cap. 9. Sect. 72. Also in our *Pharmacopœia Chirurgica*, Cap. . Sect. 7. The Dose is from gr. vj. ad x or xij. in Bolus or Pills, but *Wiseman* gave it usually ad gr. xxv. This a certain French Author says, is not without danger, because it is prepared with *Aqua Fortis*, for that the Saline Spirits unite themselves so strongly with the Mercury, that they cannot easily be separated again, though it may be sweetned by washing with Water, abstracting Spirit of Wine from it, *&c.* but I believe it has been used ten thousand times by several Physicians with great Safety and admirable Success.

LXVIII. 3. *Præcipitatum Rubrum*, Red Precipitate, whose Preparation see in our *Pharm. Lond.* Lib. 3. Cap. 7. Sect 22. And in our *Pharm. Bateana*, Lib. 1. Cap. 9. Sect. 80. Also in our *Pharm. Chirurgica*, Cap. . Sect. 8. It is rarely given internally, but some of our Bold Chirurgions will venture upon it *à gr. iij. ad vij.* in rustick and robust Constitutions.

LXIX. 4. *Arcanum Coralinum*, The Coraline Precipitate. See its Preparation in our *Pharm. Lond.* Lib. 3. Cap. 7. Sect. 23. And in our *Pharm. Bateana*, Lib. 1. Cap. 9. Sect. 13 & 14. where we have given you all the ways of making it. And in our *Pharm. Chirurgica.* Cap. . Sect. 1. This is much a more potent Medicine than any of the former, and Authors give it in *Bolus or Pills, à gr. iij ad vij.* with good Success.

LXX. 5. *Turpethum Minerale*, Yellow Precipitate or Turbeth Mineral; see its Preparation in our *Pharm. Lond.* Lib. 3. Cap. 7. Sect. 43. And in our *Pharm. Bateana*, Lib. 1. Cap. 9. Sect. 75. where we have discoursed all the chief ways of its Preparation and Exhibition. Also in our *Pharm. Chirurgica*, Cap. . Sect. 10. This is the very highest and top Medicine of all our Quacking Fellows, which they give from gr. iij. ad gr. viij. in the Cure of this Disease. It is a good Medicine if wisely given, but may do mischief enough if given by an ignorant Hand. I have formerly applied it very happily, but much better and safer things are now in use.

LXXI. 6. *Sublimatus Corrosivus*, Corrosive Sublimate. See its Preparation in our *Pharm. Lond.* Lib. 3. Cap. 7. Sect. 44. And in our *Pharm. Bateana*, Lib. 1. Cap. 9. Sect. 71. where we have given you the whole and true preparation from *Otto Tachenius* his *Hippocrates Chymicus*, which is a Process worth knowing. Also in our *Pharm. Chirurgica*, Cap. . Sect. 3. It is not given internally alone, but after this manner; *Take Corrosive Sublimate in fine Pouder a Dram; fair Water a Pint; mix and dissolve.* Dose one Ounce in a little Glass of Simple Angelica-water, or a Glass of fair Water: Whilst it operates, the Patient is to drink Posset-drink, after the Spitting is over, which will be in about half an hours time. It ought to be given in Bed; and they which prescribe it, exhibit it for twenty days together, in which time they commonly perform the Cure; and if the Mouth or Tongue be sore, they Purge, and omit it for a day or two.

LXXII. 7. *Gryps Mercurii*, The *Gryffin*, It is a Precipitate Sublimate;

mate; see in our *Pharm. Lond.* Lib 3. Cap. 7. Sect. 31. And in our *Pharm. Chirurgica*, Cap. . Sect. 5. It is given *à gr. ij ad vj or viij.* in Bolus or Pills. And is a good Medicine if prudently given, but works strongly upwards and downwards, and is only to be exhibited to such as are of robust or stroug Constitutions. The Water which is decanted from it, in its first Dissolution and Preparation, is called *the Water of the Gryffin*, and is of admirable use in curing old Pocky Running Sores and Ulcers, Tettar, Ringworms, *&c.* There are almost an hundred Preparations of *Mercury* more, of equal Virtue and Goodness with the *Seven* now enumerated, but because they are not vulgarly used, and these being all that are commonly applied to this Cure, we shall not take any farther notice of them here.

II. *Of Antivenereals not Vulgarly used or known.*

LXXIII. The Preparations and Medicaments of this *Second Classis*, which are what we now only use, vastly exceed the former, not only in the Excellency of their Preparations, but in respect to their Potency and Virtues, as also in the Safety and Easiness of their Operation. These are of two kinds, *viz.* 1. *Such have an Operation either upwards or downwards, or both ways*, yet with a great deal of Safety and Gentleness, being compared to the last six of the before named Mercurials. 2. *Such as have no sensible Operation at all, neither by Vomit, Salivation, Stool, Urine nor Sweating*; but being only Alteratives and Absorbents, they intimately mix with the Mass of Blood and Lympha, and so depurate the Blood and Juices, take away the Discrasie, exterminate the *Virus* in what part of the Body soever, heal *Ulcers* whether inward or outward, *Cankerous* or *Phagedenick*, corroborate the Vital and Animal Powers, and restore the whole Man to his pristine state of Health.

LXXIV. These are all of them *Mercurial Preparations*, as well as the former, but (excepting the first of them) they are *prepared with Gold*, which has a Specifick Virtue likewise in curing of this Disease. *Gold* is a dead Body, and operates nothing at all, or but very little of it self; but when the Body is opened by the power of *Mercury*, its inside turn'd outward, its *Sulphur* loosned from its Chains, and its *Substance* (which is all *Tincture*) made in a manner Volatile, it will do wonders, not singly in this Disease, but in the *King's-Evil*, and many other malign, inveterate and stubborn Maladies. Again, *Mercury* is a most volatile unfix'd Substance, but this by *Amalgation*, and *Unition* with the *Gold*, becomes more fix'd, and then they act as it were in consort together, for its Body being turn'd the inside outward, and its *Sulphur* being intimately mix'd with the *Sulphur of the Gold*, and in some measure fixed by that, as that *Solar Sulphur* is in a great measure Volatiliz'd by this; they out-do, by this Conjunction, whatever they could be supposed to do singly, by many degrees; and as they act with much more *Potency*, so with *ten times the Safety* that any Preparation of *Mercury* could do alone.

LXXV. These Preparations we have fix'd upon, are the Seven following, *viz.* 1. *Pulvis Principis.* 2. *Aurum Vitæ.* 3. *Præcipitatus Aureus* 4. *Impetus Mineralis.* 5. *Impetus Aureus.* All which are Active, enter into the Mass of Blood and Lympha, and move the Body work-

ing either one way or another. 6. *Angelus Mineralis.* 7. *Panacea Aurea nostra.* Which two last have no manner of Operation at all in the Body, but melt as it were and mix themselves with the Blood and Sanguinous Serosities, and so depurate them by precipitating all their Impurities either insensibly through the Pores of the Skin, or by Urine or mucilaginous Stools, without any thing of Purgation.

LXXVI. 1. *Pulvis Principis*, The Princes Pouder. It is the greatest of all the Simple Preparations of *Mercury*, the reason of its preparation bespeaking it, and is a Medicament which the vulgar Practiser scarcely knows any thing of; nor had the World been yet made happy with the knowledge of it, had not I first published it in some of my Books. See its Preparation in my *Pharmacopœia Bateana*, Lib. 1. Cap. 9. Sect. 108. And in my *Pharm. Chirurgica*, Cap. . Sect. 9. when it is given for Purging, it may be from *gr. x ad xv.* mixd with some good Cathartick. When for Salivation, *à gr. xv ad xxx, or two Scruples*, or more, to be repeated according to the Rules of Salivating. But when for a Simple Ptyalism, so as the Patient in hot Weather may go up and down with it, *à gr. iij ad v or vj.* but with some caution, so to be taken, every other day, or as the Physician shall advise. Of the nature of this Pouder, is the *Præcipitatus Viridis Blandus*, which is a gentle Medicine, and performs wonders in this Cure; see it in our *Pharm. Bateana*, Lib. 1. Cap. 9. Sect. 110. Dose *à gr. x. ad two Scruples*, according as you would have it either to Purge or Salivate. There is also *Præcipitatum optimum ad Luem Veneream*, in our *Pharm. Bateana*, Lib. 1. Cap. 9. Sect. 112. which is said to be the best Simple precipitate against the French *POX*, and differs but very little from the *Pulvis Principis*. The preparation is found in *Hartman's Miscellanea*, who says the Dose is *gr. x or xij.* thrice a day, to raise a Salivation. But in some proper Cathartick *à gr. xv ad xxv.* to Purge downwards.

LXXVII. 2. *Aurum Vitæ*, Vital Gold. Of this there are several Preparations, which you may see in our *Pharm. Lond.* Lib. 3. Cap. 7. Sect. 36, 37, 38 &39. which are those of *Bovius*, of *Hartman*, and of *Sennertus*; of all which, the first called *Hercules Bovii* is accounted the best, and is indeed a good Medicine. This is that great Prepation which was formerly sold in *London* under the Name of *Hugh's Pouder*, and sometimes at the rate of 5 *l.* a Dose, whilst the Author kept it secret in his own Breast. See it also in our *Pharm. Bateana*, Lib. 1. Cap. 9. Sect 20. And in our *Pharm Chirurgica*, Cap. . Sect. 12. The Dose, when not intended for Salivation, is *à gr. iv ad viij.* but when for Salivation, *à gr. xx. ad two Scruples or more.* It is a noble and great Medicine, of which I have had large Experience; it performs well in all long, old, rebellious and undetermined Diseases, performing Cures many times beyond all Expectation.

LXXVIII. 3. *Præcipitatus Aureus.* The Golden Precipitate. See the Preparation thereof in our *Pharm. Lond.* Lib. 3. Cap. 7. Sect. 19. And in our *Pharm. Bateana*, Lib. 1. Cap. 9. Sect. 81. where we have discours'd the Matter at large. Also in our *Pharm. Chirurgica*, Cap. . Sect. 12. But in these Prescripts the Proportions are not so well as we could desire, nor so adapted to the Methods of our Cure; for which Reason we will give you the true Preparations, (to

make

make the *Composition* a great and an excellent Medicament) from a late *French* Author, who has them much more exact; and that in his own Words, Translation only excepted. *The Prescript. Take of fine Gold one part; of Mercury revived from Native Cinnabar three parts; make an Amalgama after the common manner. Put this Amalgama into a fit Matrass well luted; which digest over a Fire; first with a gentle heat, that the Mercury may not ascend, and separate it self from the Gold. Increase the Fire by little and little, till the whole Mass shall be precipitated, or converted into a Red Pouder; which by continuation of the Heat, will become of a dark Red Colour. But that this may be compleatly performed, it is to be digested for three Months together, after which it will be so fixed, as it may be safely given.* Dose *à gr. iij ad xij.* to the strongest Person, mix'd with some proper Cathartick, as *Bolus* or *Pills.* But if it is given for *Salivation*, it may be exhibited from fifteen to thirty or forty Grains, according to Age, Strength, and other Accidents. It is indeed a very excellent Medicine, and may be accounted among the Number of the *Great Arcana*, but is very deficient in its Preparation, (tho' the Proportions are right for what its intended) which we shall *demonstrate* in the performance of the next following.

LXXIX. 4. *Impetus Mineralis.* The Mineral Force or Powers. The Preparation is this; *Take choice Mercury revived from Native Cinnabar twelve Ounces; Fine Gold refined from Antimony, in Leaves or very small Filings, one Ounce; mix and make an Amalgama, as is usual; put this into a Matras, which place in a very gentle Sand-heat, which digest for a Month, stirring the Matter every day with an Iron or Wooden Spatula, or some such like thing; which done, abstract nine Ounces of the Mercury, leaving only three Ounces thereof behind with the Gold. The Quick-silver you may keep for other uses; the remainder at bottom put into another proper Vessel as an Infernum, which place over or in a very gentle Sand-heat at first, such as may not be able to make the Mercury ascend, or to separate it from the Gold. Increase the Fire Gradatim, but very slowly, only as you see it change colour by little and little, till the whole Mass is changed into a red Pouder almost like Cinnabar; and continue this heat till it becomes of a deep or dark Red Colour, which will be in the space of about an hundred days time. But the longer it is kept in this Digestive Heat, the more excellent will be the Medicine, the more powerful in its Effects, and the more safe in its Exhibition: so will you have at length, a Medicament transcending in its Virtues, all that have ever yet been made publick to the World.*

LXXX. *Observations on the former Preparation.* 1. The *Amalgama*, while in the first Months Digestion, ought often to be taken out of the Matras, and ground in a Glass or Marble Mortar, for the more absolute Mixtion of the *Gold* with the *Mercury.* 2. That the proportion of the *Mercury* and *Gold* is taken from *Crollius* and *Hartman*, who makes it 12 of *Mercury* to one of *Gold*, because in the *Amalgamation*, the more the *Mercury* is in quantity, the more minute Particles it reduces the Body of the *Gold* into. 3. The more minute the particles of the *Gold* are, the nearer it approaches to Volatility, and the more open its Body; otherwise *Langelot* would never have proposed to make a kind of *Oil of Gold*, purely by grinding in his Steel *Engine*: Nor *Paracelsus* to have made it Volatile, by often dissolving

and

and abstracting from it fresh *Aqua Regis*, till it become Oily, which was purely the reducing it into the most minute or small particles. 4. That when the *Amalgama* is become as perfect as it can be, whereby it has divided the Body of the *Gold* into the most subtil Atoms, three quarters of the *Mercury* is to be abstracted from it, leaving only three Ounces of *Mercury* to the Ounce of *Gold*, which will then be enough to ripen the *Sol*, to turn its inside (as it were) outward, and to induce its *internal Sulphur*, which joyned with the *Sulphur of the Mercury*, will make one of the greatest Medicines ever made use of in the Art of Physick, or that has been yet known to the World. 5. That the *Gold* is ripened, and in some measure volatiliz'd, in this Mixtion, Digestion, and Precipitation, as it is called, by the Volatility of the *Mercury*; and the *Mercury* is in a great measure fixed by the fix'd Property of the *Gold*; so that from them both, there results a safe, noble, and truly Great Medicine.

LXXXI. *The Virtues and Uses of this Impetus Mineralis.* *Rolfincius* calls this Preparation *Radix Aurea*; and *Zehnerus* accounts it as a *Panacea* of great Virtues, Purging alone ἄνω καὶ κάτω, *Sursum & deorsum*, both by Vomit and Stool, according to the Quantity of the Dose. The Virtues of this Medicine cannot be enough praised, nor will any Man who once truly understands it, and knows its use, repent him of the Charge and Labour, or Cost and Time bestow'd upon it, he will truly, reject all other *Mercurial Preparations* inferior to it, which Authors have so much extolled in their Books. The Dose is from three Grains to twelve, being mix'd with some purging Medicine, and given as a Cathartick; but if given to Salivate withal, it may then be given from twelve Grains to thirty, and in very strong Constitutions to forty, the same Directions being observed in this, as in Salivating with any other Mercurial Preparation. When it is given as a Cathartick, though it may sometimes Vomit, yet it does most commonly purge by Stool. I know some wash it before it is used, but that does hurt to the Medicine, for then it will not Purge as it ought to do. It may be given every third day in the Morning fasting, (unless the Patient has a *Diarrhœa*, for then the Intervals must be greater.) If the Patient has Tettars, Serpigines, Impetigines, Nodes, or Gummosities, or is of a dry habit of Body, Baths ought to be often used before-hand for the moistening and softening the Parts, and making the Humours more fluid, for then this Medicament will have a more easie Operation, and produce more admirable Effects. There is no *POX* but what may be cured by this *Impetus*, the fourth *Stage* only excepted, wherein there is a *Caries* or *Rottenness of the Bones, of the Nose and Scull*, &c. which must be done by other Applications: We take no notice of the *fifth* or *last Stage* of this Disease, becusae that is declared by all Authors to be beyond the reach of Medicines, and so uncurable. And as it cures the *French POX*, with all its Symptoms curable by *Salivation*, even to a wonder, so it is an Absolute Cure for the Kings-Evil, Scurvy, Gout, Leprosie, Sciatica, rebellious Herpes, and all sorts of Fevers, whether Continual or Intermitting. It cures the Colick, and the Dry Belly-ach (so common in the *West-Indies*) dissolves Scirrhous Tumours, cures Cancers, and removes all manner of Obstructions, by destroying the Congelating Power which breeds them. And truly

truly it easily, speedily and safely cures any old, stubborn, or malign Disease, how deplorable soever.

LXXXII. This Preparation, it is true, is long and tedious, but then its Operations, and Effects are very high and stupendous, much beyond all other Mercurial Preparations yet prescribed in any Author; this being fitted for more transcendent Designations, than any of those vulgar Medicaments. How many Doses of it are necessary for any Patient to take, are hard to be determined; but this is ceriain, that it ought to be given so long till all the *removable Accidents* do disappear. And when that is done, its use ought to be continued for some time longer, lest any part or Particles of the *Virus* should still remain in the *Blood* and *Lympha*, or in any of the parts of the Body, from which the *POX* may in no long process of time bud out, and spring forth again, as is oftentimes seen, when a Patient is so wilful, as not to take Doses enough perfectly to exterminate or root out the Disease. And therefore the Physician ought to order several more Doses of it to be exhibited, after all the Accidents are vanished, that not so much as any particles of the *Old Leven* may be left behind in the Body, which is the only way to prevent a Relapse.

LXXXIII. 5. *Impetus Aureus*, The Force or Powers of Gold. This Preparation is as much beyond the last, *viz.* The *Impetus Mineralis*, as that is beyond the *Aurum Vitæ*. It purges downwardr, but sometimes Vomits, when given as a Cathartick, and then it is given from gr. 10. to 30. But when it is given as a Salivatick, the Dose is from *gr. xxx. ad lx.* which is exhibited either in a *Bolus* or in *Pills* made up with a little *Mithridate*, or *Venice Treacle*, or any other fit Body. It is a Medicament of wonderful power and efficacy, and absolutely cures the *French Disease* with all its Attendants, with much speed and safety, so far as they can be cured by the Exhibition of Internals. It cures a Virulent Gonorrhæa, Venereal *Serpigines*, Ring-worms and Tettars, *Impetigo* in the Palms of the Hands, Pocky Scabs and Pustules, almost all over, from Head to Foot, intolerable Nocturnal Pains in the Shin-bones and other parts, and that in such who could not rest all Night in their Beds for many Months, yea for some Years: It cures a Pocky Leprosie spread up and down in many parts, and sometimes all over the whole Body, with running Sores, putrid Ulcers, and malign Fistula's, as also terrible pains in the Head, after all other things have proved ineffectual, Pains and Aches in the Nose, Eyes, Shoulders, Arms, Back and Thighs; It cures inward Ulcers in the Reins and Bladder, Cankers, or eating Ulcers in the Privy-part, Arms, Back, Belly, Groins, Thighs, Legs, Palate, Throat, Mouth, Nose, Head and Scull: All this Train of cruel Symptoms, which this cursed Disease, whether it be Recent or Inveterate, afflicts the Bodies of Humane Kind withal, this great Medicine profligates and Cures, beyond any other thing yet known in the World.

Hitherto of the *Operative* Antivenereals; the *Inoperative* follow, and they are only two, *viz.* 1. *Angelus Mineralis.* 2. *Panacea aurea nostra.*

LXXXIV. *6. Angelus Mineralis*, our Mineral Angel, or Angelick Mineral. The Preparation see in our *Collectanea Medica*, Lib. 3. Cap. 40.

Cap. 40. where you have the Virtues and Uses also of the same. It is the highest Alcali that can be prepared in the Mineral, Vegetable, or Animal Kingdoms, and performs more in sweetning the Blood, than any other Preparation whatsoever. Its chief Use is, in resisting the Poison and Malignity of the *French P O X*, pocky Gonorrhæa, Leprosie, Elephantiasis, Cancers, Kings-Evil, Inveterate and Virulent Ulcers and Running Sores, whether proceeding from the *P O X* or otherwise, being inwardly taken, and outwardly applied to the Ulcer: It kills Worms in Young or Old, and gives ease in all sorts of intolerable Dolors or Pains, whether Internal or External, though in the most remote parts of the Body, proceeding from *P O X*, Scurvy or Gout, or any other Cause whatsoever: It performs its Work in these Cases, as also in Nocturnal Pains in the Shoulders, Arms, Thighs, Legs, and other Parts, to admiration, even where Opiates have been applied in vain. It is gently Sudorifick, and is for the most part given Dietetically for forty or sixty Days together. But the Patient ought to take some proper Purge once in eight or ten Days, to carry off the separated Morbifick Matter. *Dose* from half a Scruple to half a Dram or two Scruples, according to Age and other Accidents; and it may be given in a little Syrup, or made up into a *Bolus* or *Pill* with a little *Mithridate* or other like thing, washing it down with a little Water-gruel. It has no sensible Operation, unless it is design'd for Sweating, nor need any order of Diet be observed, but only fresh Food, and Temperance.

LXXXV. 7. *Panacea aurea nostra*, Our Golden All-heal. This great Medicament can never enough be praised, for its Virtues are such, that it cures those Diseases, which for their Inveteracy and Malignity, have been accounted uncurable: And yet it neither purges, nor vomits, nor provokes Urine, nor causes Sweating, nor yet makes the Patient sick, or any ways Uneasie; but performs all its Effects, as it were, with a profound Silence, and by ways almost unaccountable to humane Understanding. It cures the *French P O X* and Virulent Gonorrhæa (after the *Impetus Mineralis*, or *Impetus Aureus*, has been used for some time) as also Pocky Boils, Serpigo, Impetigo, Scabs, Phagedenick Ulcers, Running Sores, Nocturnal Pains, and even the whole Regiment of pocky Symptoms, beyond any other Medicament in vulgar Use, and this without any painful Operation, Danger or Hazard to the Sick. It is of the Nature and Qualities of the *Angelus Mineralis*, and has all the same Virtues being used Dietetically, but as much exceeds it, as the *Impetus Aureus* exceeds the *Impetus Mineralis* or *Præcipitatus Aureus*. It dissolves Tartarous Slime in all parts of the Body, and Scorfulous Swellings in the Neck, or other parts, and perfectly cures the Kings-Evil, though ulcerated and of long standing, which Disease, when inveterate, is scarcely to be cured by any other Medicine in the World. It has power to cure Cancers, and Leprosies, also a *Leuce*, or Spotted Leprosie, a Disease not inferiour in Malignity to the other: It cures likewise all sorts of Running Sores and old Ulcers, yea Fistula's in what part of the Body soever, though of many Years standing; And a *Phthisis*, or Ulceration of the Lungs, Ulcers in the Reins and Bladder, after an admirable manner: it stops the Fluxion, digests the Matter, dissolves a Callous,

lous, cleanses, incarnates and heals, without either Pain, Trouble or danger of Relapse, Some Physicians have declared, *an Ulcer of the Lungs* to be incurable; which I think is so, by the common Medicines: But by the help of this Remedy, I have known many given over by all hands, to be restored to their perfect Health. It dissolves and intimately mixes it self with the *Chylous Lacteal, Sanguinous and Lymphatick Juices*, and so *by Circulation with the Blood through the Lungs*, it pervades them, and by its All-healing and Specifick Virtue, cures the Ulceration, *&c.* It is always used *Dietetically*, and exhibited for forty and sometimes fifty Days together, purging once in eight or ten Days, to carry off the separated Morbifick Matter. *Dose* is from half a Scruple to half a Dram, or more, according to Age or other Circumstances, and may be given in a little Syrup, or in a *Bolus* or *Pills*, being made up with any proper matter, and so exhibited every Night at Bed-time, having no sensible Operation, except when it is given as a *Sudorifick*.

III. *The Method of Curing the several STAGES of this Disease.*

LXXXVI. In Sect. LII. aforegoing, we have divided the Progress or Course of this Disease into *Five* several and distinct *STAGES*; which tho' all the first Four may be cured by *Salivation*, yet we very rarely apply that Great Universal Remedy to the first two *STAGES*, they being easily enough cured with gentler means, *viz.* with proper *Cathartick*s, *Diuretick*s and *Sudorifick*s; and therefore in the following Discourse we prosecute those *degrees* of the *Venereal Obliquity*, by such *Specifick*s as either the Authority of good Authors, or our own Experience, have confirm'd to be Absolute for the profligating those *two prior Measures* of *Pocky Malignity*.

LXXXVII. The *Third STAGE* of this Disease, though it might possibly be cured by the former Method, yet by reason it would be a very long and tedious Course, and very tiresome to the Patient, we very seldom prosecute it that way, but come at first (after due Preparation of the Body) to down-right *Salivation*, as being not only the true and right way of curing, and the speediest withal; but also the most certain and safe Course; it not being attended, (if well performed by a skilful Physician) with any future revival of Symptoms, or Relapse into the Disease again, from the preceding Cause or Occasion.

LXXXVIII. The *Fourth STAGE* of this Malignity is not possible to be cured but by *Salivation*, and that exalted also, to the highest degree of Safety; for otherwise, it is but trifling with the Patient; all the other Methods being but *Paliatives*, and only proper to keep the Sick in a lingring Course, till they are past Cure, or that the Disease is arrived to the *Fifth STAGE* or ultimate degree, which is that of *Incurability*. But in this *Fourth Degree*, there are *many Symptoms* attendent, which *Salivation* it self will not Cure, as *Gummosities*, come to their Perfection, *Phagedenick Ulcers*, *Pocky Leprosie*, *Caries* or *Rottenness of the Bones*, and sometimes *Nocturnal Pains*, &c. all which (besides the Course of Salivating) must have *Topical* or *External Remedies* applied, without which, there can be no hopes of their Extermination.

LXXXIX. The *Fifth STAGE* of the *POX*, *Cursus quintus*, vel *Status morbi*, which is the *Acme*, or *Acumen* of the Disease, in which it is declared

red to be *Incurable*; is that which none of the former Methods will touch, no, not in the least measure alleviate, though performed with all the Dexterity and Skill imaginable. In this case *Paliatives* are only applied, to give the poor and miserable Patient a tolerable Relief, till his Passport is signed, for his Passage into the other World.

IV. *The Cure of the First and Second STAGES without Salivation.*

XC. This is chiefly performed by Mercurial Cathartick or Emeticks, such as are made with *Mercurius Dulcis*, *Præcipitatus Albus*, *Arcanum Coralinum*, *Turpethum Minerale*, *Pulvis Principis*, *Aurum Vitæ*, *Præcipitatus Aureus*, and *Impetus Mineralis*, &c. of which we shall give you some few Prescripts. *Mercurius Dulcis* is a thing which will never do any hurt, if one knows how to use it; but it is also so weak, that how little soever the *POX* has taken root, it is not to be expected that it can be cured thereby; 'tis weak indeed being compared to other Preparations of *Mercury*, but as weak as it is, if given by a skilfull had, a very Recent *POX* may be cured with it. *Rhodius Cent.* 3. *Obser.* 84. says it is almost a Divine Remedy, and may be given well prepared *about twelve Grains of it* (he might have said 20. gr.) *in one Ounce of Lenitive Electuary*, for thirty or forty Days together. It is a Purge sufficient, says he, for a strong Man, and operates without Pain, or any thing of Salivation. Yet lest any thing should stick to the Guts, (letting alone other Medicines) they ought to be cleansed once a Week with *Mel Rosarum Solutivum*, *and a Decoction of Tamarinds in Cichory-water with Citron Seeds.*

XCI. This is likewise commended for delicate Persons, and such in whose Constitutions the Humours are fluid, who may be well cured with about twenty or thirty Doses thereof. *Take Mercurius Dulcis, Pouder of Vipers, ana, six Drams; Crystals of Tartar, fine Scammony in subtil Pouder, ana, four Drams; Troches Alhandal two Drams; with Syrup of Damask Roses, or Syrup of Roses Solutive make a Mass of Pills.* Dose one Dram, or a Dram and half, with ordinary Diet. 2. Or this, *Take Mercurius Dulcis, Pouder of Vipers, ana, twenty Grains; Scammony in Pouder nine Grains; Troches Alhandal gr. vj. with Syrup of Damask Roses make a Mass of Pills for one Dose*, to be taken in the Morning fasting, either every Morning, or every other Morning, for thirty or forty times, which number of times ought to be compleated, though with the Intermission of two or three Days between each Dose, as the Body of the Patient may require.

XCII. Yet I am of Opinion that *Cathartick*s are not to be used so often as to reduce the Patient to great Weakness of Body, it is best to observe a Medium, and to purge moderately at beginning, middle and end of the Cure. As for the choice of *Cathartick*s, though it is not much material which of them you use, yet it is certain that *Coloquintida* and *Scammony* are the most proper in this Case; for which reason *Pilulæ ex duobus*, is accounted among the number of Specifick Purges against the *POX*; and that joyned with some proper Mercurial, it is the most potent to destroy and root out the *Virus*.

XCIII. Authors have given us several Prescripts of this kind, as, 1. *Take Confectio hamech a Dram and half; Mercurius Dulcis half a Dram; mix for a Bolus.* 2. *Take Scammony, Coloquintida, ana, in fine Pou-*

d:

der, gr. 5. Aloes, White Precipitate, ana, gr. x. mix, and with a little Honey make them into Pills for one Dose. 3. *Take Elect. Diacatholicon a Scruple; of the Princes Pouder gr. x. mix for a Dose.* 4. Or this, *Take Pulp of Cassia, Mercurius Dulcis, ana, half a Dram; Scammony gr. vj. Pouder of Coloquintida, gr. iij. mix for a Dose.* 5. Or this, *Take Pilulæ ex duobus half a Dram; White Precipitate gr. viij. mix for a Dose.* 6. Or this, *Take Elect. Lenitivum two Drams; Arcanum Coralinum gr. vj. mix for a Dose.* 7. Or this, *Take Pilulæ ex duobus a Scruple; Turpethum Minerale gr. vj. mix them for a Dose.* After these Examples, a Thousand other Prescripts may be made, of singular good use, and which in all probability (in a skilful Physicians hands) will not go without their desired Effects.

XCIV. But setting aside all those Compositions made of the vulgar Preparations of Mercury, we should rather make choice of, and rely upon such *Cathartick*s as are compleated either with *Aurum Vitæ*, or the *Præcipitatus Aureus*, or our *Impetus Mineralis*, the Preparations of which we have before given you, for that these are potent Medicaments, truly safe, admirable in their Performances, wonderful in their Effects, and vastly transcending any of the other common Productions of this Mineral. How these, as also our *Impetus Aureus*, are to be given with proper Cathartick*s* for this Cure, we will give you some Examples.

XCV. If there is a Virulent Running withal, Let the Patient take those Pills compleated with the *Aurum Vitæ*, described in *Cap.* 27. *Sect.* 40. *aforegoing*, which may be so often repeated, till all the Symptoms of the Disease disappear. 2. Or this, *Take Pil. ex duobus from a Scruple to half a Dram; of the Præcipitatus Aureus gr.* 10 *ad* 14. *mix for a Dose.* 3. Or this, *Take Cochiæ Minor half a Dram; of our Impetus Mineralis gr. xij. mix for a Dose.* 4. Or this, *Take Extractum Rudii new made a Scruple; Aurum Vitæ twelve Grains; mix for a Dose.* 5. Or this, *Take Scammony, Colocynthis, ana, in fine Pouder, gr. vij. Resin of Jalap gr. iij. Præcipitatus Aureus gr. x ad xx. mix, and with Honey of Roses solutive, make Pills for one Dose.* 6. Or this, *Take Pilulæ ex duobus a Scruple; of our Impetus Aureus gr. xvj ad xxx. mix for a Dose.* 7. Or this, *Take Elect. Diacatholicon two Drams; Aurum Vitæ gr. viij ad xij. mix for a Dose.* 8. Or this, *Take Elect. Lenitivum two Drams, of our Impetus Mineralis, from gr. x ad xvj. mix for a Dose.* Any of these are to be given in the Morning fasting, taking after them plentifully warm Gruel, Mutton-broth, or Posset-drink, during their working, and avoiding the taking of Cold.

XCVI. These Purging Doses ought to be repeated twenty, or thirty, yea, as some Authors say, sometimes forty times, at due intervals of time, according as the Strength of the Patient, Contumacy of the Disease, Age, Sex, and other Accidents will admit or require, but for certain they are not to be given over till all the Symptoms cease and disappear; and then, they are yet to be continued for some time after, and it may be to be given once a Week, for a while, till we are sure that the very root of the *Virus* is exterminated. And all this lest (any of the Particles of this Leven being left behind) the Disease should again revive, and its Symptoms bud forth, whereby both the Physician and Patient would be put to a new Trouble of going through the same Course again, which

which by this cautionary Method, may easily be prevented.

XCVII. As for the choice of Catharticks to be joyned with Mercurials in this Cure, the Renowned *Sylvius de le Boe*, gives the Prehemineence to *Pulp of Coloquintida*, because it evacuates the *Viscid pituitous Humour*, with which the *Virus* is intimately mix'd. *Coloquintida* and *Mercurials* (says he) are very proper both to expel the viscid Flegm and to cure the *POX*, as all experienced and learned Physicians agree: To such as like common Medicines best, I commend the taking of Pulp of *Coloquintida* boil'd in part of the Sudorifick Decoction (made of the *Woods*, &c.) or in some other *Apozem*, twice or thrice a Week to carry off by Stool the gross and viscid Humours, which are not fit to be expel'd by Swear, through the Pores of the Body. For besides, pituitous Humours, mixed with the Mass of Blood, are very difficultly thrown off by Sweating through the Pores of the Skin, much thereof is discharged with the Spittle by the Mouth; and more of them in the Pancreatick Juice by the Guts downwards; for which reason it is much better, once or twice a Week to carry the *Virus* off by Stool, than by continually taking of Sudorificks only, to remit it back again to the Blood, whereby the Cure is rendred both more tedious and difficult.

XCVIII Such as cannot be brought to take the Decoction of *Coloquintida* (says *Sylvius*) because of its bitterness, may take *Trochisci Alhandal* which are made of it, in *Pills*, adding things which may incide, as *Gum Ammoniacum*, *Galbanum*, *Opopanax*, *Sagapenum*, &c. But the pituitous Humour abounding in the *POX*, may indeed be evacuated by *Coloquintida* alone, but far more succesfully if *Mercurial Medicines* be joyned with it, so also if they be used alone; and whether they be *Sublimates* or *Precipitates*, they are deservedly commended to carry off those Viscid Humours in curing the *POX*. *Mercurius Dulcis* (says he) I commend to every Man; but many sorts of *Mercurial Precipitates* are of greater value, which as they differ in colour, so they do also in virtue, and manner of Operation; some *working* by *Stool*, some by *Vomit*, some by *Salivation*, for which cause sometimes the one, sometimes the other, are to be used, as Reason and Occasion may require. All of which are most commodiously to be us'd in *Pills*, lest Salivation should be raised before it be required. And therefore he commends mostly *Precipitates*, especially when we would *purge by Stool*, because they carry off the pituitous Humour with which the *Virus* is intimately mix'd, (as is before hinted) and the more fix'd the *Precipitate* is, the less it Vomits or Salivates: Among all which he most commends the *Arcanum Coralinum*, which is indeed an excellent Medicament; but with *Sylvius*'s favour, is by no means to be put in the Ballance against the meanest of our *Golden Precipitates*, the *Aurum Vitæ*; our *Præcipitatus Aureus*, *Impetus Mineralis*, and *Impetus Aureus*, a thousand times exceeding all others, being prepared, fixed, and exalted with the pure and essential *Sulphur of Gold*.

XCIX. These *Cathartick Mercurials* (says *Sylvius*) must be continu'd so long in taking till all the primary Symptoms of the *POX* cease, but great care is to be taken, that they be not given in too great a quantity. It is best to take them in a small quantity and often, lest by too violently agitating the Humours, they should do more harm than good. For *Mercurials* have strange effects

effects beyond any other, because others do their work quickly, whereas *Mercurials* are slow in beginning, and sometimes long to be continued; and when they operate, their Violence is such, as not easily to be appeased; but this he speaks of the vulgar or common Preparations of *Mercury*, not of those prepared with *Gold*, which are as safe as most other Medicaments whatsoever. But the great danger (says he) is in *Salivation*, for fear of Suffocation, the Glands of the Throat being swelled with Viscid Flegm. Prudence therefore is to be used, which consists in the gentle use of them, and an accurate Observance of the Disturbance they cause in the Body, before they strongly Purge the Humours. When therefore the Patient complains, after taking *Mercurials*, of the soreness of their *Gums*, *Cheeks*, *Throat* and *Tongue*, observe whether any Evacuation be begun, which is usually slow, because the *Mercurial* is taken up in contending with the *Viscid Pituitous Humour*, which must first be dissolved before it can be expelled. As long therefore as the Agitation of the Humours increases, so long we must abstain from giving any more Doses; nor must any thing else be given, except Posset-Drink, Gruel, Broth, or some proper Decoction, as of *Burdock Roots*, *Turneps*, *Parsneps*, *Sarsa*, *China*, &c. to the end that the Humours which are moved, and inclined to Evacuation by the *Mercurial*, may be carried more downwards and less upwards.

C. During the Intervals of Purging, the Patient ought to take some fit or proper Diet-Drinks, made of *Guajacum*, *Sassafras*, *Sarsa*, *China*, *Burdock Roots*, *Turneps*, &c. according to his Constitution, which may alter, absorb, and sweeten the *Blood and Lympha*, by mixing with the *Chylus* in the Stomach and Guts. Those who are fat, plump, and fleshy, may take Decoctions made of *Guajacum and its Bark*, and *Sassafras*, with Aromatick Spices, as *Cloves*, *Mace*, *Nutmegs*, &c. but such as are weak, thin, lean, and consumptive, must totally forbear them, and use Decoctions made of *Sarsa*, *China*, *Burdock-Roots*, *Turneps*, &c. which not only absorb and sweeten the Juices, and profligate the *POX*, but also restore the weak and decay'd Body.

CI. Metals and Minereals communicate their Virtues to the *Menstrua* in which they are decocted, as *Crocus Metallorum*, *Vitrum Antimonii*, *Stannum*, *Cobaltum Argentum Vivum*, &c. being decocted in fair Water, which are of use to Vomit, kill Worms, and profligate other Diseases: So also *Antimony* it self being crude, has an excellent Virtue against the *Venereal Disease*, being reduced to Pouder, tied up in a Rag, and boiled in all those Decoctions or Diet-Drinks. *Zewelfer* never made an *Antivenereal Diet-Drink* without *Crude Antimony* (tied up in a Rag) boil'd in it. Its Virtue proceeds from its *Sulphur*, which in this Case is like an *Alcali*. The *Sulphur of Antimony* being like common Sulphur, without an Acid; it follows, that the *Acid* in our Bodies, by dividing the *Antimonial Sulphur* into *Atoms*, does break or blunt their own Points, and thereby destroy their own Power, which during this Contest in the Blood, an Effervescence is raised, whereby the *Virus* being reduced to subtil Particles, Vapors, or Effluviums, by the sudorifick Property of the said Sulphur, it is expelled through the Pores of the Skin.

CII. An Example of such a Diet Drink may be this: 1. *Take Raspings of Guajacum* 3 *Ounces*, *Bark of*

the same 4 *Ounces, Burdock Roots* 5 *Ounces, Sarsa* 2 *Ounces, Raspings of Sassafras* 1 *Ounce, Antimony (in Pouder tied up in a Rag) a Pound, Water* 3 *Gallons, boil to* 1 *Gallon and strain out.* Dose 6 Ounces every morning, sweating very gently in a Bed. 2. But for common Drink give this. *Take Burdock Roots a Pound, Turneps three Pounds, Antimony in Pouder a Pound, boil in* 2 *Gallons of Water to a Gallon; strain out by pressing,* and give it to the Patient daily, even at Meals. 3. Or this, *Take Burdock Roots, Turneps, ana* 8 *Ounces, Raspings of Sassafras, Sarsa, China, Liquorice, ana* 2 *Ounces. Pouder of Crude Antimony a Pound (tied up in a Rag) Water a Gallon; boil to five Pints, and strain out for ordinary Drink.* 4. Or this, *Take Roots of Butterbur, Burdock, of each* 4 *Ounces, Turneps* 8 *Ounces, China, Sarsa, ana* 2 *Ounces, Antimony in Pouder a Pound, Rasins stoned half a Pound, Water* 5 *Quarts, boil to* 3 *Quarts and strain out for ordinary Drink.* Let the Patients so long as they are under Cure, drink no other than some of these three last Decoctions, or such as are made of like Qualities with them, for they absorb the Acidity, help the Motion of the Humours downwards, and keep the Humours fluid.

CIII. Sweating is the last thing proposed in this Method of Curing by purging. It is performed by sitting in *Hartman's Chair,* or *Chest,* Spirit of Wine being set on fire at the further end thereof, the Heat of which presently puts the Patient into an excellent sweating posture; and in which case they are to continue so long as they can well endure it without fainting; after which they are to be taken out, and put into a warm Bed for two or three hours, to finish the Sweat, and cool gradually; which done, they may rise, and refresh themselves with some light and pleasant Food, easie of digestion. But because every one has not one of these Chairs, and that they are not in many places to be met withal, this Sweating may be thus performed. The Patient being stark naked (as aforesaid) put upon an high Seat or Stool, and his Feet over a warm Stove, then his Body being cover'd all over with a large Sheet, from his Neck down to the Ground, so that nothing but his Face is to be seen, and his Head covered all over also, or round about from the Air; put underneath the Stool a Pot or Potringer of good Spirits, which kindle, but so that the Flame may not rise too high, so as to burn or scorch him, or make him any ways uneasy: When he has sweated well, put him into a warm Bed, and treat him as aforesaid, giving him, whilst in the Bed, a Glass or two of Sack Whey, in which a little Juice of *Alkermes* is dissolved, or a few Grains of the Volatile Salt of Vipers.

CIV. But that Method of Sweating which pleases me best, before all other ways, is the Bathing in simple warm Water in a Bathing Tub, (made on purpose for this occasion) in which the Patient may sit upon a low Stool up to the Neck in the said Water, made so hot as he can well bear it without fainting, and continuing an hour, or half an hour, more or less, as the Physician shall advise. There is an Excellency in this moist way of Bathing, which the other ways want; for, 1. It is very agreeable to Humane Nature, and delectable or pleasant to the Body, such an Operation, that a Man even in Health, would desire to have once or twice a Week through the Year, rather than go without it. 2. It refreshes and enlivens the Spirits, and makes the Body easie. 3.

By

By reason of the soft Moisture of the Bath, it mollifies the Skin, opens and enlarges the Cutaneous Porosities, and softens the *Glandulæ Cuticulares*. 4. It admirably attracts or draws forth the *Venereal Virus*, or that part of the malign Ferment lodg'd and fix'd in the Skin and parts adjacent to it, which are easier to be abstracted that way, than to be carried off either by Vomiting, Purging, or Salivation. 5 As it takes away any Defilement of the Skin, so it renders it white, smooth and soft. 6. Lastly, As an *Alcali* it pierces the Skin, mixes with the Juices thereof, and sweetens them, by which means Phagedenick Ulcers, old Leprosies, Leuce's, Tetters, Ring-worms, Pustulæ, Scabies, *&c.* though of many Years standing, are profligated, and sometimes totally obliterated. This done, the Patient may go for an hour into a warm Bed, leisurely to cool himself, then rise, dress, and recruit himself with some pleasant repast, or Food easie of Digestion. And that this may be done effectually, it ought to be repeated fifteen, twenty or thirty times, as the Physician shall see cause, or need may require.

V. *The Cure of the Third and Fourth STAGES by Salivation.*

CV. Though the former degrees of the *POX* may be cured by the Methods already laid down; yet when it has arrived to these *STAGES*, it is not to be attack'd effectually by any other means than *Salivation*; because this Operation will absolutely evacuate the pituitous Humour in which the *Virus* is particularly and intimately involved, it depurates the *Blood* and *Lympha*, profligates the Disease in its height, and if well performed, obliterates all the *Vestigia* thereof, in to what parts of the Body soever it has made its inroads, provided it has not arriv'd to the *fifth* or *last Degree*, in which it is declared to be *incurable*.

CVI. For the Cure then of these *Third* and *Fourth STAGES*, we fly to Salivation, which is indeed to be preferr'd to all other Methods, as being the best, the surest, and the shortest way, and withal, the most natural. For if we observe the Oeconomy of the Humane Frame, and the ways Nature has provided for the Evacuation of the supra bundant Humours, we shall find that the Excrements remaining after the first Digestion, with the more gross parts of the Bilious Humour and Pancreatick Juice, are expell'd by Stool. The Recrements of the Juices or superfluous Serosities, after they have serv'd as a Vehicle for the Nutritive Juice, which nourishes all the parts of the Body, are expelled partly by Urine, and partly by Sweat, or insensible Transpiration. And lastly, the pituitous Humour and Phlegm, being a-kin to the *Saliva*, and being made *that*, by the Ferment of the parts, after its Transmission to the Salvatick Glands, is expelled or evacuated by the Salival Vessels.

CVII. Now as the *Lympha* is the root of the *Salival Juice*, so the *Saliva* is the first Matter of the *Pituitous Humour*: The *Saliva*, both in eating and drinking, and at other times, is continually swallowed down, and when it is in the Stomach, it incrassates, and in the Digestions does intermix it self with the most viscid part of the Aliment, which is afterwards conducted over the *Pylorus* into the *Duodenum*, there it mixes it self with the *Bilious* and *Pancreatick Juices*, where they make a Fermentation together (according to the

Doctrine of the most excellent *Sylvius*:) Which done, the more gross parts are precipitated, or forced downwards, with the excrementitious Matter, to be evacuated by Stool. The more pure parts are carried through the *Venæ Lacteæ* to the Lumbar Glandules, and *Pancreas Mesenterii*, situated in the middle of the Mesentery, and from them by the *Tho acick*, and left *Subclavian Vein* to the Heart; and from thence by the *Arteries* to all the parts of the Body, from which it is gradually separated by the conglomerated Glands which lye on either side of the *Mandibulum*; and from thence it is conducted to the Salivary Pipes or Vessels to the Mouth: In which the Pituitous Recrements descending from the Brain meet; (there being a considerable quantity produced in the Head, by reason of the coldness of the part,) which Pituitous Humour does insensibly pass through the *Infundibulum*, and so being filtred through the Pituitary Gland, falls into the Mouth, and mixes with that pituitous and salivary Matter passing through the salivary Conduits or Pipes aforesaid.

CVIII. From the course of the pituitous Matter, (in which the *Virus* is involv'd) it is easie to apprehend how it is carried from all places in the Body into the Mouth, and that for this very reason, *Salivation*, becomes the most excellent, certain, and sure Remedy; for that the Pituitous Humour being made fluid, or dissolved as it were, and so excited, and put into a quicker Motion than ordinary by the power of the *Mercury*, it easily attracts to it self the whole *Virus* all the Impurities of the *Blood* and *Lympha*, of what Nature, Quality, or Kind soever, and by the Salivatick Vessels expels them out of the Body, so long till the sanguinous Juices are perfectly purified, and the whole Body cleansed and freed from this Venereal Defilement.

CIX. I know some Physicians are for doing this Cure wholly by *Sudorificks* or *Sweating*; and this might certainly be done, had we such *Sudorificks*, which could without any Violence melt and dissolve the pituitous Matter, and separate it from the Mass of Blood: But seeing this morbid Matter is so thick and viscid, and that its whole Substance is impossible to be reduced to Vapours, by any Medicaments yet come to our Knowledge, so as it may perspire through the Pores of the Skin, though the whole Body be put into the extreamest Heat it is able to bear: And since the maxillary Glands have a natural Configuration fit to make this Separation; these Reasons, I say, are satisfactory enough to demonstrate, that as an *Artificial Salivation*, is only an Acceleration of the *Natural*; so it is the only proper and true way to root out and totally extirminate, this execrable Disease.

CX. The *Third STAGE* of this Disease, may be perfectly cured by a regular and well-performed Salivation and proper Bathing afterwards, of which we have already treated, with Observations of good Diet. The *Fourth STAGE* is also cured by this Method of *Salivation*; but besides that, since it is accompanied with several Symptoms, which the most rigorous Salivation will not remove or touch; there is required to make a perfect Cure of *this Degree*, the Application of proper Topicks, of which we shall speak (God willing) when we come to treat of the Cure of those contumacious Symptoms.

CXI. Since Salivation therefore is the only proper and true way of curing

curing these *two STAGES* of the *POX* we shall shew in what follows by what Methods it is to be performed: But sometimes when the Salivation is raising, or raised, in some unhappy Constitutions, it is apt to raise too high, and operate with too great a Violence, so as to indanger Life by *Suffocation*, whereby the Sick is exposed to mortal Danger. This Accident is most apt to befall them in whom it is perform'd by *Unction*, because the quantity of *Mercury* cannot be determined how much ought to be used to raise the Operation, nor how much ought to enter into the Body to open gradually the pituitous Vessels; whence it comes to pass, that if too much of the *Mercury* enters into them at once (as it oftentimes happens when the Pores are too lax and open) that the pituitous Humour ascends tumultuously to the Head, Throat, and Glands, and so induces Inflamation, thereby hazarding the *Suffocation* of the Patient: For which reason we ought to chuse such means, which in exciting a *Salivation*, may be safe, gentle and secure, as well as effectual.

CXII. The several ways by which *Salivation* is perform'd, are these three, viz. 1. By *Unction*, with *Unguentum Neapolitanum*, or other Mercurial Ointments. 2. By *Fumigation*, according to the Methods of *Sylvius* and *Wiseman*, with Mercurial Troches. 3. By *Internals*, with the vulgar Preparations of *Mercury*, or those which are prepared with Gold, as *Aurum Vitæ*, *Præcipitatus Aureus*, *Impetus Mineralis*, and *Impetus Aureus*; of all which we shall treat in order, and withal shew the Dangers and Inconveniencies attending each way; and which we like and approve of best.

VI. *The Method of* Salivation *by Unction*

CXIII. *First*, A Clyster is to be given to loosen the Belly. *Secondly*, The Patient is to be purged three or four times, to carry off the more gross Excrements, and feculent Humours. *Thirdly*, Bathing in warm Water is ordered for four, six or eight days running to make the Humours more fluid, make lax the Habit of the Body, and open the Pores of the Skin, and Cuticular *Glandulæ*, that the *Mercury* may the more easily pass through them. Others open the Pores by Sudorificks, giving in the mean time a Ptisan, or some such-like Liquor to drink hot, to put the Humours in motion, and withal they diminish or take away the gross Diet, and keep the Patient to drinking of Gruel, Posset-drink, or Broths. This done,

CXIV. You are to anoint with either *Unguentum Neapolitanum*, or an Ointment prepared after this manner. *Take Quick-silver six Ounces; fine Strasburgh Turpentine four Ounces; grind or rub them in a Marble Mortar, till the Mercury is extinguished; then add Hogs-lard a pound and half; beat or rub all this for eight or ten hours, till the Ingredients are perfectly mix'd and the Ointment becomes grey.*

CXV. The Patient being before a good Fire in his Shirt, take two or three Ounces of the former Ointment, and anoint from the Soles of the Feet to above the Knees; and from the Wrists to the Shoulders, rubbing it very well in; after which put them into a very warm Bed, keeping them close covred, excluding the cold Air out of the Room, in which let there be a good Fire Night and Day, especially if the Weather is moderately cold. The next Day repeat the same work again in the same manner, anointing and rubbing all the Body, except the Head, Breast, and Belly,

with the same Ointment, and putting into a warm Bed as before. On the third day repeat the same again, doing all things in the same manner. If the *Salivation* comes not on, Authors advise to do it again, the fourth Day; yea the Fifth, and a Sixth Day, if the *Salivation* appears not: If after all, the Signs come not on, then they cease the Anointing, lest Mischief should ensue; and exhibit a small Dose, as about a Scruple of *Mercurius Dulcis* by the Mouth, to excite or begin the *Spitting*.

CXVI. The Operation now begun, known by swelling and soreness of the Gums and Mouth, and pricking Pains and Ulcers therein; give over applying any more of the *Mercury* whether outwardly or inwardly; lest the Pituitous Humour flowing with Violence to the Throat, should inflame the Head and parts adjacent, and put the Patient in danger of *Suffocation*: But if the Salivary Vessels be well opened, and the Humour sufficiently melted, it will flow with safety enough, and without danger, if it increase from two Pints a day to three or four, and sometimes to five: This *Salivation* may or ought to continue fifteen, twenty, yea to thirty Days, according to the strength of the Patient, and Contumacy or Inveteracy of the Disease, the Sick taking nothing all the while but *White-Posset drink, Gruel, Mutton-broth, Barly-broth, or a Decoction of Turneps or Burdock-roots*, all of which he may take by turns, as he likes, and for Change-sake. He is not to stir out of his Bed, nor is his Linnen to be changed for eight or ten Days; and towards the end of the *Salivation*, they give a *Clyster* every other day, and also *Purge gently*; but the *Salivation* being quite over, they give a *formal Purge or two, and sometimes more*, taking great care for some time after, that he takes no cold, by reason the Pores of the Body are every where open.

CXVII. If the Patient is of a good Habit of Body, this course may chance to do well enough as it has in several. But if the Pores of the Skin are strait, and not so open as they should be, then only a small quantity of the *Mercury* will enter, which being not able to dissolve the *Lympha* or Phlegm all over the Body, some of the *Virus* will be left remaining behind, for which reason the *POX* will quickly bud out, and appear again in several malign Symptoms. But if the Pores are too large and open, then too much of the *Mercury* may penetrate, which dissolving the Congelation of the Flegm too fast, may make it flow to the Head and Salivary Glands tumultuously, and so endanger Death by *Suffocation*, as I have several times seen.

CXVIII. From hence we may conclude, that such who undergo this Method of Cure by *Unction*, are not restored but by Accident; and that they are more obliged to their good Habit of Body, than to the Physician who prescribes it; 'tis without doubt the very worst way of all, and always attended with the more dangerous Symptoms, yet we were willing to give you it in a clear light, that such as like it, and have an Opinion of it, may, if they please, use it. But if we consider the way the *Mercury* has to make when *Unction* is used, that it must pass through the Skin, then through the Fat, (if any be) and the Membrances and musculous Flesh, through which it has a long passage, (where, by the way, it is sometimes lodg'd, and sometimes meet with the *Periostion*, and Bones, corrupting and rotting them, causing many times Nocturnal Pains, with many other Aches and Disorders:) At length it ascends up into

into the *Viscera*, *Head* and *Brain*, whence the Serosities of the parts, and Acidities of the Humours, precipitate it down again into the Salivatick Glands and Ducts: I say when a Man considers, that this is the way it must make, to perform the Work of *Salivation*, with the Accidents and Dangers attending it, it would frighten a faint-hearted Man, and even make a bold Champion tremble to attempt it. When various ways offer themselves to lead to the same end; it is prudence always to chuse that which is best, safest, and most certain in accomplishing that which is desired.

VII. *The Method of* Salivation *by Fumigation.*

CXIX. It is done with Troches made with *Artificial Cinnabar*, after this manner. *Take Artificial Cinnabar in fine Pouder two Ounces; Olibanum, Rosin, of each in fine Pouder an Ounce, Benjamin, Gum Guajaci, Myrrh, White Amber, ana, in fine Pouder half an Ounce; with Chio Turpentine a sufficient quantity make a Mass for Troches; which may serve for twelve or thirteen Fumigations.* Form the whole into small Troches, each weighing about a Dram or Dram and half a piece.

CXX. The way of Fuming is thus: You must have either *Hartman's* Chair, or a Frame made almost like a Tent on Purpose for this Occasion. This Frame ought to be pretty high, so as a Cane Stool may be set in it for the Patient to sit upon, placing his Feet upon a Sheet on the Ground; and then the Frame must be made of straight pieces of Wainscot, about an Inch and half square, broad at the bottom, and narrow at the top, only wide enough to include the Neck, of a Quadrangular or Hexangular Form, and joyned together above and below, with cross pieces of the same Wainscot to hold it together; and it must be so ordered, that it may have a Door to open and shut, that the Patient may go into it, and come out of it at pleasure. In this Frame the Sick being naked, must be placed upon the Cane Stool; and then it is to be covered all over, first with a Sheet, which must at top be wrap'd close round his Neck to keep the Fumes in; and over this Sheet a Blanket is also to be put, that the Heat and Fumes may be kept intire: This done, a very small Chafing-dish of well-burnt live Charcoal is to be put into the Frame, under the Cane Stool, upon which some of the Troches are to be put, that they may fume or smoak; The Troches, enough for one Fumigation, are not to be put on all at once, but by degrees, till they are all wasted and spent: And in the time of Fuming, let him take a Draught or two of his *Guajacum* or *Sarsa* Diet-drink, pretty hot.

CXXI. The Fuming being over, the Patient is to be taken out, his Shirt put on, and then put into a warm Bed for two hours, giving him now and then a little of some Sudorifick Decoction, or warm Broth to comfort and refresh him, after which he may rise, cloath himself, and walk about the Room, which ought to be kept warm and free from any cold Air. This work of Fuming is to be done every day, if the Sick is strong, so long till the Signs of the Salivation appear in the Throat, Mouth and Gums; after which you are to desist, and assist the Course of the Spitting, altogether in the same manner, as if it was performed by *Unction* or *Internals*. But if the Sick is weak, it is then to be done every other day. Though the Head and Face are to be out of the *Frame*,

yet the *Head* is to be covered, that the Air come not at it; and towards the Conclusion the *Head* ought to receive some of the Fumes, if the Sick (without fainting) can endure it.

CXXII. This Method by *Fumigation* is more potent than those ways by *Purging*, or Salivating by *Unction*; and does that where there is a *Caries* of the Bones, which those ways (nor possibly any other) can do. I have sometimes used it with good success in that case, as also where I have met with *Phagedenick Ulcers*, which no other Remedy would reach. I know *Sylvius de le Boe* commends it, as the best and safest way; and I own, I was formerly of that Opinion; but my long Experience of it, and manifold Observations in the practising it, has made me of another Judgment, so that I can truly say from my own knowledge, that it is not the best nor most secure Operation, but that it is lyable to many unhappy and dangerous Accidents: Yet not withstanding, if it is managed by a skilful and prudent hand, many extraordinary and most admirable Cures may be performed by it; and many hundreds have been cured this way, beyond all Expectation.

CXXIII. Now though I dislike it as to the General Cure, yet it is of extraordinary use, and rather to be chosen than any other way, for the Cure of the Malign and Contumacious Symptoms of any particular part, as an Arm, Leg, *&c.* affected with Rheumatick Pains, Malign Herpes, Cacoetick Fistula's or Phagedenick Ulcers, *&c.* in which Cases, you need to Fume only that part alone (which is less troublesome and dangerous to the Patient) by laying it in a proper Posture, and covering it over (but hollow) with Blankets, and then putting the Troches upon live Coals under it; *&c.* *Paræus* says, it will dry up Cacoethick Ulcers, which cannot be cured by any other means; and that it will digest, discuss, disperse, dissolve, and make to vanish Knots, Nodes, and fixed Pains, not otherwise removeable: Yet he approves not of the Method, by reason of its danger, and exciting evil Symptoms.

VIII. *The Method of* Salivation *by Internals.*

CXXIV. Since *Salivation* is the only true Way by which an inveterate, confirm'd, and thorough-pac'd *POX* can be cured; and that this *Salivation* may be perform'd by three several Methods, *viz.* by *Unction*, *Fumigation*, and *Internals*; the two first of which we have exploded, because of the many dangerous and terrible Accidents, with which they are often accompanied, tho' effected by the most skilful Hand; and that the doing of it by *Internals*, which is the *present Method* we are now going to declare, is the only safe Way it can be attempted, (which Opinion of ours is grounded upon Truth, Reason, and Experience, and tantamounts in a manner to demonstration:) I say, for these Considerations we advise rather to *this latter* than to *either of the two former.* The usual Mercurial Preparations used in this way, are, 1. Those of the first Classis, as *Mercurius Dulcis*, *Præcipitatus Albus*, *Præcipitatus Ruber*, *Sublimate Præcipitate*, *Arcanum Coralinum*, *Turpethum Minerale*, *Sublimatus Corrosivus.* 2. Those of the second Classis, as *Pulvis Principis*, *Aurum Vitæ*, *Præcipitatus Aureus*, *Impetus Mineralis*, *Impetus Aureus.* Any of which in either *Classis* being given in due Dose, and according to the Rules of Art, will easily and admirably raise the

Salivation:

Salivation: The which if it be managed by a *Wise* and *Prudent Physician*, in respect of the Patient in the time of the *Salivation*, and the Number of Doses to be given for the Accomplishing thereof; I know, that neither the *Physician*, nor the *Patient* need fear a good Success.

CXXV. The Body then being well prepared before hand by due Purging, *&c.* to evacuate some of the grosser parts of the Morbid Matter, we proceed to give the Salivating Doses. And these are generally prescrib'd (by vulgar Practicers) out of some of the Particulars of the first Classis. *Mercurius Dulcis* (tho' it is no potent Medicine) is that which is most commonly used; and because of its gentleness and easy Operation, is given to the most tender and delicate Persons, and such who by reason of their Niceness, cannot be prevailed with to take the rougher Preparations. This it is true will salivate, if it be given in a Dose large enough, as *from a Scruple to two Scruples, and sometimes more*, according to the Age, Sex, Habit of Body, and other Accidents. But if it be given in an inveterate Pox, accommodated with pernicious Symptoms, by reason of its Weakness, it will never be able to overcome it, and then there will be a great deal of Trouble, Fatigue, and Time spent in vain, and the Patient must at last have recourse to more potent Remedies: Yet I do not deny, but that it has done Cures in some easy Habits of Body, and where the Disease has not been Contumacious.

CXXVI. The next is *Præcipitatus Albus*, or *White Præcipitate*, which is much more potent than *Mercurius Dulcis*, and yet gentler than any of the other Preparations of this *Classis*. It is generally given from *gr.* 10 to 16, and in most Habits of Body salivates well in those Doses. *Wiseman*, 'tis true, gave it oftentimes times to *gr.* xx & xxv. I never gave it in such very large Doses; but without doubt when it is given to so large an Extent, the Patient ought to take very liberally, Mutton-broth, or Chicken-broth, at least five or six Quarts a day; for by that means it will operate with the lesser Acrimony and Fatigue.

CXXVII. Some of our City Chirurgions salivate with *Red Præcipitate*. It is a very harsh and severe Medicine, but where it succeeds as it ought to do, it does wonders. They give it to *gr.* vii or viii: And some over-hardy Fellows will give it to *gr.* xii. It works strongly both upwards and downwards, (but chiefly upwards) before it produces the Salivation. It ought to be cautiously given, and at due distances of time; if the Dose is not too great, it may succeed; it removes most of the attending Symptoms, but in particular, Nocturnal Pains of the Shins, *&c.* *Wiseman* says it is Emetick, but that being well washed, it may be taken as safely as *White Præcipitate*. *Blanchard* gives it thus, *Take Red Præcipitate, White Præcipitate, ana* 3 *drams, Pouders of Cloves and Mace, ana* 2 *Drams, old Venice Treacle one Ounce; mix them, and make up Pills.* Dose à *gr.* xij ad xvj.

CXXVIII. *Sublimatus Præcipitatus*, which is *Mynsichts Turpethum Mineral*, and is our *Gryps Mercurij*, commended by *Joh. Daniel Horstius*, as one of the best Preparations. It is strongly Emetick, and salivates very well; but is by no means to be given to weak Persons. It may be given to *gr.* vj. I have known some to have given it to *gr.* x. or more. *Blanchard* gives it to *gr.* xij or xvj. His Recipe is this, *Take Sublimate Præcipi-*

Præcipitate gr. xij *or* xvj, *old Venice Treacle one Dram, mix them, to be taken once a day, till the Salivation begins.* I have formerly used this Preparation much, but not of late years, since I became acquainted with my *Impetus Mineralis*, and *Impetus Aureus*. Of which we shall speak anon.

CXXIX. *Arcanum Coralinum*; This *Wiseman* says may be given à gr. iij ad v. He prescribed it to a Woman, who had *Serpigines*, &c. and it vomited her often, salivated her twenty days, and so clear'd her Skin of its Defilement. *Sylvius de le Boe* says many sorts of *Mercurij Præcipitati* are commended, some working by Stool, others by Vomits or Salivation; but that when we would purge by Stool, the *most fixt*, is the propereſt for that end; for it Vomits or Salivates so much the less. Among all the *Præcipitates*, he commends the *Coraline*, which has (says he) its Name from the Elegance of its colour; such a *Mercury* so variously prepared we are to make choice of, according to the Constitution of the Patient, and the various Humours abounding, for the eradicating of the *POX*. If it is well wash'd it may be given mixt with *Venice Treacle or Mithridate*, à gr. *v ad x. or more.*

CXXX. *Turpethum Minerale*, such as is sold in the Shops, is (as *Wiseman* says) a rough Medicine; but being something eduloorated it first causes Vomiting, then Salivation, and is proper to make a sudden Revulsion, in such Cases where there is a necessity of giving speedy Relief to an afflicted Part, and contributes to the cure of this Disease, in such Cases where *Mercurius Dulcis* has not strength enough. He chuses that which is made out of *Vigo's Præcipitate*, and gave it from *gr. xij ad xviij*, (which I think is to a very great Extent) but he rarely prescribed it to any, who had not first taken *Mercurius Dulcis*. It takes off (says he) Nocturnal Pains, resolves *Gummata* and *Nodes* which have not been of long continuance, and hastens the Cure of the most malign Ulcers which accompany this Disease. *Blanchard* gives it thus, *Take Turbith Mineral gr. x, Venice Treacle a Dram and half, mix and make a Bolus for one Dose*; to be taken three days running, or as the Physician shall see fit.

CXXXI. *Sublimatus Corrosivus*: This, says *Wiseman*, being dissolved in *Aqua Fortis*, and given inwardly, causes Vomiting, and so raises Salivation, if given in due Dose: He says it is much commended by some Practicers, but he never made Tryal of it. But this he has frequently prescribed. *Take Corrosive Sublimate 2 Drams, Cinnamon, Galangal, Turmerick, ana 2 Drams, Saffron one Dram, Fumitory Water a Quart: Infuse in Balneo for 24 Hours, and then strain it out for use.* The Dose is three or four spoonfuls in a Morning, and is to be repeated many days, drinking Posset-drink, as in other Vomitives. *Blanchard* uses it thus, *Take Corrosive Sublimate a Dram; common fair Water twenty Ounces; mix and dissolve by boiling.* In the Morning the Patient may (says he) take a Spoonful thereof, (in some proper Venicle, as in a Decoction of the Woods, China, Turneps;) it frequently cures upon seven times taking. Hitherto of the usual Salivating Preparations of the first *Classis*: We now come to treat of those of the *Second*, which as much transcend the greatest of them, as the most potent of those do *Mercurius Dulcis.*

CXXXII. *Pulvis Principis*, The Princes Pouder. This the Prince gave to a Dram; which seems to me to

to be an Extravagant Dose: Yet some Constitutions will bear it; if they can endure it, two or three Doses commonly does a Cure. That very skilful Physician Dr. *Paul Chamberlain*, a Man truly great in the Faculty, I have known give to one and the same Patient in three Doses, *first*, *gr.* 30. *secondly*, *gr.* 40. *thirdly*, 50. *Grains*; with the Intermission of a Day or two between each Dose, and with the desired Success. In weaker Constitutions it may be given *à gr. x. ad xx.* in such as are stronger, *à gr. xv ad xxx.* And in very robust Constitutions I have given it to 40 *Grains*, *and sometimes*, *though rarely*, *to* 50. But it is requisite that the Patient should take, whilst the Dose is in Operation, at least six Quarts, or more, every day of hot Chicken or Mutton-broth, (not taking off its Fat) because it facilitates the working, and maks it operate without danger. It may be made into a *Bolus* or *Pills* with a *little Mithridate*, and so taken, drinking about half a Pint of the Broth, every half hour after it, till five or six Quarts is gone.

CXXXIII. *Aurum Vitæ:* This is one of the Great Preparations of *Mercury with Gold*, but the very meanest of them; and will yet do more than any of those which have gone before. I have used it I believe above a thousand times, and with admirable Success, but its Dose must be proportioned according to the Habit of the Body to which it is given. In very weak and tender Constitutions it may be given *à gr.* 10 *ad* 16. In such as are stronger, *à gr.* 16 *ad* 30; and to the strongest Constitutions, *à gr.* 30 *ad* 40. or 50 *Grains*. Thus, *Take Aurum Vitæ gr.* 16 *an* 40, *or more, as the Physician shall advise, Mithridate a Dram, mix for a Dose* to be given in the Morning, fasting, either every day, or every other day till the Salivation rises. If you give it to Purge withal, it must always be mixt with some *Cathartick*.

CXXXIV. *Præcipitatus Auræus*: This is excellent when exhibited in a *Purging Course*: And *Wiseman* says that being corrected it may be made a *Sudorifick*: But however, given without a *Cathartick*, it raises a *Salivation*, as well as can be desired: It is sweeter than *Mercurius Dulcis*, and may be given to the same Quantity or Dose. And the work may easily be compleated, by taking it to *gr. xv. or xx*; and in the greater Exigences to *gr. xxx or xl* at most (where the Patient is of a Robust Constitution) in about four or five Doses. I can by giving this to half a Dram, (or two Scruples, in very strong Constitutions) with about four or five, or at most six Doses, raise an excellent *Salivation*, in which it will also a little purge by *Stool*, and little *Vomit*, and in some measure work by *Urine*, and yet give motion enough for the *Virus* to pass with the *Saliva* through the *Mouth*, and that for as a long time, and for as many days as when the *Salivation* is excited, either by *Unction*, *Fumigation*, or any of the other *Preparations*. Only the work being performed by THIS, is incomparably more gentle, and the troublesome and vexatious *Accidents*, accompanying the other Methods and Medicines are here avoided, as also all those other dangers to which (in the other ways) the Sick is very often exposed. You may give it in *Bolus* or *Pills*, made up with a little *Mithridate*.

CXXXV. *Impetus Mineralis*: This very much exceeds the former, as well in the Excellencies of its Operation, as in its Preparation, and may be given exactly (in all Cases) in the same Doses, the proportion of the

Mer-

Mercury to the Gold, in the end of the Preparation, being the same as you may see in *Sect.* 79, 80, 81, aforegoing. If it is given as a *Bolus* you may mix it thus, *Take Impetus Mineralis à gr.* 15 *ad* 40, *according to Age, Strength, Habit, and other Accidents; Mithridate a Dram; mix and make a Bolus.* Or you may make up the same quantity of the *Impetus* into Pills with a little *Venice Treacle*, and so take them, as the former. These the *Bolus* or *Pills*, may be given every day, or every other day as the Physician shall advise, till the *Salivation* arises as it ought to do.

CXXXVI. *Impetus Aureus.* As this is the greatest of all *Antivenereal Preparations*, so it is the most stupendious in its Operation, and the most certain in all its Effects; it being almost next to impossible, that a Patient should regularly take this Medicament, and not meet with a Cure, whilst the Disease is curable. In a Course of *Salivation* it may be given *à gr.* 30 *ad* 40, *or* 60, according to Age, Strength, Contumacy of the Disease, and other Circumstances. You may mix the Dose with a *Dram of Mithridate*, and give it in a *Bolus* as the former; otherwise make it up into small Pills to be swallowed in like manner; these Doses are to be repeated every day, or every other day, till the signs of *Salivation* appear; and afterwards to be either discontinued, or continued, according as the prudent Physician shall advise: And as the Spitting continues, or goes off, till the Patient has accomplished such a number of Days, as the Cure of the Disease may seem to require.

CXXXVII. I think good to add one or two Preparations more, because they may be of Use in some particular cases in the Cure of this Disease, and these are 1. *Præcipitatus Argenteus, vel Lunaris*, The Silver Precipitate, which is of mighty force when there is an Inveterate and Vehement Head-ach, almost to Distraction, not to be removed by any of the common Medicaments. 2. *Arcanum Jovis*, The Jovial Precipirate, which is of singular Effects when there is an Inveterate Scabbiness not much Inferior in appearance to an *Elephantiasis*, and scarcely to be cured by any other Preparation.

CXXXVIII. *Præcipitatus Argenteus seu Lunaris. Take cupelated fine Silver, either in Filings or in Leaves, an Ounce; Quick-silver reviv'd from Native Cinnabar twelve Ounces; mix and make an Amalgama. Then proceed exactly, in all respects in the remaining part of the Operation, as we have taught in that of the* Impetus Mineralis, *at Sect. LXXIX. aforegoing; so will you have a Lunar Precipitate of almost infinite Virtues.* It has all the Virtues of the *Impetus Mineralis*, and is to be given in the same manner, and in the same Dose; but I believe operates not altogether so effectually as that does; yet in case of *an Inveterate and Vehement Pain of the Head*, it transcends it, because the *Calx or Vitriol of Luna*, is truly a Specifick for the profligating and removal of those pertinacious Dolors

CXXXIX. *Arcanum Jovis*; The Jovial Precipitate: See its Preparation in our *Pharm. Bateana*, Lib. 1. Cap 9. Sect 17. And in our *Pharm. Chirurgica*, Cap. . Sect. 2. In the first of which we have declared and explicated the Process more at large: It is a great secret in the Cure of the *FRENCH POX*, with all its Pocky Symptoms, but more especially where there is an Inveterate Scabbiness, degenerating as it were

were, almost into an *Elephantiasis*. It powerfully opens *Obstructions*, and removes diseases of the parts affected, sometimes by Purging, sometimes by Urine, sometimes by *Salivation*, and sometimes by gently Sweating, being given with *Mithridate* or *Venice Treacle*, or other like Sudorificks, in a small Dose, as, *à gr. viij. ad xij. or xvj.* It is profitable against the Leprosie, Impetigines in the Palms and other parts, Serpigines, Rebellious Herpes, Scurvy, Rheumatism, *&c.* and is said to cure almost Incurable Diseases. If it is given from a Scruple to half a Dram or two Scruples, according to Age and Strength, it will Salivate admirably, and even in very strong People do wonders in a very short time.

IX. *Observations upon the several Methods of* Salivation.

CXL. When the Salivation is perform'd by Unction, if the Patient could bear it, a Stove would be best to do it in; but if weak, it must be done in Bed, or before a good Fire, but not too near it, surrounded with a Skreen. It will be best for the Sick to do it with his own Hands, by which he saves the Chirurgion much trouble, besides he may do it better himself than any body can do it for him. He may begin at the Feet, and so ascend to the Legs, Thighs, Buttocks, and avoiding the Belly, then go to the Shoulders, Arms and Hands, and it will be sufficient, if the Mercury once mix with the Juices to such a degree as to cause Salivation. Let him lye in a warm Bed for two hours, then rise and eat a light Dinner easie of Digestion. The Unction may be repeated twice a day if need requires, but if the Chaps swell a-pace, you must slacken your hand, lest the *Salivation* come on too fast, and endanger a Suffocation. When the Salivation is manifest, the Patient must drink only Posset-drink, Gruel, or Broth, which ought to be ready prepared in Quantities, and must be often and plentifully drank, otherwise the Spitting can never go on as it should do.

CXLI. The Mouth ought to be syring'd often with a *Ptisan made of Hull'd Barly and Liquorice*; and sometimes *New Milk* or *Chicken-broth*, are to be held in the Mouth, to ease the Pain, and digest the Sloughs which arise. If he is so weak as to keep his Bed, his Head ought to be raised high, and a rouled Clout is to be placed between the Teeth, to keep the Chaps from closing, that the *Saliva* may not run down the Throat: If he be able, he ought not to keep his Bed, for so the Salivating will be better and more plentifully perform'd, which when well done, and it be in a *Stubborn POX*, ought to continue 25 or 30 Days. In the heighth of the Spitting, the Strength ought to be kept up with Sack-Whey, Poched Eggs, *&c.* and if the Body is Costive, a *Clyster* is to be given, for that increases the Spitting.

CXLII. If in *Salivation* by *Unction*, the Mouth is much ulcerated, the Breath Stinks, and yet without Swelling of the Chaps, or any considerable Spitting, farther Anointing is to be forborn, and then they give inwardly if the Sick is strong, four, six or eight Grains of *Turbith Mineral*, or *Arcanum Coralinum*, to excite the *Salivation*; but if weak, they give a *Clyster*; and if not withstanding all this it rises not, then they are to be disposed to Sweating, with warm Draughts of some Sudorick Decoction; or they are to be put into a warm Bath of Water, by

which

which means it is caused to rise, when all other ways prove ineffectual. If there is Palpitation, or Faintness, purge it off with our Author's *Potio Communis Purgativa*, or *Decoctum Senæ Gereonis*, with Syrup of Roses Solutive, keeping up the Spirits with good Chicken-broth. Cordials, *&c* Or *Take Turbith Mineral gr. v. Mercurius Dulcis. gr. vj mix them*; and give it till the Salivation rises. But if it does not, yet the pituitous Matter being melted by the Unction, you may by well Purging, Sweating or Bathing, and good Diet-drinks perform the Cure.

CXLIII. If in *Salivation* by *Unction*, the Morbifick Matter passes downward: in a *Diarrhœa*, before the Spitting rises, or before it is much advanced it is to be prevented by the Exhibition of *Venice Treacle*, *Diascordium*, *our New London Treacle*, *Liquid Laudanum*, or our *Laudanum Volatile*: Or if a *Dysentry* succeed, you must not only use *Laudanum*, but *Tinctura Mirabilis*, because that Tincture is a Specifick against all Fluxes of Blood and Humours, but more especially a Bloody-flux. *Take Barabar Wine three Ounces*; *Tinctura Mirabilis a Spoonful*; *Guttæ Vitæ, or Liquid Laudanum, gut.* 30 *to* 40. *mix for a Dose*, to be given at Night, and to be repeated as long as need requires. Having by some of this means master'd the Symptoms, after some few days time, you may give some Doses of *Precipitate* or *Turbith*, to cause Vomiting, and set on foot the Salivation; but it must be done with that Caution, and distance of time between each Dose, as may no more endanger the former Accidents.

CXLIV. As the *Sloughs* begin to separate, which will be towards the end of the *Salivation*, the Patient may drink *a Decoction of Guajacum, its Bark, Sarsa, China, Burdock-roots, Turneps*, &c. a Quart or more of it a day, and purge with *Potio Communis Purgativa* three or four several times; after which the Cure may be compleated by Sweating in a Bath of fair Water, *&c.* as is usual in these cases. The Ulcers of the Mouth may be washed or gargled with *Milk and Water* boil'd togegether; or with *Damask Rose water mix'd with a little Wine*: Or with *Aqua Theriacalis mixed with Camphir*; *or a little Balsam of Sulphur anisated.*

CXLV. During the time of *Salivation* (by which of the Methods soever) Posset drink, Gruel or Mutton-broth, are usually given; and they ought to be given liberally: But I think there is nothing better than a White sort of Posset-drink made with Ale, and a little sweetned with double refined Sugar: However the Sick may sometimes take the one, and somtimes the other, for Change-sake: But unless they drink very freely of some of them, the *Salivation* can never well succeed.

CXLVI. This thing is also specially to be observed, that every time before drinking or eating any thing, the Sick should Gargle and wash their Mouth and Throat, two or three times together, with warm Water, to cleanse it, and wash away the Filth, that it may not every time be carried down again into the Stomach and Bowels; lest the Sick should feed upon their own Poison, and thereby continue, or rather renew, their Distemper. For want of doing this, let the Operation be never so well perform'd, the Sick will be little the better for it; but will be somtimes forced to endure the Fatigue of two or three Salivations, and yet not be cured at last; when the first (with this Caution) would have sufficiently done. Besides it prevents those terrible Ulcers which usually happen in the Throat, Tongue, Cheeks and Gums, in the perform-

ance

ance of this Work; the corroding poisonous Matter being almost every moment washed away from them; and thereby is hinder'd the falling out of the Teeth, and those Fluxes and Tortions of the Bowels which are frequent in this case.

CXLVII. *Blanchard* says, For the better cleansing of the Mouth, which is ulcerated by the Acid in *Salivation*, it is convenient to wash it with such Abstersives as may draw away the corrosive Acid from all the parts thereof; and such a thing is *Limon Pickle*, for that being full of Volatile and Aromatick Particles, if the Mouth is gargled or washed therewith, it very much cleanses it, beyond Almond Milk, Decoctions of Figs, Roses, *&c.* If the Ulcers are rebellious, and the Pain extream, you may wash with this Gargarism. *Take Limon Pickle, Spirit of Scurvygrass, of each two Ounces; Spirit of Wine four Ounces; Opium half a Scruple; mix and make a Gargarism* And indeed the Mouth is continually to be wash'd, that the *Acid* of the *Virus* may be always taken away, lest the parts should be impaired thereby, which may be often done with *fair warm Water, warm new Milk, Decoction of Harts-horn, Decoction of Guajacum*, which last is of good use, because it keeps the Pores always open.

CXLVIII. If the *Salivation* is made by *Internals*, especially with those which are prepared *with Gold*, no such terrible and dreadful Accidents can happen as those are, which many times fall out in the Methods by *Unction* or *Fumigation*, which sometimes become tragical to the poor Patient: By *Internals* no ill Accident can ensue, if care be taken, so that there needs only a *common Gargle* to qualifie those small Ulcers of the Mouth, which yet is not to be too often used (unless there be an Hæmorrhage) lest the Ulcers being closed up too soon, the *Salivation* should cease before the due time, or before it had profligated all the removable Symptoms, which in some is at 15, in others at 20, 25 or 30 days end, according to the Inveteracy, Malignity, and Stubbornness of the Disease.

CXLIX. If the *Salivation* already begun by *Internals*, should grow weak or decay, before the total vanishing of the Symptoms, it ought to be excited afresh now and then with a Dose of *Mercurius Dulcis, White Precepitate, Aurum Vitæ*, or *Impetus Mineralis*, &c. But if it goes on orderly as it ought do, it is then to be increased until the Patient spits four or five Pints a day; or if it is a gross Body, six Pints a day, or in the space of 24 hours at most, which will be done without any prejudice, if the Patient drinks plentifully his Posset-drink, Gruel or Broth: However there ought to be Care and Caution in this thing, and it is to rise by a gradual Ascension, first seeing what the ultimate of the last Dose will do, before the next is administred; and the like continually after every Dose exhibited, lest by too large Doses, and they too frequently given, you should raise the *Salivation* to a degree not to be commanded, and so suffocate the Patient.

CL. If (through the Ignorance or Carelessness of the Physician, or any other unforeseen Accident) the Spitting should rise too high, with other evil Symptoms of like nature, it is to be repress'd, 1. with *Cathartick*s, because they carry the redundant or flowing Cause off, that it might not fall upon the Lungs, or other noble parts. 2. With *Incrassatives*, or Thickness, such as are all *Opiates*, because they so thicken the Matter all at once through the

the whole Body, that it cannot flow with that freedom to the Salivatick Glands, for which purpose we commend *Liquid Laudanum, our Volatile Laudanum, or our Specifick Laudanum*, which (if not too late) cannot be given in vain. 3. With *Sulphurines*; because all Sulphurs, by a magnetick Quality as it were, have power to fix the most Volatile Spirits, witness *Mercury*, the most Volatile of all things, which is fixed into *Cinnabar* only by subliming it from Sulphur. *Take Flowers of Sulphur, or rather Sulphur Vive in fine Pouder half an Ounce; Mithridate or Venice Treacle six Drams; with Syrup of Myrtle a sufficient quantity, make an Electuary for seven Doses*, to be given Morning and Evening so long as need requires. 4. With *Gargarisms* which are Abstersive, and have power also to dry and heal the Ulcers. *Take Plantane or Red Rose-water a Quart; Spirit of Wine three Ounce; Honey of Roses an Ounce and half, mix for a Gargle.* Or this, *Take Smiths Forge water a Quart; Red Port, or Barbar Wine half a Pint; Syrup of Mulberries, Syrup of Myrtle, ana, an Ounce and half; Roch Alum two Drams; mix for a Gargle.*

CLI. If the Sick is taken (in the time of the *Salivation*) with an *Hæmorrhage*, or Spitting of Blood, you may give this. *Take Smiths Forge-water filter'd through brown Paper a Pint; Tincture Mirabilis two Ounces; Liquid Laudanum half an Ounce; Syrup of Myrtle three Ounces, mix them. Dose three Spoonfuls Morning and Night.* The former *Electuary of the Flowers of Sulphur*, is also an excellent thing in this case, and sometimes stops the Flux upon the spot.

CLII. If the Sick falls into a *Lipothymia*, or *Swooning*, give a Taster full of some Cordial Spirit or Water, as this, *Take strong or choice Cinnamon-water four Ounces; Aqua Mirabilis three Ounces; Spirit of Angelica two Ounces; Syrup of Citron-peels three Ounces; mix them for a Cordial* against fainting and Swooning, to be given now and then upon occasion.

CLIII. After the *Salivation* is over the Sick may, 1. *purge two, three or four several times*, with some proper gentle Purge, as with our Author's *Potio Communis Purgativa*, or some such other like, which we have before hinted. 2. *They ought to Sweat well, by Bathing in a Bathing Tub with warm Water*, and this either every day or every other day, for ten or twelve times or more, that if any of the *Virus* is latent in the External Muscles and Skin, it may be expelled this way; and it is to be promoted also by giving internally *Opiates*, as *Liquid Laudanum, our Guttæ Vitæ, Laudanum Volatile*, or *our Specifick Laudanum*, which besides their Sudorifick Property, have a mighty Power universally to sweeten the Mass of *Blood* and *Lympha*. 3. *To abate the Acrimony and Acidity of the VIRUS, if any shall yet be thought to remain in any part of the Body or its Juices*, which is done by giving *Broth made of Vipers* for some days, by which means there will not be only an obtunding of the Acidity yet latent, but also an insensible Transpiration, which will exclude all the remaining Particles of the *Venereal Ferment*, and so perfectly cleanse the *Blood* and *Lympha*, that the Patient shall be beyond the danger of a Relapse upon the old *Basis*, unless new occasion be given. Or this, *Take Carduus or Orange-flower water three Ounces; Volatile Salt of Vipers gr.* 10. *Syrup of Citron peels one Ounce; mix them*, to be given every Night at Bed-time. It is a Specifick against the POX, and destroys

ſtroys the *Virus* however fixed, and in all its Appearances. Where *Volatile Salt of Vipers* is not to be had, *Volatile Salt of Hartshorn* may be uſed in the double quantity; or other Volatile Animal Salts, which are for the moſt part much of the ſame Nature.

CLIV. You ought not to drain ſome Bodies (ſuch as are thin, lean, dry, and ſeemingly exhauſted) by *Salivation* too much, leſt you conſume and waſte the Radical Moiſture it ſelf, which is the Root of Nouriſhment, and the Foundation of Life; for thereby you will by little and little deſiccate the Brain, abſume or deſtroy the Lympha, diſpirit the Blood, and ſo infallibly induce an Incurable Atrophy upon the whole Body, making Death to cloſe up the Act. You ought therefore, as well to preſerve what is natural to the Body, as to deſtroy what is Inimical. You ought to obſerve how much the Body is dryed, how much of the Strength is ſpent, how much the Spirits are ſunk, and all other Circumſtances and Accidents, which may give you timely notice to ſtop the *Salivation*) after a ſufficient continuance) to prevent any farther danger: Which being ended, cleanſe, as is before directed, the Bowels downwards with *Sal Panaretum*, or *Sal Mirabile*, &c.

CLV. Laſtly though there is a difficulty to determine what number of Doſes are requiſite to be given to any Patient, whether of the *Pulvis Principis*, *Aurum Vitæ*, *Præcipitatus Aureus*, *Impetus Mineralis*, or *Impetus Aureus*; yet this is certain, that they ought to be given till all the removable Symptoms do diſappear. After which, all things having been rightly done, ſo as that not the leaſt Symptom or Accident be left, but the Patient ſeems to be perfectly recovered; yet it does not follow, but that there may ſtill remain ſome particles of the *Virus*, in ſome particular parts of the Body, or in the *Blood* and *Lympha*, from whence the *POX* may in ſome ſhort time bud out and ſpring forth again, which I have ſometimes ſeen. Therefore after all the ſaid Accidents are vaniſh'd, that no *Leven* may be left remaining, and to ſecure the Patient from the danger of a *Relapſe*, I adviſe that ſome ſmall Doſes of the aforenamed Medicaments may be given, at leaſt once a Week, or once in five Days, for five or ſix times, *viz.* of the *Pulvis Principis* three or four Grains, for a Doſe; of the *Aurum Vitæ* about ſix or ſeven Grains; of the *Precipitatus Aureus* eight Grains; of the *Impetus Mineralis* about ten Grains, and of the *Impetus Aureus* about twelve Grains: Or if you ſhould think fit, to give *Mercurius Dulcis* about 20 or 25 Grains; which may be given in a *Bolus* of *Mithridate*, or in *Pills* over Night, Purging it off the next Morning with ſome *Lenitive*, or mix'd with ſome gentle *athartick*, and ſo exhibited in the Morning faſting.

X. *Of Topical or External Antivenereals.*

CLVI. Under this Head come in 1. *Waſhes.* 2. *Pouders.* 3. *Ointments* 4. *Balſams.* 5. *Emplaſters. Firſt as to Antivenereal Waſhes*; There are 1. *Aqua Gryphis*, the Water of the Griffin, the Preparation of which ſee in our *Pharm. Chirurgica*, Cap. Sect. 5. It is the Water decanted from the Precipitation of Corroſive Sublimate with Oil of Tartar; and is a ſingular thing to cleanſe and heal Venereal Cankers, and Phagedenick Ulcers, *&c.* 2. *Lac Mercurii, vel Sublimati Corroſivi*, Mercurial Milk; ſee its Preparation in our *Pharm. Bateana*, lib. 2. Cap. 1. Sect 25.

And in our *Pharm. Chirurgica*, Cap. . Sect. 7. Also in our *Doron Medicum*, Lib. 3. Cap. 1. Sect. 3. It prevails against all venereous cutaneous Defilements, Herpes, Impetigo, Serpigo, Pustulæ, Scabies, Ulcers, *&c.* from a Venereal Cause. 3. *Liquor Aluminis*, Alum Water. See its Preparation in our *Doron Medicum*, Lib. 2. Cap. 1. Sect. 9. And in our *Pharm. Bateana*, Lib. 1. Cap. 9. Sect. 10. §. 7. Also in our *Ars Chirurgica*, Lib. 4. Cap. 4. Sect. 27. It is one of the best of Stypticks, of good use in Gonorrhæa's, Gleets, Weaknesses of the Womb, Hæmorrhages, Fluxes of Humours in Ulcers, *&c.* 4. *Aqua Divina Fernelii*, *Fernelius* his Sublimate Water. See it in our *Pharm. Chirurgica*, Cap. . Sect. 4. It helps to cure inveterate, malign, and Venereal Ulcers, by washing them therewith. 5. *Aqua Aluminosa Magistralis Fallopii*; *Fallopius* his Alum Water. See it in our *Pharm. Londinensis*, Lib. 4. Cap. 7. Sect. 11. It is an excellent Medicine to correct, cleanse, dry and heal, any old rotten or putrid Ulcer or Sore, whether Venereal or other; if it is too strong you may allay it with *fair Water*, till it is as gentle as you desire it. 6. *Aqua Mercurialis Blanchardi*, Mercurial Water: It is thus made, *Take Jupiter twelve Ounces and half; Quicksilver seven Ounces and half; mix and make an Amalgama. Take this Amalgama, and its equal weight of Corrosive Sublimate, both in Pouder; mix, and put them into a Retort, which place in Sand, with a Receiver well luted to it; distil with a moderate Fire at first, increasing it gradually, so will you have a clear Water always smoaking.* When you use it, put a drop or two every day upon any Venereal Gum, Node or Toph, and it will (if not inveterate and Contumacious) ease the Pain and discuss it. In this Preparation the *Jupiter* being mix'd with the Crude Quicksilver, divides it into very minute Particles, as it were into Atoms; and then the Sublimate which is composed of an *Alcali* and *Acid* being added, part of the Acid works upon the *Tin*, and part goes over the Helm by the force of the Fire, in the form of Water, which keeps the *Mercury* (being divided into Atoms,) in a continual Contest, whence comes that perpetual Fume or Smoaking.

CLVII. 2. *Antivenereal Pouders.* 1. *Pulvis pro Ulceribus Venereis*; A Pouder for Venereal Ulcers; which see in our *Pharm. Chirurgica*, Cap. . Sect. 4. It drys up their thin or serous Recrements, separates their Filth, cleanses and heals them, though Inveterate, Malign, Cacoethick, or Phagedenick. 2. *Precipitatus Viridis Blandus*, The Gentle Green Precipitate: See its Preparation in our *Pharm. Bateana*, Lib. 1. Cap. 9. Sect. 110. It is not only said to cure the *Lues Venerea* when deplorable, but the whole Herd of Symptoms attending it, as *Nodes*, *Gums*, *Tophs*, *Nocturnal Pains*, &c. but this is to be understood, if it is used before the Bones become *Carious* or *Rotten*, in which case there is nothing to be done, but laying the Node or Gum open to the Bone, and then Scaling it. Applied to *old*, *stubborn*, *rebellious Ulcers*, whether *Venereal*, *Strumous*, or *Scorbutick*, either alone or mixed with an equal part of *Scammony* in Pouder, it suddenly and perfectly cures them. 3. *Æthiops Mineralis*, The Mineral Black: Outwardly applied it is good against Pocky Scabs, Ulcers, Impetigo, Serpigo, Herpes, Nodes, Gums, Tophs, Nocturnal Pains, and the like; where the place is rare, it may be strewed upon the Sore or Ulcer; otherwise,

wise, it may be mix'd with Hogs-Lard into an Ointment, and so laid upon the part affected. And strewed upon, and round the edge of a Gangrene, it stops its running any farther. 4. *Præcipitatus Ruber*, Red Precipitate, to eat away dead Flesh.

CLVIII. 3. *Antivenereal Ointments.* 1. *Unguentum Neopolitanum*, The Ointment against the French Pox. See its Preparation in our *Pharm. Londinensis*, Lib. 5. Cap. 4. Sect. 49. Designed chiefly for the Operation of Salivation. It is good against Nodes, Gums, Serpigo, Impetigo, Herpes, Leprosie, and Nocturnal Pains, anointed upon the parts affected: It cures also the Itch, anointed on the Hands, Feet and Joints, *&c.* 2. *Unguentum ad Scabiem*, Ointment against Scabbiness: See the Preparation in our *Pharm Chirurgica*, Cap. . Sect 9. It cures Scabbiness, Leprosie, Itch, Mange, cleanses the Skin, and is an excellent thing against Venereal Putrid Running Sores, Herpes and other Breakings out in the Face, Chin, Eyebrows and Nose, Malign Cacoethick and Phagedenick Ulcers of the Legs, Thighs, Arms, and Privities, *&c.* 3. *Unguentum Mercuriale*, The Mercurial Ointment. See its Preparation in our *Pharm. Chirurgica*, Cap . Sect. 5. It has all the Virtues of the former, drys without any thing of Sharpness or Biting, and cures Ulcers difficult to heal; and if used by way of Unction, as the *Unguentum Neapolitanum*, it will cause salivation in like manner as that will.

CLIX 4. *Antivenereal Balsams*, 1. *Balsamum Antivenereum*, A Balsam against the *P O X*. *Take Balsam of Peru twelve Ounces; White Precipitate two Ounces; Camphir one Ounce; Oil of Limons half an Ounce; mix and make a Balsam.* Outwardly applied it cleanses, corrects, drys and heals, old Venereal Ulcers, and putrid running Sores, discusses Gums and Nodes, whilst recent and increasing, eases Nocturnal Pains and extirpates Herpes, Impetigo, Pustulæ, Scabies, Serpigo, *&c.* 2. *Balsamum Antisiphylicum aliud:* Another Balsam against the French *P O X*. *Take Balsam of Peru, Chio Turpentine, ana, six Ounces; Oil of Mace by Expression, Oil of Hypericon, ana, three Ounces; Camphir an Ounce and half; Quick-silver six Ounces, kill'd with Spittle; mix and make a Balsam.* It cures the Itch, Scurf, Morphew, Leprosie, Scabbiness, Tetters, Ringworms, and other Breakings-out from the Venereal Disease; It abates Inflamations and the Sharpness of Salt Humours, and is good against Nodes, Gums, Exostoses, old, putrid, Cacoethick and Phagedenick Ulcers, *&c.* 3. *Balsamum Mirabile*, The Wonderful Balsam. *Make an Amalgama with equal Quantities of Lead and Quick silver, which reduce into fine Pouder. Take Balsam of Peru, of Copaybæ, Chio Turpentine, ana, six Ounces; of the former Amalgama Mercurius Dulcis in fine Pouder, Native Cinnabar levigated, Camphir, ana, two Ounces; mix and make a Balsam.* It has all the Virtues of either of the former, and cures all manner of Venereal Scabbiness in 15 days time; as also Nodes, Gums, Tumours, and other Breakings-out of the *French P O X*: It is very drying, and exceeds all External Medicines of this kind.

CLX. 5. *Antivenereal Emplasters.* 1. *Emplastrum de Ranis cum Mercurio triplicato vel quadruplicato:* See it with Simple Mercury in our *Pharm. Londinensis*, Lib. 5. Cap. 6. Sect. 42. It discusses Venereal Nodes, Gums, Tumours, and Swellings, eases Vehement and Excruciating Pains in the Head, Shoulders, Arms, Thighs, Legs, Joints, Nerves *&c.* drawing out the *Viras* in a kind

of dew, and strengthning the part, *&c.* 2. *Emplastrum Mercuriale*, The Mercurial Emplaster: See it in our *Pharm. Chirurgica*, Cap. . Sect. 8. It is used with great Success against Venereal Tumors, Tophs and Nodes, Nocturnal Pains, in an inveterate *Lues*, laying them as it were asleep, and drawing forth the Malignity in manner of a Sweat; cures all Pocky Ulcers, and removes Scabs and Breakings-out, in the Secrets or other Parts, and that to a wonder. 3. *Emplastrum Tophos Harveii*; Dr. *Harvey's* Emplaster for Pocky Nodes. *Take Artificial Cinnabar levigated two Ounces*; *Oil of Roses two Ounces*; *Wax six Ounces*; *melt, mix, and make an Emplaster.* It was invented to discuss Pocky Nodes, Gums, Tophs, *&c.* which it does to a wonder. 4. *Emplastrum de Caranna cum Mercurio*; Emplaster of Caranna with Quick-silver. *Take Caranna, Ammoniacum strained, ana an Ounce*; *Quick-silver half an Ounce, kill'd with Turpentine, mix them.* It has the Virtues of the former. 5 *Emplastrum Resolutivum Magistrale*: An Emplaster resolving Nodes. *Take Wax six Ounces*; *Oil of Hypericon two Ounces*; *Quick-silver two Ounces, kill'd with Flowers of Sulphur*; *melt, mix, and make an Emplaster.* It is a Secret in dissolving Nodes, Gums, Tophs, and easing Nocturnal Pains, *&c.* which it miraculously dissipates and removes, *&c.* 6. *Ceratum ad Tophos Sculteti*; *Scultetus* his Cerecloth against Nodes and Tophs. See it in our *Doron Medicum*, Lib. 3. Cap. 5. Sect. 9. It is equal in Virtue with any of the former: Where note, that if neither this, nor any of the former Emplasters, shall ease Nocturnal Pains, nor yet dissolve the Gummosity, it is a certain sign that the Bone is foul or corrupted. 7. *Ceratum ad Tophos*; A Cerecloth against Tophs. See it in our *Pharm. Chirurgica*, Cap. . Sect. 9. It cures hard Tumours, Tophs, Gums, Nodes, eases Nocturnal Pains from the *Lues*, discusses Scrpohulous Tumours, and Glandulous Swellings in the Neck: And is indeed a most admirable *Cerate.*

XI. *Of the Cure of the Prevailing Symptoms.*

CLXI. *Mercury* by the Heat of the Body, and acidity of its Juices, or of the *Virus* being turn'd into Vapour, excites a *Salivation.* For the Acid Salts dissolved in the Body, meeting and being conjoyn'd with the Acalious Substance of the Mercury, to wit, its Internal Sulphur, immediately promotes a Fermentation of the contaminated Juices, and the Mercury being made Corrosive (as Sublimate is with the Acids of Vitriol and Sea Salt) by the Sharpness and Corrosion of its Particles, makes a Separation of the malign Humours and *Virus*, or poisonous Salts, from the truly Natural or Benign: So that those evil Juices being join'd with the Mercury, and the Mercury by the Fermentation and Heat being forc'd to ascend upwards of the Salivatick Glands, they are actually separated, and through the Salivary Vessels are excluded out of the Body, whereby the Cure of the Disease succeeds. All this is to be understood of those Portions of the *Virus* not fixed in any particular part or place; but where it is Stagnant, or has taken up its Station, there the General or Universal Cure prevails not, nor will it so much as touch; and such unmovable Symptoms require another way of proceeding with, to wit, by Topicks, or External helps applied to the parts so vitiated, as we shall now declare.

CLXII. What and how many the chief Symptoms of the *POX* are,

we

we have told you in Sect. XX. and onward to Sect. L. the most of which are profligated and obliterated by the force and conduct of the *Universal Cure*. But in some of them, *viz* in the Ten following, the *Virus* is sometimes so fix'd, that being unremovable by the *General Method*, we are forced to use External Means to exterminate them. These are, 1. A *Bubo* in the Groin, or Armpits. 2. *Callous and Phagedenick Ulcers*. 3. *Leprosie*, *Morphew*, and the like. 4. *Herpes* in several parts. 5. *Impetigo* in the Palms of the Hands and Soles of the Feet. 6. *Serpigo* in the Neck, Arms, Loins, Belly, Thighs, *&c.* 7. *Gums* in the Legs, Thighs, Arms, *&c.* 8. *Nocturnal Pains* in the Shins, Thighs, Arms, *&c.* 9. *Exostoses* or hard Protuberances of the Bones. 10. *Caries*, or *Rottenness of the Bones*; of all which in order.

CLXIII. *A general Observation.* In curing of all or any of the *Ten aforenamed Symptoms*, which the Universal Cure cannot Effect, this is ever to be observed, that during the whole time of their Extirpation by the Application and Use of *Topicks*; a Dose of some one of the five before enumerated Preparation, *viz.* of the *Pulvis Principis*, *Aurum Vitæ*, *Præcipitatus Aureus*, *Impetus Mineralis*, or *Impetus Aureus*, ought to be given, mixed with some proper Cathartick, as *Pil. ex duobos*, &c. every fourth or fifth day, letting three or four days, and sometimes more, be between Dose and Dose, because by this means, the Morbifick Matter is not only continually (as it were) carried off, and a diversion of the Humours made another way; but the *Virus* accompanying the *Prevailing Symptom*, by degrees becomes annihilated, and the Topical Applications to succeed so well, as to make in a short time a perfect Cure, to the great satisfaction of the expecting Patient. And this we thought good to say here, (preparatory to all the several following Methods of their Cure,) once for all, that we might not, in these succeeding Discourses, often repeat the same thing in vain.

CLXIV. 1. *The Cure of* Bubo in Inguinibus, or *Tumour in the Groins*, &c. A *Venereal Bubo* happens in Glandulous parts, as the *Arm-pits*, *Groins*, &c. but most commonly in the latter place, and are accompanied with Tumour, Pain, Heat, Pulsation, and at length Inflamation and Apostemation, which are the most usual Signs. But it is for the most part produced in a critical manner, in which the *Virus* has been separated from the Blood and Lympha, and by which they become pefectly cleansed, (if the Bubo comes to its height, and due Maturation, and the apostemated Matter be compleatly drawn forth by External Remedies,) due Purging with Specifick and a Sudorifick Diet being pursued withal. Now that a *Bubo* arises from an *Universal POX*, is manifest, because the root of the *Virus* is lodg'd in the Blood and Juices, and that this Tumour is only a critical Production, caused by the Strength of Nature, and the good Habit of the Body.

CLXV. When a *Bubo* first appears, it is uncertain whether it will come to Pertection or not; if it does not come hastily forward, and is painful, it may then possibly discuss, and the Morbifick Matter thereof is to be carried away by the other Methods, *viz.* either by purging or Salivation. But if it is manifest that it will Apostemate, then Externals are to be applied, which may hasten the Supperation. If the Tumour augments but slowly, then Cupping-Glasses may be applied to

draw the Matter outwards; and keep it in the part, that it may not revert again inwardly; but they generally put the Patient to a great deal of Pain: After Cupping, Sinapisms or Attractive Plasters or Cataplasms are also applied, still to bring the Matter more externally. Being thus come to some forwardness, *Maturatives* are to be applied, to bring it to *Suppuration* as soon as may be, (which is commonly done in about a months time, sometimes in less) which compose according to some of the following Forms.

CLXVI. *Take white Bread three Ounces; Yolks of six Eggs; Honey two Ounces; Mithridate an Ounce and half; Camphir three Drams, (dissolved in a little Spirit of Wine) mix and make a Cataplasm.* 2. Or this, *Take Venice Treacle, roasted Onions, ana, two Ounces; Honey an Ounce and half; Florentine Orrice Pouder, Pigeons Dung, ana, one Ounce; Mustard-seed bruised half an Ounce; Camphir three Drams; dissolved in Balsam of Peru half an Ounce; mix and make a Cataplasm.* 3. Or this, *Take Mithridate, sowre Leven, Galbanum, ana, two Ounces; Rue in Pouder, Tobacco in fine Pouder, ana, one Ounce; Camphir half an Ounce (dissolved in Spirit of Wine) Balsam Copaybæ an Ounce an half; mix and make a Cataplasm.* If none of these are strong enough, you must apply one more potent. 4 As this, *Take sowre Leven three Ounces; Mustard-seed in Pouder 2 Ounces; Tobacco in Ponder, our common Crown-Soap, Strasburg Turpentine, Balsam Copabæ, ana, an Ounce; Camphir half an Ounce; (dissolved in Spirit of Wine) mix, and with a little Water boil it to the Consistence of a Cataplasm.* These *Cataplasms* are to be applied as hot as they can be conveniently endured, and their Heat ought to be assisted and maintained, by often applying a Bag of hot Sand or Salt to the place, over the *Cataplasm.*

CXLVII. Being by some of this means brought to Suppuration, if it breaks not of its own accord, it is to be opened either by Launcing with an Incision-Knife, or by Application of a *Caustick*; after which the *Pus* being let out, it is to be cleansed with the *Mundificativum Paracelsi* (which see in our *Ars Chirurgica*, Lib. 5. Cap. 2. Sect. 29.) or with some other *Abstersive*; or with *Juice of Celandine and Honey* applied with a Pledget: The Ulcer is continually to be drained and kept open for a pretty long time, even for two or three Months, (as the Physician shall see fit) for thereby the whole Mass of Blood and Lympha will be so well cleansed, as that no remains of the *Virus* need be feared; The Patient (in the time of the running, cleansing and healing of the *Bubo*) taking every fourth or fifth Day, a Cathartick Dose of some one of the Specificks named in *Sect.* 163. aforegoing. After the Ulcer is dress'd (with its proper Dressing) you may apply over all *Emplastrum de Rains* (or some such like) with three fold Mercury; and in the intermediate days of Purging, *Guajacum* and *Sarsa Diet-drink*, or some other equivalent thereto. The Aperture ought to be large, according to the magnitude of the Tumour; and the Matter ought to run so long as it can of its own accord, keeping the Ulcer open with a Pledget or Tent, laying over it the *Emplastrum de Rains* aforenamed.

CLXVIII. 2 *The Cure of Callous and Phagedenick Ulcers, Cankers,* &c. We speak not here of the usual Shankers or Ulcers of the *French POX*; but of such as are fix'd in a part; and remain even after a strict

or

or strong Salivation of thirty days, *&c.* which become a *fix'd POX* in a part. The vulgar Methods of curing these we shall forbear, and pursue our own successful Practice, which I have never yet known to fail. First I purge them every five Days or once a Week, with a Specifick Purge, fortified with a Dose of my *Impetus Mineralis.* Secondly, I wash the Canker or Ulcer with the *Aqua Fallopii.* or *Aqua Divina Fernelii*; or touch the Callous Lips with *Lac Mercuriale*, or wash with *Aqua Gryphis*, &c. Thirdly, I dress it with this, *Take Native Cinnabar levigated, Saccharum Saturni, Sperma Ceti, Camphir in fine Pouder, ana, one Ounce, Balsam of Peru, a sufficient quantity to make a Liniment.* Or with this, *Take Ointment of Tobacco an Ounce; Mercurius Dulcis levigated half an Ounce; mix, and apply upon a Pledget of Lint or fine Tow*, and over all I lay *Emplastrum de Ranis cum Mercurio duplicato, vel Triplicato*, or some such other like. If the Ulcer is contumacious you may take *Basilicon Minus*, or *Balsam de Peru, an Ounce*; Or *of either of them and Ung. Nicotianæ, of each half an Ounce; of White Precipitate three Drams, mix'd together*; with which, after washing, dress as aforesaid. Or you may wash with this Water, *Take Lime Water six Ounces; Saccharum Saturni a Dram; Camphir half a Scurple, dissolved with Spirit of Wine; fine Verdigrise gr. vj. mix them.* Or with this when the Ulcer is Rebellious, *Take common Brandy five Ounces; fine Aloes two Drams; Sal Armoniack a Dram; Camphir a Scruple; Orpiment gr xv. mix them.* Or with this, *Take the Water of the Griffin eight Ounces; Myrrh in fine Pouder two Drams; White Vitriol gr. xv. mix them.* Fourthly, Let the Patient enter every day into a Bath of warm water in a Bathing Tub, and sit in it as long as he can conveniently, for this daily Bathing not only absorbs the Acrimony and Acidity in the Ulcer, but also draws forth plentifully the *Virus*, and so induces the Ulcer to the more speedy healing.

CLXIX. How the *Lime-water* for this Use is to be made, we will give you out of *Wiseman, Take Quick Lime a Pound; Rain-water six Quarts, boil to the Consumption of a Third, filter through brown Paper, and keep it for use.* If the Ulcer is Cacoethick, or Phagedenick, you must first bring it to digestion with *Turpentine half an Ounce, mix'd with the Yolk of an Egg*; after which it may be dress'd with *Basilicon one Ounce, mix'd with Red Precipitate two Drams*, &c. Where there is a *Callus*, it may after washing with the *Water of the Griffin*, or *Aqua Mercurialis*, or touching it with *Lac Mercuriale*, be sprinkled over with *Red Precipitate*, over which a Pledget spread with *Ung. Diapompholigos* may be applied, *&c.* with Bandage. In curing these *Cacoethick* and *Phagenedick Ulcers*, I have found purging once in four, five or six days, with this following Dose, to be of extraordinary use; *Take Pulvis Cornachini half a Dram; Impetus Mineralis gr. iv. mix them;* Or this, *Take Pulvis Cornachini two Scruples; Mercurius Dulcis a Scruple; mix them.* It works well and pleasantly enough, and goes not off without the desired Effects. In the Extirpation of *Verrucæ, Condylomatæ, Mariscæ, Ficus*, &c. you must touch them with the *Caustick stone, Spiritus Vitrioli*, or *Lac Mercuriale*; or wash them with *Aqua Fallopii, Aqua Divina, Aqua Gryphis*, &c. And then apply this, *Take Ointment of Tobacco two Ounces; White or Red Precipitate, fine Pouder of*

Resinous Scammony, ana, three Drams; mix them. If these things do nothing, you must come to the use of the Ligature, Knife, *&c.* But this is to be observed, *that where any Ulcer,* &c. *is near the Bone,* greasie Medicines and Mercurials are cautiously to be used, or not used at all, because they are apt to foul the Bone, which is adding Mischief to Mischief; in all other places they are safe enough.

CLXX. 3. *The Cure of a Venereal Leprosie, Leuce, Morphew, Scurf,* &c. *remaining after a potent Salivation. First,* Purge daily with the proper Antivenereals, *&c. Secondly,* Let the Patient go every day into a Bath of warm water, in a Bathing Tub, sitting in it as long as he can conveniently; for they make an Emollition of the Parts, open the Pores, make fluid the Humours, draw forth the *Virus,* sweeten the proximate Juices of the *Cutis,* and bring the Patient in a short time to such a Condition, as to make the Disease easily yield to Medicines, which without this course, could never be accomplished, and for want of which, this kind of Symptom has been declared by some to be *Incurable. Thirdly,* Let the parts affected be wash'd twice a day, (one of them being always after Bathing) with the *Water of the Griffin,* or with this, *Take Damask Rose-water a Quart; Potestates Mercurii, two Ounces, or two Ounces and half; mix and wash therewith cold;* always avoiding to touch therewith the *Stomach and Belly,* unless very sparingly, and with caution. *Fourthly,* Let the Patient take Morning and Night (in the intermediate days of Purging) gr. x. of the *Volatile Salt of Vipers* in a Decoction of Turneps, which let be continued to the end of the Cure; or for want of that, let him take *a Dram* Morning and Night of the *Powder of Vipers,* or as much of the *Trochisci Viperarum,* which may be given him every day in Broth made of Viners Flesh, *&c.* by which there will be made an insensible Transpiration of the Morbifick Matter, and a total Extermination of the *Virus* through the Pores of the Skin.

CLXXI. 4. *Venereal Herpes in several parts of the Body, which are many times Exedent.* Where this Symptom is Contumacious, and revives after Salivation, it must be treated almost in the same manner with those Ulcers at Sect. 168. for the Patient is to be purged with Antivenereals: *Wiseman* purged in this case with an *Infusion of Sena,* &c. and then gave the next Morning *Precipitatus Albus gr. xxv.* (which is a large Dose, but such a rebellious Symptom as this is, is not to be cured with gentle Treatment) which he mix'd with *Conserve of Borrage Flowers,* and so exhibited it; and that Afternoon he gave a *Clyster.* The *Herpes Exedens* lay round and hard in the Skin, and crusted over with a thick Scab, which he loosened by bathing it with a *Decoction of Mallows:* The Scab being removed, the Ulcer was forded and corroded round, and the Lips high and Callous; which he rubbed with the Caustick Stone, and the *Hyperscarcosis* he wasted and dried by application of *Red Precipitate:* But these, if they happen'd in the Thighs, or other parts not so visible, he did not concern himself so much in dressing them, as to defend them from sticking to the Linnen, till they were dried by *Internals*; but if in the Lips, Cheeks, or other visible parts, he was then obliged to remove the callous Lips, and the several Excrescences in the Ulcer, to render the

the Cicatrise smooth. The remaining part of the Cure may be prosecuted according to the Directions in Sect. 163 & 169 aforegoing.

CLXXII. Without doubt Bathing the Ulcer often with warm Water, is an extraordinary Expedient in this case; *Take Ointment of Tobacco two Ounces; Mercurius Dulcis levigated half an Ounce; Pouder of Tobacco two Drams; with Balsam of Peru a sufficient quantity, make an Ointment.* It cures these *Exedent Herpes* to a wonder, and such rebellious and ill-natured Scabs as resist other Remedies, and to which *Precipitates* for their corrosive quality would be applied in vain. You may also wash the Ulcer clean with this; *Take of the before described Lime-water a Quart; Calomelanos levigated an Ounce; mix and shake them together till the little Globules of the Mercury are dissolved, or rather precipitated into a black Pouder.* After the Ulcer is wash'd with this Water, and dress'd with the former Ointment, you may lay over it this Emplaster; *Take of Oil Olive eight Ounces; Bees-Wax four Ounces; Turpentine three Ounces; Ethiops Minerale made without Fire five Ounces; mix for an Emplaster. Mercurius Dulcis levigated* may be used in all Ulcers, be they never so rebellious, and may be strewed upon them dry, or mixed with *Balsam of Peru; an Ounce thereof to two or three Ounces of the Balsam, and two Drams of Camphir,* &c.

CLXXIII. 5. *Impetigo in the Palms of the Hands and Soles of the Feet.* This whilst recent is many times taken off by *Ante-venereal Cathartick*s or *Salivation*; but if it remains after *Salivation*, or revives again after it, other means must be used to remove it; for when it is become *inveterate*, it is one of the most *Contumacious Symptoms* of this Disease. *First*, Purge once a Week with some Antivenereal Cathartick; as mention'd at Sect. 163. aforegoing. *Secondly*, In the intermediate days of Purging with such a Cathartick, let the Patient take constantly every day, the Diet-drink described in Lib. 2. Cap. 15. Sect. 12. aforegoing; or rather this following. *Take Juice of Garden Scurvy-grass two Quarts; Juice of Angelice a Pint; Roots of Burdock, of Turneps shaved or sliced thin, ana, half a Pound; Horse-radish roots shaved thin, Ginger bruised, ana, three Ounces; Coriander-seed, Mustard-seed, both bruised, ana, four Ounces; yellow of Orange-peels three Ounces; Cloves bruised, Nutmegs thin sliced, ana, one Ounce; choice Sena four Ounces; New Ale ten Quarts; put the Juices first into the Ale; then put the other Ingredients into a close knit Net-bag, with a stone in it, which put also into the Ale. Together with large streaked Antimony in fine Pouder a Pound and half, tyed up in a Rag, let them work together,* and after two days, the Patient may drink a Pint of it (or less, according to Circumstances) Morning and Evening, squeezing into each Draught as it is drank, the Juice of a *Sevil* or *sowre Orange.* This Drink is to be repeated so long as need requires; also Spring and Fall for some considerable time. *Thirdly*, The Palms or parts affected, are every day to be bathed with a Larder of *Genoua Soap*, as hot as the Patient can well endure it, for half an hour together at least; then wiping them dry. *Fourthly*, Anoint gently with this, *Take Balsam of Peru two Ounces; White Precipitate half an Ounce; Camphir two Drams, dissolved in a ilttle Spirit of Wine; mix them.* Or with some other *Mercurial Ointment* mentioned in Sect. 158. aforegoing: Or you may

Bathe

Bathe with the *Mixture of Rose-water, and Powers of Mercury* (in Sect. 170.) which being used two or three times a day, will not go without the desired success; or touch the *Impetigines* with the Water made of Tin and Crude Mercury, in Sect. 156. *ut supra.*

CLXXIV. 6. *Serpigo in the Neck, Arms, Back, Loins, Belly, Thighs, &c. remaining, and supervening, after the universal Cure.* 1. The Body must be purged every fifth, sixth or seventh day with Antivenereals. 2. The Patient ought once a day at least, sit up to the neck in a Bath of warm Water, or warm Sudds made with *Genoua Soap.* 3. In the intermediate days of Purging, this Mixture ought to be given, *Take Juice of Garden Scurvy-grass a Quart; Juices of Brook lime and Water-cresses, ana, a Pint; Juice of Sevil Oranges a Pint and half; White Sugar a Pound; mix, and strain through Hyppocratis his Sleeve, so often till the Liquor becomes clear.* Dose four Ounces, or a quarter of a Pint Morning and Night, in a Glass of pure clear Ale. It may be kept in Glass Bottles, and will be of a very grateful Taste. 4. The *Serpigo* ought also to be anointed with some of the *Mercurial Ointments*, rubbing it gently in, only upon the place, which is to be done for six or seven days; and if it be ulcerated, the former *Ointment of Tobacco with Mercury* ought to be applied Plaster-wise upon Pledgets of Tow; which being dryed, the places affected must be washed every day, two or three times a day, either with *Aqua aluminosa Fallopii, Aqua Divina Fernelii, Aqua Gryphis*, or *Powers of Mercury mixed with Damask Rose-water, &c.* 5. If the *Serpigines* vanish, and the Patient seems to be cured, but that some Months after they should break out again, whether in the same or new places; you must then apply strong *Vesicatories*, or *Blistering Plasters* over them, and then repeat all the former course exactly in the same manner, so will you at length accomplish a perfect Cure.

CLXXV. 7. *The Cure of Gums or Gummosities in the Legs, Thighs, Arms, Hips, Back, &c. remaining after* Salivation. This is a *Contumacious Symptom*, and sometimes continues all the days of the Patients Life, in spight of all that can be done. If they vanish by *Salivation*, or afterwards will come to *Suppuration* and Break, they may be cured, otherwise not; or at least-wise not without much trouble, strict Courses of Physick, and a great length of time. If the Gum grows bigger and bigger, is very paintul and inflamed, it will suppurate and break; and then such things are to be applied which are Maturatives; as this, *Take Pulp of roasted Onions, or roasted Garlick, Mithridate, ana, two Ounces; Ung. Basilicon an Ounce and half; mix for a Cataplasm,* which apply as hot as can conveniently be endured, renewing it every twelve hours. Or this, *Take Mithridate four Ounces; roasted Onions or Garlick three Ounces; Gum Amoniacum, Galbanum Crown Soap, ana, two Ounces; Opopanax, Sagapenum, Mustard-seed in Pouder, ana, one Ounce; with Oil of Lillies a sufficient quantity, make a Cataplasm,* which apply as before. These are to be applied till the Gum is ripe and breaks, or is opened with a Lancet or Incision Knife; and then it is to be cleansed and treated as other Venereal Ulcers. If the Ulcer is sorded, it may be dress'd with *Lac Sublimati* upon an armed Probe, or with the *Water of the Griffin*, strew'd over with *Red Precipitate*, with Pledgets of dry Lint, an *Emp.*

Bolo laid over all; but if the Suppuration is not perfect, one of the former Cataplasms are to be continued over the Dressing, till you see that work compleated.

CLXXVI. *The next thing* to be done is to Purge with the *Antivenereals* once in four, five or six days, as the Body of the Patient can bear it. *Secondly*, To Bathe with fair Water in a Bathing-Tub, if conveniency will allow of it. *Thirdly*, If the Ulcer is *Phagedenick*, to cut off the jagged Lips, or rub them with the *Caustick Stone*, or if the Lips prove *Callous*, to sprinkle upon the *Callous Red Precipitate*, and dress the Ulcer it self with the *Digestive* made of *Turpentine and the Yolk of an Egg*, till Digestion. *Fourthly*, To cleanse it with *Red Precipitate*, sprinkling it upon the Ulcer; or else with the *Mundificativum Paracelsi with Precipitate*, washing it upon every Dressing with *the Water of the Griffin*, putting upon it Pledgets of dry Lint, and over it *Emplastrum è Bolo*, to prevent any defluxion upon the part. If the Ulcer proves stubborn so that these things do not, you will be obliged *to Fume the Part* once a day at the Dressing-time, without which the Cure will not happily succeed; and then you may cure it as any other Venereal Ulcer.

CLXXVII. 8. *Nocturnal Pains in the Shins, Thighs, Arms, and other Parts.* These if they remain after the *General Cure*, or *Salivation by Internals*, well perform'd, are of very difficult Cure; But I have many times taken them away, by giving my *Impetus Mineralis*, or *Impetus Aureus*, either with a Cathartick, or made up into a Bolus with a *Dram of Mithridate*, and so given over Night, Purging it off the next Morning with some proper *Cathartick*, as *Pilulæ Cochæ Minoris*, or *Pilulæ ex duobus*, repeating the Doses every third or fourth day, for five, six or seven times or more, as I saw occasion required it; and causing the Patient to Bathe in warm Water once every day, to open the Pores in the afflicted part, and cause a Perspiration of the malign Matter; laying also over the place *Emplastrum de Ranis, cum Mercurio quadruplicato*, or some other like Emplaster, which also draws forth the *Virus* in form of Dew. If this Course did not perform, I caused the affected places to be *Fumed* with some of the former *Troches*, according to *Sylvius* and *Wiseman's* Method, once every day, so long till the Pain ceased, which would be many times in eight or ten times Fuming.

CLXXVIII. If all this proves ineffectual, you may positively conclude the Bone to be foul, and then there is no other way but to open the part pained, by laying on a *Caustick*, which may operate to the bottom, and after the removal of the *Eschar* to cleanse it to the *Periostion*, by applying *Cathereticks*, as *Red Precipitate*, *Burnt Alum*, &c. which done, *Exfoliaters* are to be used, as *Tinctura Exfolians*, and *dry Lint dip'd in it*, to be laid upon the naked Bone it self, so long till the Scales cast off, dressing in the mean season the Ulcer with Digestives and proper Absterfives; and after Scaling, taking heed that no foul or greasie Matter or Ointment may touch it, but to dress it every day with dry Lint, or Lint dip'd into *Tincture Myrrhæ*, and squeez'd out of it again, so long till it incarnates, or the Bone is cover'd with Flesh; which done, the rest of the Cure is to be effected as in a *common Venereal Ulcer*, due Purging with *Antivenereals* once in five, six

or

or seven days being continued to the end of the Process.

CLXXIX. 9. *The Cure of* Exostoses *or* Tophs *which are hard Protuberances of the Bones.* These while recent may possibly be cured with Topicks, as *Emplastrum de Ranis cum Mercurio Quadruplicato*, or some other like Mercurial Emplaster; as Dr. *Harvies Emplaster ad Tophos* of *Cinnabar*, before described; or with the *Aqua Mercurialis Banchardi*, in Sect. 156. aforegoing: If these things do nothing, you must come to *Fumigation* with *Troches*, according to the Mind of *Sylvius*, which while the *Toph* is recent and soft, will dissolve or discuss the same, being repeated twice every day for a due number of days. But if the *Exostosis* or *Toph* is become *Inveterate*, or *perfectly hardned* and *confirm'd*, then it will never yield to any of the former Applications, nor be dissolved by any other Medicament yet known, as we have declared in Sect. XL. aforegoing; but (as we have there signified) the *Tumour* must be opened by a *Caustick*; then the *Eschar* must be removed, and the *Toph* must be made bare by *Cathereticks*; after which *Exfoliaters* are to be applied, as *Tinctura Exfolians*, and other things of like nature, that the Bone may be cleared of the *Exostosis* and *scaled*; which done, it is to be dress'd with *dry Lint*, or *Lint dipp'd into Tincture of Myrrh*, and squeez'd out again, till it *Incarnates*, or the Bone is cover'd with Flesh, which then is to be healed after the manner of other Ulcers: If it is rebellious, and advances not in the Cure, you must now and then *Fume* it with the *Cinnabar Troches*, and every fourth or fifth day, the Patient ought to take a Dose of our *Impetus Mineralis*, or *Impetus Aureus*, till the Cure is compleatly absolved.

CLXXX. 10. *The Cure of a Caries, or Rottenness of the Bones.* If the *Caries* penetrates to the Marrow, it is never to be perfectly cured; but where it is more Superficial it will admit of help, if it is under a skilful Man's hand. And the Process will be the same, whether the Ulcer took its original from a Node or Gum: The longer the Ulcer has continued, and the more Malign and Putrid it is, the more *Carious* will the Bone prove. If the Ulcer is *Callous*, a Caustick must be applied to make way to the Bone; but if it is not callous, but has a Spongy or putrid kind of Flesh, then *Cathereticks* are to be applied to eat that Flesh away, such as Red Precipitate, burnt Alum, Vitriol Stone, &c. The Bone being made bare, the *Caries* is to be dried, either by the Actual Cautery, or by scraping it, so as to free it from all the remains of the Flesh, then the extoliating Medicine is to be applied, and continued so long till the Scales cast off. During all this time a Revulsion is to be made, by giving every third day (if the Patient's Body will bear it) a Dose of *Aurum Vitæ*, *Impetus Mineralis*, or *Impetus Aureus*, which by Vomiting first, and being carried down afterwards by a Cathartick, may carry the Humour another way.

CLXXXI. And some one of these following Pouders, which by their Alcalious Volatile Particles will absorb the Acid, may be strewed upon it. 1. *Take Pouder of Florentine Orice four Drams; Olibanum in Pouder two Drams; Camphir one Dram; mix them.* 2. Or this, *Take Pouder of long or round Birthwort-root half an Ounce; Frankincense in fine Pouder two Drams; Euphorbium, Camphir, of each in Pouder one Dram; mix them.* 3. Or this, *Take Pouders of Florentine Orrice, of round Birth-*

Birthwort-root, Mastick, ana, two Drams; Euphorbium, one Dram; Camphir two Scruples; mix and make a Pouder. If notwithstanding the Exfoliation comes on but slowly, you must hasten it either with the *Tinctura Exfolians*, or with this, *Take Spirit of Wine two Ounces; Juice of Celandine one Ounce; Camphir, Euphorbium, in Pouder, ana, a Dram; mix them*; wash twice a day therewith, and then sprinkle some of the former Pouders upon the Bone. The Bone being thus *Exfoliated*, it may be dress'd with Dossils of dry Lint, or with Lint press'd out of *Tinctura Myrrhæ*, till such time as you see the Bone to be cover'd with Flesh, and the Ulcer to be incarnated, after which it is to be healed or cured, after the manner of other Venereal Ulcers.

XII. *Considerations on the* Fifth STAGE *of this Disease.*

CLXXXII. How the Disease arrives to this great height of *INCURABILITY*, is hard to determine: but it must be either 1. From the Neglect or Carelesness of the Patient, from a vain Perswasion of being in no danger. 2. Or from his Folly and Wilfulness, in not being ruled, but refusing to take what is necessary to the compleating of the Cure, whereby he falls into a Relapse. 3. Or from the Ignorance of the Physician, in stopping the Salivation before its time, by giving Laudana, Catharticks, Decoctions, &c. before the Spitting is over, whereby the Course of the *Virus* is interrupted, and so falls upon some noble part, to the utter undoing of the poor Patient. 4. Or from the Sick Persons taking cold in the height or time of the Salivation, whereby the Matter is stop'd from flowing, and directed another way.

CLXXXIII. Dr. *Sydenham* (in his larger Works) has this Observation; *I think it therefore* (says he) *a thing of dangerous Consequence, either to Purge off by Catharticks, or dry up by a Decoction of the Woods, the remainder of the Salivation, which Practice, (as it is common upon pretence of either cleansing the Body of the Mercury, or correcting its Malignity) is the Cause that Patients fall into Relapses, and whilst they long for their Health (after such vast Expenses, excruciating Torments, and almost unaccountable Fatigues) become miserable Creatures; to which serene State they would have certainly arrived, if the Salivation had ceased in its own time: It would therefore be much better to promote the Salivation, by giving a Dose of* Mercurius Dulcis *once a Week, even after the Patient is well in Health and walks abroad, then stop it too soon. And further, I would very willingly know by what Maxim of Art we are guided, when we pretend to expe the Remainders of Mercury by Carthaticks or Purges, and not only neglect, but hinder that Genuine and only Method* (*viz.* by Salivation) *whereby Nature uses and ought to effect it. Such confused Apprehension of things, proceed from the small Measure of Knowledge such Physicians enjoy, which being only Superficial, cannot reach the Truth which lyes at bottom, but catch at the Shadow or Appearance thereof, and embrace (as they say) a Cloud instead of* Juno. *When the Patient then is recovering, the Salivation which now daily decays, must not be stopp'd by Purging, or by any other means whatsoever; for it may so chance, that even after the Pain is assuaged, and the Ulcers (in the Mouth) are dryed, that something of the Venereal Ferment may be lurking in the Body, and afterwards raise new Symptoms, unless this moderate*

derate Spitting be permitted, which will cease, after the Patient is so well recovered, that he can expose himself to the open Air.

CLXXXIV. And though he is against Purging in the time, or declension of *Salivation*, for the reasons before shewn; yet it was his Opinion, that it might so happen, that in the height thereof, it neither could nor ought to be omitted; to wit, when the Matter or Operation is so ill managed, that the Salivation being raised to too great a height or degree of Spitting, should put the Patient's Life in danger by Suffocation; in which case it is not only safe (says he) but necessary, to use a Cathartick for reducing the Salivation to such a degree, that it may leisurly proceed with the Ease and Safety of the Patient, to the end of its own natural Course.

CLXXXV. These things being said, to shew you some of the Ways and Means by which the Disease arrives at this *Incurable STAGE*, we now come to tell you what is to be done, and what help is to be afforded to the miserable Patient whilst he remains here, and is in his Passage to the other World. And since they languish many times under *excruciating Pains*, and *sinking of the Spirits*, as well as an *Incurable Atrophy*; Our Indications of *Relief* must be *Paliatives*, such as may 1. continually give ease in those Pains. 2. Chear and support the sinking Spirits. 3. Nourish the Body so far, as to carry it as pleasantly on as may be to the end of its Journey.

CLXXXVI. First, *To give Ease in those excruciating Pains and Torments.* As all Pains come from the Acrimony and Acidity of the Humours, so those things which absorb that Acidity, and sweeten the Juices, give ease to those Pains: In the *Vegetable Kingdom*, nothing comes near to that of *Opium* and *Camphir*, and such Medicines as are compounded of them; And next to them, *Volatile Alcalious Salts*, such as *Volatile Salt of Mans Blood*, and of *Urine*, *Volatile Salt of Hearts-horn*, and of *Sal Armoniack*; but above all the *Volatile Salt of Vipers*, which may be given in Broth from eight Grains to sixteen. So *Opiates* prepared with *Volatile Salts* transcend; such are among *Liquids* our *Guttæ Vitæ*, and *Liquid Laudanum* impregnated with a proportional quantity of *Camphir* and *Volatile Salt of Hartshorn*, *Volatile Sal Armoniack*, or *Volatile Salt of Vipers:* Among the *Solids*, we commend our *New London Treacle*, and our *Laudanum Volatile*, to be given in a due Dose once every day at Bed-time. In the *Mineral Kingdom* we commend the *Anodyn Sulphurs of Metals*; in a Liquid Form our *Impetus Martis* which may be given every Night, from thirty to sixty Drops increasing a Drop every Night, in a Glass of choice Canary, or some other proper Vehicle. And in a Solid Form, our *Angelus Mineralis*, and our *Panacea Aurea*, which may be given every Night from a Scruple to two Scruples or more made up into a *Bolus* with a little *Mithridate:* These two last Medicaments, besides being Anodyns, are easers of Pain as *Opiates* are, are also *Specificks* against the *Venereal Virus*, and other latent *Poisons*.

CLXXXVII. Secondly. *To chear and support the sinking Spirits.* The following Compositions we have found to be of admirable use. *Take strong Cinnamon water twenty Ounces; Aqua Mirabilis ten Ounces; Spirit of Angelica the greater Composition, four Ounces; with Syrup of Juice of Citrons, make it grateful.* Of this the Sick may take a Dram or two, a Spoon

Spoonful or two, now and then, to comfort the Heart and chear the Spirits. Or this, *Take choice Canary a Quart*; *Syrup of Citron-peels four Ounces*; *Volatile Salt of Vipers, or of Harts-horn, a Dram and half*; *mix them*; of which let the Sick take a Glass now and then, especially upon fainting or sinking of the Spirits. Or this, *Take choice Canary a Quart*; *Spirit of Angelica, strong Cinnamon-water, Spirit of Saffron, of each half a Pint*; *Syrup of Limons, enough to make it grateful*; *mix them.* If the fainting of the Spirits proceeds from a vehement Pain of the Limbs, (as sometimes it does) apply this, *Take Emplastrum de Ranis cum Mercurio Quadruplicato four Ounces*; *Emplastrum Nervinum, Balsam of Peru, ana, two Ounces*; *mix them*, which apply spread upon Leather.

CLXXXVIII. Thirdly, *To nourish and sustain the Body under this Incurable State:* He ought to eat liberally Hens, Ducks and Turkey Eggs, and Foods made of them easie of Digestion, also Custards, and Milk thickned with Eggs. *Gellies* made of Harts-horn, and Sheeps Trotters, also with Calves and Neats-feet, are very profitable. *Sago*, dissolved or boiled soft in Water, then mixed with a little Wine, and sweetned with double refined Sugar, makes an excellent Breakfast in a Morning, and Supper in the Evening. Nor is Chocalet inferiour, being made strong and good, thus, *Take fair Water, Milk, of each half a Pint*; *Chocalet made with Sugar four Ounces*; *mix, dissolve and boil*, and let it be drank about ten or eleven in the Morning, and about four in the Afternoon *Strong Broth* made of Pork, Veal, Lamb, Mutton, Beef, &c. ought often to be eaten, with a little pure fine white Bread; so also *strong Broth* made of Cra-fish, Lobsters, Shrimps, is most admirable, a little Wine being added to it. Nor much inferiour to it is *strong Broth of Eels*, made up with Rice, which is an approved thing: *Pottage* made with Pulse is very nourishing: so also are raw Oysters, which are allowed to be eaten plentifully, also the Flesh of boiled, baked, roasted or broiled Eels, which as well as nourishes, gratifies the Stomach. *Spanish Potatoes*, also our *English*; *Carolina Eddo's*, and our choice English *Parsnips*, are singular Nutritives, beyond most other Foods: Of all these the Patient may eat at pleasure, making choice out of this great variety of things, of such as will most gratifie his Appetite.

XIII. *Of* DIET-DRINKS; *or, Medicines Suppletory to the same.*

CLXXXIX. *Diet-drinks* in former times were in great request among the Practicers of our Art, in perfecting the Cure of this Disease, and without which they finish'd no Cure: But now in our times their Credit is much abated, and they are grown almost out of use, for that our present Method has little or no respect to them. And our *Sydenham* seems to be of that Opinion in the Passage before quoted, wherein *he thinks it is a thing of dangerous Consequence, either to Purge off by Cathartick, or dry up by a Decoction of the Woods, the remainder of the Salivation*; *which Practice is the Cause* (says he) *that Patients fall into Relapses and become miserable*, &c. And in another place he says, *We must be sure to abstain from Catharticks so long as the least remainder of a Salivation does yet appear or continue*; *and therefore it will be the surer way to depend upon* Turpethum Minerale, *given once a Week for doing the Work, by which means the Salivation will be some-*

somewhat promoted, rather than to trust to any Purgatives, &c. And these Hints of his against Purging we have inserted, because that many Practicers make their Diet-drinks Cathartick withal.

CXC. The same *Sydenham* also says, *As for the Patient's Diet, and the rest of his Conduct, the same Rules are to be observed in Salivation, till it is almost brought to a close, as are observed in Purging, to keep within the Chamber from Cold, and eat moderately such Food as is good and easie of Digestion, which will strengthen and encourage him in this Conflict of Nature, and that he be not confin'd to his Bed: For from such irregular Methods it is, that when Nature has been totally oppressed with so great Affliction, the Spirits exhausted, and the Body deprived of all manner of Strength through Sweating, Purging, and unnecessary Fasting enjoyn'd them, many Persons have miserably perish'd; and very often when the Disease is vanquished, the Patient being destitute of that Stock of Spirits and Strength, which are requisite for a perfect Recovery, does then through pure Weakness yield to his Fate. I am therefore of Opinion, and experience is for me* (says he) *that besides Gruel, Panada, Posset-drink, and warm Ale, we may, yea, we ought, to allow the Patient Veal, Pullets and the like, to be eaten moderately, and that he be permitted to eat a bit of Lamb, Pullet, or Rabbet, as soon as the Tumour of the Gums is fallen, so as they can make use of their Teeth; and that he may keep his Bed, or rise and sit by the Fire, as he himself pleases: For seeing this Disease is cured by* Salivation, *not by* Diaphoreticks, *I cannot imagine why the Patient should be tormented with too much Heat without any necessity. This Method, as it is more Expeditious, seeing it does not impose upon the Patient a long Preparation of the Body before Salivation, nor solemn Purges, nor Decoctions or Diet-drinks after Salivation, so I am very well assured, that it is much more easie, and less dangerous, and does not so much expose the Patient to a Relapse.*

CXCI. It is also to be observ'd, that this Author (as well as the Famous *Blegny* mentioned in Sect. 63. aforegoing) in the very beginning of this Cure by Salivation, is against preparing the Body by Bleeding, as is the usual Practice of these Times. *Not to say any thing* (says he) *of Bleeding, which some believe to be the principal thing in this case, if we have a due regard for Truth, seeing that this Disease is only to be cured by Salivation with Mercurial Preparations, and without which Operation the Patient cannot be safe and securely made well; the Question is, Whether it is best to perform it whilst the Body is strong and vigorous, and so able to grapple with its Enemy; and stand the Shock of all the Violence offer'd in this Work of Salivating, or after it is weakned by Phlebotomy and a spare Diet? He that weighs the thing impartially will undoubtedly conclude, that it is better to do nothing at all in this Case, than to expose the Patient to mischief by such tampering; and Experience teaches us, that they who are not thus weakned by such an Evacuation, or any other means, do much better endure the Fatigue of Salivation, than when they are beforehand enervated (as it were) by such improper Methods.* This we thought good to insert in this place (rather than to leave it out) to shew that *more than one Man* is against the pernicious Practice of Bleeding in this Cure.

CXCII. Thus far then we are of this learned Doctor's Opinion. 1. That there ought to be no Purging nor Diets, till the Salivation is compleatly absolved, unless necessity, as danger of *Suffocation*, or an *Atrophy* enforce

enforce it. 2. That there is no need of Purging to carry off the *Mercury*, for the *Mercury* either works not, and then it goes off in the Draught as Food does, or if it works, whether by *Salivation* or a *Diarrhœa*, then it makes its own way, and works it self off sufficiently enough without any other supervening Course. 3. That *Diet-drinks* are not necessary to the total Extermination of the *Virus* (though they are by Authors called *Alexipharmica*) because that is eradicated by the *Mercury*, whether by the *Cathartick* or *Salivatick* Method.

CXCIII. It may be demanded then, 1. in what cases we admit of *Purging*. 2. And for what reason *Diet-drinks* are to be given, and when, or other Medicaments equivalent and suppletory to the same? To which I answer, 1. That Purging may be used with *Mercurials*, when we design the Cure by *Catharticks*, as in what we have before sufficiently declared. 2. When a Mercurial is beforehand given, with a design that it should not *Salivate*, and then, the next Morning we give a *Purge* to carry it off, to prevent that Operation. 3. In very gross Bodies, after *Salivation*, to carry off those gross and compact Recrements of the Intestines and other *Viscera*, which it was impossible to expel by Spitting.

CXCIV. Then as to *Diet-drinks*, which are used as *Alexipharmicks*, there is no necessity of them, though Custom has formerly prevail'd in their behalf: But yet they may be given (though the *Virus* is already totally extirpated) 1. To restore the *Crasis* of the Blood and Juices, which by the Contamination of this Disease are put into great disorder. 2. To absorb any other preternatural Acidity yet latent in the Blood, which may differ from, and be no ways a-kin to the *Lues*. 3. To expel (if they be made Sudorifick) any morbid cutaneous Fœculency yet lodg'd in the external parts and not easily removed by a *Salivating Course*, though never so long continued. And for these Reasons, when given, they ought to be used after the Course of *Salivation* is perfectly over.

CXCV. A *Diet-drink* for a gross, fœculent, and cold Habit of Body. *Take Burdock-roots thin sliced a Pound; Raspings of black Guajacum, Liquorice bruised, ana, six Ounces; Cortex Guajaca four Ounces; Winters Cinnamon, Sassafras rasped, Sarsa, China, ana, two Ounces, bruised; Antimony in Pouder tyed up in a Rag twenty Ounces; Water sixteen Quarts; infuse in a scalding Heat for 24 hours; then boil to the Consumption of six Quarts, strain out, let it settle, and so bottle it up with a little white Sugar put into each Bottle.* Of this the Patient may drink a Pint or Bottle a day, for thirty days together; of the remaining Ingredients you may make a *Second smaller Decoction*, by boiling them in three Gallons of Water to two; which may serve for ordinary Drink.

CXCVI. A *Diet-drink* for a hot, dry, thin, extenuated, wasted Body. *Take of Burdock-roots sliced, Turneps sliced, ana, twenty Ounces; China sliced, Sarsa split and bruised, ana, eight Ounces; Liquorice bruised four Ounces; Nutmegs thin sliced one Ounce; Antimony in Pouder tyed up in a Rag ten Ounces; Water three Gallons; boil to the consumption of one Gallon, then strain out, and being cold, put the clear into Bottles with a little Sugar;* of which the Sick may drink a Quart a day for thirty or forty days together.

CXCVII. The *Diet-drink* of *Borellus* (in *Cent.* 2. *Obser.* 96.) by which he says the *POX* is easily cured without any Confinement to Chamber or House. *Take Antimony in Pouder tyed up in a Rag, choice Sarsa split and bruised.*

bruised, ana, six Ounces; Green Shales of forty Walnuts; Water twelve Quarts; mix and boil to the Consumption of two thirds, or till a Gallon only remains: Let the Patient take a Draught of it, as six or eight Ounces Morning, Noon and Night, at a good distance from Meals, and let it be continued for forty days. And of the same Ingredients with more Water, a smaller or weaker Decoction may be made, which may serve instead of Beer, or for ordinary Drink. The *Antimony* he says will serve four times.

CXCVIII. Some Patients are so Nice-palated, that they cannot, or will not, take these kinds of *Diet-drinks*. To such I prescribe a *Diet-drink* made only of *Turneps*, making the Decoction very strong of the same; which the sick may drink very liberally; it absorbs all Acidities, sweetens the Blood and Lympha, and restores a Consumptive Habit of Body, and takes away all those running and wandring Pains, which are not much unlike a Rheumatism, and which continuing many times after a *Salivation*, makes the Patient think he is not cured; whereas those Pains proceed not at all from the Disease, but are the Effects purely of Weakness of Body, which the Course of Physick he has gone through, has brought him into. Let him but for forty days together drink this Decoction simply, or sometimes with a Glass of Wine mix'd with it, if there be faintness, and eat the *Turneps*, either so boiled or baked, with a little Milk or Cream, Sugar and Bread, and I dare assure him, he shall not be freed only from all his Pains, but be perfectly restored to his pristine Health, to his utmost Satisfaction.

CXCIX. If, after a Salivation, *New milk warm from the Cow* (as much as may be) be drank two or three Quarts a day, (without any thing of Maulted Liquors or Wine) for fifty or sixty days together; it will do almost the same thing; but I cannot promise that it is altogether so effectual as the *Liquor of Turneps*, in such-like Rheumatick Pains; but this is certain, it wonderfully sweetens all the Juices of the Body, takes away the *Discracy* of the Blood, and restores the Body, if fallen into a Consumptive Habit. The same thing does *Whey* also, if clarified with *Fumitory* or *Purslane*; but it nourishes not so much as *Milk* does.

CC. But that which much exceeds all these things, is the *Decoction or Broth of Vipers*, which is not only an *Alexipharmacon* against the Disease, but an absolute Absorber of the Acid, and Rectifier of the Blood and Lympha, and a true Restorer of the wasted and consumed Body, ematiated through the Cruelty of the Disease, and the exorbitant Pains it commonly afflicts the Body with: It may be drank for thirty or forty days together, and the Flesh of the *Vipers* may also be eaten. They that will not take this, may take the *Pouder of Vipers* to a Dram every Night at Bed-time, made up into a *Bolus* with a little *Mithridate*; or instead thereof the *Salt of Vipers* may be given, ten Grains at a time, in a Coffee-dish of Mutton-broth, or a Glass of choice Canary Morning and Evening; it is a Medicament which in this Cure transcends all our Commendations, and has an hundred times the Virtues of the *most celebrated Diet-drinks*, and without the tenth part of the trouble in taking it. I remember that *Dolæus* commends the *Fat of Vipers*; and that he says, by giving it for some time, from half a Dram to a Dram, *in Conserve of Roses*, or of *Fumitory*, he had cured many of the *POX*.

CCI. The same thing which we have asserted of the *Volatile Salt of Vipers*

Vipers, may be said of other *Volatile Animal Salts*, as *Volatile Salt of Harts-horn*, *of Urine*, *and of Sal Armoniack*, but they ought to be given in double the Proportion: To these add *Sal Volatile Oleosum Sylvii*, all which may be given every day in some proper Vehicle. And, says *Sylvius*, *Since I have abundantly evinc'd*, *That the Venereal Poison consists in an Acid Spirit*, *but very Acrimonious*, *mix'd with the Mass of Blood*, *and as well infecting it as the rest of the Humours which are bred in it*; *it is manifest*, *that the general Cure of the POX*, *consists in the Correction and Expulsion of that Acid and Acrimonious Spirit*; *which is done by all things which Temper an Acid Acrimony*; as, 1. *Spirituous Volatile things*, as Spirit of Wine, and other Spirits made by Fermentation, as Spirit of Aniseeds, Juniper-berries, *&c.* 2. *Oily and fat things*, as Oils by Expression of Aniseeds, Almonds, Nuts, *&c.* Fats of Living Creatures, as of Vipers, *&c.* 3. *Lixivial fix'd Salts*, as Salt of Tartar, of Pot-ashes, *&c.* 4. *Aqueous Things*, which though they do not so much absorb, as dilute the Acid Acrimonious Spirit, yet conjoyn'd with the former things, they notably infringe the strength of the *Virus*. 5. *Volatile Salts of Plants*, as Volatile Salt of Beans, Pease, *&c.* And the Volatile Animal Salts before named. 6. *All Aromatick Oils*, arising from a Lixivial but Volatile Salt and Oil, as Oils of Amber, Aniseeds, Cinnamon, Cloves, Juniper-berries, Mace, Marjorum, Myrrh, Rosemary, Savin, *&c.* 7. *Apozems or Decoctions made of the Aromatick parts of Plants*, boiled in Water. 8. *Aromatick Tinctures and Spirits extracted from the Aromatick parts of Plants*, *with Spirit of Wine*, as of Virginia Snake-root, Saffron, Zedoary, Winters Cinnamon, Cassia Lignea, Sassafras, Guajacum, Myrrh, *&c.* 9. *Soaps*, *made of a fix'd Lixivial Salt dissolved in Water*, *with Oil or Suet*, *by long boiling*, *as Genoua* and *Castile Soaps*, &c. which if dissolved and taken in Milk, or Broths, *&c.* admirably temper or obtund the *Virus*. 10. *Emulsions made with water*, *Whey*, *or Milk*, *and the soluble Oily parts of Seeds*, as of Almonds, of Nuts, and the four greater cold Seeds, *&c.* 11. *Decoctions of Guajacum*, *Sassafras*, *China*, *Sarsa*, &c. to which both for gratefulness, and for amending the concomitant Symptoms, several other things are usually added. 12. *Sudorificks which expel the Matter through the Pores of the Skin*, as Mithridate, Venice Treacle, Bezoar Mineral, Bathing in warm Water, Opiates, *&c.* 13. *Diureticks*, *which expel the Morbifick Matter by the Reins and Urinary Passages*, as Decoction of Juniper-berries, of Savine, Pouder of Winter Cherries, Lignum Nephriticum, Millepedes prepared, *&c.*

CCII. *Bathing often in a Tub of warm Water*, *is of great use in perfecting the Cure.* For after the compleatest *Salivation*, there oftentimes remains (in some inveterate *POXES*) some *Defœdations of the Skin*, which *that Operation* is not able to efface, as *Leprosies*, *Stubborn Herpes*, *Nodes*, &c. but which, by this of *often Bathing*, will be totally obliterated; whether by the power of the External Heat of the Water, attracting the Malign or Morbifick Matter forth; or by its assisting the Internal Heat, and so exciting Swear, by protruding the same through the Pores, or by both those ways together, I will not determine: But this I am sure of, it softens, loosens, and opens the Pores of the Skin, causes a Perspiration of that Matter outwards, which could by no means be drawn from thence inwards, to be expell'd by *Salivation*, dilutes

and sweetens the cutaneous Juices, and so clears the whole Surface of the Body from all the Deformities and Remainders of the Disease.

CCIII. The more effectually to compleat this, I should advise the Patient, in the last Act of the Cure, to use with the Bathing, some proper *Opiate*, as our *Guttæ Vitæ*, *Liquid Laudanum*, or our *Laudanum Volatile* (more especially if there be any running or wandring Pains about the Body) to be taken every Night at Bed-time à gr. ij. ad iv or vi. by a gradual increase of the Dose, for 40, 60 or 100 days together, as need may require; which sweetens the Blood beyond any other Vegetable Production whatsoever, and withal promotes the *Diaphoresis*, for the effecting of all that is desired. In such places where these *Opiates* cannot be had, the Patient may take every Night this following: *Take Mithridate or Venice Treacle from a Dram to two Drams; Bezoar Mineral a Scruple; Cochenele gr. viij. Saffron in Pouder, Volatile Sal Armoniack, ana, gr. iv. mix for a Dose.* But that which promotes the *Diaphoresis*, eases those *Atropheous* Pains, rectifies the *Discrasy* of the Blood and Lympha, and restores the *healthy State* of the Body, more than all these, is our *Impetus Martis*, which may be given Morning and Evening in a Glass of choice Canary, *à gut. xv. ad xl.* by a gradual Progession of the Drops, for 40 or 60 days running.

CCIV. Many Patients cannot be perswaded to take the *Diet of Guajacum*, (though prepared and made pleasant with Currants, Dates and Raisons) especially to take it for so long a time as may be required; in place whereof some Physicians prescribe either *Gum Guajaci in fine Pouder*, to be taken every Night, *to a Dram*, made into a *Bolus with Mithridate*, or *Conserve of Barberries*; or rather, the *Tincture thereof made with rectified Spirit of Wine*, to be given Morning Noon and Night *à gut.* 40. *ad.* 80. in Wine, or Wine mix'd with Water, or in clarified Whey, Sack-Whey, Mead, or some other proper Vehicle, and to be continued for as long time as the Decoction is usually taken.

CCV. But instead of all the Diet-Drinks commonly prescribed by Physicians, or any of the other Prescriptions here named, we recommend as suppletory to them, I. Our *Angelus Mineralis*, a Medicament of admirable worth, which may be either made up into Pills, as in our *Pilulæ Angelicæ*, the Composition of which you may see in our *Collectanea Medica*, Lib. 3. Cap. 51. which may be given every Night from two Scruples to four or more: Or made up into a *Bolus*, or *Pills*, with *Balsam Copaybæ*, or *Balsam of Peru*, and taken nightly as the former, for so long time the Physician shall order. II. *Panacea Aurea Nostra*, our Golden All-heal, whose Virtues and Uses you may see express'd in Sect. LXXXV. aforegoing of this Chapter. It may be given from a Scruple to two Scruples, made up into a *Bolus* or *Pills with Balsam of Peru*, and so taken every Night at Bed-time instead of Diet-Drinks, *&c.* It is a Preparation of transcendent Excellency, and will perform in this Cure, all that is possible to be done by the Power or Virtue of any other Medicine whatsoever, its use being continued for 50 or 60 days together, till the desired Health is sufficiently confirmed. See more of the Cure of this Disease in the Third Edition of our *Synopsis Medicinæ*, Lib. 6. Cap. 6. and in our *Ars Chirurgica*, Lib. 2. Cap. 37. where you may find many other things, Prescriptions and Preparations, worth taking notice of.

Finitur, 23 *August.* 1706.

THE

THE INDEX.

A.

Abortion 429
Achores 196
Agues 29
Agues in Children 32
Alopecia 527
Ambuſtio 309
Anaſarca 324
Angelus Mineralis 538
Antiſcorbutick Decoct 2
Apnæa 209, 211
Apoplexy 129
Apozem Antiſcorbutic 2
Aqua Ophthalmica 5
Arcanum Jovis 556
Arthritis Vaga 52
Aſcites 335
Aſthma 209
Atrophia 228, 237, 528
Aurum Vitæ 536

B.

Balſamum Panariſtum 8
Baſtard Peripneumonia 47
Belly-ach 453
Bex a Cough 221
Bilious Colick 443
Biting of Mad Dogs 181
Bitter purging Draught 4
Bladder Inflamed 494
Bladder ulcerated 311
Bleeding at Noſe 204
Bleeding Piles 436
Blind Hæmorrhoids 435
Bloody Flux 472
Bones Rotten 528
Breath ſtinking 528
Bruiſes 302
Bubo in the Groin 525
Burnings 309

C.

Calculus Renum 492
Cankerous Ulcers of the Womb 528
Caries of the Bones 528
Carus 163
Catarrh 257
Catharticum pro Infantibus 4
Cereviſia Purgativa 3
Chankers 524
Child-bed Purgations ſtop'd 426
Child-bed Purgat. overflowing 423
Chiragra 356
Chloroſis 404
Cholera morbus 438
Clap 497
Cæliaca paſſio 467, 468
Coliacus morbus 444
Colick bilious 443
Colick Hyſterick 455
Colick of Poictiers 453
Condyloma 527
Conſumption pining 227, 528
Continual piſſing 488
Contuſions 302
Convulſions 121, 154
Cough 220
Cough Convulſive 78
Cordial Julep 2
Courſes ſtop'd 407
Courſes overflowing 413
Cramp 155
Cruſta lactea 196
Cuticular Diſeaſes 81

D.

Defluvium Pilorum 527
Decoctum amarum 4
Delirium 173
Diabetes 488
Diarrhæa 466
Diet Drink 2, 261, 545, 575, 578
Diſeaſe Cholera 438
Dog-like Madneſs 180
Dolor Nephriticus 492

The ENDEX.

Dropsie 324, 335
Dropsie of the Belly 336
Dry Belly-ach 453
Dysentery 472
Dyspnæa 209
Disuria 493, 523

E.

Easing of Pain 297
Ecchymosis 302
Eclegma incrassus 3
Eclegma fortis incrassus 3
Eclegma in defluxione 3
Eclegma ad Laryngis Exulcerat. 8
Eclegma Stomachicum 8
Eclegma Sudorificum 9
Efflorescencies 523
Emeticum commune 1
Emplast. Hystericum 4
Emprosthotonos. 154
Epilepsy 70
Erysipelatous Fever 59
Evil 265
Exostoses 527
Eye-water 5
Eyes inflamed 199

F.

Falling of the Hair 527
Falling out of the Womb 431
Falling-sickness 67
Favus 196
Fevers continual 34
Fever Erysipelatous 59
Fever from Teeth 63
Fever Hectick 64
Fever Mortal 21
Fever Pestilential 23
Fever Scarlet 39
Ficus in Ano 527
Fluor albus 418
Flux of the Belly 418
Fluxus albus Uteri 418
Forms of Medicines 1
Foul Disease 517
French Pox 517
Frensie 173

G.

Glandules in the Neck 525
Golden Tincture 5
Golden Precipitate 536
Gonagra 356
Gonorrhæa 497
Gout 354
Green-sickness 404
Gums, Gummosities 524

H.

Hæmoptysis 482
Hæmorrhage 204
Hæmorrhoids Pain 434
Hæmorrhoids Flux 436
Hair falling 527
Head-ach vehement 523
Hectick Fever 64
Hoarseness of the Voice 525
Hydrops ad matulam 488
Hydrophobia 181
Hypochondriack Diseases 10
Hysterick Colick 455
Hysterick Diseases 10, 380
Hysterick Plaister 4
Hysterick Powers 9

I.

Jaundice 374
Icterus 374
Icterus albus 374
Iliack Passion 459
Impetus Aureus 538, 556
Impetus Mercurii Aurique 6
Impetus Mineralis 555
Impetigo in the Palms 523
Incontinency of Urine 438
Inflamation of the Bladder 494
Inflamation of the Reins 493
Inflamation of the Eyes 199
Infusion of the Cortex 30
Injection absterfive 6
Injection for a Gonorrhæa 6
Jovial Precipitate 555
Ischuria 493
Itch 81
Julapium Cardiacum 2
Julapium Perlatum 2

K.

Καρὸς, Carus 163
Kings-Evil 265

L.

Laudanum Liquidum 4
Leprosie Pocky 526
Lethargy 163
Lienteria 467, 468

The ENDEX.

Loches overflowing 423
Loches suppress'd 426
Lohoch for a Cough 3
Lohoch stronger 3
Lohoch for a Rheum 3
Looseness 466
Lues Venerea 517
Lungs ulcerated 220
Lunar Precipitate 556

M.

Madness 187
Mad Dogs biting 180
Magistral Tincture 5
Mania 187
Measles 92
Mensium Suppressio 408
Mensium profluvium 414
Menstrua alba 418
Mineral Powers 537
Miscarriage 429
Morbus albus 404
Morbus regius 400
Morbus Gallicus 517
Morphew 526

N.

Nerve prick'd 307
Noble Balsam 8
Nocturnal Pains, Nodes Pocky 526

O.

Obstruction of Lungs 209
Obstructions of the Womb 407
Ophthalmia 199
Opisthotonos 154
Orthopnæa 211
Oscedo 318
Ozænæ 527

P.

Pains to Ease 297
Pains Nocturnal 526
Pain of the Head 523
Pains wandering 526
Pain and Weakness of the Back 526
Panacea aurea nostra 540
Pearl Cordial 2
Pericausis 309
Peripneumonia 47
Pestilence 23
Phtisis 242
Physodes 155
Piles 436
Pilulæ Panarcæ 7
Pining Consumption 227, 528
Pissing Disease 488
Pissing by Drops 493
Plague 23
Plaister for the Womb 4
Pleurisie 41
Pneumatodes 211
Podagra 356
Potestates Antepilepticæ, Potestates Hystericæ 9
Potio communis purgativa 1
Powers against Fits 9
Powers of Mercury and Gold 6
Pox French 517
Pox Small 98
Præcipitatus Argenteus 556
Præcipitatus Aureus 536
Pricking of Nerves, &c. 307
Princes Pouder 536, 554
Procidentia Uteri 431
Protuberances of the Bones 527
Pulvis Catharticus 6
Pulvis Principis 536, 554
Purging Diet-drink 3, 261
Purge for Infants 4
Pustulatus 309
Pustulæ Morbi Gallici 524

Q.

Quinsie 85

R.

Rabies 181
Rheumatism 52
Reins inflamed 493
Reins ulcerated 312
Rickets 80
Ring-worms 523
Risus Sardonicus 155
Roger Dixon's Decoction 26
Rottenness of the Bones 528
Running of the Reins 497

S.

Sal Panaretum 7
Sal Volatile Oleosum 8
Sarcites 325
Scabies 524
Scabby-head, Scald head 195
Scaldings 309

Scarlet

Scarlet Fever 39
Scelotyrbe 318
Sciatica 356
Scrophulæ 265
Scurf 526
Scurvy 317
Serpigo 523
Shankers 524
Silver Precipitate 556
Siphylis 518
Small Pox 98
Spasmus 154
Spasmus Cynicus 155
Spiritus Antivenereus 502
Spitting Blood, Sputum Sanguinis 482
Stomachace 318
Stomach Electuary 8
Stinking Breath 522
Stone in the Reins 492
Strangury 493
Stridor 155
Struma 265
Sweating Electuary 9
Swelling of the Glands of the Neck 525

T.

Tenasmus 466,467,469
Tendons prick'd 307
Terms stop'd 407
Terms over-flowing 413
Tetanos 154
Tinctura aurea nova, Tinctura Magistralis 5
Tophs Morbi Gallici 527
Trismos vel Trysmos 155
Troches for Fuming 557
Tussis 221
Tympanites 335

U.

Virgins Disease 404
Virulent Gonorrhæ 497
Virus how produced 520
Vitus's Dance 121
Vital Gold 536
Ulcerated Lungs 442
Ulcerated Bladder, Ulcerated Reins 312
Ulcers in Pudendis, Ulcers Callous, Cankerous and Phagedenick 524
Ulcers in the Mouth and Throat 525
Ulcers in the Nose 527
Ulcers of the Womb 528
Universal Purging Salt 7
Vomiting Blood 481
Vomiting Excrements 459
Volatile Oily Salt 8
Urinæ Stillicidium 493
Urine hot and scalding 523
Vulnera, Wounds 280, 290

W.

Wandering Pains 526
Wasting of the whole Body 528
Weakness in the Back 526
Whites in Women 418
Womb falling down 431
Womb ulcerated 528
Wounds Simple 280
Wounds Complicate 290

Y.

Yellow Jaundice 374

FINIS.